This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

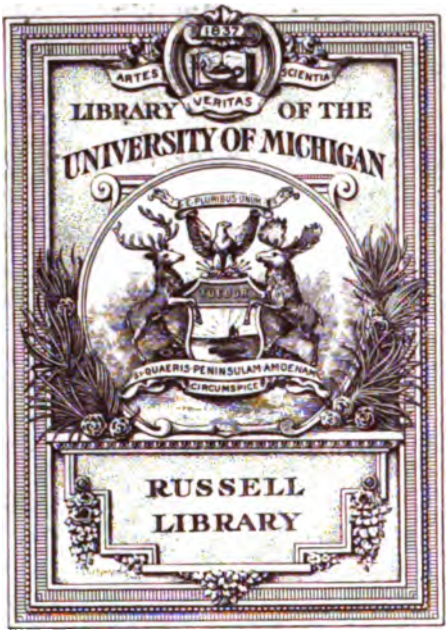
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

RUSSELL
LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF
Mrs. I. C. Russell

SCIENCE
LIBRARY
QE
127
.A2

THE
GEOLOGICAL
AND
NATURAL HISTORY
SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

THE
FIRST ANNUAL REPORT
FOR THE YEAR 1872

By N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE BOARD OF REGENTS
DECEMBER 31, 1872.
[SECOND EDITION.]

MINNEAPOLIS:
JOHNSON, SMITH & HARRISON.
1884.

NOTE.—This edition is identical with the original publication, except in typography, and in the lists of elevations on various railroads, which have been revised and corrected and referred to sea-level, through lake Superior at 602 feet. The pagination begins with number 17, in order to agree with the original.—N. H. WINCHELL.

557.9
M6

16724

UNIV. O
MAY 18

THE

GEOLOGICAL
AND
NATURAL HISTORY
SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

THE

FIRST ANNUAL REPORT,

FOR THE YEAR 1872.

By N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE BOARD OF REGENTS
DECEMBER 31, 1872.
[SECOND EDITION.]

MINNEAPOLIS:
JOHNSON, SMITH & HARRISON.
1884.

ADDRESS.

ST. ANTHONY, MINN.,
Dec. 31, 1872.

Hon. J. S. Pillsbury, president of the board of regents of the University of Minnesota:

DEAR SIR :—I have the honor herewith to present the first annual report of progress on the geological and natural history survey of the state, required by the provisions of the law creating the same. The field work covered by this report is that performed by myself alone between the first of September and the closing of the season, on the 12th day of November, by the first fall of snow. The means at my disposal not admitting of the employment of assistants, it has only been possible to make a general reconnoissance of the state by visiting those parts accessible by railroad. In that way I have succeeded in making a connected section of observed strata from the trap and granite rocks, which lie at the base of our geological system, to the *Galena limestone*, in the Lower Silurian, including also about forty feet of the latter. Between the *Galena* and the *Cretaceous* no intervening rocks have been seen, but it is probable that the remainder of the Lower Silurian, including the *Maquoketa shales* and the *Niagara limestone*, which in the Northwest seems to constitute the Upper Silurian, as well as the lower portions of the Devonian, are in place in some parts of the southern portion of the state. A few sections have also been taken in the *Cretaceous* clays and sandstones in the southern part of the state. Developments of considerable interest and economical importance have already been made in connection with this series of rocks, as detailed in the accompanying report; and it is believed that they

15149

will afford in the future progress of the survey some of the best exemplifications, not only of the scientific value, but also of the practical usefulness of our investigations.

The small geological map of the state accompanying this report is intended to embody all that is known concerning the geographical outlines of the various formations embraced within the state. With the exception of the southeastern part of the state, the outlines of the geology of which have been more minutely laid out by Mr. W. D. Hurlbut, of Rochester, Minn., this map is to be regarded as only an approximation to the actual bearing of the strata, the boundaries of which are marked by tortuosities which it will be the future work of the survey to carefully trace out.

It becomes my pleasant duty to acknowledge the active interest and aid of the president of the university in the initiation of the survey in various matters of administrative courtesy touching its relation to the university. Rooms have been provided in the university building for the storage of specimens and for laboratory work; and the nucleus of a geological museum has already been established.

Mr. W. D. Hurlbut, of Rochester, who, as a pioneer in the scientific development of the geology of southern Minnesota, has gathered information which it would require several seasons of field work for one man to collect, has freely aided me by giving all the information in his possession, and has spent considerable time gratuitously in guiding me to points of interest. The preliminary map accompanying this report shows the minuteness with which he has observed the geological boundaries in that part of the state.

Prof. Wm. F. Phelps, of the normal school at Winona, has given much information concerning that section of the state, and has accompanied me to various places of geological importance. His collection of fossils from the *Trenton* and other Silurian rocks stored in the museum of the normal school, has been opened for examination and study. He has donated to the geological museum of the university plaster casts of some of the largest and most perfect specimens of trilobites ever found in the state of Minnesota.

Mr. A. J. Hill, of St. Paul, has enjoyed unusual facilities for collecting the most complete information concerning the relative altitudes of different parts of the state as shown by railroad profiles, and has tendered to the survey the free use of all his tables.

Dr. H. H. Guthrie, of St. Charles, and Mr. A. Van Vorhes, of Stillwater, guided me in making observations at those places; giving me much valuable information.

Mr. Frank Wilson, of Mantorville, has placed in the university museum a large collection of fossils from the *Galena limestone*, on temporary deposit. For the benefit of the geological survey he has submitted them for examination and nomenclature.

The St. Paul & Sioux City, and Sioux City & St. Paul R. R., the Northern Pacific R. R. and the Southern Minnesota R. R. have materially aided in the prosecution of the field-work by granting continuous passes on their roads. The Winona & St. Peter R. R. has also granted trip passes on application.

In general the people of the state, so far as I have come in contact with them, have manifested much interest in the survey, and expressed a willingness to aid in its progress in every way in their power.

Allow me to thank you for the cordiality with which you have officially counseled and aided me in making the preliminary reconnoissance, and for personal favors at your hands.

Very respectfully,

N. H. WINCHELL,
State Geologist.

I.

HISTORICAL SKETCH AND LIST OF PUBLICATIONS RELATING TO THE GEOLOGY AND NATURAL HISTORY OF MINNESOTA.

The earliest published accounts of the natural features and resources of Minnesota are found in the writings of the Jesuit missionaries. These, however, are generally too vague or too general in their statements to be of much scientific value. The first printed account and distinct mention of the Mississippi river, within the limits ot Minnesota, seems to be that of Father Hennepin, who visited the falls of St. Anthony in 1680, and gave them their name, although Father Marquette discovered the river at lower points as early as 1673. Father Hennepin's book, published at Utrecht in 1679, has the following title: *Voyage ou nouvelle decouverte d' un tres grand pays dans L' Amerique entre nouveau Mexique et la mer glaciale par le R. P. Louis Hennepin, avec toutes les particularitez de ce Pais, & de celui connue sous le nom de La Louisiane; les advantages qu' on en peut tirer par l' etablissement des colonies; enriche de Cartes Geographiques: augmente de quelques figures en taille douce;—avec un voyage qui contiente une Relation exacte de l'Origine, Moeurs, Coutumes, Religion, Guerres, & Voyages des Caraibes sauvages des Isles Antilles de l'Amerique, faite par le Sieur De La Borde, tiree du Cabinet de Monsr. Blondel.*

The voyage proper of Hennepin is divided into seventy-six chapters. The following titles show the relations of some of these chapters to the state of Minnesota.

* * * * * * *

XXXVI. Depart d'Auteur en Canot du fort Crevecoeur avec les deux hommes, dont il a ete parle, pour se rendre aux Nations eloignees.

XXXVII. Quels ont ete les motifs que l'Auteur a eus ci-devant de cacher les memoires qu' il avoit de cette Decouverte & de ne les pas inferer dans la Description de sa Louisiane.

XXXVIII. Continuation' du voyage de l'Auteur sur le Fleuve Meschasipi.

XXXIX. Raisons qui nous obligerent de remonter le Fleuve Meschasipi sans aller plus loin vers la Mer.

XL. Depart de Koroa sur le Fleuve Meschasipi.

XLI. Description de la beaute du Fleuve Meschasipi, des terres, qui le bordent de part & d'autre, & qui sont d'un beaute' ravissante & des Mines de cuivre, de plomb, & de carbon de terre qu'on y a trouva.

XLII. Description' des divers langes de ces peuples & de leur soumission a' leurs Chefs; des Mannieres differentes de ces peuples de Meschasipi d'avec les sauvages du Canada & du peu de fruit, qu' on peut esperer pour la Religion chretiene parmi eux.

XLIII. Description de la peche vue nous faissons des etourgeons. Crainte de nos gens qui ne vouloient point passer en remontaut pres de l' embouchure de la Riviere des Illinois, & du changement des terres et du climat en allant vers le Nord.

* * * * * * * * * * *

LIX. Les sauvages sont halte au dessus du saut de St. Antoine de Padoue. Ils se trouvent en necessite de vivres; l' Auteur va avec le Picard a' Riviere d' Ouisconsin. Aventures de leur voyage.

LX. Chasse des Tortues, le canot enleve' a' l' Auteur par un vent impetueux, ce qui le jette dans un grande necessite avec son compagnon de voyage.

Memoire sur les Moeurs, *Coutumes*, *et Religion des sauvages de l' Amerique Septentrionale*, par Nicolas Perrot, publie pour la premiere fois, par le R. P. J. Tailhan de la compagne de Jesus, 1864. 12mo. 341 pp.

This valuable memoir remained in manuscript from 1670 till 1864 without publication.

In the latter part of the seventeenth century Baron La Hontan, Lord Lieutenant of the French colony at Placentia, Newfoundland, traveled over much of the Northwest, visiting the territory now embraced in Minnesota, and describing the nations and many of the natural features of the country. His book is entitled: *New Voyages to North America*, *containing an account of the several na-*

tions of that vast continent, their customs, commerce and way of Navigation upon the Lakes and Rivers; the several attempts of the English and French to dispossess one another, with the relations of the miscarriage of the former; and the various adventures between the French and the Iroquese, confederates of England, from 1683 to 1694.

Historical Collections of Louisiana, embracing translations of many rare and valuable documents relating to the natural, civil and political history of that state. Part IV. Redfield, New York, 1852, 8vo. pp. 268. (map.) Contains original narratives by Marquette, Allouez, Membre, Hennepin and Douay, relating to the discovery and exploration of the Mississippi river.

Early voyages up and down the Mississippi. By Cavalier, St. Cosme, Le Sueur, Gravier and Geugnas, with an introduction and notes by John G. Shea, Albany, 1861, 4to. pp. 191.

The travels of Jonathan Carver were performed in 1766,'67 and '68. His may be regarded the first contribution to the natural history of the country bordering on the upper Mississippi. His work is printed under the title of: *Three Years' Travels throughout the interior parts of North America.* Containing an account of the lakes, islands and rivers, cataracts, mountains, minerals, soil and vegetable productions of the northwest regions of that vast continent, with a description of the birds, beasts, reptiles, insects and fishes peculiar to that country, together with a concise history of the genius, manners and customs of the Indians inhabiting the lands that lie adjacent to the heads and west of the river Mississippi; and an appendix describing the uncultivated parts of America that are the most proper for forming settlements; by Jonathan Carver, captain of the provincial troops in America; 16mo. pp. 280.

Mr. Schoolcraft's first expedition to the sources of the Mississippi river was performed in 1820. His report was published under the following title: *Narrative Journal of travels from Detroit northwest through the great chain of lakes to the sources of the Mississippi river in 1820.* By Henry R. Schoolcraft, performed as a member of the expedition under Governor Cass, embellished with a map and eight copper plate engravings, 8vo. pp. 419.

In the year 1823 the United States Government ordered an expedition to the sources of the St. Peter river, lake Winnepeg and lake of the Woods, the report of which was published by congress under the following title: *Narrative of an expedition to the sources* *of the St. Peter river, lake Winnepeek, lake of the Woods, &c.*, performed in the year 1823 by order of Hon. J. C. Calhoun, secretary of war, under the command of Stephen H. Long, U. S. topographical engineers. 2 vols., pp. 458 and 248, with an appendix of 156 pages.

CONTENTS OF VOLUME I.

Chapter I. Departure from Philadelphia—Geology of the Alleghanies—Cumberland road—Wheeling.

Chapter II. Zanesville—Salt and iron works—Columbus—Piqua—Indian antiquities—Ohio canals—Fort Wayne.

Chapter III. Description of Fort Wayne and vicinity—Fur trade—Potawotamies.

Chapter IV. Cary mission house—Lake Michigan—Chicago.

Chapter V. Rock river—Menomones—Geology of the country west of lake Michigan—Prairie du Chien—Sauks and Foxes.

Chapter VI. Prairie du Chien—Indian remains—Division of the party—Mississippi—Dacotah villages—Fort St. Anthony falls—River St. Peter.

Chapter VII. Geology of the Mississippi—The expedition ascends the St. Peter's—Character of the country—Arrival at lake Traverse.

Chapter VIII. Account of the Dacotahs, or Sioux Indians—Their division into tribes—Their numbers, language, manners and customs—Notice of Watonwan, principal chief of the Yanktonian tribe—Description of the Columbia Fur Company's establishment at lake Traverse.

CONTENTS OF VOLUME II.

Chapter I. The party leave lake Traverse—They fall in with large herds of buffalo—Observations upon the rovings of this animal—Meeting with a war party of the Wahkpahotas who manifest hostile dispositions—Arrival at Pembina.

Chapter II. Fort Douglas and Lord Selkirk's colony—Bark canoes—Lake Winnepeek—Fort Alexander—River Winnepeek—Rapids—Portages—Fine falls—Lake of the Woods—Northwesternmost point of the Boundary line—Rainy Lake river and lake—Fort—Series of rapids and falls—Dividing ridge—Falls of Kamanatekwoya—Arrival at Fort William.

Chapter III. Account of the Chippewa Indians—Their usages, manners and customs.

Chapter IV. Departure from Fort William—Trap formations on lake Superior—Michipecotton house—Arrival at Sault St. Marie—Conclusion of the journey.

Chapter V. General description of the country traversed by the expedition, designed as a topographical report to the war department, by S. H. Long, U. S. T. E. (Divided into seven chapters.)

CONTENTS OF THE APPENDIX.

Part I. *Natural History.* Zoology by Thomas Say—Catalogue and descriptions. Botany by Lewis D. de Schweinitz.

Part II. *Astronomy.*

Part III. *Meteorology.*

Part IV. *Indian Vocabularies.*

Mons. J. C. Beltrami, who started out as a member of Major Long's party of exploration to the sources of the St. Peter river, parted from him, and exploring the Mississippi to its source, published his observations under the following title: *La Decouverte des sources du Mississippi, et de la riviere Sanglante.*

Descriptions du cour entier du Mississippi * * * * *aussique du cour entier d l' Ohio, Observations critico-philosophiques sur les moeurs, la religion, les superstitions, les coutumes, les armes, les chasses, la guerre, la paix, le nombrement, l'origine, &c., &c,, de plusieurs nations indiennes* * * * * * *Preuves evidentes que le Mississippi est la premiere riviere du monde.* Par J. C. Beltrami, Membre de plusieurs academies, 1824, pp. 327.

Narrative of an expedition through the Upper Mississippi to Itasca lake, the actual source of this river, embracing an exploratory trip through the St. Croix and Burntwood (or Brule) rivers in 1832, under the direction of Henry R. Schoolcraft. (Published by Harper & Brothers,) pp. 307, 8vo.

Besides the narrative this book embraces an appendix, as follows: I. *Natural History.* 1. List of shells collected by Mr. Schoolcraft. By William Cooper. 2. Localities of minerals observed in 1831 and 1832 in the Northwest. By H. R. Schoolcraft. 3. Localities of plants collected in the northwestern expeditions of 1831 and 1832. By Douglass Houghton, M. D., surgeon to the expedition.

II. *Indian languages.* Part of a course of lectures on the grammatical structure of the Indian languages, delivered before the St. Mary's committee of the Algic society. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

III. *Official reports*, embracing among others a report of Dr. Houghton on the copper of lake Superior; dated Fredonia, N. Y., Nov. 14, 1831.

Summary narrative of an exploratory expedition to the sources of the Mississippi river in 1820, resumed and completed by the discovery of its origin in Itasca lake in 1832. With appendices comprising the original report of the copper mines of lake Superior, and observations on the geology of the lake basins and the summit of the Mississippi; together with all the official reports and scientific papers of both expeditions. By Henry R. Schoolcraft. Philadelphia. Lippencott, Grambo & Co., 1855.

Besides the narrative, the following scientific papers are included in the appendix :

I. *Of the expedition of* 1820.

Results of observations for latitudes and longitudes during the expedition of 1820. By David B. Douglass, captain of engineers, U. S. A.

Report on the copper mines of lake Superior. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Observations on the mineralogy and geology of the country embracing the sources of the Mississippi river and the great lake basins. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Report on the value and extent of the mineral lands of lake Superior, in reply to a resolution of the U. S. Congress. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Rapid glances at the geology of western New York beyond the Rome summit, in 1820. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

A memoir on the geological position of a fossil tree in the secondary rocks of Illinois. Albany, N. Y. E. & E. Hosford, pp. 18. 1822. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

List of plants collected by Capt. D. B. Douglass at the sources of the Mississippi river. *Am. Jour. Sci. and Arts*, vol. 4, p. 56. By John Torrey, M. D.

A letter embracing notices of the zoology of the Northwest. Addressed to Dr. Mitchell on the return of the expedition. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Species of bivalves, collected by Mr. Schoolcraft and Captain

Douglass in the Northwest, published in the 6th volume of the Am. Jour. Sci. pp. 120—259, By D. H. Barnes.

Fresh water shells, collected by Mr. Schoolcraft, in the valleys of the Fox and Wisconsin rivers. Am. Phil. Trans., vol 5. By Mr. Isaac Lea.

Summary remarks respecting the zoological species noticed in the expedition. By Dr. Samuel L. Mitchell.

Mus bursarius. Medical Repository, vol. 21, p. 248. By Dr. Samuel L. Mitchell.

Sciurus tre-decem-striatus. Med. Repos., vol. 21. By Dr. Samuel L. Mitchell.

Proteus of the Lakes. Am. Jour. Sci., vol. 4. By Dr. Samuel L. Mitchell.

Memoranda of climatic phenomena, and the distribution of solar heat in 1820. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

II. *Of the expedition of* 1832.

Limits and range of the *Cervus sylvestris* in the northwestern parts of the United States. Northwest Journal. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Description of the *Fringilia vespertina* discovered by Mr. Schoolcraft in the Northwest. Annals of the New York Lyceum of Natural History. By William Cooper.

List of shells collected by Mr. Schoolcraft during his expedition to the sources of the Mississippi river in 1832. By William Cooper.

List of species and localities of plants collected during the exploring expeditions of Mr. Schoolcraft in 1831 and 1832. By Douglass Houghton, M. D., surgeon to the expeditions.

A report on the existence of deposits of copper in the trap rocks of Upper Michigan. By Douglass Houghton.

Remarks on the occurrence of native silver and the ores of silver in the stratification of the basins of lakes Huron and Superior. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

A general summary of localities of minerals observed in the Northwest. By Henry R. Schoolcraft.

Geological outlines of the valley of Takwymenon, in the basin of lake Superior. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Suggestions respecting the geological epoch of the deposit of the red sandstones of the St. Mary's falls of Michigan. By H. R. Schoolcraft.

Table of geographical positions observed in 1836. By J. N. Nicollet.

Report of a geological reconnoissance, made in 1835 from the seat of government by the way of Green bay and the Wisconsin territory to the Coteau de Prairie, an elevated ridge dividing the Missouri from the St. Peter's river. By G. W. Featherstonhaugh, U. S. geologist. Dated April 22, 1836. Printed by order of the senate. Doc. 333, pp. 168.

Notes on the Wisconsin territory, particularly with reference to the Iowa district or Black Hawk purchase, with a map. By Lieut. Albert Lea, U. S. dragoons, 1836, 16mo. 53 pages, close print.

Report intended to illustrate a map of the hydrographical basin of the Upper Mississippi river. By J. N. Nicollet in employ under the bureau of the corps of topographical engineers, and under instructions dated April 7, 1838. pp. 170, 26th Congress, 2nd session, senate, [237]. Printed Feb. 16, 1841, 500 copies ordered. Also 28th Congress, 2nd sess., House of reps. [52], Jan. 11, 1845, 1500 copies ordered.

This valuable document on the Upper Mississippi consists of:—

Part I. Physical geography of the region embraced within the map, with incidental notes on its geology, mineralogy and botany.

Part II. Comprises: determination of altitude by barometer; determination of time; determination of latitude; determination of longitude; a table showing results of observations.

[A sketch of the early history of St. Louis was prepared by Mr. Nicollet to accompany his report, but as he died without assigning it a place it is inserted after Part I.]

Appendix "A" is a table of geographical positions giving latitudes, longitudes and altitudes above the gulf of Mexico.

Appendix "B" is a catalogue of plants collected by Mr. Charles Geyer, under the direction of Mr. J. N. Nicollet during his exploration of the region between the Mississippi and Missouri rivers. By Prof. John Torrey, M. D.

Appendix "C" is a list of fossils belonging to the several formations alluded to in the report, arranged according to localities.

A Canoe Voyage up the Minnay Sotor, with an account of the lead and copper deposits of Wisconsin, of the gold region of the Cherokee country, and sketches of popular manners, &c., &c., &c. By G. W. Featherstonhaugh, F. R. S., F. G. S. The preface is dated Dec. 1846. 8vo. Vol. I has pp. 416. Vol. II has pp. 351.

Report of a geological survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, and incidentally of a portion of Nebraska territory. Made under instructions from the U. S. treasury department, by David Dale Owen, U. S. geologist, during the years 1847, 1848, 1849 and 1850. 4to, pp. 638, 72 wood cuts, 27 steel plates, 18 colored maps, stone and copper. Philadelphia, Lippencott, Grambo & Co., 1852.

This volume, embracing a field extending from St. Louis to the British line, and from the west shore of Lake Michigan to the Missouri river, is by far the most valuable contribution to the natural history of the Northwest that had at that time appeared. It throws the first real light, derived from the systematized science of modern times, on the geology and the present fauna and flora of Minnesota. The works of major Long and of Mr. Schoolcraft, mainly narrative or dealing with observations incidentally made on the geology and natural history of the routes they took, embrace many essential facts and able memoirs on special subjects. The report of Dr. Owen is both comprehensive and detailed. He had a numerous corps of able naturalists, and his examinations were sufficiently prolonged to enable him to gather reliable facts enough to lay down correctly the groundwork of a vast extent of scientific research. It is a fortunate thing for geology that at the head of this enterprise was a man so conscientious in his statements, and so careful in his researches. It is no rebuke to geology to say that it has suffered less from its open foes than from the rash generalizations of some of its advocates. Dr. Owen was enabled not only to prove the falsity of some of the statements of mere tourists who had passed through the state, but to establish on correct paleontological evidence the age of most of the bedded rocks of Minnesota, and to throw much light on its topography and soil. It would be expecting too much to look for a pioneer report on so vast a field that should show no errors. Some of these have already been pointed out by more recent observers who confined their examinations to certain parts of the territory on which Dr. Owen reported. Others may appear hereafter.

Dr. Owen's corps consisted of the following gentlemen:

J. G. NORWOOD, assistant geologist.

J. EVANS, B. F. SHUMARD, B. C. MACY, C. WHITTLESEY, A. LITTON, R. OWEN, heads of sub-corps.

G. WARREN, H. PRATTEN, F. B. MEEK, J. BEAL, sub-assistants.

Dr. Owen's own. report, covering the first 206 pages of the volume, is divided into six chapters. He gives a brief history of the explorations of the various corps, sketches the difficulties and adventures which befell them, and names the salient points of interest in the progress and the results of the survey, in the introduction.. The chapters are as follows :

Chapter I. Formations of the Upper Mississippi and its tributaries, belonging to the Silurian period.

Chapter II. Formation of Cedar, and part of Lower Iowa river, belonging to the Devonian period.

Chapter III. Carboniferous rocks of southern and western Iowa.

Chapter IV. Formations of the interior of Wisconsin and Minnesota.

Chapter V. Formations of lake Superior.

Chapter VI. Incidental observations on the Missouri river, and on the mauvaises terres (bad lands).

Dr. Norwood's report on some portions of the country adjacent to lake Superior consists of :—

Chapter I. Boundaries and topographical notices.

Chapter II. Descriptive catalogue of the rocks referred to in his report.

Chapter III. Narrative of the explorations made in 1847, between La Pointe and St. Louis river; and between Fond du Lac and the falls of St. Anthony, and on the St. Croix river.

Chapter IV. Physical structure and geology of the northwestern and western portions of the valley of lake Superior.

Col. Chas. Whittlesey's report pertains to that portion of Wisconsin bordering on the south shore of lake Superior.

Chapter I. General description and geology of the Bad river country, and of that between the Bad river and the Brule; with descriptions and detailed sections of rocks like those which in Michigan are copper-bearing; and accounts of the magnetic iron beds of the Penokie iron range, and of "Iron ridge," in Dodge county, Wisconsin.

Chapter II. Description of the country between the Wisconsin and Menomonie rivers; with a discussion of the general geology, and its relations to other parts of the Northwest.

Chapter III. Red clay and drift of Green bay and Wisconsin.

Chapter IV. Barometrical and thermometrical observations.

Chapter V. Lumbering on the waters of Green bay.

Dr. B. F. Shumard's report pertains to local and detailed observations in the valleys of the Minnesota, Mississippi and Wisconsin rivers.

Chapter I. Detailed observations on the St. Peter's and its tributaries.

Chapter II. Local sections on the Upper Mississippi.

Chapter III. Local sections on the Wisconsin and Baraboo rivers.

Chapter IV. Observations on Snake, Kettle and Rush rivers.

Dr. J. Leidy furnished for the volume a memoir on the remains of extinct *Mammalia* and *Chelonia* from Nebraska territory.

The appendix embraces :—

Article I. Description of new and imperfectly known genera and species of organic remains collected during the geological surveys of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota. By D. D. Owen.

Article II. Descriptions of one new genus and twenty-two new species of *Crinoidea*, from the *Subcarboniferous limestone* of Iowa. By D. D. Owen and B. F. Shumard.

Article III. Summary of the distribution of orders, genera and species in the Northwest.

Article IV. Additional chemical examinations. By D. D. Owen.

Article V. Systematic catalogue of plants of Wisconsin and and Minnesota. By C. C. Parry.

Article VI. Table of stratigraphical and geographical distribution of genera and species in the Northwest.

The Pembina settlement. Letter from the secretary of war transmitting report of Maj. Wood relative to his expedition to Pembina settlement, and the condition of affairs on the northwestern frontier of the territory of Minnesota. Mar. 19, 1850. 8vo. pp. 55. Ex. Doc. No. 51, 31st Cong., 1st session.

Letter from the secretary of war communicating the report of an expedition to the territory of Minnesota. By brevet Capt. Pope, Feb. 5, 1850. Senate, 31st Congress, 1st Sess. Ex. Doc. No. 42, pp. 56. Comprises nine chapters and an appendix containing tables of distances.

Letter from the secretary of war transmitting report of brevet captain J. L. Reno, on the survey, &c., of a road from Mendota to the Big Sioux river. 33rd Congress, 1st session, House of Representatives [97], pp. 12.

Reports of explorations and surveys to ascertain the most practicable and economical route for a railroad from the Mississippi river to the Pacific ocean. Made under the direction of the secretary of war in 1853–4, according to acts of Congress of May 3, 1853, May 31, 1854, and August 5, 1854. Thirteen volumes, 4to., Washington, 1856–60.

Single papers.

1. Route near the 47th and 49th parallels of north latitude, vol. I. pp. 39–55.

2. Synopsis of a report of the reconnoissance ofrai lroad route from Puget sound, via Smith's pass to the Mississippi river. By Fred W. Lander, C. E.; vol. II, pp. 45.

Vol. XII. Parts I and II are wholly devoted to the Northern Pacific route, viz:

Part I. Narrative and final report of exploration for a route for Pacific R. R. near the 47th and 49th parallels of north latitude, from St. Paul to Puget sound. By I. I. Stevens, governor of Washington territory, 1855, pp. 358. 41, 2 maps, 1 profile, 70 engravings.

Part II. Botanical report, pp. 7–76, 6 plates; zoological report, pp. 1–399, 76 plates.

Letter, upon the agricultural and mineral resources of the northwestern territories, on the route of the Northern Pacific R. R. By Philip Ritz, Washington, D. C.; 8vo. pp. 8, 1868.

Minnesota. Its place among the states. Being the first annual report of the commissioner of statistics, J. A. Wheelock, for the year ending Jan. 1st, 1860, 8vo. pp. 171.

Minnesota. Its progress and capabilities. Being the second annual report of the commissioner of statistics for the years 1860 and 1861. By J. A. Wheelock. 8vo. pp. 126.

Notes on the geology of some portions of Minnesota from St. Paul to the western part of the state. By James Hall, 1866, 4to. pp. 12. Read June 15, 1866, before the Phil. Soc. of Philadelphia.

Survey of the upper Mississippi river. Letter from the secretary of war in answer to the resolution of the House * * * with general Warren's report of the surveys of the upper Mississippi river and its tributaries, 8vo., pp. 116, Sen. Doc. 39th Cong., 2d Sess. Feb. 15, 1867.

Report of Gen. Warren on the survey of the upper Mississippi river, for the year ending June 30, 1867, 8vo. pp. 6. [Printed in appendix "D," report of the chief of engineers; and as Ex. Doc. No. 1. House of Reps., 40th Cong., 2d Sess., Sept. 14, 1867.]

Report of Gen. Warren on the survey of the upper Mississippi river for the year ending ?. 8vo. pp. 10, 40th Cong., 2d sess. Ex. Doc. 247. April 8, 1868.

Report of Gen. Warren for the year ending June 30, 1868, on the survey of the upper Mississippi river. 8vo. pp. 86. [Printed in appendix "G," report of chief of engineers; and as Ex. Doc. 1, Part II., House of Reps., 40th Cong., 3d sess., Aug. 31, 1868.]

On certain physical features of the upper Mississippi river. By Gen. G. K. Warren. Read by Gen. Warren before the Am. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Aug., 1868, Chicago, Ill. [Printed only in the American Naturalist for November, 1868.]

Geology of southern Minnesota. A series of five papers by W. D. Hurlbut, published in the 4th volume of the Minnesota Teacher, 1871.

Geological rambles in Minnesota. Two papers published in the 4th volume of the Minnesota Teacher, 1871. By J. H. Kloos.

A Cretaceous basin in the Sauk valley, Minnesota. By J. H. Kloos. A paper published in the Am. Journal of Science and Arts, Jan. 1872, dated October, 1871. Condensed and republished in the Minnesota Teacher, vol. 5., 1872.

The first State Legislature met in 1859. Although it was burdened with the legislation incident to the organization of the various institutions of the new State, the subject of a geological survey and its evident importance to the material development of the State, received due attention. A law was passed ordering at once a reprint of portions of the geological report of Wisconsin, by professor Daniels, for the years 1854 and 1858. This republication, printed in 1860, contained Prof. Daniels' "Sketch of the Lead Region," with notes on the evidences of iron ore, which closed with a statement of the "objects of a geological and natural history survey," embracing 34 pp. It also embraced a paper, read before the American Geographical and Statistical Society on the 31st of January, 1856, by Mr. A. S. Hewitt, on the "Statistics and History of the production of iron." pp. 47. Five hundred copies ordered printed.

The second Legislature passed March 10, 1860, a concurrent resolution providing for "Commissioners" to report on the geology of the state, and to submit a plan for a thorough geological survey of the state. The commissioners appointed were Charles L. Anderson and Thomas Clark. These gentlemen submitted separate reports under the date of Jan. 25, 1861, making an octavo pamphlet of 26 pages, of which 2,000 copies were ordered printed. This pamphlet embraces a chapter on the *general geological features of Minnesota*, and one on a *plan for a geological survey*, by Mr. Anderson; also one by Mr. Clark on the *meteorology of the state*, and another on some general topographical and geographical features of the northeastern portion of the state.

The report of the state geologist, Aug. H. Hanchett, M. D., is a pamphlet of 82 pages, 8vo., and is dated New York city, Nov. 13, 1864. It was made in pursuance of executive instructions bearing date July 12, 1864. It contains a short report of ten pages, by Dr. Hanchett, and a valuable report by Mr. Clark on (1) *The physical geography* of the district embraced in that portion of the state bordering on lake Superior. (2) A discussion of the *meteorology of the district.* (3) *A list of the leading plants and trees* of the district. 500 copies printed.

The first report of H. H. Eames, as state geologist, was made in pursuance of an act of the seventh Legislature, and printed in 1866. Two editions of 3,000 copies each were ordered. It is a pamphlet of 23 pages, and pertains specially to "*The metalliferous region bordering on lake Superior.*" It gives the details of personal explorations and the results of chemical assays of ores for the precious metals.

Report of explorations in the mineral regions of Minnesota, during the years 1848, 1859 and 1864; by Col. Chas. Whittlesey. Printed by order of the legislature in 1866, 8vo. pp. 52, close type, with wood-cut illustrations. 3,000 copies ordered.

This, by far the most valuable state document pertaining to the geology and natural history of the state that has yet appeared, embraces short chapters as follows: *General geology; phenomena of the drift period; general elevations in Minnesota; fluctuations in the level of the lakes*; *climate.*

Notes on the valley of the Baragas river.
“ “ Kawimbash river.
“ “ Two Islands river.
“ “ Manedowish river.
“ “ Baptism river.
“ “ Palisade river.
“ “ Beaver river.
“ “ Low Bush river.
“ “ Encampment river.
“ “ French river.
“ “ Knife river.
“ “ Sucker river.
“ “ Henry Schmidt's river.
“ “ Hollow Rock river.
“ “ St. Louis river.
“ “ Rainy Lake river.

Notes on the shores of the Esquamega, Vermilion and Crane lakes and on the cost of mining copper.

Geological reconnoissance of the northern, middle and other counties of Minnesota. By Henry H. Eames, state geologist, printed in 1866, 8vo., 58 pp. This pamphlet comprises the second, and last, report of Mr. Eames. It embraces:

A brief outline of the different formations or systems of rocks that form the crust of the earth; remarks on the igneous, the coal-bearing, and the sandstone and limestone rocks of the state; also on peat; on mineral and fissure veins; on agricultural chemistry; on a geological reconnoissance "in detail" of the counties of St. Louis, Lake, Itasca, Cass, Todd, Otter Tail, Douglas, Stearns, Morrison, Benton, Sherburne, Redwood, Cottonwood, Ramsey and Washington; together with results of assays and thermometrical and barometrical observations in the months of June, July and August.

Copper-bearing veins having been discovered in the valley of the Kettle river, and at Taylor's Falls, in the valley of the St. Croix river, the Legislature passed, Mar. 2, 1865, an act to aid in their investigation. The report of Mr. N. C. D. Taylor, the following year, consists of only two pages, incorporating Mr. James Hall's estimate of the copper prospects of that district. 500 copies printed.

Indications of brine having been discovered at Belle Plaine, in

Scott county, the Legislature passed, 28th day of February, 1870, an act appropriating land in aid of a boring for the purpose of developing the salt, should any exist. In 1871 another similar appropriation was made by the legislature, conditional on a favorable report by a competent geologist, to be appointed by the governor. Prof. A. Winchell, of Ann Arbor, Mich., having been so appointed, made the required examination; and his report, dated June 17, 1871, was printed by order of the Senate. It is an 8vo. pamphlet of 16 pages. Notwithstanding the unfavorable opinion of the geologist, the Legislature made the further appropriation, Feb. 29, 1872, of six other sections of "state salt lands," for the further sinking of the well, making eighteen sections or eleven thousand three hundred and twenty acres of land in all. No brine in workable quantities was obtained.

The same legislature passed, March 1st, 1872, the present comprehensive law placing the geological and natural history survey under the direction of the board of regents of the state university. This law reads as follows:

GENERAL LAWS OF MINNESOTA, 1872, CHAPTER XXX.

An Act to provide for a geological and natural history survey of the state and to entrust the same to the University of Minnesota.

Be it enacted by the Legislature of the State of Minnesota:

SECTION 1. It shall be the duty of the board of regents of the University of Minnesota to cause to be begun as soon as may be practicable, and to carry on a thorough geological and natural history survey of the state.

SEC. 2. The geological survey shall be carried on with a view to a complete account of the mineral kingdom as represented in the state, including the number, order, dip, and magnitude of the several geological strata, their richness in ores, coals, clays, peats, salines and mineral waters, marls, cements, building stones and other useful materials, the value of said substances for economical purposes and their accessibility; also an accurate chemical analysis of the various rocks, soils, ores, clays, peats, marls and other mineral substances, of which complete and exact records shall be made.

SEC. 3. The natural history survey shall include, first an examination of the vegetable productions of the state, embracing all trees, shrubs, herbs and grasses native or naturalized in the state; second, a complete and scientific account of the animal kingdom as properly represented in the state, including all mammalia, fishes, reptiles, birds and insects.

SEC. 4. The said surveys and examinations shall be made in the manner and order following: first, the geological survey proper, together with the necessary and implied mineralogical investigations, all of which shall be undertaken as soon as may be practicable, and be carried forward with such expedition as may be consistent with economy and thoroughness; second, the botanical examinations; third, the zoological investigations; provided, however, that whenever the said board of regents may find it most economical to prosecute different portions of the surveys in conjunction, or that the public interest demands it, they may, in their discretion, depart from the above prescribed order. And in the employment of assistants in the said surveys, the board of regents shall at all times give the preference to the students and graduates of the University of Minnesota, provided the same be well qualified for the duties.

SEC. 5. The said board of regents shall also cause to be collected and tabulated such meteorological statistics as may be needed to account for the variety of climate in the various parts of the state; also to cause to be ascertained [by] barometrical observations or other appropriate means the relative elevations and depressions of the different parts of the state; and also on or before the completion of the said surveys, to cause to be compiled from such actual surveys and measurements as may be necessary, an accurate map of the state, which map when approved by the governor shall be the official map of the state.

SEC. 6. It shall be the duty of said board of regents to cause proper specimens, skillfully prepared, secured and labelled, of all rocks, soils, ores, coals, fossils, cements, building stones, plants, woods, skins and skeletons of animals, birds, insects and fishes, and other mineral, vegetable and animal substances and organisms discovered or examined in the course of said surveys, to be preserved for public inspection free of cost, in the University of Minnesota, in rooms convenient of access and properly warmed, lighted, ventilated and furnished, and in charge of a proper scientific curator; and they shall also, whenever the same may be practicable, cause duplicates in reasonable numbers and quantities of the above named specimens, to be collected and preserved for the purpose of exchanges with other state universities and scientific institutions, of which latter the Smithsonian Institution at Washington shall have the preference.

SEC. 7. The said board of regents shall cause a geological map of the state to be made, as soon as may be practicable, upon which, by colors and other appropriate means and devices, the various geological formations shall be represented.

SEC. 8. It shall be the duty of the said board of regents, through their president, to make, on or before the second Tuesday in December of each and every year, a report showing the progress of said surveys, accompanied by such maps, drawings and specifiactions as may be necessary and proper to exemplify the same to the governor, who shall lay the same before the legislature; and the said board of regents upon the completion of any separate portion of the said surveys, shall cause to be prepared a memoir or final report, which shall embody in a convenient manner all useful and important information accumulated in the course of the investigation of the particular department or portion, which report or memoir shall likewise be communicated through the governor to the legislature.

SEC. 9. To carry out the provisions of this act the sum of one thousand dollars per annum is hereby appropriated, to be drawn and expended by the [said] board of regents of the University of Minnesota.

SEC. 10. This act shall take effect and be in force from and after its approval.

Approved March 1, 1872.

II.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

The science of geology is based on those general principles which, resulting from the accumulated observations of its advocates during the last half century, have become to the geologist himself the merest alphabet to which he seldom recurs in the prosecution of his more advanced investigations. The following brief statement of those principles is here given for the benefit of those persons who are not specially acquainted with the science, but yet are fascinated, perhaps, by its wonderful progress, and its success in utilizing its discoveries to the general good, and wish to comprehend at a glance the sub-structure on which it is built. It is not an occult science. Its data are open to the investigation of the commonest observer. It is founded on such simple things as the running of brooks, the blowing of winds, the rippling of waves, the shining of the sun, the cooling of heated matter, the growth of vegetation and the death of animals that live on land and in the sea. These everyday operations have given to the earth its external aspects, and have left their history in the rocks. The constancy of the present laws of nature through the lapse of the geological ages, is a pre-requisite to the existence of the science. Time, as the word is commonly understood, must be immensely lengthened out. These two postulates granted—*that time is long*, and *that the physical laws of the universe have been constant throughout time*—and nothing more is needed for the foundation of the science. The geologist, with these postulates, and by the aid of a knowledge of the physical laws of nature derived from a comprehensive examination of the earth in the light of all the sciences, may read in the rocks the grand changes the earth has undergone since "the beginning." The failure to comprehend the science of geology is very often attributable to a restricted acquaintance with the principles of other sciences which it involves; for however simple the first process in which it begins, those processes are,

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA.

when duly amplified, very often the starting points of other sciences which first grew up, expanded and usurped the whole field of scientific thought. It is a simple thing to observe the growth of a plant from the seed—it is another to know the relations of that plant to others by which it may be surrounded, and by botanical [illegible]tion to define its nature and structure. It is an easy thing to see the effect of the sun's rays on the vegetation of the earth, and to comprehend the cause for the change of the seasons, as well as to note the alternations of day and night, but the versed astronomer only can realize the full force of the great laws involved in these changes, and indicate their effect on the earth when acting through the lapse of ages. It is an easy thing to note the freezing up of the streams, and their bounding violence on being released in the spring; to see the destruction of forests by tempests and by [illegible]es; to observe the blowing of sands and the dashing of waves; but, although these things are very simple, the science of meteorology is too abstruse to be even fairly appreciated by the common mind. The rusting of iron, the decaying of wood, the cementation of gravel by percolating water, the demolition of rocky outcrops and their conversion into soil by the solvent action of the moisture of the air and of overflowing streams, are things of common and easy observation, but the science of chemistry, in the light of which they alone can be adequately understood, is the outgrowth of the laws of occult affinities between the particles of matter, the full power of which it is impossible to estimate, and much more to express. Thus all the sciences, and notably that of zoology, have yielded up to the geologist their keys to the *arcana* of nature, and have assisted in interpreting the otherwise unintelligible records which lie in the rocks of the earth. The geologist must not be restricted to the mere inspection of the rocks, for he has to question the botanist, the chemist, the zoologist, the astronomer, and the general physicist. These are in a broad sense his aids. By his gen[illegible]ns the society of the sciences is made evident, and so their varied bearings one upon the other are adjusted, and expressed in their full significance. In return the science of geology reflects light on the other sciences. It gives greater value to the l[illegible]s of the mineralogist, guides the miner in his explorations, opens fields for investigation to the chemist, shows the botanist and the zoologist thousands of unnamed and unclassified species, propounds to the astronomer the *glacial epoch* for explanation, and explains to the agriculturist the true basis of the difference in soils.

The rocks which are classed, in general, as *Granitic and Metamorphic* are those which appeared first above the waters of the universal ocean, or have since been upheaved by internal forces from the heated mass within the crust. In the former case they have been dry land since they first appeared above the ocean, and have supplied largely the materials of the later, overlying, sedimentary formations. In the latter case they have been protruded upward through the sedimentary rocks, tilting them in various directions and so fracturing their bedding as to disclose their contents to the geologist. Round the bases of these early granitic areas the currents of the ocean, driven by the rising and falling of the tides, by the rotary motion of the earth, and by the unequal distribution of the heat of the sun, flowed with an unceasing activity, and the tumultuous waters beat with a violence that probably is never witnessed in modern days. They were thus gradually torn down, and their *debris* was spread over the uneven ocean bed in horizontal layers according to the direction and force of the currents. In that manner the primordial, or *Potsdam*, sandstone was formed. It hence everywhere lies at the base of the evidently sedimentary rocks. *It was deposited in the bed of the ocean.* If it now appears as dry land, it is because the ocean's bed has risen above the water level. The history which may be read from it is that of the ocean's bed. It tells of deep waters and shoal waters, of muddy bottoms and stony bottoms, of warm, drying sunshine and gentle winds, of violent currents and stormy seas, of impure waters heated by frequent ejections of sulphurous gases from below the thin crust, and of chemical reactions that to-day are the familiar steps of the laboratory. It reveals the earliest of created beings. They lived in the ocean. Their remains are dug out of the hardened sediment by the geologist, and he calls them *fossils.*

The changes that continued to go on in the conditions of the earth, owing to the cooling and the shrinking of the interior, effected various changes in the relative prevalence and positions of the land and water. Additional dry land appeared, thus bringing from the bed of the ocean a part of the freshly formed *Potsdam sandstone.* A period of repose sufficed for the deposit of the calcareous material of the *Lower Magnesian*, which next overlies the

Potsdam. This, however, was not spread over the earlier sandstone, except where the latter still extended below the ocean. It was accompanied with new and more abundant forms of animal life, so that it may be certainly distinguished from the foregoing and from the succeeding formations. The conditions of the oceanic waters were such that chemical reactions resulted in the precipitation of the carbonates of lime and magnesia. Silica, also, seems to have been in solution, and to have shared in the incessant changes in the surrounding affinities. These three substances, with some iron and traces of alumina and manganese, make up the mass of the *Lower Magnesian limestone.* The prevalence of silica in the form of sand gives it also the name of *Calciferous sandrock.* The chert, in its lower portions, is also largely composed of siliceous material.

To the *Lower Magnesian* succeeds the *St. Peter sandstone.* That in turn is followed in ascending order by the *Trenton* shales and limestones. Thus, through the whole thickness of the stratified rocks of the earth, each formation marks an epoch in the history of the ocean's bed. The dry land constantly increased in area, gradually bringing to the surface the sediments of the latest preceding epoch. Hence the areas of the various formations are arranged over the face of the country in broad belts in consecutive order, revealing the chronological system as well as the territorial accessions with which the continent grew.

The rocks thus deposited in the bottom of the ocean, and subsequently raised to the level of dry land, are called stratified or aqueous, in distinction from the earliest, or igneous, which show no arrangement into beds. The lowest sedimentary rocks are locally so changed by contact with escaping gases and molten material as to essentially alter their usual character, The limestones have been converted to saccharoidal marbles,the sandstones to quartzytes, the clays and shales to slates, while many of the earliest are also entirely changed by chemical transformations among their elements, resulting from the same grand agencies, to schists and even gneiss, mica and hornblende slate, that can hardly be distinguished from some of the igneous rocks themselves. The geologists of Canada even report granite and syenite, pertaining to the Laurentian, as metamorphic sedimentary rocks. (See Geology of Canada, 1863,p.23)

It is evident that when the true succession of the rocks of the earth has once been made out by the study of their permanent characters, the geologist may enter any country however remote or unknown and enter fearlessly on the work of deciphering the age of its rocks, depending solely on the universality of the grand principles of his science.

A complete geological history of the past can be read from the rocks of the earth only by the study of causes and effects operating in the present. In order to that a perfect acquaintance with the various departments of natural science becomes essential. The laws of physics, chemistry and astronomy have with their multiform ramifications played as important parts in the early geological ages as they now play in the transactions of every day. The natural forces concerned in vegetable growth, distribution and decay, are involved in the deposition and preservation of the coal rocks in their proper horizon. Hence botany with its allied subject, meteorology, is embraced in a perfect knowledge of geology. The identification of the rocks of the great *Coal Period*, as distinguished from others containing coal, is based on a botanical law, a distinction in plants. As to zoology, that subordinate department derives much of its significance and value from the uses it subserves to geology. Its nomenclature, and its principles have been wonderfully modified and extended by the discovery and proper classification of the animal forms embraced in the strata of the earth's crust, while the science of zoology furnishes to the geologist the only reliable key to the establishment of the age of any of the stratified rocks of the earth. All characters, except those known as paleontological, fail of permanence, and cannot be depended on at distant points. A geological survey cannot be conducted, much less completed, without a full examination and delineation of the animals and plants that are preserved in the rocks surveyed. The dead past far outnumbers the living present. It is with the greatest propriety that botanical and zoological departments are usually attached to the geological surveys undertaken by the various states of the union, intended to embrace also the enumeration of living species.

The subjoined chart of geological nomenclature is intended to convey an idea of the relation of Minnesota to the great geological series of the earth, and to express the probable equivalency of some of the names which the formations have received in different states and in Europe.

III.

THE SURFACE CONTOUR OF THE STATE.

The intimate relation subsisting between the geology and the topography of the state is more evident than in some of the other states of the union. The causes which determine the location of the great continental water-shed are those which determined the existence of the Laurentian and lake Superior ranges of igneous and metamorphic rocks. The area of these rocks in Minnesota, as well as in Wisconsin and Michigan, includes some of the sources of the great river systems of the Northwest and of the continent. From this area, since pre-Silurian times, streams have run in all directions toward the ocean. Within this area, in the state of Minnesota, are the headwaters of the St. Lawrence system of drainage, which enters the Atlantic ocean toward the east; those of the Mississippi which enters the gulf of Mexico toward the south, and those of the Red river of the North, which, taking an opposite course, finds the ocean level toward the north, through Hudson's bay, in British America. This watershed consists not in the form of a definite and abrupt ridge. The oldest rocks are, on the contrary, spread out over a very extensive region of flat and often prairie country. Occasional knobs of these rocks protrude through the drift, or they show extensive tracts of denuded surface, rising but few feet above the surrounding level.

While in general these rocks form the principal watershed, in some parts of the state the later sedimentary rocks rise much higher and give origin to numerous streams which reach the main valleys at considerable distance from the granite areas. Such an elevated area of sedimentary rocks occurs in southern Minnesota, forming there the summit of a second water-shed. Freeborn, Faribault, Martin and Cottonwood counties are probably the most elevated in the state, the altitude there reaching nearly 1,600 feet above the ocean. How much of this extraordinary elevation is due to a moraine-like accumulation of drift, it is impossible to say, but probably the average thickness of that deposit would not fall short of one hundred feet. Streams from this area enter Iowa toward the south, some also running northward and joining the Minnesota river. The course of the surface drainage is in this case dependent very little on the character of the underlying rock. But where the drift is lighter, the direction of subordinate streams is often determined by the bearing of the sedimentary rocks. A stream is most likely to be located in the depression caused by the erosion or other destruction of the outcropping edge of a soft or friable rock, the more persistent formation adjoining it, above and below, forming the divides between it and other streams. Other causes, however, principally those superinduced by undulations in the strata over long distances, so as to cause them to leave the direction of the principal or tributary valleys, and the variations of level brought about by the unequal deposition of the drift during the prevalence of the ice of the glacial epoch, have very generally masked the effect of unequal erosion of the strata on the direction of surface drainage. One remarkable instance of the effect of geological causes in determining the location of valleys, and hence of drainage streams, through variations in the hardness of the underlying rock, may be mentioned. The Mississippi river, from a short distance below the mouth of the St. Croix to the southern boundary line of the state, and to the mouth of the Wisconsin river which joins it at Prairie du Chien from the east, flows through a tract of country in which the drift forces acted with far less violence than in other tracts further to the east or west, or even further to the south. Whatever may be the cause of the comparative exemption of this district from the prevalence of the drift in that latitude in other parts of the United States, it is a fact so observable that Mr. J. D. Whitney, some years ago, denominated it a "driftless region," where it enters the state of Iowa. Hence it is here, if anywhere, that the character of the underlying rock would influence the direction of drainage. Throughout this distance the bluffs of the Mississippi are specially elevated and rocky. The river has not infrequently cut into the formations, with which it comes in contact, a perpendicular depth of over six hundred feet, excavating a channel often of four or five, and sometimes of nearly ten miles in width. Sometimes old channels that have been abandoned lie along one side, or both, and are filled with water only during the freshet season. Throughout this distance it follows exactly the strike of the Lower Silurian rocks. The *St. Peter sandstone*, on which it enters at St. Anthony's falls, is underlain by a very enduring rock known as the *Lower Magnesian limestone.* That, in order, is also underlain by the more erosible sandstones of the St. Croix valley. Hence we have an enduring limestone rock intercalated between two easily destructible sandstones. Yet it is a remarkable fact that this limestone, the strike of which would ordinarily form, under the operation of natural causes, a ridge or divide turning the surface waters in opposite directions into the valleys of the sandstone areas, forms the summits of the river bluffs nearly the whole distance. The river has not only cut its channel through the first sandstone, a thickness of over one hundred feet, and the *Lower Magnesian limestone*, a thickness of about three hundred feet, but also into the lower sandstone to the depth of two or three hundred feet, on which it is now running. At the present time the river lies in the strike of the more enduring limestone, the overlying sandstone having retreated from the immediate river banks. Its agency in locating the river is only manifest by the existence to the present day, of isolated outliers of it, in the form of the well known "Trenton mounds," on the eastern side of the river, its present line of outcrop running some miles further west. While the river has been slowly wearing its way into the *Lower Magnesian limestone*, and through it into the *St. Croix sandstone*, on the line where the overlying *St. Peter sandstone* predetermined it, the *St. Peter* itself has almost entirely disappeared from the river, and been lost under the attacks of the elements, its substance having been spread over the high prairies, or on the low bottom lands, as the principal ingredient of the rich loams which characterize that portion of Minnesota. Hence we also have the singular phenomenon of a slight descent in the surface of the country westward from the tops of the bluffs of the Mississippi, in southern Minnesota, while the streams tributary to it actually reach it by flowing to the east. This can be explained only on the supposition that the *St. Peter sandstone* formerly had its outcrop about where the Mississippi now runs, forming then there, as it forms now along its line of junction with the *Lower Magnesian limestone*, a marked depression in the general surface, but that in the lapse of time its line of outcrop, and necessarily that of all overlying rocks, was driven, by the operation of destructive agencies, further to the west, leaving the next lower formation to round out the bluffs along the river. The tributary streams, having once entered the Mississippi from the west, would keep their beds also eroded down to a level with that river, and would continue to enter that stream by passing in like manner between high and rocky banks, which would attain their greatest hight just at their union with the bluffs of the Mississippi. At Prairie du Chien the direction of the strike of the *St. Peter sandstone*, and of all the Silurian rocks changes, and passes away from the Mississippi valley toward the east. But the Wisconsin river bears the same relation to the *St. Peter sandstone*, running along its ancient line of bearing, its main outcropping edge being driven away from the immediate valley toward the south, while outliers on the northern side attest its former prevalence intact over the whole valley.

Enough has been said to show the importance of a knowledge of elevations above a common level at all ascertained points throughout the state. Efforts have been made to obtain the hypsometrical data of the state complete up to the present time, so far as indicated by railroad or other surveys. The following list of elevations is the result. To this list additions will be made from time to time. The figures show the altitudes of the points named above lake Superior, and above the ocean. When not otherwise mentioned, the points given are on the grade of the road.

On the line of the Lake Superior & Mississippi R. R.

FURNISHED BY A. J. HILL.

Miles from Duluth.		Feet above lake Superior.	Feet above the ocean.
0	Surface of lake Superior at Duluth in 1870........	0	602
0	Duluth....................................	6	608
21	Thomson. Dalles of the St. Louis river.........	430	1032
33	Highest point on entire line, both of grade and natural surface................................	569	1171
45	Moose Lake depot...........................	462	1064
60	Kettle River depot. (Ground a little to the north and south is 15 to 20 feet higher).............	428	1030
78	Hinckley, at Grindstone river	429	1031
	Lowest place between Hinckley and next summit, grade....................................	408	1010
80	Summit, grade...............................	418	1020
86	Summit, (20 feet higher than at ½ mile to the N. or S.), grade............................	388	990
90	Pine City, at Snake river......................	347	949
	Two and a half miles south of Snake river, at summit, grade................................	381	983
101	Rush City, at creek..........................	314	916
	Descending gradually from Rush City to Goose creek		
	Goose creek, grade..........................	289	891
	Between Goose creek and N. Branch.	318	920
113	N. Branch depot............................	292	894
	Between N. Branch and Wyoming.............	309	911
125	Wyoming, at the river, grade.................	291	893
125	Wyoming depot............................	294	896
129	Forest Lake depot...........................	307	909
132	Summit between Forest Lake and Rice creek.....	352	954
133½	Rice creek, grade..........................	319	921
	Country generally level for five miles south of Rice creek.		
137½	Centerville depot...........................	329	931
142½	White Bear, junction to Stillwater............	332	934
145¼	Summit between White Bear lake and St. Paul (8 feet cut), grade...........................	362	964
151	Between Phalen's lake and St. Paul............	273	875
154	Lowest known water in Miss. R. at St. Paul.............. } Extreme range 19 feet.	81	683
154	Highest known water in Miss. R. at St. Paul.............. }	100	702

On the line of the Northern Pacific R. R.

FURNISHED BY W. MILNOR ROBERTS, CHIEF ENGINEER.

Miles from Duluth.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
0	Duluth (level of L. Superior) about	0	602
24	Junction (natural ground)	479	1081
24.2	Junction (grade)	480	1082
27	Otter creek (bed of creek)	526	1128
34	(natural ground)	733	1335
34.1	Norman (grade)	722	1324
41.7	Kettle river (bed of the river)	685	1287
44.7	(natural ground)	729	1331
46	Island lake (grade)	705	1307
51.7	Tamarack river (bed of the river)	685	1287
51.9	(natural ground)	709	1311
55.2	(natural ground)	678	1280
58.1	Sicottes (grade)	665	1267
62.2	Hay river (bed of the river)	622	1224
62.8	(natural ground)	638	1240
65.4	Sandy river (bed of the river)	613	1215
72.3	(natural ground)	612	1214
73.8	(natural ground)	660	1262
76	Kimberly (grade)	631	1233
76.5	Rice river (bed of the river)	603	1205
80.8	(natural ground)	648	1250
83.5	Sisabagama creek (bed of creek)	600	1202
85.3	(natural surface)	635	1237
87.1	Aitkin (grade)	602	1204
87.7	Mud river (bed of the river)	586	1188
90.2	(natural ground)	618	1220
91.8	Cedar river (bed of the river)	593	1195
97.5	(natural surface)	699	1301
98.2	Deerwood (grade)	666	1268
103.6	(natural surface)	697	1299
115	Brainerd (grade)	604	1206
115.5	Mississippi river (bed of river)	538	1140
	Banks of the Mississippi river (grade)	604	1206
120.6	Frenchman's (grade)	599	1201
120.9	(natural ground)	606	1208
122.5	Gull river (bed of the river)	561	1163
124.7	(natural ground)	604	1206
127.6	Pillager creek (bed of creek)	566	1168
128.2	Pillager (grade)	580	1182
135.5	(natural ground)	622	1224
136.5	Crow Wing river (bed of the river)	597	1199
137.1	Motley (grade)	620	1222
141.5	(natural ground)	650	1252
143.3	Hayden's branch (bed of creek)	624	1226
150.9	(natural ground)	742	1344
151.3	Aldrich (grade)	726	1328
151.5	Partridge river (bed of river)	704	1306
155.3	(natural ground)	747	1349
156.5	Wing river (bed of river)	712	1314
158.2	(natural ground)	757	1359

On the line of the Northern Pacific R. R.—continued.

Miles from Duluth.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
161.3	Union creek (bed of creek)	720	1322
161.9	Wadena (grade)	749	1351
164.1	(natural ground)	754	1356
166.4	Leaf river (bed of river)	707	1309
174.8	New York Mills (grade)	809	1411
177.2	(natural ground)	831	1433
183.4	Otter Tail river (bed of river)	718	1320
185.5	Perham (grade)	766	1368
190.7	(natural ground)	779	1381
192.6	Otter Tail river (bed of the river)	735	1337
195.4	Hobart (grade)	784	1386
196.1	(natural ground)	802	1404
196.2	Otter Tail river (bed of the river)	753	1355
201.4	(natural ground)	820	1422
205.8	Pelican river (bed of the river)	737	1339
206.6	Detroit (grade)	762	1364
210.7	(natural ground)	806	1408
210.9	Oak Lake (grade)	767	1369
213.6	Audubon (grade)	708	1310
214.7	(natural ground)	667	1269
217	(natural ground)	748	1350
219.2	Lake Park (grade)	733	1335
224.2	Hay creek (bed of creek)	600	1202
226.6	Hay creek (bed of creek)	567	1169
227.4	Buffalo river (bed of river)	50	1152
230.1	Buffalo river (bed of river)	532	1134
230.4	Hawley (grade)	550	1152
231.4	(natural ground)	595	1197
234.9	Muskoda (grade)	483	1085
238.3	Buffalo river (bed of river)	338	940
242	Red river flats (natural ground)	378	980
243.2	Glyndon (grade)	323	925
252	Moorhead (grade)	304	906
252.2	Red river (bed of river)	257	859
	Red river banks (natural ground)	302	904

On the line of the St. Paul & Sioux City and Sioux City & St. Paul R. R.'s.

FURNISHED BY HON. E. F. DRAKE.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior	Above the ocean.
47	Belle Plaine	123	725
52	Blakely	126	728
58	East Henderson	132	734
63	Le Sueur	151	753
69	Ottawa	188	790
77	Kasota	198	800
86	Mankato	189	791
90	South Bend	206	808
100	Lake Crystal	392	994
110	Madelia	419	1021
121	St. James	471	1073
130	Butterfield	582	1184
137	Mountain Lake	698	1300
143	Bingham Lake	818	1420
148	Windom	751	1353
154	Wilder	846	1448
160	Heron Lake	815	1417
170	Hersey	883	1485
178	Worthington	980	1582
188	Bigelow	1029	1631
196	Sibley	907	1509
245	Le Mars	619	1221

St. Paul & Pacific R. R.—Main line.

FROM THE RECORDS IN THE OFFICE OF THE CHIEF ENGINEER, C. A. F. MORRIS. BY N. H. W.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior	Above the ocean.
0	Low water in Mississippi river at St. Paul	81	683
0	St. Paul depot	102	704
0	Base of the capitol, St. Paul	190	792
0	Bluffs back of the capitol—		
	Head of Robert street	308	911
	Summit avenue bluff	318	920
5	Summit between St. Paul and St. Anthony (3 feet cut)	328	930
9.5	Junction at St. Anthony	240	842

S Paul & Pacific R R—Main line—continued.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior	Above the ocean.
9.5	Mississippi R. (low water) at Nicollet island, St. Anthony	198	800
10.5	Minneapolis station	232	834
	Mississippi R. (low water) half mile below St. Anthony falls	118	720
17	Self's lake (water)	253	855
24	Wayzata station	334	936
25	Lake Minnetonka (water)	326	928
28	Long Lake station	352	954
40	Crow River crossing (track)	326	928
40	Delano	326	928
48½	Waverly station	397	999
51½	Twelve Mile creek (track).	398	1000
54	Howard lake	408	1010
57	Smith lake	452	1054
59		448	1050
60	Sucker creek (track)	415	1017
60	Sucker creek (water)	392	994
61	Cokato	448	1050
64	Collinwood creek (track)	425	1027
67½		519	1121
68.5	Level of marsh	490	1092
69.5		520	1122
72	Darwin (Big prairie)	530	1132
79	Litchfield station	527	1129
86	Swede Grove station	590	1192
89	Anderson's hill (cut 15 feet)	614	1216
91	Summit (Atwater)	609	1211
92	Cut 10½ feet	639	1241
95.5	Highest point on line (cut 3 feet)	667	1269
98	Very rolling surface to Kandiyohi station	620	1222
105	Willmar station (at Foot lake)	527	1129
110.5	St. John's	519	1121
118	Nearly level to Kerkhoven	506	1108
127	Smooth surface to De Graff station	459	1061
132	Sharp summit (cut 16 feet)	464	1066
134	Gradual descent, smooth surface to Benson station	445	1047
135.5	Chippewa river (bridge track)	433	1035
135.5	Chippewa river (water)	418	1020
140	Gradual ascent, smooth surface, to Clontarf station	442	1044
147	Gradual ascent, smooth surface, to 147's mile post	472	1074
150	Hancock station	553	1155
151.5	Summit	570	1172
155.5	Pomme de Terre river (track)	476	1078
155.5	Pomme de Terre river (water)	464	1066
159	Morris station	527	1129
161	Summit (161's mile post)	554	1156
167.5	Smooth surface to Donnelly station	522	1124
178	Gradual descent, smooth surface, to Herman station	468	1070

St. Paul & Pacific R. R.—Main line—continued.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
184.5	Smooth surface to Mustinka creek	424	1026
185.5	Smooth surface to Gorton	420	1022
194.5	Smooth surface to Tintah	393	995
201	Smooth surface to Rabbit run	380	982
202	Smooth surface to Campbell station	380	982
209	Smooth surface to Doran station	369	971
217	Smooth surface to Breckenridge station	357	59

St. Paul, Stillwater & Taylor's Falls R. R.

COPIED FROM PROFILE IN THE OFFICE OF THE CHIEF ENGINEER, J. S. SEWELL, BY N. H. W.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
0	St. Paul. Low water in Mississippi river	81	683
0	St. Paul. High water in Mississippi river	100	702
1.5	Junction with St. Paul & Pacific R. R.	172	774
	Crossing of L. S. and M. R. R., Phalen's creek (track)	227	829
	Grade of L. S. and M. R. R. here is 20 feet lower	207	809
2	Phalen's creek (bottom) third crossing	201	803
3	Broken surface to second crossing of Phalen's creek (track)	251	853
3	Phalen's creek, second crossing (bottom)	236	838
3.5	Broken surface to first crossing of Phalen's creek (track)	269	871
3.5	First crossing of Phalen's creek (bottom)	251	853
4.5	Broken surface to creek at Ames' farm (track)	321	923
4.5	Creek at Ames' farm (bottom)	290	892
6	Broken ascent to beginning of descent to the Mississippi river (cut 15 feet)	386	988
6.5	Broken surface to tamarack swamp (track)	376	978
6.5	Tamarack swamp (natural surface)	371	973
8	Summit one mile west of Oakdale station (cut 10 feet)	406	1008
9	Oakdale station	377	979
12	Broken surface to the level of Lower Bass lake	284	886
12	Level of Upper Bass lake	298	900
12	Lake Elmo station	331	933
13	Nearly level and smooth surface to road on east line of Oakdale	321	923

St. Paul, Stillwater & Taylor's Falls R. R.—continued.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
15	Summit four miles from Stillwater	327	929
15.5	Junction W. Wisconsin R. R. (cut 17 feet)	285	887
17.5	Broken descent to marsh (bottom)	151	753
17.5	Center of gravel ridge, one and a half miles from Stillwater (cut 50 feet)	171	773
19	Broken descent to high water at Stillwater	85	687
19	Low water in St. Croix lake at Stillwater	65	667

Branch line of the St. Paul & Pacific R. R., from St. Anthony to Brainerd.

FROM THE RECORDS IN THE OFFICE OF THE CHIEF ENGINEER, C. A. F. MORRIS. ABSTRACTED BY N. H. WINCHELL.

Miles rom St. Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
9.5	Junction at St. Anthony	240	842
17	Manomin (Fridley)	246	848
17	Rice creek (water level)	219	821
21.5	Coon creek (water level)	230	832
27	Anoka	281	883
27.5	Rum river (water level)	243	845
34	Itasca	289	891
39	Elk River station	294	896
43	Elk river (water level)	294	896
48	Big Lake station	338	940
56	Becker	375	977
63	Clear Lake station	395	997
73.5	St. Cloud, E. shore of Mississippi river	410	1012
75	St. Cloud, W. shore of Mississippi river	420	1022
	Mississippi river at St. Cloud bridge	363	965
	Mississippi river at Sauk Rapids (water)	386	988
76	Sauk Rapids station	402	1004
82	Watab station	451	1053
85	Little Rock river (track)	418	1020
85	Little Rock river (water)	405	1007
89	Rice's station	457	1059
95	Platte river (track)	467	1069
95	Platte river (water)	457	1059
96	Royalton	478	1080
106	Smooth surface to Little Falls (track)	512	1114
111	Smooth surface to Belle Prairie	528	1130
118.5	Summit	570	1172

Branch line of the St. Paul & Pacific R. R., from St. Anthony to Brainerd—continued.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
120	Fort Ripley....................................	556	1158
120	Nokasippi river (water)........................	537	1139
127	Crow Wing....................	584	1186
133.5	Buffalo creek.............................. ...	601	1203
133.5	Buffalo creek (low water)...	570	1172
134.5	Summit between Buffalo and Buckhorn creeks.....	599	1201
136	Buckhorn creek (track)......................	562	1164
136	Buckhorn creek (low water).....	587	1189
137	Broken surface to Brainerd (N. P. Junc.).........	604	1206

Line of the St. Vincent branch of the St. Paul & Pacific R. R.

ABSTRACTED FROM THE RECORDS IN THE OFFICE OF THE CHIEF ENGINEER, C. A. F. MORRIS, BY N. H. WINCHELL.

Miles from St Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
74	E. St. Cloud station............................	410	1012
74	Low water in Mississippi river at St. Cloud........	363	965
75	W. St. Cloud..................................	420	1022
78.5	Sauk river (track).............................	433	1035
78 5	Sauk river, first crossing (water).................	416	1018
79	Sharp ridge (cut 15 feet).........................	437	1039
82	St. Joseph........	471	1073
83.5	Watab creek (track)............................	459	1061
86	Sharp ridge (cut 17 feet)...................... ...	486	1088
87.5	Broken surface to summit..................	536	1138
90	Broken surface to Avon..............	515	1117
94.5	Broken surface to Two rivers (water)......	521	1123
6.5	Broken surface to Albany.........	586	1188
99	Broken surface to summit near 99's mile post......	634	1236
101	Broken surface to Getchell's creek (water).........	575	1177
103	Broken surface to Freeport (a summit)............	624	1226
106	Broken surface to Sauk river, second crossing, (water)......	557	1159
108	Broken surface to Melrose......	596	1198
111	Smooth surface to third crossing of Sauk river, (track).....................................	598	1200
111	Third crossing of Sauk river (water)...	586	1188
114	Broken surface to summit (cut 15 feet), Sec. 24, T. 126, R. 34................................	656	1258

Line of the St. Vincent branch of the St. Paul & Pacific R. R.—continued.

Miles from St. Paul.		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
116	Broken surface to fourth crossing Sauk river (track)	625	1227
116	Sauk river (low water)	600	1202
117	Smooth surface to Sauk Center station	640	1242
120	Broken surface to cut of fourteen feet	693	1295
121	Broken surface to summit (cut of seventeen feet	712	1314
122.5	Silver creek (track)	666	1268
125	Undulating surface to West Union station	722	1324
131	Broken surface to Osakis station	728	1330
133	Summit (Sec. 22, T. 128, R. 36)	793	1395
135	Broken surface to 135's mile post	727	1329
136	Nelson	754	1356
138	138's mile post	803	1405
139.5	Broken surface to creek (track)	759	1361
142	Broken surface to Alexandria	778	1380
149	Very broken surface to Garfield station	803	1405
158	Broken surface to Chippewa river (track)	760	1362
158	Chippewa river (water)	730	1332
160	Evansville station (cut twenty-eight feet, fill immediately of fifteen feet)	745	1347
161	Very broken surface to summit (cut of thirty feet)	769	1371
166	Very broken surface to lake Christina (cut and fill at Christina of forty-two feet)	623	1225
169.5	Very broken surface to summit (cut five feet)	687	1289
173.5	Very broken surface to St. Oloff	735	1337
176	Very broken surface to summit (cut three feet)	750	1352
179	Very broken descent to Pomme de Terre river (grade)	630	1232
179	Pomme de Terre R. (water)	596	1198
179	Pomme de Terre R. (bottom)	592	1194
180	Broken surface to Tumuli station	596	1198
186.5	Broken and irregular descent to Red river crossing (water)	462	1064
186.5	Red river (bottom)	417	1019
	NOTE.—*From mile post 131 to 188 there are frequent fills and cuts.*		
187	Red River Falls station	522	1124
192	Undulating, slow descent to 192's mile post	499	1101
200	Sec. 1, T. 133, R. 45	467	1069
204	Smooth surface to 204's mile post	464	1066
210	Sec. 15, T. 135, R. 45 (smooth surface)	496	1098
212	Smooth surface to 212's mile post	505	1107
216	Smoth surface to 216's mile post	429	1031
220	Smooth surface to Sec. 31, T. 137, R. 45	419	1021
222	Smooth surface to Barnesville (track)	405	1007
222	Willow river (bottom)	390	992
238.5	Smooth surface, slow descent to Glyndon (N. P. R. R. Junction)	323	925
241.5	Smooth surface to Buffalo river (track)	321	923

Line of the St. Vincent branch of the St. Paul & Pacific R. R.—continued.

Miles from St. Paul		Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
241.5	Buffalo river (water)	308	910
241.5	Buffalo river (bottom)	303	905
246	Smooth, level surface to Averill station	317	919
253	Smooth surface to Felton station	315	917
259	Smooth surface to Borup station	311	913
266	Smooth surface to Wild Rice river (track)	309	911
266	Wild Rice river (water)	300	902
266	Wild Rice river (bottom)	295	897
268	Smooth surface to Marsh river (water)	290	892
268.5	Ada station	305	907
280	Smooth surface to Rolette station	293	895
285.5	Smooth surface to Beltrami station	303	905
286	Smooth surface to Sand Hill river	296	898
296	Smooth surface to Kittson station	286	888
302.5	Smooth surface to top of first bluff, Red Lake R.	262	864
302.5	Red Lake river (track on bridge)	266	868
302.5	Red Lake river (water level)	236	838
302.5	Red Lake river (bottom)	224	826
303	Top of bluff on N. side Red Lake river	269	871
	NOTE.—*The valley is just a mile across with single, well defined bluffs.*		
304	Smooth surface, gentle ascent to summit	288	890
310	Smooth surface to 310's mile post	304	906
320	Smooth surface to 320's mile post	286	888
330	Smooth surface to 330's mile post	243	845
333.5	Smooth surface to Snake river (water)	241	843
340	Smooth surface to 340's mile post	251	853
343.5	Smooth surface to Middle river (track)	245	847
343.5	Middle river (water)	234	836
343.5	Middle river (bottom)	231	833
350	Smooth surface to Sec. 8, T. 157, R. 48	239	841
351	Smooth surface to Tamarack R. (track,	231	833
351	Tamarack R. (water)	217	819
351	Tamarack R. (bottom)	215	817
375	Smooth surface to S. branch of Two rivers (track)	216	818
375	S. branch of Two rivers (water)	203	805
375	S. branch of Two rivers (bottom)	194	796
380	Smooth surface to North branch of Two rivers (track)	201	803
380	N. branch of Two rivers (water)	187	789
380	N. branch of Two rivers (bottom)	181	783
392	Smooth surface to 392's mile post	196	798
394	Slow, irregular descent to the immediate bank of Red river (track)	189	791
394	St. Vincent (bank of Red river)	190.5	792.5
394	St. Vincent (bottom of Red river)	142	744
394	St. Vincent (high water of 1866)	185	787
394	St. Vincent (usual water surface)	156	758

On the line of the Southern Minnesota R. R.

FURNISHED BY CHIEF ENGINEER H. W. HOLLEY.

Miles from La Crosse.		Above the Miss. R. at La Crosse.	Above lake Superior.	Above the ocean.
	Grand Crossing Miss. R. opposite La Crosse	12	36	638
30	Rushford	96	120	722
48	Lanesboro	215	239	841
53	Isinour's (Sec. 20, T. 103, R. 10)	273	297	899
59	Fountain	676	700	1302
83	Grand Meadow (Sec. 24, T. 103, R. 15)	712	736	1338
	Sec. 13, T. 103, R. 16	788	812	1414
103	Ramsey (grade Mil. and St. Paul R. R.)	588	612	1214
118	Hayward	622	646	1248
166	Winnebago City	470	494	1096
167	Water in Blue Earth river one mile west of Winnebago City	388	412	1014
	Sec. 25, T. 104, R. 30	490	514	1116
	Sec. 1, T. 103, R. 33	599	623	1225
	Sec. 25, T. 104, R. 36	765	789	1391
212	Water in Des Moines river	662	686	1288
	Heron lake (water)	777	801	1403
	Graham lake (water)	819	843	1445
	Sec. 3, T. 102, R. 22	701	725	1327
	Sec. 33, T. 101, R. 21	636	660	1262
	Sec. 36, T. 101, R. 24	608	632	1234
	Sec. 31, T. 101, R. 24	631	655	1257

IV.

THE SURFACE GEOLOGY.

The amount of time devoted to the phenomena of the drift has necessarily been small. A sufficient number of facts on which to base scientific opinions have not yet been obtained to warrant the announcement of any discoveries; observations have been made however, that confirm theories lately advanced as to the origin of the clays which make up a great portion of the drift of the Northwest. The great mass of clay charged with gravel, and often with boulders, is found to be of glacier origin. This deposit is generally blue, but in the eastern part of the state it is reddish or copper colored. It is made up almost entirely of transported materials, and its red color in the direction of the iron ore beds of the lake Superior region, seems to be due, as some time ago suggested by Col. Charles Whittlesey,* to the greater contained quantity of iron oxide, consequent on the continued action on and the transportation of large portions of those rocks by the forces of the glacial period. This deposit lies on the striated rocky surfaces, or is separated from them by a thin stratum of gravel or sand which usually supplies water. The boulders embraced in this hardpan deposit are very often striated and polished in the same manner as the bedded rocks below. It also embraces, but rarely, lenticular beds of stratified gravel, or sand and gravel mixed without stratification. In some instances it has been seen to inclose nests of boulders and gravel, compactly deposited and detached from other similar deposits. In other cases a spur or lip from the hardpan will rise above the main mass, and, bearing off diagonally to the right or left, will partially enclose on the lower side a few feet of stratified materials of sand and gravel. Indeed along the valley of the Mississippi, and in regions of rough, rocky surfaces its upper portion is very apt to be replaced by stratified deposits of sand and gravel variously

---

***On the fresh water glacial drift of the northwestern states*. By Charles Whittlesey. *Smithsonian contributions to knowledge*, 197.

alternating with each other and with irregular patches of the same.

In these cases the boulders, derived from the original unassorted mass, are apt to lie also in layers or pockets by themselves, their interstices filled with coarse gravel. Throughout much of the central portion of the state, and especially in Carver and McLeod counties, where it has recently been exposed in numerous cuts along the line of the Hastings and Dacotah railroad, this hardpan, or unassorted glacier drift, rises to the surface with no overlying stratified beds. Large boulders of more northern origin are uniformly met in these cuts, even if they be but a few feet below the surface. Sometimes a thickness of more than a hundred feet may be seen presenting no essential variation in outward characters or contents. Its color when freshly exposed at considerable depth is blue, but it has everywhere become oxidized below the surface to the depth of fifteen or twenty feet, and it then assumes a yellowish ash-color. It has been noticed that in Minnesota this deposit varies greatly in thickness. There is an area in the southeastern part of the state where very little of it is found. The rocks stand out prominently in bluffs and terraces caused by their various capacity to withstand the elements, covered with very little besides the decomposed debris of their own beds. Yet in this portion of the state, which seems to be an extension of the so-called "driftless region" of Iowa, the valleys on being excavated for cellars and wells reveal a clay charged with pebbles and sometimes large boulders. This clay is said to contain fragments of wood and leaves half decomposed. Sufficient examination has not yet been made to show the relation of this blue clay in the southeastern portion of the state, containing vegetable deposits, with the vast sheet of blue clay containing, so far as known, no vegetable or other remains, which is spread over a greater portion of the entire state. It seems, however, to be of older date, and may consist of the remains of a previous glacial sheet, which, under the action of the last glacial epoch was subjected to erosion and wash but was not replaced by fresh deposits. In that way the vegetable growths of the surface, accumulating between the periods of the two glacial epochs, would be buried in the depressions to various depths beneath the debris from the hillsides, and considerable beds of peat or even an entire soil would be preserved, while toward the north the movement of the glacier ice entirely destroyed and removed the ancient soils. The thickness of this hardpan at Fargo, D. T., on the line of the Northern Pacific railroad, as revealed by the drilling of a well, was found to be one hundred and fifteen feet. It there lies below a hundred and five feet of variously stratified clay, gravel and sand.

This deposit is spread out in a vast sheet over much of the states of Minnesota, Wisconsin, Iowa, Illinois, Michigan, Indiana and Ohio, and it is locally covered by a fine, stratified clay which has been named by the geologists of Canada "Erie clay," although the two have sometimes been confounded. It has never been known to contain fossils, either of vegetables or animals. As clay it is entirely unstratified, but it may embrace irregular beds of stratified materials, and above may become replaced by assorted gravel and sand, the whole being of the same age. As to its manner of deposition it is believed to be the immediate product of the ice of the glacier, and was gently let down on the surface of the rocks that it so effectually conceals, by the slow thawing and withdrawal of the ice. It must have been largely frozen in the body of the ice in regions far to the north, but by the superficial wasting of the glacier as it advanced into warmer latitudes, it gradually formed a layer covering the surface of the ice in much the same way as it now covers the rock. Such underground ice is known to exist at the present time in several places in northern latitudes. Wherever streams of water gathered, incident to the dissolution of the glacial ice, the materials of the drift were assorted and often handsomely arranged in oblique stratification. This would occur especially along the main valleys, and in crevasses that might result from the passage of the ice over rough, rocky surfaces. Streams running in such crevasses would wear their beds deeper into the ice-sheet and perhaps to the bed-rock itself. All drift materials precipitated into such crevasses by the motions of the ice would be washed and assorted, and the finest portions would be entirely carried away. Upon the entire withdrawal, or dissolution of the ice-sheet a ridge of gravel and sand, containing boulders and suggesting the common name of "hog's back," would mark the place where such a stream, had its bed. When the slope of the country was away from the foot of the glacier, or in the direction of its motion, the streams would be likely to carry away the clayey portions of the drift, leaving only stratified gravel and sand along the valleys of the water courses; but where the slope of the country was toward the ice foot, as in the Maumee valley, in Ohio, and in the valley of the Red river of the North, the fine parts would be laid down over the unstratified drift in horizontal laminations of fine clay and sand. A lake of standing water would be formed about the foot of the ice, with an outlet southward through the lowest drainage valley accessible.* It is authentically reported that at the present time this very circumstance occurs in the Red river valley in seasons of unusual severity. The mouth of the river is completely frozen, or so obstructed by ice, that the whole country for several miles in width is submerged sometimes below forty feet of water. In such cases the discharge must be by the Minnesota valley, Big Stone lake and lake Traverse becoming one. About ten years ago, when these lakes were so united, an effort was made, and nearly with success, to float a steamboat across the continental water-shed from the Minnesota valley into that of the Red river of the North. There are many indications that the Red river region was for a long time covered by a lake of fresh water and had an outlet by way of the Minnesota valley into the Mississippi river.

Overlying this hardpan in much of the southern part of the state, and covering especially those portions of the state where the hardpan exists in small quantities, is a sandy loam which forms a very productive surface soil, and is especially exhibited on the bluffs along the Mississippi river, where it has been named, in states further south, "The Bluff Formation." The distribution of this material over the state is not well known, and its origin remains yet in doubt. Where it reaches its greatest development it is perfectly unstratified. Its characteristics are very uniform, and its aspect and composition are perfectly homogeneous. It has been attributed to the prevalence of a fresh water lake over much of the Northwest. It may perhaps as reasonably be ascribed to the insoluble residue from the rocks *in situ*, and its distribution to the effect of surface drainage. The pulverizing action of the prairie fires on the rocks, or on pebbles contained in the drift may account for the existence of this loam in places where it covers the glacier drift

---

*Compare "On certain physical features of the Upper Mississippi river." By Gen. G. K. Warren, *American Naturalist* for Nov., 1868.

at points remote from streams. It contains, in the valleys, the shells of the fresh-water molluscs, and seems there to be perfectly comparable to ordinary alluvium. The immediate surface of this loam, and of the soil generally, in the central and southern portions of the state, is blackened by the charcoal of innumerable fires that have passed over the surface, and by decomposing vegetable remains.

The drift about St. Anthony and St. Paul shows the following general section:

No. 1.—Bluff	6 to 10 feet.
No. 2.—Assorted materials, often nicely stratified, sometimes replaced by a mass of glacier-marked (!) boulders and cobble stones mingled with gravel. This seems to be due to the removal by water of the clayey portions of the hardpan. It not unfrequently shows very large blocks and masses ot the Trenton flags ("Lower shell limestone," of B. F. Shumard)	10 to 20 feet.
No. 3.—Hardpan, seen	25 feet.

V.

SKETCH OF THE GEOLOGY OF MINNESOTA.

1. GRANITIC AND METAMORPHIC ROCKS.

(a.) *Their area.*

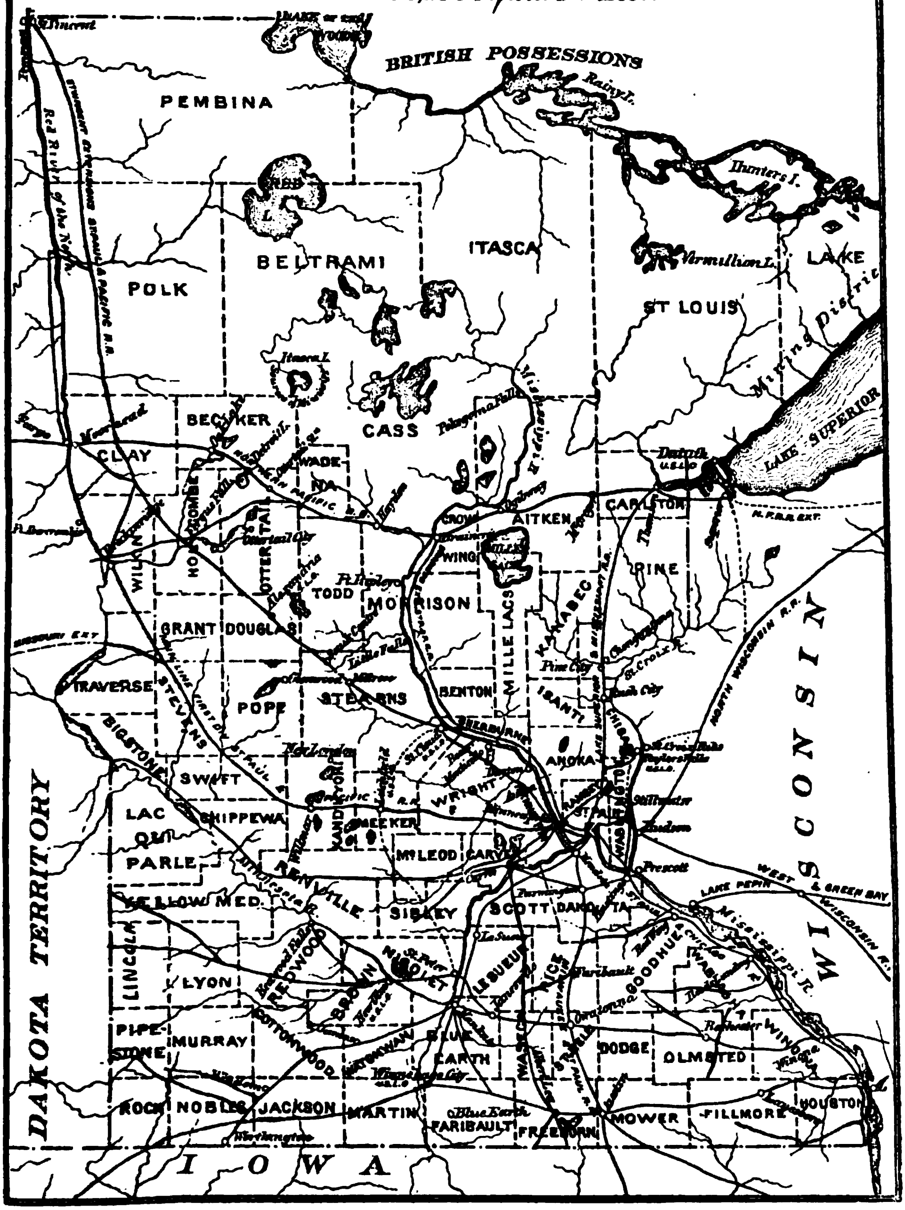
Under this designation are embraced all rocks that lie below the Potsdam sandstone. It covers not only the granitic nucleus which first appeared as dry land, and those trappean rocks that are with little difference of opinion pronounced the result of purely igneous forces, but also the vast thickness of truly metamorphic strata included under the terms *Laurentian* and *Huronian.*

These rocks occupy a great portion of the state of Minnesota, crossing it in a rudely wedged-shaped belt from the northeast to southwest. The southern margin of this belt enters the state from Wisconsin about three miles below the mouth of Kettle river, crosses the Mississippi about three miles below the mouth of Clear Water river in a southwesterly direction. It also crosses the Minnesota river about three miles below Fort Ridgely and probably

MAP OF MINNESOTA.

Showing the Location of the Counties.

Total area 84,286 square miles.



leaves the state near the northern line of Pipestone county. The northern or northwestern boundary of these rocks enters the state from the north about midway between the lake of the Woods and the Red river of the North, in a southerly and then a southeasterly direction, to the vicinity of Pokegama falls, where it changes its course and runs in a southwesterly direction, passing approximately through Cass, Todd, Stevens and Traverse counties to the western boundary of the state. These rocks thus form a great anti clinal axis, or backbone from which the later sedimentary rocks dip in opposite directions to the southeast, and to the west and northwest, their area being something more than one third of the entire state. North of lake Superior they produce a rough, and even mountainous tract of country which is marked by a series of ridges or ranges of upheaval NE. and SW.; but toward the southwest their original uneven surface is so evenly and deeply covered with drift that they are but rarely seen, except in the valleys of the streams, the country assuming the character of a rolling and more or less wooded, or of a level and open prairie.

(b.) *Their general lithological characters.*

These rocks have been included under the general term of *Azoic*, from the absence of organic remains. The geologists of Canada have, however, described within a few years a strangely concretionary or laminated alternation of pyroxene and carbonate of lime, taken from the *Laurentian system*, which on microscopical examination has disclosed an organic structure resembling that of the *foraminifera*, and has been named *Eozoon Canadense* by Dr. J. W. Dawson.* This discovery carries downward the horizon of the beginning of animal life several thousand feet below the base of the *Potsdam sandstone;* and the appropriate term *Eozoic* has been used to describe the earliest of fossiliferous rocks, comprising the *Laurentian* and *Huronian* systems. With this exception no fossil remains have been found below the *Potsdam sandstone.*

The lithological and mineralogical characters of this belt of granitic and metamorphic rocks are very complex and variable. The original upheaved nucleus was granitic, or syenitic and granitic, and this character prevails in the oldest and highest knobs and hills, around which the highly metamorphosed slates and gneisses are arranged in upturned and even vertical beds. Intercalated with these disturbed beds are numerous injected beds and dykes of volcanic trap, the igneous origin of which cannot be doubted. The metamorphism consists in a decomposition and recrystallization, through the combined action of heat and chemical affinity, of the first sedimentary strata, producing from sandstones, limestones and shales, talcose argillaceous slates, gneiss, quartz and saccharoidal marble, and in some instances immense masses of specular and magnetic oxide of iron. The close of this disturbance involved the overlying *Potsdam sandstone*, or at least the "red sandstones" of the Northwest, but in Minnesota it antedates, so far as known, the sandstones of the St. Croix valley and the *Lower Magnesian limestone*. It seems to have continued to the close of the deposition of the "red sandstone," and to have terminated prior to the deposition of the Lingula beds, which lie without disturbance, as far as known, on the ejected traps, and between the red sandstone and the light-colored quartzose sandstone which characterizes the upper Mississippi valley. This disturbance was the cause of fissures and dislocations in the rocky crust, which by slow degrees became filled with the various materials composing the metalliferous veins.

---

*In this fossil the pyroxene is sometimes replaced by serpentine, or loganite, (or by pyralolite?) and the calcite by dolomite.

In 1849 Col. Charles Whittlesey classified these rocks in northern Wisconsin, in the following desecending order: (*Owen's geol. sur. of Wis., Iowa and Minn., p. 425.*)

1. SEDIMENTARY.
    a. Red sandstone (*not belonging to the metamorphic series.*)
    b. Black slate.
    c. Conglomerate.
2. TRAPPOUS ROCKS, OR THOSE OF VOLCANIC ORIGIN.
    a. Black and red amygdaloid, and greenstone trap.
    b. Augitic, hornblendic and feldspathic rocks, embracing syenites and granites of the same age.
3. METAMORPHOSED ROCKS.
    a. Hornblendic slates.
    b. Iron slates.
    c. Black slates, in large, thin, rectangular sheets.
    d. Talcose slates.
    e. Slaty quartz.
4. GRANITIC.
    a. Syenite.
    b. Granite occupying the country south of the mountain range or uplift, and are the oldest rocks seen.

Messrs. Foster and Whitney, in a report on the lake Superior land district in 1851, give them the following arrangement in descending order:

AZOIC SYSTEM.
    Beds of quartz and saccharoidal marble.
    Chlorite, talcose and argillaceous slate.
    Gneiss, mica and hornblende slate.
IGNEOUS ROCKS, OF VARIOUS AGES..
    Trappean or volcanic rocks.
        Masses of specular and magnetic oxide of iron.
        Hornblende and serpentine rocks.
        Basalt, amygdaloid.
        Greenstone, or doleryte, porphyry.
    Plutonic rocks.
        Feldspar and quartz rock.
        Syenite.
        Granite.

The *Potsdam sandstone*, or that portion which is equivalent to the red sandstone, overlies all the forgoing, and although very much broken by intrusions and overflows of trap, and often reduced to the form of a conglomerate, or a volcanic tufa, is not regarded by Foster and Whitney as belonging to the series of metamorphic rocks.

(c.) *Their economical value.*

In the state of Minnesota these rocks are known to contain variable quantities of gold, silver, copper and iron. As yet no extensive exploitation of these metals has been made. Veins of gold and silver bearing quartz are known to occur in the vicinity of Vermilion lake, and at other places on the north shore of lake Superior. Recently gold has also been reported from the vicinity of Red lake. Veins carrying native copper, as well as the sulphuret and carbonate, also occur on the Kettle river, and at Taylor's Falls on the St. Croix river. Iron ore in unlimited quantities is said to exist in the dividing ridge between lake Superior and Vermilion lake. Other materials of economic importance also pertain to these rocks. The gray "granite" quarried at St. Cloud contains both mica and hornblende (or pyroxene); the quartz is slightly amethystine, or smoky, and makes up about one half the bulk of the whole, while unmistakable feldspar is almost entirely wanting. It has also a very few minute crystals of pyrites. It is being considerably introduced into some of the largest structures both in St. Paul and Minneapolis, and in various cities of the Mississippi valley. Its composition renders it a very durable building material, even more enduring than typical syenite or granite. Roofing slate is also one of the economical products of the metamorphic rocks, known to exist in Minnesota. There is no doubt but unlimited quantities of this material will yet be found within the state. The efforts that have hitherto been made to manufacture this article and introduce it into the markets of the Northwest, in the vicinity of Thomson, have not been very successful. It is believed, however, that the fault lies not in the material itself, but in the manner it has been handled. For fire-stone the talcose slates, associated with the Huronian series in the eastern extension of these rocks in Michigan and Canada, are very well adapted. These rocks also ought to supply steatite, or soapstone, and no doubt hold considerable beds of variegated and saccharoidal marble. It will be a prominent object, in the progress of the survey, to bring these various economical resources into careful observation and investigation. At the present time little is known beyond the foregoing statement of facts, although private parties have made more or less detailed surface exploration.

2. THE POTSDAM SANDSTONE.

(a.) *Preliminary considerations.*

This term is strictly applicable only to the sandstones of New York state, to which the name was first given, and to the equivalents of those strata in their extension through the west. It has been abundantly proved that the red sandstones of lake Superior, however disturbed and changed locally, or however much increased in thickness by the agency of volcanic outbursts, are the exact equivalents of the New York *Potsdam*. They occupy the first position over the metamorphic slates of the *Huronian* rocks on which they lie unconformably, and from which they differ in being but slightly and only locally metamorphosed. They retain usually their evidently sedimentary characters, and have not well preserved fossil remains. By the Canadian geologists the term *Potsdam* is made to cover a group of arenaceous strata, the lower portion only of which is the real equivalent of the New York Potsdam.*. In Michigan the name is given only to the red sandstones, the overlying light colored sandstones being regarded as a part of the *Calciferous sandrock.*** Dr. Houghton as early as 1841 distinctly stated in his annual report to the Michigan Legislature, that the "upper gray sandstone" is not conformable with the "lower or red sandstone and shales." (See his report for 1841, p. 19.) In Wisconsin the same sandstone occupies a wide circular belt surrounding a granite center. The overlying light-colored sandstones are found there to lie unconformably on the red sandstones where they have been tilted by volcanic agency.[†] Dr. C. A. White, of the geological survey of Iowa, has described a red sandstone or quartzyte, occurring in outcrop on the Big Sioux river and in southwestern Minnesota, and given it the special name of *Sioux quartzyte*, proving conclusively that it is both older, and unconformable with the light-colored sandstones that occupy a conspicuous place in the bluffs of the upper Mississippi, below the *Lower Magnesian limestone*.[††] At New Ulm, and and at other points in southwestern Minnesota, the same quartzyte forms some of its characteristic outcrops. It rises suddenly above the superincumbent drift, exposing at New Ulm about 350 feet, with a dip of thirty-six degrees to the north. Its features here are easily identifiable with those of the *Potsdam* at the rapids in the St. Mary's river, at Sault Ste. Marie, Mich. In their passage to the west the overlying light-colored sandstones seem to become more largely developed. They acquire a thickness, including the intercalated beds of shale, of about six hundred feet, in their exposures along the Mississippi river.

---

* See *Geology of Canada*, 1863. p. 87.

** See *Biennial report of progress*, 1860, p. 49.

On the other hand Dr. D. D. Owen, finding these upper sandstones abutting undisturbed against the trap outbursts at the falls of the St. Croix, supposed at once that he reached there the true paleozoic base.[‡] Fossils gathered there, and at other points on the upper Mississppi, in these and associated beds, were described as coming from the *Potsdam sandstone*, and were supposed to belong to a horizon much lower than that of the *Lingula beds* of the *Potsdam* of New York. The name has been still further removed from its original use by the Iowa geologists, *in its application only to these upper beds*, and in giving the name *Sioux quartzyte* to the western representative of the original *Potsdam*. Dr. Owen, although he recognized many points of difference between the lake Superior and New York *Potsdam*, and these light-colored sandstones of the St. Croix and upper Mississippi, seems not to have noted the important fact that the former are everywhere subject to distortions and fractures by volcanic forces, while the latter are never known to be disturbed by such causes. It is true that he embraces both the red and the light-colored sandstones in the designation of "Potsdam," and argues at length to prove the greater age of the red.*

[†] R. D. Irving, on the Age of the Quartzytes, &c., of Sauk county, Wis., *Am Jour.*, Feb., 1872.

[††] *Geology of Iowa*, 1870. Vol. I., p. 167.

[‡] *Geological report on Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota*, p. 50.

It is in accord with geological precedent, therefore, to separate these two sandstone formations under different names, retaining the name of *Potsdam* for the older, and giving provisionally the name of the St. Croix river, on which they are best exposed, to the latter:

The following reasons may be assigned:

1st. The *Potsdam* beds were laid down before the close of the volcanic disturbance so evident in the rocks of the early Silurian and pre-Silurian ages; the *St. Croix* beds were deposited and still lie in horizontal layers, unconformably not only over the *Laurentian* and latest trappean rocks of the Northwest, but also on the upturned beds of the *Potsdam.*

2nd. The observations of the New York and Canadian geologists place the earliest *Lingula* beds near the top of the *Potsdam sandstone;* this separation of the *St. Croix* beds does not invalidate their conclusions, but fixes the *observed* paleozoic base in the Northwest at some point higher than that of the *Potsdam.* The wonderful abundance of fossil Lingulas and other forms in the shale abutting against the trap at the falls of the St. Croix would furnish presumptive evidence of their existence prior to that outburst. They simply have not been seen.

3d. The lithological characters of the *Potsdam* beds are uniformly different from those of the *St. Croix* beds. The former are hard and often vitreous, usually of a brick-red color. Their bedding is very distinct, and often separated into slaty layers by partings of red shale. They are strongly marked by the so called fucoidal impressions. They are frequently ripple-marked and sun-cracked. The latter are white or buff-colored, often friable, and constitute a heavy bedded or massive sandstone, of handsomely rounded quartzose grains.

4th. They differ in chemical composition. The *Potsdam* beds contain "a considerable percentage of alumina, ranging sometimes as high as twenty per cent., while of silica there is often less than fifty per cent. Their peculiar red color is due to the presence of a large proportion of peroxide of iron, with a much smaller proportion of protoxide" (Owen).

**Geological survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, p. 187.*

The *St. Croix* beds "commonly contain ninety-two per cent. and upward, of silica, while of alumina and oxide of iron taken together they have seldom more than three per cent" (Owen).

5th. They are separated by a fifty-foot bed of *Lingula shale* which lies at the bottom of the *St. Croix* beds.

6th. The *Potsdam sandstone* has a thickness of at least four hundred feet;* the *St. Croix sandstone* also has a thickness of over five hundred feet. It is more in keeping with the canons of geological nomenclature to give separate titles to formations so well defined and so largely developed.

7th. The evidence of paleontological difference is perhaps the strongest reason for separating these sandstones. The fossils of the *Potsdam sandstone* in New York are *Lingula antiqua* (Con.) and *Lingula prima* (Con.), a *Discina* (or *Orbicula*), and uncertain impressions supposed to be of a *Pleurotomaria* and of crinoidal remains. A species of *Theca* has also been described from Keeseville. According to Prof. James Hall but three species are known from the Potsdam of New York. (Foster & Whitney's *report on lake Superior*, Part II. p. 230). The fossils of the *St. Croix sandstone* are, according to Dr. Owen, (*Rep. on the geological survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota*, p. 624) the following:

Dikelocephalus Minnesotensis, (On.)	For. 1. d.	5th trilobite bed,	90 to 100 feet below	F. 2.
" *Pepinensis*, (On.)	" "	" "	"	"
" *Miniscaensis*, (On.)	" "	3rd "	200 to 220 feet	"
" *Iowensis*, (On.)	For. 1. b.	1st trilobite bed	more than 500 feet	"
" *granulosus*, (On.)	For. 1, d.	3rd "	" 200 feet	"
Lonchocephalus Chippewaensis, (On.)	"	3rd or 4th "	" ?	"
" *hamulus*, (On.)	For. 1. d.	3rd "	200 to 220 feet	"
Crepicephalus Minnesotrnsis (On.)	" "	"	"	"
" *Wisconsensis* (On.)	" "	"	"	"
Monocephalus Minnesotensis, (On.)	" "	"	"	"
Euomphalus (*species undet.*)	For. 1 f.	6th "	50 feet	"
Lingula pinnaformis, (On.)	" b.	*Lingula shales*,	600 feet	"
Lingula prima, (Con.) ?	" ?	"	"	"
Lingula ampla, (On.)	" c.	"	"	"
Lingula antiqua, (Con.)	" ?	"	"	"
Orbicula prima, (On.)	" c.	"	"	"
Obolus Apollinis,	" d.	?	?	?
Orthis (species ?),	" d.	?	?	?
Crinoidal remains,	" d.	?	?	?

To these Mr. Hall adds from Wisconsin.†

Lingula polita, (H.)
" *Aurora*. (H.)
Theca primordialis, (H.)
Serpulites Murchisoni.
Graptolithus Hallianus, (Prout.)
Conocephalites, (two species.)
Arionellus.
Agnostus.
Platyceras.
Orthis Barabuensis, (H.)
Orthis, (species?)

---

*Dr. Owen makes the thickness of the Potsdam (red sandstones of lake Superior) over five thousand feet. See Owen's *Report on Wis., Iowa and Minnesota*, p. 193.

†*Geology of Wisconsin* vol. I., p. 20.

The "Menominee trilobite bed," of Foster and Whitney is placed by Owen in the *St. Croix sandstone.* Of all the above species the real *Potsdam sandstone* has afforded in New York but three species and those of genera that range not only through the Lower Silurian, but have maintained an existence to the present time.

8th. Messrs. Foster and Whitney, recognizing the paleontological difference between the *Potsdam sandstone* of New York and the *St. Croix sandstone* of the Northwest, yet laboring to prove their horizontality, suggest that the striking fossils of the latter may yet be found in the *Potsdam* of New York,† having been hitherto overlooked. It would seem more likely that the few fossils of the eastern *Potsdam* have escaped the eye of western geologists in examining rocks of that horizon, than that the singular forms of animals found in the *St. Croix sandstone* of the west have escaped the eye of eastern geologists. The following table of the number of species found in the state of New York, and the lake Superior district is of interest in this connection. It was prepared by Prof. James Hall, and is published in Foster and Whitney's *Report on the lake Superior land district.* Part II, p. 230.

	Lake Superior district.	New York.	
Potsdam sandstone........	3	3	
Calciferous sandstone......	4	13	
Chazy limestone	10	45	
Birds Eye, Black River and Trenton...	64	220	And thirty species common to the Trenton and other groups.
Hudson River group........	31	54	Besides thirty other species common to this and the preceding groups.
Clinton group............. Niagara group............	26	298	
Upper Helderberg.........	16	?	

Inspecting this table we see the number of fossils found in the *Potsdam* in the west, including also those enumerated by Mr. Hall from the *St. Croix sandstone*, is equal to those from the *Potsdam sandstone* of New York. From the *Calciferous* the proportion of fossils found in New York is 225 per cent. in favor of eastern geologists. From the *Chazy limestone* the proportion is 350 per cent. in favor of eastern geologists. From the *Birds Eye*, *Black River* and *Trenton* limestones the proportion is 244 per cent. in favor of eastern geologists. From the *Hudson River group* the proportion is 74 per cent. in favor of eastern geologists. From the *Clinton* and *Niagara groups* the proportion is 1050 per cent. in favor of eastern geologists. From the *Upper Helderberg* the proportion is not known, but probably would exceed the per cent. of any of the other formations, in favor of the eastern geologists. This only shows the greater scrutiny with which the formations have been observed in New York than in the lake Superior district, and inferentially that the fossils of the *St. Croix sandstone* have not been overlooked in New York. It seems more reasonable to suppose the *St. Croix sandstone* is only another illustration of the intercalation of arenaceous sediment in the Lower Silurian of the Northwest, creating really a new member of that series of rocks and introducing its own fossils, and that the paleozoic base of the *Potsdam* in New York has not yet been observed in the Northwest.

---

† Foster and Whitney's *Report on the lake Superior land district.* Part II, p. 134.

Notwithstanding these considerations it has not been thought best to attempt the delineation of the areas of these sandstones separately on the preliminary geological map accompanying this report. They are there colored as one formation, under the double designation of *The St. Croix and Potsdam sandstones.*

According to Dr. Owen the following table shows the most persistent elements of stratification of these great sandstone formations. [See *Geol. rep. on Wis., Iowa and Minn.*, p. 52].

f.	Sixth trilobite bed.	Quartzose, light-colored sandstones of various degrees of induration, with intercalations of beds of magnesian limestone, with glistening, crystalline facets and calcareo-siliceous oolite produced by rounded grains of quartz encased in calcareous cement, containing *Euomphalus* and imperfect trilobites. Locally with a band of green earth	ft. 50 to 85
		Mammillary and botryoidal layer of white sandstone; sometimes banded with yellow..	5 to 6 inches.
e		Thick beds of soft, yellowish and brown sandstone, sometimes with botryoidal, hard, projectig concretions; passing downward into fine-grained, soft sandstones approaching tripoli..................................	ft. 40 to 50

			FT.
	Fifth trilobite bed.	Ash-colored and yellowish argillo-calcareous and magnesio-calcareous beds, containing *Dickelocephalus Minnesotensis*, Stillwater trilobite bed	8 to 10
		Green, red and yellowish sandstones with thin, schistose, dolomitic intercalations	40
		Upper, brown dolomitic layers, containing *Orthis*, *Lingula*, and columns of *Crinoidea*, as at La Grange mountain	4
d.	Fourth trilobite bed.	Alternations of yellow, laminated sandstones with green particles disseminated	5
		Marine Mill trilobite grit	5
		Fucoidal layers, and thin-bedded green and yellow sandstones: at their base often a band of about six inches of green earth used by the Indians as a pigment	30 to 40
		Green and red sandstones charged with silicate of iron	5
		Loose green sand, and soft green sandstone	15
	Third trilobite bed.	Micaceous sandstone containing *Dikelocephalus Miniscaensis*, *D. granulosus*, &c.	3
		Alternations of green and ferruginous sandstones	20
		Micaceous sandstones containing *Dikelocephalus Miniscaensis*, &c.	2
		Thin layers of green sand alternating with green earth, impregnated with silicate of iron	30 to 40
		Lower, brown siliceo-calcareous and dolomitic bands of Mountain island and elsewhere	4
		Soft, thin-bedded sandstones with scales of mica disseminated	10 to 15
c		Coarse Lingula grit, green, yellow, sometimes almost white	100 to 130
	Second trilobite bed.	Fine grit, place of the Menominee trilobite grit (?), white and yellow sandstones and *Obolus* layers of Black river	15
b.	First trilobite bed.	Ferruginous trilobite grits, schistose sandstone containing fork-tailed trilobite beds and *Obolus* layers	1 to 8
		Magnesio-calcareous rock with *Obolus* and fork-tailed trilobites	3
		Highly fossiliferous, schistose, siliceo-calcareous layers interlaminated with argillaceous, marly beds, charged with sulphate of iron; the former full of *Lingulæ* and *Orbiculæ*. Falls of the St. Croix	50
a.		Sandstones with oblique lines of deposition, alternating with pebbly sandstones and coarse grits of the Chippewa, Black and Wisconsin rivers, near the falls	50 to 100
		Place of the lake Superior ferruginous and argillaceous sandstones, shales and conglomerates	5000

(b.) *Area of the St. Croix and Potsdam sandstones.*

The area here described embraces that of the light-colored quartzose beds of the St. Croix and upper Mississippi valleys, and of the ferruginous and often metamorphosed red sandstones which lie below them. It can only be defined approximately. It is separated by the area of the granitic and metamorphic rocks into two belts, one lying along the southeast side of that area and the other along the northwest side. The former has a width on the St. Croix river extending from about four miles below the mouth of Kettle river to a point about six miles below Franconia. It runs diagonally across the state toward the southwest, including the counties of Chisago, the southern part of Pine, Isanti, the northern half of Anoka, the most of Sherburne, Wright, the western half of Carver, the eastern half of McLeod, the central portion of Sibley, the most of Nicollet, the northwest corner of Blue Earth, the greater portions of Brown and Watonwan, Cottonwood, Murray, Pipestone and Rock, with the northern portions of Jackson and Nobles. The northwestern area of these sandstones is supposed to include the counties of Traverse, Grant, Otter Tail, the northern halves of Douglas and Todd, Wadena, the most of Cass, and the central portions of Beltrami and Pembina. There are likewise isolated outliers of these sandstones even within the area of the granitic and metamorphic rocks, and a small area also in the eastern part of the state, in Carlton and St. Louis counties, near the western extremity of lake Superior.

(c.) *Lithological characters of the St. Croix and Potsdam sandstones.*

The general lithological characters, and the differences between the *St. Croix* and the *Potsdam* sandstones have been sufficiently set forth under the head of *Preliminary considerations.* It only remains to add special sections observed.

The lowest rock observed within the state, lying above the slates of the metamorphic series, is believed to be the red quartzyte seen at Redstone, near New Ulm. Such stone is said also to occur on the upper tributaries of the Cottonwood, viz: on Dutch Charley's creek, T. 108, R. 37; also on a branch of the Watonwan creek, T. 107, R. 34. At the former place it is now quarried, and is about to be at the latter. These places, however, have not been visited, though the characters of this quartzyte are so striking that the most unskilled observer could not fail to identify the stone. At

Redstone the beds are tilted at an angle of 35 to 40 degrees toward the north, showing their jagged edges which stick out along the north bank of the river. The exposed rock rises, a short distance north from the river banks, to a hight of 150 to 250 feet above the lowest exposed beds. In these bald, lichen-covered knobs the dip is maintained to the north at the same angle, making as much as 350 feet of stratification exposed. The surface of these knobs, and in general the surface exposure of the whole, is much more indurated and quartzitic than those lower beds that have been opened by quarrying and by the cutting for the railroad grade. It appears as if the greatest metamorphism had taken place over the surface, the lowest strata seen being more perfectly bedded and thinner, as well as argillaceous and wave-marked. The whole is of a reddish color, varying from brick-red in the lower beds, to a dark-red or purplish hue, in the highly metamorphosed portions. It sometimes shows a finely pebbly structure, and some small spots of a softer texture, which on fracture have some appearance of a greenish impure chert, or of a serpentinous or epidotic composition. These greenish spots are closely impacted in, or chemically united with the mass, as if derived from it. Other parts are more plainly a sandstone, much less glassy on fracture, showing all the characters of the *Potsdam sandstone*, as recognized in the lake Superior district. The following characters indicate the *Potsdam* age of this outcrop of red quartzyte.

1. Its red color, spotted with lighter color, even to cream color.
2. Ripple marks and mud cracks.
3. Worm-marks and fucoids.
4. Thin laminæ of shale separating the beds.
5. The very observable and regular bedding.
6. The impossibility of setting any limit between the evidently sandy and sedimentary portions and the quartzitic and metamorphosed portions. They pass one into the other in the distance of twenty feet.
7. The highly inclined position of the strata.
8. Its *arenaceous* character, taken as a whole, in distinction from the talcose and slaty, or the hornblendic and the micaceous nature of the *Huronian*.

A singular phenomenon was observed on these knobs, indicating the recent activity of volcanic forces. About sixty rods north from the railroad cut the superficial heavy quartzitic beds are tossed up on their edges in opposite directions, over a space of a couple of square rods, some blocks of ten feet long and four or five feet thick, standing exactly on their edges near the point of outburst. These pieces are all lichenous and weathered, indicative of the great age of their exposure in that condition. The whole place looks very much as the tilted beds in a quarry immediately after the discharge of a blast of gunpowder. In the center of the place where the beds are most disturbed and broken fissures and openings in the deeper seated strata may be seen, while one large opening descends down nearly perpendicularly into the rock. The positions of these loose pieces which are undeniably torn from the beds near where they lie, indicate the operation of some powerful subterranean force since that part of the state was subjected to the levelling process of glacier ice.

The *Lingula shale*, at the falls of the St. Croix river, is believed to hold a place stratigraphically above the sandstone at New Ulm, although at that place a trap outburst entirely screens the actual superposition from observation. These shale beds there abut conspicuously and almost horizontally against the trap rock which rises on nearly all sides to the hight of two or three hundred feet. At the village of St. Croix Falls a little creek enters the river at the foot of Georgia street. Just as it joins the river it passes over six or eight feet of green shale filled with *Lingulæ* and *Orbiculæ*, of which there seem to be several species. The shale is extremely rusty with iron in all crevices and partition planes, owing probably to the oxidation, by the running water, of the fine crystals of pyrites, with which much of the shale is crowded. After an obscured interval of several feet, believed to be occupied by this shale, at a point further up the creek, the water passes over about ten inches of coarse, rusty sandstone. Still further up this creek probably similar shale underlies the immediate surface. Yet the hills of trap rock rise suddenly within a quarter of a mile of the river, to the hight of over 150 feet. Further up the river, other creeks, entering from the east, expose the same shale along their sides, or in their beds. At one point the immediate bank of the St. Croix river shows, at the village of St. Croix Falls, a thickness of 49 ft. 8 in. of horizontal bedding, measured by Locke's level. The dry, weathered surface of this bluff has an ashen color, yet exudes a substance which on becoming dry is yellow and has much the taste of alum. There are also interlaminated thin layers of arenaceous shale or sandstone, more enduring. These, lying in fragments at the foot of the bluff, show surfaces that are almost completely covered with the broken or entire valves of fossil *Lingulæ* and *Orbiculæ*. These fossils pervade the whole thickness of this shale, so far as here seen, and they seem to have gathered in unwonted abundance in the isolated depressions or basins of the original traprock surface. Occasional rude septaria of impure blue limestone also contain, but in less quantities, the same fossil bivalves.

Section at Winona, in Winona county.

In ascending order the next section observed is that of the bluffs at Winona. It includes also a part of the *Lower Magnesian limestone*. It shows the following stratification in descending order:

No. 1.—Slope from the summit to the brink of Observatory bluff (character of rock unknown)		20 ft.
No. 2.—Arenaceous breccia, or conglomerate, belonging to the *Lower Magnesian limestone*, with considerable calcareous matter, especially in the form of patches of calc-spar and some very hard, gray limestone, which is often variegated in colors of red, greenish and pink. It contains also chert and colored flint; but the flint seems to be united with the matrix as if produced by chemical secretion like the calcite. This rock forms the bold buttresses which in many places round out the summits of the bluffs and form their prominent angles, as at Castle Rock, on the Wisconsin side, and on Observatory bluff opposite the normal school. At the railroad cuts, above Stockton, it stands out in isolated pinnacles and towers. It has the outward aspect of a rough, cavernous and concretionary breccia		35 ft.
No. 3—Heavy, regular beds of *Lower Magnesian limestone*. These layers are of a cream color, hard and enduring, and somewhat vesicular, but very extensively wrought for building, Of these beds 99 ft. 4½ in. are seen in the singular outlier known as *sugar loaf*		145 ft. 6 in.
No. 4.—Interlaminations of limestone with sandstone, belonging to the *St. Croix sandstone*. The details of the stratification here are as follows, in descending order:		
(a.)—Homogeneous, incoherent, white sandstone, very similar to the *St. Peter sandstone*	2 ft,	
(b.)—Hard sandstone, with considerable calcareous matter, having much the aspect of the overlying limestone with masses of common calc-spar	8 ft.	
(c.)—Friable sandstone, white	2 ft.	
(d.)—Same as (b)	5 ft.	
(e.)—Loose, sandy shale, with fragments of light green shale in scales	1 ft. 6 in,	
(f.)—Same as (b)	3 ft.	
(g.)—Same as (a)	1 ft.	

(h.)—Same as (b), almost a pure and crystalline dolomite	6 ft.	
(i.)—Same as (a), very coarse grains of rounded sand, consisting of purely white quartz, with lenticular beds and masses of limestone	10 ft.	
(j.)—Same as (i), but more calcareous and projecting	20 ft.	
(k.)—Sandstone; massive, with little or no calcareous matter	12 ft.	
(l.)—Calcareous layers, and thin sand layers alternating as above, the greater portion being sand, aggregating about	55 ft.	
These alternations make up (e) and (f) of Owen's general section (see p. 73)		125 ft.
No. 5.—Massive mural sandstone, passing below a talus, seen		20 ft.
No. 6.—Interval, unobserved, hid by talus (covering (d) of Dr. Owen's general section)		226 ft. 3¼ in
No. 7.—Hard, massive, ferruginous sandstone, containing *Lingula* ((c) of Dr. Owen's general section?) This is seen near the base of the escarpment, nearly a mile above Observatory bluff, seen		8 ft.
No. 8.—Sloping talus, to the level of Winona lake		15 ft.
Total hight of bluffs		594 ft. 9½ in.

Although other sections covering more or less of the *Potsdam* and *St. Croix* sandstones have been taken at different places, yet nothing has been observed throwing additional light on the relations of these two formations, and they are withheld till the proper time for reports on detailed work by counties.

(d.) *Fossils of the St. Croix and Potsdam sandstones.*

It has already been stated that the only fossils found in these sandstones pertain to the upper or St. Croix, and that in the lower which is more probably the real equivalent of the *Potsdam sandstone* of New York, no well defined fossil remains have yet been discovered in the state of Minnesota. The obscure fucoids and worm-marks have indeed been seen; but their real origin may be regarded as yet undetermined. For a list of fossils found in the the St. Croix beds, in the state of Minnesota, and enumerated by Dr. Owen, the reader may consult a former page entitled "preliminary considerations."

(e.) *Economical value of the St. Croix and Potsdam sandstones.*

The *Potsdam sandstone*, in the vicinity of lake Superior where invaded by the disturbance of trap outbursts, is known as the most highly cupriferous rock in the United States. This is not because the rock itself in all places is liable to contain copper, but is owing to the agency of igneous and perhaps to other metamorphic forces. It is also confined to the lower portion of the formation, and is accompanied with the various forms of volcanic rock and conglomerate. What amount of copper it may carry in the northern part of the state of Minnesota is entirely unknown. As it occupies a considerable area where the beds are known to have been highly tilted from a horizontal position, it is not unreasonable to suppose that copper in considerable quantities may yet be found. The Potsdam has also very often supplied a stone for building purposes of a very superior quality. The lake Superior "brown sandstone" is from rocks of this age. It is believed that the use of sandstone in important structures is to become much more prevalent than formerly, and any available outcrop of this rock ought to be fully proved for stone of this kind. The nearest and most accessible exposure of this kind for the markets of central and southern Minnesota is that at Redstone, near New Ulm. As it is reached directly by railroad, it is safe to say the time is not far distant when the markets of the state will be able to furnish stone from this vicinity of a quality equal to any found in the Northwest. It will also supply a vast extent of country in northern Iowa which is largely destitute of stone suitable for purposes of construction.

Some portions of the *St. Croix sandstone* have been quarried for building purposes, and at Taylor's Falls it has been used in one or two business blocks. It is of rather coarse grain and friable on first quarrying, but the weather operates to harden it in a few months. It is of a lighter, pleasanter color than the *Potsdam*. Except for the manufacture of glass, for which much of the light sandstones of the St. Croix beds is suitable, and favorably exposed along the Mississippi river,* it is not known that there is any other important use to which these formations may be put. Some of the clays, especially those stained with iron, may be made useful for pigments, and the bed of red *catlinite*, used formerly by the Indians in Pipestone county, takes a polish which will render it valuable for small ornaments.

---

*At Red Wing Mr. Pascal Smith so utilizes this formation, shipping it by barges down the Mississippi to points in Illinois.

3. THE LOWER MAGNESIAN LIMESTONE.

(a.) *Its area.*

Beginning at the southeastern corner of the state where this limestone forms the summits of the bluffs of the Mississippi and supports the high table-land that extends westward from the river, this formation occupies a belt of irregular width along the west side of that river to a point a little above Hastings, where its western limit crosses the Mississippi. The eastern edge of this belt runs along the east side of the Mississippi, including considerable of the state of Wisconsin. Hence it underlies the most of Houston county, the northeastern part of Fillmore, the eastern half of Winona, nearly the whole of Wabasha, and the eastern portions of Goodhue and Dakota. North of the Mississippi this belt curves more to the west, bringing its eastern margin across the St. Croix river a few miles below Franconia. Passing westward this limestone underlies the northern and eastern portions of Washington county, the central portions of Anoka, Hennepin and Carver, the most of Scott and Le Sueur, the eastern portions of Sibley and Nicollet, the central portions of Blue Earth and Martin and the southern portions of Jackson and Nobles. In the northwestern part of the state an area is supposed also to be underlain immediately by this limestone, but its limits are entirely conjectural, so far as they are expressed on the accompanying preliminary map. The same is true in respect to the boundaries of this limestone in the southwestern part of the state.

(b.) *Its general lithological characters.*

The eastern name of this limestone is *Calciferous sandrock*, so named from the intimate mixture of dolomitic and arenaceous ingredients. In Minnesota, however, a large proportion of this member of the Lower Silurian is a truly magnesian limestone, and almost free from sand. In some places heavy and continuous layers of white sand are found between equally heavy and persistent layers of limestone; while throughout the whole thickness of the formation the uniformity of the bedding is liable to interruption by the inexplicable occurrence of isolated masses of breccia, or cavernous conglomerate, in which the arenaceous and calcareous qualities are intimately and confusedly mixed. The lower beds are often abundantly interstratified with and broken by more or less continuous bands of chert. Distinctly oolitic characters also sometimes prevail. Its color is light, varying from a cream-color or light-buff, to a pinkish salmon. While much, even of the most evenly bedded portions of this limestone, is somewhat vesicular or shows spar-lined cavities, its general firmness is very great, and it forms the prominent angles to the summits of the bluffs on either side of the Mississippi below the confluence of the St. Croix. These even and heavy layers are those usually quarried for building-stone, while the less regular and concretionary parts are better adapted to lime-making, both from the greater ease with which the beds may be removed and their comparative freedom from sandy and clayey impurities.

The following sections have been taken from exposures of this limestone, in addition to that given in connection with the underlying sandstone, at Winona (p. 78), and will further elucidate the lithological characters of the formation.

Section at Quincy, in Olmsted county.

Taken near the dam, in descending order.

No. 1.—*Lower Magnesian limestone;* quite arenaceous, falling out in huge masses which are rough, distorted in their crude bedding, and unmanageable as a quarry-stone, showing much calc-spar. Limestone and sandstone are mingled with occasional strips of a light-green shale. In general the face presents the appearance of an alternation of horizontal layers of thin and more shaly beds, with heavy, coarse and rough limestone beds. Some green shale layers alternate with dark umber-colored (ochreous) shale, neither being more than two inches thick. They are tortuous and not continuous. This phase appears like the tops of the bluffs at Winona, but is probably at a considerably higher horizon	30 ft.
No. 2.—Persistent, white sandstone or granular quartzite, seen	10 ft.
Total exposure	40 ft.

Section at Shakopee, in Scott county.

The quarries at Shakopee for lime-burning expose about twenty-five feet of stratification, though the bedding is much confused and almost obliterated by chemical and other metamorphic agencies. The stone is very rough and very often a true breccia. It is somewhat arenaceous, and also argillaceous. Some small, shapeless cavities are filled with a greenish shale, which, if indurated, would be like some flinty spots often seen in the same formation, as at Winona. Some of this shale is so hard as to have conchoidal fracture, and some is so soft as to be like wax or putty in the fingers. It varies through different shades of green and blue. It seems to be intimately blended in texture with, and insensibly passes into, the compact limestone of the most fine-grained portions of the quarry. It is not a common ingredient. Some other cavities are lined with incrustations of mammillated and drusy quartz. Exposed about...................... 25 ft.

Section at Mankato, in Blue Earth county.

(Quarry of Maxfield and Sons: in descending order: gentle dip N. E.)

No. 1.—Porous magnesian limestone, not used	4 to 6 ft.
No. 2.—Coarse, friable sandstone	2 to 4 ft.
No. 3.—Magnesian limestone, burned for lime	2 ft.
No. 4.—Calciferous sandstone, in heavy beds, of various grain and texture, sometimes mottled, quarried for building	30 ft.
No. 5.—Shale, arenaceous and mottled with red	3 ft.
No. 6.—Calciferous sandstone, used as a cut-stone, for sills and fronts	4 ft.
No. 7.—Rough and irregular sandstone	12 ft.
Total exposure	61 ft.

(No. 7 here is probably the upper portion of the *St. Croix sandstone.* The thickness of the *Lower Magnesian* is at least 230 feet.)

(c.) *Fossils of the Lower Magnesian limestone.*

This great dolomite is comparatively meager in fossil contents. It affords a small number (*three* according to Dr. Shumard) of species of trilobites, and a few of bivalve and univalve molluscs. Of these the most characteristic are *Dikelocephalus,* and other trilobites "allied to the family *Olenidæ*" (Shumard); a handsome little *Lingula,* "of an ovate shape, with fine concentric striæ, not distinguishable from *Lingula Dacotaensis*" (Shumard); also another species of *Lingula* much larger than *L. Dacotaensis*; an unnamed species of *Pleurotomaria* (?), an unknown species of *Orthis Terebratula.* Besides these the most frequent fossil, perhaps, and throughout at least the upper portion of the formation, is a species of *Euomphalus* (*Ophileta?*) which is apparently the same that Dr. Owen has described and named *Straparollus Minnesotensis.*[*] The observations of the present survey have only disclosed a gasteropod fossil, probably the same *Euomphalus*, in the upper portion of the formation, seen in the bed of the Zumbro, at Rochester, near the Bradley House; and a species of *Lingula* answering the characters of *L. Dacotaensis*, in the same stone where quarried by Messrs. Maxfield and Sons, at Mankato.

---

[*] On page 484 of Owen's final report, Dr Shumard describes this fossil as found in F. 1. Yet Dr. Owen in his description [p. 581], and on plate II assigns it to the *Lower Magnesian.* A similar contradiction occurs in the double assignment of *Pleurotomaria muralis.* It is referred from the same locality both to F. 2, and F. 3, so constantly that it cannot be attributed to typographical oversight.

In Iowa crinoidal remains are found in the *Lower Magnesian*. In Wisconsin near Madison a *Dikelocephalus* trilobite was found in the drift, supposed to be from the *Lower Magnesian*, and Prof. Hall also reports various indistinct remains of *Orthoceratites*. In western Canada the *Lower Magnesian* exhibits a more abundant fauna, including different genera of trilobites, orthoceratites, gasteropods, and brachiopods. The great "Quebec group" which, in eastern Canada, is supposed to include the *Lower Magnesian* of the Northwest, unfolds an entirely new and wondrously rich assemblage of Silurian fossils.

(d.) *Economical value of the Lower Magnesian.*

The value of this limestone is greatly enhanced by its stratigraphical position. It is not only the lowest in the geological series of the state, but it is separated from the next higher by a considerable thickness of friable sandstone. Therefore it must serve all the uses to which limestone may be put, throughout the area of the granitic and metamorphic rocks,* and also throughout the adjoining belts of the *Potsdam* and the *St. Croix*, and the *St. Peter* sandstones on either side.

As its name indicates, it is not a pure limestone, but a dolomite, or magnesian limestone. It usually contains about one equivalent of carbonate of lime, and one of carbonate of magnesia, with some insoluble silicates, and traces of alumina and iron, the largest per cent. being made up of carbonate of lime. It was formerly believed that a dolomitic limestone was not adapted to lime-burning. The pure limestones, or those that comprise about ninety per cent. of carbonate of lime were eagerly sought for the strength and quickness of the lime they afford. Such is the character of most of the first twenty feet of the *Trenton limestone*, which lies above the *St. Peter sandstone*. It has more recently been found, however, that the magnesian limestones, to which class belong most of those of

---

*No notice is here taken of *metamorphic limestones*, some of which may occur in Minnenesota. They furnish the *marbles* of the New England states.

Upper Silurian age in the Northwest, as well as the *Lower Magnesian* and the *Galena* of the Lower Silurian, afford a quicklime which, although less hot in slacking, and slower in setting, is on the other hand more cheaply burned and better adapted to the uses of common mortar.

"The properties of these limestones are very different. Those of the first class require to be submitted to a higher temperature in 'burning' than the second. They slake promptly and thoroughly and in the operation evolve a great degree of heat. From this last fact they are termed 'hot' or 'fiery' limes. They 'set' or harden so soon that but two or three bricks can be laid with one spreading of mortar, and walls that are made of them have a tendency to 'chip-crack.' It is quite likely that this last named property can be attributed, in some degree, to the silica and alumina that they contain.

The second class contains those limes that are called 'cool.' They do not give out as much heat in slaking as the limes of the first class, nor do they 'set' as soon. From five to twenty bricks can be laid with a single spreading of mortar, and in plastering a corresponding advantage can be obtained.

On purely practical grounds the builders of southwestern Ohio have come to recognize the greater desirability of the limes of the last named class, and none others can now find market in the cities and towns of this portion of the state." [PROF. EDWARD ORTON, on the geology of Montgomery county, in the first report of progress of the geological survey of Ohio, for 1869].

The lime made from the *Lower Magnesian* in Minnesota is, so far as observed, of a very dark color. It is distinguished in some places as "black lime," in comparison with that burned from calcareous tufa, which is called "white lime." In other places it is known as "leather-colored" lime. Yet even where the bulk of the lime produced is of a dark color, some inconsiderable spots and streaks are almost as white as lime made from any other formation.

The lime made at Shakopee, in Scott county, is exceedingly dark, and is commonly known as leather-colored. It has not the purplish or ashen tint of some dark, Ohio limes from the Hamilton limestone, but an ochreous or umber color. It is also specked and sometimes streaked with whitish spots or with shades of lighter brown, and in slacking it takes the color of rich cream.

At the kiln of Mr. Isaac Lincoln, lime sells at 75 cents per barrel of 225 pounds, on the ground. Last year 16,000 barrels were shipped, or an average of 1,300 barrels per month. The monthly production sometimes reaches 2,700 barrels. The markets are mostly St. Paul and Minneapolis. Mr. Lincoln burns from four to five cords of mixed wood to each hundred barrels, and uses a constant kiln of a patent unknown.

The other kiln at Shakopee is owned by Mr. Baptiste Contre. Lime here sells mostly at St. Paul and Minneapolis at 75 cents per barrel. The monthly production is from 1,200 to 1,700 barrels, consuming four or five cords (mostly *four* cords) of mixed wood per hundred barrels. The kiln is similar to that of Mr. Lincoln. At Louisville, four miles further up the Minnesota valley, are two other limekilns employed in burning the *Lower Magnesian.*

At Mankato, in Blue Earth county, the quarry of Messrs. Maxfield and Son supplies both quicklime and building stone. The former is delivered at the depot at 80 cents per barrel of 225 pounds. Twenty cords of mixed wood burn three hundred barrels.

Stone from the quarry of Messrs. Maxfield and Son, at Mankato, has been used in the construction of the Catholic church at that place. The foundation and all dressed stone in the Second Normal School building are from the same quarry. The foundation and dressed stone in the City bank and in Harmonia hall, as well as the entire structure of Higgins hall, and the fronts of several business blocks, at Mankato, are from the same quarry.

At Kasota, in Le Sueur county, the *Lower Magnesian* is considerably wrought, and is finding market at Minneapolis and St. Paul. Quarries here are owned by Reuben Buttars, J. W. Babcock, and by Downs Brothers. The stone itself is handsomely tinted with pink; and for its beauty, its regularity of bedding which is sometimes nearly two feet in thickness, and its homogeneous texture which renders it easy to shape into all forms, it is adapted to ornamental work as well as heavy masonry. It is cut, as at Mankato, into posts, sills, caps and water-tables. For its adaptability to all uses it is worthy of being ranked with the Waverly sandstone, and it is more enduring even than that, under the action of atmospheric changes, owing to the more general and abundant dissemination of the calcareous cement; while its variegated coloring, and its more lively expression make it preferable in many kinds of work. It is used in the north and south wings of the state lunatic asylum at St. Peter, and the central portion of the building, when completed, will contain it. The Episcopal church, and the old Asylum building are also constructed from it. The new Baptist church at St. Paul is being made from the Kasota stone. In old structures where it has been exposed for a number of years to the disintegrating action of the elements, it shows as sound and hard as ever. It even becomes harder on exposure, as the quarry water dries out.

At St. Peter, in Nicollet county, a quarry owned by the Asylum farm affords a stone of a lighter color, but otherwise very similar to that from Kasota, being also in the *Lower Magnesian.*

At Red Wing, in Goodhue county, the quarries near the top of La Grange, or "barn bluff," supplied from the *Lower Magnesian* the stone put in the railroad-bridge over the Mississippi at Hastings, and also that used in the Episcopal church at Red Wing.

At Winona, in Winona county, valuable quarries in this formation have been opened in the "sugar loaf," by Mr. Toms, and in the bluff next west of "sugar loaf" by Mr. James Burke. These quarries supplied the trimmings and all cut-stone used in the normal school at that place.

At Stillwater, in Washington county, the *Lower Magnesian* is extensively used for the most important structures. Some of it is quite close-grained, and without pores, making a fine cut-stone of a light cream-color. Some of it, from the same quarry, is also very rough and porous, and of a darker color. That, however, which is rough and porous is as enduring as that which is compact. Indeed the porous masses are apt to be more lasting and in heavier beds than the close-grained. This stone has been put into the public school-house at Stillwater, and as trimmings in many houses built of brick. The state prison at the same place is built of it. The court house is of red brick (made near Stillwater), the trimmings being of the *Lower Magnesian* quarried at Stillwater, and of the blue flagging, from the *Trenton* quarried at St. Paul. The steps in front and the walls at the ends of the steps are of the *Lower Magnesian*, while the coping, sills, lintels and water-tables are of the darker colored *Trenton*. Several churches at Stillwater are made of the *Lower Magnesian* with *Trenton* blue flags from St. Paul, for sills, caps and water-tables. This combination of colors gives the structure a very attractive *ensemble*, but it is at the cost of durability. It is a great mistake to place these blue flags in such exposed parts of important buildings. They are much more destructible than the *Lower Magnesian*, and will fall out in chips and thin shaly partings long before the weather has any effect on the *Lower Magnesian* of the main walls.

4. THE ST. PETER SANDSTONE.

(a.) *Its area.*

The incoherency of this sandstone renders a definition of its area very difficult. It is placed between two important limestones of the Lower Silurian, both of which endure the erosion of ice and water and the disintegrating action of atmospheric forces with greater persistence than the sandstone itself. The underlying *Lower Magnesian* is apt, in the southeastern portion of the state, to stretch out for several miles over a low flat, its upper surface forming the basis. But as it gradually passes, owing to a gentle dip, below the surface, occasional isolated mounds rising about 125 feet above the general level are seen by the traveler. These become more and more frequent and at last coalesce in the direction of the dip, so as to form a continuous flat topped shoulder or bench, like the *mesas* of New Mexico, on which the same features of surface and soil prevail as on the lower flat formed by the *Lower Magnesian*. On examination of these precipitous ascents from the lower to the higher prairie, they are found to consist of the *St. Peter sandstone*, capped with the first fifteen or twenty feet of the overlying *Trenton limestone*. As this protecting limestone has a thickness of about 160 feet it also furnishes a further ascent, but one that is not marked off by so distinct bench-lines. Owing to the occurrence of considerable shale and easily erosible beds at about the horizon of twenty feet above the *St. Peter sandstone*, it happens that often over a wide belt only these twenty feet of the *Trenton limestone* are preserved. They form the brow of the hill that separates the lower from the upper prairie, already mentioned, and have hitherto been more fully examined than any other portion of the *Trenton* within the limits of Minnesota. Hence the area of the *St. Peter sandstone* is actually reduced, where the boundaries of the formations are easily seen, to the narrow belt forming the slopes between the upper and lower prairies. These slopes are generally turf-covered. The delineation of the area of the *St. Peter* is further complicated by the action of streams. These often cut their channels through the overlying twenty feet of *Trenton*, and into the *St. Peter* some miles above their debouchure on the actual area of the *St. Peter;* and near their entrance upon the area of that sandstone their channels are widened out enormously, the enclosing bluffs receding rapidly from the immediate river banks. In addition to these irregularities of outline, there are not infrequently detached areas within the general limit of the *Trenton limestone* where the protecting beds of the Trenton are broken down and removed by some force not now in operation, forming, in the *St. Peter*, basin-shaped depressions, the bottoms of which are on the *Lower Magnesian*, the surrounding bluffs being made up of the *St. Peter sandstone*, and the high prairie stretching out in all directions being underlain by the Trenton. Such *arroya* valleys, which are now without any visible surface drainage, are sometimes united by wide mouths with other, larger valleys that present a similar topography. Indeed the whole belt of country underlain by the outrunning *Trenton* and the *St. Peter sandstone* is made up of a network of little valleys many of which coalesce and become tributaries to larger drainage valleys, and some of which appear simply as isolated depressions. It is a tract of rolling country of great beauty of natural scenery, and most perfectly exemplifies the effect of geological causes on the topography and agricultural character of the state.

This belt of rolling land immediately dependent on the underlying rock enters the state from Iowa in Houston county, in a general northwesterly direction. It embraces the western portions of Houston and Winona, the eastern portions of Fillmore and Olmsted, and some portions of Wabasha, Goodhue and Dakota counties. Further northwest, in the counties of Ramsey, Hennepin and Anoka, the area of the *St. Peter sandstone* is heavily covered by drift, and its presence would not be known except for its exposures in the Mississippi bluffs, and the known limits of adjoining formations. From Dakota county the *St. Peter sandstone* extends theoretically southwestwardly in a belt of 6 to 10 miles wide, passing through the central part of Rice county, touching the northwest corners of Waseca and Faribault, and leaving the state again in Martin county in a southwesterly direction. On the other side of the granitoid axis, in the northwestern portion of the state, a belt of this sandstone is supposed to exist, and is conjecturally laid off on the preliminary map accompany this report.

(b.) *Lithological characters of the St. Peter sandstone.*

The outward, and also the chemical characters of this sandstone, in Minnesota, are, so far as seen, remarkably constant and simple. It is white, "saccharoidal," friable, non-fossiliferous, and consists almost entirely of pure quartz sand. It contains not enough lime to act as cement, and hence can almost everywhere be excavated even with the fingers. On exposed surfaces, as along the bluffs of the Mississippi, where dripping water passes over it, the grains become more bound together by deposition of carbonate of lime and iron oxide, and its delicate whiteness is lost. Indeed, wherever water in the smallest quantity is allowed to trickle through it, a deposit of iron oxide is invariably seen, since rarely, if ever, is any surface water found entirely free from that impurity.

A number of sections have been observed of this formation, but the characters seem to be invariable throughout. Its thickness is about 125 feet, and it is the immediate cause of a great many waterfalls. The falls of St. Anthony are caused by the passage of the river from the *Trenton limestone* onto the *St. Peter*. The latter, rapidly worn away by the current, leaves the projecting limestone to fall down in heavy blocks as fast as it becomes too feeble to support further its own weight. This protecting cap of limestone extends but a few rods above the present brink of the falls, and it was a thoughtless tunneling underneath, in the soft *St. Peter*, that admitted the water of the Mississippi a few years since, above the limit of the limestone, thus endangering the existence of the falls themselves. They would soon have been reduced to a foaming rapid, which eventually would have entirely disappeared. Vigorous measures were speedily adopted by the citizens of Minneapolis. tardily aided by the U. S. government, to secure the water-power, and by carefully shutting off the water from the tunnel, and "aproning" the waterfall itself with heavy timbers and planking, as well as laying over the river bottom above the falls a thickness of gravel and clay to prevent a further erosion, it is believed that desirable object has been effectually secured. The falls of Minnehaha are also caused by the same conjunction of a drainage stream with the boundary line separating the *St. Peter* from the *Trenton limestone*. This unique and legendary little gem of a waterfall has a perpendicular descent of 52 ft. 10½ inches from the brink of the overhanging limestone to the surface of still water below. About twenty-five feet of that distance are taken up with the *St. Peter sandstone.* Numerous little cascades of great beauty enter the Mississippi in the vicinity of St. Paul and Minneapolis. As these are projected over the limestone rim which borders the Mississippi bluffs, they are thrown in more or less entire sheets of clear water into the river below. Such are known as *the fawn's leap*, *the bridal veil*, *the silver cascade* and *the silver thread.*

The singular pillar in Dakota county, known as *Castle Rock*, consists of the *St. Peter sandstone.* It stands on the arch of the local anticlinal axis from which the beds dip gently both toward the north and toward the south, and is an outlier from which most of the formation has been removed over an area of some miles about. Its form is that of a somewhat regular right prism, or parallelopipedon, elongated north and south, supporting on its northern end a pinnacle of bedded sandstone about four feet in diameter at the base, which rises above the general mass 19 ft. and 3 inches. A view from the west shows of rock 44 feet and 9 inches, rising above the general surface of the sandy mound on which it stands. Rock can be seen on the east side about 20 feet lower than on the west. A depression along the east side of the outlier is 26 feet below the lowest rock visible. From the bottom of this depression to the top of the tower is 70 feet 1¾ inches. The irregularly ascending base visible from the west is 11 ft. 6 in. The perpendicular sides of the general mass of the rock are 14 ft., and the tower is 19 ft. 3 in. Near the base of the tower is a somewhat argillaceous layer, or one less firmly cemented, of a few inches, which weathers away faster than the rest, making the diameter there considerably less than above. Hence the tower has a threatening aspect, and the first impression of the beholder is the certainty that the first severe blast of wind will throw it from its place. The mass of the whole is separated perpendicularly by a number of divisional planes that also may be seen entering the rock below the castle. These pass in a direction N. E. and S. W. and have so aided the attacks of the elements and invited the ambitious but sacrilegious carvings of visitors that a hole has been made through the body of the rock.

(c.) *Economical value of the St. Peter sandstone.*

The St. Peter furnishes inexhaustible quantities of the purest quartz sand. Its easy excavation renders it obtainable for common mortar and for glass-making. Its exposures along the Mississippi bluffs at and below St. Paul invite its use in the manufacture of flint glass of which it is known to make a very superior article. At Minneapolis the close proximity of waste fuel from the lumber mills, ample water-power and favorable exposures of this formation ought long ago to have been improved in the establishment of a glass manufactory. At the present time Minnesota furnishes from the *St. Croix sandstone* a sand believed to be inferior to that from the *St. Peter*, which, taken to a neighboring state, supplies the glass that returns to her citizens encumbered with a double freightage. This process ought to be arrested by the utilization within our own territory of this vast resource, peculiar largely to Minnesota. At present this sandstone is not known to be used for any purpose within the state except for mortar for the local markets and as an engraving board for idle boys. Sometimes beer vaults are made in it along the river bluffs, and sewers for the drainage of the cities of St. Paul and Minneapolis are excavated through it, the overlying limestone affording a secure roof.

5. THE TRENTON LIMESTONE.

(a.) *Preliminary considerations.*

This term is here applied to that series of limestones and shales that fill up the interval between the well marked horizons of the top of the *St. Peter sandstone*, and the bottom of the *Galena limestone*. It is quite likely that when this series of beds is fully examined differences may be ascertained warranting its separation under two or more names, but at the present time the characters of its whole thickness, which amounts to nearly 160 feet, are so little known that it has not been possible to establish any constant paleontological or lithological horizons. Dr. Owen, in his final report on Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, mentions only the lowest 34 feet of these limestones, owing to the more frequent exposure, as has been mentioned already, of that portion of the *Trenton*. Those 34 feet Dr. B. F. Shumard separates into the following parts:

1. Upper, or St. Peter shell limestone, F. 3. c	6 feet.
2. Non-fossiliferous bed, F. 3. b	5 feet.
3. Lower shell limestone, F. 3. a	23 feet.

The geologists of Wisconsin have described these limestones under the terms "buff limestone" and "blue limestone," the former lying below the latter, following the preliminary sub-division of Dr. Owen, published in a report of progress in 1840. They there have a thickness of 70 to 90 feet.* These distinctions have not yet been observed in Minnesota, and the aggregate thickness of the beds is considerably greater. The early geologists of Iowa gave the term *Trenton limestone* to all the layers between the *St. Peter* and the *Galena* and assign them an aggregate thickness of 100 feet.† Dr. C. A. White, also, of the recent geological survey of Iowa, embraces these shales and limestones under the single term *Trenton limestone*, but ascertains their thickness to be about 200 feet.‡ Mr. Worthen, in Illinois, embraces the *Galena*, the *Blue* and the *Buff* limestones under the term of *Trenton Group*, giving the latter two a united thickness of 70 to 105 feet, the *Galena* overlying, having a thickness of 250 to 300 feet.§

(b.) *Area of the Trenton limestone.*

The *Trenton* occupies a belt of country lying just within that of the *St. Peter*, in the southern part of the state, and conjecturally an area in the northwestern part of the state. The former may be described with considerable exactness. By reference to the description of the area of the *St. Peter* it will be seen that the line separating these two formations is very crooked, especially in the southeastern portion of the state, where the drift is light. The causes that operated to give this line such a winding direction, up and down hundreds of little valleys, seem to have pertained largely to pre-glacial time, and to have continued also into, and near the close of, the ice period,—or to have recurred, after a suspension, during the ice period with all their former activity. They seem to have been closely connected, perhaps identical, with those that exempted this region from the heavy covering of drift that prevails further west and north. At least, it is plain that the absence of the drift has allowed the freer action of the elements that slowly, but effectually disintegrate and remove rocky structures, causing those which are most enduring to stand out most prominently, af-

---

Geological survey of Wisconsin, 1861, vol. I.

†*Geology of Iowa*, 1858, vol. I. part I.

‡*Geology of Iowa*, 1870, vol. I.

§*Geological survey of Illinois*, vol. I.

fording shelter to those which retreat fastest from their attacks.

The western line of the *St. Peter* is the eastern line of the *Trenton*, in the southeastern portion of the state, and need not be further defined. The western line of the *Trenton*, in the same region, although less tortuous than the eastern, is still quite irregular, the overlying *Galena* comparing, in respect to relative endurance, to the *Trenton*, very much as the *Trenton* does to the *St. Peter*. It is impossible definitely to lay out this area until the various counties are examined in detail, but in general the area of the *Trenton* comprises a wide belt through the central portions of Fillmore, Olmsted and Goodhue counties, including three or four towns in the southwestern corner of Winona, and touching the southwest corner of Wabasha. This belt is then deflected westward through the counties of Rice, Blue Earth and Faribault, leaving the state probably in Martin county. Isolated areas occur in Dakota county, capping the *St. Peter sandstone*; and a large detached area of the lower portion of the *Trenton*, with a local dip toward the north, covers the northern portion of Dakota and much of Ramsey and Hennepin counties. This detached area gives location to the falls of St. Anthony. The area of *Trenton* in the northwestern portion of the state is laid off conjecturally, the only guide being the report of Prof. H. Y. Hind on the Assiniboine and Saskatchewan districts of British America, printed in 1859.

(c.) *Lithological characters of the Trenton limestone.*

In Minnesota, as far as seen, the *Trenton limestone* is abundantly associated with beds and laminations of green shale. The calcareous layers themselves are usually from one to four inches in thickness, but sometimes exceed a foot, while the beds of shale are apt to be massive and sometimes have a thickness of ten feet. The shale beds are often supplied with fragmentary fossils, and the layers of limestone are uniformly fossiliferous. The calcareous and argillaceous portions are also in some portions of the formation more closely interstratified; or the shale may be interwoven with the calcareous layers in such a way as to replace them at short intervals, the whole adhering strongly on fresh fracture, but on being weathered readily disintegrating. This is the aspect of some of the beds near the bottom of the formation which are used for building purposes at St. Paul and Minneapolis. The stone in this case has an attractive exterior on being dressed under the hammer, the variegations due to the alternating shaly and limy parts giving the face a clouded appearance, as of gray marble, without being susceptible of a uniform polish. Where protected from the weather the shale will endure, and act as a strong filling for the framework of calcareous matter for a long time; but under the vicissitudes of moisture and dryness and of freezing and thawing, it begins to crumble out in a few years. In other places the calcareous layers, even on the same horizon as at Minneapolis and St. Paul, are very much thicker and afford strong unyielding material for building. In this last case the calcareous layers are more strongly crystalline, but not vesicular. Many of them, especially when associated with considerable shale, are nearly made up of fragments of fossils, visible to the unaided eye, and doubtless the shale beds are also calcareous as well as sedimentary. The texture of the stone is close; yet some portions near the base, thought to be the beds denominated by Dr. Shumard "upper shell limestone," are often vesicular and of a light color. The natural color of the stone, on deep quarrying, is blue, but it is often faded to an ashen drab to the depth of several feet, depending on the ease with which water and air find access within. The porous layers are apt to be most faded. The long weathered surface is of a light buff color, or if iron be present in dripping water, or contained in the stone as pyrites so situated as to be oxidized, the color is sensibly deepened to a rusty yellow.

The effect of this formation on the topography of several counties in the southeastern portion of the state has been alluded to in connection with the same subject in treating of the *St. Peter sandstone.* Owing to the frequency of shaly interlaminations its outline, where the drift is light, is not so well defined in terraces as that of the overlying *Galena.* Its line of junction with the *St. Peter sandstone* is, indeed, very evident even in all its tortuosities, but its junction with the *Galena* is generally hid by a sloping, turf-covered talus of *debris*; and it is only at favorable places in the bluffs along the streams that a knowledge of that horizon can be obtained. The whole formation weathers away so evenly that where its effect on the topography is not brought out by drainage erosion or by the *Galena limestone* or the *St. Peter sandstone*, it produces nothing more than a gentle swell or evenly rounded ridge exposing none of the beds.

Sections have been observed covering all the beds of the *Trenton*

The best section of the *lower* and *upper shell beds*, of Dr. Shumard, is that taken at the falls of Minnehaha, although the same beds are seen well exposed at many places between St. Anthony's falls and St. Paul.

Section at the falls of Minnehaha, Hennepin county.

In descending order.

No. 1.—Beds 6 to 14 inches, very fossiliferous and sometimes vesicular. Contain *Leptæna deltoidea* in abundance, and *Strophmena alternata (?)*, also a *Cypricardites*. This is an important and marked horizon to which other sections may be referred. It forms the brink of the falls, but its best exposure is in a bluff a few rods below. Seen.. 9 ft.

No. 2.—Argillaceous limestone of a greenish color, weathering out conchoidally... 2 ft.

No. 3—Arenaceous shale, weathering fine.......................... 2 ft.

No. 4.—Blue flagging, with considerable green shale. The principal building stone of Minneapolis and St. Paul is from this member. Great portions of this are made up solely of comminuted fossil remains showing crinoidal joints. It is of sedimentary rather than of chemical origin..13 ft. 6 in.

No. 5.—Green shale, about midway containing one layer of about two inches of limestone.................................... 3 ft. 8 in.

No. 6 —*St. Peter sandstone*, somewhat argillaceous, and of a greenish blue color... 2 ft.

No. 7.—*St. Peter sandstone*, superficially stained and hardened by lime and iron..25 ft.

Total... 57 ft. 2

Total of the *Trenton*.................................... 30 ft. 2 in.

Section near the falls of St. Anthony, Hennepin county.

A quarter of a mile below the university. In descending order.

No. 1.—Limestone, mostly of a close grain and bright blue color, showing many fossils, principally of *Leptæna deltoidea*, but also containing cephalopods and gasteropods. The fossil remains are usually not fragmentary. They are apt to lie in sheets, making dark streaks horizontally separating the bedding. Under the weather this stone falls out in chips ½ to 2 inches thick and 4 to 8 inches across, which ring under a blow from the hammer. The surface weathers a rusty buff, the stone itself becoming a gray drab.............................. 11 ft.

No. 2.—Blue shale, crumbling out, the upper four feet somewhat bedded, the rest below massive, the whole occasionally showing patches or short sheets of fragments of brachiopods, &c., making the rock more calcareous and enduring.. 9 ft.

No. 3.—Blue flagging, quarried here and placed in the west wing of the university building. This stone is rather too argillaceous to be a reliable building material, yet is extensively used. Some parts of it are free from shale. Such beds furnish a firm and very enduring stone.. 15

No. 4.—Blue shale, parting conchoidally under the weather, seen....... 2 ft.
[No. 5.—St. Peter sandstone, to the water level 38 ft.]

Total of the *Trenton*........... .... 37 ft.

The total hight from the water's edge, at this quarry, to the summit of the drift bluff on which the university stands, measured by Locke's level, is 137 feet.

There is no visible dip here in the bedding, but at the falls of St. Anthony the dip is two or three degrees to the southeast.

At the point where the foregoing section was taken the *St. Peter sandstone* is tunneled artificially to the depth of nearly 200 feet, the excavation being ten or twelve feet in diameter, rudely dug out and arched. It was intended for a beer-vault.

Section at St. Charles, in Winona county.

At a quarry near St. Charles, half a mile south of the city, the lower portion of the *Trenton* appears as follows, in descending order:

No. 1.—Hard, crystalline, calcareous layers, ringing under the hammer, of a light drab color, without shale, fossiliferous........... .... 15 ft.
No. 2.—Bluish green shale, about.................................. 10 ft.
[No. 3.—*St. Peter sandstone*, seen 6 feet.]

Total *Trenton*..................... .... 25 ft.

At this place the dip is two or three degrees S. W. St. Charles sits on the top of the *Lower Magnesian limestone*, which is seen in a quarry a little N. E. of the city, and is nearly surrounded by bluffs formed by the *St. Peter sandstone*, capped with the lower portion of the *Trenton*. This exposure of the *Lower Magnesian* is along a little creek, the amount of bedding seen being about 16 feet.

Sections at Rochester, in Olmsted county.

At the "old Harmon quarry," from which the flouring-mill and the foundations for the new public-school house were built, the lower portion of the *Trenton* appears as follows, in descending order:

No. 1.—Green shale, seen... .... 4 ft.
[This is said by Mr. Hurlbut to be about 14 feet thick where it is all preserved.]
No. 2.—Hard, brittle limestone, in two beds, separated by about two inches of green shale. This is much like No. 1, of the foregoing

section at St. Charles. It has a drab color. A handsome *Strophomena* is the most characteristic fossil	1 ft.
No. 3.—Alternations of shale and limestone	1 ft.
No. 4.—Limestone of the same kind as No. 2, with some partings of shale, but sometimes quite blue instead of drab, seen	10 ft.
No. 5.—Blue shaly limestone, more like the blue flagging quarried at Minneapolis. Not well exposed; amounts to about	6 in.
Total *Trenton* seen	16 ft. 6 in.

At another point further west, on Mr. O. P. Whitcomb's land, the bed of green shale separating the foregoing *Trenton* from the *St. Peter sandstone*, or rather forming the base of the *Trenton*, may be seen in a weathered bluff, exposing a thickness of about ten feet, as at St. Charles. The quarry of Mr. O. P. Whitcomb, at Rochester, is made up as follows, in descending order:

No. 1.—Green shale, containing fragmentary crinoidal stems, *Chætetes* and various small brachiopods, among which may be distinguished a *Rhynchonella*. [Mr. Hurlbut thinks about 5 feet more are broken down from above, not now visible.] seen	10 ft.
No. 2.—Limestone, of a drab color and fine grain, in beds of about three inches, with much intervening shale in continuous layers	3 ft.
No. 3.—Compact limestone, used in building, of a blue color, but comparatively free from shale	17 ft.
No. 4.—Green shale, lying on the *St. Peter sandstone*, not well exposed, seen	1 ft.
Total *Trenton* seen	32 ft.

From No. 2, above, have come some of the finest and largest specimens of cephalopods.

Section on Root river, in sec. 16, Pleasant Grove, Olmsted county.

At the point observed the section consists, in general, as follows, in descending order: Perpendicular escarpment showing generally a thin bedded and often shaly rock, the thin shale partitions being as thick as ½ or 1½ inches, about 37 feet. The descent then is irregular over beds of argillaceous limestone and shale mostly hid from view. Some of these shale beds are six and eight inches thick, and from them, where crumbling under the weather, fragments of fossils fall, such as *Chætetes* (principally), *Maclurea* and *Orthis*. The limestone weathers rough and thin-bedded, and shows *Receptaculites*. This interval includes about 47½ feet. There is then a broad shoulder, making up a talus covering, as disclosed, further down the river, a heavy bed of green shale, which overlies, near the water's edge, the limestone layers of the foregoing sections at Rochester, 42 feet. Total of beds supposed to be of the *Trenton*, 126½ feet. Combining this section with the observed thickness at Rochester, omitting the overlying shale bed (here embraced in a talus) the observed thickness of rocks of *Trenton* age amounts to 156½ feet against the 34 feet observed by Dr. Owen.

Sections at Mantorville, in Dodge county.

The Mantorville quarries show the horizon of the junction of the *Trenton* with overlying *Galena*. The same horizon is better exposed at Pettit's mill, one and a half miles below Mantorville, on sec. 22, T. 107, R. 16, along the middle branch of the Zumbro river. These sections are as follows:

1st. That of the quarry of Mr. Charles Ginsberg, in descending order:

No. 1.—[Loose fragments, 5 ft.]	
No. 2.—Heavy beds of vesicular, magnesian buff limestone........	8 ft.
No. 3.—Thin beds of the same, with a little shale................	4 ft.
No 4.—Heavy, buff, magnesian beds....	7 ft.
No. 5.—Thin, blue argillo-magnesian beds.......	10 ft.
No. 6.—Even-bedded magnesian limestone, the bedding of which weathers out from two to six inches, (poorly seen).......	5 ft.
Total seen..............	34 ft.

At this quarry the buff or cream colored stone shows a light blue color in deep quarrying.

2d. The quarry of Mr. Samuel Wilson, located near Mr. Ginsberg's, includes more of the *Galena*.

No. 1.—[Loose fragments, 4 ft.]		
No. 2.—Beds from six to twenty inches each, of vesicular, magnesian limestone, almost free from iron, fine for a "quarry stone".......................	30 ft.	10 in.
No. 3.—Thin, slaty, argillo-magnesian beds....................	1 ft.	6 in.
No. 4.—Good, heavy beds of magnesian limestone, same as No. 1.	11 ft.	6 in.
No. 5.—Shaly and thinner beds, seen.......	5 ft.	
[NOTE.—Where these beds are weathered out, a white deposit is accumulated on the slope below, having much the taste of lime, yet may consist of alumina and lime. On the face of the rocks the coating is bitter and sour, tasting somewhat like Epsom salt.]		
No. 6.—Heavy magnesian layers, of a buff color, with considerable shale, same as Nos. 3, 4 and 5, of Ginsberg's quarry, but poorly seen, about	20 ft.	
Total seen..	68 ft.	10 in.

Section at Pettit's mill, sec. 22. T. 107, R. 16, Dodge Co.

No. 1.—Slope from the summit of the bluff (hid) estimated	40 ft.	
No. 2.—Magnesian layers, buff, much shattered	4 ft.	6 in.
No. 3.—Shale	2 ft.	6 in.
No. 4.—Good layers of vesicular, buff magnesian stone, with some argillaceous patches	11 ft.	
No. 5.—Argillo-magnesian limestone, weathering into rather thin beds	3 ft.	
No. 6.—Vesicular, buff, magnesian limestone. In one bed		10 in.
No. 7.—Shale and shaly limestone	2 ft.	2 in.
No. 8.—Beds of argillaceous limestone, each of about eight inches, separated by shale beds, each of about two inches	5 ft.	2 in.
[Note.—In No. 8 is found the coral *Receptaculites*.]		
No. 9.—Shale		4 in.
No. 10.—Vesicular limestone, argillo-magnesian. In one bed		9 in.
No. 11.—Shaly and calcareous beds (thin)		8 in.
No. 12.—Crystalline beds of a gray color, weathering buff, one bed	1 ft.	7 in.
No. 13.—Shale and shaly limestone	1 ft.	4 in.
No. 14.—Shale		8 in.
No. 15.—Argillo-magnesian limestone, some parts crystalline and calcareous only, in three beds	6 ft.	4 in
No. 16.—Shale		4 in.
No. 17.—Argillo-magnesian, one bed		10 in.
No. 18.—Shale	1 ft.	2 in.
No. 19.—Hard crystalline limestone, of a gray color, with some cavities and specimens of *Receptaculites*	2 ft.	2 in.
No. 20.—Shale		6 in.
No. 21.—Argillo-magnesian, one bed, showing *Chætetes* and fucoids of the *Trenton*	1 ft.	6 in.
No. 22.—An interval (not well seen) of beds of greenish blue shale and argillaceous limestone, each varying from eight to twelve inches, showing abundant fossils of the *Trenton*	16 ft.	
No. 23.—Blue, earthy limestone (under water) seen		6 in.
Total	103 ft.	10 in.

It is impossible, without more examination, to fix certainly the equivalency of any portion of this section with those at Mantorville, but Nos. 2 to 4 here are probably included in No. 6 at Wilson's quarry. This section shows the transition from the *Trenton* to the *Galena* to have been gradual in southern Minnesota, the occurrence of the buff and magnesian layers marking those changes favorable for the deposition of *Galena limestone* which preceded the full introduction of that epoch.

The foregoing sections of the *Trenton limestone* with its associated shales are thought to cover the whole formation, which probably reaches the thickness of 160 feet in the southern portion of the state, where, only, its full development is preserved.

(d.) *Fossils of the Trenton limestone.*

It is not intended to attempt here, nor would it be possible at the present time, to give a complete list of the numerous and interesting fossils supplied by the *Trenton limestone.* Full collections have not yet been made, but enough has been done to illustrate the commonest of the animal remains met with in this formation, and to show how essential to the geologist a knowledge of the fossils of any rock is, before he can pronounce on its age. Perhaps the most common fossil seen about outcrops of the *Trenton* in Minnesota is a ramose form of the little coral *Chætetes*, probably of the species *Lycoperdon.* It seems to pertain specially to the beds of shale, but is not absent from the other beds. On the weathering away of the rock, the fragments fall out, and may be picked up along the foot of many of the outcrops of this limestone. Besides this coral, *Leptæna deltoidea*, a small brachiopod, is frequently seen. There are also different species of *Orthis*, of *Strophomena* and of *Tellinomya*, and a species of *Leperditia.* Of gasteropods, species of *Murchisonia* and *Pleurotomaria* are the most common. Trilobites of the genera *Isotelus*, *Illænus*, *Phacops* and *Lichas*, and also doubtfully of *Calymene*, have been found within the state. Of cephalopods there are a great many species, as well as a great number of individuals. In some cases the rock seems entirely made up of the remains of cephalopods. Some are very large, measuring nearly a foot in diameter, and some are very small. *Endoceras magniventrum* is perhaps the most common cephalopod, being at the same time one of the largest.

(e.) *Uses of the Trenton limestone.*

The frequency of the shale beds, and sometimes the intimate dissemination of shale through the calcareous layers without showing regular lamination, render the most of this formation of little use for a building material. The flags, however, near the base of the formation (For. 3. a, of B. F. Shumard)* serve in many places as a very useful stone for building purposes. The color is gray or bluish, with mottlings of lighter color. These beds are extensively wrought at St. Paul and Minneapolis, as well as at nearly all available points in the state where a local demand exists. The quarries at Minneapolis in these beds are owned by Michael Mullen, John

---

*In Dr. Owen's final report the engraved sections of B. F. Shumard embrace F. 3. a. b. and c., all in the rock seen at St. Anthony; but Dr. O. in his table of genera and their distribution places F. 3. b., in the "lead bearing beds of the Upper Magnesian", and F. 3. c., in the "coralline and Pentamerus beds" of the same.

Reulstertz, Henry Wacks and Mr. Evison. They are situated on the west side of the river, in the bluffs, about a quarter of a mile below the falls of St. Anthony. Other quarries are opened on Nicollet island.

It is observable that further to the south, as at Faribault, Rochester and St. Charles, these beds, although on the same horizon as those so extensively used at St. Paul and Minneapolis, are much freer from argillaceous matter, while at the same time the thickness of the distinct shale beds (as No. 2 in the section at St. Charles, and No. 1 of the section at Rochester, on Mr. O. P. Whitcomb's land) becomes much greater. There seems to have been a more disturbed condition of the oceanic waters in the central than in the southern portion of the state during the deposition of this flagging (F. 3. a, Shumard), mingling the coarser, more foreign materials of the shale intimately with the calcareous accumulations and, to that extent lessening the supply for the shaly beds proper. By reference to the foregoing sections it will be seen that at the falls of Minnehaha the alternations of these lithological and chemical characters in the lower *Trenton* occur about as represented in the following view, No. 4. being that from which the building stone is taken.

1	Shale, (not seen.)
2	Calcareous.................................. 9 feet.
3	Shale......... .... 4 feet.
4	Shaly limestone................................13 feet.
5	Shale.................. .... 4 feet.
6	St. Peter sandstone.

At Rochester the same horizon shows the following alternations, number four being the principal quarry-stone.

1	Shale...14 feet.
2	Calcareous, (wanting.)
3	Shaly.. 2 feet.
4	Pure limestone...................... ....17 feet.
5	Shale..10 feet.
6	St. Peter sandstone.

In the former case we find about eight feet of shale and thirteen feet of shaly limestone, with nine feet of a vesicular (magnesian?)

limestone. In the latter case we find about twenty-five feet of shale in considerable and distinct beds, and seventeen feet of pure limestone, the upper calcareous (and magnesian?) member being apparently wanting.

The quicklime made from the *Trenton limestone*, is easily slacked and with a rapid evolution of heat. It also sets with greater rapidity than that made from the *Lower Magnesian*. It requires an intenser heat to drive off the carbonic acid from the lime of the *Trenton* than it does from the lime and magnesia of the *Lower Magnesian*. Hence more fuel is consumed. In the use of the lime, however, a smaller insoluble sediment will result from the slacking of that made from the *Trenton*, when free from shale, than from that made from the *Lower Magnesian* when equally pure.

At Faribault, in Rice county, the principal quarries that furnish stone (and also marble) are those of Milan N. Pond and Mr. Cromer, situated one and a half miles east of the city, in bluffs at some distance from the river. Quarries are also owned near the city, in the river bluffs, by Wm. Lee and Mr. Donahue and by others. The stone here is all from the same stratigraphical horizon as the quarries at Minneapolis, but is much less shaly, some layers being 18 to 20 inches thick after being dressed. The stone used in the asylum for the deaf and dumb, at Faribault, was taken from Pond and Cromer's quarries. But in the construction of this handsome edifice the common mistake is made of placing some of the stone on edge. This is the case all round the building near the basement. The first stone below the water-table has a thickness of six or eight inches, and a width of three feet, and stands on edge. This is backed up probably with smaller, poor stone in irregular courses without cross-bindings. The faced stone is placed hence in its weakest position in the wall, and in one in which it is most susceptible to the attacks of the weather, and the wall itself is weakened by being split into two separate walls. This is a common oversight on the part of stone masons, some of the largest and costliest buildings in St. Paul and Minneapolis, including the university at St. Anthony, exhibiting the same short-sighted economy in their architecture. It should be an invariable rule never to lay a stone in an important wall so that the layers of sedimentation are perpendicular instead of horizontal. The more nearly a stone can lie in a wall as it lay in the natural rock, the firmer is the wall.

The Episcopal church and chapel and the school building belonging to the same society at Faribault, as well as the public school houses of the city, and some large business blocks are laid up with this limestone.

The "Faribault marble" is a bed in the same quarries, lying between common building-stone layers, and having a thickness of something less than a foot. It is susceptible of a fine polish, and has a gray color. It is made into table and stand trimmings which show various markings and mottlings, owing to the contained fossils and the various lithology of the stone.

6. THE GALENA LIMESTONE.

(a.) *Its area.*

The line of junction of the *Galena* with the *Trenton* is pretty well marked in the southeastern portion of the state through the counties of Fillmore and Olmsted, but its junction with the *Maquoketa shales* has not yet been observed at a single place. Hence the width of the *Galena* belt is unknown, although it does not probably exceed ten miles. In the southwestern portion of Goodhue county the *Galena* is deflected toward the west, and finally in Rice and Waseca counties toward the southwest, passing through Faribault and leaving the state in Martin.

(b.) *Its lithological characters.*

This limestone was included by Dr. Owen in his designation "Upper Magnesian limestone," that term also covering the *Niagara limestone* which is separated from the *Galena* by a thickness, unobserved by Dr. Owen, of about 75 feet of shales named by Dr. C. A. White of Iowa the *Maquoketa shales*. It was, however, distinguished by Dr. Owen under the special designation of "lead-bearing beds of the Upper Magnesian." Lithologically it has a great similarity to the *Niagara*. Its usual color is buff, although on deep and fresh quarrying it also shows that its normal color, like most other limestones, is blue. Its composition, like that of the *Lower Magnesian*, is dolomitic, comprising a large percentage of carbonate of magnesia. Its texture is open, even porous, with minute cavities. It also exhibits large cavernous patches, with a rough and forbidding aspect. These, however, are not common, the sedimentation having been generally so undisturbed by chemical or mechanical agencies that the layers are yet well preserved. The grain is crystalline, and sometimes granular. Minute crystals of brown spar often line the cavities. It also sometimes embraces iron pyrites which, weathering out, stains the face of the rock with a rust of iron. It probably also embraces galena in some parts of its area in Minnesota, although this mineral has not actually been found contained in the rock. Pieces of considerable size are found by the farmers in Olmsted county in plowing near the bluffs of this formation, which have apparently fallen down on being loosened by the weather, the drift there being comparatively light. The lower beds of the *Galena* are interstratified with the *Trenton.* This may be seen by comparing the sections covering that horizon at Mantorville and at Pettit's mill. (See pages 99 and 100.) A thickness of about 20 feet is taken up by alternating shale and limestone, the latter gradually losing its distinctly dolomitic characters and passing into the grayish and blue compacter beds of the *Trenton.*

In the southeastern portion of the state, where the *Galena*, owing to the thinness of the drift deposit, is seen in the bluffs and terraces with which the face of the country is diversified, its irregular outline is easily traceable for many miles. It forms the summit of a distinct terrace of which the underlying *Trenton* shales and limestones constitute the foundation, and from the top of which the overlying *Maquoketa shales* seem to have been denuded. It thus shows its more persistent character more distinctly than if it lay between formations of equal hardness. Its thickness is estimated at 180 feet.

The lithological character of the *Galena* is also frequently evident in the form of precipitous escarpments, and prominent, often detached, crags along the valleys of streams, where their channels are deeply cut. The point lying between two valleys which unite is sometimes wrought by the combined action of water and air into picturesque or fantastic shapes, the beauty and grotesqueness of which is hightened by the seclusion of the place. These unevenly weathered surfaces are due to variations in the hardness and durability of the texture of the *Galena.*

Some of the observed sections in the lower portions of the *Galena* have already been given under the head of the *Trenton limestone.* Those at Mantorville and Pettit's mill expose upward of 40 feet of this formation, and need not be repeated here. The beds exposed in Mr. Thomas Garrick's quarry, on sec. 18, in Rochester, Olmsted county, show about 25 feet of a very uniform and evenly bedded stone, of a buff or light cream-color, and crystalline, often granular texture, in which are many cavities from which the fossils have been absorbed, besides often a minutely vesicular and open structure.

(c.) *Fossils of the Galena limestone.*

Wherever the *Galena* has been examined in Minnesota, the most striking, and perhaps the commonest fossil is the sunflower coral, *Receptaculites.* Examination sufficiently detailed has not yet been made to establish the species to which specimens collected may belong. There can be but little doubt, however, that the usual species at Dubuque (*Oweni*, Hall) is also the most common in southern Minnesota. *Orthoceratites,* sometimes of large dimensions, are also common in the *Galena*, especially near the base. Species of *Murchisonia*, and apparently of *Pleurotomaria* have also been seen. Of brachiopods various species that appear like *Orthis* and like *Strophomena*, in addition to *Lingula quadrata* (Eichwald,) have been collected from the outcrops of the *Galena.* The paleontology of the *Galena* is studied under unfavorable circumstances arising from the crystalline condition of the rock, which has generally caused the absorption of the shelly portion of the animal, leaving only its shape entombed in the form of a cast. In other cases the fossils are so nearly obliterated by this means that the casts themselves are chemically united with the mass of the rock, rendering their separation impossible.

(d.) *Economical value of the Galena limestone.*

This limestone derives not only its name but its special interest to the geologist and great economical value to the states further south, from the occurrence in it of workable and valuable deposits of the sulphurets of lead and zinc, called galena and blende. These deposits specially prevail in that district denominated by Prof. J. D. Whitney "the driftless region," in the states of Iowa, Wisconsin and Illinois. This driftless tract spreads much further northwestward, covering much of the southeastern portion of Minnesota. Fully admitting Prof. Whitney's theory as to the non-submergence of this region since the deposition of the Silurian limestone, there are many facts which will not permit such non-submergence to explain the apparent absence of the northern drift in that part of the Northwest, chief among which is the absence of proof that any portion of the drift of the Northwest is due to general submergence below the waters of the ocean. The fact of the thinness of the drift in southeastern Minnesota has been referred to under the head of *surface geology*. The features of surface that prevail throughout this district are the same as those seen about Dubuque, in Iowa, and generally throughout the "lead region of the upper Mississippi." The characters of the *Galena limestone* in Minnesota are essentially those of the same limestone in the lead district. The evidence is therefore presumptive of the existence of galena in workable quantities in the northern extension of this formation in Minnesota; at least no cause is known for the limitation of the lead-bearing area to the district in which it is chiefly developed. If the origin of the sulphurets that fill the cavities in the *Galena* be due to the infiltration of those minerals from oceanic waters holding the sulphates of the same metals in solution at the time of the formation of that dolomite, there is no known reason why the *Galena* will not embrace the same sulphurets throughout its extent, at least wherever the causes that produced the precipitation were in force. The cause of that chemical change, assigned by Mr. Whitney, is the decomposition of vegetable and animal remains in the underlying "bituminous" shales of the *Trenton*, a process which, evolving sulphur in the form of sulphuretted hydrogen, would necessarily convert the sulphates in the waters through which it rose, into the corresponding sulphurets. The precipitates gathered in such shrinkage cracks or other cavities as were favorable for its accumulation. These conditions all prevailed, so far as can be learned from the appearance of the rocks themselves, in southern Minnesota equally with southern Wisconsin. When in connection with these theoretical considerations it be remembered that occasional cuboidal pieces of galena are found in the soil in that part of the state where this dolomite occupies the surface, it may be regarded as quite probable that the lead-bearing area extends also into the state of Minnesota, and that by careful and systematic exploration it may be found in the rock itself in paying quantities.

For lime the *Galena* is not much used in Minnesota. Yet it will make a lime of superior excellence. It will burn easily and cheaply owing both to its vesicular texture and the presence of magnesia in the form of a carbonate. It will make a lime of considerable body, but less quickness in slacking and setting than that from the *Trenton*. In that respect it would resemble the quicklime from the *Lower Magnesian*, but it would be whiter, and freer from siliceous matter. The granular texture seen in some parts of the *Galena*, a character common to most magnesian limestones, has sometimes made it pass for a sandstone, and for that reason, although used for a building material, it has not generally been tested for quicklime. Lime for the local markets of southern Minnesota ought all to be supplied from this formation. It furnishes in many of its exposures, along the valleys of streams, the best of opportunities for quarrying.

When in connection with its fitness for quicklime, its merits as a building stone are considered, it is made a little surprising that no more working in this formation has been done. It not only furnishes a building material suitable for all ordinary uses in foundations and abutments for bridges, but it also cuts easily to a regular and smooth surface. Its bedding is sometimes heavy, reaching two or three feet in thickness, and the stone is strong enough to endure both pressure and long weathering. It is of a light and lively color, and in that respect has the advantage of darker colored stone. The quarries at Mantorville, owned by Messrs. Wilson and Ginsberg, have furnished a large amount of good building stone which has been hauled many miles over the country in various directions, past many inviting outcrops of the same formation. It is owing to the investigations of an amateur geologist,* that the existence of this stone in many other places has been made known to the citizens of Olmsted county. Through his recommendations it has recently been opened near the city of Rochester, and is found to supply a stone equal in all respects to that taken out at Mantorville. The quarry of Mr. Thomas Garrick, on section eighteen in the township of Rochester, Olmsted county, exposes twenty or twenty-five feet of evenly bedded *Galena*, useful for general building. At Rochester, Cook's block, the court house, the public school-house and Heaney's block are all faced and trimmed with the *Galena*, hauled from Mantorville. At Mantorville the court house and the school-house are entirely built of it; the former, however, showing several large iron stains in the front walls.

---

*Mr. W. D. Hurlbut, of Rochester, Minn.

7. UPPER SILURIAN AND DEVONIAN.

The formations that have thus far been described are all included below the Upper Silurian. The *Maquoketa shales* of Iowa, which overlie the *Galena* are also embraced in the Lower Silurian. The *Galena*, however is the highest member of the Silurian that has yet been identified in the state. It is expected that when more detailed exploration shall have been made, the remainder of the Lower Silurian, the upper Silurian and the lower portions of the Devonian will be found to occupy a considerable area in the southern portion of the state. The areas assigned to these rocks in the preliminary map accompanying this report are hence based on the known trend of other formations, and on the maps of the neighboring state of Iowa, which show the Upper Silurian and Devonian as leaving that state and entering this. The same is true of the areas given these rocks in the northwestern portion of the state, the geological map by Prof. H. Y. Hind, of the Winnipeg district, representing the Devonian and Upper Silurian as entering Minnesota from the north.

8. THE CRETACEOUS.

(a.) *Preliminary considerations.*

The geological frame-work of the state having been completed by the deposition of the foregoing Silurian (and Devonian?) rocks, it remained above the oceanic waters during the whole of the Carboniferous and a greater part of the Mesozoic ages, during which it underwent only the vicissitudes of atmospheric changes, till the period of the *Cretaceous*. Large portions of the American continent which are now dry land were yet under the waters of the ocean. At the ushering in of the *Cretaceous* a further submergence brought the *Cretaceous* seas over not only the old Devonian and Silurian dry land, but also in the states of Minnesota and Iowa* over large areas of the azoic and granitic rocks. How much of the state of Minnesota was thus submerged has not yet been ascertained.

If points of elevation only be considered, since it is found in some of the most elevated parts of the southern portion of the state, the entire state must have been submerged. It is possible the surface of the country sank below the ocean unequally, in different

---

*Compare *Geology of Iowa*, 1870, Vol. I, p. 168.

localities, and also that it rose with similar irregularity. Hence points that now show the greatest altitude above the ocean level, may have been the deepest submerged, or may have risen last. Those points also, in the state which show less altitude above the the ocean may have risen first, or may not have been submerged at all. Whatever may be the facts in regard to the northern portion of the state, which is considerably less elevated above the ocean than the southern, the seas of the *Cretaceous* certainly covered the most of the southern half of Minnesota, and probably a wide belt along its western border, reaching to the national boundary line on the north. Thus the rough frame-work of the older rocks was furnished with an outer integument which tones down their angularities by filling some of their depressions, the *Cretaceous* beds lying unconformably on them all. No attempt will be made at this stage of the survey to define the limits of the Cretaceous in Minnesota. It is said to occur in the southwestern part of the state, on the Cottonwood river, where it contains beds of lignite that have been mistaken for the outcroppings of the northern rim of the Carboniferous. It has been detected at Austin, in Mower county, where it affords angiospermous leaves. It has been described in Stearns county by Mr. Kloos. It probably occurs at Spring Valley in Fillmore county. At Stillwater is a bed of *tripoli* which is believed to belong to the *Cretaceous.* It is exposed in a little tributary of the St. Croix river about one mile north of the city. Dr. C. A. White has lately announced it at Lime Springs, in Howard county, Iowa, about five miles south of the Minnesota state line. Howard county, in Iowa, is south of Mower and Fillmore counties in Minnesota. Thus the question of the eastern limit of the *Cretaceous* in the Northwest is still an open question. The writer is not aware of any announcement of its existence in the state of Wisconsin. But on the eastern shore of lake Michigan, in the "Grand Traverse region" of the state of Michigan, occur beds of lignite associated with soft, bituminous and green clays that have been regarded as pertaining to the drift.* Mr. A. D. White, of the Michigan survey, since deceased, maintained in 1860, in his unpublished field-notes, that these lignites and clays are not of Quaternary age. Lignites of the same or similar origin also occur on the shores of lake Superior, and have in like manner been ascribed to the age of the drift. It becomes a question of great

---

*See *First biennial report of progress on the geological survey of Michigan*, 1861, p. 130.

geological interest to determine the age of these lignites, especially as lignites supposed to occupy a position near the bottom of the drift, also are reported in southern Illinois and Ohio. Besides the lignites connected with the *Lower Cretaceous*, Dr. F. V. Hayden describes many beds of lignite in the *Lower Tertiary*. What portion, if any, of the lignite beds seen in different parts of Minnesota may be of *Tertiary* age, it is not now within the province of the survey to state. The *Tertiary* may also be represented.

The rocks of this age being so little known and so meagerly represented in Minnesota, the following classification will be of value for the information of the citizens of the state and for convenience of reference in the future progress of the survey. It is essentially that of Messrs. Meek and Hayden, and is based on their examinations on the upper Missouri. It is arranged in descending order.

LATER CRETACEOUS.

No. 5. *Fox Hills group*. Yellowish and ferruginous sandstones and arenaceous clays. Characteristic fossils—*Nautilus Dekayi, Ammonites placenta, Ammonites lobatus, Scaphites Conradi, Baculites ovatus, Mosasaurus Missouriensis*. Thickness................500 feet.

No. 4. *Fort Pierre group*. Dark clays; plastic or laminated; sometimes calcareous. Characteristic fossils—*Nautilus Dekayi, Ammonites placenta, Ammonites complexus, Baculites ovatus, Baculites compressus, Helicoceras Mortoni, Inoceramus sublevis, Mosasaurus Missouriensis*. Thickness..............................700 feet.

EARLIER CRETACEOUS.

No. 3. *Niobrara group*. Grayish, calcareous marl, sometimes in massive layers of chalky limestone suitable for building. Characteristic fossils—*Ostrea congesta, Inoceramus problematicus, Inoceramus aviculoides, Inoceramus pseudo-mytiloides*. Thickness...........200 feet.

No. 2. *Fort Benton group*. Black, plastic or laminated clays, with some thin layers of limestone and sandstone. Characteristic fossils—*Inoceramus problematicus, Inoceramus umbonatus, Ostrea congesta, Pholadomya papyracea, Ammonites percarinatus, Ammonites vespertinus, Scaphites larvæformis*. Thickness.............800 feet.

No. 1. *Dakota group*. Yellowish, reddish and whitish sandstones, with some arenaceous clays and even pudding-stones, embracing lignite and impure coal, with many impressions of angiospermous leaves, and sometimes large quantities of petrified wood. Characteristic fossils—*Pharella Dakotensis, Axinæa Siouxensis, Cyprina arenaria, leaves of angiosperms*. Thickness.......................400 feet.

(b.) *Lithological characters of the Cretaceous.**

The stone exposed at Austin, in Mower county, is, in its natural color, light blue, and that color shows on most of the quarried blocks about the heart of the bedding; and on deep quarrying it is doubtless all blue. Yet the stone seen about the village is very generally of a buff color, to the depth of half an inch to three inches, depending on the amount of weathering and oxidation. The thinner beds are altogether changed to that color. The presence of considerable concretionary iron and mud balls causes a rusty stain of a yellow color over the surface of many of the slabs. These concretionary balls fall out or dissolve out when in the water, and leave cavities which become larger still. Besides these, which are not common in the compact portion of the stone, but are oftenest seen among its thin beds, there are also cavities disclosed by the fracture of the homogeneous thick beds. These are sometimes perfectly empty, but often contain loose friable matter, easily picked out but not different in color or grain from the mass of the rock. At other times such cavities, revealed on the fracture of the stone, are lined with a perfect coating of fine mammillated crystals which are naturally white and as hard as quartz, but often covered with iron-rust so as to present a red or black exterior. They are much like drusy quartz. The texture of the stone itself is usually close, and the grain is homogeneous. Some large slabs and blocks are sawn for bases to tombstones, and worked down to a very smooth surface. It is more safely sawn to any desired dimensions than cut or broken, since it fractures treacherously. Yet it is not in the least crystalline. Its aspect at a distance is that of a fine-grained sandstone. Yet it contains no apparent grit. It is so soft that it can be cut without difficulty, appearing much like an unusually indurated blue shale. It contains, but very sparingly, a few molluscous fossils which appear like a *Gryphæa.* It evidently weathers away fast, since the rotted down beds have to be removed at the quarry to the depth of nearly four feet before any stone is met worth taking out.

---

*The rock here described is of the Devonian. The fossil leaves mentioned were from Cretaceous shale lying in cavities in the rock.—N. H. W.

Just back of the place where this stone is slightly worked at Austin, perhaps fifty rods distant and 14 feet higher, in the excavation of one of the low knolls which superficially appeared to be only sand, like others opened for that purpose nearer the river, a German struck stone of the same kind within two or three feet of the surface. It consists of thin, shattered beds, all of a buff color. Enough, however, was obtained, of suitable quality, for the vault and other masonry appertaining to a small brewery. Indeed the greater portion of the cellar is dug in it. It was overlain by the following section of clays, which may not be of *Cretaceous age.*

No. 1.	Black sandy loam and soil	2 to 4 feet.
No. 2.	Band of red and variegated compact clay	6 in. to 4 feet.
No. 3.	Yellow ocherous band of clay	6 in. to 4 feet.

These bands of clay (Nos. 2 and 3) are not so regularly superimposed as indicated by the above section, but occasionally No. 3 is broken through or is wanting, and No. 2 lies on the rock, or passes down into its crevices. Yet No. 3 is generally the first over the rock. They vary in thickness and swell out in shapeless masses of hard clay. Such hard masses are seen sometimes to embrace bits of angular, earthy rock, much like ocher, varying in color from a dark burnt-umber color to a lighter shade, even to buff, and appearing, when of a lighter color, much like the mass of No. 3. They can be scratched easily with a knife, and however black they may be they give a red hæmatite streak. Yet when they are faded the streak also fades into a brown or yellowish-brown, like limonite. Intermingled very irregularly with No. 2, and sometimes also with No. 3, are masses of greenish clay which has in every other respect the same outward characters as No. 2. On searching for indications of the post-Tertiary age of this deposit, none could be found. No northern pebbles or boulders could be found in it; no sand or gravel, no vegetable or animal remains. Yet in place of the northern drift materials are these hard bits of ocher (?) of angular shape and often showing conchoidal surfaces. There are also large crystalline, detached masses of apparently a siliceous limestone which is very hard and close-grained. In some cases, however, this varies to a porous and white limestone that appears to be very pure. In connection with this description of limestone masses, it is interesting to note the occurrence at St. Charles, in Winona county, of hard, siliceous limestone masses on the surface of the ground, that appear very much like those embraced in this clay. At St. Charles there is also a large mass of argentine, or lamellar calcite, lying on the surface of a slope of a hill. It was originally four or five feet across, and about a foot thick, but has been broken up for hand specimens. It appears very much like fibrous gypsum. Its arrangement in wavy and curly layers gives it much the appearance of woody fiber, and it was regarded as a specimen of petrified wood for a number of years after its discovery. It may have been originally embraced in *Cretaceous* or *Tertiary* clays which have been destroyed and transported, or it may have weathered out from the *Trenton* shales which appear in the top of the hill.

At Austin, in the digging of Mr. L. G. Basford's well, angiospermous leaves were found in the sandstone above described. The materials passed through in this well were said to be in general, as follows:

No. 1.	Soil and loam	3 to 4 feet.
No. 2.	Clay	20 feet.
No. 3.	Rock	6 to 8 reet.

About two feet of loose stone was thrown out by picking. In these pieces the vegetable fossils were found. Two distinct varieties of leaf are disclosed. One is very much like *Ficus primordialis;* the other is unlike anything with which it has been possible yet to compare it. The specimen preserved consists of a branch apparently of a small herb. An inch and three-fourths of the main stalk is preserved. In that distance it gives off four branches, each of which seems to be as large as the main stalk, three on the left and one on the right. The whole specimen is thickly furnished with decurrent, parallel-veined leaves which have a distinct midrib. These leaves are simple, entire, oblanceolate-linear, and taper-pointed at their junction with the stalk. Their length is a quarter of an inch, varying a little above and below that size; and their width is one-twentieth of an inch. The diameter of the stalk, and that of the branches, is about half the width of the leaves. The latter diverge from the branches at an angle 40° to 45°. A photographic copy of this fossil was submitted to Dr. J. S. Newberry, who pronounces it probably a species of *Sequoia*, a gymnosperm of the Pine family known as "Redwood."

At J. Gregson's mill, two miles down the Cedar from Austin, the same rock as at Austin is observed forming a ripple so as to induce the construction of a water-power for flouring purposes. The stream here works down over about fourteen feet of rock. The beds are sometimes two feet or more thick, or the rock is entirely massive like an indurated shale. Yet in weathering the thick beds are checked by planes running mainly horizontal, instead of perpendicular or diagonal as in most shale. Although mainly horizontal, these planes are apt to unite after a few feet, splitting the heaviest beds out lenticularly. On considerable exposure the weather entirely disintegrates and destroys it. It is here worked a little below the dam, and some heavy and fine-looking slabs are taken out near the water's edge. Some parts are here plainly somewhat calcareous, and afford traces of fossil remains which have much the appearance of brachiopoda. These portions are porous as by absorbed fossils.

At Messrs. Rosenberry and Miner's quarry, near Mr. Gregson's mill, the exposed section is as follows, in descending order:

Section near Austin, in Mower county.

No. 1.—Black, loamy soil	7 to 8 ft.
No. 2.—Loose fragments of the underlying beds, and clay, mixed	3 ft.
No. 3.—Heavy stone like that described at Austin, clay filling planes and joints	10 to 12 ft.
No. 4.—Rusty bituminous films	½ to 1 in.
[On the authority of the owners of the quarry, to this section may be added, below the foregoing, the following:]	
No. 5.—Limestone, filled with shells, blue, contains flint, makes lime, penetrated	2 ft.

The bedding of No. 3 sometimes lies in detached blocks before being quarried, the corners and angles of which are replaced by clay, and the color of the stone is changed from blue to buff or drab to the depth of about two inches.

Along the sides of this quarry is considerable blue clay, containing no shells or fossils of any kind. It is exceedingly fine and plastic. It fills the openings in the rock, and is said to run down thirty feet at least, where the stone itself would naturally lie unless the beds have been considerably broken and removed. It seems to occupy a trough-like excavation in the rock about a rod wide, and has been traced by means of an iron rod several yards back from the river bank. This clay below twenty feet becomes white. This trough extends east and west.

One mile below Gregson's mill, at the mouth of Rose creek, about the same thickness of the same kind of stone may be seen in the bank and bed of the creek.

It is exposed again at Officer's mill, one mile below Rose creek, where the river passes, in the form of a little ripple, over the rock, inviting here also the improvement of the water-power.

Two miles east of Officer's mill, a farmer has struck the same rock in two separate wells on his farm, in one at the depth of three feet, and in the other at eleven feet.

Below this place no rock is said to occur in the river, differing from this, till at or near Mitchell or Osago, in the state of Iowa, twenty-eight miles from Austin, where quicklime is made from rock taken from the bank of the river.

Mr. Thomas Smith, on S. E. ¼ sec. 12, T. 102, R. 17, a few miles east of Austin, has discovered coal in the sinking of one or two wells on his farm. It has not yet been possible to compare this locality with that on the Cottonwood river, where coal is said also to occur in limited quantities; but they are both believed to be beds of lignite appertaining to the *Lower Cretaceous*. These localities will both be visited early on the opening of another season of field-work.

At Spring Valley, in the western part of Fillmore county, is an extensive bed of variegated and white clay that is generally very fine, but also sometimes embraces coarse sand grains.

Near Mankato, in Blue Earth county, the banks of the Minnesota river disclose sections of variegated and white clay.

It is not intended here to convey the fixed belief that these clays are of *Cretaceous* age. They occur in other places in the southern part of the state, and time has not yet been afforded for giving them the requisite examination. These remarks are appended to the foregoing description of rocks supposed to be of the age of the *Cretaceous*, because these clays have been seen frequently associated with those rocks, and because they do not appear to be of *Quaternary* age. When chemical examinations of these clays have been made, more positive information concerning their age and value will be received. Samples from different parts of the state have been duly collected, and submitted to the chemist of the survey.

(c.) *Economical value of Cretaceous.*

The sediments of the *Lower Cretaceous* being mainly siliceous are made up of sandstones and arenaceous clays. These clays may be distinctly arenaceous, or the sediments may be so fine that the individual grains are not distinguishable by the unaided eye. The sandstones at Austin are very fine-grained. They are utilized by Messrs. Rosenberry and Miner in the construction of bases for monuments. These blocks are sawn out by the proper machinery and given a high polish by the usual methods. The closeness and fineness of the grain render the stone capable of taking a very smooth surface. By first marking with a steel point, and properly guiding the fracture, it is cut into pieces of any dimension. Its perfect homogeneity of texture enables the cutter to depend on its checks. It makes very fine hones for razors and cutlery. It is also used instead of the celebrated "Scotch hone" for polishing marble. It is being introduced for that use into the chief markets of the Northwest from the quarry of Rosenberry and Miner. It is furnished by them to wholesale dealers in Chicago at $25 per ton. It is retailed at forty cents per pound, the Scotch hone selling for fifty cents per pound.

The bed of *tripoli* located at Stillwater, in Washington county, seems to consist almost entirely of silica, like this sandstone. Yet, its outward resemblance to many clays that are met with in the drift makes it uncertain to what age it belongs. It lies below a great mass of drift materials closely sheltered in a nook between the bluffs of Brown's creek, and if it be of *Cretaceous* age, its position alone has preserved it from the destroying action of glaciers. It is of a reddish or copper-color, the same as that of the drift clays adjacent. Its exposed thickness is about twenty feet, and it is in some places interstratified with distinct quartz sand. Yet the tripoli clay makes up the mass of the bank, the sand layers being nothing more than partings. About fourteen years ago a company was formed for the purpose of developing this deposit as a material for polishing, but nothing of importance was done. Mr. Abraham Van Vorhes, of Stillwater, is authority for the statement that about that time samples were analyzed by Professor Joseph Henry, of Washington, and by Dr. Jackson of Boston. They agreed in pronouncing it a very fine article of tripoli, equal to the Bohemian. It is at present only used to a limited extent by machinists for polishing brass and iron, and by cabinet makers for polishing varnished wood-work. A thin paste is made and the material applied usually with cork.

The clay at Rosenberry and Miner's quarry, near Austin, in Mower county, is used for putty, by simply mixing it with boiled linseed oil. It is first dried and thoroughly pulverized. It is said to act as firmly as Spanish whiting. The orcherous clays may in some places be made useful in the manufacture of a fine mineral paint.

At New Ulm, in Brown county, are two flourishing potter's establishments, owned by Messrs Dauffenbach and Gieseke, and by John Stekœrt. At the former a blue clay "from the Cottonwood" is mixed with a similar blue clay obtained from the drift at New Ulm. The latter overlies a heavy stratum of waterwashed and stratified white sand. It is said to be necessary to mix these clays to obtain a material that will not crack in the kiln, that "from the Cottonwood" being much addicted to that fault. The same clay makes a red brick when harder burned. A white clay is also used by Dauffenbach and Gieseke for making fire-brick. Their kiln and fire-arch are built of brick of their own manufacture from this clay, and appear to stand well. This clay is obtained at some distance from New Ulm, at a point said to be known only to the proprietors.

VI.

PLANS AND RECOMMENDATIONS.

The law under which the present survey is being prosecuted appropriates the sum of one thousand dollars per annum. This is too small, for various reasons, the chief of which are:

1st. It will not pay for the services of a single employe on the survey capable of working under the law. Hence, it well-nigh renders the law inoperative.

2nd. It does not command the respect and confidence of the citizens of the state and others, and serves as an excuse for refusing aid and co-operation. The survey should be independent of favors for which it now has to beg, sometimes to be scornfully rebuffed.

3d. In the survey of those portions of the state inaccessible by public roads, or by railroads, it will be necessary to employ laborers, and incur other expense, for which the sum of one thousand dollars is not sufficient.

4th. In order to conduct the survey on one thousand dollars per annum, the state geologist must find some other employment a portion of the year.

5th. The magnitude of the interests involved demands that ample means be allowed for doing the work of the survey thoroughly and without embarrassment.

These considerations ought to induce the Legislature to increase the amount now appropriated to a sum sufficient at least to keep one man constantly employed, and to pay all expense of field-work and chemical examinations.

In connection with the subject of increasing the means provided for the geological survey, it is suggested that the state lands known as *salt lands* may be so sold or appropriated, under the management of the board of regents of the university, as to be available for that purpose. It would be in perfect consonance with the original design in the reservation of these lands from sale, if they were placed in the custody of the board of regents, conditioned on their use in the prosecution of the geological and natural history survey of the state, with a view to the early and economical development of the brines of the state.

The law cannot be carried out without the purchase of chemicals and apparatus for the use of the chemical department of the survey, and without the purchase of instruments to be used in the prosecution of the field-work. It is too much to ask the state university, which now pays the services of the chemist of the survey besides furnishing rooms for laboratory work, to provide for these expenses. There ought to be a special appropriation of several hundred dollars to make these purchases. The board of regents are referred to the accompanying statement of Prof. D. P. Strange, chemist of the survey, for information on this subject.

The law creating the survey is very explicit in defining the work to be done. It requires that the geological survey proper, unless otherwise ordered by the board of regents, shall be first completed. Hence no steps have been taken toward the performance of anything not strictly *geological.* Indeed it is beyond the means afforded at present to do any work in the botanical and zoological departments, before the substantial completion of the geological portion of the survey. It is evident, however, that the aggregate expense of the geological and natural history survey will be considerably reduced by carrying on the different departments in conjunction. It would be duplicating at considerable expense, the various parties and explorations, to delay all observations and collections illustrative of the zoology and botany of the state till after the geological observations had been made. Parties would have to be sent again over much of the same territory. A special botanist or zoologist might accompany the geological party without much additional expense, making valuable collections that might otherwise be lost. Thus in an economical sense, as well as in a grander and deeper sense depending on their co-adaptation, these sciences cannot be divorced. They cannot act independently of each other. In the prosecution of the geological survey many opportunities will be offered for the furtherance of the botanical and zoological investigations.

Prof. E. H. Twining, late of the university of Minnesota, now of the university of Missouri, has furnished the accompanying list of plants found by him growing on the university grounds during his residence here as professor of chemistry in the state university.

In the prosecution of the geological survey proper, after a general reconnoissance with a view to the determination of the general trend of the formations, and the identification of sufficient characters to decide their ages, it will be necessary to enter on the detailed examination of the state by counties. This more special investigation implies the careful delineation of the outlines of the formations with all their windings, as they are found in each county, together with a scientific account of the chemical and mineralogical characters of the rocks found therein. In the progress of the survey the specific names of the fossils pertaining to the various formations will be ascertained, and in the end complete lists of these ancient faunas will be made out, to which will be added descriptions and figures to illustrate any new species that may be discovered. These investigations necessarily require much time and study, to say nothing of the labor of collecting and preserving the specimens.

The question of the existence of brine in the state of Minnesota is one of the most important, in an economical sense, that can be presented for the investigation of the survey. It should not be hastily answered. Too much is involved to be rested on the result of a guess. Too much also is involved to be prejudiced by the failure of unguided expenditures. The tests that may be made ought to be made in the fullest light of all the facts that science with its generalizations can throw upon them. It comes within the scope of geological investigation, and ought not to be hazarded in the hands of empirical novices.

The salt springs said to occur in this state may have either of two origins. They may be the results of overflow of extensive salt basins embraced in the rocky structure of the state, or they may be the result of superficial accumulations similar to the other saline and alkaline deposits that are scattered largely over the western plains. It is not intended now to give this question the discussion its importance demands at the hands of the survey. No investigation of the phenomena of the regions where these springs exist, has been made. It is only intended to suggest the importance of correct scientific processes in the future efforts for their development.

It is recommended that the law ordering the survey be amended so as to require the board of regents to supply suites of duplicate geological specimens collected to the state normal schools, after the university collection shall have been completed.

Very respectfully submitted,
N. H. WINCHELL,
State geologist.

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
ST. ANTHONY, MINN., Dec. 31, 1872.

STATEMENT OF THE CHEMIST OF THE SURVEY.

Prof. N. H. Winchell, geologist of survey:

SIR:—I have to report that I have been utterly unable to do any chemical work upon the geological survey to the present, owing to the lack of necessary apparatus, and also to the impossibility, with present heating facilities in our laboratory, of conducting any chemical analysis during the winter season.

Very respectfully,
D. P. STRANGE,
Chemist of survey.

LIST OF PLANTS.

Mostly herbaceous in the neighborhood of St. Anthony, Minnesota—principally found on the university grounds.

1869—1872.

BY PROFESSOR E. H. TWINING.

RANUNCULACEÆ.

Ranunculus rhomboideus.
R. repens.
R. abortivus.
R. Pennsylvanicus.
R. sceleratus.
Anemone Nuttalliana.
A. nemorosa.
A. Pennsylvanica.
A. cylindrica.
A. Virginica.
A. thalictroides.
Actæa spicata.
Aquilegia Canadensis.
Thalictrum Cornuti.
Delphinium azureum.
Clematis Virginiana.
Caltha palustris.

PAPAVERACEÆ.

Sanguinaria Canadensis.

VIOLACEÆ.

Viola cucullata.
V. delphinifolia.
V. pubescens.
V. pedata.

CRUCIFERÆ.

Turritis stricta.
Arabis lævigata.
Capsella Bursa-pastoris.
Lepidium Virginicum.

GERANIACEÆ.

Geranium maculatum.
Impatiens fulva.

HYDROPHYLLACEÆ.

Hydrophyllum Virginicum.

OXALIDACEÆ.

Oxalis stricta.
O. violacea.

CARYOPHYLLACEÆ.

Arenaria lateriflora.
Stellaria longifolia.
Silene antirrhina.
Agrostemma Githago.

LEGUMINOSÆ.

Lupinus perennis.
L ochroleucus.
L. venosus.
Vicia Americana.
Astragalus Canadensis.
A. caryocarpus.
Psoralea argophylla.
Amorpha canescens.
A. fruticosa.
Petalostemon candidus.
P. violaceus.
P. villosus.
Amphicarpæa monoica.
Apios tuberosa.
Phaseolus diversifolius.
Desmodium acuminatum.
D. Canadense.
Cassia Chamæcrista.

POLEMONIACEÆ.

Phlox pilosa.

SAXIFRAGACEÆ.

Heuchera hispida.
Parnassia Caroliniana.

ROSACEÆ.

Geum strictum.
G. album.
G. triflorum,
Fragaria vesca.
F. Virginiana.
Rosa blanda.
Potentilla Norvegica.
P. Canadensis.

P. Anserina.
P. arguta.
Spiræa salicifolia.
Prunus Virginiana.
Agrimonia Eupatoria.
Amelanchier Canadensis.
Rubus Canadensis.

BORRAGINACEÆ.

Lithospermum canescens.
L. hirtum.
L. longiflorum.
Echinospermum Lappula.
E. Redowskii.
Cynoglossum Morrisoni.

VERBENACEÆ.

Verbena hastata.
V. bracteosa.
V. urticæfolia.
V. stricta.
Phryma Leptostachya.

LABIATÆ.

Mentha Canadensis.
Leonurus Cardiaca.
Lophanthus anisatus.
Stachys palustris,
S. " var. aspera.
Monarda fistulosa.
Lycopus Europæus.
Teucrium Canadense.
Pycnanthemum lanceolatum.
Scutellaria parvula.
S. lateriflora.
Nepeta Cataria.

GROSSULACEÆ.

Ribes floridum.
R. Cynosbati.

CAPRIFOLIACEÆ.

Sambucus pubens.
Viburnum.
Symphoricarpus occidentalis.
Lonicera.

RUBIACEÆ.

Galium boreale.
G. triflorum.

CORNACEÆ.

Cornus circinata.

ARALIACEÆ.

Aralia racemosa.

UMBELLIFERÆ.

Sanicula Marilandica.
Cicuta maculata.
Pastinaca sativa.
Thaspium.

CUCURBITACEÆ.

Echinocystis lobata.

ONAGRACEÆ.

Epilobium coloratum.
E. palustre.
Œnothera biennis.
O. serrulata.

VITACEÆ.

Vitis cordifolia.

RHAMNACEÆ.

Ceanothus Americanus.

LINACEÆ.

Linum rigidum.

MALVACEÆ.

Malva rotundifolia,

HYPERICACEÆ.

Hypericum pyramidatum.

CISTACEÆ.

Helianthemum Canadense.

CAPPARIDACEÆ.

Polanisia graveolens.

FUMARIACEÆ.

Dicentra Canadensis.

SARRACENIACEÆ.

Sarracenia purpurea.

NYMPHÆACEÆ.

Nymphæa odorata.
Nuphar advena.

COMPOSITÆ.

Taraxacum Dens-leonis.
Troximon cuspidatum.
Antennaria margaritacea.
A. Pennsylvanica.
Erigeron Philadelphicum.
E. bellidifolium.
Senecio aureus.
Chrysopsis villosa.
Cynthia Virginica.
Achillea Millefolium.
Rudbeckia hirta.
R. laciniata.
Heliopsis lævis, var scabra.
Coreopsis palmata.
Helianthus strumosus.
H. rigidus.
H. giganteus.
H. hirsutus.
Solidago lanceolata.
S. Missouriensis.
S. latifolia.
S. nemoralis.
S. Canadensis.
S. rigida.
Eupatorium purpureum.
E. perfoliatum.
E. ageratoides.
Sonchus asper.
Lepachys pinnata.
Aster Novæ-Angliæ.
A. cordifolius.
A. azureus.
A. lævis.
A. multiflorus.
A. sericeus.
Lactuca elongata.
Liatris scariosa.
Helenium autumnale.
Nabalus albus.
N. racemosus.
Ambrosia trifida.
Lygodesmia juncea.
Bidens chrysanthemoides.
B. bipinnata.

SCROPHULARIACEÆ.

Rhinanthus Crista-galli.
Castilleia coccinea.
Pentstemon grandiflorus.
P. pubescens.
Scrophularia nodosa.
Veronica Americana
V. Virginica.
Mimulus Jamesii.
M. ringens.
Linaria vulgaris.
Verbascum Thapsus.
Gerardia tenuifolia.
G. purpurea.

Chelone glabra.
Pedicularis lanceolata.

SOLANACEÆ.

Physalis angulata.
Solanum nigrum.

GENTIANACEÆ.

Gentiana crinita.
G. Andrewsii.

POLYGONACEÆ.

Rumex Acetosella.
R. crispus.
Polygonum Convulvulus.
P. aviculare.
P. Persicaria.

CAMPANULACEÆ.

Campanula rotundifola.
C. aparinoides.

LOBELIACEÆ.

Lobelia spicata.
L. syphilitica.

NYCTAGINACEÆ.

Oxybaphus nyctagineus.
O. angustifolius.

ERICACEÆ.

Pyrola elliptica.

PRIMULACEÆ.

Lysimachia ciliata.

ASCLEPIADACEÆ.

Asclepias ovalifolia.
A. tuberosa.
A. Cornuti.

APOCYNACEÆ.

Apocynum and rosæmifolium.

EUPHORBIACEÆ.

Euphorbia corollata.
E. maculata.
E. cyathophora.

SALICACEÆ.

Salix lucida.

ORCHIDACEÆ.

Cypripedium pubescens.
C. spectabile.
Spiranthes graminea.

ALISMACEÆ.

Sagittaria variabilis.

LILIACEÆ.

Trillium cernuum.
Uvularia grandiflora.
U. sessilifolia.
Maianthemum bifolium.
Smilacina stellata.
Polygonatum biflorum.
Allium cernuum.
Lilium Canadense.
L. superbum.

IRIDACEÆ.

Sisyrinchium Bermudiana.

AMARYLLIDACEÆ.

Hypoxys erecta

COMMELYNACEÆ.

Tradescantia Virginica.

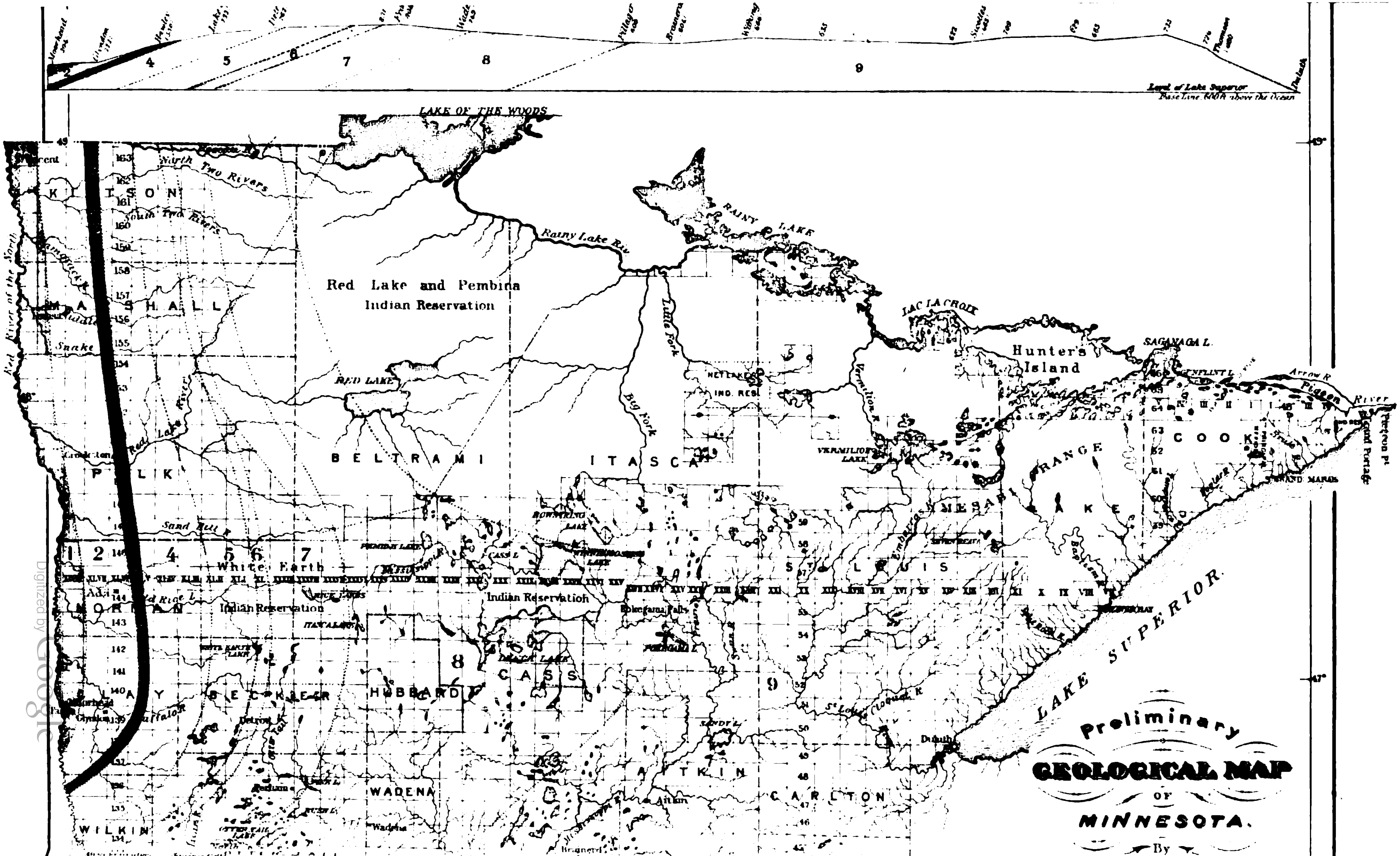
CYPERACEÆ.

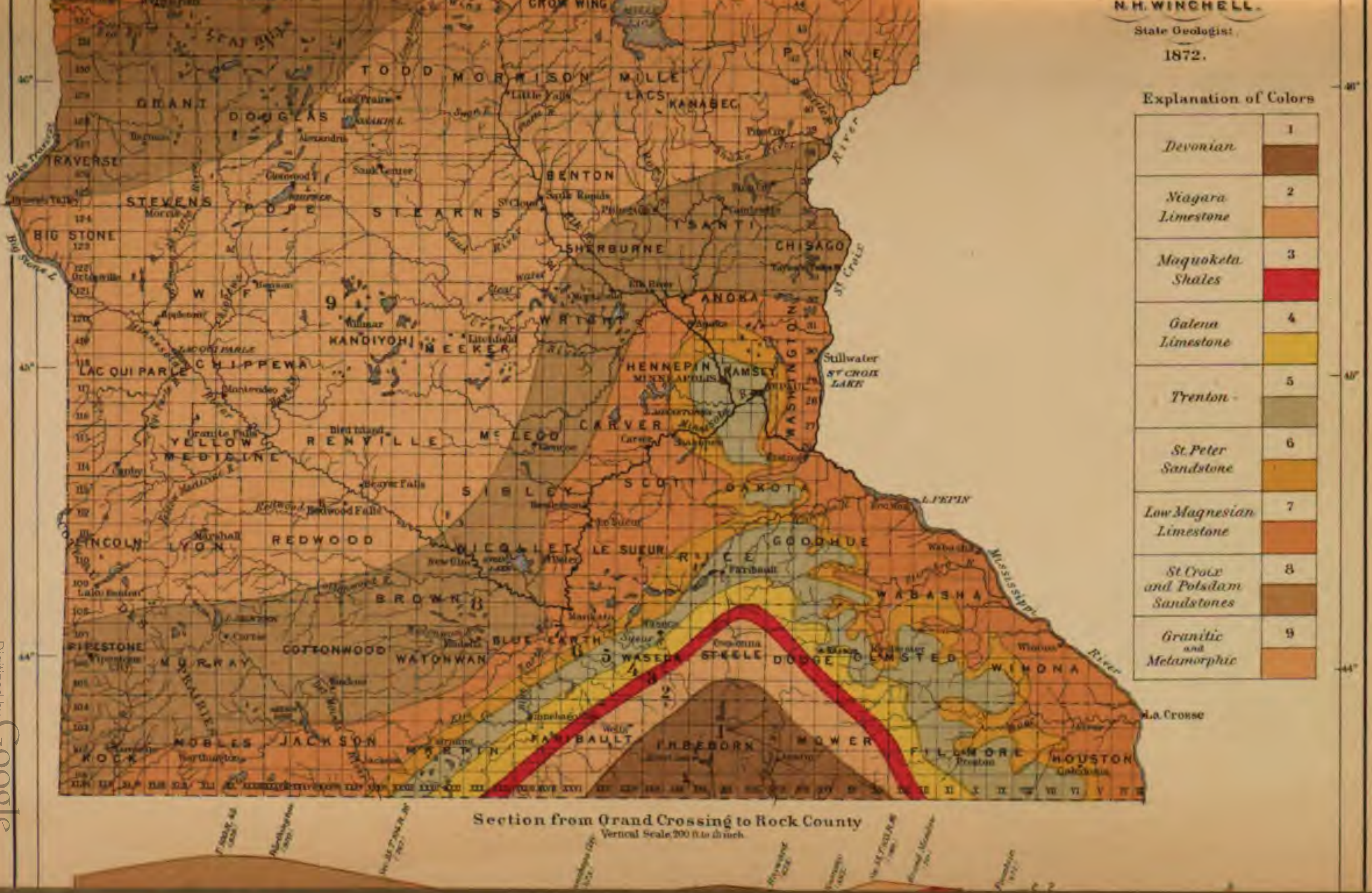
Cyperus dentatus.

GRAMINEÆ.

Phleum pratense.
Setaria viridis.
Agrostis vulgaris.
Triticum caninum.
Cenchrus tribuloides.

Note.—The descent of the Mississippi from St. Paul to "grand crossing," opposite La Crosse, is 57 feet, as ascertained through the Milwaukee & St. Paul and Southern Minnesota railroads. If the distance between St. Paul and "grand crossing" be taken at 134½ miles, and if 22½ miles be omitted for lake Pepin, the average fall per mile of the Mississippi river is .509 feet. General Warren ascertained the average descent of the Mississippi from St. Paul to Hastings to be .556 ft. per mile.


Preliminary
GEOLOGICAL MAP
OF
MINNESOTA.
By
Level of Lake Superior
Base Line 600 ft above the Ocean
Moorhead
Glyndon
Hawley
Lake
Frazee
Wadena
Pillager
Brainerd
Kettle River
Scanlon
Thomson
Duluth
LAKE OF THE WOODS
Red Lake and Pembina
Indian Reservation
RED LAKE
Rainy Lake Riv.
RAINY LAKE
LAC LA CROIX
Hunter's
Island
SAGANAGA L.
GUNFLINT L.
Arrow R.
Pigeon River
Grand Portage
Pigeon Pt
GRAND MARAIS
COOK
LAKE
MESABI RANGE
VERMILION LAKE
Vermilion R.
NETT LAKE IND. RES.
Little Fork
Big Fork
BELTRAMI
ITASCA
ST. LOUIS
CARLTON
AITKIN
CASS
HUBBARD
WADENA
BECKER
CLAY
NORMAN
POLK
MARSHALL
KITTSON
WILKIN
White Earth
Indian Reservation
Indian Reservation
Pokegama Falls
LEECH LAKE
WINNIBIGOSHISH LAKE
BOWSTRING LAKE
CASS L.
Mississippi R.
Sand Hill R.
Red Lake River
Snake
North Two Rivers
South Two Rivers
Red River of the North
Wild Rice L.
Buffalo R.
Otter Tail R.
Crow Wing R.
Detroit
Aitkin
Duluth
St. Louis R.
Cloquet R.
Embarrass R.
Baptism R.
Sandy L.
LAKE SUPERIOR
49°
48°
47°
1
2
4
5
6
7
8
9


N. H. WINCHELL.
State Geologist.
1872.
Explanation of Colors
Devonian 1
Niagara Limestone 2
Maquoketa Shales 3
Galena Limestone 4
Trenton 5
St. Peter Sandstone 6
Low Magnesian Limestone 7
St. Croix and Potsdam Sandstones 8
Granitic and Metamorphic 9
CROW WING
TODD
MORRISON
MILLE LACS
KANABEC
PINE
GRANT
DOUGLAS
TRAVERSE
STEVENS
POPE
STEARNS
BENTON
ISANTI
CHISAGO
BIG STONE
SHERBURNE
ANOKA
WRIGHT
KANDIYOHI
MEEKER
LAC QUI PARLE
CHIPPEWA
HENNEPIN
RAMSEY
WASHINGTON
CARVER
McLEOD
RENVILLE
YELLOW MEDICINE
SCOTT
DAKOTA
SIBLEY
REDWOOD
LINCOLN
LYON
NICOLLET
LE SUEUR
RICE
GOODHUE
WABASHA
BROWN
BLUE EARTH
WASECA
STEELE
DODGE
OLMSTED
WINONA
PIPESTONE
MURRAY
COTTONWOOD
WATONWAN
ROCK
NOBLES
JACKSON
MARTIN
FARIBAULT
FREEBORN
MOWER
FILLMORE
HOUSTON
Stillwater
St. Croix Lake
L. Pepin
Mississippi River
St. Croix River
Big Stone L.
Lake Traverse
La Crosse
Minneapolis
Faribault
Winona
Section from Grand Crossing to Rock County
Vertical Scale 200 ft. to 1/8 inch
46°
45°
44°

557.1
M6

UNIV. OF MICH.
MAY 18 1909

THE

GEOLOGICAL

AND

NATURAL HISTORY

SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

THE SECOND ANNUAL REPORT.

FOR THE YEAR 1873.
[SECOND EDITION.]

By N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist,
AND
S. F. PECKHAM, State Chemist.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY,
DECEMBER 31, 1873.

MINNEAPOLIS:
HARRISON & SMITH, STATE PRINTERS.
[illegible]

THE

GEOLOGICAL

AND

NATURAL HISTORY

SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

THE SECOND ANNUAL REPORT.

FOR THE YEAR 1873.

[SECOND EDITION.]

By N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist,
AND
S. F. PECKHAM, State Chemist.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY,
DECEMBER 31, 1873.

MINNEAPOLIS:
HARRISON & SMITH, STATE PRINTERS,
1893.

BOARD OF REGENTS.

JOHN S. PILLSBURY, President,	Minneapolis.
JOHN NICOLS, Treasurer.	St. Paul.
A. A. HARWOOD, Secretary,	Austin.
H. H. SIBLEY,	St. Paul.
C. S. BRYANT,	St. Paul.
PARIS GIBSON,	Minneapolis.

EX OFFICIO.

Governor, HORACE AUSTIN,	St. Paul
Superintendent of Public Instruction, H. B. WILSON,	Red Wing
President, W. W. FOLWELL,	St. Anthony

[**NOTE**—This edition is identical with the original, excepting the correction of typographical errors. As this report was published originally only as a part of the regents' report, it has the paging of that report.—N. H. W.]

ADDRESS.

To the president of the University:

I have the honor to offer the accompanying report on the progress of the geological and natural history survey of the state, for the year 1873. The last Legislature increased the means provided for the prosecution of the survey, by doubling the cash appropriation, making it two thousand dollars annually, and transferred to the board of regents the state lands known as "*salt spring lands,*" the proceeds of which they are required to expend exclusively in the prosecution of this work. At the same time the board of regents of the University were required to direct the immediate survey of the peat deposits of the state, and to cause an investigation and report on the salt springs.

While these special investigations have been carried on as far and as thoroughly as possible, the progress of the general survey has also been pushed as far as the means and time would permit.

In general, the field of observations has been, during the season of 1873, in the southwestern part of the state. The valley of the Minnesota, and those of some of its tributaries, have been subjected to a reconnoissance which has served to answer many questions that were important to answer before entering on the detailed county work, and in that manner has also served to prolong, though not yet to complete, the preliminary survey that occupied the short season of 1872. The results of this reconnoissance, both scientific and economical, will be found stated in the proper places in the accompanying report.

The counties of Cottonwood, Jackson and Nobles have been subjected to thorough inspection for peat. Incidental examinations have also been made on peat deposits in the counties of Dakota, Hennepin, Ramsey, Le Sueur, Nicollet, Faribault and Stearns. Prof. S. F. Peckham, the chemist of the survey, has made the analysis of thirteen specimens. Before his appointment six specimens were also submitted to Dr. P. B. Rose, of Ann Arbor, Michigan, for analysis. The reports of these gentlemen will also be found in the accompanying report, supplemented by remarks on the methods of working peat, and its value as a fuel for general use, and by sundry practical conclusions on the peats of Minnesota.

The question of the existence of Carboniferous coal in Minnesota, has also occupied considerable time during the past season. The frequent statements, positively put forth in the public prints, of the finding of considerable quantities of good coal in the southern and southwestern part of the state, together with the published opinion of Mr. H. H. Eames, reporting to the Legislature in 1866, to the effect that the Carboniferous rocks of the state of Iowa are prolonged northward into Minnesota, and there furnish the "coal" of the Cottonwood and Redwood valleys, induced the attempt to determine, as far as possible, the source of the float coal found, and the real age of the rocks explored for coal in that portion of the state. This question was believed to be paramount to all others bearing on the fuel supply, and although its solution is not entirely accomplished, yet enough has been ascertained to warrant certain practical and important conclusions. The facts on which these conclusions are based, will be found stated in different parts of the following report, and need not be repeated here.

1st. The rocks that have been explored for coal, on the Cottonwood and Redwood rivers, belong to the Cretaceous system, and do not promise to be productive of coal in valuable quantities.

2d. The coal there taken out is of an inferior grade, though varying from cannel coal to charcoal.

3d. As the rocks of the Cretaceous period are believed to have existed throughout the most of the state, the only probable exception being in the southeastern portion, including half a dozen counties, such coal is likely to occur at a great many places.

4th. The "float" coal which has so often attracted the attention of the people, is derived, so far as yet known, from the disruption of the Cretaceous rocks by the glaciers of the ice period. It is scattered through the drift, and is met with in wells and other excavations, and may be often picked up along the beds of streams.

5th. The only part of the state where good coal-bearing strata of the Carboniferous age may occur, comprises the counties of Mower, Freeborn and Faribault. As these counties are heavily covered with drift, the question can be settled definitely only by drilling or shafting to the rock. Should Carboniferous rocks be met in Faribault county, there would also be some reason for exploring for the same in the southeastern portion of Blue Earth county.

In regard to the investigation of the salt springs, nothing further has been done than to ascertain their history, and the present condition of the United States land grant. It has been found that the original grant covered 46,080 acres. Of this the state was unable to avail itself of 11,520 acres, that amount being situated outside of the area surveyed by the U. S. government. The springs, however, lying outside of the surveyed portions of the state, were carefully located by metes and bounds, and at the order of governor Sibley the request was entered at the Land Department at Washington that the lands appertaining to each spring so located, also those lying within the surveyed portions, claimed by the State under the act of Congress admitting the State into the Union, be withheld from sale and occupancy. They have not been so withheld, and those lands have not been certified to the State. This fact reduced the original available grant to 34,560 acres. It has been further reduced by the occupancy by settlers, 6,752 acres. About 1,600 acres were also previously covered by the terms of the act granting swamp lands to the State. The remainder, 26,435 acres, have been certified to the State. The Belle Plaine salt company were granted 7,643 acres of the certified salt spring lands, on complying with the acts of the Legislature. The rest of the certified lands, amounting to 18,771 acres, are now available for the prosetion of the survey. The uncertified portion of the original grant. aggregating 19,872 acres, inasmuch as the whole was properly selected and located within the terms of the "enabling act," should be the subject of a memorial to Congress, as suggested by auditor McIlrath, in his report for 1871. It is believed that the U. S. government would gladly make up, by an additional grant, the deficiency that has resulted in great loss to the State, through the neglect or inadvertence of its own officers.

The traveling expenses have been materially reduced during the past season by the courtesy of the officers of the following railroads, who have granted me continuous passes over their roads, viz: the St. Paul and Sioux City, and Sioux City and St. Paul; the Southern Minnesota; the Northern Pacific, and the St. Paul and Pacific.

Dr. I. A. Lapham, director of the geological survey of Wisconsin, has furnished a catalogue of the plants of Minnesota, made up from various sources, including his own observations, and known to be growing in the state at the date of 1865. The reputation of Dr. Lapham for scientific accuracy, not only increases the value of this gift, but makes it highly desirable that its publication be not delayed. Although not strictly of a geological character, yet it comes within the scope of the survey and is herewith presented.

A great many individuals have aided in the prosecution of the survey during the past season. Of these, I can name Prof. Ira Moore, of St. Cloud, who has also donated to the university museum a number of interesting fossils and minerals from various localities; W. Z. Haight, of Delevan, who has taken great interest in the peat investigations, and has furnished much information on the manufacture of peat in Faribault county; Gov. Stephen Miller, of Windom; I. J. Rochussen, of St. Paul; Park Worden, of Minnesota Falls; Henry Hill and A. J. Luce, of Granite Falls, and Capt. H. H. Herrick, of DeGraff, Dak. Ter. I am also under many obligations to the citizens of Cottonwood, Nobles and Jackson counties, for assistance in making the peat survey in those counties.

In the examination of the Minnesota valley I was accompanied as far as to Mankato, and thence up the Blue Earth to Wells, by Mr. P. P. Furber, a student in the university. From Mankato to the head of Big Stone lake, Mr. C. E. Chatfield, also a student in the university was my only companion. The assistance of these young men contributed greatly to the thoroughness and success of the exploration of that valley. We depended on the scattered inhabitants for sustenance, and traveled with a single horse and light, covered wagon. At night we usually slept in our tent, camping near some farmer of whom we obtained meals.

Very respectfully,
N. H. WINCHELL.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
Minneapolis, Dec. 31, 1873.

I.

THE BELLE PLAINE SALT WELL.

(a) *General section of the well.*

The report on the Belle Plaine salt well, which was printed by order of the senate, in Jan. 1872 [Ex. Docs. of Minn. for 1872, vol. I. p. 44] covered only that part of the drill above 210 feet, and pertained only to the drift materials, or to the deposits overlying the Silurian rocks. There are some reasons for believing a portion of the loose materials passed through in that distance belong to the Cretaceous. It is known that some portions of that formation consist of loose materials, and they may be mistaken for drift, especially in a region where the soft rocks of that age are not known to exist, by workmen who are not exact observers, but are prone to classify the rocks they happen to encounter according to their visible characters and the ease with which they are penetrated. The occurrence of occasional vegetable fragments is further evidence of the preglacial age of those materials. Since that report was made the well has been sunk to the depth of 710 feet.

The section of the well is thus described by Mr. P. M. Barker, who superintended the work:

Surface and drift	216	feet
Potsdam sandrock	16	"
Ochreous shale	10	"
Soapstone, variegated and mottled	40	"
Semi-igneous formation	108	"
Red shale or marl	6	"
Igneous formation	314	"
Total depth of well	710	"

(b) *Notes and letter of A. Winchell.*

In July, 1872, samples of the preserved drillings from depths from 242 feet to 411 feet were forwarded to Prof. A. Winchell, for examination. His notes and accompanying letter to Gov. Austin are as follows:

At depth of 242 ft.—Highly magnesian clays—purple and speckled with white—mostly without siliceous grains. Generally no conclusive evidence for deciding whether drift or in place. On the whole, I think the fragments are from a formation in place. One of them contains a few quartzose grains, and has a decidedly metamorphic look. All the specimens resemble softened porphyries.

368 ft.—A mass of granules or chips, similar to above, but more uniformly red, and less unctuous. All crush under the knife and exhibit a streak lighter than the mineral—sometimes grayish.

380 ft.—Fragments still more like (242-282) but less unctuous. A broken crystal of calcite.

385 ft.—Fragment (nearly a cubic inch) of a rock, composed apparently of reddish clay and a white mineral, like magnesia or kaolin intimately mixed. The white mineral tending in places to veins. The aspect is decidedly that of a rock in place.

390 ft.—Fragments like (380) but with more calcite, and one slightly polished fragment of glassy quartzite.

398 ft.—Almost identical with (390). From the same depth, however, is a lump of adhesive clay, which is evidently produced by grinding up rock like (242-282).

400 ft.—Essentially like (242-282).

405 ft.—Essentially the same—with one fragment of quartz.

409 ft.—Same.

411 ft.—Same.

There is, in addition, a parcel of fragments from some depth not indicated. Their general character is like that of (242-282). It is easy to see that one of them is a brecciated rock composed of fragments of argillaceous character and quite soft. One is unequally cemented by a deposit of calcite.

From an examination of the specimens and the study of everything that has been written which could bear upon the question, I am led to think the rocks now being bored through, belong to the sub-Silurian series—probably equivalent to the quartzite and pipestone outcropping about New Ulm and in Pipestone county, Minnesota. (White, Io. Rep. I, pp. 169, 170; Shumard: Owen's Rep. p. 491.)

LETTER TO GOV. AUSTIN.

Ann Arbor, Mich., 12 Aug., 1872.

Gov. Horace Austin, St. Paul, Minn.,

SIR: Yours of the 24th of July was found awaiting me on my return from the east, though the case of specimens did not arrive until August 5th, when I was prostrated by an obstinate fever, which has continued for a week. Improving such opportunities as I have had, I have made a pretty thorough physical examination of the specimens and reviewed all that has been published on the question of their identification and their relations to the geology of Belle Plaine, and I would respectfully report as follows:

1. Neither your note nor the accompanying one from Mr. Hooper intimates whether the materials passed through below 200 feet are wholly of the kind sent, or whether these fragments and masses were found mixed with much clay and sand, and even hard pebbles.

I infer, however, from an inspection of the specimens, that they are samples of rocky strata found in place.

At the same time, their uniform softness for 200 feet is very remarkable, and would suggest that the drill is passing through strata which are highly tilted.

2. Mr. Hooper informed me, last year, that at 202 feet shelly rock had been reached, which, at 210 feet, became solid sandstone and constituted a bed-rock. I inferred that this was the Potsdam sandstone, and still think that whatever there was of it. belonged to that formation. Between 210 and 242 feet, I have no information; and it appears that the sandstone, [a lower sandstone than that at St. Paul,] was completely pierced in that interval or less. The old well was, therefore, very near the bottom, or perhaps quite at the bottom of the sandstone. The ancient valley of the Minnesota river, which probably once discharged the waters of a much wider hydrographic basin, was eroded completely to the sub-Silurian rocks.

3. These sub-Silurian rocks are very remarkable. All the samples are agillo-magnesian, mostly fine-grained, unctuous, sometimes lined and frequently speckled with a white mineral like magnesia or kaolin. They present almost no grains of quartz, but sometimes enclose crystals and seams of calcite, The color is reddish and purplish. Viewed without a test for hardness, they look like vitreous porphyry. I am led to think they represent the formation known to outcrop at New Ulm and in Pipestone county. These clays, in fact, are substantially the catlinite or "pipestone" so well known in that county.

4. If these conclusions are correct, there is no hope, either of salt or a well of fresh water, by boring deeper, and not another dollar ought to be expended in this hope.

5. It will be noted that my recommendation in my former report suggested the propriety of boring *only to the bottom of the Potsdam sandstone.* As there intimated, there are certainly many regions in Minnesota, where a well bored to the bottom of this formation, would prove to be artesian. Belle Plaine, as I feared, does not prove to be favorably located. Places situated for borings, at public expense, ought to be intelligently selected, without any regard to the interests of localities, and the State ought not to be committed to unwise expenditures by the precipitate and ill-advised enterprise of smart business places.

Lest this remark, however, should be thought to apply too severely to Belle Plaine, I ought to add that considerable reason existed for boring at that place--though by no means as good reason as many supposed. The fault committed here as in so many other cases, was an attempt to proceed independently of geological knowledge in the beginning, and to call for scientific aid, not so much to guide an important enterprise, as to help it out of difficulty.

Very respectfully,
A. WINCHELL.

(c) *Notes and report of N. H. Winchell.*

In February, 1873, the writer had occasion to further examine this well, under verbal instructions from Gov. Austin. Samples preserved by the owners from below the depth of 411 feet, were found to have the following external characters. The memorandum is here given, as well as the report subsequently made to Gov. Austin, in order to preserve to science the record of the drill, and to complete the history of the exploration:

At 420 ft.—Ferruginous quartzite, with a considerable admixture of light-colored, softer, apparently talcose fragments. The quartzite is hard, and very impure. The talcose fragments are either nearly white or speckled with rusty and black spots. There are also in the drillings pieces of calcite, a soft, greenish substance that may be silicate of iron, and occasional fragments of translucent quartz, either white or slightly tinted with yellow or with green.

At 430 ft.—A mixture of dark brown or reddish silicates, strongly ferruginous, with slight traces of mica and some pieces of calcite. Some of it appears conglomeritic, or tufaceous. It is slightly unctuous in the fingers, and some of it is real iron ore. The light-colored pieces of the last (420 feet) are rarely seen. There are in it occasionally greenish pieces of quartz. It is evidently a metamorphosed sedimentary rock.

At 440 ft.—A ferruginous, unctuous shale, with very little grit. It sometimes is spotted with a white substance about as hard as talc, which has a greasy feel. This white substance seems to be the same as mentioned in the foregoing. It is sometimes minutely disseminated among the ferruginous portions. When then rubbed in the fingers, a rusty or irony stain covers the whole. Some of this is plainly siliceous and micaceous.

At 450 ft.—About the same as at 430 ft. but darker colored and less firm in the fingers. It is plainly micaceous.

At 460 ft.—Dark greenish-brown, micaceous silicates; hard and compact. Not evidently unctuous. No feldspar is discernible.

At 470 ft.—A talcose, furruginous shale, of a reddish-brown color, with occasional pieces of greenish silicates. In this lot there are also several pieces of evident flesh-colored feldspar.

At 480 ft.—A mixture of ferruginous silicates with some mica and talc and calcite; with occasional pieces also of the soft, greenish substance mentioned at 420 feet. The last is softer than calcite. The general color of the whole is dark red or brown.

At 490 ft.—The same as at 480 feet.

At 500 ft.—The same as at 480 feet.

At 510 ft.—The same as at 480 feet, but more friable, apparently, as the sample is in the form of sand. There are also in this lot several large fragments of ferruginous shale, which have a greasy feel, probably broken from the overlying beds by the bucket and brought up with the drillings.

At 520 ft.—A very dark, ferruginous mixture of the various silicates, including the light green soft substance, resembling silicate of iron. This last also resembles talc, and is as soft.

At 530 ft.—A red arenaceous shale, with some talc and calcite, and also fragments of flesh-colored feldspar.

At 540 ft.—The same as at 530 feet.

At 550 ft.—Fragments of dark red, coarse shale, like the last, and of a darker slightly greenish shale, that appears as if originally amygdaloidal, the cavities having been subsequently filled by the soft green substance mentioned at 520 ft. This latter mass is sometimes closely mixed with small geodes with rusty exterior.

At 570 ft.—A dark brown shale, like the dark shale in the last, closely mingled with the soft, greenish (silicate of iron?)

At 580 ft.—The same as at 570 feet.

At 590 ft.—The same as at 570 feet, but showing a little more red, and also evident pieces of calcite.

At 600 ft.—The same as at 590 feet, but with increasing quantities of the greenish, soft substance.

At 614 to 620 ft.—A mixture of the various silicates with considerable iron, the quartzitic characters being much more evident than at 570 feet. It is also firmer—hardly a shale.

At 620 ft.—The same as the last.

The well is said to be 710 feet in depth, and the opinion is prevalent that there was no change from 620 feet to that depth. As there are no preserved samples below 620 feet, it is also probable that there was no marked change in the rock. If that be correct, it gives a thickness of 292 feet of rock, which may all be classed as a siliceous unctuous shale, highly ferruginous, and sometimes amygdaloidal, varying to a micaceous quartzite. It seems to be a metamorphosed sedimentary rock, lying below both the St. Croix sandstone and the Potsdam sandstone.

On the basis of these notes was made the following report:

REPORT TO GOVERNOR AUSTIN.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
ST. ANTHONY, MINN.,
8th Feb. 1873.

Gov. Horace Austin, St. Paul, Minn. :

According to verbal instructions from you, given on the 6th instant, I proceeded yesterday to Belle Plaine, for the purpose of making examination of the premises and the preserved samples of the drillings from the well sunk at that place, for testing the rocks for brine. The object of my visit was to ascertain the propriety of further expenditure by the State at that point, either for the purpose of proving the rock further for brine, or for purely scientific results.

I did not enter into a careful examination of the derrick and machinery, but suppose them to be, as represented, in perfect order, and ready for operation at any time. The springs that are said to be briny are situated near the drilled well. I obtained a sample of the water for analysis. To the taste it does not show brine, but a careful examination may prove it to hold a small amount of salt.* These springs issue from the base of the drift bluffs that enclose the river valley, and, according to all the information I could gather, are dependent altogether on the surface deposits for their supply. The owners of the well also say they have met no indications of brine in the well since they struck the rock, but that at varying depths in the drift materials, the water pumped out showed more or less saline property. The drift materials are said to have proved to be there 216 feet in thickness.

The preserved drillings which I examined pertain to that part of the well below 420 feet, and I can report only on that portion of the well. They extend moreover only to the depth of 620 feet. The well is said to be 710 feet deep. Without entering into details as to the character of those drillings, a matter that will find place in my next annual report, I may say that they consist in general of a siliceous, apparently talcose, shale, varying to a micaceous quartzite. It seems the whole thickness covered by the drillings I saw, is taken up with a metamorphosed sedimentary rock that lies below the St. Croix sandstone, and also probably below the Potsdam sandstone. Hence the bottom of the well is in the Huronian slates and schists, but has not yet struck the granite. In this statement it is presumed that the interval unrepresented by drillings (from 620 feet to 710 feet) is filled up, according to the opinion of the owners, by the same general class of rocks. I have no hesitation in saying that *in the rocks of that age there is almost a certainty that no salt would be obtained, and that no lower formation would offer better inducement to sink the well deeper*.

---

*See the report of Prof. Peckham.

The only other reason for sinking the well deeper is on purely scientific grounds, viz.: to ascertain the character of the rock below the present bottom of the well.

In respect to this I wish to say:

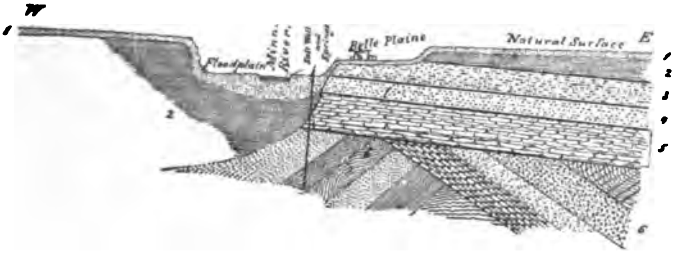
First.—The well is not located where the most light could be thrown on the geology of the state by such an exploration. There are vast districts where even the nature of the outcropping rock at the surface is unknown, to say nothing of those that succeed it in descending order. The geology of the vicinity of Belle Plaine is pretty well made out, especially in the light of the developments of this well.

Second.—The rocks that would succeed that in which the drill stopped would be best examined where they are abundantly exposed at the surface. They belong to the class of "granitic and metamorphic" rocks, colored on my preliminary geological map of the state, and our knowledge of them is at present so limited, that before their natural outcrops are examined carefully, it is not certain that we should derive satisfactory and useful information of their nature, by sinking a drilled well through them, or into them. They are the rocks, moreover, that are least likely to need such exploration, on account of their being extensively tilted and broken by early volcanic forces so as to expose their thickness and contents to the inspection of the geologist.

Third.—It cannot be denied that the science of geology might be considerably advanced by sinking this well deeper-presuming all the time that careful records be kept and samples be submitted to a geologist for examination. It is at the same time certain that no important question, involving the geology of the state, is pending on what might be developed.

The question may arise--if there is salt in the water at Belle Plaine, what is its source, and can it be made useful? If there be salt in the spring water there, it must issue from some part of the drift. It may be derived at first from some of the underlying formations, as the St. Croix sandstone, or the Lower Magnesian limestone, or it may come from the Cretaceous. which lies in many places unconformably on all the older rocks, but is generally deeply covered by drift. In either of these cases it would be best and soonest developed by drilling at some point east of Belle Plaine, say fifteen miles, as the rocks dip in that direction. The annexed diagram illustrates the situation of the well drilled, in respect to the rocks, and shows the positions of the formations and their dip. None of these formations, however, are known to contain brine in this country, if we except doubtfully the Cretaceous, while yet it is theoretically true that any sedimentary formation, if porous, may hold brine, if so shaped that it has not drained out.

DIAGRAM OF THE GEOLOGICAL RELATIONS OF THE BELLE PLAINE SALT WELL.



No. 1.—Drift. No. 3.—Low. Magnesian. No. 5.—Potsdam sandstone.
No. 2.—Cretaceous. No. 4.—St. Croix sandstone. No. 6.—Metamorphic and granitic.

In conclusion, I am at present of the opinion that if there be salt in the springs at Belle Plaine, it is derived from the Cretaceous rocks, but manifests itself in the drift at the base of the river bluffs, because the surface drainage is in that direction, there being a slow but constant loss of brine by that means. This subject ought to have early attention.

I wish to call your attention to the necessity of combining the records and minutes made prior to the depth of 420 feet, with those I have made on the drillings below 420 feet, so that the whole be preserved to science. The owners think those samples were forwarded by you to Ann Arbor, Michigan, and that a letter from my brother to you has has some mention of them.*

Very respectfully,
N. H. WINCHELL.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
February 16, 1874.

Prof. N. H. Winchell:

MY DEAR SIR:—In answer to your enquiry in reference to the progress of the analysis of the Belle Plaine water, I have to report, that while the work is not yet completed, enough has been done to show that it contains only a small proportion of chlorides of any kind, and also to justify the statement that the brine belongs to the class of "bitter brines," containing more sulphates than chlorides, and a larger proportion of alkaline earths (lime and magnesia) than alkalies (soda and potash.) I have found nothing as yet in my examination of this mineral water to justify the expectation that it can be made of any commercial value as a source of common salt.

Very truly yours,
S. F. PECKHAM,
Chemist of the geological survey of Minnesota

---

*This letter has already been given—See p. 80.

II.

PEAT.

(a) *Need of fuel—Objects of the peat survey.*

The absence of wood and coal from a large part of the settled portions of the state, and the consequent high price of fuel for domestic use, induced the last Legislature to insert a clause in the "act to aid the Geological and Natural History Survey," requiring the immediate survey of the peat deposits of the state, a report on the same to be made to the Legislature as soon as practicable. In that way it was hoped that a good fuel might be obtained, practicable for all the common uses of the settler; and that a great many of the hardships of the first settlers of the prairies of the state would thus be relieved. While this law was not intended to work a suspension of the other geological investigations required by the general law creating the survey, its immediate and practical importance has nevertheless controlled the course taken in the routes of exploration, and absorbed much of the time throughout the whole season.

Allied to the subject of peat is that of coal. It was deemed best that the two should be prosecuted together, especially as the locality of the rumored coal exposures coincided with that of the greatest need for fuel, and again with that in which peat was supposed to exist. The southwestern quarter of the state, including the Minnesota valley and those of some of its tributaries, have occupied the principal part of the season. In addition to these explorations, the counties of Cottonwood, Jackson and Nobles have been pretty thoroughly surveyed for peat. The northeastern portion of Jackson and the northwestern portion of Cottonwood should be further examined. The question of the occurrence of coal, and its origin and nature, is mentioned under the head of "The Economical Geology of the Minnesota Valley."

(*b*) *The varieties of peat.*

In order to a perfect understanding of that which follows, it will be well to mention the different varieties of peat, briefly describing the nature and habitat of each, and the terms by which they will be designated. The different products of a vegetable nature that have attracted attention under the general term *peat*, and have served to some extent for fuel in the state, may be classified as follows:

1. Slough peat.
2. Side-hill peat.
3. Turf-peat.
4. Turf.

Only to the first two of these is the term "peat" properly applied, yet among the common people they are all frequently embraced under that term.

1. *Slough peat*, is that which is found in low ground, occupying the lowest spots in old drainage courses which are now either entirely destitute of currents of running water, or are only filled in the wet seasons of the year, or occurring in the depressions among the drift hills or knolls, the slow drainage from which prevents the accumulating water from standing for too great a length of time above the usual level. In southwestern Minnesota such peat must be so situated also that the slough which holds it never becomes dry, else the prairie fires will certainly consume it. Hence, the necessity of constant springs of water to supply the slough in the dry months of the year. This again implies that the surface of the country must be rolling, at least that some bluffs of drift gravel must lie adjacent to the slough to give origin to springs of water. These springs are very often invisible. Their existence may be known, however, by the standing of the water of the slough at the same level, even in the dryest seasons. In case such peat lies in an old drainage course which shows no great flow of water in the dry season, the low spots containing it are still supplied with water enough to preserve the peat, by the slow, invisible, underground drainage pertaining to the valley. These correspond to the German *Wiesenmoore.*

The primary and essential ingredient that goes to form this kind of peat is a fine moss that grows over the surface of the bog, among the coarse stalks of other vegetation, such as grasses or rushes, making a handsome green surface. At a distance this moss cannot generally be seen. It is hid by the coarser vegetation. Besides this moss, the roots and decaying stems of the grasses and other aquatic plants that may grow in the slough, also aid in the peaty accumulation. This moss is *Shagnum palustre*,[*] and the aquatic plants that accompany and hide it are bulrush (*Scirpus*), scourish rush (*Equisetum*), a short "blue-joint" grass, and occasionally the cat-tail (*Typha latifolia*), and species of *Polygonum*, and some others.

There is, besides the typical moss peat of the sloughs, a pulpy deposit in the bottoms of many small lakes and ponds derived from the coarse grasses and sedges that grow about their margins, which consists principally of vegetable matter, and if treated properly will make a useful fuel. It is in the form of a fine silt, and is usually too limited in quantity, and too impure in quality to be very valuable. It is apt to be most abundant on the leeward side of the lake, where the prevailing winds have driven it, and the waves have beaten and broken it. This corresponds to the *Schlammtorf* of Holland.

2. *Side-hill peat.*—This is formed on the side of a gentle declivity where springs of water furnish the necessary constant moisture. It is apt to accompany those springs that lie in belts, marking the outcropping upper edges of shale beds or other impervious rock. It is composed of the same materials as slough peat, but is more liable to be impure, from the sand and dust that are carried upon it by the high winds of the plains. Such peat may accumulate to the depth of six or eight feet. It is far less common in southwestern Minnesota than slough peat. It requires also a rolling surface that may give rise to unfailing springs. Many springy side hills that in a moister climate would become peat-bearing, dry up in summer to such an extent, in southwestern Minnesota, that no aquatic plants can survive, and no peat can be formed on them.

3. *Turf-peat.*—This is formed of the roots and fallen stalks and blades of the rank grasses and sedges that grow in the shallow sloughs, or about their margins, in situations moist enough to resist the prairie fires. It is found sometimes on a side hill or in a narrow ravine or inclined slough through which there is a slow seepage of water. It is always more impure than the foregoing varieties, and becomes mixed with sand and black mud below the depth of 12 or 18 inches, so as to render it unfit for use. It is always fibrous and conveniently handled. Owing to its being so

---

[*] This is the common term. Dr. C. A. White has, however, given the name *Hypnum aduncum* to the peat moss of Iowa.

hard as to support the weight of a man, or often of a team, in the dry months of the year, its accessibility and the ease of taking it out by simple means, it is probably the most useful variety of peat to the farmers of southwestern Minnesota. It is also the most common. In very dry seasons the fires get into this turf-peat and consume vast quantities, burning for several weeks, or even till mid-winter. It is invariably found about the margins of the little depressions in the general prairie which contain water in the spring of the year, but become nearly or quite dry in the summer. The peat itself is annually submerged for several weeks in the spring. It lies on a hard and impervious drift clay, which is generally very fine, and blackened to the depth of a foot or more by the charred vegetation of many generations.

4. *Turf.*—This is the common sod of the prairie. It passes into the last. It is made of the prairie grass roots, and those of other vegetation that may grow there. In dry sloughs, that furnish a fine growth of hay annually, it is sometimes fit for fuel, but it rarely becomes thick enough to make it of much use for that purpose. It always contains considerable sand and clay.

(c) *The quality of Minnesota peats.*

There is nothing in Minnesota, so far as yet discovered, that answers to the extensive *moors* or *heathers* of the moist climates of Ireland, Holland and North Germany. They occur on the northeast coast of North America, in Labrador, Newfoundland and Anticosti, where the summers are not so excessively warm, and where frequent fogs give the atmosphere that state of moisture which the peat mosses require. Along the low lands on the south coast of Anticosti "a continuous plain covered with peat extends for upward of eighty miles with an average breadth of two miles; thus giving a superficies of more than a hundred and sixty square miles."* It has a thickness of three to ten feet. In the wooded portions of the state the peat deposits are likely to be made up of more or less coarse vegetation, such as deciduous leaves, and the stems and roots of various ericaceous plants. In the extensive peat deposits of the old world the vegetable fiber is entirely destroyed below a depth of ten or fifteen feet, and the peat has a compact, earthy texture, and a black or brown color.

---

*Geology of Canada, 1863.

The peat deposits of Minnesota are, so far as known, too shallow to exhibit this perfect decomposition, and hence, they are generally distinctly fibrous from top to bottom. In the lower portions of the deep peat bogs of Ireland the per cent. of ash is much greater than near the surface, reaching sometimes as high as nineteen per cent. those portions near the surface, which contain the vegetable matter but little altered, affording but one and a half per cent. Thus, while the density of peat, and hence its usefulness for domestic fuel, are enhanced by the greater depth, its combustibility and its purity are diminished. The superficial layers have nearly the same composition as wood. The foreign substances, that constitute the ash of the lower portions, are lime silica, iron and clay. The lime is derived from the small shells that often inhabit the bog, and which sometimes are so abundant as to have caused, by their accumulation, a bed of shell-marl at the bottom of the lake before the growth of the peat mosses filled it. Such shell-marl beds often occur at the bottom of peat bogs. Silica may have entered the growing peat by being blown on in the form of sand, or washed in by freshet rains from the adjoining hills. Iron is found in nearly all water in its natural state. As a carbonate it may be carried in solution by spring water issuing from ferriferous gravel or sand. On exposure to the air it is converted to a hydrated peroxyd, which is precipitated as a red film on all substances. If long continued it would thus form a bog ore, or brown hæmatite. It would descend by its specific gravity to the bottom of the peat bog. The clay that makes a part of the ash of peat is a composite substance. Its chief ingredient is alumina. It may also be carried into the bog by small streams so as to mingle with other impurities in the greatest proportion at the bottom. By reference to the accompanying chemical analyses, performed by Dr. P. B. Rose, of Ann Arbor, Mich., and by Prof. S. F. Peckham, chemist of the survey, it will be seen that a great diversity exists in the qualities of the samples of peat from Minnesota, but that they compare favorably with peats analyzed from Iowa, Connecticut, or even the famous Irish peat.

(d) *Peat analgses by Dr. Rose.*

Of the peats analyzed by Dr. Rose, the samples numbered 1 and 2 were procured and furnished the survey by Dr. C. D. Williams, of St. Paul. No. 3 was furnished from the manufactory by W. Z. Haight. No. 4 was obtained by the survey, and is named in the section describing it, "peaty, lake sediment," No. 5 is properly not a peat, but a turf-peat, as defined on page 90. No. 6 is a fair sample of raw peat, from Wells, in Faribault county, obtained by the survey. The corresponding serial numbers in the records of the survey, run from 5 to 10 inclusive.

Prof. N. H. Winchell, state geologist of Minnesota, St. Anthony Falls, Minn.

DEAR SIR:—The six samples of peat furnished me by express, and marked as follows:—

No. 1—Schmidt's land, St. Paul—taken out eight feet below the surface;
No. 2—Schmidt's land, St. Paul—two feet below the surface;
No. 3—Manufactured peat, from Wells;
No. 4—Lake Emily, near St. Peter;
No. 5—Empire City;
No. 6—From Wells, not manufactured;—

have each been submitted to an analysis, with the following results: 100 parts of the air-dry peat contain—

	Hygroscopic water.	Ash.	Organic matter.
Peat No. 1 (Serial No. 5)	13.75	12.73	73.52
Peat No. 2 (Serial No. 6)	12.65	21.67	65.68
Peat No. 3 (Serial No. 7)	14.00	18.17	67 83
Peat No. 4 (Serial No. 8)	9.83	67.17	23.00
Peat No. 5 (Serial No. 9)	8.83	77.35	13.82
Peat No. 6 (Serial No. 10)	15.95	18.17	65.88

The ash or inorganic matter, varying greatly in quantity, was still further subjected to analysis, with the subjoined result:—

Peat ash.	No. 1.	No. 2.	No. 3.	No. 4.	No. 5.	No. 6.
Silica	49.09	65.39	58.31	88.95	59.37	61.32
Potassa	.63	.57	.41	.12	.14	.55
Soda	.37	.31	.18	.11	.08	.23
Lime	13.87	10.60	14.18	1.43	18.10	12.44
Magnesia	3.01	2.24	2.90	.82	1.41	2.43
Iron and alumina	14.92	6.31	10.21	7.04	6.58	9.71
Sulphuric acid	8.23	8.34	2.11	.12	.14	2.37
Carbonic acid	10.27	5.97	11.63	1.82	14.12	10.69
Phosphoric acid	Trace.	Trace.	....	....	....	....
Chlorine	....	....	Trace.	....	....	Trace.
	100.39	99.73	99.70	100.70	99.94	99.96

The following is the elementary analysis of the organic matter:—

	Per 100 of the organic matter.			Per 100 of the original air-dry peat.		
	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen & nitrogen.	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen & nitrogen.
Peat No. 1..........	53.06	6.19	40.75	39.03	4.56	29.93
Peat No. 2..........	52.22	6.11	41.67	34.30	4.01	27.37
Peat No. 3..........	52.02	6.68	41.30	35.30	4.54	27.99
Peat No. 4.........	48.66	9.73	41.61	11.19	2.24	9.57
Peat No. 5..........	46.58	10.51	42.91	6.44	1.45	5.93
Peat No. 6..........	51.94	6.17	41.89	34.22	4.06	27.60

The composition of the above samples of peat compared with that of *hard wood* is as follows;

	Carbon.	Hydrogen	Oxygen and nitrogen.	Ash.	Water.
Wood..............	39.6	4.8	34.8	0.8	20.0
Peat No. 1.........	39.03	4.56	29.93	12.73	13.75
Peat No. 2.........	34.30	4.01	27.37	21.67	12.65
Peat No. 3...	35.30	4.54	27.99	18.17	14.00
Peat No. 4.........	11.19	2.24	9.57	67.17	9.83
Peat No. 5..	6.44	1.45	5.93	77.35	8.83
Peat No. 6.........	34.22	4.06	27.60	18.17	15.95

The heating power of each of the six samples of peat, as compared with an equal weight of air-dry oak wood, is based on the amount of oxygen required for complete combustion, or by the number of pounds of water raised from 32° to 212° F.

100 lbs. of air-dry peat No. 1 — 104.2 lbs. of oak wood.
100 lbs. of air-dry peat No. 2 — 94.7 lbs. of oak wood.
100 lbs. of air-dry peat No. 3 — 98.1 lbs. of oak wood.
100 lbs. of air-dry peat No. 4 — 34.4 lbs. of oak wood.
100 lbs. of air-dry peat No. 5 — 16.9 lbs. of oak wood.
100 lbs. of air-dry peat No. 6 — 89.6 lbs. of oak wood.

All of which is most respectfully submitted,

P. B. ROSE,
Asst. in chemistry, University of Michigan.
Chemical laboratory, University of Mich., Nov. 22, 1873.

(e) *Peat analyses by Prof. Peckham.*

Prof. N. H. Winchell, state geologist of Minnesota:

MY DEAR SIR.—The following is a report of the chemical investigations conducted in accordance with your suggestions for the geological survey of Minnesota:

I desire to state that when I assumed the duties of chemist to the geological survey last August, I found absolutely nothing in the University laboratory in preparation for special investigations of the nature of those I was about to undertake. The room in which I have worked had to be fitted up. Much of the apparatus used had to be procured from New York. All my solutions of reagents had to be prepared, as well as many of the reagents themselves. In fact I began at the beginning and fitted up my laboratory before doing any of the work at hand. I have also discharged at the same time the duties of a full professorship in the University, and have consequently only been able to give the work of the survey the second place.

No. 1. *Tripoli.*—You have placed in my hands for examination a specimen of tripoli, or very fine grained, friable sandstone, of which 25.15 per cent. was found to be soluble in boiling concentrated hydrocholic acid. The remaining 74.85 per cent. consisted of microscopic, apparently angular fragments of white quartz. The soluble portion consisted chiefly of ferric oxide ($Fe_2 O_3$) and a smaller portion of the carbonates of lime and magnesia, of which quantitative determinations were not made.

"A," clippings of native copper.—A specimen which I have marked A, of which I have made the following record: A letter was handed me addressed to Prof. Winchell by R. S. Russell, of Pleasant Grove, Olmsted Co., Minn., containing an enclosure of minute fragments or clippings of what appeared to be native copper. "Found on the south bank of Root river in the neighborhood of green shale * * imbedded in loose rock found on the surface."

Completely soluble in dilute nitric acid. Evaporated to dryness the residue was completely soluble in water and contained nothing but nitrate of copper.

Mineral Water.—A pint of mineral water not labeled. It appeared not to have been filtered. The results of as complete a qualitative analysis as the small quanity would admit of, are as follows:

The water contained a brown, flocculent deposit and crystalline scales. It was neutral to litmus, tumeric and lead papers, showing the absence of free acids, alkalies and sulphuretted hydrogen. It was also odorless, with a bitter saline taste.

Three hundred and ninety-three cubic centimeters were evaporated to dryness, A portion of the residue dissolved in water contained potassium, sodium, chlorine, sulphuric acid and a trace of phosphoric acid. The residue insoluble in water dissolved in hydrochloric acid with escape of carbonic acid, and the solution contained chlorides of lime and magnesia.

The results indicate that the water held in solution:

Carbonate of lime.

Carbonate of magnesia.

Chloride of sodium and potassium.

Sulphate of sodium and potassium.

Phosphates, a trace.

A little organic matter was not dissolved in hydrochloric acid.

This water will be further examined.

No. 29.—A specimen supposed to be carbonate of magnesia, was found to be a light-colored friable clay, containing a large proportion of sand; will be still further examined.

Nos. 30 *and* 31.—Two specimens of siliceous limestone, containing small, rounded grains of a soft, light-green mineral, were to be examined for carbonate of copper. Dilute hydrochloric acid dissolved the lime with disengagement of carbonic acid. The hydrochloric acid solution was colorless and contained lime, iron, magnesia and a trace of manganese, with carbonic and silicic acids, but no copper. The insoluble portion consisted of grains of quartz sand, and the green mineral which contained iron, alumina, magnesia and soda, with silicic acid. This green mineral has the appearance of being green slate, in water-worn grains. The species can only be accurately determined by a quantitative analysis. They will be still further examined.

Peats numbered 16 *to* 28 *inclusive.*—Thirteen specimens of peat were examined with reference to hygroscopic water, organic matter and ash. They were all treated exactly alike. An average sample of each of the specimens was finely pulverized and thoroughly mixed Of this one gramme was carefully weighed in a one-ounce platinum crucible. The covered crucible containing the assay was then placed in an air bath, and heated to 212-220 degs. Fahr., until it ceased to lose weight. The loss was estimated as hygroscopic water. The cover was then removed, the crucible inclined and heated to dull redness, finally to bright redness, until the combustible matter was entirely consumed. The loss was estimated as organic matter and the residue as ash. The following results were obtained:

No.	Hygroscopic water.	Organic matter.	Ash.
16	12.72	68.52	18.76
17	13.04	48.64	38.32
18	10.99	44.56	44.45
19	20.64	53.60	25.76
20	16.75	47.03	36.28
21	11.93	33.48	54.59
22	13.58	53.28	33.14
23	11.03	41.67	47.30
24	10.225	64.475	25.30
25	10.80	16.33	72.87
26	8.69	31.90	59.41
27	9.85	42.63	47.52
28	29.44	58.17	12.39

These peats will be still further examined.

An absolutely accurate comparison of these peats with oak wood cannot be made without a determination of the carbon and hydrogen present in each; but in order to furnish a tolerably correct basis of comparison, the average amount of carbon and hydrogen as compared with the total amount of organic matter, was estimated in the six specimens examined by Dr. Rose. It was found to be 58.4 per cent. The proportion contained in oak wood being made the standard of comparison or 100 per cent., all of the peats examined by Dr. Rose and myself, were found to possess the following values, 100 pounds of the air-dry substance being taken in each case:

100 lbs.	Oak wood =	100.0 lbs.	100 lbs.	No. 19 =	70.5 lbs.
" "	Serial No. 5=	99.0 "	" "	" 20 =	61.7 "
" "	" " 6=	86.0 "	" "	" 21 =	44.0 "
" "	" " 7=	89.3 "	" "	" 22 =	70.1 "
" "	" " 8=	30.2 "	" "	" 23 =	54.8 "
" "	" " 9=	18.1 "	" "	" 24 =	84.9 "
" "	" " 10=	86.7 "	" "	" 25 =	21.4 "
" "	" " 16=	90.2 "	" "	" 26 =	42.0 "
" "	" " 17=	64.0 "	" "	" 27 =	56.1 "
" "	" " 18=	58.6 "	" "	" 28 =	76.5 "

No. 28 was one of the first examined, and was not probably sufficiently dried, as the amount of water is very large, 29.44 per cent. The ash is only 12.39 per cent., however, which is very low. This peat is no doubt very nearly as valuable as number 16, when properly dried.

The value of these peats, as compared with each other, is as follows:

1	Ser. No. 5	7	Ser. No. 28	13	Ser. No. 27
2	" 16	8	" 19	14	" 23
3	" 7	9	" 22	15	" 21
4	" 10	10	" 17	16	" 26
5	" 6	11	" 20	17	" 8
6	" 24	12	" 18	18	" 25
				19	" 9

All of which is respectfully submitted.

S. F. PECKHAM,
Chemist to the geological survey of Minnesota.
St. Anthony Falls, Dec. 23, 1873.

Of the foregoing samples analyzed by Prof. Peckham,

No. 1 was obtained at Stillwater, Washington county.
"A" was from Pleasant Grove, Olmsted county.
"Mineral water" was from the reputed salt springs at Belle Plaine, Scott county. Other samples have been since obtained and will receive analysis.
No. 29 was from the sandstone near the Red Jacket mills, in Blue Earth county, apparently consisting of magnesia or magnesia and lime. (See description of that locality, page 96.)
Nos. 30 and 31 were from the St. Lawrence limestone, the former from St. Lawrence, Scott county; the latter from Judson, in Blue Earth county.
No. 16 was a peat from St. Cloud, 18 inches below the surface.
No. 17 was a peat from Lura, in Faribault county, 18 inches below the surface; land of W. Z. Haight. Bog A.
No. 18 was from the same bog as No. 17, 3 feet below the surface.
No. 19 was a peat from the same place, Bog B, 18 in. below the surface.
No. 20 was from the same bog as No. 19, 3 feet below the surface.
No. 21 was a turf-peat, owned by John Haggard, sec. 4, T. 101, R. 39.
No. 22 was from K. K. Peck's land, near Windom, 2 feet below the surface.
No. 23 was from K. K. Peck's land, near Windom, 3 feet below the surface.
No. 24 was a peat from land of Rev. Edward Savage, near Windom, 18 inches below the surface.
No. 25 was a turf-peat from S. O. Taggart's land, sec. 24, T. 105, R. 35.
No. 26 was a peat from land of A. A. Soule, Mountain Lake, 2 feet below the surface
No. 27 was peat from land of St. Paul & Sioux City railroad, sec. 13, T. 106, R. 37, 2 feet below the surface.
No. 28 was a peat from land of F. G. Taylor, Brooklyn, Hennepin Co.

(f) *Where peat exists in Minnesota.*

The method adopted for testing for peat is very simple. A common augur, of about one and a-half inch bore, is supplied with a jointed rod eight or ten feet in length. The handle and all of the joints are removable, and can be transported in one package. The thread of the auger will bring out the material passed through, from any desired depth, the samples being preserved if necessary. This will answer for most cases. If the peat prove too pulpy or too wet to be brought out on the thread of the auger, other means must be adopted. When it is too fibrous and loose to be penetrated by the auger, the desired sample can be taken out by the hand, as the loose and fibrous parts are always near the surface. The best way to illustrate the contents of a peat marsh, is to take out and dry a full section from the surface to the bottom, cutting the fiber with the slane, and exposing the variations in composition and color without disarranging their superposition.

The following notes on the observed location of peat deposits do not embrace a much larger class of observations, made during the summer on localities where peat does not exist, but where it was supposed by the owners to exist in abundance

1. At a point about half a mile east of Empire City, in Dakota county, the augur was sunk in the land of Albert Whittier. This is within the valley of the Vermilion river, and revealed the following section.

No. 1.—Turf peat, about	1 ft.
No. 2.—Black, sticky, heavy mud	3 ft.
No. 3—Sand, with some gravel, penetrated	1 ft.

This character of surface prevails, judging from outward appearances, over an area of many acres in this part of the valley, passing also on to the land of Mr. Gray, further east.

2. Sec. 22. T. 114, R. 19, Dakota county. Owner's name unknown. Agents, Claggett & Crosby, Farmington.

No. 1.—Wet turf-peat	1 ft.
No. 2.—Fine, black mud	2 ft.
No. 3.—Green, sandy clay	1 ft.
No. 4.—Sand, of a greenish cast	2 ft. 4 in.
No. 5.—The same, indefinitely.	

3. About sec. 22, T. 114, R. 19, Dakota county.

No. 1.—Black turf-peat, loose and fibrous..... .... 1 ft.
No. 2.—Fine, black mud.................................. 6 in.
No. 3.—Sand and gravel.................................. 6 in.
No. 4.—The same indefinitely.

4. In the same bog; near an outcrop of the St. Peter, N. W. from Empire City.

No. 1.—Black turf, fibrous..... .... 1 ft.
No. 2.—Sand; the same indefinitely...................... 1 ft.

5. In the same bog; owned here by James Murphy.

No. 1.—Black, impure turfy peat......................... 1 ft.
No. 2.—Yellowish-green, sandy clay..................... 1 ft.

This burned over more or less for some distance in various directions a few years ago, passing also on to the land of others. This whole slough is termed "meadow" by the owners, and furnishes annual crops of hay. In the dry months teams can be driven over it in most places. It is in the valley of the Vermilion, the greatest part lying on the north side of the river.

6. Land of James Murphy, sec. 15, T. 114, R. 19.

No. 1.—Turf-mold, or Turf-peat and hard enough for teams to pass over, little fibrous, burned over a few years ago... 1 ft. 6 in.
No. 2.—Yellowish-green clay [see Dr. Roses analyses] 6 in.

7. Near the center of the same bog, E. of Murphy's.

No. 2—Black turf-peat, wet.............................. 6 in.
No. 2.—Clay and mud of brownish-ash color, with streaks of green.. 1 ft.

8. Land of Caleb Adams, same slough. One mile northwest of Empire City.

No. 1.—Fibrous turf-peat......................... ......1 ft. 6 in.
No. 2.—Sand. indefinitely.

This peat has as good (or better) appearance as any yet seen on this marsh.

9. Land of D. S. Pilcher, two and a half miles east of Farmington, sec. 27, T. 114, R. 19. A branch of the Vermilion valley, coming in from the southwest, consists now of a long, wide slough, having the surface characteristics of the valley of the Vermilion.

No. 1.—Black muck, somewhat fibrous on the top, becoming clayey and sandy, but passing into stiff, brown clay in 18 in	1 ft.	

Tested no further.

Mr. Pitcher says this surface turf burned, in 1863, from July to December, making many "hog-wallows."

10. Kasota, LeSueur County. This marsh is crossed by the Sioux City R. R. This point is on the east side of the R. R., six rods from the drift bluff.

No. 1.—Pretty good peat		8 in.
No. 2.—Black, sandy clay	2 ft.	

The whole depth drilled showed frequent shells.

11. In the same marsh, on the west side of the R. R., fifteen rods from the drift bank.

No. 1.—Roots and stems of grass, with some peaty, vegetable decomposition		8 in.
No. 2.—Black, peaty mud, with a few fragments of shells and some sand	1 ft.	4 in.
No. 3.—Black or brown mud, with sand and fragments of shells	4 ft.	

12. Head of lake Emily, in LeSueur county, near St. Peter. Land of M. French.

No. 1.—Roots and soft, fibrous lake sediment	1 ft.	
No. 2.—Peaty lake sediment, with little or no sand	1 ft.	6 in.
[See Dr. Rose's analyses.]		
No. 3.—Peaty mud, with a little sand	1 ft.	
No. 4.—Black, lake mud, sandy	2 ft.	

13. Wells, Faribault Co., land of Clark W. Thompson.

No. 1.—Watery, fibrous peat	4 ft.	
No. 2.—Peaty mud, with shells and some sand		6 in.
No. 3.—Brownish mud and clay		6 in.

14. Wells, Faribault Co., land of Clark W. Thompson. Same slough as the last.

No. 1.—Good peat, showing some sand grains	6 ft.	
No. 2.—Peaty mud and clay. [See Dr. Rose's analyses]	6 in. to 1 ft	

15. Wells, Faribault Co., same slough.

No. 1.—Peat of good quality	5 ft.	
No. 2.—Peaty mud		6 in.

16. There is a peat deposit of 80 or 100 acres near Lura, in Faribault county, sec. 30, T. 104, R. 25. Land of H. F. Quinby and J. Robinson. Said to be four feet deep.

17. Peat is manufactured near Fairmount, in Martin county, by Mr. A. L. Ward.

18. Near Lura station, in Faribault county, peat exists in considerable quantities, on land of W. Z. Haight. [See Prof. Peckham's analyses.]

19. Sec. 24, T. 105, R. 35; Cottonwood county. Land of S. O. Taggart. In a dry slough, covering many acres, the surface consists of a turf-peat, to the depth of about a foot, passing into black mud and sand. The very top is fibrous and even spongy.

20. Land of S. O. Taggart, 5 miles east of Windom. In a narrow spring ravine, where water stands or slowly runs throughout the year, and near its head, a thickness of a foot or more of turf-peat may be taken out over a space of a few rods square. It is thicker and better near the head of the ravine than at any other point, owing to the more constant protection of the grass and roots from the prairie fires.

21. Other similar peaty ravines occur on land of Miss Ellen Imus, near that of Mr. Taggart.

22. A mile and a half northeast of Cannon City, Rice county. Land of Wm. Dunn. A shaking bog of peat is said to occur on S. E. 1-4 sec. 11, T. 110, R. 20.

23. Mountain lake, Cottonwood Co. Near Mountain Lake station, on land of A. A. Soule, a coarse turf-peat covers the surface of a dry slough to the depth of ten to eighteen inches. Near a spring along side of this slough which is tributary to Mountain lake the surface quakes, and the peat is thickest.

24. Around Mountain lake the land is low, and is flooded in the wet season. This low land contains considerable peat for some distance out toward the lake. The surface shakes under the tread. It is covered in the summer with a tall grass, which much resembles the wild rice, yet the softest places, where the peat occurs purest, are furnished with a short grass. Peat here is two or more feet thick. The land examined is owned by A. A. Soule.

[See Prof. Peckham's analyses.]

25. Sec. 13, T. 106, R. 37, Amo, Cottonwood Co. A slough that shakes is in the valley that forms the prolongation of the Des Moines valley northwestward above the great bend a few miles above Windom, and has a spongy

peat about two feet in thickness, with black mud below. It covers six or ten acres.

26. In the same prolongation of the Des Moines valley, on K. K. Peck's land, two miles above the bend of the Des Moines, is a thickness of two or three feet of peat. This valley seems to hold about two feet of peat along a considerable area through the middle, and would supply a great quantity. It is not of a superior quality, but might be very useful to the settlers.

27. Sec. 2, T. 105, R. 38, Cottonwood Co., Government land. Side-hill peat occurs on a gentle slope over the space of a few rods, having a thickness of a foot and a half or two feet. Such peatty patches appear also on the opposite side of the main valley, arising from the issuing of springs that keep the surface moist, while the lower land in the same slough is dry and hard. This peat is not free from sand. It also smells strongly of sulphuretted hydrogen.

28. NE ¼ sec. 28, T. 105, R. 36, Cottonwood Co. Land of A. J. Hall. In a turfed ravine, where water stands or slowly oozes through the turf, sloping gently toward the Des Moines river, a turf peat may be taken out to the depth of a foot or twenty inches. The belt containing peat is from ten to twenty feet wide, and similar in its situation to that of Mr. S. O. Taggart, but more extensive. It shakes under the feet for three or four feet about, but a horse can walk safely over it in most places in the dry season. Indeed, it is mown for hay every year. An irony scum lies on the ground and on the grass stalks. The peat itself is a turf, but contains shells and some grit.

Another similar ravine is on the same claim. Numerous others might be located along the ravines that cross the Des Moines bluffs.

29. SW. ¼ sec. 4, T. 104, R. 36. Delafield, Jackson county. Land of Rev. Edward Savage. A good moss peat occurs here in a slough, having an average thickness of two feet, over an area of ten acres or more. The slough is confined between bluffs that appear to be entirely composed of drift, and has a feeble drainage into a small lake (String lakes). The surface is mostly covered with a short (blue joint?) grass, but also with chair-bottom rushes. Some patches also of *Typha latifolia* are seen. No horse tail rush appears. In passing over the surface of this marsh it quakes five or six feet around, and the auger hole is immediately filled with water to the top. Below eighteen inches (even sparingly in ten or twelve inches) shells begin to be rather

common, and the auger next brings up a black mud with many shells.' The most of this peat is made up of the peat moss, though at a depth of a foot or eighteen inches it contains grass roots and other fiber.

30. NE. ¼ sec. 30, T. 105, R. 36. Land of Arthur Johnson. Turf-peat occurs in a ravine, twenty feet over, where fuel can be taken out.

31. Land of Geo. C. Bush, sec. 6, T. 105, R. 37, holds a peatty turf, in a dry slough near the mouth of a ravine, in considerable abundance. Sandy below.

32. T. 105, R. 38, Southbrook, Cottonwood county. Peat exists, according to Mr. John Crapsey, three miles north of Talcott lake.

33. Land of the St. Paul & Sioux City and Sioux City & St. Paul R. R., sec. 31, T. 105, R, 37, Jackson county. A thin deposit of about six inches of peat covers about half an acre, mostly under water. This is the only peat that can be found in the vicinity of Heron lake.

34. Land of F. G. Taylor, Brooklyn, Hennepin county, seven miles north of Minneapolis, furnishes a fine quality of peat. [See analyses of Prof. Peckham.]

35. Land of B. S. Langdon, sec. 4, T. 102, R. 41, Nobles county. Here a turf-peat occurs, about 14 inches in thickness, lying on a side-hill or gentle slope, having a springy character when trod on. It is underlain by a black mud, which has been mistaken for non-fibrous peat. Of the turf several cords (perhaps a hundred) have been taken off, preparatory to excavating the rich (?) peat below, when it was discovered that it would not burn, but when placed in the fire turned out hard and heavy like burned clay. The turf itself will make a fuel that will compare well with any turf-peat discovered.

36. Peat, eight or ten inches thick, exists on the railroad land, sec. 27, T. 101, R. 40, Nobles county, of a turfy character, but good quality. It lies over an acre or two, but may be taken out probably in other places along the different creeks that unite here.

37. At Bigelow, in Nobles county, there is a considerable thickness, perhaps two feet, of half-carbonized, pulpy, vegetable silt, lying entirely below the water of a lake, made up of decaying sedges and grasses and their roots. It is torn in pieces by the waves in the lake and gathers about the shores and under the bog-turf, driven most abundantly to the side that faces the prevailing winds. It is often intermixed with fine mud and shells, especially near the

bottom. It will probably furnish, if dry, a combustible material that would answer well for fuel, if it should prove obtainable in sufficient quantities, and especially if it were to be pressed and molded. It has not the necessary origin nor nature to be styled peat.

38. John Haggard takes out turf in a low patch on sec. 4, T. 101, R. 39, Nobles county. It occurs partly on state swamp land, partly on railroad land, and partly on the claim of Charles Peterson. It is in nature and position similar to the turf on B. S. Langdon's land, northwest of Worthington. Mr. Haggard takes it out with a spade, about a foot in depth, in large blocks. Then drawing it to the house he cuts it into convenient smaller blocks, and spreads and piles it for drying. After drying about four or six weeks it is fit for burning. It burns quickly but leaves considerable ash. (See the report of Prof. S. F. Peckham.)

39. On the S. E. ¼ sec. 27, T. 102, R. 34, Jackson county, Mr. W. V. King correctly describes a peat marsh.

40. Peat occurs of good quality just west of the limits of St. Cloud, in Stearns county, about a foot and a half thick, underlain by a bed of shell marl, which, before the introduction of the Shakopee lime, was considerably burned for quick lime. [See Prof. Peckham's analyses.]

41. Peat occurs within the corporate limits of St. Paul, having, according to Dr. C. D. Williams, a depth of eight feet. It lies on the land of Mr. Schmidt. [See analyses of Dr. Rose.]

42. At Red Wing, Goodhue county, good peat has been taken out and experiments in manufacture made on the farm of Capt. O. Eames. This peat lies in the bottoms, between the shore and next range of river bluffs. The experiments were made under the direction of the *Davidson steamboat company*, by Capt. Isaac Webb, of Stillwater.

43. At East Minneapolis, Mr. W. W. Wales and Dr. M. D. Stoneman took out about 25 cords of peat in 1865. The average thickness is about eight feet, and the peat, although light and fibrous at the top, was heavy and solid below, becoming brown or nearly black. Digging and drying cost 80 cents per cord. It was consumed in common stoves, leaving a heavy ash. In cost it would not compete with pine wood from the saw mills.

(g) *The working of peat.*

The great porosity and consequent bulk of peat make it exceedingly desirable that, before it is used for fuel, it should be compressed, both for the purpose of removing the contained moisture, and of getting an intenser heat. The brown, fibrous peats are also liable to crumble on being handled, and will not bear transportion, unless rendered more tenacious and dense by some process of manufacture.

To accomplish this, various methods have been invented. The "turf" that is extensively burned by the peasantry in Ireland, France and Germany, is simply taken from the bog and dried in the sun. When first taken from the bog its weight consists of from 70 to 90 per cent. of water. When ready for use it still holds from 20 to 35 per cent. That which has been stacked from six to twelve months still retains from 18 to 20 per cent., and after being kept in a dry house for two years, from 10 to 15 per cent. of water. Its heating effect then is about equal to that of an equal weight of pine wood. Peat may be condensed and prepared by machinery so as to weigh more than hard wood. It may be made nearly as solid and tenacious as coal, its specific gravity being nearly that of bituminous coal. In this form it may be subjected to a strong blast, rendering it useful in ordinary grates and furnaces.

It is intended to describe briefly some of the methods of manufacturing peat in America. Many of the facts herein stated are obtained from *Leavitt's peat journal* of March, 1867; others from Prof. Johnson's "*Peat and its uses.*"

"In this country comparatively little has been done; and until quite recently, no machinery whatever, especially constructed and adapted for the production of solid fuel from peat, has been put in practical operation. The impression has seemed to prevail that the material is to be treated like clay, and that brick machines might be readily made to work the desired results; but the idea is erroneous. Numerous brick machines have been tried, some of them very ingeniously and perfectly constructed, and which have been demonstrated to be also perfect in their operation upon clay; but have proved an entire failure when peat was substituted instead. It is true, however, that with two or three of these machines peat has been compressed into compact blocks having the appearance of great solidity *when moist;* but so soon as the moisture is evaporated, as it will inevitably be in time, the mass is found to be porous and light.

"Quite a number of *presses*, some of them exceedingly ingenious in device and construction, and powerful in their operation and supposed to be so arranged as to press the water out of the mass, and leave the material compact and nearly or quite dry, have been built and tested, with failure of success as a uniform result; and although the records and reports of such cases, both in Europe and this country, are sufficiently extensive to explode the idea that any profitable results can be obtained by pressure alone, there are, nevertheless, those who are still persistent in their efforts to accomplish it by such means, and are now devising new methods of applying powerful pressure, which, were they to consider but for a moment the nature of the material in its crude state, would be seen at once to be clearly of no avail. The famous Beater press, which, within a few years, has acquired great notoriety, and is now probably the most powerful press in use for hay, straw, cotton, tobacco, &c., has been tried several times in New York and Massachusetts, by parties sanguine of success, but with only the same results as with other presses."

Ashcroft and Betteley's process.—"Under the patents of Ashcroft and Betteley operations were commenced in Massachusetts in 1864. Their process, as claimed, provides for separating the fibrous from the thoroughly decomposed portions of the peat, by combing; in doing which the mass is reduced to a pulp, which is then conveyed into high tanks where it is proposed to allow it to remain until by its own weight and pressure it shall have become sufficiently dense to be formed into blocks, when, by opening a small gate near the bottom of the tank, it is presumed that the pressure of the superincumbent mass will force it out in a continuous sheet, of uniform size, as regulated by the orifice, which may then be cut in blocks and laid away to dry."

Roberts' process.—The machinery set up at Pekin, New York, in 1865, is the invention of Mr. M. S. Roberts. The following description of it is from the *Buffalo Express*, of November 17, 1865: "In outward form the machine was like a small frame house on wheels, supposing the smoke-stack to be a chimney. The engine and boiler are of a locomotive style, the engine being of thirteen horse power. The principal features of the machine are a revolving elevator and a conveyor. The elevator is seventy-five feet long, and runs from the top of the machine to the ground where the peat is dug up, placed on the elevator, carried to the top of the machine, and dropped into a revolving wheel that cuts it up, separates from it all the coarse particles, bits of sticks, stones, etc., and throws them to one side. The peat is next dropped into a box below, where water is passed in sufficient to bring it to the consistency of mortar. By means of a slide under the control of the engineer, it is next sent to the rear of the machine, where the conveyor, one hundred feet long, takes it and carries it to within two rods of the end; at which point the peat begins to drop through to the ground to the depth of about four or five inches. When sufficient has passed through to cover the ground to the end of the conveyor—two rods—the conveyor is swung round about two feet, and the same process gone through as fast as the ground under the elevator, for the distance of two rods in length, and two feet in width, gets covered, the elevator being moved. After the eighteen rods are covered, the machine is moved two rods ahead, enabling it to again spread a semi-circular space of some thirty-two feet in width by eighteen rods in length. The same power which drives the engine moves the machine. It is estimated by Mr. Roberts that by the use of this machine from twenty to thirty tons of peat can be turned out in a day." Four men are required to run it.

In this process it is to be observed that the method requires the addition of a very considerable quantity of water, before the peat can be treated; whereas a great desideratum has ever been to discover some process by which the large amount of water the peat already contains in its natural state may be discharged.

Hodges' process.—Mr. James Hodges, of Montreal, after considering the many difficulties in the way of manufacturing peat successfully, conceived the idea of a manufactory complete, which might be made to float about in the bog, excavating, pulping, manufacturing and spreading out the pulped peat to dry, until some seventy per cent. was evaporated, or it was fit for carriage to the store or to market. After three years' experience, he arrived at the conclusion that it may be effected in the following manner:

"An extensive, undrained bog, from eight to twelve feet in depth—or if deeper the better—have been selected, the first process is to trace out at some distance from the margin, a contour level line of say several miles in extent. Along this line, a space of some nineteen feet in width must be cleared and the live moss or turf entirely removed; by the side of this a space of ninety feet in width is to be cleared and drained to receive the pulped peat.

"At one end of the contour line before mentioned, a barge or scow, eighty feet long, sixteen feet beam and six feet deep, must be constructed, and launched into a hole in the bog dug to receive her. The barge or scow is to contain all the machinery necessary for the complete manufacture of the peat.

"At one end of the scow is placed a pair of large screw augers, eleven feet in diameter, which, being provided with proper shafting and gearing, are made to revolve by means of a steam engine placed on the rear of the vessel. These augers, or screw excavators, bore out the peat in precisely the same manner that a common auger bores itself into wood; and, the scow being made to move onward as the boring proceeds, it follows that a channel nineteen feet wide, of from four to six feet deep is formed, in which the scow, with her burden of machinery, floats, the water from the adjacent peat draining into and filling the canal as fast as it is made, the usual speed of the scow being some fifteen feet per hour.

"A competent engineer should determine and lay out the canal level, as well as arrange its water supply, upon which depends in a great measure the successful working of the whole.

"The peat, when bored out or excavated by the screws, is delivered into the barge, and conveyed by means of an elevator to a hopper, into which it is tumbled. It then passes through machinery which removes all sticks and roots, and, eventually destroying the fiber, reduces the peat to a homogeneous mass of soft pulp, like well tempered mortar.

"This pulp then passes into a long spout or distributor, which, extending at right angles over the side of the scow, spreads out the pulp on the leveled moss by the side of the canal in a thin slab nine inches in thickness and ninety feet in width.

"After the slab or pulp has been deposited for a couple of days, or in hot weather for a shorter period, it begins to consolidate, and shows symptoms of cracking. Immediately any cracks make their appearance, it must be marked out by drawing a frame-work carrying curved knives placed six inches apart across it. A few days more harden the pulp so that by the aid of boards a man can walk on it, and mark it longitudinally with cuts eighteen inches apart.

"In about a fortnight, the shrinkage of the pulp-slab causes the cuts made in it to open, and the whole presents the appearance of an immense floor covered with bricks eighteen inches long by six inches wide. As soon as the bricks are sufficiently hard to bear handling, they are separated and "footed;" that is, stood up on the ends, five in a stook, with one across the top, in which position they remain until dry enough to be removed to the store or to the market.

"In the manufacture of peat fuel considerable experience is required, and unless attention is paid to matters of detail, apparently of little importance, serious loss may be the result.

"In forming, or uncovering the canal track, nothing more is required than that the turf, or live moss, about six inches in thickness, together with the roots of all trees upon the surface of the bog, should be removed; and as upon all undrained bogs the roots of such stunted trees as grow there are all on the surface, this operation is easily accomplished.

"In the preparation of the pulp-beds great care is required, and a surface should be obtained as level and even as possible. The roots of all trees must be removed, and this is more readily accomplished with the trees themselves, by which means considerable labor is saved, one man pulling them down on one side, while another with an ax cuts the lateral roots at some distance from the stem, leaving the smaller portions behind. The long grass, shrubs and rank mosses are cut down with a short scythe, and used in filling up any irregularities in the surface. Drains from nine to twelve inches deep should also be cut and covered over with the spare turf taken from the canal track. The soil from the drains may also be used in leveling and filling up inequalities in the pulp-bed. In some places, where the growth of shrubs has been very rank and coarse, the turf upon the whole surface of the pulp-beds has been cut into strips and inverted; but it is better to cut drains, and leave the turf in its natural position. The soft pulp, when poured upon it in a semi-fluid state, advances lava like, pressing down any small branches of shrubs and the long grasses which may be standing in the way of its onward progress.

"The pulp should not be deposited nearer than five feet of the canal, and upon this space may be placed any surplus moss or turf from the uncovering of the canal track, which will not only keep the pulp in place, but also form a road and towing path for the canal. At the rear, or ninety feet from this bank, a double thickness of turf is all that is necessary to complete the pulp-beds.

"The canal track and pulp-beds being prepared, and the scow with its machinery in position, nothing more is required than to set it in motion, giving the necessary feed, say one and a half inches for each revolution of the screw excavators, which may be increased to three inches if necessary. As the screws revolve, they cut off continuous slices of the peat, which, by the assistance of a couple of men, are delivered, through the rear of the shield the screws work in, into a well in the bow of the scow. These men also remove any large masses of extraneous material, such as pieces of wood, roots of trees, etc., which may work in. It is sometimes required, when working in peat which is very full of roots, to have a man placed in front to remove them as they are brought up by the knives of the screws—roots as much as a man can lift being occasionally excavated.

"After the peat is delivered into the well, it is carried by means of an elevator, and tumbled into a hopper, from which it passes through the stick and fiber catcher, the pulping and distributing trough, without any assistance whatever; it being only necessary to see that the stick catcher is kept clear, and, occasionally, when the pulp is too dry, to turn on a pump until it is reduced to a proper consistency.

"The leveling of the pulp should be done as evenly and smoothly as possible. A few days' experience will enable any intelligent man to accomplish this; and upon its being well done depends, in some measure, the quality of skin upon the peat—so essential, not only in shedding the rain and preventing cracking from the sun, but also in giving a permanent toughness to the bricks.

"The crew of the scow, all told, will number six, including the master who keeps the knives of the screw excavators clean, and sees that all is going on right; two men at the screw excavators, one engine man, one man leveling the pulp, and one man to tend the stick-catcher and pulping-spout.

"The marking of the pulp-beds into transverse cuts, at six inch intervals, is proceeded with as soon as the pulp begins to set, or becomes so tough that when the incisions or cuts are made in it by the knives, they do not re-unite. The operation is performed by two men, one on each side of the pulp-bed, who by means of a rope pull a frame-work of wood, carrying curved knives to and fro across the bed. A little practice enables them to perform the work with great accuracy. The longitudinal cuts, eighteen inches apart, are made as soon as the pulp is sufficiently hard to bear the weight of a man upon a plank laid on its surface. It is performed by pushing a circular plate of iron, which, cutting like a circular saw, severs the peat to the very bottom. In making these last cuts, care should be taken that they go quite through the peat, so that surface water from rain may freely pass off through the drains in the pulp-beds into the canal.

"Upon the state of the weather depends the time when the next operation should be performed; but if the pulp-slab, when first spread out, is not more than nine inches in thickness, which it should never exceed, then a fortnight will be ample time to harden the bricks for footing.

"The footing is done by gangs of men and boys, one man and three boys working together; the man, using a suitable tool, separates the bricks, which the boys foot, or place in groups or stooks of five; four stand on their ends inclining to each other, with their tops touching, the fifth being balanced horizontally upon them. A man and three boys will foot four thousand bricks in a day.

"After the bricks have been exposed to the weather for a few days, they should be refooted or turned, two boys handling four thousand as a day's work.

"Nothing now remains to be done but to wheel the bricks, when sufficiently dry, into barges, and convey them to the store."

Mr. Hodges plan of operation is rather extensive, not to say immense, yet wherever the necessary area and supply of peat can be found, there can be no doubt but his method would prove as profitable as any other, and perhaps more so. It has been put into successful operation in Canada, and has furnished a fuel that, used on the Grand Trunk railway, produced the most promising results.

Elsberg's process.—This was invented by Dr. Louis Elsberg, of New York city, in 1864, and his experimental machinery was erected at Belleville, N. J. It is based on the principle of the *Exter process*, an invention made in Bavaria, in 1856. In the latter method the bog is laid dry by drains, and the bushes and grass turf removed down to good peat. A gang of three plows is then propelled by a portable steam engine over the surface tearing up the peat to the depth of about an inch. It is then pulverized where it lies by a harrow, drawn by oxen. After several turnings by an instrument like our cultivator, in order to expose it to the air and sun, it is gathered by scrapers and loaded in wagons, and conveyed to the press or magazine, where it is further pulverized by passing it through a series of toothed rollers. It then enters a very complicated drying oven, where by a series of spiral rollers it is moved over successive shelves or floors, the interior of the oven being heated partly by steam and partly by hot air. The floors consist of steam-chambers, made of iron, and the hot air made to circulate over the peat at a temperature of 120° to 140° Fah. The fine peat is thence conveyed to the press which forms it into bricks of suitable size for locomotives. It has a specific gravity of 1.14, and forms an excellent fuel. One cubic foot of this pressed peat weighs 72 pounds. The process of Elsberg varies from this in having a cylindrical pug-mill in which the peat, air-dried as in Exter's process, is further broken, and at the same time subjected to a current of steam admitted through a pipe and jacket surrounding the cylinder. The steam peat is then condensed by presses similar to those of the Exter method, fed directly from the mill. In this way the complicated drying-oven of Exter is dispensed with. Samples of peat prepared by this method have, according to Prof. Johnson, a specific gravity of 1.2 to 1.3.

Leavitt's process.—Mr. T. H. Leavitt, of Boston, Mass., in 1865, invented the following machinery and method of manufacturing peat: "The machinery consists of a strong tank or cistern, three feet in diameter, and six feet high, supported upon a stout framework about four feet above the floor of a suitable building, which should be near the bog, and is best constructed on a side-hill so that easy access can be had to the lower story on one side from the base of the hill, and to the second story on the other side. The top of this tank is open, and even with the floor of the second story. Within the tank, and firmly fixed to its sides, are numerous projections of a variety of forms, adapted to the treatment of the material in its several stages as it progresses through the mill, which is divided into three apartments; through the center of the tank revolves an upright shaft to which are affixed knives and arms varying in form and structure to correspond with the stationary projections in each apartment; below the tank is a receiver, or hopper; and under this is a moulding or forming machine, two feet in width and twelve feet long, of like simple construction, which receives the condensed material from the hopper and delivers it in blocks of any desired form and size. The whole is adapted to be driven by a small steam engine and requires about six and ten horse-power respectively for the two sizes of machines as at present constructed, of the capacity of fifty and one hundred tons each of crude peat, per day of ten hours.

"The crude material is brought from the bog in ordinary horse-carts, or on small cars running over a cheaply constructed tram-way, to the mouth of the mill, in the floor of the second story of the building, where it is dumped or shoveled into the mill in any convenient quantity; but the arrangement is such that only a given amount is admitted, and under treatment at one time, so that all parts have a uniform and regular supply. The treatment is such that the original organization of the peat is entirely destroyed; in the second stage, the air, of which a large amount is contained in its cells, is ejected; advantage is taken of some of the natural properties of the material, and the mass is condensed in the moist state in the lower part of the mill, from whence it is delivered into the hopper of the moulding machine, and is discharged in a continuous line of moulds (which are fed into the rear part of the machine by a boy), at the rate of fifty to one hundred tons per day of ten hours. The work of removing the blocks to the spreading ground is easily accomplished; and they are exposed in the open air for drying, in much the same manner as bricks are exposed in a brick-yard.

"The amount of water contained in well drained peat is ordinarily from 65 to 75 per cent., varying according to the character of the material and the drainage of the meadow; so that the weight of dry, hard fuel from the product of a day's operations, is from 12 to 17 tons, or 25 to 35 tons, from the two sizes of machines respectively.

"The water remaining in the blocks as they come from the mill can be got rid of only by evaporation, which goes on very rapidly after this method of treatment; and the fuel is, at the expiration of about six to ten days, sometimes in four or five, in condition to be housed or transported to market."

The Rae process.—This invention, patented May 22, 1866, was made by Dr. Julio H. Rae, of Syracuse, N. Y. It is thus described in a circular issued by the owners: "The peat is delivered into a top of a cylinder placed in a vertical position, in which is a revolving shaft, to which are permanently fastened, near its top, two or more arms, which are set at an angle with the axis of the shaft, their office being to draw down the peat from the top of the cylinder and feed it along into that part of the cylinder where it will be subjected to the action of the revolving knives or cutters, which are found on the under side of the blades projecting from the shaft, and placed at an angle with the axis of the shaft. The number of blades can be varied, and also the number of cutters on the blades. In a cylinder of about four feet in length about seven such blades can be used advantageously. They are arranged around the shaft in spiral order, and are so inclined that the front edge of each blade is higher than the rear edge, whereby they are made to give a downward impulse to the peat as they revolve. Below the lowest blade is a propeller, consisting of a series of blades, each bent so as to form a section of a screw, but the blades are fastened to the shaft in the same plane. The office of the propeller is to seize the peat and press it downward through an opening in the bottom of the cylinder into a chamber, wherein are placed conveyors that convey and force the peat into condensing and discharging tubes that project through the sides of the chamber. The condensing tubes and the conveyors are placed in a horizontal position, the ends of the conveyors reaching a little way within the tubes, but they can be arranged in any other desired position. The inner ends of the tubes are cylindrical and the tubes gradually decrease in diameter for about one-half their length, so as to resemble the frustum of a cone. From or near the point of their greatest contraction, the tubes assume a shape nearly semi-cylindrical, retaining that shape to their outer ends, and gradually increasing again in diameter. The rounded upper side of the tubes at their discharge end, gives a corresponding rounded form to the peat that is forced through them, but any other form may be adopted. The peat is received from the ends of the discharging tubes on the ground or upon a traveling belt or platform, and may be cut up immediately into proper lengths, convenient to be handled in drying.

"There are four sizes of these machines, viz.:

"No. 1, requiring about one horse-power, designed for farmers, is capable of turning out per day what, when properly dried, will make from four to six tons of merchantable fuel.

"No. 2 is double the capacity of No. 1, requiring about two horse power.

"No. 3 is a combination of Nos. 1 and 2, nearly double their capacity, requiring from four to six horse power.

"No. 4 is more than double the capacity of No. 3, requiring from eight to twelve horse power, and capable of turning out per day enough peat to make, when cured, forty tons of merchantable fuel."

These machines were run, a few years ago, by the *Minnesota peat company*, of St. Paul, and the *Minnesota packet company.* In simplicity of construction, and in power and capacity, these mills seem to excel. They also have a very great advantage over Leavitt's and all others employing moulds for giving shape to the condensed peat. The use of the moulds is cumbersome and expensive.

The Aubin process.—This method was inaugurated at Meriden, Conn., in 1870. It covers different patents, designed for economizing labor, obtained in 1868 and 1869. The following description is from the circular issued by the agent in New York, in 1870: "If the manufacture of the fuel is to be carried on upon a limited scale, of say five tons, or thirty to fifty tons per day, hand labor, with the ordinary long-handled shovel, is probably the simplest and cheapest way to get the peat *up* from the deposit: it is then thrown into wheelbarrows, and if the distance is not too great, can be dumped directly into the mouth of the elevator. When peat to be dug is at a sufficient distance from the machine to justify or necessitate the use of cars, then a set of double portable rails can be employed. When the swamp cannot possibly be drained, the use of scows or wire tramways may be resorted to. For large operations, to supply railroads or manufacturing districts, a steam digger, on a scow, or on tracks, will be, of course, cheaper than hand labor.

"The peat, once dug and conveyed from the pit, falls into a large hopper, from which a screw elevator, especially devised for peat, propels it up to the slicing and cleaning apparatus, placed above the grinding and puddling cylinder. When the bog cannot be drained, the peat taken from it contains, of course, too large a proportion of water for thorough and economical working; in such case the elevator is furnished with a *wringer*, which can be operated or not, at will, and arranged to separate the surplus water as the material passes through it. The peat, in a fit condition to work up well, being elevated in a continuous and evenly-fed supply, falls into the *slicer and cleaner*. This portion of the apparatus is composed of a series of rapidly revolving cutters, which owing to their peculiar form and position, slice the peat and separate from it all hard or foreign substances.

From the slicer and cleaner the peat, *still better fitted* for grinding, falls into the *grinding and pulverizing* machine. This is a cylinder three feet in diameter by six feet long, and made of boiler-plate iron. The cylinder itself is stationary, but within is a large revolving iron drum, eighteen inches in diameter. To this are bolted in two spiral rows, forty-four cast iron knives, all nine inches long, but of three slightly varying shapes, and three sizes, increasing toward the mouth of the cylinder. These knives are named, according to size, *cutters*, *grinders* and *puddlers*, and remind one very much of the three kinds of teeth, incisors, canines and molars. They are between one and three inches in thickness and have each several square corners, but no sharp edges. Attached to the inside of the cylinder, under the drum, is a corresponding fixed series of twenty-two nearly crescent-shaped iron knives. Between these and the revolving knives the peat is carried along, cut, ground and perfectly "pulped," and falls, finally, into a sluggish stream, through a spout a foot or more square, into a large wooden moulding hopper. Along one side of the cylinder is the "stone pocket," a long, spacious iron trough, placed horizontally. It has an exterior cover for removing its contents, and communicates with the interior of the cylinder, to which it is attached in such a position that the revolving knives necessarily throw any stone or other hard substance into the pocket, instead of crushing it against the fixed knives. This contrivance is simple and effective. Under the moulding hopper is a series of rollers set in a long, stout frame, about four feet high and three feet wide, called the *conveyor*. One man puts a shallow wooden box or mould into a trough of water. Another submerges and removes it and lays it on a little branch of the conveyor. Here a wooden *pusher* strikes it a blow and sends it on the main conveyor; another drives it into the narrow space under the moulding hopper, where the weight of the peat and the hopper's peculiar shape fill it, before another blow from the same pusher forces a second mould under the hopper and expels the first. Other moulds rapidly follow, moving the first slowly along till a third pusher thrusts it upon a little side-shelf, from which two men easily set it down with eleven of its fellows, in three piles of four each, upon a wooden four-wheeled car.

"The drying field is a large, smooth meadow, crossed by two main tracks, running 1,500 feet in a straight line from the machine, and intersected at right angles by cross-tracks, 150 feet apart, and running 300 feet each way from the main tracks, with turn-tables at the junctions. These tracks are three feet wide, and laid with iron rails near the machine, and wooden rails where the wear is less. There is a short switch-track, built so that three cars, instead of two, can be run up to the conveyor at once, though only one can be loaded at a time.

"The pulverized peat is so tenaciously adhesive that the moulds used are of a novel construction, to meet this difficulty. They are four and a half feet long by two feet wide, and five inches deep. The corners are secured with iron clamps, and an extra strip is nailed at each end to serve as a handle. The bottom is removable, and across it are fastened, at equal distances, ten pine strips, about two and a half inches high and an inch wide at the base, but beveled off on each side to one-third that thickness at the top. These moulds cost about $2.50 each, and about 500 of them are in use.

"Each car is propelled by two men. Four men unload it. Two seize a mould, one at each end, walk briskly away with it to the place where it is to be dumped, tip it wrong side up, jerk off the side frame, and drop it on the grass, pick the bottom off the sticky mass of "pulp," toss it into the frame, catch up the empty mould again, and trot back to the car. This process is repeated with the other moulds. When first emptied, the wet, black peat is just dense enough to keep its shape; but in the warm season it hardens so fast that within forty-eight hours it will resist the severest storm, and then resume the drying process when the weather clears, at the point where the rain interrupted it. Strange as it may seem, this peat fuel absorbs much less water than wood does, and hence can be dried on the bare earth, under the open sky. It does not even adhere to the grass, which, however, is soon worn away.

"As it dries the peat shrinks to about half its first thickness, changes color from black to brown, and cracks along the grooves, so that when it is half dry, boys can easily 'hack' it—*i. e.*, break each mould into about twenty pieces, and pile it in two or three small, loose heaps. In two weeks or a month, according to the weather, the peat is dry enough to be gathered by men or boys, in baskets, barrows or carts, and stored in covered wooden sheds, with wide cracks between the sideboards to admit air, and the ends left open.

"The capacity of the three foot cylinder per day, at thirty revolutions regularly fed, is seventy-five tons of dry fuel.

Whatever be the number of revolutions, the moulding machine adapts itself to the demand.

"The cost of machinery, including *engine, boilers*, and entire equipment, is dependent on the amount of fuel it is required to be produced by the operator; being for small works, intended for horse power—say five tons per day—about $200; for a product of 250 tons per day, about $20,000—an engine of eighty horse power being required to drive the latter."

Haight's process.—This is the invention of Mr. W. Z. Haight, of Delavan, Faribault county, Minnesota. It has been successfully operated at Fairmont, in Martin county, and at Wells, in Faribault county. At the latter place it was taken for locomotives by the Southern Minnesota railroad. The works at this place have been thus described by the Wells *Atlas*:

"A bold bank is selected, in order to secure a good drying yard close to the bog, on which the engine and machinery is located, where a frame is erected 12x16 feet and eight feet high, from the top of which a wooden car track, supported by a light trestle-work, descends to the surface of the bog, a distance of 150 feet, with a fall of 25 feet. From that point the track is made in sections of 14 feet each, which are portable, thrown down on the surface of the bog, and with the use of a few curved sections, the track can be shifted in any direction so as to excavate the entire bog that is in reach. This track can be extended many hundred feet out across the surface of the bog, if desired, giving access to several acres. On this track one car plies, which is loaded by three men who stand by the edge of the excavation, (water being lowered about six inches from the surface to insure dry feet). The sod is cut up into chunks, with sharp, diamond pointed, spade like tools, from two to four feet deep, according to depth of the peat, and left submerged in the water until the car is at the proper place, when the chunks are pitched from the water into the car, with common four-tined forks, and when the regular amount, about two tons, is loaded into the car, it is hauled by the power of the engine up the incline, over the large platform under which the mill is situated, and by a simple contrivance the car is made to dump its load, also to unship the windlass from the power that hauled it up, being no trouble to the feeder, who at will starts the car back, which, in going down the inclined plane gains momentum that carries it out hundreds of feet along the level track. Meanwhile the men in the bog do the necessary work, cutting chunks for another load, so there is no time lost in the absence of the car. The feeder, who stands on the platform, then feeds the turfy mass into the mill, which is an ingeniously constructed machine, though simple, very durable, so arranged with knives cutting through grates, pickers, conveyors, etc., that it will treat the most fibrous mass or sod peat that can be produced and reduce it to a pulp or jelly at once, and that too without clogging or winding in the machine. Owing to its perfectness it renders it unnecessary to strip off the top sod from the bog, all that is necessary being to mow off the grass or other vegetation, if there is any growing thereon, thereby saving considerable expense in labor, also a good part of the fuel, when ground up with the lower or more decomposed peat. By the conveyers, the peat, as fast as pulped, is forced through a pipe into a vat with dump bottom, which holds one cart load. Here the cartman receives it by driving his cart under and dumping a load into it from the vat, adjusts the vat botton, drives to the spreading ground, dumps his load from the cart and returns, during which time another load has accumulated in the vat. The pulp is dumped on a smooth plat of ground, where a man with a common shovel spreads it into beds four inches thick, nine feet wide, and as long as necessary, setting up boards at the sides to keep it from spreading, who is followed by another man with a tool similar to a rolling colter for a plow, fixed on a long handle, who cuts the bed of soft peat into blocks 8x13 inches, which commence to solidify at once by the ejection of the water, and in one or two days, by the use of a light tool made expressly for the purpose, these blocks are tipped up on edge or corners promiscuously, so the sun and wind can have a better chance at them. In two days more they are piled in open ricks, in which posture they remain on an average, two weeks, when they are housed to finish drying.

"The cost, the past season, of running this establishment, at a capacity of 60 tons of wet or 15 tons of dry peat per day, (equal at least, when properly prepared and well seasoned, to 15 cords of good wood,) is as follows:

Superintendent	$2 50
Engineer per day	2 75
Three men in bog to load car	6 00
Man to spread pulped peat into beds	1 50
Boy to turn up blocks	1 00
Two boys to rick up blocks	2 00
Man to feed peat into mill	1 50
Boy to drive cart	1 00

Man to cut peat into blocks	1 50
Cart horse	1 00
One ton peat at cost price for engine	1 72
For oil, and wear and tear on engine.	1 00
Add 22 cts. per ton for housing 15 tons, one day's product	3 30
Total	$26 77

"All the peat is being sold at $4.00 a ton, except that to the Railroad Co., at which price the yield per day would be $60.00. Subtract from that the amount of expenses, $26.77, leaves $33.23—a handsome profit. The price of peat per ton should be estimated equal to that of good wood per cord, sawed and split for stove fuel, and unsawed for steam powers.

"The cost of an establishment, excepting engine and drying sheds, capable of manufacturing 100 tons of wet peat, or 25 tons when dry, per day,—mill $400. Frame, trestle-work, car track, car, dump cart, etc., about $300.

"This is the cheapest mode of utilizing the peat, both as to the matter of machinery and labor, that we have any account of, and as it has been practically proven a success at this place, we see no reason, if the same plan be followed, why it should not be equally successful elsewhere."

It must be admitted, however, that although great progress has been made in this country in the construction of machinery for the manufacture of peat, a great deal of labor and capital have been consumed to no purpose. Many of the companies that, with hundreds of thousands of capital each, sprang into existence a few years ago when a feverish excitement spread over the country in reference to peat, have entirely disappeared, and nothing remains to witness their folly but the idle and rusty machinery they "invented" or purchased, and the almost forgotten titles to thousands of bogs, which they eagerly bought. This phase of the peat enterprise is not, however, the just criterion by which to judge of it. It is only an index of a deep seated want. The unmatured developments of the first peat agitators in this country were enough to start into a flame the desire of the people for relief from the high prices of wood and coal. The result was a wide-spread speculation. From this there has been a corresponding reaction. This however does not in the least affect the real value of peat as a fuel, nor detract from the credit of the inventions that have been made. Sober-minded men, consumers of large quantities of fuel, have in some instances, and in various parts of the country, steadily and persistently followed up the matter. Here and there a railroad, an iron-furnace, a manufacturing establishment or a family has continued to produce and use peat fuel until it has won much of its lost favor, and is now in actual demand by consumers of the heaviest class, who are ready to purchase largely and at highly renumerative prices. This demand however is one that will not be met by anything less than a constant and steady supply, equal to its requirements. It calls for the best machinery, equipped with the best facilities and aids, and backed by large capital. The following extract is from a letter to the writer from T. H. Leavitt, of Boston, dated Dec. 3, 1873:

"The most active and really practical operations in peat and its utilization of which I have present knowledge are in the lake Superior iron regions of Michigan.

"In October last I made a trip there and at Ishpeming, near Marquette, witnessed the successful use of peat fuel for the smelting of the ores of that region. Operations more or less experimental have been quietly prosecuted there during the last four years. A furnace of moderate capacity, especially adapted for smelting with peat, has recently been constructed and was put in operation about ten days before I was there, and was then in most perfect operation, and was considered a decided success as regards economy, ease of management, quality and quantity of metal produced, &c.

"The fuel was very poorly made, (lacking the density which might easily be given it, weighing 35 lbs. per bushel, whereas it might probably be made to weigh 40, 45 to 50 lbs. at no greater cost,) and in many things they lacked experience, but all appeared enthusiastic of their success. They commenced with charcoal and ten per cent. peat, gradually increasing until at the time I was there they were using upwards of 70 per cent. of peat, and were only waiting permission from the agent to use *all* peat, which the furnace men assured me they were convinced would be not only successfully done, but be actually better than to use any mixture of charcoal. The metal produced was regarded as fully equal in quality and perhaps superior to the very best grade ever produced in that region.

"Considering the immense quantities of peat in that region and the success attained with a fuel so poorly manufactured, I can but feel that for that region and its iron interests the peat fuel enterprise has yet a prominent and very important place to fill.

"The cost of producing the fuel there is stated to be $3 per ton."

(h) *The value of peat for fuel.*

It is not intended here to attempt the details of experiments and comparisons with the view of demonstrating the usefulness of peat as a fuel for domestic and metallurgical purposes. That has already been abundantly attested by the approval of railroad engineers, who have used it, and are still using it, both in this country and in Europe, and of owners of furnaces and manufacturing establishments, as well as by the testimony of chemists and government commissioners that have reported on its working, in France, in Germany and in America. The following tabulated comparisons are given for the purpose of placing within reach of those within the state interested in this subject, reliable means of estimating the cost of peat, and its heating capacity, compared with other kinds of fuel. These are the results of careful and long continued experimentation:

(1) *Weight for weight.*

The following comparisons are given by Gysser, on certain woods and charcoals in Germany, the basis being equal weights of each.*

Beech wood, split, air-dried	1.00
Peat, condensed by Weber and Gysser's method, air-dried with 25 per cent. of moisture	1.00
Peat, condensed by Weber and Gysser's method, hot-dried, with ten per cent. moisture	1.48
Peat charcoal, from condensed peat	1.73
The same peat, simply cut and air-dried	.80
Beech charcoal	1.90
Summer-oak wood	1.18
Birch wood	.95
White pine wood	.72
Alder	.65
Linden	.65
Red pine	.61
Poplar	.50

"The general results of the investigations hitherto made on all the common kinds of fuel, are given in the subjoined statement. The comparisons are made in units of heat, and refer to equal weights of the materials experimented with." [*Peat and its uses*, p. 102.]

---

*See Prof. Johnson's "Peat and its uses," p. 97.

Air-dry wood		2,800	
Air-dry peat	2,500		3,000
Perfectly dry wood		3,600	
Perfectly dry peat	3,000		4,000
Air-dry lignite, or brown coal	3,300		4,200
Perfectly dry lignite, or brown coal	4,000		5,000
Bituminous coal	3,800		7,000
Anthracite coal		7,500	
Wood charcoal	6,300		7,500
Coke	6,500		7,600

(2) *Bulk for bulk.*

One of the greatest obstacles to the general use of peat for fuel consists in its bulkiness. Uncondensed peat, air-dried, will occupy two and a half times the amount of storage room that anthracite coal will, the weights being equal. As it is also of lower heating capacity, requiring two and a quarter tons of peat to equal one of anthracite, the bulk required for the peat would be equal to five and five-eighths times that of coal. By condensation peat is greatly improved in heating capacity and in convenience in handling. Johnson gives the following as the composition and density of the best condensed peat, compared with that of hard wood and anthracite.

In 100 parts.	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen and nitrogen.	Ash.	Water.	Specific gravity.
Wood	39.6	4.8	34.8	0.8	20.0	0.75
Condensed peat	47.2	4.9	22.9	5.0	20.0	1.20
Anthracite	91.3	2.9	2.8	3.0	....	1.40

The heating power of peat, of the different qualities, taken from different depths, compared with pine wood, are thus given by Prof. Johnson, after Karmarsch, equal bulks being taken instead of equal weights:

100 cu. ft. of turfy peat, on the average, = 33 cu. ft. of pine wood in sticks.
“ fibrous “ “ = 90 “ “ “
“ earthy “ “ = 145 “ “ “
“ pitchy “ “ = 184 “ “ “

The following also shows the relative heating effect and weights of an English cord of oak wood (taken at 100 as the standard) and of several European air-dried peats, bulk for bulk, quoted from Brix by Prof. Johnson:

	Weight per cord.	Heating effect.
Oak wood	4,150 lbs.	100.
Peat from Linum, 1st quality, dense and pitchy	3,400 “	70.
“ “ 2nd quality, fibrous	2,900 “	55.
“ “ 3rd quality, turfy	2,270 “	53.
Peat from Buechsenfeld, 1st quality, hard and pitchy	3,400 “	74.
Peat from Buechsenfeld, 2d quality	2,730 “	64.

(i) *What has been done in peat.*

A few years ago the question of manufacturing peat was put to a practical test by the *Minnesota peat company*, located at St. Paul. The Rae machinery was used. The work was continued long enough to show that it was not profitable at the current prices of wood, and was suspended. A similar attempt was made at Red Wing, about the same time, and with the same result. The process used there is not known. In southern Minnesota Mr. W. Z. Haight has prosecuted the manufacture more successfully, and is now engaged in erecting the necessary buildings and apparatus for working peat by his process the coming season, at Lura station, in Faribault county. He produced, at a cost of two dollars per ton, a good fuel at Wells, in the summer of 1871, with his machinery, which was well suited for use in locomotives. The stoppage of his work there was not due to a failure to produce a good fuel, nor to its being too costly, but, he says, to a lack of demand sufficiently large to warrant extensive operations. His method is described in a preceding section. Except the preparation of small amounts in St. Paul, by Dr. C. D. Williams, for experimentation, the foregoing are believed to be the only attempts that have ever been made in the state of Minnesota, to produce from the peat deposits of the state a fuel for general consumption by any process of manufacture.

(j) *Raw or manufactured peat.*

Some experiments have been made by Dr. C. D. Williams on a fuel made by a saturation of turf-peat with the residuum, or "shale oil," that is a product of the petroleum refineries of Pennsylvania. These trials demonstrate that a good fuel may thus be formed. The combustible material in the turf itself is not so much as in true peat. The analyses of Prof. Peckham show the greater per cent. of ash in excess of that of peat. This shale oil has a carbonaceous composition, not yet certainly ascertained, consisting very largely of carbon and hydrogen, both of which are combustible. The adding of the shale oil to the turf not only increases by so much the combustible material in a given bulk, but improves the quality of the fuel. By this means some of the poor peats may be made serviceable, at a cheaper rate, perhaps, than by the process of manufacture. The following facts in reference to the cost of this shale oil delivered at Worthington, in Nobles county, are on the authority of Dr. Williams. The residuum can be had for removing it from the vats:

Cost of barrel containing 43 to 45 gallons	$1 50
Cost of filling and drayage to cars, per barrel	50
Charges Pittsburgh, Fort Wayne & Chicago R. R. to Chicago	1 00
Charges West Wisconsin R. R. to St. Paul	1 00
Charges St. Paul & Sioux City R. R. to Worthington	1 00
Add for profits to dealer	1 00
Cost at Worthington per barrel	$6 00

(k) *Practical conclusions on peat.*

1. There is not so much real peat in the state of Minnesota as has been supposed. There is a great abundance of turf, made up of grass-roots, containing a large per cent. of ash, not properly called peat, that will furnish, in any exigency, a fuel that will keep a family from suffering. This, however, is not thought the object of the survey to investigate, nor to locate, as it exists, as is often stated in the public press, on almost every square mile.

2. While a good fuel, almost equal to the Iowa coal, can be produced by the manufacture of peat by a process of condensation and evaporation, it is far from certain that it will not cost as much, or more than wood or coal at the present prices.

3. If in any part of the northwest peat can be made useful as a fuel by manufacture, it is the woodless and coalless region of southern and western Minnesota.

4. Cautious experimentation should be carried on by those interested in the subject, with the view to test the comparative cost of peat, wood and coal, at the prices current in different localities.

5. The farmers, and others who need fuel, but do not have means to produce a condensed peat, can take out in mid-summer a winter's supply, from the turf peat found on many farms in the prairie region, but they will generally not find it possible to utilize the real peat deposits without some method of manufacture. They will be too apt to crumble, and thus make a slow, smoldering fire.

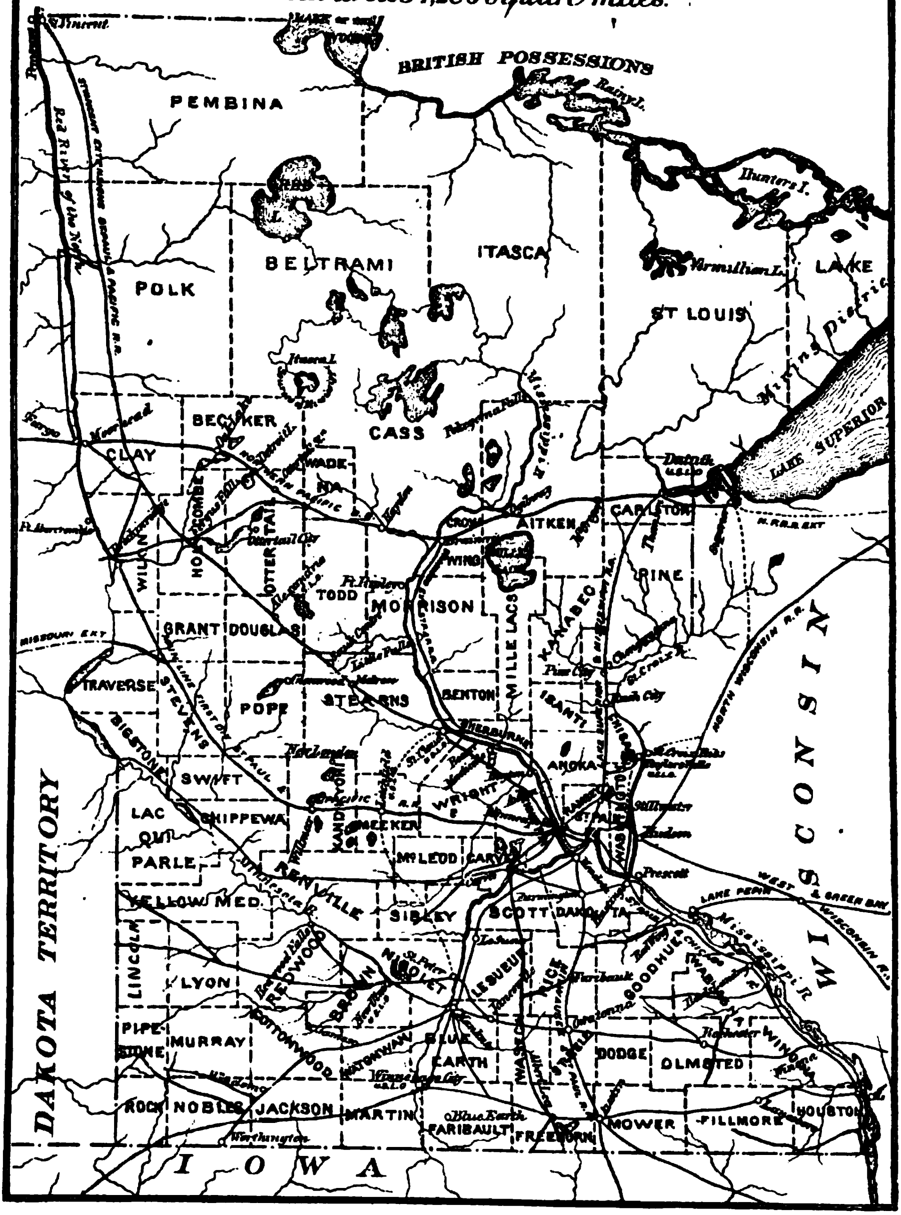
6. There is no known instance of the existence of peat, in Minnesota along river valleys, on the bottom lands, where the surface is subject, at the present time, to inundation by spring freshets.

7. There are old river channels, or valleys of excavation,

MAP OF MINNESOTA.

Showing the Location of the Counties.

Total area 84,286 square miles.



both in the drift and between rocky bluffs, that no longer exist as rivers, which contain considerable deposits of peat.

8. There are depressions in the rolling drift surface, in some localities, which, fed by invisible springs, maintain a nearly uniform stage of water throughout the year, and may hold peat of the best quality.

9. But a small portion of the state has been examined. In that a much smaller amount of peat was found than had been anticipated. Other portions, and especially the central southern counties, are believed to promise more peat than the counties examined. According to Dr. C. A. White, state geologist of Iowa, a peat bearing belt enters Minnesota from the south, bounded, in general, by the Des Moines on the west, and the Cedar on the east.

10. Large quantities of peat are believed to exist in the northern part of the state, many of the cranberry marshes being peat bogs of great purity.

11. The value of peat as a common fuel having been demonstrated, and its existence in sufficient quantities within the state having been ascertained, it becomes a legitimate expedient for the State to stimulate the invention of successful methods of utilizing it by offering rewards.

III.

THE GEOLOGY OF THE MINNESOTA VALLEY.

(a) PRELIMINARY CONSIDERATIONS.

In the fall and winter of 1766 Jonathan Carver explored the valley of the Minnesota, but aside from the mention of the rapids near Shakopee, he has given no information of the geology of the valley, although he claims to have ascended it a distance of two hundred miles above Mendota.

The expedition of Maj. S. H. Long was undertaken in 1823, by order of John C. Calhoun, secretary of war. The able historiographer to the expedition was Wm. H. Keating, who also served as geologist. He was appointed from the University of Pennsylvania, where he occupied the chair of mineralogy and chemistry. This party ascended in canoes a distance of 130 miles, when they abandoned them for the land, following the valley to Big Stone lake, thence descending the Red River valley to lake Winnipeg. The observations of Prof. Keating on the geology of the Minnesota valley, are the earliest, with the exception of the doubtful accounts of Le Sueur, of the copper mines on the Blue Earth, that we have any knowledge of, although an old map accompanying the *Recueill de voyages*, published in Amsterdam in 1720, shows a "coal mine" located some distance up the Minnesota. They were made with that haste which a traveling geologist always finds unavoidable when he is acting simply as an accompaniment to an expedition, instead of its guide and commander. No time could be spared to indulge the geologist in making such detailed observations as would enable him to state emphatically the bearings of isolated facts, which he picked up, on each other, or to generalize with any certainty. He could simply act as a gatherer of facts. His success lay in the exactness and fullness of his observations. Prof. Keating's geological observations may be summarized in the following descending section :

1. The bluff at Fort Snelling, made up of (a) slaty or splintery limestone. 8 feet; (b) blue limestone, useful for building, 15-20 feet; (c) sandstone, 60 feet; (d) earthy argillaceous limestone 10 feet; (d) crystalline and conglomeritic limestone, 4 feet; (e) a limestone of finer grain and more earthy texture than the last in which the river is excavated at the fort. Keating is the only geologist that has ever reported limestone *in situ* below the sandstone (c) at Fort Snelling. Six miles below the small Indian village Weakaote, he notes the occurrence of the Little Rapids, caused by a sandstone in horizontal stratification "in every respect similar to that found at Fort St. Anthony." The same sandstone is again mentioned as occurring near Kasota, having horizontal ledges of rock overlying it, supposed to be the same as seen at Fort Snelling. The banks of the Redwood river, near its mouth, are said to be made up of "a fine white sandstone."
2. "Primitive rock" was first seen *in situ*, several miles above Patterson's rapids, which are a few miles above the mouth of the Redwood river, and was examined very carefully and described in detail. He remarks in general : "It seemed as if four simple minerals, quartz, feldspar, mica and amphibole, had united here to produce almost all the varieties of combination which can arise from the association of two or more of these minerals." Owing to its confused and various composition, he compares it to that seen at a subsequent period of the expedition, between lake Winnipeg and the lake of the Woods. He regards all that section of country between Patterson's rapids and the upper Mississippi, and thence

> to Fort Alexander, at the mouth of Winnipeg river, as underlain by granite and sienitic granite. These rocks are again mentioned at a point five leagues above Lac qui Parle, at the mouth of Spirit Mountain creek.

In the fall of 1835, G. W. Featherstonhaugh's ascent of of the Minnesota occured. His geological observations were very meagre. He took the pains to ascend the Blue Earth a short distance in search of the copper mine of Le Sueur. Keating did not visit it, passing it with the simple remark that he believed the substance obtained by Le Sueur to be a phosphate of iron, judging simply by its color. Mr. Featherstonhaugh says: "The Mahkatoh appears to form about half the volume of the St. Peter's, and is a very rapid stream. The Sissitons we had met, told us it forked eleven times, and that the branches abounded in rapids and shallow places. About twelve, we came to a fork or branch coming in on our right, about forty-five yards broad, and we turned into it, having a well wooded bluff on the right bank about ninety feet high. The stream had very little current, owing to the main branch, which we had just left, rushing down with great velocity and making back-water here. We had not proceeded three-quarters of a mile when we reached the place which the Sissitons had described to us as being that to which the Indians resorted for their pigment. This was a bluff about 150 feet high on the left bank, and from the slope being very much trodden and worn away, I saw at once that it was a locality which for some purpose or other had been frequented from a very remote period. We accordingly stopped there, and I told the men to make a fire and warm themselves, whilst I examined the place.

"As soon as I had reached that part of the bluff whence the pigment had been taken, Le Sueur's story lost all credit with me, for I instantly saw that it was nothing but a continuation of the seam which divided the limestone from the sandstone, and which I have before spoken of at the Myah Skah,* as containing a silicate of iron of bluish-green color. The concurrent account of all the Indians we had spoken with, that this was the place the aborigines had always resorted to to procure their pigment, and the total silence of everybody since Le Sueur's visit, respecting any deposit of copper ore in this or any other part of the country, convinced me that the story of his copper mines was a fabulous one, most probably intended to raise himself in importance with the French government of that day. Charlevoix having stated that the mine was only a league and three-quarters from the mouth of the Terre Bleu, made it certain that I was now at that locality, and the seam of colored earth gave the key to the rest. Le Sueur's account of the mine being at the foot of a mountain ten leagues long, was as idle as the assertion that he had obtained 30,000 pounds of copper ore in twenty-two days, for there is nothing like a mountain in the neighborhood. The bluff, to be sure, rises to the height of about 150 feet from the river; but when you have ascended it you find yourself at the top of a level prairie, so that what might to an inexperienced traveler appear to be a mountaincus height, is nothing but the summit of the gorge which the river has cut out." [*Canoe Voyage up the Minnay Sotor*, *Vol.* 1 *p.* 303.]

---

*Myah Skah is "white rock bluff," supposed to be the bluff at Ottawa, in Le Sueur county.

With the exception of an occasional mention of granite in place, and a very brief notice of the red quartzite near the mouth of the Waraju river, the foregoing is the only geological note of importance recorded by Mr. Featherstonhaugh on the valley of the Minnesota.

In the survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota by Dr. D. D. Owen, the examination of this river was committed to Dr. B. F. Shumard. Dr. Shumard and his party ascended the valley in canoes as far as the Redwood river, where he was attacked with pleurisy, and was compelled to abandon the further prosecution of the survey. This was in June, 1848. His report exhibits the first attempt ever made to parallelize the rocks of the valley with those of the rest of the state, and determine their geological age, and their equivalents in other states, by reference to a standard of comparison. That standard was a nomenclature adopted by the chief of the survey, based on the New York survey, as follows, with its equivalents:

No. 1. *Formation* 3, *C.* Corralline and Pentamerus beds of the Upper Magnesian limestone. (The Niagara group of New York.)
No. 2. *Formation* 3, *B.* Lead-bearing beds of the Upper Magnesian limestone. (The Utica Slate and Hudson River group.)
No. 3. *Formation* 3, *A.* Shell-bed. (The Trenton and Black River limestone of New York.)
No. 4. *Formation* 2, *C.* Upper, white saccharoid sandstone, or St. Peter sandstone.
No. 5. *Formation* 2, *A. and B.* Low. Magnesian limestone. (The Calciferous sandrock of New York.)
No. 6. *Formation* 1. Lower, light-colored quartzose sandstone. (The Potsdam sandstone of New York.)
No. 7. *Red, argillaceous and ferruginous sandstones.* (Supposed to be a downward extension of the Potsdam sandstone.)

Of these Dr. Shumard recognized Nos. 3 and 4 at the mouth of the river, in the Fort Snelling bluff. At Shakopee, and thence to the Little Rapids, he notes No. 5. The sandstone at the last place he regards as belonging to a formation several hundred feet below the white sandstone of No. 4, probably to No. 6. At "white rock bluff," situated on the right bank of the river, about six miles below Traverse des Sioux, he regards the exposed section to consist of No. 6, capped with No. 5, about fifty feet of the former and fifteen of the latter. The same formations are exposed, at intervals, to the mouth of the Blue Earth river, where the section is said to be similar to that of *white rock bluff*. Ascending the Blue Earth river six or eight miles and observing the same geological horizon as far as he went, he notes, subsequently, two or three exposures of No. 6 before reaching the mouth of the Waraju river, one being two miles below the mouth of that stream. The red quartzite at the mouth of the Waraju he regards as the lower beds of No. 6, more or less altered by metamorphism where they abut upon the igneous rocks. He also notes conglomerate and granite outcrops about a mile in a straight line above the mouth of the Waraju. He mentions granite at La Petite Roche, twenty-five miles above the mouth of the Waraju, and at frequent other points before reaching the Redwood. He describes an interesting exposure two or three miles below the mouth of this river.

There will be further occasion to refer to Dr. Shumard's report, since, although in the main corroborated by the observations of the past season, additional facts have been gathered which necessitate some change in his parallelisms.

(b) THE TRENTON LIMESTONE AND SHALES.

After leaving the immediate vicinity of the mouth of the river, this formation is not seen again throughout its course, consequently no new facts can be given respecting its characters or extent, except those noted in Dakota county.

The quarry of Daniel F. Aiken is a mile and a half northwest of Farmington, on sec. 24 T. 114, R. 20. The beds show a considerable disturbance, and a portion of the usual building-stone, belonging to No. 4 of the section below, appears to be wanting from that cause. Yet Mr. Aiken is positive that no greater thickness of No. 4 exists there than that seen.

Section at Daniel F. Aiken's quarry, near Farmington, Dakota Co.

No. 1.	Shattered, loose beds of limestone	5 feet.
No. 2.	Shale	6 "
No. 3.	Stone, which crumbles to shale	2 "
No. 4.	The Minneapolis quarry stone	4 "
	Total	17 feet.

In traveling south on the Sioux City railroad, from Fort Snelling, the form of the brow of the bluffs of the Minnesota valley, appear to lose the Trenton on the east side of the river several miles sooner than on the west side. On the east side the limestone extends about three and a half or four miles above the fort. On the west side it seems to continue in the bluffs, though hid from sight, for a distance of six or eight miles.

(c) THE ST. PETER SANDSTONE.

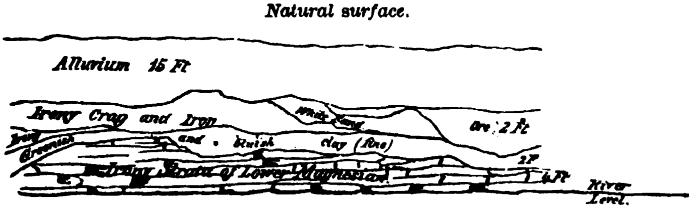
This, like the Trenton overlying, also disappears from view soon after leaving Fort Snelling. Owing to its destructible nature, it is very rarely seen except when protected by the Trenton. Yet at one other point has it been discovered in the Minnesota valley. A very interesting observation was made at the Asylum quarry, at St. Peter, in Nicollet county. The stone there wrought is the first below the St. Peter sandstone, the Shakopee limestone, the uppermost member of the Lower Magnesian. In the top of the quarry, where the workmen had stripped off the loose drift materials, about two feet of a white, friable sandstone were seen, with a thin strip of green shale about midway in it. This lay, in place, over the limestone, and afforded the only recorded observation ever made on the very base of the St. Peter sandstone. It seems to maintain its strictly arenaceous character, or very nearly so, to its very contact with the limestone. This observation confirmed the belief, derived from the examination of the valley to that point, that the St. Peter and the Kasota quarries were in the same horizon as the Shakopee quarries, and that they all occur within the first thirty feet below the St. Peter sandstone.

A friable, white sandstone, believed to be the St. Peter, was again observed, about two miles above the mouth of the Maple river, in the banks of which it affords a number of exposures. Those examined were in the northeastern part of Rapidan township, in Blue Earth county, (T. 107, R. 27, secs. 11, 12 and 13). It is here underlain by about two feet of a greenish-blue clay, and is associated with concretionary and irregular sheets of brown hematite. In the banks of the Maple, where the Shakopee limestone is exposed and somewhat quarried, there are occasional missing places in the beds of that formation. If by the action of the river the section is kept clear, so as to remove the drift, this bed of clay can be seen lying with distorted and dishing strata in these intervals The strata are sometimes not preserved, but the masses appear as if thrust into the excavation in the Shakopee limestone, and are very sandy. In other cases the clay seems to have been shaped in layers conformable to the surface of the Lower Magnesian, but unconformable with its bedding. At one place the following section can be made out:

Section in Rapidan, Blue Earth Co.

No. 1.	Alluvium	15 feet.
No. 2.	Irony crag and impure iron ore	2 "
No. 3.	Greenish bedded clay	2 "
No. 4.	Strata of Shakopee limestone, more or less stained and encrusted with iron	4 "
	Total	23 feet.

These parts are arranged, relatively to each other. according to the annexed diagram:



The white sand which here is supposed to belong to the St. Peter, but which may belong to the Cretaceous, is in some way associated with this iron ore. It seems to lie in patches, sometimes just below the iron, and in other places where the iron is wanting. It seems to lie above the clay or shale (No. 3 of the section), its position being the same as that seen at St. Peter.

At other places, a little above the point of the foregoing section, the iron and sand are found irregularly mingled, the iron occuring in the form of concretionary sheets, at least in sheets that enclose cavities. As much as four feet of this sand can here be made out, but the clay layer cannot be seen.

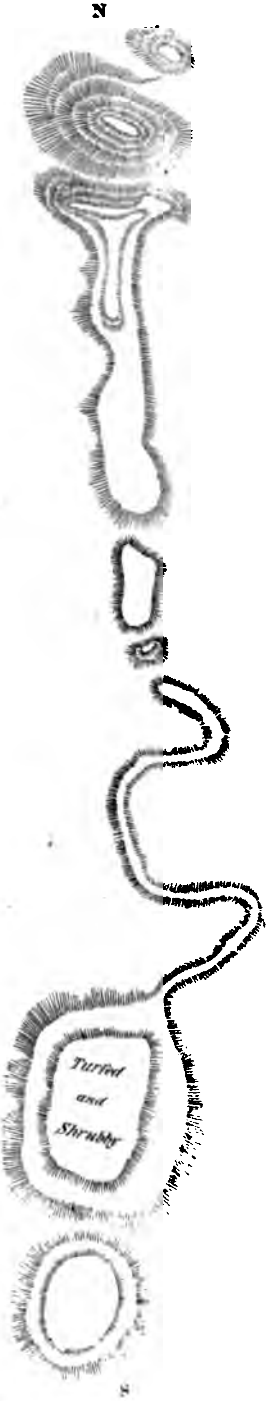
At a point a few rods further up, this white sand can be seen in a bluff on the left bank of the river (probably on sec. 13,) rising 40 or 50 feet, its exact upward limit being hid by the drift. At the bottom of this bluff the Shakopee limestone is exposed in the form of a rounded, water-worn buttress, rising in a solid mass about twelve feet above the river. About this bare rock, which exposes not more than a square rod of surface, or 200 square feet, are fallen pieces of the iron ore mentioned. The rock itself seems coated with thin layers of irony stone, which yet appear calcareous. No clay or shale, the equivalent of No. 3, of the last section, can be seen. Overlying this iron and mingled with it, is a deposit of white sand, rising, as already stated, about fifty feet. This sand is so incoherent that one cannot ascend it. It slides like drift sand, yet is perfectly homogeneous *as sand*, without any resemblance to any drift sand. It is purely white. It is mainly massive; yet irregular lines of sedimentation can be seen in it. Also variously arranged in it are little, thin deposits of shale which probably were green till faded and oxydized. These are sometimes an inch thick, but usually not more than one-fourth of an inch. They are in detached, lenticular patches, and not now plastic, but soapy. No fossils can be seen. It seems to lie *unconformably on the Lower Magnesian*, separated only by a thin bed of greenish-blue shale. (Compare *Geological survey of Missouri*, 1855–71, *p.* 142.)

At a point a little further along, this sand is more presistent, and shows horizontal bedding, by reason of the manner of its falling down from the bluff. Beds 3-8 inches.

In the banks of the Watonwan, at Garden City, in Blue Earth county, are further exposures of the St. Peter, at least of the sandstone already mentioned in Rapidan on the Le Sueur. It is here associated with more or less clay, crag, and iron and lime cement. A heavy deposit of drift crag may be seen on E. T. Norton's place, and also on Elder A. Case's land, on the right bank, opposite Mr. Norton's. Under the crag is clean white sand. A little farther up in the bluff is red and blue clay, belonging, undoubtedly, to the Cretaceous. This crag is sometimes made up of this white sand cemented, with little gravel, and seems then to be derived mainly from the St. Peter, more or less disturbed by drift forces. It lies on Mr. Case's land, in a continuous layer along the bluff, and projects like a bed of rock, the incoherency of the underlying white sand causing it to crumble out. This is also shown on the north side of Mr. Case's land, along the bluff where the current of the river has kept the surface fresh. This sandstone is again exposed in the banks of the river about two miles above Garden City.

Further examination of the St. Peter was made in Dakota county. An outlier of the St. Peter, situated in Sec. 11, T. 144, R. 19 W., is known as *lone rock*, owing to its rising in the midst of a prairie and forming a very conspicuous object for a great many miles in all directions. From its summit, which is about a hundred feet higher than the surrounding prairie, can be seen toward the east, the crests of several other outliers of the same stone within a mile or two, one of which is known as *chimney rock*, while still further east the eye looks upon the bluffs of the opposite side of the Mississippi. Toward the south the valley of the Vermilion spreads out in a broad basin. Farmington village is situated to the southwest, and the spacious grain elevator of the station of Rosemount is a conspicuous object toward the northwest. The country immediately surrounding is a treeless prairie, for the most part a level. In the midst of this flat these knobs of the St. Peter rise, forming knolls on which, when sufficiently turfed, two or three species of oak, and a variety of shrubs, maintain a stunted growth. In the rocky knoll named *lone rock* there is a marked dip of the

Lone Rock, Sec. 11, T. 144, R. 19, Dakota Co.



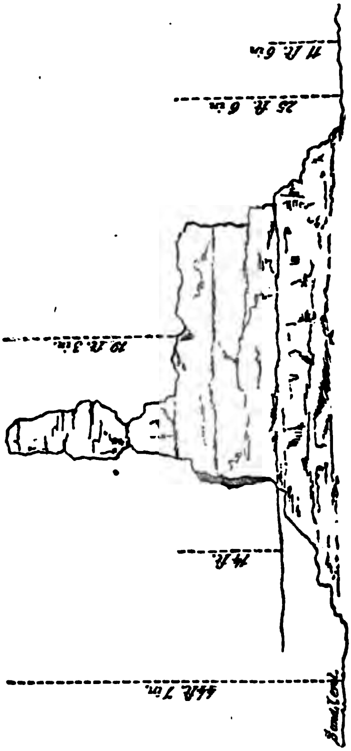
strata, 5 to 10 degrees, near the north end, toward the south; besides irregularities of sedimentation that greatly resemble dip. The rock rises in the form of an interrupted ridge, running north and south, and extends about twenty-five rods. The height from the surface of water standing in a little excavation on the northern flank of the bluff, to the base of the bare-rock is 12 feet 4 inches, measured by Mr. Furber, by Locke's level; from the lowest rock seen to the top of the rock is 40 feet 11 inches, by the same. There are indications on the top of the rock that the formation did not extend much higher. The grains are coarser, and the lining cement is more abundant. The weather has also caused it near the top to show thin beds of one half to one and a half inches. The rock is about 20 feet wide at the northern end, but tapers to two or three feet; then swells out in a sort of zigzag ridge, and after one or two interruptions, disappears under turf on which grow shrubby oaks. The southern extremity is rocky again like the northern. The dip mentioned only shows at the northern extremity of the ridge. In the valleys about, the drift prevails, and boulders may be seen. The adjoining diagram shows the form and winding contour of the ridge.

Another of these outliners is known as Castle Rock. It is situated in sec. 32, T. 113, N., R. 19 W., Dakota county. The following diagrams show the elevation and aspect of this rock from the west, south and southeast :*

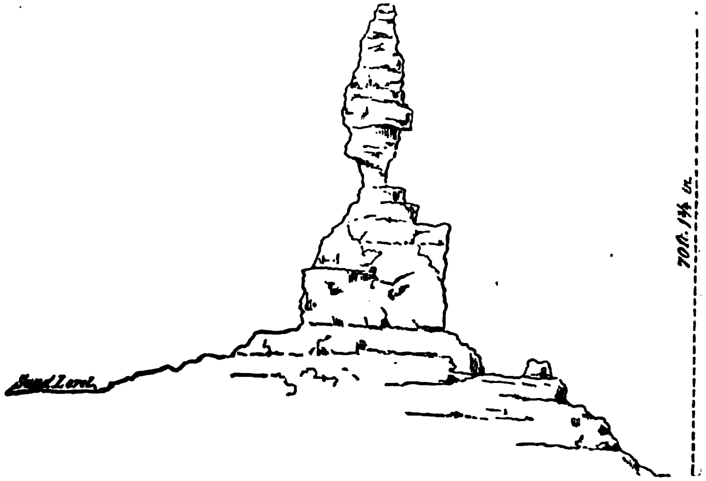
---

*Featherstonhaugh gives a wood-cut of *castle rock*, drawn by a "traveler" who had visited it. He locates it near the sources of Le Grand Gres river, supposed to be Sand creek.

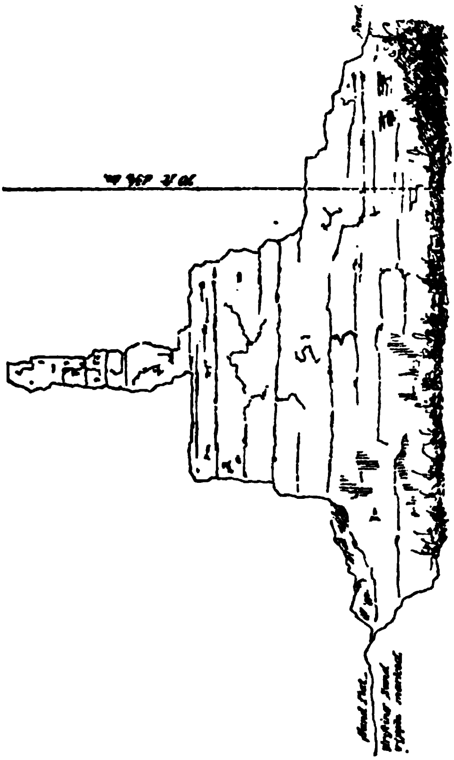
View of castle rock from the west.


11 ft. 6 in.
25 ft. 6 in.
10 ft. 3 in.
4 ft.
44 ft. 7 in.
Sand Level

View of castle rock from the south.



View of castle rock from the south-east



There is another exposure of the St. Peter on sec. 22, T. 114 N., R. 19 W., about a mile and a half west of Empire City, in Dakota county, within the river bluffs of the Vermilion, and on the north side of the immense slough that lies on that side of the river. It is somewhat quarried for foundation stone. The beds exposed are under about two feet of drift, and about twelve feet above the level of the slough. They lie horizontal. This indicates that the whole valley of the Vermilion, at that point, where it is said to have its greatest width, is wrought in that sandstone.

(d) THE SHAKOPEE LIMESTONE.

This limestone belongs to the great Lower Magnesian formation and is the uppermost member of it. In ascending the Minnesota valley its first outcrop is seen at Shakopee, in

Scott county, where it is wrought for quicklime. It is again exposed at Louisville, in the same county, five miles above Shakopee. A short distance above Louisville it recedes from the river, and the underlying sandstone, seen at Jordan, comes to the surface with a gentle dip to the N. or N. N. E., forming the "little rapids" in the river, and affording a useful building-stone at the quarries at Jordan. In turn this sandstone, by the same dip, is driven back from the immediate valley, and a lower limestone is seen, as at St. Lawrence, having different physical characters, yet belonging to the great Lower Magnesian.

At Ottawa and Kasota, as also at St. Peter, the Shakopee limestone has returned. It thence continues in the valley of the Minnesota, sharing its banks with the underlying Jordan sandstone, to Mankato, where a fine exposure of the beds of both may be seen. As the river there changes its direction it soon passes away from the area of the Shakopee limestone, although there are several fine outcrops on the Blue Earth, and on its tributaries the LeSueur, the Cobb and the Maple, as far south as the township of Rapidan. It is also exposed on the Watonwan, at Garden City, and gives rise, as at other places in the same township, to valuable mill sites.

This, in general, is the course of the Shakopee limestone. It has formerly been supposed to represent the whole of the Lower Magnesian, or For. 2 of Dr. Owen. Its thickness is about 70 feet. The underlying sandstone is about 50 feet thick. The thickness of the next member of the Lower Magnesian has not yet been made out. It is visible at St. Lawrence, in Scott county, and at Judson, in Blue Earth county. This, it will be observed, is not in keeping with the age given the Jordan sandstone by Dr. B. F. Shumard. He referred the sandstone at *little rapids*, and that underlying the limestone at Mankato, to For. 1, of Dr. Owen's series, which he made the equivalent of the Potsdam, of New York. The Lower Magnesian, however, in the bluffs of the Mississippi, at Winona, and at other points, is over two hundred feet thick. In approaching St. Paul its thickness grows no less. It would be a singular phenomenon, to say the least, if at Shakopee, less than forty miles from Hastings where it has its full development, it should have become reduced to less than seventy-five feet. The existence of a heavy, calcareous formation below the Jordan sandstone, demonstrated by the observations of the past season, as detailed in the following pages, proves beyond all question that the Jordan sandstone has been erroneously referred to the Potsdam age. The Shakopee limestone also maintains a distinct horizon in passing to the east. It was seen, in the season of 1872, at Quincy, in Olmsted county, and was mentioned in the report of progress for that year (page 82).

This assignment of the Jordan sandstone to the great Lower Magnesian formation is, on the other hand, in harmony with the reports of the Missouri geologists who describe that formation as made up of a series of alternating, yet constant, calcareous and arenaceous members. To what extent the lower part of the Lower Magnesian may be thus subdivided, and whether it corresponds to any extent with the Missouri subdivisions, it is not now possible to say.

Section at Shakopee, in Scott county.

No. 1.	Can hardly be separated from the rest, but seems more shattered and thinner bedded. It also contains some chert. It is crystalline and porous, with no regularity of bedding.	6-8 feet
No. 2.	An irregular layer of sandstone, or of very sandy limestone, used for building-stone, making some good faces; beds about 8 inches.	2 feet
No. 3.	Rather heavier beds of hard gray limestone, of a magnesian texture and feel. These beds are sometimes cracked and checked in all directions, and pass into fine-grained patches, and then thicken again. These thin beds are not infrequently wavy or contorted within the mass. Purgatories are also common in the face of the bluff through all the parts.	10-12 ft.

Section at Louisville, Scott county.

The quarry of Mr. G. Baptiste Contre shows a much disturbed and shattered condition of the layers, with frequent green stains as if of carbonate of copper. No constant general section of the bedding can be given, but the lower eight or ten feet are of a reddish color and in heavier beds. This quarry shows very evidently the effect of volcanic upheaval or disturbance. In general it bears a close resemblance to the stone seen at Shakopee. Twenty feet, more or less, can be seen. The quarry is in a bluff or terrace, facing the river, yet is separated from the river by another terrace of the same height, made of the same layers of rock, facing away from the river. This latter rises as an island, about 30 feet above the river bottom.

The same rock is more or less exposed in the road from Shakopee, for a mile, before reaching Louisville. At Shakopee—and the same is true most of the way to Louisville—

this limestone is the cause of a distinct terrace, which rises about 20 feet above the bottoms. On the surface of this terrace a great many boulders of northern origin, often remarkably large, are strewn, the close proximity of the rock preventing them from disappearing in the thin alluvium. As the direction of the river seems not to coincide with the direction of the strike of the limestone, it soon passes on to the belt of the sandstone seen in the *little rapids*, and at Jordon, the transition from the former stone to the latter being indicated by a change in the character of the river bluffs, and the terrace already mentioned. A short distance below the mouth of Sand creek the limestone affords an exposure in the right bank of the river, while the creek itself is on the sandstone. The sandstone there is the only rock visible in the river, as far as to St. Lawrence, which is in T. 114, R. 24, Scott county. The limestone there exposed lies below the sandstone, and will be described in another place. With the exception of a slight exposure a mile or two below Belle Plaine, and another near Blakeley, the rock is not seen again on the east side until reaching *white rock bluff*, at Ottawa. On the west side about a mile below the Jessenland church (sec. 13, T. 113, R. 26) there is a low outcrop of the lower limestone in the river bottoms.

At Ottawa, in Le Sueur county, the Shakopee stone has fully returned, and affords a very fine outcrop, rising, with the underlying sandstone, to the hight of about 70 feet above the river, and causing as at Shakopee a broad terrace, on which the village stands.

Sections at Ottawa, Le Sueur county. (a) Quarry of John P. Rinshed.

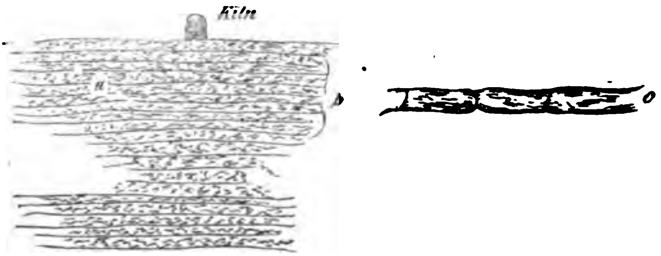
No. 1.	Fawn-colored, arenaceous limestone in even beds that correspond in undulations with the upper surface of No. 3	4 ft.
No. 2.	Sandstone with a calcareous cement; of a lighter color. and corresponding in undulations with the surface of No. 3	2 ft.?
No. 3.	Magnesian limestone, very much like the Shakopee stone, holding green clayey deposits; in lenticular and irregular beds; the surface, freshly uncovered by the removal of the beds of No. 2, has much the appearance of being weathered, rising and falling at gradual angles and causing the overlying members to have corresponding undulations. Not well seen here. Said to be........	8 ft.
	Total..	14 ft.

Other quarries showing nearly the same composition of layers as Rinshed's, are owned by Levi Case and Charles Schwartz.

(b.) *At Rinshed's lime-kiln.*

Nearer the river, at Rinshed's kiln, the underlying sandstone can be seen. In this section there is exhibited either a fault or an instance of unconformability in the bedding. The relation of the sandstone to the limestone may be best exhibited by the following diagram:

Diagram showing the relation of the limestone to the sandstone, at Ottawa, Le Sueur county.



Explanation.

a. Horizontal layers of white crumbling sandstone showing oblique sedimentation; sedimentation undisturbed, seen 25 feet.
b. Interval of ten feet hid by debris.
c. One bed of fawn-colored limestone, almost free from sand; lies below the stone of Rinshed's quarry, 2 feet.

About ten rods below this kiln, near another old kiln built by excavating in the sandstone along the bluff, the following section may be seen:

(c) *Ten rods below Rinshed's lime-kiln.*

No. 1.	Lime-stone, fawn-colored, in undulating beds; beds two or three inches or as thick as one or two feet, apparently disturbed	15 feet.
No. 2.	Sandstone, as at Rinshed's kiln, undisturbed, seen	25 feet.

Just back from the bluff where the last section was taken, is the opening that furnishes stone for the kiln. The limestone here appears like that at the bluff.

The whole of these exposures make up, in general, one irregular stratum of limestone, with sandy patches and layers occurring indiscriminately, and should not be divided generally into different members. The sandstone underlying, however, has an uneven upper surface, due perhaps, to the violence of the latest sedimentation, instead of upheaval, before the disposition of the limestone. There is no other way except that of supposing a fault, or an instance of unconformability within the Lower Magnesian, to account for the position of the heavy bed of limestone exposed so far below the top of the sandstone at Rinshed's kiln.

A little more than a quarter of a mile below Rinshed's kiln, a little ravine crosses the beds, showing the upper portion of the sandstone, as follows:

(d) *Section in the sandstone at Ottawa.*

No. 1.	Red, hard sandstone, in one heavy bed, exactly like that in the cut on the Sioux City R. R. near Louisville..	1 foot.
No. 2.	White sandrock, like that in the railroad cut near Louisville.................................... seen	2-3 feet.

The observations made at Ottawa throw much light on the relation of the limestone there with that at Shakopee, thus—

Shakopee limestone=Ottawa limestone.
Louisville kilns....=Ottawa kilns.
Jordan sandstone...=Ottawa sandstone.

At St. Peter the quarry near the asylum exposes the uppermost layers of the Shakopee limestone. Owing to the work going on in the finishing of the asylum building, a fine opportunity is here afforded for seeing these beds in their best estate. The beds are here very regular, differing very much from the thin and confused bedding at Shakopee, and in the deep openings they seem to be all very heavy. Indeed, in the face of the quarry the bedding can hardly be discovered. It seems almost massive. Yet on quarrying the stone it parts along certain horizontal planes that must be bedding planes. Some faces show five feet. Other beds are two, and three, and four feet. The upper four feet are checked into beds of two to four inches by the weather. It is rather darker, when first quarried, than the Kasota stone, but has the same general cast of color. It seems sometimes to have a brownish tinge. The amount seen here is about twenty-five feet.

In the banks of the river at St. Peter, the sandstone, corresponding to that already described at Ottawa, can be seen, forming perpendicular or overhanging bluffs fifteen feet or more in hight.

On the terrace formed at St. Peter by these rocks, other quarries have been opened by Albert Knight, and by others, but none exhibit the characters of the formation so fully as that at the asylum.

Across the river from St. Peter, and about a mile toward Kasota, is another exposure of the limestone, in a bluff along the roadside. It seems here to be more shattered and irregular, and like the Shakopee stone. Lime burned near here cannot be distinguished from the Shakopee lime. About eighteen feet are seen, the lower part being in good heavy beds. The upper surface is waterworn, and in the openings the Cretaceous has been deposited.

Geo. C. Clapp's lime kiln and quarry are five miles below Makato, on sec. 17, township of Kasota, within the main drift bluffs of the Minnesota, but on the terrace formed by the Shakopee limestone, and about a mile from the river. His quarry, located near his kiln, exposes a fine gray limestone, about two feet thick, sometimes less or more, graduating into the Shakopee stone which underlies. It is very firm, little porous, and contains *Orthis*, at least, and affords the finest and purest limestone hitherto seen in the Shakopee stone. It must be regarded as the upper portion of the Shakopee. This fine, compact texture, and gray color, are not continuous in the same horizon, in other places the harsh magnesian grain and arenaceous quality existing in the same beds. Running along the river for several miles, sometimes touching the river and sometimes exposed back of islands that show the same, this limestone forms a bluff of solid beds. Although there is usually a heavy talus covering the foot of this bluff, yet at several points the identity of this horizon with that at St. Peter, and hence with that at Shakopee, is fully established by the exposure of the underlying sandstone. It is seen at a point about two miles below Mr. Clapp's farm. This bluff shows a good stone, as at St. Peter and Kasota, but is not much quarried. Perhaps it is more arenaceous in patches. It is blotched with whiter spots, and with soft chert.

Another fine exposure of this geological horizon is visible about a mile and three-quarters below Mankato, on the same side of the river. The place here referred to is that sometimes known as *hurricane bend,* although the point so named by steamboat captains is said to be about four miles further down the river. The section here exposed is the same as at Clapp's, and also the same as at Makato, but here there is an observed thickness of sandstone amounting to forty-five feet, somewhat hid by debris. This equivalency is unmistakable, since the bluff can be traced nearly all the way to Clapp's, and since between here and Mankato, besides the continuance of the same surface features—the wide, stony prairie formed by the terrace, the uniform altitude of the terrace, and its striking similarity to the terraces at St. Peter, Kasota, Ottawa and Shakopee—the actual continuity of the formation can almost be traced out by exposures of the rock.

In the report of progress for 1872, the section at Maxfield's quarry at Mankato was given (p. 83) covering 61 feet of the Shakopee limestone. The further examination of this locality, and of the river bluffs for several miles below, during the season of 1873, makes it desirable to unite the sections observed in one general section, as follows:

Section at Mankato, in Blue Earth county.

No. 1.	Porous magnesian limestone, not used	4–6 ft.
No. 2.	Coarse, friable sandstone	2–4 ft.
No. 3.	Magnesian limestone burned for lime	2 ft.
No. 4.	Calciferous sandstone, in heavy beds, of various grain and texture, sometimes mottled, quarried for building	30 ft.
No. 5.	Upper shale bed, arenaceous and mottled with red	2–3 ft.
No. 6.	Calciferous sandstone, generally used as a cut-stone, compact and even grained	4 ft.
No. 7.	Rough and irregular magnesian limestone, somewhat arenaceous, but unfit for cutting	10 ft.
No. 8.	Lower shale bed; very much the same as the upper	2 ft.
No. 9.	One heavy bed, generally good for cut-stone	3 ft.
No. 10.	Irregular and sandy bed; more or less cavernous and porous, its lower three or four inches in thin chips, fine grained, and stained with iron	3 ft.
No. 11.	Jordan sandstone, seen about	45 ft.
	Total of the Shakopee limestone, about	65 ft.

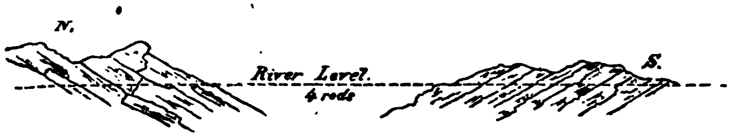
From Mankato toward the mouth of the Blue Earth river, the Shakopee limestone is seen at frequent places, forming precipitous mural faces, capping the underlying sandstone; the two united making bluffs that rise from seventy-five to a hundred feet. These exposures are mostly on the right bank, but there are also elevated islands in the river, or at least elevated portions in the area of the bottom land, that present similar perpendicular rocky bluffs on one or more sides. These exposures extend somewhat beyond the mouth of the Blue Earth. The Blue Earth has cut its passage through this rim of rock, at the point of its debouchure upon the Minnesota bottom land, and on its right bank, at the place of the crossing of the St. Paul and Sioux City R. R., a series of interesting observations were made. Before reaching this point, however, in following the highway from Mankato to South Bend, but on the east side of the bridge over the Blue Earth, the Shakopee limestone is exposed in a recent excavation by the side of the road, in the removal of the Cretaceous clay, which is seen there to overlie it unconformably. The limestone here shows the effects of long exposure to the weather, and the action of water in the form of waves, probably those of the Cretaceous ocean, prior to the deposition of the clay. A much better example of the same effects may be seen a little further south, just before the crossing of the Blue Earth by the Sioux City R. R., where the grade is cut into the rock for several rods before reaching the river. The old Silurian surface is here very much weathered, and coated with iron peroxide, the nooks and openings, and all sheltered places being filled with the fine, plastic but bedded greenish clays of the Cretaceous age; the drift gravels and sand overlying both. These phenomena are alluded to again and more fully discussed under the head of the Cretaceous.

Passing from the mouth of the Blue Earth south, towards the Red Jacket flouring mills, occasional exposures of the Shakopee stone are met with along the highway and in the railroad cuts (Minn. and Northwestern R. R.), for about three miles. The Red Jacket mills are on the Le Sueur river, four miles south of Mankato.

On the Maple, near its union with the Le Sueur, in sections 11, 12 and 13, township of Rapidan (107, 27,), Blue Earth county, quarries that are feebly run, are owned by Barney Simmons, Samuel Michael, and by Messrs. Averill, Culver, Wood and Allgrain. These quarries reach about two miles above the mouth of the Maple, and are in the same horizon as the Mankato quarries. The stone occurs in horizontal, heavy beds, along the low banks of the river, exposing 25 or 30 feet. Some mention has been made of the Shakopee stone at this place in describing the sandstone there seen to overlie it, and supposed to be the St. Peter. (See p. 133).

The Shakopee limestone is exposed at Garden City, in Blue Earth county, in the banks of the Watonwan river. Mr. S. M. Folsom owns a slight exposure which is somewhat worked, situated in the low bank of the river, near the water. At the mill dam, just above the highway bridge, it may be seen, exposed in a rough and very irregular outcrop, in the midst of the river, forming a rocky island. It here presents large cavities, and sometimes a breccia. The beds are thick, and lie in a short synclinal, as illustrated below.

Synclinal in the Shakopee limestone, at Garden City, in Blue Earth county.



This synclinal is not believed to be anything that affects the general dip of the formation, but an illustration of the irregularity that it sometimes presents in its bedding. A similar phenomenon was noted in respect to this limestone, at Ottawa, in LeSueur county. It is a structure very common in the Waterlime, of the Upper Silurian, seen in northwestern Ohio.

This exposure of the Shakopee limestone has very much the general character seen at Shakopee. In the roughened upper surface the usual gasteropod, seen also last year at Rochester, in Olmsted county, was seen at Garden City, (*Euomphalus.*)

(e) THE JORDAN SANDSTONE.

This name is here applied to that member of the Lower Magnesian which immediately underlies the Shakopee limestone. As has already been stated, it has been referred by Dr. B. F. Shumard to the Potsdam sandstone or formation 1, of Dr. Owen's series. The observations of the past season have disclosed the fact that it is only about fifty feet in thickness, and is underlain by another great limestone formation which, while it differs considerably from the Shakopee stone, is still a magnesian limestone, and belongs to the same great series.

This stone is first seen in ascending the Minnesota valley, so far as at present known, at the "little rapids," near the city of Carver, in Carver county. It here causes a fall of about seven feet, divided between two separate rapids. The lower rapid has a fall of about four feet. The upper is about half a mile further up. The stone is thick bedded and coarse-grained. A few rods above the upper rapid it is exposed in the right bank, showing about six feet in nearly horizontal beds. This sandstone was penetrated in sinking a well at Louisville, after passing through the Shakopee limestone, the thickness of over twenty feet. Passing along the public road from Louisville to Jordan, the strike of the sandstone can be seen by outcrops, in the form of stony islands, in the river bottoms, and by exposures near Dooleyville. Where the public road crosses "Van Oser's"* creek, a short distance above Dooleyville, it has a dip of 10 or 15 degrees toward the W. N. W. About twenty-five feet can here be made out in passing along the stream from a short distance above the road to the crossing of the St. Paul and Sioux City R. R. It is in heavy beds and is coarse-grained. It is full of seams and checks, presenting some appearance of dip in different directions. Some of the seams, or lines of apparent bedding, run nearly perpendicular, but they do not have a constancy that shows dip. The operation of the stream is such as to bring out the bedding, by the wearing away of the softer layers, so as to indicate dip in the direction already stated.

Near the railroad bridge over Van Oser's creek, and in the public road, this sandstone is conglomeritic and broken. It shows the effect of heat. The bedding is disturbed and even fractured, the openings having been again filled with coarser materials and some pebbles. Some parts of it are highly ferruginous, so as to make an impure iron ore which is black. These characters, however, are confined to a very small area, not being seen over more than three or four square yards, making a mound-like prominence that rises two or three feet above the level of the rest of the bedding, which is bare for some rods about.

About a mile above the crossing of Van Oser's creek, the St. Paul and Sioux City R. R. cuts through sandstone which may be somewhat below the beds last mentioned. The upper part of this may be regarded as belonging in the section at the creek. This cut is composed of the following parts:

No. 1.	Hard (yet within friable) sandstone, in one bed, of a reddish color, which resembles the color of the Shakopee stone near the bottom of the section at Louisville.....	3 ft.
No. 2.	Fine, incoherent, white sandrock, massive; seen five feet, may amount to..................................	10 ft.

Directly east of this cut, across the public road, No. 1 above, which is supposed to be the same as the sandstone seen in Van Oser's creek, outcrops so as to show 15 or 20 feet. It causes a considerable knoll, where huge blocks four or five feet thick are checked loose by the weather and removed from the general mass. This is a favorable place for quarrying.

---

* This is corrupted from Van Osterhaus.

At Jordan, three and a half miles above this place, this sandstone affords its typical outcrop. It occurs in Sand creek, about a half mile above the village. Quarries here are owned by John Volk, and by Wosanick and Loniacheck. The general section obtainable from the various outcrops along this creek has been described.[*].

Section at Jordan, Scott county.

No. 1.	Sandrock, buffish, quite ferruginous, thick-bedded, seen at the mill	6 feet.
No. 2.	Sandrock, ferruginous, thin and irregularly bedded, friable and disentegrating, with many ferruginous seams, crusts and concretions. In quarry	3 feet.
No. 3.	Sandrock, irregularly whitish or ferruginous, heavy-bedded, obliquely and beautifully banded with iron streaks and laminae. In quarry	12 feet.
No. 4.	Sandrock, buffish, similar to No. 3, but thinner bedded. In the quarry	8 feet.
No. 5.	Sandrock; hard and ferruginous above, soft, friable and buffish red below. Falls of Sand creek.	10 feet.
No. 6.	Sandrock, whitish, compact. In the beer vaults, seen..	12 feet.

In the bed of the creek, near the breweries, this stone seems somewhat calcareous. It is of a reddish color and slightly porous, while the quarried stone shows generally a white color, except where irony water has rusted the interlaminations, presenting then a streaked section of rust and white. The bedding in the creek is also thinner. Although the foregoing section makes up a thickness of 51 feet for this sandstone as exposed at this place, the observations of the survey do not warrant the assignment of that aggregate thickness to the outcrops there. Some of the localities named being regarded as on the same geological horizon. The general uniformity of characters makes it difficult to judge how much of the bedding at one place may be included in the outcrop at another; but twenty-five or thirty feet would probably cover the thickness exposed.

The next known exposure of this stone is at Ottawa, where it underlies a considerable thickness of the Shakopee limestone. The geology of this place has been given in treating of the Shakopee limestone. The interesting observation was there made of a local unconformability in the limestone, with the Jordan sandstone. (See p. 141).

---

[*] *Report of a geological survey of the vicinity of Belle Plaine, Scott Co., Minn.* By Alexander Winchell. In this report the name of *Jordan sandstone* was first applied to this stone, although still regarded as of the Potsdam age.

From Ottawa to Mankato, this sandstone may be seen at nearly all places where the Shakopee limestone is exposed. It is apt to be somewhat covered by debris, as it lies at the base of the continuous bluffs that these two formations cause throughout that part of the Minnesota valley.

Near the Red Jacket mills, four miles south of Mankato, on the Le Sueur, is an outcrop of sandstone, which is doubtfully referred to the Jordan. It is in the right bank, just above the mill dam. It forms a perpendicular bluff rising from the water about 20 feet, underlying a heavy deposit of drift which rises nearly two hundred feet higher. In the sandstone are soft, apparently magnesio-calcareous pieces, about an inch in diameter, usually flattened, or pointed, or edged, which if dry, crumble to powder in the fingers, revealing little or no grit, but which when wet, are sticky and plastic. These pieces resemble somewhat the thin deposits of shale seen in the sandstone that has been referred to the St. Peter a few miles higher up on the Le Sueur. (See the Report of Prof. Peckham for an analysis of these pieces of shale). This fact in connection with the existence of irony crag in the overlying drift bluff, make the resemblances of this outcrop to the above outcrops supposed to be St. Peter, and to those at Garden City, rather greater than to the Jordan. The geographical and topographical relations of this outcrop, however, cause it to appear very strongly to belong to the Jordan. (See p. 133).

At Cappels mill, on the Watonwan, two and a half miles below Garden City, a sandstone is exposed, and somewhat worked. Its stratigraphical relations are not certain, but it probably belongs to the Jordan.

Three miles below is the Rapidan mill. The same sandstone is exposed at this mill and at several places between these mills.

At Minneopa falls, sec. 21, T. 108, R. 27, the cascade is caused by the Jordan sandstone. The perpendicular fall of the water is about 30 feet, but 45 feet of the sandstone can be made out. Before reaching the point where the water leaps over, the steam works its way through a perpendicular thickness of 15 feet of sandstone beds. It then comes in contact with a harder portion of the sandstone, which has a thickness of about six feet. This resists the water longer than the under lying layers, and maintains a projecting shelf. The mist that rises keeps the walls wet, and the freezing of winter crumbles away the soft sandstone, so as to form about the pool where the water strikes, a walled amphitheatre rising about 40 feet on each side. This glen is more or less shaded with elms, cedars, birches, butternuts and oaks. It is prolonged in the form of a rough and shaded gorge, worn in the solid rock, of about the same depth, down to the point of issue of the stream upon the Minnesota bottoms, the distance of about half a mile. The gorge below the fall is darkened by the dense foliage, the stream in its course being much of the time hid from sight but for a few rods. This gorge is crossed, about a quarter of a mile below the falls, by the St. Paul and Sioux City R. R. At the foot of the falls a little lake of water is confined by the upheaved pebbles in front of the cascade. The gravel of the surrounding beach is hard enough to admit of a passage on all sides. There are also several narrow paths along the walls of the amphitheatre, where the fallen fragments are sufficienty turfed and overgrown to permit a passage up or down the stream. An elm tree which is nearly three feet in diameter grows near the foot of the cascade, and on the right bank. Its annual rings of growth would indicate at least some part of the time elapsed since the retreat of the fall from the place where it stands. Within six feet of it the perpendicular sandstone wall rises to the height of over forty feet. The stream is subject to great fluctuations of volume, sometimes becoming quite dry. In passing down the Minneopa gorge to its union with the Minnesota river, the bluffs become more and more wooded, the stone only showing alternately in patches on opposite sides, and no lower view of the Jordan sandstone can be had, at least none than can be proved to be lower. Before reaching the Minnesota, however, a continuous bog is encountered, running along both sides of the creek, about ten or fifteen feet above the creek. This either indicates a change in the formation, bringing in a shale or clay (perhaps a limestone), or that the muddy alluvium of the Minnesota bottoms has been carried back up the Minneopa so as to shed the water of the bluffs. This bog is about on a level of the Minnesota flood plain, and the channel of the creek is cut in alluvium that cannot be distinguished from that of the Minnesota bottoms.

Seven or eight miles above Mankato, or one and a half above the wind mill, along the road to New Ulm, is another exposure of the Jordan sandstone, with features very much like those at Minneopa. A little creek, which is dry in summer time, exposes first about two feet of coarse sandstone in its bed. Following the creek down a few rods, there is a perpendicular fall of about fourteen feet, which in time of high water must make a handsome cascade, similar to the Minneopa waterfall. The immediate cause of the fall is the occurrence of a layer of about a foot with a harder or more enduring cement, underlain by crumbling sandstone. Over the sandstone rises the drift, about fifty or seventy-five feet, mainly made up of hardpan (glacier drift), the top of which, however, is composed of fine sand in oblique stratification. The alternation of layers here is a follows:

No. 1.	Closely cemented sandstone, projecting beyond the next	5 inches
No. 2.	Coarse, white sand, in water worn grains, crumbling out easily	6 inches
No. 3.	Same as No. 1	6 inches
No. 4.	Same as No. 2	1 foot
No. 5.	Brink of falls. Same as No. 1	1 foot
No. 6.	Same as No. 2, seen	30 feet

This horizon is undoubtedly the same as that at Minneopa falls. The appearance of the gorge below the falls, and the occurrence of a cemented part giving rise to the perpendicular fall of the water, are very much the same. The beds lie here, as there, nearly horizontal. The grains of sand are, perhaps, somewhat coarser here than at Minneopa.

This sandstone can be seen in the bluffs on the opposite side of the Minnesota river, surmounted by a great thickness of drift. The bluffs are mainly wooded, but some smooth buttresses and slopes, wrought apparently in the drift, and covered with grass, yet reveal the stone, large slabs and blocks from which lie on the hillside.

(f) THE ST. LAWRENCE LIMESTONE.

At St. Lawrence, which is about four miles northeast of Belle Plaine, in Scott county, a still lower member of the Lower Magnesian is exposed, presenting somewhat different lithological characters. It is harder than the Shakopee limestone, evenly bedded, quartzose and specked with green. These green specks have somewhat the appearance of coming from metamorphism, yet they are caused by little rounded masses, which, if harder, would seem to have been water-worn and deposited with the sedimentation. They are, however, rather soft, cutting like talc. They exactly fill the cavities in which they lie. In some small portions they almost make up the bulk of the rock, which then has a green compact appearance, as if hornblendic. While the rock is evidently calcareous and magnesian in some parts, and almost destitute of these green specks, it is also siliceous and sharply crystalline. On analysis the little green specks have been found by Prof. Peckham to consist of lime, iron, magnesia and a trace of manganese. See p. 96, "Nos. 30 and 31."

The section here exposed is as follows:

Section at St. Lawrence, Scott county.

No. 1.	Beds two to four inches, with shaly partings and green specks	3 ft.
No. 2.	Beds fourteen to eighteen inches, hard, siliceous, occasionally porous from crystallization, specked with green, showing crystals of brown spar—a good building stone	4 ft.
No. 3.	Somewhat ferruginous, hard and crystalline, less porous than No. 2	2 ft.
No. 4.	Beds irregular, specked with green, and showing green surfaces	4 ft.
No. 5.	Band of greenish shale, sandy	6 in.
No. 6.	Beds two to four inches: magnesian limestone; seen about	1 ft.
	Total	14½ ft.

Quarries here are owned by Mr. Hewitt and Mr. Beason.

At Judson, on the right bank of the Minnesota, in Blue Earth county, is the only other known exposure of the St. Lawrence limestone in the valley of the Minnesota. It here occurs on both sides of the river, and is used for building stone. It was in traveling along the highway from Mankato to this place that the most indubitable evidence of the position of this limestone was obtained. Mention has already been made of the occurrence of the Jordan sandstone at Minneopa falls, and at a little waterfall by the side of the road, some miles above (see p. 150). In passing northwestwardly the observer crosses nearly at right angles the direction of strike of the successive formations in that part of the state. Soon after leaving the little unnamed waterfall, above mentioned, and within three-quarters of a mile, an outcrop occurs of a reddish, arenaceous limestone, very unlike the St. Lawrence stone, but similar to the outcrop in Jessenland township, in Sibley county, which will be further noticed as a possibly separate member of the Lower Silurian (see p. 155).

Within that distance, or a little before reaching that waterfall, the road begins to pass down from a high, and rather rolling, drift plateau, on to a lower plateau or terrace, overstrewn with boulders, like the terraces at Ottawa, Kasota and Shakopee, which skirts the valley for several miles, and indicates, as there, the advent of a hard, and resisting rocky foundation, into which the boulders cannot disappear. The surface of this lower plateau is mainly alluvial, the boulders lying in it, but not covered from sight. This red limestone occurs in the surface of that lower plateau. At a half mile further the character of the rock which lies so near the surface is disclosed in a little opening by the roadside, apparently made for getting stone for use, but abandoned on account of the loose and shaly character of the beds struck. These shaly and thin beds, united perhaps with the red beds seen before, may have given rise to the boggy bench, already mentioned as occurring near the base of the Jordan sandstone in the banks of the Minneopa gorge, since they are so situated as to be very near the line of separation of that sandstone from the St. Lawrence limestone. Near this little opening are two culverts that are constructed of stone, quarried of course near, like the St. Lawrence stone. Passing along this lower plateau about a mile, to Judson, the general surface features remain about the same. At Judson quarries, in the St. Lawrence stone, are owned by John Goodwin, and by Mrs. Wolf. On the opposite side of the river, at Hebron, the same stone is wrought by Wm. Phillips, Wm. H. Thurston and J. H. Dunham.

This is, lithologically, exactly the St. Lawrence stone, and has a dip of two or three degrees to the southeast. Supposing that to express the average dip from Judson to the last exposure of the Jordan sandstone, there would be room for a thickness of thirty or forty feet of beds the character of which is not known. In that interval must fall the reddish outcrop three-quarters of a mile northeast of the little unnamed waterfall, and probably the Jessenland outcrop, in Sibley county. Mr. Goodwin's quarry, near the ferry, shows eight feet of bedding, but lies twenty-five feet above the river. The beds are four to eight inches, although the uppermost three or four feet of the quarry are very much weathered and in thinner beds. The bedding planes are usually entirely covered with a green coating, and the body of the whole is specked thickly, and sometimes largely made up of green particles.

The other quarry of Mr. Goodwin, and that of Mrs. Wolf, both situated a little further up the river, are similar in characters and position to that already described. It is mainly a limestone, and very durable, of a flesh color, varying to buff, striped, specked and blotched with green. The sides of the bedding are almost altogether green.

Allusion has already been made to a reddish stone closely associated with St. Lawrence limestone, the geological horizon of which it is difficult to state. The first exposure observed of this occurs three miles above Blakeley, and on the west side of the river, in Jessenland township. It is in the river bottoms, N. E. ¼, sec. 12, T. 113, R. 26, owned by Mr. D. Doheny, who has opened a little quarry. It is a red, metamorphic limestone, nodular, concretionary, and filled with checks and planes of separation, the thickest beds being not more than four inches, the most of them less than two, and more or less contorted. It has greenish surfaces, and isolated pockets of fine, apparently copper stained materials, but very sparsely disseminated. It is almost a worthless stone for any use except macadamizing, owing to the ease with which the beds are fractured transversely. It is rough and irregular. It is fine-grained generally, rarely porous, and cryptocrystalline. When weathered it shows an arenaceous composition. It is seen in surface exposure over several square rods, the thin red chips covering the ground. About six feet of bedding may be seen. The position of this limestone is supposed to be somewhat above that seen at St. Lawrence, and below the Jordon sandstone. It perhaps has not characters sufficiently defined and constant to be separable from the St. Lawrence. Indeed there are some good reasons for supposing it may be the uppermost portion of that limestone considerably charged with iron, and changed in outward appearance by the waters of the valley.

(g) THE ST. CROIX SANDSTONE.

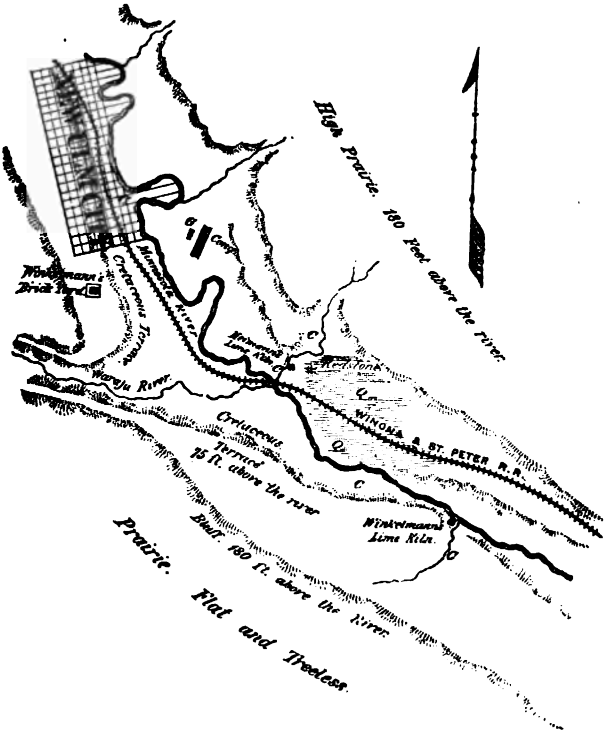
In the report of progress for 1872, this name was provisionally applied to the light-colored sandstones exposed largely on the upper Mississippi and on the St. Croix rivers, lying immediately below the Lower Magnesian. During the season of 1873 no observations on this series of sandstone have been made, and no new light can be added to the question of the age of those beds, except what may be found in connection with the description of the outcrop of red quartzite at the mouth of the Waraju river, near New Ulm.

(h) THE POTSDAM SANDSTONE.

This name is here applied to the red sandstones that lie below the light colored sandstones of the upper Mississippi valley, and to their supposed equivalents in the southwestern part of the state. The principal observations on this sandstone made during the season of 1873, were upon the outcrop near New Ulm. The annexed map of this locality will give a correct idea of the position of this outcrop in respect to the outcrops of conglomerate and granite which occur a short distance further up the river. A careful observation on the dip of the quartzite, south of the railroad cut, corrected for variation of the needle, gave 27° N. 10° E. A similar observation on the conglomerate gave a dip of 18° toward the E. S. E. The granite outcrop is located on the authority of Dr. B. F. Shumard, who says: "The granite is a hundred yards removed from the conglomerate, with its line of elevation running nearly parallel with the latter. Flesh-colored feldspar makes nearly two-thirds of the granite." This outcrop of granite was not noticed by the survey in examining this locality.

Map of the vicinity of New Ulm and Redstone, showing the position and dip of the conglomerate and quartzite

Scale one inch=one mile.

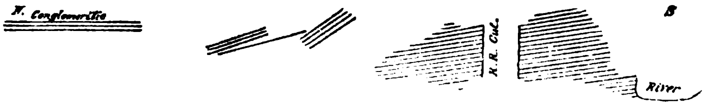


Explanation.

c. Cretaceous outcrop; beds horizontal.
g. Granite outcrop.
cong. Conglomerate outcrop; dip 18° E.S.E.
q. Red quartzite outcrop; dip 27° N. 10° E.

The dip of the quartzite varies in degree. It is greatest near the river, and is least near the northern extremity of the exposure. Indeed, near the northern extremity the surface has a slope which is apparently due to dip, in the opposite direction. A section north and south through the quartzite would show dip changing somewhat as illustrated by the following diagram, sketched on the spot:

Dip of the quartzite at Redstone.



At the northern extremity of the exposure the surface of the rock shows a coarser grain, becoming almost conglomeritic. No true conglomerate can be here seen, but there are grains of white quartz as large as a mustard seed disseminated through it. The relation of this coarser portion to the rest of the quartzite is such as to cause it to *overlie* the most of the quartzite, but its actual superposition cannot been seen. In some of the thin bedding near the lowest part exposed, mica scales are visible on the planes of the bedding. When fresh they are black, but if weathered they are of a golden yellow color.

In many places there are evidences of a higher stage of the Minnesota at some earlier time. These consist of furrows and water-worn surfaces. There are some pot-holes, worn usually so as to have their elongated dimension in the direction of the river, their shape being generally oval. One of the largest noticed was 20 inches long and 15 inches wide. Its depth was 24 inches. These water-marks rise 120 or 125 feet above the river.

On the north side of the river, nearly opposite New Ulm, is an outcrop of coarse jaspery conglomerate, the pebbles in which are occasionally a foot in diameter and waterworn. There are also white quartzite pebbles. Ten feet may be seen, in an irregularly descending strike nearly north and south. The strike of this conglomerate outcrop is conspicuous in the woodless prairie, or terraced slope from the prairie. It rises from the very river bottoms and enters the bluff diagonally at a hight of perhaps 50 feet above the river. The talus hides the underlying stone. The strike faces up the river.

The quartzite outcrop at New Ulm was described in general the report of progress for 1872 (p. 75). The degree of dip and the thickness of the bedding exposed were, however, over-estimated. There may be 250 feet of stratification exposed, and the hight of the rock does not exceed 125 feet above the river.

The following is Dr. E. Emmons' description of the "sandstone of Potsdam," taken from his report on the second geological district of the state of New York, printed by the Legislature, in January, 1838.

"I shall not enter upon its geological relations, any further than to state, that in Potsdam, and other towns in which it appears, it uniformly rests on the primary strata; and in no part of the country is there any rock which interposes itself between it and the primary, so that it appears here as the oldest repesentative of the transition series. The identification of this rock with the sandstones along the southern border of lake Ontario, will be a matter of some difficulty. It is geologically below the transition limestone, and never in the northern district alternates with it, but always holds the relation of an inferior rock. So much is known of its position, but still some doubt remains as to its general relation, and to its name and place in the series of rocks. Some call it the old red sandstone; others regard it as equivalent to the new, or saliferous rock of Eaton.

* * * * * * *

"This rock is a true sandstone, of a red, yellowish-red, gray and grayish-white colors. It is made up of grains of sand, and held together without a cement. Intermixed with the siliceous grains are finer particles of yellowish feldspar, which do not essentially change the character of the sandstone, but they show the probable source from which the materials forming it were originally derived, viz., some of the varieties of granite. Unlike, however, most of the sandstones, it is destitute of scales of mica. The coloring matter of the rock is evidently oxide of iron, but unequally diffused through it, giving it intensity or deepness of color in proportion to its quantity. In some places it is almost wanting, which makes it, when pulverized, a good material for glass. The grains and particles in its composition are generally angular, but where it takes the character of a conglomerate, as it does in the inferior layers, they are frequently rounded. The thicker strata exhibit an obscurely striped appearance, owing to the prevalence of certain colors in the different layers."

Quartzite similar to that described at Redstone was again seen in the southern part of sec. 7, T. 106, R. 36, on land belonging to the St. Paul & Sioux City R. R. It presents here a small surface exposure, in a ravine, without exhibiting any distinct bedding. Its surface is glaciated in a direction, corrected for variation, S. 34° E.

At another point, perhaps in the edge of the next section west (12), is a larger exposure of this quartzite. The dip is 4° or 5° N. 10° W. The stone is very hard, but banded with light and red beds, evident on the planed surface and on the fractured side. This point shows glaciation S. 30° E. (corrected for variation). There are other smaller exposures further west a short distance. They occur frequently on the hillsides, where the drainage has washed off the light drift which contains a few boulders.

At still another point, in the same section, the glaciation is very evident. There is here a trench, traceable across the whole extent of the exposure, a distance of several rods, which does not perceptibly vary in direction. It is a foot across, and two inches deep, and its direction, corrected for variation, is S. 32° E.

There is an extensive and important ridge of this quartzite not yet visited, about in the northern part of T. 108, ranges 35, 34 and 33, situated between the Big and Little Waraju rivers.

Mr. I. J. Rochussen is authority for the location and further items of other outcrops of this red quartzite. It may be seen, according to his description, on the edge of the valley of Rock river, in Rock county, three miles north of Luverne. It consists of a ridge three miles long, running N.E. and S.W., so far as known, its average height being 25 or 30 feet. The beds lie nearly horizontal or show a very slight dip, and are from one to four feet in thickness, and rather easily quarried. Also on the road to Sioux Falls, 15 miles west of Luverne, and two and three miles west and northwest of a settlement known as Valley Springs, are a number of outcrops, one large, isolated piece being known as *lone rock*. It is quarried at one point, and there shows conglomerate. At Sioux Falls, 15 miles further west, in Dakota, the same rock forms the fall, and lies in heavy layers nearly horizontal. The aggregate fall is 120 feet.

(i) THE GRANITES OF THE VALLEY.

The following account of the granites of the Minnesota valley will consist of a location of outcrops, and a description of their physical, outward characters. No attempt will be made to classify them, or to refer them to any horizon of rocks exposed in the northern part of the state. There has not yet been sufficient time to engage in mineralogical or chemical comparisons with the northern granites. There is no hesitation in saying that they are a southwestward extension of those northern granites, and that their parallelisms probably exist and that they can be referred to their proper places, when a sufficiently detailed examination of the state shall have been made.

With the exception of the small exposure of flesh-colored granite near New Ulm, mentioned by Dr. B. F. Shumard, the first outcrop of rock of this kind occurs in ascending the valley at "La Framboise place," where it rises seventy-five or a hundred feet above the level of the river. This is at Little Rock creek, about four miles below fort Ridgely. The exposure has long been known among the French traders as La Petite Roche. It is one of a series of exposures in the same vicinity, extending along the river bottoms, mainly on the north side, for a mile or two. In general this rock is granite. It rises in low knolls, perhaps 50 feet above the flood plain, visible from the "state road" that skirts along the foot of the bald drift bluffs on the north side of the river. Its outward appearance is that of a reddish granite, made up of the ternary granite compound, the separate grains of which are not coarse, the largest ones being the feldspar. The quartz is milky, or often amethystine; the mica is rather scarce for typical granite, and the feldspar is red or flesh-colored. The red color greatly predominates, giving a reddish tinge to the whole stone, wherever the weathered surface is kept free from lichens, or where the interior is freshly exposed by cuts for quarrying. The drift bluffs are not at all affected in contour or direction by these granite knolls, although the river itself winds about in the lowest channel accessible. No regular dip is distinguishable. The granite shows an abundance of seams and divisional planes, in various directions, that make it presumptuous to say which way the original bedding may have lain. The only circumstance that indicates the direction of dip is the occurrence of the most abrupt faces, in numerous places, on that side toward the river, the opposite slopes being more gradual, descending gently toward the north, as if the horizon of bedding sloped in that direction at an angle of 35° or 40°.

On close inspection of this granite with a pocket-glass, there seems to be much uncertainty about the color of the feldspar. The reddish color is most prevalent outside of the feldspar crystals, or only on their surfaces, as if the stain arose from rustiness and weathering, and had permeated the loosened granular mass by being in solution in water. There is a powdery, at least a gritty and sandy cement, which fills the interstices within the mass and between the grains of quartz and the crystals of feldspar, that seems to be generally redder than the distinct quartz or feldspar portions. Yet that loose and more finely pulverized part seems to be made up entirely of quartz, appearing, on close examination, to have the light color and distinct fracture of glassy quartz, the red color vanishing from sight. The color seems to be located very largely in the cement, as in the red quartzite at New Ulm, suggesting the query whether this may not be more highly metamorphic sandstone. In a deep fracture, however, the red color is much less observable, being replaced by a gray, the feldspar grains becoming more evident, and the whole rock appears much like the St. Cloud granite.

Above fort Ridgely, by following the only passable road, a number of granite outcrops were not seen. At a point two miles below the Lower Agency, T. 112, R. 34, sec. 10, Mr. Wm. H. Post lives on the bottoms, near the mouth of a little creek coming in from the north. From him the following statements of granite in the bottoms above fort Ridgely were derived. It outcrops much more frequently on the south side than on the north side of the river. Throughout the whole distance to the fort (10 miles) occasional mounds of bare granite rise up in the bottom land. But these exposures are often quite small and at some distance from the river. At Marshner's carding factory, seven miles above the fort, are a number of granite knobs, in the vicinity of a lake situated in the bottoms. Half a mile further up is another exposure, but more or less connected, by smaller exposures, with that at Marshner's. The next principal outcrop between fort Ridgely and Mr. Post's, is on the south side of the river, and is visible from his house. It shows a conspicuous bared spot, with some timber, rising in one place nearly as high as the enclosing bluffs, but not effecting the general level of the prairie, unless it be in causing, as has been observed in one or two other places, a knobby or rolling tendency in the prairie surface, with gravel and boulders strewn over the surface of the knolls. One very prominent rock rises nearly forty feet above the general level, cone-like, and can be ascended only on one side. It bears a few cedars.

At Mr. Post's, granite outcrops occur at two places in the bottoms. These rise but a few feet above the general level. This granite has a strong resemblance to that at La Framboise's. It contains but little mica, and the feldspar is flesh-colored. The color here penetrates the feldspar crystals. In some places, however, the mica is more abundant, and the feldspar is less red.

Birch Coolie creek joins the Minnesota in sec. 5, T. 112, R. 34. The sides of this ravine, a short distance above its mouth, are in granite, which is more or less decomposed. It seems to have a dip S., SE., and SW. The only place where real granite can be seen is about 30 rods above the mill dam of Mr. Eldridge. It here rises 20 or 30 feet above the creek. In other places the creek runs over it, making rapids and falls, some of which Mr. Eldridge has improved for his mill power.

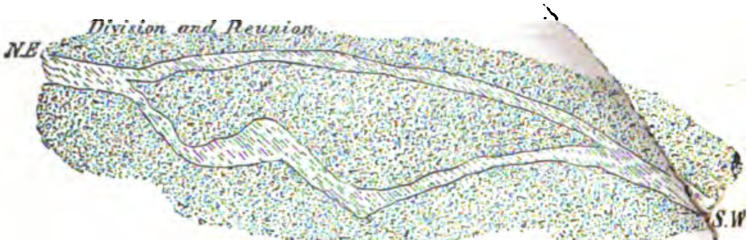
A substance was met with here for the first time which was afterwards seen at a number of places. Its origin seems to be dependent on the granite. Its association with the granite is so close that it seems to be a result of a change in the granite itself. It lies first under the drift, or under the Cretaceous rocks, where they overlie the granite, and passes by slow changes into the granite. It has some of the characters of steatite, and some of those of kaolin. In some places it seems to be a true kaolin. It is known by the people as "Castile soap." It cuts like soap, has a blue color when fresh, or kept wet, but a faded and yellowish ash color when weathered, and when long and perfectly weathered; is white and glistening. The boys cut it into the shapes of pipes and various toys. It appears like the pipestone, though less heavy and less hard, and has a very different color. It is said to harden by heating. This substance, which may, at least provisionally, be denominated a *kaolin*, seems to be the result of the action of water on the underlying granite. Since it prevails in the Cretaceous areas, and is always present, so far as known, whenever the Cretaceous deposits have preserved it from disruption by the Glacial period, it may be attributed to the action of the Cretaceous ocean. In some places it is gritty, and in others it may be completely pulverized in the fingers. A great abundance of this material exists in the banks of the Birch Coolie, within a short distance of its mouth.

In the bed of the creek, above the mill-dam, several veins are seen crossing the smoothed surface of the rock. In low water these can be closely inspected, and their composition and structure ascertained. The following sketches illustrate some of their interesting features.

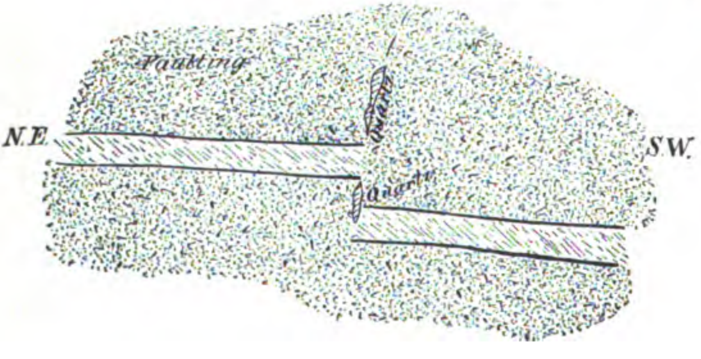
The structure of granite veins at Birch Coolie.

The vein, a part of which is illustrated by figures below, is in granite, and is made up of granite. The constituent parts, however, in the vein, are much finer, than in the body of the enclosing rock, and show a deeper tinge of red color. Its direction is S.W., and it is four inches wide. It is visible along the creek 250 feet, and it is crossed by numerous other veins that are mainly quartzitic and narrow. The structure of the main vein is somewhat schistose, and seems to be harder, judging from its forming a ridge that stands above the general surface of the rock one or two inches. The laminæ of the schistose vein run usually at some angle across the direction of the vein, but in one place, where is a slight change in the direction of the vein, they nearly correspond with it. Their usual direction is nearer N. and S. This main vein is faulted in several places, and is divided so as to enclose an irregular oblong area at one point. The fault here sketched is accompanied by a very little quartzitic deposit, but there is no constant vein of quartz crossing the main vein, though there is a small indistinct seam that curves off to the south on the east side. The laminæ in the two separated ends of the vein exhibit a curving in opposite directions, as if they had been somewhat elastic or plastic, and by being wrenched apart, had bent toward each other.

Division and reunion of vein at Birch Coolie.

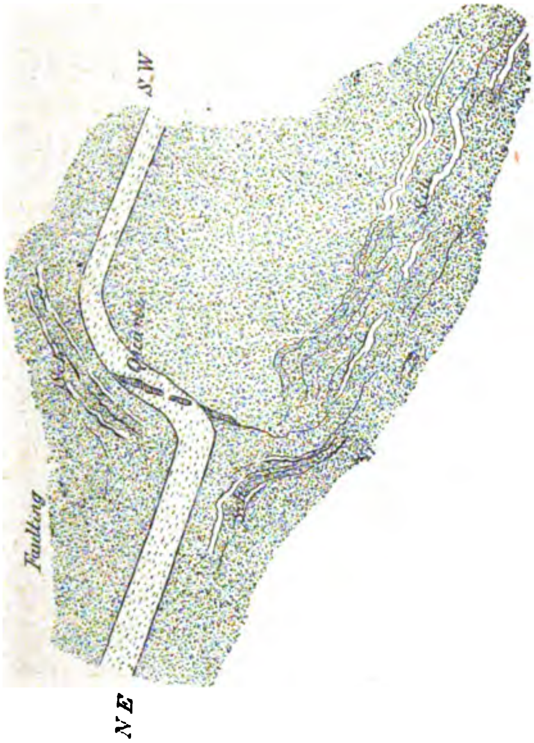


Faulting in vein at Birch Coolie.



The following diagrams represent some of the effects of disturbance in changing the direction and structure of veins. The curvature represented in the first below, is a part of the same vein as described above. It is accompanied by a change in the arrangement of the minerals in the granite, producing a curving, schistose lamination.

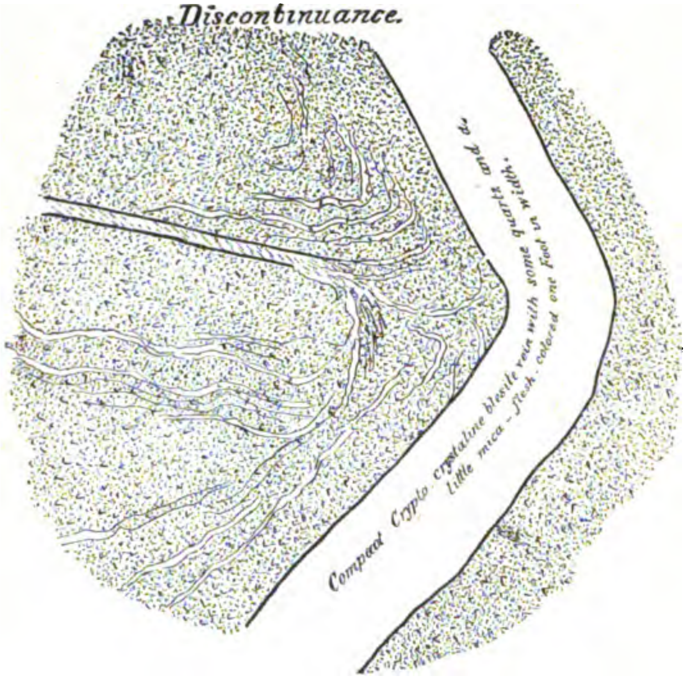
Faulting in vein.



Sch=Schistose granite.

In the second, the same vein is intercepted by a vein that has the outward aspect of orthoclase felsite, which seems to be of earlier date, inasmuch as the former is discontinued on reaching the latter. The discontinuance of the smaller vein seems to have been the cause of a certain ramifying schistose structure in the vicinity of the point of contact of the two veins. The felsite vein is one foot wide, and has a flesh color, with probably considerable quartz crystallized with it. It also shows some mica. It faults another vein, and hence is of later date than it.

Discontinuance of vein in granite at Birch Coolie.


Discontinuance.
Compact Crypto crystaline blesite vein with some quartz and a little mica — flesh colored one foot in width.

[For "Compact, Crypto-crystaline blesite," read Compact, crypto-crystalline felsite.]

Granite of the same composition and outward appearance as that below fort Ridgely outcrops on both sides of the Minnesota, at the mouth of Crow creek, sec. 35, T. 113, R. 35. It is here also superficially decomposed to the depth of several feet, forming a substance resembling kaolin, already mentioned as occurring at Birch Coolie. The usual points of exposure of this kaolin are in the banks of the little ravines that enter the Minnesota river. It is generally overlain by deposits of Cretaceous age, comprising clay, lignitic shale, sandstone or limestone. When the water carries this kaolin out on to the bottoms, and there spreads it over the surface, it becomes dry after the subsidence of the water, and then appears as a nearly white, exceedingly unctuous, glittering scum covering the ground. In this condition it shows minute flakes and sheets, that appear like exfoliations of talc.

At the mouth of the Redwood river, on both sides of the Minnesota, granite outcrops give rise to many rocky hills and knolls. The Redwood river, for some distance before reaching the Minnesota bottoms, is channeled through granite rock. This, together with the excavated Cretaceous rocks overlying, and the drift deposits, gives the river a very deep gorge through which it flows at a rapid rate, sometimes plunging over precipitous or perpendicular rocky descents, presenting a series of waterfalls, rapids, and quiet, deep pools of confined water, which are rarely excelled for picturesque beauty. The river falls about 100 feet in half a mile.

The granite, through which the river is cañoned, is usually the typical ternary compound, but shows variations. It is sometimes slaty or schistose. Just below the flouring mill of Messrs. E. Birum and Brothers, the rock on the left side is cut by divisional planes into oblique cuboidal blocks, and is called, in the absence of better, a "building stone," from the ease with which it could be quarried. It is also schistose, made up largely of quartz grains which are coarse, mingled with fine, glittering flakes that may be talc or mica. The greenish color of the whole stone, on fresh fracture, gives the rock a talcose character, although there are also occasional black scales that are plainly micaceous. The most frequent divisional planes here, causing the slaty or schistose structure, run about NE. and SW.; and slope at an angle of about 25 degrees below the horizon, toward the SE. This rock might be denominated a schistose and talcose quartzite.

At Redwood Falls the granite is overlain by the kaolin, which has been mentioned, presenting, in connection with this substance, a very interesting series of exposures, and suggesting very interesting questions both economical and scientific. About a mile below the village, on the left bank of the river, is a conspicuous white bluff,* composed of white kaolin clay. Near the top of this bluff, where the rains wash it, it is silvery white, and that color is spread over much of the lower portions, though the mass of the lower part is more stained with iron, having also a dull greenish tinge. The white glossy coating which appears like the result of washings by rains, is spread over the perpendicular sides. On breaking off this glossy coating, which is sometimes half an inch thick, the mass appears indistinctly bedded horizontally, but contains hard lumps and irony deposits. Further down, the iron becomes more frequent, and gritty particles like quartz impede the edge of a knife. The bedding also is lost, and the closest inspection reveals no bedding. Yet there is, even then, a sloaping striation or arrangement of lines visible in some places on the fresh surface, that corresponds in direction with the direction of the principal cleavage plane of the talcose and quartzitic slate already described. In other places this arrangement is not seen, but the mass crumbles out in angular pieces which are superficially stained with iron. The profile of the bluff here presents a singular isolated knob or buttress that rises boldly from the very river, connected with the main bank by a narrow edge along which a man cannot walk with safety. On either side of this bold promontory are retreating angles in the bluff along which a descent can be made. A careful inspection of these ravines and of the adjoining bluffs affords indubitable proof that this material, white and impalpable as it is, results from a change in the underlying granitic rocks.

---

*This is probably that seen by Keating, and pronounced "white sandstone."

Just above this point, is another exposure. It here supplies what is locally known as the "paint rock," from an enterprise started several years ago in manufacture of mineral paint from this material. The decomposed granite here has very much the same appearance as the kaolin, already described, at Birch Coolie, but contains more quartz, and is more stained with iron. It has a greenish color, but within might be blue. It passes upward into the greenish, and then white, kaolin clay already described, but it stands out in a crumbling, rusty buttress, exposed to the weather, and has quartzitic veins and concretions, iron-coated, and often an impure iron ore in considerable quantities. It shows silvery or shining talcose flakes, the same as seen in the so-called building rock, a short distance below the mill of Birum brothers.

A short distance above this, nearly opposite Redwood Falls, is situated the rock which was quarried for the manufacture of paint. This has in every respect the same character and composition as that last described. It consists of a perpendicular bluff or point, standing out from a lower talus that rises about 75 feet above the river, to the hight of 75 feet more. On the top of this is the drift-clay hardpan, covered by four or five feet of sand and gravel, the whole bluff being about 150 feet above the river. This bold bluff, or promontory, stands between re-entrant angles, its face falling down sheer thirty or forty feet. There is here visible an irregular slaty or cleavage structure in the rock, that at a distance has the appearance of dip toward the S. E. 30°. This also contains quartz veins and deposits, accompanied by iron, in some places too abundantly to allow of being cut with a knife, though very much of it can be easily shaped with a knife. It shows "slickensides," or surfaces that seem to have been rubbed violently against each other, causing a scratched and smoothed appearance, even within the body of the bluff. These surfaces are concave or curving, like putty hardened after being pressed through a crevice.

Between Beaver Falls and Vicksburg the granitic rocks appear almost constantly in sight, rising in mounds or bald irregular slopes, along the river bottoms, reaching occasionally as high as the river bluffs. For some distance above Beaver Falls, a ridge of granitic rock, running along within the bluffs, divides the channel into two parts, both of which are sometimes occupied by water, no such rock, nor any other, being visible in the bluffs themselves.

At eight miles above Beaver Falls such rock occurs in great force in the river bottoms, giving the appearance of a village, at a distance, partly hid by the scant foliage. Here it occupies the whole valley, spurs running in either direction into the river bluffs.

At Vicksburg the river bottoms are crowded with granite mounds and hills, some of them holding large blocks of hornblende schist that lie *in situ*, the transition from granite to schist being very abrupt.

After passing Patterson's rapids (T. 114, 37), the next important granite exposure noted was at Minnesota Falls, situated in the north part of town 115, range 39, although small mounds of granite occur for three miles below. Here the river bottoms are occupied by a schistose granite, which splits up conveniently for foundation stone. The change in the character of the rock is evident in the generally turfed condition of the mounds. The rock is here intersected by veins of quartz and trap dykes, the latter being traceable across the valley for half a mile, running N. E. and S. W. This trap is heavy and dark green, with some shining faces on the hornblende, when freshly broken. In higher levels, and apparently overlying this bedded schistose granite, is a compact hard-weathering granite. It is of a gray or greenish-gray color much resembling the St. Cloud granite. The rock at Minnesota Falls differs very noticeably from any observed in the river valley at lower points. It is bedded, and has a strong dip towards the S. E.

At a point, a short distance from the river, up a little ravine, that joins the Minnesota, opposite Austin and Worden's flouring mill at Minnesota Falls, the mineral already described as kaolin, or "paint rock," may be seen. This decomposing granite here holds quartz veins and deposits; which being coated with a lustrous black mineral, or holding it in sheltered angles or cavities, has attracted the attention of the settlers, who have regarded it as possibly an ore of silver or of copper. This mineral has a dark, brown powder. When in the form of films or sheets, or larger globules, it parts with a specular cleavage. In some places a considerable iron rust is seen in this quartz, and in others drusy or peppery crystals, as if of the same composition, are scattered over the surface, making it appear specked under the glass. These fine crystals make a lighter powder. Prof. Peckham pronounces this mineral to be hematite iron ore. It is specular.

The valley all the way between Minnesota Falls and Granite Falls is about two miles wide, and presents a singular billowy prospect, of granitic knobs, rising and falling on all sides, the river worming its way among them and having frequent rapids and water-falls, useful for mill privileges. At Granite Falls, as at Minnesota Falls, and all the way between, the rock in the valley is a schistose granite, almost a mica schist; but it varies to a hard gray granite that resembles that at St. Cloud both in color and composition. This, however, forms but a small part, the greater portion being schistose or laminated. It also varies to a red granite, i. e. one in which there are evident flesh-colored crystals of feldspar. These two variations do not seem to lie with any as certainable fixed relation of superposition to the schistose or bedded granite, but rise in knobs and irregular masses higher in the valley than that. They are not wooded, nor turfed, the schistose granite which more easily decomposes being generally turfed.

The most marked peculiarity of the granite at this place is its constant dip toward the S. E. This has been observed at several other points before reaching Granite Falls, but some uncertainty has generally existed in regard to the true character of the lamination seen, and it has not been spoken of as dip. Although the usual direction of inclination is toward the S. E., it varies, at Granite Falls, from S. E. to N. E. It amounts to 25 degrees, but sometimes reaches 40 degrees. At one place at Granite Falls the rock dips to the north for some distance. The red and gray colors are variously mingled, without any apparent law of association or alternation. Although the patches of more massive and typical granite are suitable for a fine building material, they still show the same dip toward the S. E., and are distinctly bedded throughout. These hard knobs rise from ten to twenty feet above the general level of the other granite, and show various effects of running water.

The trap dykes, the direction of which is shown by the adjoined diagram, occur in the river bottoms, about a mile above Granite Falls.

Trap dykes at Granite Falls.

Bedded Granite. Dip irregular.

Trap dyke, 20 ft.

Granite, dip unascertainable, 54 ft.

N.E. *S.W*

Greenstone trap dyke, 48 ft.

Granite, dip S.E.

There are sudden changes in the rock from real granite to hornblendic schist. These occur irregularly. A change like this gives rise to the waterfall near the flouring mill of Hon. Henry Hill, the fall being due to the greater resistance of the harder rock. The trap dykes above mentioned also cause rapids and waterfalls where they cross the river.

Between Granite Falls and Montevideo, at the mouth of the Chippewa river, the granite occasionally appears in the river bottoms. It was noticed at a point six miles below Montevideo, on the north side. The bedding, supposed to be due to original sedimentation, still dips to the east. It appears sometimes to stand nearly vertical. At this place occurs a belt or bed of hornblendic schist.

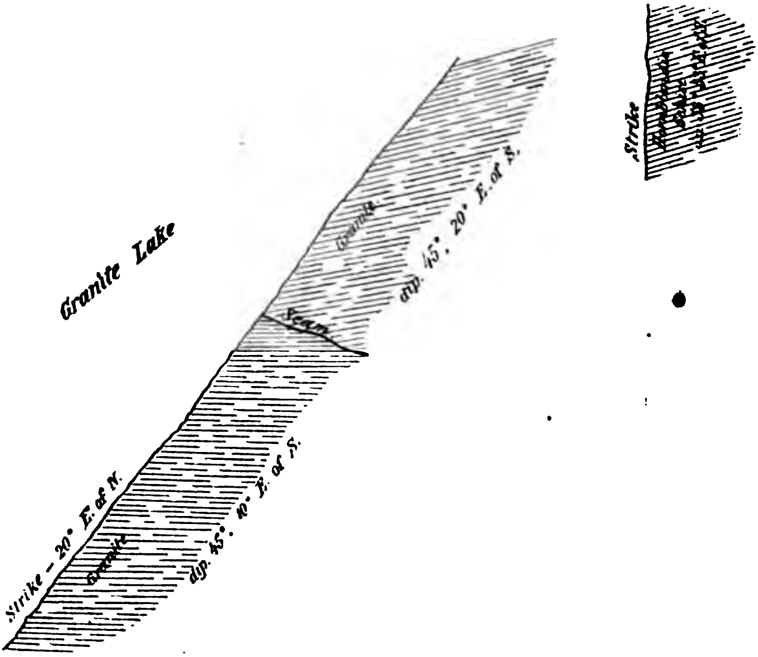
At two miles below Montevideo, is a conspicuous outcrop of compact hard granite, of a red color, lying mainly on the north side of the river, in the bottoms. This has the same dip, viz., 30 or 35 degrees to the southeast. The beds here regarded as representing dip, and at other points mentioned, should be further described. They are in thickness ½ to 2 or three inches, or they seem sometimes to be a foot or two. When weathered they appear thinner, and the granite then sometimes presents a slaty structure, the edges standing out sharply at the angle of dip. At Minnesota Falls and from there to Granite Falls, these beds are so micaceous as to make what has been termed a schistose granite, the whole mass becoming easily disrupted by frost and water, and then turfed over. But at this place the beds are closely compacted, and the whole is almost massive. The thickness of the bedding can easily be seen, however, in the occasional thin sheets that part from the knobs, or in the striations that mark the faces of the water worn, bald knobs. Although these knobs rise at irregular intervals, and are variously situated with reference to each other, having sloughs between them, yet they are arranged somewhat in succession in one direction, making rows or almost somewhat continuous ridges, running parallel in the direction of the strike, N.E. and S.W., which of themselves indicate a system of bedding. On a weathered cross-section of the bedding, the marks of striation or sedimentation often show a wavy arrangement, or distorted parallelism, and sometimes they vanish and widen alternately. The dip measured in one place is here 58°, 10° east of south. At another point very near the last, it is 85° in the same direction. This granite has the color and apparent composition of that seen below fort Ridgely.

This granite shows occasionally a knob of hornblendic schist, rising among the granite mounds, having very much the form, dip and bedding of the granite.

There is also occasionally a mound or dyke of trap, or greenstone, split into shapeless blocks under the weather, the planes of division running in various directions. These have no bedding, nor dip, but are very heavy, and uniformly of a dark green color. They do not disturb the uniformity of dip in the granite.

The following diagram will exhibit some of the features of the granite as exposed two miles below Montevideo:

Granite two miles below Montevideo, Chippewa Co.



The change in the direction of dip in the granite here sketched is rather less sudden than here represented. The seam, or joint, marking the point of contact of the beds dipping in different directions, is very much covered with turf, and the manner of union cannot be ascertained definitely, but on the face of the bluff (strike) there is no apparent disturbance or irregularity.

A belt or wedge-shaped, lenticular mass of hornblendic schist occurs in the granite here described, on the land of Mrs. E. A. Hull, having a more easterly dip, and running N. W. and S. E. It is 20 rods long, and from 20 ft. to 6 rods wide. Its dimensions and form cannot be fully and exactly seen. It appears in low knobs much like the granite, and the intervals of non-exposure are grassy.

Mr. L. R. Moyer, county surveyor of Chippewa county, reports granite on the prairie, three miles east of Montevideo, and in the Minnesota bottoms, a mile above Montevideo.

Near the lower end of Lac-qui-parle lake, granite appears on both sides of the lake. It is usually inaccessible from the prevalence of water; but in the dry months of the year it can be reached on the north side without any trouble, except from tall grass and bushes. There are three or four small bare spots on the south shore that can be seen, and three or four others that rise up in the midst of the lake. Two of these spots of bare rock also occur on the north side, near the foot of the lake. This rock, so far as can be seen on the north side, shows very much the same composition as further down the river. It contains quartz, mica and flesh-colored feldspar, with patches and veins of quartz, some of which are mingled with porphyritic feldspar. The exposed surfaces are annually submerged, or nearly so, and do not exhibit very plainly such markings as indicate sedimentation or dip. There seems to be an indistinct arrangement of the mica scales, so as to give the rock a schistose structure, but this, although generally running N. E. and S. W., does not have that direction invariably, and does not at all represent the lamination or bedding seen below and already described. In only one small area can there be seen what looks like the same bedding, and there it is but six inches in thickness, the beds being one or two or three inches, with a dip of 75° toward the S. E. Jointing planes divide the whole mass into blocks and rhombs, four or five or six feet in thickness. There is considerable low land about the lake, much of which is flooded at the wet season of the year, but it is stony and bushy, and has the appearance of rock in a great many places near the surface. Such appearances are seen the whole length of the lake, and especially on the north side. About three miles above the foot of the lake, rock can be seen on the south side at two points, rising plainly above the general level of the bottoms, and ascending in the slope from the prairie. Such exposures continue to near the head of the little lake in T. 120, R. 44, where granite appears in several places on the south side of the river.

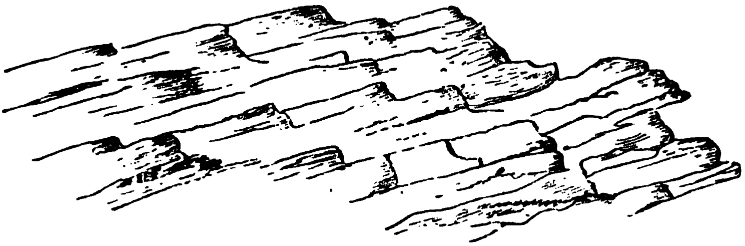
Further up the river, near where it enters T. 120, R. 44, may be seen a large exposure of coarse granite. The crystals of feldspar are large and flesh-colored, or red. Yet the granite also varies to a lighter color, in which the feldspar is nearly white. It shows, in the latter case, a perpendicular jointing, the planes being one or two or three inches apart. The whole exposure consists of bare, massive, rounded knobs, cut into angular rhomboidal blocks, by jointing planes, but in no place showing the dip seen lower down the Minnesota river.

Granite also outcrops about three-quarters of a mile above Mr. F. Frankhouse's, on the south side of the river, two miles above the last.

Red granite also appears about a mile further up, in the river bottoms, near Mr. W. Movius' house, presenting an irregular exterior, showing no dip, although there are here also conspicuous jointing planes. This is about three-fourths of a mile above the mouth of the Yellow Banks creek. Opposite Mr. Movius', on the south side, in the bottoms, may be seen another similar granite mound.

At three miles below the foot of Big Stone lake, there is a tumultuous outcrop of red granite, extending to the lake, on both sides of the river. This shows planed and striated surfaces on a grand scale. These marks have a N.W. and S.E. direction (corrected for variation), or that, in general, of the Minnesota valley. The whole rock, including the upper surfaces and the sides of the mounds, is planed off. The best exhibition of these markings is seen on the northwestern slopes, in which direction there is a system of jointing planes, dividing the granite into blocks that have at first sight a strong semblance of dip, the masses breaking off more nearly at right angles on the southeast side. This is a coarse, red granite, with large crystals of feldspar. The following diagram illustrates the effect of the jointing in the rock, acted upon by glacial forces from the northwest.

Jointing and glaciation at Big Stone lake.



Above the foot of Big Stone lake there is no known outcrop of granite throughout its extent. Cretaceous rocks constitute the only outcrops. These are seen sometimes in the little creeks that enter it, and are outlined as terraces on its banks.

The examiners of the land of the Winona and St. Peter R. R. report granite *in situ*, on the prairie, T. 113, R. 43, sec. 17, and T. 113, R. 39, sec. 29.

Further examination of the granitic belt was made at Sauk Rapids and St. Cloud, for the purpose of comparison with the granites of the Minnesota valley, and with a view to some parallelization; but as that region will undergo a more detailed survey, and no results were obtained bearing on the subject of the relative age of the rocks at that place and the granite of the Minnesota valley, those observations are reserved for future comparisons.

(j) THE CRETACEOUS.

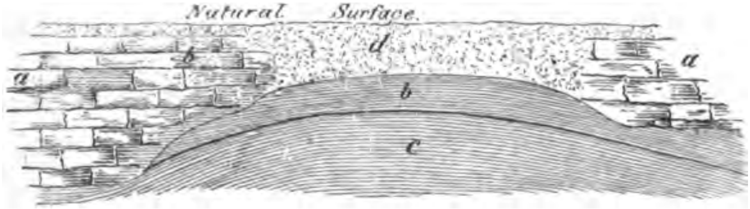
In the progress of the season's work, the first point at which these rocks were seen was in Dakota county. At Empire City, where the highway crosses the Vermilion, sec. 24, T. 114, R. 19, the river is handsomely terraced. The valley between the lowest benches that rise on each side is from one to two miles wide. The first terrace is very conspicuous in the treeless landscape, and consists superficially of coarse drift. Its crest is gently rounded off. It is occupied with fine farms. The same is true of the land lying along its base, which might be called the flood plain of the river. Yet it is probable the river never floods the greater part of it. Some of this plain is wet and grassy, making fine meadow land, and other parts of it are plowed for wheat. The first terrace seems sometimes broken, about midway, into two terraces, the constancy of which could not, however, be discovered. It is subject to numerous re-entrant bends and other sinuosities, the points intervening being stony and only fit for pasturage. The pebbles are generally quartzitic, and lie very thick on the surface. They are rounded as by water. The hight of this terrace above the river, measured by Mr. Furber by Locke's level, was found to be 81 ft. 3 in. Above this terrace there is a further ascent to the level of the general prairie. What part the St. Peter sandstone, which forms *lone rock* a short distance north, and shows an outcrop in the valley a short distance up the river, plays in the formation of this terraced slope to the Vermilion, cannot be certainly ascertained, but it probably is very small. The Cretaceous clays and shales, with their associated loose sandstones, however, are perfectly adapted to the formation of terraces along streams, as has been, and will be further mentioned in describing the Minnesota valley, and they are believed to be the sole cause of these terraces. If the reader wishes to investigate this subject further, he is referred to those chapters and paragraphs that describe the terraces of the Minnesota, and discuss the drift and its phenomena. This assignment of these terraces to the agency of the stratified deposits of the Cretaceous does not rest on bare opinion. The Cretaceous clay was seen in outcrop near the bridge over the Vermilion near Empire City. The destructible nature of these beds causes them to be covered by loose materials, which, after the lapse of time, spread over the entire surface, and superficially appear to compose the whole substructure. The beds themselves are thus only outlined in the form of terraces.

In ascending the Minnesota valley the first point at which the Cretaceous was indentified, so far as it can be without the aid of fossils, is at the Asylum farm, near St. Peter, in Nicollet county. It lies here in the water-worn openings of the Shakopee limestone. It is a white, or greenish-white deposit, holding much sand. It has a great many flinty fragments, and some siliceous limestone lumps. The latter are rounded, but the former are angular. The lumps are porous, crystalline, hard, and gray or white. No fossils can be seen, and no stratification. It seems rather to have been *jammed* into the openings in the Shakopee stone. A similar exposure, presenting the same characters, occurs across the river from St. Peter, and about a mile toward Kasota, in a bluff by the side of the road.

A heavy bed of white sand, which has been described as probably belonging to the St. Peter sandstone (p. 134), occurs on the Blue Earth and its tributaries. It is associated with an impure iron ore, and with light green shale, but its exact relation to them has not been ascertained. It may belong to the Cretaceous.

At Mankato, in Blue Earth county, a series of very interesting observations was made on the Cretaceous, throwing some light on the history of that period of submergence which brought the most of Minnesota below the ocean. Where the road to South Bend crosses the Blue Earth, on the east side of the bridge, is a cut in greenish clay, by the side of the road. This deposit of clay lies in a nook alongside the bluff of Lower Silurian, and doubtless was protected from destruction in the glacial period by that bluff. It is covered with drift, and at one place occupies a cleft in the Silurian rock, running nearly to the surface of the ground at the top of the bluff. Its position here, and as represented in the following sketch, is very deceptive. It appears very much as if in place in the Shakopee stone, but the beds of that stone hold as low a place, horizontally, a little further to the left, as this clay. The bluff of Lower Silurian can be seen to disappear behind the clay, in some places the clay being removed so as to show the bluff at lower points than at others. There is every indication that this deposit is of small extent.

The Cretaceous at Mankato.



Explanation.

a. Shakopee Limestone.
b. Bedded, greenish clay, weathering white, but little sandy.
c. Sandy, bedded greenish clay.
d. Drift, mostly coarse fragments of Shakopee Limestone.

Passing along the right bank of the Blue Earth river from the highway to the railroad bridge, we come to a cut in the Shakopee stone. This is in the same horizon as that just described, and shows more fully the manner of superposition of the Cretaceous on the Silurian rocks. This cut is perhaps 70 feet above the river, the bank of which is composed entirely of rock, the lower portion of which is the Jordan Sandstone, and the upper, the Shakopee limestone, the latter comprising about 20 feet. In general this railroad cut shows a mixture of Cretaceous clay with the Lower Silurian, the top of the whole being thinly and irregularly covered over and chinked up with coarse drift. The Lower Silurian is more or less broken and tilted, at least the bedding seems to have been cut out into huge blocks by divisional planes, which, either by weathering or water-wearing, were widened, the blocks themselves being subsequently thrown to some extent from their horizontality, tipping in all directions. The opened cracks and seams were then filled with the Cretaceous clay, which is deposited between these loosened masses, and sometimes even to the depth of twenty feet below the general surface of the top of the rock. The clay sometimes occupies nooks and rounded angles, sometimes sheltered *below* heavy masses of the Silurian beds.

The clay is uniformly bedded, about horizontally, with some slope in accordance with the surface on which the sedimentation took place. But the most interesting and important feature is *the condition of these old Silurian surfaces*. They are rounded by the action of water, evidently waves. The cavities and porous spots are more deeply eroded, making little pits on the face of the rock; or along the lines of section of the sedimentation planes with the eroded surface, there are furrows due to the greater effect of water. The rounded surface of these huge masses of Lower Silurian is coated with a thickness of about a half inch, or an inch and a half, of iron ore, which scales off easily, and is easily broken by the hammer. While this scale of iron ore is thicker near the top and on the upper surfaces of the blocks, yet it runs down between the Cretaceous clay and the body of the rock, so as to prove its date older than the clay. The conclusions that must be drawn from this observation are about as follows:

1st. The Silurian rocks were long weathered, and washed clean, even water-worn and rounded, at this place, when they went below the Cretaceous ocean. Nothing intervenes between their iron stained surfaces and the clay.

2nd. This point seems to have been on or near the ancient shore line, where the violence of the waves was great. These rounded knobs could not have received their coating of iron if constantly submerged. The iron indicates the action of atmospheric gases on iron held in solution in water, as a bog ore formation.

3rd. The Cretaceous clay here, whatever be its place in the Cretaceous age, was deposited in a quiet ocean.

4th. This bluff, facing to the south, or south-east, like that at Mankato, indicates the approach of the Cretaceous ocean from that direction, though this may have been only a reef, or an island, just before the further submergence.

5th. There may have been, and was probably, a further deposition of clay of the Cretaceous age which was destroyed and transported by the drift period, at this place.

6th. The drift succeeded, and was not violent enough in its forces to disturb these tilted and waterworn masses of Lower Silurian limestone, so but that their old surfaces abut still unconformably against the Cretaceous clay.

7th. The Cretaceous sea must have advanced slowly over the Silurian rocks. These washed surfaces could not have been produced when the sea was retiring, else the Cretaceous sea would have washed out the clay. Further the clay lies directly in contact with these surfaces.

8th. The Cretaceous sea must have gone farther north and east so as to deeply submerge these disturbed masses. in order to have deposited such fine sediment in their crevices.

9th. While the washed surfaces indicate a shore line, or a reef, the clay proves deep submergence.

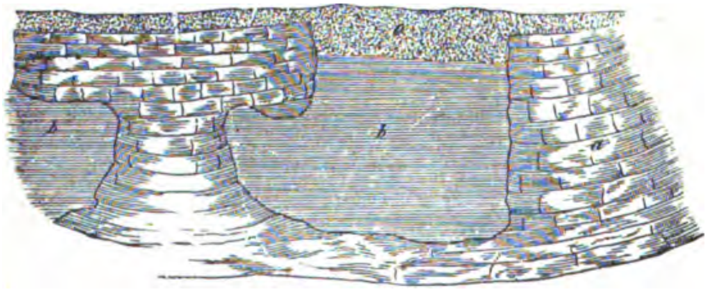
10th. The Cretaceous sea must have retired rapidly, so as to give no opportunity to wash out the clay.

11th. These washed surfaces must have been produced as the sea was advancing.

12th. While it is certain that the Cretaceous sea advanced slowly on the land, it is not certain that it retired rapidly. The clay existing there may have been protected from the retiring shore waves by superimposed beds hundreds of feet thick--such higher beds having been subsequently removed by the drift forces; but it is likely that drift forces that were able to destroy so much Cretaceous, would also so have disturbed the Silurian masses as to leave no trace of the clay, or even to have transported away the Silurian masses themselves. Hence it is probable that there was but little Cretaceous deposited over the remaining clay, and that the sea retired rapidly.

The adjoining sketches will give a better idea of the position of the Cretaceous, with respect to the Silurian.

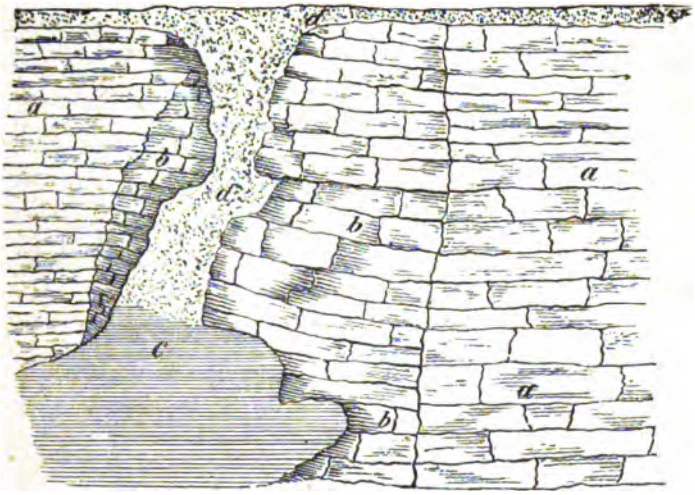
The Cretaceous on the Lower Silurian.



Explanation.

a. Weathered surface of Silurian.
b. Cretaceous clay.
c. Coarse drift.

The Cretaceous on the Silurian.



Explanation.

a. Silurian rock, cut by the grading of R. R.
b. Weathered surface of Silurian rock.
c. Cretaceous clay, greenish blue, bedded.
d. Coarse drift.

On sec. 25, T. 108, R. 29, (as nearly as can be made out), is an exposure of Cretaceous clay. The bank of the flood-plain of the river is made up, almost everywhere, of sandy, more or less stratified, alluvium. But here, although having about the same hight, it is made up almost entirely of a mass of large, water-washed fragments of conglomeritic sandstone, which lie in confusion, some having fallen down into the water. They are underlain by a fine blue clay, without gravel or pebbles, belonging to the Cretaceous. Hence the sandstone or conglomerate pieces are not *in situ*, but pertain to the drift. Sometimes a layer of drift-pebbles and cobble-stones, about three inches thick, separates them from the clay. These large masses are 8 or 12 feet long, and 5 or 6 feet thick, and are scattered in talus over the Cretaceous clay, even into the river.

Dr. B. F. Shumard, in his report on the Minnesota valley, has mentioned an outcrop of *formation* 1 *capped with about* **25** *feet of gray, concretionary limestone*, about two miles below the mouth of the Waraju, and describes it as having disseminated crystals of calcareous spar. His analysis shows it to hold 90 per cent. of carbonate of lime. A very long search was made for this exposure in the season of 1873. It could not be found—that is to say, nothing could be found pertaining to the Silurian rocks. A sandstone was seen in outcrop on sec. 16, T. 109, R. 29, on the north side of the river, in Nicollet county, quarried a little by Wm. Fritz, which proved to pertain to the Cretaceous, holding dicotyledonous leaves and branches. It consists of alternating layers of friable sand with angular shapes, but little rounded by attrition, and hard, cemented gray sandstone, which is sometimes coarse enough to be styled conglomeritic. The section here is as follows, the upper members being somewhat displaced by the washing out of the friable layers.

Section in Cretaceous sandstone. Land of Wm. Fritz, sec. 16, *T.* 109, *R.* 29, *Nicollet Co.*

No. 1.	Hard, gray sandstone, rusted in the weather, and checking into beds of about four inches,—sometimes one or two inches..........................	18 in.
No. 2.	Friable white sand..............................	10 in.
No. 3.	One course of gray sandstone, of variable thickness	1-3 ft.
No. 4.	White sand..	6 in.
No. 5.	Gray sandstone, quarrying out in layers 6-10 inches thick, but in the quarry appearing massive; very hard, the cement appearing to be silica. It contains fragments of wood, charcoal and angiospermous leaves. Its under surface is undulatory, its thickness varying from..........................	3-6 ft.
No. 6.	White, friable sand, seen....................	3 ft.

This whole quarry lies perhaps 35 or 40 feet above the river, and 40 or 50 rods from it. The persistency of this group of layers is evidenced along here by their forming a little terrace above the bottoms, which rises about 25 feet, and is visible for more than a mile. Pieces of this stone had been seen at lower points on the river, said to have been taken from the beds *in situ*, but it had been impossible to find those beds. One such place was at Mr. E. Rowe's, on sec. 23, T. 109, R. 29, on the south side of the river.

Four miles below New Ulm, on the south side of the river, is a bluff made up of Cretaceous, on the land of John Gruebel, as follows:

Section on sec. 2, *T.* 109, *R.* 30.

No. 1.	Black alluvium....................................	2 ft.
	Passing below into—	
No. 2.	Clayey alluvium, of a light-brown color...........	4½ ft.

No. 3.	Red clay, containing some sandstone in masses; stratified	2½ ft.
No. 4.	Belt of greenish, sandy clay	1 ft.
	Passing into—	
No. 5.	Sandy clay, of a light umber color	1½ ft.
No. 6.	Bedded sandy clay, of an earth color, (same as No. 2)	2 ft.
No. 7.	Greenish sand, the color coming from the mixture of green shale with the sand, the grains of sand being white quartz	2 in.
No. 8.	White sandstone, in one bed, or weathering into beds of two inches	1 ft.
No. 9.	Green bedded shale, or clay, with some fine sand grains, and some laminations or thick beds that are all white sand, but generally maintaining a green color, seen	18 ft.
No. 10.	Slope and talus	10 ft.

The bedding seen in the foregoing section is horizontal, and shows no fossils. Although there is no opportunity at this place to determine whether this series of shales lies above or below the sandstone at Fritz's, by an observation made in the bank of the road at the crossing of the Waraju, it is believed to overlie that sandstone, but to underlie a series of calcareous beds that appear in the right bank of the river, about a mile below the mouth of the Waraju. The colors near the top of the foregoing section exchange places a little, in following the bluff along, drift boulders and gravel occupying the place of clay, in No. 3. In some places the red, irony stain passes down lower. It is likely that the red, brown and ochery colors are due to ferriferous waters, since the deposit of the Cretaceous, and to oxygen in the air. Hence it is not certain that the drift extends through the whole of No. 3, although drift boulders are mixed with it, or replace it, in some places. When evenly bedded and free from boulders, it undoubtedly belongs to the Cretaceous, the drift stopping with No. 2. When it is replaced by boulders, the Cretaceous is only so much the more worn away, the color pervading them, or passing down to lower beds.

From the mouth of the Waraju going down the right bank of the Minnesota, a regular terrace is seen to rise several feet above the flood plain. About a mile down, this terrace shows its origin and composition, in the banks of a ravine which cuts it. (See map of this locality, page 157.) Before reaching that point, however, an outcrop of "gray concretionary limestone" is seen on the top of the terrace plateau. This limestone here is overlain by a couple of feet of water-washed limestone, gravel and cobble-stones, mixed toward the top with the usual black alluvium. The appearance of the quarried stone is like *drift* pieces, and the bed from which it is taken is intersected variously with divisional planes, cutting the mass into irregular fragments, which, on being taken out, appear weathered. Yet there are crystal-lined cavities, some parts of it being mostly made up of calc-spar. Since the formation of the crystals, calcareous water has again deposited lime on the edges of the crystals, which, having first been of the thin (axe-shaped) variety, have now the appearance of separate but crowded cock's combs, the little, beaded accretions of lime being arranged on their edges. There is also a considerable quantity of uncrystallized lime on other surfaces. The interior of the stone is of a light gray or drab color, and when compact and free from crystals, is very fine grained. It is said to make a white, strong quicklime, of which there can be no doubt. This limestone outcrop, which shows only about 16 inches, is within a mile of the red quartzite outcrop near New Ulm, the bare bald surfaces of which are visible, from this point, on the other side of the Minnesota.

A little below the last described exposure, is Mr. Wm. Winkelmann's lime-kiln and quarry. The stone here burned is in the same horizon, and comes from the banks of a ravine that here enters the Minnesota. The limestone is much mixed, confusedly, with shale, but the following general section can be made out, in which no fossils were seen:

Section at Wm. Winkelmann's, near New Ulm, in Brown county.

No. 1.	Alluvium and boulders	2 ft.
No. 2.	Green shale, interstratified with belts and irregular nodules or masses of gray limestone	15 ft.
No. 3.	Green shale	1 ft.
No. 4.	White sand, varying to green shale	1½ ft.
No. 5.	Green clay	2 ft
No. 6.	Calcareous shale, or marl, with some argillaceous matter	5 ft
No. 7.	Green shale, or clay, with blotches of red, seen	1 ft.
	Total	27½ ft.

The same kind of greenish marl is exposed up the Waraju, the immediate bluffs being somewhat wrought in it, to a point just back of New Ulm, where the bank is opened by Mr. Winkelmann for laying pipes to supply his machinery and brick-yard. The trench which he has dug passes through it just before reaching the bank of the Waraju river. The flat on which New Ulm stands seems to be made up by a terrace wrought in the Cretaceous. The surface of this flat is strewn with boulders.

Another creek joins the Minnesota nearly opposite the mouth of the Waraju, and also afords such exposures of the Cretaceous limestone as to invite the construction of lime-kilns. The sections here seen are not so favorable as that of Mr. Winkelmann, and contain more shale, some of which shows also a red color. In the shale are crystals of selenite; exposed ten feet. The kilns at this place are owned by John Heiman and Francis Baasen.

On the Waraju, about three miles from New Ulm, Mr. Christan Dauffenbach has established a manufactory of fire-brick. He obtains the material from the left bank of the river, where the Cretaceous affords the following section:

Section in Cretaceous on the Waraju river.

No. 1.	Hardpan drift, made up of clay and stones, seen about..	30 ft.
No. 2.	White sand, the age of which is uncertain, containing irony concretions and deposits. It is somewhat indistinctly stratified obliquely, like drift sand, and has some coarse grains. Its position in reference to the overlying hardpan drift, together with its thickness and purely white color, indicates its age to be Cretaceous.........	100 ft.
No. 3.	Blue clay, containing some siliceo-calcareous, irony lumps; said by Mr. Dauffenbach to hold some coal, mixed with No. 4 for making fire-brick....................	4 ft.
No. 4.	Sandy marl, probably largely aluminous, pronounced a silicate of magnesia by the chemist of the agricultural department at Washington. It is white, and when long submerged, soft and fluid-like, but when dry has to be quarried by blasting. This, mixed at the rate of two-thirds, with one-third of No. 3, makes a fine white, fire-brick—seen..	12 ft.
	Total hight of bluff..................................	146 ft.

The above section varies in short intervals. In connection with others seen at New Ulm, it shows how careful geologists must be in attributing to drift all that is found before striking the indurated rock.

Under the guidance of Mr. Dauffenbach, about half a mile further up the river, a sandstone outcrop was encountered. It rises in a bluff immediately from the water, on the opposite side of the river. In this sandstone, which here appears firm and massive, and which is probably the equivalent of No. 2, of the foregoing section, are many irony mud balls, or concretions, having a fancied resemblance to plums or bananas. They vary in shape and size. They have been gathered as fossil "fruits," and sent east as rare curiosities.

The general section of the Cretaceous at New Ulm is as follows:

No 1.	Drift, gravel and boulders, with a surface-loam in some places, or largely made up of sand	10 to 20 ft.
No. 2.	Fine clay, blue, bedded, weathering white, used for pottery or brick	4 to 10 ft.
No. 3.	Sand or fine gravel, not cemented, readily crumbling, containing magnesian balls, or rounded lumps made up of a fine white powder—seen	20 to 30 ft.

The conspicuous Cretaceous terrace that occurs along the Minnesota at New Ulm, is due to this fine crumbling sand, overlain by a more tenaceous clay or shale. The varying composition of the Cretaceous makes it difficult to establish the horizontality of different outcrops, but there cannot be much doubt that No. 3 above is the equivalent of No. 2 of the section on the Waraju.

In the southwestern part of T. 110, R. 31, is another important exposure of the Cretaceous. It is in the banks of the Waraju, and consists of blue clay, and is used by the potters both at Mankato and New Ulm. That which is most highly esteemed is taken from the right bank about 40 feet above the river. It contains no gravel, nor any perceptible grit. It is owned by Silas Barnard.

A trial was made by Mr. H. B. Kaufer, potter at Mankato, of a clay outcrop on the other side of the river, about a quarter of a mile further up. Although this is about the same altitude above the river, and has outwardly the same general color and character, it is said to have proved unfit for potter's use, owing to the occurrence of small, black, hard, roughened pebbles, that can be broken only with great pressure, called "sulphur balls." These small specks weather black, and are doubtless composed of crystalline sulphuret of iron.

At Sleepy Eye, T. 110, R. 32, the Winona and St. Peter R. R. Company are sinking a well for artesian water. At the depth of 143 feet the drill had passed through the following section:

Black loam	5 or 6 feet.
Gravelly, brown clay	20 feet.
Gravelly, blue clay	115 feet.
Soft, pulpy, blue clay, that necessitated the tubing of the well	3 feet.
Total depth	143 feet.

In sinking a former drill, a pocket of coal was met in the gravelly, blue clay, at the depth of 75 or 80 feet.

The Cretaceous again occurs in the banks of Little Rock creek, near fort Ridgely, and was at one time explored there for coal.

At a point two miles below the Lower Sioux Agency, sec. 10, T. 112, R. 34, on the north side of the Minnesota, a small creek joins the river. Up this creek, about three-quarters of a mile from the river bluffs, the Cretaceous appears in its banks. A concretionary marl, or apparently limy earth, of a white color, crumbles out under the projecting turf. It appears in fragments of an inch or two, or sometimes larger, with angular outline. The surfaces of these pieces show a great number of round or oval spots, or rings, which seem to be formed by the sections of concretions inclosed in the mass. It is rather hard when dry, and nearly white. It is associated with a blue clay, the relations of which cannot here be made out.

At a point a little further up this creek appears a heavy deposit of concretionary, rusty marl, or ferro-calcareous substance, the exact composition and proper name of which it is impossible to give, before it has been chemically examined. It is in heavy beds, that fall off in large fragments, like rock. The first impression is that the bluff is composed of ferruginous conglomerate. but there is not a foreign pebble in it. Every little round mass has a thin shell which is easily broken, revealing either a cavity or a loose, dry earth. These concretions are generally not more than 1-4 or 1-2 inch in diameter; 'seen 18 feet. Under this is the light, concretionary clay or marl already described.

At the Lower Agency an exposure of the Cretaceous occurs in the road, seen in descending to the ferry. It consists of a sandy marl. Beds horizontal, or nearly so.

In the banks of Crow creek, which enters the Minnesota 3½ miles below Redwood Falls, the Cretaceous beds are carbonaceous, and have been considerably explored for coal, on the land of George Johnson. In 1871, Wm. H Grant. of St. Paul, entered upon a systematic examination of these layers, drifting into the side of .the ravine 200 or 250 feet. This work is said to have cost about $2,000. A similar "coal mine" was opened in the banks of the Redwood, near Redwood Falls, where $5,000 are said to have been expended in a like fruitless attempt. This coal is from one of those layers in the Cretaceous that are usually known as lignites. It is earthy, passing sometimes into a good cannel coal, or into a bituminous clay. The compact cannel coal is in detached lumps, and occurs throughout a band of about four feet in thickness. This lignitic band was followed in drifting into the bank of Crow creek, and was found to divide by interstratification with black clay, showing some leafy impressions and pieces of charcoal.

The "coal" here is said to overlie a bed of lumpy, concretionary marl, similar to that described at two miles below the Lower Agency, or two and a half miles below Birch Coolie. In some of the concretions are small shining balls of pyrites, which the workmen treasured up as gold. Over the "coal" is a blue clay, requiring a timbered roof in the tunnel. This clay is likewise Cretaceous. The underlying lumpy or concretionary white marl becomes siliceous, or even arenaceous, the concretions appearing more like chert. Some of it is also pebbly, showing the action of water currents.

The same lignitic coal occurs near Mr. Johnson's on the land of Hugh Curry, Wm. H. Cornell, E. O. King and Mr. Riker's, in the little ravines that enter the Minnesota, the exposures being kept fresh by the freshet waters. More or less exploring and drilling, besides that done by Mr. Grant, has been engaged in, in this vicinity, but never with any better success.

Near Redwood Falls, on land of Mr. Birney Flynn, is another outcrop of carbonaceous deposit in the Cretaceous. This is seen in the left bank of the Redwood river. It is in the form of a black bedded clay or shale, five or six feet thick, more or less mingled with charcoal and ashes, the whole passing below into charcoal fragments mixed with the same ash-like substance. In the latter are sometimes large pieces of fine, black, very compact coal, the same as that already spoken of at Crow creek, as cannel coal. These masses show sometimes what appears to the eye to be fine woody fiber. as if they, too, were simply charred wood. Further examination will be needed to determine their origin and nature. They constitute the only really valuable portions of the bed, the light charcoal which everywhere shows the distinct woody fiber, being generally mixed with the light ashy substance, and in a state of fine subdivision.

A short distance above Mr. Flynn's land is that of George Houghton, where the Redwood Falls coal mine was opened.

This mine consists of a drift into the bluff, forty feet, following a lignite, or charcoal bed in the Cretaceous. The bed here is seven feet think, the greater part of it being made of black, bedded shale or clay, though Mr. Flynn is authority for the statement that it showed a great deal more of the real charcoal than any other point discovered. Some fragments that lay near the opening contained about nine parts of light charcoal to one of ash, the whole very slightly cemented, and so frail as to hardly endure transportation. In this drift were also numerous pieces of what is described by the owners both here and at Crow creek, as "stone coal." It is the same as that mentioned as probably a cannel coal, occurring at Crow creek. It is these harder lumps that are found scattered in the drift throughout the southwestern part of the state, so often mentioned in the newspapers.

Up a little creek that comes into the Yellow Medicine river from the south, near the village, is an exposure of fine stratified blue clay that weathers to a yellowish color. It has a thickness of at least ten or fifteen feet.

At a point six miles below Montevideo, on the north side of the Minnesota, there is a terrace within the main river bluffs, extending along the river for three miles at least, on which there is a wide plateau. This terrace rises 45 or 50 feet above the water, the flood plain being about 12 feet. On examining for the cause of this terrace, the only indurated rock found was in a little point that juts out toward the river about on a level with the top of the terrace: and that consists of granite, overstrewn with boulders. The terrace, however, is probably not due to underlying granite, for the surface of granite would not be so nearly level as to give the uniformity and regularity of outline here seen. It is more likely that Cretaceous rock, of a fragile and crumbling character, is concerned in giving form to this terrace, as has been seen in a number of other cases.

A mile further up the river, this bench shows a fresh section down to the water level. In general, the whole consists of fine sand, in which swallows burrow and breed. It stands, however, in nearly perpendicular walls, something like the "bluff." Yet it is not the *bluff*, because it is too fine, has no shells nor pebbles, and is stratified. It also becomes a bright blue color near the water level, and shows a sticky, clayey consistency, indicating a good material for brick. It cannot be of the same date and origin as the *bluff*, since it is an isolated instance of the occurrence of such beds along the Minnesota valley. It has very much the character of a late alluvial deposit, but rises too high to be of the same date as the flood-plain of the river. It is throughout mainly sand. The sedimentation is not always horizontal, if the individual layers be regarded separately, but it is if taken collectively. There is a wave-like arrangement or anastomosing of layers; some are quite oblique and cross-bedded. In some parts of the upper 25 feet there is a rustiness, confined to certain thin beds, which makes them adhere in masses after falling out of the bluff, and at a distance have something of the appearance of sandrock. These, however, crush down at once under the hammer, or even in the fingers. While this deposit has very much the aspect of fine drift, its occurrence here in the form of a wide, continuous plateau, rising nearly fifty feet above the water, makes it very probable that it belongs to the Cretaceous, although it differs from any rock of that age before seen.

About half a mile, a little west of south from the stage station at the head of Big Stône lake, in Dacotah, an exposure of Cretaceous occurs in the right bank of the upper Minnesota. It shows superficially only a weathered, sliding talus of shale, which is black and somewhat slaty, but which on digging becomes moister and soft and somewhat flexible, yet parting into small chips. Over the surface of the ground, where this shale outcrops, the turf is prevented from growing, and two conspicuous objects, weathered out from the shale, are seen. 1st. Little angular crystals of pure gypsum, the largest seen weighing not over half a pound. 2d. Little angular bits of yellowish red ochre, that are hard and thin, but can be cut with a knife. There is also an occasional piece of brecciated, clayey, or at least aluminous rock, the cracks and surfaces of which are filled and coated with crystals of calc-spar. When broken by the hammer, these part along the numerous planes that on either side are lined by this calc-spar, and each fragment is entire, appearing itself a mass of calcite. It is only by several attempts that a view of the interior, on which these coatings are formed, can be obtained. The thickness of this shale bed cannot be ascertained. The angular bits of ochre are most numerous near the top, where the drift supervenes, but the gypsum crystals are scattered over the whole outcrop. The indications are that the gypsum and ochre are embraced within the shale, and become superficial by weathering. The whole may be twenty-five feet thick.

This shale bed is the cause of a terrace in the descent from the high prairie, and of numerous springs that issue below the drift, about sixty feet below the prairie level. These springs excavate narrow ravines and "gulches" in the shale, the whole being smoothly turfed over, except at the point above described. These alternating gulches, and the intervening short pieces of the remaining terrace, make the bluff in general appear hilly, in its ascent from the bottom-land. These ravines, in the wet season of the year, are very soft, and since they appear practicable for a horse, are the cause of many misfortunes to the traveler. Many such treacherous, springy places are described as occurring along the shores of lake Travers, at some elevation above the waters of the lake. The same rolling ascent from the bottom-land to the high prairie can be seen also at the head of Big Stone lake, on the Minnesota side, and it is there doubtless, due to the same cause.

General section of the Cretaceous in southwestern Minnesota.

The limited observations that have been made on the Cretaceous in Minnesota, will not warrant a conclusion on the alternation of parts described in the foregoing account of the Minnesota valley. The beds are nearly horizontal everywhere seen, a fact which makes it necessary to pass over long intervals before looking for a change in the observed horizon. While this simplifies the problem, it leaves out of the account the possible changes that may exist in the character of the sedimentation on any geological horizon, and introduces an element of uncertainty in any attempt to generalize the rocks of the Cretaceous. Future observations made in detail in the various counties crossed by the Minnesota and its tributary valleys, will throw very much light on the question of the superposition of the outcropping members that have been seen the past season. The following arrangement is altogether provisional, and is intended to express such superposition as seems to be correct, in the light of the information now at hand.

In descending order.

1. Shale holding gypsum. Big Stone lake.
2. Clay and lignite clay. Crow creek and Redwood Falls.
3. Concretionary marl. Sec. 10, T. 112, R. 34.
4. Potter's clay. New Ulm and T. 110, R. 31.
5. Dauffenbach's fire-brick section. Waraju river, (perhaps the sandstone seen near Red Jacket mills, and at Garden City, belongs here,) (p. 133).
6. Limestone and shale. Winkelmann's quarry, near the mouth of the Waraju river.
7. Sandy shale. Gruebel's section, sec. 2, T. 109, R. 30.
8. Sandstone. Fritz's quarry, sec. 16, T. 109, R. 29.

(k) *The drift, and the general topography of the valley.*

Southwestern Minnesota is characterized by extensive drift deposits. They are spread so evenly over the whole country, that to the eye of the traveler, there are but few important variations from a dead flat. One vast plain seems to spread out on all sides. The view is only obstructed by the narrow timber belts that skirt the valleys of streams, or by the dim haze in which the horizon is itself lost to sight. There are minor irregularities of surface due to the occurrence of gravelly knolls, and to the erosion wrought in the surface by streams of water, but these do not effect materially the general flatness of the whole region.

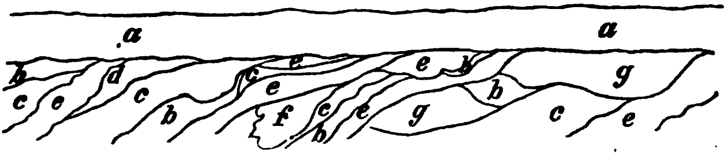
The general composition of the drift is such as to prove its origin to have been due to glaciers. By far the largest part consists of "blue clay," the surface of which is weathered to a yellowish brown to the depth of 15 or 20 feet. This contains gravel stones and boulders, yet it is nearly, and often quite, impervious to water. There are places, especially along the immediate valleys of the principal drainage courses, in which the drift shows a very sandy and gravelly composition, the sand and gravel being deposited in oblique and vanishing layers often to the depth of over fifty feet. This character is very common along the Minnesota from Mendota to Mankato. In this case the main bluffs of the river constituting the principal, and the first, descent from the prairie level, are made up of such stratified deposits, but at a short distance from the river valley, in either direction, the typical unmodified glacier drift returns with its full development.

Besides these instances of stratified gravel and sand in the drift along the immediate river valleys, isolated knolls, or clusters of knolls, composed of the same materials, are sometimes seen rising boldly and conspicuously from the midst of the level prairie, reaching all hights up to a hundred feet or more. Such knolls are sometimes ferriferous, and the gravel is hardly cemented, making a crag, with lumps of impure bog-ore. This ore is not now properly a bog-ore, since it lies on the sides of gravel knolls, one or two hundred feet high, (as on the Maple river, near the Red Jacket mills,) but it is probably a brown hematite. It is very siliceous and not likely to be of economical value. These gravel knolls are sometimes very stony, with northern boulders. Instances of such gravelly, rolling tracts, sometimes of large extent, were noted in the reconnoissance made the past season, as follows: A belt of gravelly knolls runs from the southeast part of Faribault county, to about the center of the same. South from Lura it may be seen across the treeless prairie, and is scantily wooded. It furnishes the only stone useful for building or for foundations, in the form of northern boulders, that can be found throughout a wide extent of country. This gravel belt rises considerably higher than the village of Wells, and probably gives source and head to the artesian overflow of water that there exists. These artesian wells are 115 feet deep, and passed through "blue clay." In about the center of T. 110, R. 32, is a gravelly ridge or succession of drift knolls, running NNW., showing boulders on the surface. The country about is flat and prairie like, covered with the hard-pan, glacier drift, and these knolls are quite a relief to the eye. One can hardly resist the conviction that rock *in situ* must occur somewhere exposed in these knolls, and it is only after a lengthy examination that their true character is established. This ridge runs about a mile east of Sleepy Eye village, and the separate knolls rise 25–40 feet. They lie about on the strike of the red quartzite from New Ulm. The eastern ascent of the Coteau des Prairies enters Minnesota from the NW., in the southwestern part of Yellow Medicine county. East of this ascent about ten miles is a range of gravel hills running nearly N. and S., known at their southern extremity as the "cobble knolls," and at their northern as the "antelope hills." They are composed, as their name indicates, of drift. They have a general extension N. and S., but yet they occur in clusters. Some are quite sharp and abrupt. They rise from 125 to 200 feet above the surrounding prairie. They are smoothly rounded on their summits, and overstrewn with stones and boulders, the latter showing frequent glacial surfaces, even on the top. The grass and weeds are short. The soil is thin. Little gravel stones almost cover the surface. The knolls themselves consist largely, without doubt, of stratified gravel and sand, like a great many others that have been seen in different parts of the drift latitudes, (*Geol. of Iowa*, 1870, *Vol.* 1, *p.* 99; *Geological Survey of Ohio*, under Hardin, Allen, Delaware and Angalaize counties; *Proceedings of the American Association*, 1872, *p.* 164.)

They can be seen to extend six or eight miles, and perhaps are traceable further than that distance. From their tops a magnificent view of the prairies on all sides, and of the Coteau toward the west, can be had. A similar range of drift knolls, but much smaller, was seen about six miles east of this range, running also in the direction N. and S. For reasons that cannot be here enumerated, these gravel ridges are believed to mark the location of the strike of different formations of rock, which, with each other, formed such inequalities in the surface passed over by the great glacier as to fracture the ice profoundly. The streams of water that entered and ran through such cravasses were sufficiently powerful to wash out the clayey portions of the drift, and to arrange the coarser in various stratification. After the withdrawal of the ice, the ridges of gravel mark the general location of such glacial streams. These must not be confounded with other drift ridges that accumulated about the borders of the ice field, known as moraines, of which the Coteau des Prairies seems to be a stupendous example. This remarkable topographical phenomenon was visited at the point where the Winona and St. Peter R. R. meets it. The country from Lac qui Parle to that place is of the same general character as the rest of southwestern Minnesota, but is perhaps freer from sloughs and impassable places than the country in the region of the Silurian rock. It is mostly entirely destitute of timber. The Lac qui Parle and its tributaries are wooded a few miles from the Minnesota, but very sparsely. The timber entirely disappears before reaching the state line. The soil shows in dessicated places the color of the alkaline deposit common on the western plains, becoming more and more abundant toward the west. There is not, enough, however, in this direction within the state of Minnesota to interfere seriously with agriculture or stock raising. The productiveness of the soil seems not to be affected by it. The state line, where the Winona and St. Peter R. R. passes it, is a short distance west of the foot of the *coteau*. At a distance the *coteau* looks like a sudden and marked elevation in the western horizon, rising a great hight above the prairie level. But on reaching it the ascent is found to be gradual, the surface changing from level to rolling or hilly. It is, however, quite abrupt in some places. Good farms can be laid out in neary all parts of the *coteau*, many of them far preferable to farms very highly valued in Ohio, Pennsylvania or New York. There is no timber except along the tributaries of the Lac qui Parle, or other small streams. No rock can be seen *in situ*. Although the railroad affords very frequent cuts in getting through this rolling country, it discloses no known rock as far westward as lake Campeska. This point was particularly examined for over six miles beyond the foot of the *coteau*, with the hope of seeing, in some of the frequent cuts, some indication of a rocky sub-structure. Nothing can be seen but drift. This drift consists of glacial clay. The surface is generally stony, especially on the tops and brows of knolls. Boulders of northern origin are very common. Some large fragments of Silurian limestone were seen, but generally the erratics are granitic. Beyond the first ascent to the knobs of the *coteau*, there is a stretch of less rolling country reaching westward about ten miles, when another still higher range of hills and bluffs appears. The divide, east of the Sioux river, is about fifteen miles west of the state line, at an elevation (by the Winona and St. Peter R. R.) of 1,448 feet above Winona. The ascent from the prairie level, a few miles east of the state line, to the top of the *coteau*, fifteen miles west of the state line, is about 650 feet. On the top of the high country are occasional pleasant lakes. At De Graff, just beyond the state line, in Duell county, Capt. H. H. Herrick burns lime from a dark surface deposit of tufa. This deposit shows impressions of leaves and twigs, and others that appear like rushes. It has some iron stains, and a trace of bituminous matter. It occurs in a number of places on the sides of the knolls, overlying the drift gravel and clay. The general appearance of the surface of the *coteau*, especially near its base, as well as the surface of the *antelope hills*, aside from this surface deposit of tufa, where no water is now running, indicates the former prevalence of a much greater amount of water running over it than now. The boulders and gravel that lie so thick on the top and upper slopes came from the drift, the clayey parts having been carried away by drainage. They are all water worn—though not so but that the boulders sometimes show glacially striated surfaces. That this water was running, and not standing, is evidenced by the tufa, which is only deposited where the atmosphere has access, and by the manner of its occurrence, which is only on the lower slopes of the knolls, though at varying elevations, so far as seen. That there was vegetation near is proved by the leaves and other impressions. That the flow was of short duration, comparatively, is also proved by the universality and uniform character of the drift sheet, and by the lack of rocky outcrops. That the water which deposited the tufa was heavily charged with lime, is proved by the abundance of the deposit and by the coarseness of the inclosed impressions. That it was the same that washed the light drift from the tops and brows of the knolls, is evident from their associated occurrence. That this water was from the retiring glacier, which would inevitably have given off water of a milky color, stained with the fine debris and soluble portions of the rocks it had ground up in its course, is probable.

At St. Paul, near the St. Paul and Sioux City depot, the lower part of the drift is exposed in the excavated river bluff, and is chiefly hardpan clay (or glacier drift). It is conspicuously colored by the shale of the Trenton. The alternating blue shale and copper-colored hardpan drift show successive accretions with such regularity as to attract immediate attention. The bands slope at an angle with the horizon, the drift holding stones and occasionally large boulders, and the shale showing fragments of the bedded lamination not yet obliterated, as well as the usual fragments of *Chaetetes*. At a higher level is a heavy stratum of 25 feet, overlying the foregoing, consisting of gravel and boulders, with many pieces of limestone. The following diagram illustrates the alternation of materials in the drift at this place.

Section in the drift at St. Paul.



a. Gravel with many stones, 25 or 30 feet.
b. Green, shaly clay,
c. Blue, shaly clay,
d. Greenish, shaly clay, } 25 feet above the river. } 25 or 30 feet.
e. Red clay,
f. Brown drift clay, stony,
g. Ashen drift clay,

The bluffs of the Minnesota require a special mention, as they form a very important element, not only in the topography of the southwestern part of Minnesota, but also in any description of the drift of that portion of the state and of the northwest. The level of the river itself, in the summer season, is about 180 feet below the prairie level. The water runs in a very winding course back and forth between the bordering bluffs, the direction of which, not regarding the little angles caused by streams that enter the Minnesota, is very regular. They have some long bends, but in general maintain a remarkable constancy of direction and hight. The bluffs, especially on the north side, are often treeless. The bottom-land itself is very often treeless. On the south side, on the contrary, the river bottoms and the tributary valleys, as well as the slope of the main bluff, are usually wooded. Hence the abruptness, and at the same time, the regularity of slope, direction and outline, are most marked on the north side. These bluffs appear, superficially, to be formed of drift alone above Mankato.

Below Mankato the Silurian rocks are frequently seen exposed in them, causing long terraces at various altitudes. Throughout the whole length of the valley, boulders and stones of a northern origin are seen on the brows of these bluffs, and on their abrupt faces, or on the slopes themselves. They literally cover, sometimes, the Silurian terraces below Mankato, as at Shakopee, Louisville, Ottawa, St. Peter, Mankato and Judson. There is a good illustration of this in the terrace that extends along the east side of the river below Mankato, and also toward South Bend. Where the hard rocks of the Silurian lie deeper, the boulders that otherwise would be visible seem to have sunk into the softer alluvium. They are always met with in penetrating through the alluvium, before striking the rock. They pertained to the general sheet of drift, before the excavation of the valley, and have been left, simply lodged where they may have fallen, sometimes on rock terraces, as the river has slowly carried away the fine clayey portions of the drift. Notwithstanding the drift characters are the only apparent ones, yet there is a canopy of Cretaceous that lies below and gives levelness to the country, hiding the granite and the Silurian rocks. This, mixing with the drift, has greatly augmented its volume beyond what it would have been had harder rocks existed in western and southwestern Minnesota. The existence of this canopy of Cretaceous under the drift is demonstrated by the occasional exposure of such beds in the little ravines that enter the Minnesota. Such beds are intersected by the bluffs themselves, and cut by the river channel, though they are rarely seen in the main bluffs of the river itself. They are hid by the downfalling of the drift. They are so frail themselves that they cannot endure the exposure exhibited by the Silurian limestones, (see page 184,) and hence do not make so manifest terraces in the main bluff. This main bluff, therefore, above Mankato, generally exhibits a regular slope from the prairie to the bottom land. There is sometimes a dim outline of a terrace, or shoulder, in this slope, caused by the unequal demolition of the Cretaceous, but *throughout the valley there are no alluvial terraces that can be attributed to successive reductions in the volume of the river.* Such appearances are visible at New Ulm, as well as at various places below Mankato, at Lower Sioux Agency and at Beaver Falls. At places below Mankato the semblance to constant terraces is due to the effect of the Shakopee limestone on the banks, combined with that of the erosible nature of the underlying Jordan sandstone. Such occasional benches occur at different elevations as far as the Silurian rocks extend. Above that they are due to the Cretaceous. Such occur at Fritz's quarry, a few miles below New Ulm, and at Gruebel's a little further up the river. At the former place a sandstone in the Cretaceous offers a more persistent obstruction to the water, at the latter the terrace is caused by a hard clayey layer over one that is soft and arenaceous. At New Ulm a similar combination of layers may be seen near Dauffenbach's pottery, and in some of the highway cuts for grading the streets running down from the city (which is situated on this terrace) to the R. R. depot. At and below Redstone, and on the opposite side of the Minnesota near the mouth of the Waraju river, a calcareous member of the Cretaceous causes a terrace that rises about 40 feet above the river. This may be seen at Winkelmann's lime kiln and quarry. This terrace is prolonged for several miles below Redstone, on the north side of the river. Its level for some distance is kept up by the red quartzite in outcrop there, but it is doubtless due mainly to the Cretaceous.

At Lower Agency a dim outline of a terrace is seen near the top of the bluff running along about half a mile. Its cause is not discoverable, but may be reasonably regarded some member of the Cretaceous, which can be seen at a lower level in the highway ascending from the ferry to the top of the bluff. It is most observable from a distance, and especially from the north side of the river.

There is a semblance at Beaver Falls, though faint, of two terraces, near the top of the bluff, visible from the opposite side of the river, the upper one having about the position of the faint terrace seen at Lower Sioux Agency.

A terraced condition of the bluffs may be seen at a little lake, caused by the enlargement of the river on T. 120, R. 44, as well as in the bluffs of Lac qui Parle. Here an observation was made that plainly indicates the origin of these benches. They exhibit a slope or dip towards the S. E., running successively down to the bottoms, higher ones occurring in their places. This can plainly be seen from the opposite bluff. This slope is believed to be due, in like manner, to the dip of the rocks of the Cretaceous, though no outcrop of those rocks was seen at that place, the bluffs of the river and of all ravines being smoothly turfed over.

The general hight of the bluffs that enclose Big Stone lake is about 150 feet. They are treeless. Their crests are usually crowned with boulders. The only wood that is seen lies in the "gulches" or short ravines that enter the lake from both sides, and on the islands, some of which are densely wooded with small trees. There is also a thin, continuous row of small trees and shrubs growing on the immediate shore, just above the boulder-row. The bottom-land is usually not marshy but arable, constituting really the most desirable farms. It is first taken by settlers. It is wide enough for one or two good fields. The settler also has his garden and cabin on the low land invariably, and generally at the opening of some one of the little ravines, which afford water without digging*, and protection from the winter winds, as well as convenient fuel. Along this lake, also, are terraces that have a slope or dip striking across the bluffs. One may be seen at Mr. Hurley's, eight miles above the foot of the lake, where it can be traced three or four miles, passing, in that distance, down from union with the prairie level to the bottoms, or so far down as to be blended in the bottom land. A similar vanishing terrace can be seen on the Dakota side, from the bluff on the north side, about twelve miles above the foot of the lake, and midway between Hurley's and Mireau's. Within the space of about three miles, its form can be seen to pass obliquely across the face of the main bluff, from top to bottom, sloping to the east or southeast, and disappearing in the bottom-land. A similar terraced appearance has been described as occurring at Brown's Valley, at the head of Big Stone lake, in connection with an exposure of the Cretaceous (see p.190.) The interval between Big Stone lake and lake Travers (6 miles) has a fall toward Big Stone Lake of six feet. The bluffs approach each other toward the end of the lower lake, but do not unite. A continuous valley, between bluffs of the same form and appearance, and of nearly the same depth, connects the two lakes, giving the impression of one valley instead of two. The short interval constituting the divide between the two lakes is usually without water, but is often overflowed by the spring freshets, when a continuous overland watercourse is established between the gulf of Mexico and Hudson's bay, in British America. It was on one of these occasions that the attempt was made by the late Hon. Joseph R. Brown,* to float a steamboat from the Mississippi to the Red river of the North. Its remains still lie a few miles below the foot of Big Stone lake, where it was wrecked by the unexpected subsidence of the water. There is a very perceptible ascent in the smooth surface of the prairie, toward the north, from the bluffs of Big Stone lake.

---

*The water of the lake is clear and apparently deep.

Several points have been mentioned at which local terraces have been seen along the valley of the Minnesota river. They are occasioned, as has already been said, by the varying resistance of the underlying rock, when undergoing erosion by the river. This is evident from the following facts:

1st. They have a varying elevation, corresponding with the dip of the formation which causes them. They occur near the level of the flood-plain, blending sometimes with it, and also at all hights, to near the top of the bluffs.

2nd. The rock itself can be seen at many of the places where such terraces have been observed; and where it has not been seen, the face of the bluff has been unfavorable for exposure, the surface being smoothly turfed over.

3rd. There are hundreds of miles along the river, on both sides, where no such terraces can be seen, the bare bluffs being smoothly rounded off, and descending at one change from the prairie level to the flood plain. Indeed, the existence of terraces is quite an exceptional thing.

4th. In many cases, the terraces can be referred directly to their cause, layers of varying resistance in the Cretaceous.

5th. Where there is no rock in the river banks, as shown by fresh slides, there is no appearance of terraces.

A short distance below Minnesota Falls the bluff rises, on the north side, 159 feet 1 and ¾ inches above the flood plain, measured by Locke's level.

There is an old valley of the Minnesota river, extending from Lac qui Parl lake eastwardly, and joining the Chippewa valley about five miles above its mouth. This old valley has bluffs like the present river valley, but it is not quite as deep. It is nearly dry, a little water standing only in one or two spots, near the west end, and slowly passing into the Minnesota, the bottom being a level and handsome meadow. The appearance of this valley is rather novel and striking. The slopes are perfectly treeless, and very smooth, luxuriantly covered with grass and ornamented with flowers of various colors. There are short ravines or "gulches," that descend from the prairie, but they do not show a tree, nor a shrub. They are smoothly grassed over, and near their mouths can be crossed with a team. The bluffs themselves, though often overstrewn with stones and coarse gravel, are yet composed of hard drift clay, and are rarely too abrupt to be ascended by a horse. Toward the west end of this old valley the slope from the prairie shows a terrace about thirty feet from the top, but nothing can be seen on it, or even in the excavation cut for the road, but drift materials, though boulders are rather more numerous at that point in the cut than above or below. Below the level of this bench, twenty feet, is a row of springs which keep the rest of the slope wet and soft. The whole appearance, taken together, indicates a stratified condition of the bluff, probably in Cretaceous rock.

---

*It was Capt. John B. Davis, see vol. 1, of the final report. p. 134. (N H. W.—1885.)

THE ECONOMICAL GEOLOGY OF THE MINNESOTA VALLEY.

Coal.

The separation of the region of the Minnesota valley from all the important coal fields, and its comparatively sparse supply of wood for fuel, have directed the attention of the settlers to the possible supply of fuel from the lignites of the Cretaceous. Mention has already been made of the localities of outcrop of this coal (pp. 221-224) with some description of the modes of its occurence. The subject has also been summarized in the letter to the President introductory to this report. There are coal deposits of the Cretaceous age that are likely to prove valuable. They occur at various places, scattered over the western territories. Such coal is also sometimes in the condition of good anthracite. A valuable bed of coal is reported to exist a few miles west of Bismarck, on the Missouri river. There can be but little doubt that such or similar coal accompanies the lower Cretaceous rocks throughout their extent in Minnesota. From the wide extent of territory in which "float coal" is found in the drift, it seems very probable that the Cretaceous ocean at first covered the most of the state. So far as discovered, however, there is not enough coal embraced in the Cretaceous, in this state, to warrant sanguine expectations of its becoming economically useful. This coal occurs in two distinct forms, which may be distinguished, until further investigations demonstrate some error in the designations here given, as *charcoal* and *cannel coal*. The former, while it is the more abundant, is of less value for use as fuel. It is light, and quickly ignites, but it is generally in fine pieces that appear to be matted down with the ash that resulted from the combustion of other portions of the wood from which the coal is derived. It lies in irregular sheets generally, not more than half an thick when pure, but may be disseminated through a thickness of six or eight feet. It is very fragile, hardly bearing transportation. The latter is black, or brown-black, lustrous, compact, rather hard, and presents every aspect of a valuable coal. It occurs in isolated lumps or pockets, in the same beds as the charcoal, but less abundantly. It readily burns, making a hot fire. In the air, when it has become dry, it cracks and crumbles something like quick lime, but not to a powder. It is this which is found in the drift. If it could be found in sufficient quantity, this would be a valuable fuel.

The Iowa coal field, of Carboniferous age, does not reach as far northwest as the valley of the Minnesota.

Iron.

The only iron ore that is known to occur in southwestern Minnesota, is in the form of an imperfectly hydrated peroxyd, or brown hematite. It is, so far as seen, so impure as to constitute a clay iron-stone. It was first mentioned as occurring on the Le Sueur, a mile and a half above its mouth, by Dr. B. F. Shumard (Owens' Report, p. 487), who describes it as "nodules of oxide of iron, and argillaceous iron ore," and gives it a thickness of two feet, remarking that: "The superficial indications render it probable that this bed of iron ore may be both extensive and readily accessible." Similar indications of iron ore were seen the past season at a number of places on the Le Sueur and on the Watonwan. So far as observed, however, the iron seems to be largely, if not entirely, superficial, and pertains to the horizon of separation between the drift and the bedded rock. It is a circumstance of frequent occurrence, in all parts of the northwest, to see ferriferous springs issuing from the gravel of the drift. When such water comes in contact with the air it invariably gives an iron stain to substances over which it runs. If the process be continued a brown hematite iron ore will be formed. It will partake of the impurities of the surface on which it forms. There is besides a considerable thickness of argillaceous iron-stone that coats the Silurian limestones, when they are found overlain by the clays of the Cretaceous (see pages 133 and 179.)

Mineral paint.

At Redwood Falls the kaolin which has resulted from the decomposition of the granite rock, has become stained with iron, and has a brownish or greenish-brown color. It contains, generally, some silicia. From this stained kaolin a good mineral paint has been manufactured. Messrs. Grant and Brusseau commenced the enterprise, and carried it far enough to demonstrate the quality of the product. The manufactured article is said to have been equal to that of Brandon, Vt., but that the cost was so great that, after transportation to St. Paul, it could not be offered in the market as cheaply as the Brandon paint. Their process was very simple. The raw material was obtained from the banks of the Redwood river (p. 168), and was of a rusty-brown color, having also a greenish tinge. It was broken, or crushed to the fineness of corn or wheat. It was then dried in a large pan placed over a fire, and ground by water-power. between two burr stones. In that condition it was ready for use by simply mixing with boiled or raw linseed oil. It was found that lead or ochre could not be used to advantage with it. The lead is said to have "come out and looked like a mildew." The color produced was a reddish umber. By making some selections various lighter shades, of the same general character, were produced. It had a heavy sediment, consisting probably of iron and silica. The quality of the paint is said to have been superior to that from Ohio, and fully equal to that from Brandon, Vt., or Horicon, Wis. The surface of the wood painted, becomes hardened and glazed, but remains smooth.*

It is evident that the best methods for economy were not employed in this enterprise. The mine is situated about a mile from the mill. The rock is easy of access. It cost a sum between three and four dollars per ton to deliver the raw material at the mill. It could probably be done for less than a dollar. The total cost of manufacture ought not to exceed a dollar per hundred, or twenty dollars per ton. The Brandon paint sells for about $40 per ton. These statements are on the authority of Mr. Park Worden, of Minnesota Falls.

---

*The mills of Worden, Ruter & Co., at Redwood Falls, and of Austin & Worden, at Minnesota Falls, are painted with it.

Although the foregoing is the only systematic attempt that has been made to manufacture paint from this substance in the Minnesota valley, it occurs in great abundance at a number of places. It is also found in greater purity, at least with much less quartz and iron, at several other places. Indeed it seems to exist wherever the granitic rocks were buried beneath the ocean of the Cretaceous age, and where the glacier period has not disrupted it.

Quick-lime.

For common quick-lime the region of the upper Minnesota has no suitable stone. Here is a great extent of fertile country, destined to be thickly inhabitated, that must always depend on the Silurian limestones, situated further southeast, for one of its necessary articles of construction. At the present time the only resort is to the limestone boulders that occur in the drift. These are being rapidly gathered up and converted into quick-lime, and will soon entirely disappear. The nearest Silurian quarries capable of being useful for quick-lime are at Mankato. The limestone found in the Cretaceous at New Ulm is also very valuable to this region, but the shaly nature of the stone there will always make it difficult to compete with the lime from Mankato. At the same time the quality of the lime made there renders it applicable to uses of which the Mankato quick-lime is not susceptible. The Mankato lime is of a dark leather color, slacking to a cream color. It has a considerable sand that appears as a sediment. The stone itself is an arenaceous magnesian limestone, and the lime partakes of the nature of those limes. It sets more slowly, burns more easily, and slacks with less heat than the pure limestones. It is useful for brick and stone work, but will not answer for hard finish. For common brown plastering it is very useful. The lime made at New Ulm, on the other hand, is nearly white, and in that respect has the advantage of the Mankato quick-lime. It is very hot, and sets quickly. It is more nearly a pure lime, without magnesia. While it has no sand, as an impurity, it has alumina. Associated with it in the shales of the Cretaceous, is more or less of sulphate of lime in the form of transparent crystals, or selenite. When there is much of this it would materially affect the quality of the lime, giving it somewhat the character of plaster of Paris. Below Mankato there is no lack of good stone for quick-lime. The Shakopee limestone is calcined at a number of places, and outcrops in the banks of the river at a great many others.

At Shakopee the kilns are owned by Baptiste Contre and Isaac Lincoln. They are constant, or "draw kilns." Mr. Contre burns from 17 to 18 hundred barrels per month, and seven months per year. His markets are St. Paul, Minneapolis and St. Cloud, in bulk, two hundred pounds making a barrel. Lime is produced in 30 hours. Wood costs two or two and a half dollars per cord, mixed. He "draws" every six hours.

Mr. Lincoln's kiln is considerably larger than Contre's, and requires from two to four days to produce lime, which sell at the kiln at 75 cents per barrel, twenty-two or twenty-four hundred barrels being produced per month, during seven or eight months of the year. The lime made at Shakopee is of a leather color, sometimes approaching burnt umber.

At Louisville, five miles above Shakopee, Mr. Contre owns another kiln similar to that at Shakopee. Mr. Folsom, of Minneapolis, also has a kiln here which is in operation some portions of the year. The lime produced here is of the same character as that at Shakopee. It is shipped to St. Paul, Minneapolis, and occasionally to Duluth and St. Cloud. Four or five cords of mixed wood, at two and a half dollars per cord are required for each hundred barrels.

John P. Rinshed burns lime from the Shakopee stone, at Ottawa.

About a mile above Kasota Conrad Smith burns lime from the Shakopee limestone, which he sell at one dollar per barrel. Eight or nine cords of mixed wood, at $2.75 per cord, are consumed in producing 100 barrels of lime. He has a draw kiln, but not enough demand to keep it in constant blast. The lime is dark and in nearly all respects like the Shakopee lime. It shows a bluish tint, and, Mr. Smith says, slacks to a *blue-white*, instead of a *yellow-white*, and is preferred for that reason.

Five miles below Mankato George C. Clapp burns a lime that is bluish, or ashen colored. He takes the stone from the upper portion of the Shakopee limestone, and produces a purer lime than any seen in the valley, except that derived from the Cretaceous at New Ulm, which probably comprises over 80 per cent. of pure carbonate of lime. Mixed wood costs here $2.25 per cord, and five or six cords are required for a hundred bushels. (See page 144.)

At Mankato, besides the kilns of Maxfield & Sons, Capt. J. R. Beatty has recently erected a fine draw kiln.

At New Ulm are the lime-kilns of Wm. Winkelmann, Francis Baasen and John Heiman, all burning lime from the Cretaceous. Winkelmann burns about 1800 barrels per year, selling at the kiln, and at New Ulm, for $1.50 per barrel. It here requires 20 cords of mixed wood, at $3.00 per cord, to produce 120 barrels of lime. When freshly burned this lime has very much the same color as the stone, though a little lighter, and slacks white. His kiln stands on the bank of the Minnesota, facing the water, and is built of red quartzite and boulders. Mr. Heiman's kiln holds 150 barrels. Forty cords are needed to burn the kiln well, when filled. Wood costs $2.50 or $3.00 per cord. Lime sells at a dollar or a dollar and fifteen cents per barrel.

Above New Ulm boulders only are used for lime, the kilns being of rude construction. Such are owned by John Edget and Charles Folsom, a short distance below Beaver Falls, and by Andrew Brandin, M. C. Brace, Wm. Davis and brother, ——— Brennan, and R. R. Cory, above that place. Large limestone boulders occur about Redwood Falls. At Yellow Medicine the only lime made is derived from large boulders. Peter Casting burns a little lime from such boulders at Jannetteville, nearly opposite the mouth of the Yellow Medicine. At Granite Falls such boulders, occurring in a little ravine on the land of R. H. Baldwin, have been taken for rock *in situ*. At Mr. Hurley's, eight miles above the foot of Big Stone lake, excellent quicklime is burned from surface boulders, some of which is marketed at Morris, in Stevens county.

Gypsum.

The Cretaceous, at Big Stone lake, holds large crystals of selenite. They lie on the surface of the weatered slope made by the outcropping of a dark shale, and can be gathered in considerable quantity. They are, of course, embraced within the shale. From the existence of sulphate of lime in quantities that render it of economical importance in this formation in various parts of the country, it is presumable that this horizon of outcrop is nearly, or exactly the same; and that at some future time, when sufficiently detailed exploration has been made, it may here prove equally valuable. This place has been already described under the head of the Cretaceous.

Fire clay.

From the Cretaceous, near New Ulm, Mr. Christian Dauffenbach manufactures a good fire brick. The bank from which he takes the clay is fifteen feet above the river. It is of light color and when wet is plastic, but if dry it is hard and difficult to quarry, the use of powder becoming necessary. Horse power is used for his machinery. He has three kilns. This fire brick clay lies below a heavy stratum of white sand. If the white sand that occurs on the Maple, a few miles above its union with the Blue Earth, be the same horizon, this fire clay ought also to be found in the banks of the Blue Earth, a short distance above its mouth. In the settlement and material development of that part of the state, this stratum in the Cretaceous is destined to play an important part. (See page 185.)

Potter's clay.

The Cretaceous also supplies, near the same place, but from a higher stratum, a good potter's clay, which is largely employed at New Ulm and at Mankato. It is owned by Silas Barnard. Mr. H. B. Kaufer, potter at Mankato, regards it as equal to the Carboniferous potter's clay of Ohio. The manufacturers at New Ulm are Winkelmann and Dauffenbach, and John Stoerket. The pottery sells for twelve and fifteen cents per gallon. (See page 186.)

Kaolin or China clay.

It has been said already, in connection with the description of the granites of the valley, that the upper surface of the granites, where protected by the Cretaceous, is overlain by a heavy bed of kaolin clay, resulting from the decomposition of the granite itself. There can be no question but that this deposit, or rather kaolinized granite, since it is decomposed and lies *in situ*, will become of great economical importance. Kaolin is not a common mineral in the drift latitudes. It is common in New Mexico, where the granite is likewise found to be decomposed to the depth of 50 or more feet. It is also found in the Blue Ridge in Virginia, the mountain rock there being changed to impure kaolin to a considerable depth.* Although the purity of the kaolin of the Minnesota valley has not been established by tests, either practical or chemical, it is highly probable that some portions of it, at least, will be found to answer all the purposes for which such clay is generally used.

Building stone.

For construction, the Shakopee limestone holds at present a high position in the regard of builders. Its best estate is not seen at Shakopee but at Ottawa, Kasota and St. Peter. The Mankato quarries are equally as fine. The quarries at Kasota show a deeper shade of pink than those at any of the other foregoing places. The best stone yet furnished by this formation, was that put into the recent enlargement of the asylum at St. Peter. It was taken out near the asylum, and lies in very heavy and regular layers. The quarries at Kasota and at Ottawa have not yet penetrated so deeply into the rock, but will prove to be thicker bedded as they are further wrought. The Episcopal church at St. Peter, made of this stone, has a dark brown cornice, window frames and blinds, and the wall is painted dark-brown, making, although perhaps too somber, yet a very tasty and appropriate edifice for worship. It is low, and of gothic build.

South from Mankato, on the Blue Earth, the Maple and the Watonwan, are several very favorable openings, but there has not been much working in this stone, nor in any other, in that part of Blue Earth county, the dependence being entirely on the quarries at Mankato. There is no reason, however, why the counties of Martin and Faribault may not derive all their stone for walls and for all building, from these southern quarries, saving themselves the labor of transportation six or ten miles. Stone from these quarries was used in the culverts and bridge piers along the new railroad from Mankato to Wells. At Garden City, the exposure in the bed of the river is owned by J. Willard. This outcrop has more the aspect of the Shakopee limestone, at Shakopee, than any other seen,

---

*Compare *Am. Jour. Sci. and Arts*, III, Vol. VII, p. 74.

and will not be found to furnish as handsome layers as the quarries at Mankato.

At Jordan, the sandstone lying next below the foregoing limestone is somewhat employed for foundations, and has been put into some large buildings. It cuts well, and is in blocks about eight inches thick. It is rather too friable, however, for general use.

The St. Lawrence limestone is a very fine stone for building. It is tough, compact, and of a good color. Its bedding is symmetrical and of convenient thickness. The only quarries known are those at St. Lawrence and at Hebron and Judson. The Presbyterian church at Belle Plaine is built of the St. Lawrence stone, the trimmings being from Ottawa. In the Potsdam at Redstone, quarries are opened by Francis Bassen, Wm. Winkelmann and Frederick Meyerding.

Of the granites and associated rocks there is a great variety. There is also every desired facility for quarrying them. The "gray" and "red" granites afford every kind of shading of color, and a great many beautiful combinations of mineral contents and crystallization. The time cannot be far distant when a great many valuable openings will be made in the granites of the Minnesota valley, for the convenience of the southern part of the State and of Iowa.

Brick.

Common red brick, sometimes also brick of a lighter shade, are manufactured from the alluvium of the river at New Ulm and Mankato, as well as at other points further down the valley. The Mankato brick have a high reputation, and are extensively shipped to St. Paul. The makers are Meihofer and Whitrock, Reed and Mather, Jager brothers, and Mr. Schlafle. At New Ulm, Wm. Winkelmann owns the only brickyard. At Jordan, Charles Rodel makes a light-colored brick.

Copper.

At Shakopee a stock company exists for sinking a shaft to explore for copper. It is said that in sinking a common well pieces of native copper were found. The shaft is to be as deep as that well which, when vigorously pumped, is said to afford particles of copper with the water. The limestone was struck at 18 feet. The work has not progressed far enough to indicate the probable result. The limestone at Shakopee being of the same age as Calciferous sandrock of the east, recalls the fact that they both belong to the Quebec group of Canada, which is regarded there as holding the upper copper-bearing rocks of lake Superior.

Timber and fuel.

"The big woods" of Minnesota, consist of a southward prolongation of the timber belt about forty-five miles wide, in the central part of the state. The boundary of this prolongation on either side, is not well marked, the trees gradually becoming thinner and smaller, and more and more restricted to the valleys of streams, till the country is changed to a treeless prairie. The surface itself is more rolling than on the east or west. It may be thus described in general: Beginning a few miles west of Minneapolis the eastern edge of the big woods crosses the Minnesota in a line towards Lakeville, in Dakota county. Continuing in a southerly direction, it passes about a mile east of Cannon City, and of Owatonna, when it makes a short bend to the west and northwest, passing about six miles north of Waseca, and near E. Janesville, in Waseca county. In Blue Earth county it is variously modified by the valleys that are tributary to the Minnesota from the south. Continuing west, about six miles south of South Bend, it turns north, and crosses the Minnesota. Running along the west side of the Minnesota, distant from it about four miles, it begins to bear off to the northwest at St. Peter, and runs in nearly a direct line to Darwin, on the St. Paul and Pacific R. R., bending a little to the east, toward Glencoe, in McLeod county. In passing through these woods from Farmington, in Dakota county, to Shakopee, in Scott county, the following species of trees and shrubs were seen. For ten or twelve miles after entering the woods very few trees are seen, the oak shrubs being the largest and almost the only tree-like vegetation. About half way to the Minnesota river the maple and large elms, bass and iron wood appear.

Oak shrubs. Apparently Quercus ilicifolia. *Wang.*
Hazelnut. Corylus rostrata. *Ait.* (?)
Bur oak. Quercus macrocarpa. *Michx.*
White oak. Quercus alba. *L.*
Wild red cherry. Prunus Pennsylvanica. *L.*
Trembling aspen. Populus tremuloides. *Michx.*
Sumac. Rhus typhina. *L.*
Choke cherry. Prunus Virginiana. *L.*

Wild plum. Prunus Americana. *Marshall.*
White ash. Fraxinus Americana. *L.*
Sumac. Rhus glabra. *L.*
Thorn. Cratægus.
Rose. Rosa blanda. *Ait.*
Juneberry. Amelanchier Canadensis, Var. Botryapium. *Torr. and Gray.*
Round-leaved cornel. Cornus circinata. *L'Her.*
Common elder. Sambucus Canadensis. *L.*
American crab-apple. Pyrus coronaria. *L.*

[The young twigs and the under surface of the leaves are very woolly-pubescent.]

Black cherry. Prunus serotina. *Ehr.*
Frost grape. Vitis cordifolia. *Michx.*
American elm. Ulmus Americana. *L.* (*Pl. Clayt.*) *Willd.*
High bush cranberry. Viburnum Opulus. *L.*
Two or three species of willow. Salix.
Green ash. Fraxinus viridis. *Michx. f.*
Prickly ash. Zanthoxylum Americanum. *Mill.*
Cockspur thorn. Cratægus crusgalli. *L.*
Red raspberry, Rubus stirgosus. *Michx.*
Black currant. Ribes floridum. *L.*
Cottonwood. Populus monilifera. *Ait.*
Large-toothed aspen. Populus grandidentata. *Michx.*
Bass. Tilia Americana. *L.*
Red mulberry. Morus rubra. *L.*
Ironwood. Ostrya Virginica. *Willd.*
Sugar maple. Acer saccharinum. *Wang.*
Soft mapel.' Acer rubrum. *L.*
Alternate-leaved cornel. Cornus alternifolia. *L.*
Bitternut. Carya amara. *Nutt.*
[Rare east of Spring Lake.]
Butternut. Juglans cinerea. *L.*
[Very rare except at Spring Lake and westward.]
Slippery elm. Ulmus fulva. *Michx.*
Staghorn sumac. Rhus typhina. *L.*
Tamarac. Larix Americana. *Michx.*
Box elder. Negundo aceroides. *Moench.*
Wolfberry. Symphoricarpus occidentalis. *R. Br.*
Panicled cornel. Cornus paniculata. *L'Her.*
[The most common species of *Cornus.*]

In ascending the valley the following additional species were seen:

Kentucky coffee tree. Gymnocladus Canadensis. *Lam.*
Red cedar. Juniperus Virginiana. *L.*
Black walnut. Juglans nigra. *L.*
Hackberry. Celtis occidentalis. *L.*

[The hickory grows to about six inches in diameter and then is invariably winter-killed. A tract of many acres is now being cut near St. Peter for fuel, having been killed the past winter. All the trees are small. The hackberry is used for fuel, and for furniture. It is commonest in the heavy timber. The butternut is rarely large. The box-elder sometimes exceeds three feet in diameter.]

Blue beech. Carpinus Americana. *Michx.*
Yellow or gray birch. Betula lutea. *Michx. f.*

[There is said to be a species of locust at St. Peter, but it has not been recognized by the survey. The above species of birch has oblong catkins, and spreading lobes on the scales which are 3 inches long. The lobes are obtuse.]

The trees and shrubs of Big Stone lake.

At Mr. Hurley's, eight miles above the foot of Big Stone lake, on the north side, the following trees and shrubs were seen growing:

Trees—In the order of abundance.

White ash. Fraxinus Americana. *L.*
Bur oak. Quercus macrocarpa. *Michx.*
Basswood. Tilia Americana. *L.*
Elm. Ulmus Americana. *L.* (*Pl. Clayt.*) *Willd.*
Box elder. Negundo aceroides. *Moench.*
[This makes a very fine "maple sugar" and syrup. It is abundant on the islands.]
Cottonwood. Populus monilifera. *Ait.*
Hackberry. Celtis occidentalis. *L.*
Ironwood. Ostrya Virginica. *Willd.*
Soft maple. Acer rubrum. *L.*
Wild plum. Prunus Americana. *Marshall.*
Slippery elm. Ulmus fulva. *Michx.*
Willow. Salix nigra. *Marshall.*

Shrubs.

Grape. Vitis æstivalis. *Michx.* (?)
Gooseberry, (prickly). Ribes Cynosbati. *L.*
Gooseberry, (smooth). Ribes rotundifolium. *Michx.*
Wolfberry. Symphoricarpus occidentalis. *R. Br.*
Black currant. Ribes floridum. *L.*
Prickly ash. Zanthoxylum Americanum. *Mill.*
Red raspberry. Rubus strigosus. *Michx.*
Black raspberry. Rubus occidentalis. *L.*
Sweet elder. Sambucus ?
Sweet viburnum. Viburnum Lentago. *L.*
Red osier dogwood. Cornus stolonifera. *Michx.*
Bittersweet. Celastrus scandens *L.*
Choke cherry. Prunus Virginiana. *L.*
Red rose. Rosa lucida. *Ehr.* (?)
White rose. Rosa blanda. *Ait.*
Virginia creeper. Ampelopsis quinquefolia. *Michx.*
Waahoo. Euonymus atropurpureus. *Jacq.*
Smooth sumac. Rhus typhina. *L.*

[The list of plants of Minnesota by Dr. I. A. Lapham, alluded to in the address to the president, is withheld for future publication.]

INDEX TO THE GEOLOGICAL REPORT.

PAGE.

Adams, Caleb, turf peat owned by 100
Address to the President 75
Amo, Cottonwood county, peat in 102
Antelope hills 193
Aiken, Daniel F., quarry of 131
Artesian well, at Sleepy Eye 186
    at Wells 193
Aschroft and Betteley's process with peat 107
Aubin's process with peat 116
Asylum quarry, at St. Peter 143
Analyses of peat 92, 95
Alkaline deposits, effect on agriculture 194

Barnard, Silas, potter's clay on land of 186, 207
Beason, M., quarry of, near St. Lawrence 153
Belle Plaine, limestone exposure near 141
Belle Plaine salt well 79
    diagram of 86
    conclusions on 85
Beaver Falls, granite at 169
    quicklime at 206
    height of the bluffs near 200
Baasen, Francis, lime burned by 206
Big Stone lake, granite at 175
    jointing and glaciation at 175
    trees and shrubs growing at 212
    connected with lake Travers 199
Bigelow, silt peat at 104
Big Woods, trees and shrubs in 210
    the limits of 210
Birch Coolie, granite at 163
    kaolin in banks of 163
    structure of veins in granite at 163
Blakely, limestone near 141
Bluffs of the Minnesota, description of 196
Blue Earth county, coal in 77
    sandstone in 133
    building stone in 208, 146
Blue Earth river, Shakopee limestone in banks of 145
    excavated valley of 145
Building stone 208
Brick 209
Brooklyn, Hennepin Co., peat at 104
    analysis of peat from 98
Bush, Geo. C., peat on land of 104
Boulders, in the Minnesota valley 197

- Carboniferous coal in Minnesota........ 76
- Carver, Jonathan, expedition by........ 127
- Cannon City, peat near........ 102
- Castle rock, views of........ 137
- Comparisons of peat with wood........ 123
- Chatfield, C. E., an assistant on the survey........ 78
- Case, A., drift crag on land of........ 134
- Carver, Jordan sandstone near........ 147
- Cappel's mill, sandstone near........ 150
- Cobble knolls........ 193
- Cobb river........ 139
- Cottonwood county, peat in........ 103
  - survey for peat........ 88
- Clapp, Geo. C., quarry of........ 144
  - lime kiln of........ 205
- Copper at Shakopee........ 209
  - mine at LeSueur........ 129
- Coal, from the Cretaceous........ 76
  - in the Minnesota valley........ 201
  - from Crow creek........ 187
  - in the Cottonwood valley........ 76
  - in the banks of the Redwood........ 188
  - in the banks of Little Rock creek........ 187
  - Carboniferous, in Minnesota........ 76
- Coteau des Prairies........ 194
  - no rocks seen in........ 194
  - its hight........ 195
  - tufa on, and its origin........ 195
- Contre, Baptiste, kiln of, at Shakopee........ 205
- Cretaceous, exposure at Empire City........ 176
  - at Mankato........ 178
  - on land of Wm. Fritz........ 182
  - at New Ulm........ 186
  - on the Lower Silurian........ 180
  - on the Waraju........ 185
  - at St. Peter........ 177
  - near fort Ridgely........ 187
  - near the Lower Sioux Agency........ 187
  - at Crow creek........ 187
  - at Redwood Falls........ 188
  - near Montevideo........ 189
  - at Big Stone lake........ 190
  - general section of, in southwestern Minnesota........ 191
- Crow creek, granite at........ 166
  - coal at........ 187

- Dakota county, peat in........ 99
  - St. Peter sandstone in........ 135
  - Cretaceous in........ 176
- Dauffenbach, Christian, fire-brick manufactured by........ 207
- Des Moines valley, peat in........ 102
- Delafield, Jackson county, peat in........ 103
- Dooleyville, sandstone near........ 148
- Doheny, D., quarry by........ 155
- Drift, composition of, near Mankato........ 152
  - and general topography of the Minnesota valley........ 192
  - in the Coteau des Prairies........ 185
  - at St. Paul........ 196

Dunn, Wm., peat on land of.................................. 102
Dunham, J. H., quarry by.................................... 154

Eames, H. H., on Carboniferous coal in Minnesota................ 76
Economical geology of the Minnesota valley...................... 201
Elsberg's process of working peat............................... 112
Emmons, Dr. E., description of "the sandstone of Potsdam," by.. 158
Empire City, peat near.. 100
    Cretaceous near... 176
    St. Peter sandstone near.................................... 138
Euomphalus, in the Shakopee limestone........................... 147

Fairmount, peat manufactured near............................... 102
Farmington, quarry near... 132
Faribault county, peat in.............................76, 119, 110
    possible Carboniferous coal in.............................. 77
Featherstonhaugh's ascent of the Minnesota...................... 129
Fire-clay... 207
Flynn, Birney, Cretaceous coal on land of....................... 188
Folsom, S. M., limestone on land of............................. 146
Fort Snelling, composition of bluff............................. 128
Float coal, its origin.. 76
French, Mr. —, peat on the land of 101
Frankhouse, F., granite near residence of....................... 175
Fritz, Wm., section of Cretaceous sandstone, on land of......... 182
Freeborn county, possible coal in............................... 77
Furber, P. P., an assistant on the survey....................... 78

Garden City, Shakopee limestone at.............................. 146
    sandstone at.. 150
Geology of the Minnesota valley................................. 127
Goodwin, John, quarry by.. 154
Granites of the Minnesota valley................................ 160
    at New Ulm.. 161
    near the Lower Sioux Agency 162
    at Birch Coolie... 163
    at the mouth of the Redwood................................. 167
    at Beaver Falls... 169
    at Vicksburg.. 169
    at Minnesota Falls.. 170
    at Montevideo... 171
    in the ancient Minnesota valley............................. 173
    at Lac-qui-Parle.. 173
    at Frankhouse's 175
    at Movius'.. 175
    at Big Stone lake... 175
    at Sauk Rapids and St. Cloud................................ 176
    at Crow creek... 166
Glacier marks, direction of..................................159, 175
Gruebel, John, section of Cretaceous on land of................. 182
Gray, ———, peat on land of...................................... 99
Gravel knolls, isolated, their occurrence and cause............. 196
Gypsum, in the Cretaceous....................................190, 202

Haight, process of working peat................................. 119
    peat on the land of... 102
Heiman, John, lime made by...................................... 206
Hodge's process of working peat................................. 118

Hall, A. J., peat on the land of.......... 103
Haggard, John, turf peat on the land of.......... 105
Hennepin county, peat in.......... 104
Herrick, Captain H. H., tufa burned for lime by.......... 195
Hewitt, Mr., quarry of.......... 153
Hebron, St. Lawrence limestone at.......... 154
Hickory, winter-killed in the Minnesota valley.......... 211
Houghton, George, coal on land of.......... 188
Hornblendic schist.......... 173
Hurley's lime kiln, at Big Stone lake.......... 206
Hurricane Bend, Shakopee limestone at.......... 144

Imus, Miss Ellen, peat on the land of.......... 102
Iron ore..........133, 202

Jackson county, surveyed for peat.......... 88
  peat in.......... 103
Jessenland, limestone at.......... 155
Jordan sandstone, its age.......... 140
  at Jordan described.......... 149
  regarded as Potsdam by Dr. Shumard.......... 147
  at Ottawa.......... 149
  at Minneopa falls.......... 150
  at Red Jacket mills.......... 150
Johnson, Arthur, turf peat on the land of.......... 104
Judson, St. Lawrence limestone visible at..........139, 152

Kasota, Le Sueur county, peat marsh in.......... 101
  Shakopee limestone at.......... 139
Koalin, at Birch Coolie.......... 163
  at Redwood Falls.......... 167
  at Minnesota Falls.......... 170
  its origin.......... 207
Keating's geological observations.......... 127
King, W. V., peat owned by.......... 105
King, E. O., Cretaceous coal on the land of.......... 188
Knight, Albert, quarry of, in Shakopee limestone.......... 144

Lac-qui-Parle lake, granite at.......... 173
La'Framboise place, granite at.......... 161
Langdon, B. S., peat on the land of.......... 104
Le Sueur county, peat in.......... 101
Le Sueur river, Shakopee limestone on.......... 139
Leavitt, T. H., on peat at lake Superior.......... 122
Leavitt's process of working peat.......... 113
Little Rock Creek, Cretaceous in the banks of.......... 187
Loniacheck's quarry at Jordan.......... 149
Long, Major S. H., expedition of, in 1823.......... 27
Lone Rock, in Dakota county.......... 5
  in Rock county.......... 1
Louisville, section of rocks at.......... 14
Lower Sioux Agency, Cretaceous at.......... 18
Lura Station, peat deposits near.......... 10
Lime, at Mankato.......... 20
  at Shakopee.......... 20
  at New Ulm.......... 20
  from boulders.......... 20
Lincoln, Isaac, lime kiln of.......... 205

- Mankato, section of rocks at, 145
  - observations on the Cretaceous rocks at, 179
  - lime kilns at, 206
- Marshner's carding factory, granite at, 162
- Maple river, Shakopee limestone on, 139
- Minnesota valley, the geology of, 127
  - Trenton limestone in, 131
  - the economical geology of, 201
- Minnesota Falls, granite at, 170
  - koalin at, 170
- Mineral paint, 168, 203
- Minneopa falls, Jordan sandstone at, 150
- Mountain lake station, peat near, 102
- Mower county, possible coal in, 77
- Moss peat, 89
- Moyer, S. R., granite reported by, 173
- Movius, granite near residence of, 175
- Montevideo, terrace near, 189
  - granite near, 171
- Murphy, James, peat on the land of, 100

- New Ulm, Potsdam sandstone near, 156
  - conglomerate near, 158
  - granite near, 161
  - Cretaceous rocks at, 186
  - character of lime at, 204
- Nobles county, survey for peat, 88
  - peat in, 104
- Norton, E. T., drift-crag on land of, at Garden City, 134

- Ochre, in the Cretaceous, 190
- Ottawa, sections of rocks at, 131
  - Jordan sandstone at, 143

- Paint rock, description of, at Redwood Falls, 168
- Peat deposits, survey of, ordered, 75
  - objects of the survey of, 88
- Peat, varieties of, 89
  - slough, 89
  - side-hill, 90
  - turf, 90
  - quality of peats, in Minnesota, 91
  - the working of, 106
  - what has been done in, 125
  - where it exists in Minnesota, 99
  - raw or manufactured, 125
  - practical conclusions on, 126
  - analyses by Dr. P. B. Rose, 92
    - Prof. S. F. Peckham, 95
  - method of testing for, 99
- Peckham, Prof. S. F., report of chemical analyses by, 95
- Post, Wm. H., granite near, 162
- Potter's clay, 186, 207
- Phillips, Wm., quarry by, 154
- Potsdam sandstone, 156
  - at Sioux Falls, 160

Quartzite, dip of at Redstone.................................... 158
on the land of the St. Paul and Sioux City R. R........ 159
in the valley of Rock river............................ 160
Quinby, H. F., peat on the land of................................ 102
Quincy, Olmstead county, Shakopee limestone at.................. 140

Rae process of working peat.. 114
Rapidan Mills, Jordan sandstone at................................ 150
Red Jacket Mills, Shakopee limestone at......... 146
Jordan sandstone at........... 150
Redstone, dip of the quartzite at.................................. 158
Redwood valley, coal in... 76, 188
granite and kaolin in.............................. 167
Rice county, peat in.. 102
Rinshed, John P., quarry of.. 141
Robert's process of working peat................................... 107
Robinson, J., peat on land of...................................... 102
Rochussen, I. J., location of quartzite by......................... 160
Rock river, quartzite in the valley of............................. 160
Rose, Dr. P. B., analyses of peat by.............................. 92

Salt springs at Belle Plaine, geological relations of.......... 86
Salt well at Belle Plaine.. 79
Salt spring lands, transferred to the board of regents............ 75
amount of.. 77
Savage, Rev. E., peat on the land of....... 103
Section of the Fort Snelling bluff................................. 128
in the Trenton near Farmington........................ 132
in Rapidan... 133
at Shakopee, in Scott county........................... 140
at Louisville.. 140
at Ottawa.. 141
at Mankato... 145
in Jordan sandstone............................... 148, 152
at Jordan... .. 149
at St. Lawrence................................. 153
in the Cretaceous at Fritz's quarry.................... 182
at John Gruebel's................. 182
at Winkelmann's.... 184
on the Waraju.. 185
general section at New Ulm............................ 186
well drilled at Sleepy Eye.......... 186
general section of the Cretaceous in southwestern Minnesota 191
of the drift at St. Paul............................. 196
Schmidt, peat on the land of....................................... 105
Sioux Falls, quartzite at... 160
Silurian rocks, conclusions respecting, at Mankato................ 179
Shumard, Dr. B. F., survey by...................................... 130
Shell marl, below peat... 92
Shale, isolated deposits of, in sandstone........................ 134, 150
Shale oil, cost of... 126
Shakopee, limestone at.. 138
copper at.. 209
Shakopee limestone, at Shakopee.............. 138
in Rapidan... 139
at Louisville...................................... 140
at Ottawa.. 141
at Mankato... 145

- Shakopee limestone,on the Blue Earth........ 145
  - on the Maple........ 146
  - at Garden City........ 146
- St. Croix sandstone........ 155
- St. Cloud, peat near........ 105
  - peat from, analysed........ 98
- St. Peter, limestone at........ 143
  - peat near........ 101
  - Cretaceous near........ 177
- St. Peter sandstone........ 132
  - near Empire City........ 138
  - views of, in Dakota county........ 136
  - in Rapidan........ 132
- St. Lawrence limestone........ 139, 152
  - at Judson........ 153
- St. Paul, section in drift at........ 196
  - peat near........ 105
- Slough peat........ 89
- *Sphagnum palustre*........ 90
- Smith, Conrad, kiln of........ 205
- Sleepy Eye, artesian well at........ 186
- Soule, A. A., peat on the land of........ 102
- Synclical in Shakopee limestone........ 147

- Taggart, S. O., peat on land of........ 102
- Talcott lake, peat near........ 104
- Taylor, F. G., peat on land of........ 104
- Thompson, Clark W., peat on land of........ 101
- Terraces in the Minnesota valley........ 197, 200
  - at New Ulm........ 186
  - six miles below Montevideo........ 189
- Timber and fuel........ 210
- Trap dikes at Granite Falls........ 171
- Trenton limestone and shales........ 131
- Trees and shrubs in the Big Woods........ 210
  - at Big Stone lake........ 212
- Turf........ 91

- Value of peat for fuel........ 123
- Van Oser's creek, sandstone in........ 148
- Valley Springs, quartzite near........ 160
- Vermillion valley, peat in........ 99
  - terraces in........ 176
- Vicksburg, granite near........ 169
- Volk, John, quarry by........ 149

- Warajo river, limestone near the mouth of........ 183
  - potter's clay in banks of........ 186, 207
  - marl on........ 184
- Watonwan river, Shakopee limestone on........ 146
- Ward, A. L., peat manufactured by........ 102
- Whittier, Albert, peat on the land of........ 99
- Williams, Dr. C. D., on transportation of shale oil........ 125
- Winchell, A., on the Belle Plaine salt well........ 80
- Winchell, N. H, on the Belle Plaine salt well........ 82
- Windom, peat near........ 102
- Winkelmann's lime kiln and quarry........ 184
  - lime made by........ 206
- Wells, peat near........ 101
  - manufacture of peat near........ 120
  - artesian wells at........ 193

557.9
Mi

UNIV. OF MICH.
MAY 18 190

THE

GEOLOGICAL AND NATURAL HISTORY

SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

THE THIRD ANNUAL REPORT

FOR THE YEAR 1874.

[SECOND EDITION.]

BY N. H. WINCHELL, STATE GEOLOGIST.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY DEC. 31, 1874

MINNEAPOLIS:
HARRISON & SMITH, PRINTERS.
1894.

THE
GEOLOGICAL AND NATURAL HISTORY
SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

THE THIRD ANNUAL REPORT
FOR THE YEAR 1874.

[SECOND EDITION.]

BY N. H. WINCHELL, STATE GEOLOGIST.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY Dec. 31, 1874.

MINNEAPOLIS:
HARRISON & SMITH, PRINTERS.
1894.

[NOTE—This edition is identical with the original, excepting the correction of typographical errors. As this report was published originally only as part of the regents' report, it has the paging of that report.—*N. H. W.*]

ADDRESS.

To the President of the University:

The regular work of the geological and natural history survey of the state was interrupted during the season of 1874. The condition of the new buildings at the University has been such that no chemical work could be satisfactorily done, and very little has been accomplished. The same cause deranges the geological laboratory and delays the unpacking and examination of specimens. Not a room has been available during the season for opening and unpacking boxes.

At the close of the spring term in the University, the board of regents granted the request of Col. Wm. Ludlow, U. S. T. E., and allowed the departure of the state geologist with the expedition of general G. A. Custer to the Black hills of Dakota. He was absent during July and August. This again broke in upon plans that had been laid for a vigorous prosecution of the field-work of the state survey. The regents, however, rightly regarded the exploration and development of the Black hills of Dakota as largely tributary to the state of Minnesota, while the accessions that would be made to the University museum were likely to more than repay the expense and time required. The young state of Minnesota also may claim the honor of sending the first geologist through the unexplored interior of the Black hills, so long involved in mysterious and legendary uncertainty. A report on the geology of the route and of the Black hills of Dakota is herewith transmitted.* The problems that have long been debated by geologists concerning the relative ages of certain sandstones of the Lower Silurian receive some light by the geological examination of the Black hills, and some of the detailed sections of those rocks, given in the accompanying report, are exceedingly interesting. Every facility, except a sufficiency of time, was placed at my disposal by Gen. G. A. Custer, through Col. Ludlow, for the prosecution of the geological examinations. The expedition, being restricted to sixty days, and with provisions only for that length of time, was compelled to pass over the ground faster than was conducive to a full knowledge of the geology of the region traversed.

---

*By order of the Board of Regents this report has been transmitted to Col. Wm. Ludlow.

After my return from the Black hills, delayed somewhat by sickness in my family, and by the necessary preliminary work for the accompanying report, I had only time to complete the examination of two counties. I chose Freeborn and Mower, those being next the state of Iowa and within the possible coal area of Minnesota. A local interest had been excited in Freeborn county by the development of a shaft at Freeborn which was reported to go through several feet of good coal. This region has been thoroughly explored and the full details are contained in the accompanying report on that county. I am greatly obliged to Wm. Morin, Esq., of Albert Lea, for guidance and assistance in the survey of Freeborn county, and to Hon. A. A. Harwood, of Austin, for the same in making the survey of Mower county.

Various parties have submitted to the survey, for analysis, ores from the northern part of the state, and have applied for assistance in exploring those portions of the northern part of the state that are known to afford indications of the precious and useful metals. In some cases these samples of ores have been received and analyses have been procured, through the agency of the survey, by chemists abroad; but it has not been possible to afford any guidance to persons applying for assistance in field exploration. It is exceedingly desirable that the chemical laboratory, now nearly completed, be made available for the work of the survey, as soon as possible.

In the early part of the season, a pamphlet on *Peat for domestic fuel*, was prepared, at my request, by Prof. S. F. Peckham, the chemist of the survey, for general distribution. Several hundred copies have been gratuitously distributed to those citizens of the state interested in the subject of peat fuel, and it was printed in full by the *Farmer's Union*, the principal agricultural newspaper of the state. It was hoped thereby to give the needed information concerning the nature and outward characters of peat, to the farmers and others living in the treeless districts, that would enable them to discover and to make use of it as a common fuel where it exists, if they should feel so disposed.

During the season of 1873 but very little good peat was found in the counties of Jackson, Cottonwood and Nobles; but in the examination of Freeborn county, during the past season, inexhaustible quantities of the best qualities of fibrous peat were met with. Mower county contains very little.

Very respectfully,
N. H. WINCHELL.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
Minneapolis, Dec. 31, 1874.

REPORT ON THE GEOLOGY OF FREEBORN COUNTY.

Situation and area.

Freeborn county borders on the state of Iowa, and is very near the center of the southern boundary line of Minnesota. It has the form of a rectangle, having a length, east and west, of five government towns, and north and south, a width of four, making an area of 720 square miles, or 449,235.63 acres, after deducting the areas covered by water.

Natural drainage.

With the exception of Freeborn, Hartland, and Charleston townships, the surface drainage is toward the south and southeast. The county embraces the head waters of the Shellrock and Cedar rivers of Iowa, and those of the Cobb river, which joins the Minnesota toward the north. Hence it lies on the watershed between two great drainage slopes. For the same reason none of its streams are large; the Shellrock, where it leaves the state, being its largest. The streams have not much fall, but afford some water-power, which has been improved in the construction of flouring mills. Such are found at Albert Lea and at Twin Lakes. In these cases the body of water confined in the upper lake serves as the water-head and reservoir, the mills being constructed near their outlets. There is also an available water-power at Shellrock village, but its use would cause the flooding of a large body of land adjoining the river.

Surface features.

The surface of the county, although having no remarkable and sudden changes of level, yet is considerably diversified as a rolling prairie, more or less covered with sparse oaks and oak bushes. The plats of the United States surveyors,

on file in the register's office at Albert Lea, indicate considerably more area covered with timber, or as "oak openings," when the county was surveyed by them, than is now the case. The following minutes are based on an examination of their plats, and will give a pretty correct idea of the distribution of the oak openings and the prairie tracts throughout the county.

London. The most of this township is prairie, a belt of oak openings and timber entering it from the north, about three miles wide, in the center of the town, and extending to the center, bearing off to the SE., and terminating in sec. 24. The magnetic variation throughout the town was, when surveyed (1854) from 8° 20′ to 10° 42′, the greatest being in secs. 33 and 34.

Oakland. A little more than a half of this township consists of oak openings, an area in the eastern half only being prairie, with a small patch also in sec. 31. Two large sloughs cross the town, one through sections 30, 31 and 32, and the other through sections 4, 5, 8, 7 and 18. Magnetic variations about 9°, varying from 8° 12′ to 10° 8′, in 1854.

Moscow. Nearly the whole of this township is taken up with oak openings and marshes. Turtle creek crosses it from NW. to SE. A large portion of the northern half of the town is a floating marsh, containing a great quantity of peat. Mag. var. from 9° 20′ to 10° 20′, in 1854.

Newry. There is a small patch of prairie in the northeast part of this town, secs. 1, 12, 13 and 24, and a small area in secs. 20 and 21. There is another in the NW. corner, embracing sections 6 and 7, and parts of 5, 8 and 18. The rest is openings and marsh, particularly of marsh in the SW. corner. Mag. var. 8° 20′ to 9°.40′, in 1854.

Shellrock. A belt about 1½ miles wide along the west side of this town, accompanying the Shellrock river, constitutes the only openings or timbered portion, the rest being prairie. This district also comprises some marsh, viz., secs. 19 and 31. Th first house in the county was built in sec. 33 in this town, in the SW. quarter. Mag. var. 8° 45′ to 10° 15′ in 1854.

Hayward. A wide belt of prairie occupies about two-thirds of this town, running N. and S. through the center. On the west of this is a rolling tract embracing a portion of lake Albert Lea and some tributary marshes, while on the east a large marsh covers sections 12 and 14, and portions of 13, 11, 15, 22 and 23. There is also a prairie tract in sec. 1.

Riceland. This township is about equally divided between prairie, openings and marsh, the first being in the south central portion, the second in the northwest and central, bordering on Rice lake, and the marsh in the northeastern part of the town. Mag. var. from 8° 45′ to 10° 30′.

Geneva. There is but little prairie in this town, the southern portion being comprised in a large marsh which is crossed by Turtle creek, the outlet of Walnut lake. The central portion is occupied by oak openings which also extend to the NW. and W. boundaries. The prairie is in the northern and eastern portions. Mag. var. 9° 10′ to 10° 23′ in 1854.

Freeman. This township comprises no prairie. It is mostly devoted to oak openings, but a series of marshes, drained by the tributaries of the Shellrock, that cross it toward the SE. take up a considerable area in the central and eastern portions. Mag. var. 9° to 10° 40′ in 1854, the greatest being in sec. 31.

Albert Lea. This township is nearly all taken up with oak openings, but a few small marshes, trending NW. and SE., are found in different portions. There is also a small patch of prairie in sec. 6, and another in the SE. corner of the county. The western arm of Albert Lea lake, through which the Shellrock river runs, is in the central and eastern part of this town, and adds greatly to the variety and beauty of its natural scenery. Pickerel lake is also partly in this township. Mag. var. 8° 46′ to 10° 08′ in 1854.

Bancroft. A little more than one-fourth of this township is prairie, situated in the center and southwestern portions. The rest of the town is covered with oak openings. The source of the Shellrock is in the NW. part of this town. Mag. var. 8° 50′ to 10° 15′ in 1854.

Bath. An area of openings comprising about half of this town in the central and eastern portion, is nearly surrounded by a belt of prairie. Small marshes are scattered through the town. Mag. var. 8° 45′ to 10° 35′ in 1854.

Nunda. This town is also mostly openings, but an area of prairie occurs in secs. 4, 5, 9 and 3, and another lies southwest of Bear lake. Considerable marsh land is embraced within the area of openings. Mag. var. in 1854 10° 5′ to 12° 15′, the latter in sec. 31.

Pickerel. The west half of this township is prairie, and the eastern is devoted to openings with lakes and marshes. Mag. var. 9° 45′ to 11° 50′ in 1854.

Manchester. About one-half of this town is prairie, the remainder being oak openings. The prairie lies in the northwestern and southern portions. Small marshes occur both in the prairie and openings. Mag. var. 10° to 12° 15′ in 1854.

Hartland. This town is almost entirely composed of prairie, the only timber being about Mule lake, and in the southern portions of secs. 34, 35 and 36. There is not much marsh in the town. Mag var. 9° 45′ to 12° 25′ (1854).

Mansfield This town is nearly all prairie, a small patch of oak openings occurring in secs. 3, 10 and 15. The NW. part of the township is rolling and the SE. is level and wet with marshes. Mag. var. 11° 30′ to 13° 40′ (1858).

Alden. This town is all prairie, with scattered small marshes. Mag. var. 11° 27′ to 13° 15′ (1854).

Charleston. This town is all prairie, except a narrow belt of sparce timber about Freeborn lake. Long narrow marshes spread irregularly over the central and eastern portions of the town. In the SE. quarter of sec. 36 there is also a small area of sparse timber. Mag. var. 11° 13′ to 13° (1854).

Freeborn. In this town there is a little sparse timber about the north ends of Freeborn and Spicer lakes, and a little adjoining Spicer lake on the east. There are also some openings in sec. 26, where the arms of the marsh protect the timber from the prairie fires. The rest is of prairie with spreading marshes. Mag. var. (1854) 11° 55′ to 12° 50′.

North and west of Albert Lea is a very broken and rolling surface of sparse timber. This tract consists of bold hills and deep valleys wrought in the common drift of the country. On some of these hills are granitic boulders, but the country generally does not show many boulders. The drift is generally. in this broken tract, a gravelly clay. In some of the street cuts for grading a gravel is found, containing a good deal of limestone.

A great many of the marshes of the county are surrounded with tracts of oak openings, a fact which indicates that the marshes serve as barriers to the prairie fires. Such marshes are really filled with water, and quake with a heavy peat deposit on being trod on. They are very different from those of counties further west, as in Nobles county, which, in the summer, are apt to become dried, and are annually clothed with a growth of coarse grass, which feeds the fires that pass over the country in the fall. As a general rule, but little or no grass grows on a good peat marsh.

The contour of the surface of the country is further exemplified by the following elevations obtained from lines run by railroad surveys. They were furnished by Wm. Morin, Esq., of Albert Lea.

Elevations taken from a preliminary survey made in July, 1870, through Freeborn county, Minn., by Wm. Morin:

Commencing on the state line (south), 930 feet east of the ¼ stake, on south side of section 32, T. 101, R. 20; thence north to Shellrock City, on sec. 6, T. 101, R. 20; thence N. 40° W. to Albert Lea, on sec. 8, T. 102, R. 21; thence N. 40° E. to Geneva, on sec. 7, T. 104, R. 20, and thence N. to the Steele county line.

			Above ocean. Feet.
Station No. 1	At point 930 feet E. of ¼ stake, on sec. 32, T. 101, 20.		1,232
" 100			1,241
" 190			1,219
" 199-10	Water in Shellrock river, east bank		1,217
" 200-80	" " " west bank		1,217
" 202			1,232
" 300	Shellrock City (town plat)		1,241
" 494	Summit between Shellrock and Albert Lea.	11 miles	1,333
" 654	Albert Lea (town plat)		1,263
	Lake Albert Lea		1,221
" 1064	Summit at Clark's Grove		1,334
	Geneva lake (or Walnut lake)		1,234
" 1330	At Steele county line, sec. 5, T. 104, 20		1,226

Elevations obtained from O. D. Brown, Esq., engineer on S. M. R. R.:

	Above the ocean. Feet.
Milwaukee and St. Paul R. R.—Top of rail at Ramsey	1,233
Water in Turtle creek—4 miles west of "	1,204
Oakland station—6 miles " "	1,286
Big marsh—12 miles " "	1,265
Lake Albert Lea—20 miles " "	1,221
Grade at Albert Lea depot	1,240
Jenning's summit—5 miles west of Albert Lea	1,342
Grade at Alden station—10½ miles west of Albert Lea	1,281
" " Wells " 20 " " " "	1,171

The country thus appears to contain some of the highest land in the state. Some of the counties farther west, particularly Nobles, and Mower county on the east, rise from one to two hundred feet higher. There is also a high and rolling tract in the north central portion of the state, covering Otter Tail county, which rises to about the same level, as shown by railroad profiles. The greater portion of the state, however, lies several hundred feet lower than Freeborn county.

Soil and timber.

Throughout the county the soil depends on the nature of the drift combined with the various modifying local circumstances. There is nothing in the county that can properly be designated a "*limestone soil,*" or a "*sandstone soil.*" The materials of which it is composed have been transported perhaps several hundred miles, and are so abundantly and universally spread over the underlying rock that they receive no influence from it. The subsoil is a gravelly clay, and in much of the county that also constitutes the surface soil. In low ground this of course is disguised by a wash from the higher ground, causing sometimes a loam and sometimes a tough, fine clay; the latter particularly in those tracts that are subject to inundation by standing water. On an undulating prairie, with a close clay, or clayey subsoil, such low spots are apt to have a black, rich loam or clayey loam, the color being derived from the annual prairie fires that leave charred grass and other vegetation to mingle with the soil. The same takes place on wide tracks of flat prairie. In these there may be but rarely a stone of any kind—indeed that is usually the case—but below the immediate surface, a foot or eighteen inches, a gravelly clay is always met with. This at first doubtless formed the soil, the disintegrating forces of frost, rain and wind, combined with the calcining effects of the prairie fires, having reduced the stones and gravel to powder, leaving a finely pulverized substance for a surface soil. In a rolling tract of country, while the low ground is being filled slowly with the wash from the hills, and furnished with a fine surface soil, the hills are left covered with a coarse and stony surface soil. For that reason a great many boulders are sometimes seen on the tops of drift knolls. Along streams, and about the shores of lakes, the action of the water has carried away the clay of the soil and often eaten into the original drift, letting the stones and boulders tumble down to the bottom of the bank, where they are often very numerous. Along streams they are sometimes again covered with alluvium,—indeed are apt to be—but along the shores of lakes they are kept near the beach line by the action of winter ice. After a lapse of time sufficient, the banks themselves become rounded off, and finally turfed over or covered with trees. These lakes sometimes extend their limits laterally, but slowly become shallower.

This county is furnished with a number of very beautiful lakes. These are generally in the midst of a rolling country, and some of their banks are high.

In the survey of the county the following species of trees and shrubs are noticed growing native:

Burr oak. Quercus macrocarpa *Michx.*
Red oak. Quercus rubra *L.* (This species is not satisfactorily identified.)
Aspen. Populus tremuloides *Michx.*
Elm. Ulmus americana (*Pl. clayt.*) *Willd.*
Black cherry. Prunus serotina *Ehr.*
American crab. Pyrus coronaria *L.*
Bitternut. Carya amara *Nutt.*
Black Walnut. Juglans nigra *L.*
Wild plum. Prunus americana *Marsh.*
White ash. Fraximus americana *L.*
Butternut. Juglans cinerea *L.*
Hazlenut. Corylus americana *Walt.*
Frost grape. Vitis cordifolia *Michx.*
Bittersweet. Celastrus scandens *L.*
Smooth sumach. Rhus glabra *L.*
Red raspberry. Rubus strigosus *Michx.*
Rose. Rosa blanda *Ait.*
Wolfberry. Symphoricarpus occidentalis *R. Br.*
Bass. Tilia americana *L.*
Prickly ash. Zanthoxylum americanum *Mill.*
Cornel. (Different species.)
Willow. (Different species.)
Gooseberry (prickly). Ribes cynosbati *L.*
Thorn. Crataegus coccinea *L*
Hackberry. Celtis occidentalis *L.*
Sugar maple. Acer saccharinum *Wang.*
Cottonwood. Populus monilifera *Ait.*
Soft maple. Acer rubrum *L.*
Cockspur thorn. Crataegus crus-galli *L.*
Slippery elm. Ulmus fulva *Michx.*
Black ash. Fraximus sambucifolia *Lam.*
High-bush cranberry. Viburnum opulus *L.*
Choke-cherry. Prunus virginiana *L.*
Shagbark hickory. Carya alba *Nutt.* (On M. L. Bullis' land in Moscow township, near the county line.—*A. A. Harwood.*)

Besides the foregoing, the following list embraces trees that are frequently seen in cultivation in Freeborn county:

Spruce.
Red cedar. Juniperus virginiana *L.*
Mountain Ash. Pyrus americana *D. C.*
Balsam poplar. Populus balsamifera *L*, *Var.* candicans.
Lombardy poplar. Populus dilatata *Ait.*
Locust. Robinia pseudacacia *L.* [The locust dies out in Freeborn county.]
Hackmatack. Larix americana *Michx.*
Arbor vitae. Thuja occidentalis *L.*

The geological structure.

There is not a natural exposure of the underlying rock in Freeborn county. Hence the details of its geological structure are wholly unknown. It is only by an examination of outcrops in Mower county and in the adjoining counties of Iowa, together with a knowledge of the general geology of that portion of the state, that anything can be known of the geology of Freeborn county. In the absence of actual outcrops of rock within the county, there are still some evidences of the character of the rock that underlies the county, in the nature and position of the drift materials. There is, besides, a shaft that has struck the Cretaceous in the northwestern portion of the county, in exploration for coal.

Although the drift is heavy it lies in such positions that it shows some changes in the surface of the bed rock. It is a principle pretty well established that any sudden great alternation in the rock from hardness to softness, as from a heavy limestone layer to a layer of erosible shales, or from shales to more enduring sandstone, each stratum having a considerable thickness, is expressed on the drift by changes from a rough and rolling, more or less stony surface to a flat and nearly smooth surface, or *vice versa*. It sometimes happens that the non-outcropping line of superposition of one important formation with another, either above or below, can be traced across a wide tract of drift covered country by following up a series of gravel knolls or ridges that accompany it, or by some similar feature of the topography. Again, the unusual frequency of any kind of rock in the drift at a certain place, especially if it be one not capable of bearing long transportation, is pretty good evidence of the proximity of the parent rock to that locality.

Applying these principles to Freeborn county, we find throughout the county a great many boulders of a hard, white, compact magnesian limestone, that have been extensively burned for quicklime. These attracted the attention of the early settlers, and before the construction of the Southern Minnesota railroad supplied all the lime used in the county. Although these boulders are capable of being transported to a great distance, their great abundance points to the existence of the source of supply in the underlying bed-rock. In the drift also are frequently found pieces of lignite, or Cretaceous coal, which cannot be far transported by glacier agencies. This also indicates the existence of the Cretaceous lignites in Freeborn county. In regard to changes in the character of the natural surface, we seen a evenly flat and prairie surface in the western tier of towns, and in the southeastern part of the county, and a hilly and gravelly tract of irregular shape in the central portion. There are two ridges or divides, formed superficially of drift, that occur in the central part of the county, one north of Albert Lea, and the other south of it, separated about eleven miles, as shown by a series of elevations from a preliminary R. R. survey by Mr. Wm. Morin, already mentioned. What may be their direction at points further removed from Albert Lea it is not possible to state with certainty, but on one side they seem to trend toward the NW. Indeed there seems to be an NW. and SE. trend to the surface features of Freeborn county generally. Such rough surfaces, and especially the ridges of drift, are more stony and gravelly than the flat portions of the county. They mark the location of great inequalities in the upper surface of the underlying rock, the exact nature of which cannot be known.

In addition to these general indications of the character of the rock of the county, the shaft sunk for coal at Freeborn, reveals the presence of the Cretaceous in that portion of the county, and examinations of the nearest exposures in the neighboring county of Iowa, disclose the Hamilton limestone of the Devonian age. This limestone is exactly like that found so abundantly in the form of boulders in Freeborn county. As the general direction of the drift forces was towards the south, and as the strike of the Hamilton in Iowa, according to Dr. C. A. White (see his map of the geology of Iowa, Final Report, 1870) is toward the N. W., there is abundant reason for concluding that that formation also extends under Freeborn county. The preliminary geological map of the state of Minnesota, published in 1872, indicates Freeborn county almost entirely underlain by the Devonian, the only exception being in the northwestern corner. How much further toward the N. W. these limestone boulders can be traced with equal abundance, the explorations of the survey have not yet revealed. The Devonian does not certainly cross the Minnesota river. Yet in McLeod county, which lies in the line of strike of the Devonian of Iowa and Freeborn county toward the N.W., on the opposite side of the Minnesota river, the same limestone boulders are very abundant, some being so large as to have been reputed rock *in situ*, and quarried as such till exhausted. The northwestern corner of Freeborn county has been regarded as underlain by a limestone of the age of the Niagara, belonging to the Upper Silurian, that formation in the Northwest coming directly below the limestones of the Devonian. That may be correct; but it is certain that there is in the neighborhood of Freeborn an area of the Cretaceous, which must, in that case, overlie the Silurian limestones. This Cretaceous area is believed to extend north and south across the west end of the county, and to be roughly coincident with the flat and prairie portion in the western part of the county, in which case it always overlaps the Devonian.

Explorations for coal.

In common with many other places in southern Minnesota, Freeborn township, in the northwestern corner of this county, has furnished, from the drift, pieces of Cretaceous lignite that resemble coal. These have, in a number of instances, incited ardent expectations of coal, and led to the outlay of money in explorations. Such pieces are taken out in digging wells. The opinion seems to grow, in a community where such fragments are found, that coal of the Carboniferous age exists in the rocks below. In sinking a drill for an artesian well, at Freeborn village, very general attention was directed to the reported occurrence of this coal in a regular bed, in connection with a "slate rock." This locality was carefully examined, and all the information was gathered bearing on the subject that could be found. The record of the first well drilled is given below, as reported by the gentleman who did the work:

1.	Soil and subsoil, clay		15 feet.
2.	Blue clay		35 feet.
3.	"Conglomerated rock," (had to drill)		2 inches.
4.	Sand and water		5 feet.
5.	Fine clay, tough, hard to drill, with gravel and limestone pebbles		60 feet.
6.	Sand and water		4 inches.
7.	"Slate rock,"	Probably Cretaceous.	7 feet.
8.	"Coal,"		5 feet 4 inches
	Total depth		127 feet, 10 inches

This indication of coal induced the drilling of another well, situated 100 feet distant, toward the N. E. In this the record was as follows, given by the same authority:

1.	Soil and subsoil, clay	15 feet.
2.	Blue clay	33 feet.
3.	"Conglomerated rock"	2 inches.
4.	Sand with water, and pieces of coal	12 feet.
	Total depth	60 feet 2 inches

When the drill here had reached the "conglomerated rock" it was supposed to have reached the "slate rock," No. 7 of the previous section. The amount of coal in the sand of No. 4 was also enough to cause it to be taken for No. 8 of the previous section. Hence the boring was stopped; and having thus demonstrated the existence of a coal-bed, to the satisfaction of the proprietors, the enterprise was pushed further in the sinking of a shaft. In sinking this shaft water troubled the workmen so that at 35 feet it had to be abandoned.

Three quarters of a mile north of these drills a shaft was sunk 57 feet, but not finding the coal as expected, according to the developments of the last section above given, the explorers stopped here. In this shaft the overseer reports the same strata passed through in the drift as met with in the first well drilled, but the so called "conglomerated rock" was met at a depth of 45 feet. The sand below the "conglomerated rock" here held no water, but was full of fine pieces of coal. Before sinking the shaft at this place a drill was made to test the strata. These being found "all right" the shaft was begun. In that drill gas was first met. It rose up in the drill hole, and being ignited it flamed up 8 or 10 feet with a roaring sound. The shaft was so near the drill hole that it drew off the gas gradually, allowing the intermixture of more air, thus preventing rapid burning. From this place the exploration was redirected to the first situation, where another shaft was begun. This was in search for the "lower rock," so called, or the "slate rock" supposed to overlie the "coal." Here they went through the same materials, shutting off the water in the five foot sand-bed, and 60 feet of fine clay, when water rose so copiously from the second sand-bed (No. 6 of the first section given) as to compel a cessation of the work. In this shaft were found small pieces of the same coal, all the way. These pieces had sharp corners and fresh surfaces. The total depth here was 106 feet, and the water seems to have been impregnated with the same gas as that which rose in the drill at the point three-fourths of a mile distant. Such water is also found in the well at the hotel in Freeborn. With sugar of lead it does not present the reactions for sulphuretted hydrogen, and the gas is presumed to be carburetted hydrogen.

This account of explorations for coal is but a repetition of what has taken place in numerous instances in Minnesota. The Cretaceous lignites have deceived a great many, and considerable exspense has been needlessly incurred in fruitless search for good coal. In the early discovery of these lignites some exploration and experimentation within the limits of the state were justifiable, but after the tests that have already been made it can pretty confidently be stated that *these lignites are at present of no known economical value.* This, not in ignorance of the fact that they will burn, or that they contain, in some porportion, all the valuable ingredients that characterize coal and carbonaceous shales, but in the light of the competing prices of other fuels, the cost of mining them, and the comparative inferiority of the lignites themselves. If they were situated in Greenland they would probably be pretty thoroughly explored, and extensively mined, and even there they would have a powerful competitor in the oil there in use.*

The drift.

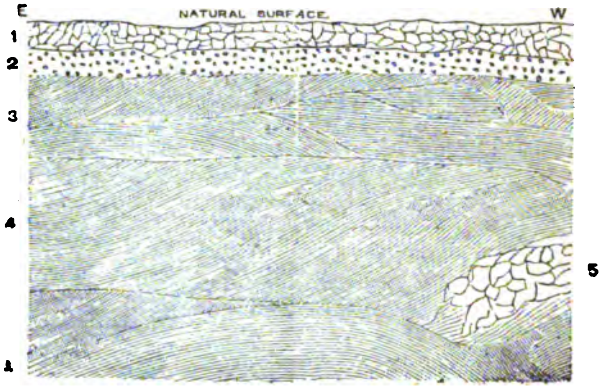
This deposit covers the entire county and conceals the rock from sight. It consists of the usual ingredients, but varies with the general character of the surface. In rolling tracts it is very stony and has much more gravel. In flat tracts it is clayey. It everywhere contains a great many boulders, and these are shown abundantly along the beaches of the numerous lakes of the county. The frequency of limestone boulders, and their significance, have already been mentioned. Thousands of bushels of lime have been made from such loose boulder masses, mainly gathered about the shores of the lakes.

In general the drift in Freeborn county consists of a glacier hardpan, or unmodified drift. Yet in some places the upper portion is of gravel and sand that show all the effects of running water in violent currents. The beds here are oblique, and subject to sudden transitions from one material to another. At Albert Lea the following section was observed. It occurs just west of the center of town. It covers eight feet perpendicular, and eight feet E. and W.

---

*See the second annual report, pp. 187 and 201.

Section in the drift at Albert Lea.



Explanations.

1.	Earth and soil, gravelly below	20 inches.
2.	Gravel, unstratified, with considerable limestone	6 inches.
3.	Stratified gravel	18 inches.
4.	Regular strata of coarse gravel	2 feet.
5.	Unstratified	
6.	Fine sand, seen	2 feet.

In a gravel bank at Albert Lea, according to Mr. William Morin, the jawbone of a mastodon was found, a number of years ago. It was sent to St. Paul, and is supposed to be preserved.

The average thickness of the drift in Freeborn county would not vary much probably from 100 feet.

In the survey of the county considerable attention was paid to the phenomena of common wells, with a view to learn the nature and thickness of this deposit, and the following list is the result of notes made :

Wells of Freeborn county.

Good water is generally found throughout the county, in the drift, at depths less than 80 feet; but some deep wells that occur within the Cretaceous belt, in the western part of the county, are spoiled by carburetted hydrogen. This must rise from carbonaceous shales in the Cretaceous, and indicates the extent of that formation. Much of the information contained in the following tabulated list of wells was obtained by W. A. Higgins, well borer, of Albert Lea :—

Owner's Name.	Location.	Depth. Feet.	Kind of Water.	Remarks.
W. P. Sargent......	Sec. 29, Albert Lea.	28	Good.	One-half bu. of coal at 26 ft.
Geo. Stevens.......	Freeborn.	47	Carburetted	Pieces of coal in blue clay,
T. A. Southwick...	"	46	Soft.	44 ft. of water. [26 ft. water
Ezra Stearns.......	½ m. w. of Freeb'n.	30	Good.	Found pieces of coal.
Ezra Stearns.......	" "	42	"	" " "
James Hanson.....	1 m. nw. of Freeb'n.	50	Carburetted	" " "
F. D. Drake.......	Sec. 13, Freeborn.	90	"	Water stands 5 ft. from top.
O. U. Wescott......	Byron, Waseca.	94	Soft.	[stones and gravel.
L. C. Taylor........	6 ms. nw. Freeborn.	96	Good.	Artesian; at first bringing
Geo. Snyder, Jr....	2 ms. nw. Freeborn.	61	Carburetted	[clay
A. M. Trigg...	Alden.	37	"	Found pieces of coal in
H. M. Foot..........	"	50	Good.	" " " "
John Melender.....	"	50	"	" " " "
L. O. Taylor	6 ms. nw. Freeborn.	96	Carburetted	Artesian.
Wm. Comstock.....	2 ms ne. Alden.	48	"	Nearly artesian.
Chas. Ayers.... ...	Nw. cor. Freeborn.	125		Bore for coal.
John Ayers.........	Trenton.	142		" " " lost tools.
T. A. Southwick...	Freeborn.	35	Carburetted	Blue clay, water in sand &
J. F. Jones....	Geneva.	20	Good.	Water in q'ksand. [gravel.
Nelson Kengsley..	"	12	Soft.	Water in quicksand.
John Farrell.......	"	12	"	" " "
A. Chamberlain...	"	12	"	" " "
D. G. Parker.......	Albert Lea.	72	Good.	Struck gravel below the
Dr. C. W. Ballard..	"	38	"	In gravel. [blue clay.
James Barker......	"	52	"	Small bed of gravel in blue
C. W. Levins.......	"	25	"	In gravel. [clay.
H. Rowell	"	72	"	In gravel below blue clay.
W. W. Cargill	"	85	Not good.	Struck black clay, no
				sticks nor grit. [clay.
Chas. Ostrom......	"	30	Good.	In very fine blue sandy
Lewis Gaul.........	"	28	"	"Yellow clay" all the way.
H. Rowell	"	72	"	Yel. & blue cly. then gravel
Col. S. A. Hatch ...	Sec. 4. Albert Lea.	42	"	Gravel and sand, water in
Ole Knutson........	Albert Lea.	34	"	" " " [quicksand.
W. W. Cargill......	Sec. 28, Albert Lea.	28	"	Water in gravel. [on rock.
Geo. Topon.........	Sec. 29, "	65	No water.	Grav'ly cl'y, fine sandy cly
And. Palmer.......	Sec. 29, "	28	Good.	Water in green sand.
Dr. A. C. Wedge...	Sec. 8, "	28	"	" " "
W. O. Lincoln......	Albert Lea.	32	"	Gravel and sand, then q'k-
Frank Hall.........	"	65	"	" " [sand.
Town well..........	Alden.	44	"	In gravel.
A. W Johnson	Albert Lea.	80	Not good.	Drift clay, water in gravel
Rev. G. W Prescott		80	"	"Tastes like kerosene."
Town well.........	Twin Lakes.	75	"	Clay only.
	Alden.	40	"	
A. Palmer, Jr......	Sec. 29. Albert Lea.	30	"	Lump of coal at 27 feet.

In some wells at Albert Lea a muck is struck, and such wells afford a water that is unfit for use. This muck is reported to contain sticks, and is about 38 or 40 feet below the surface. It may indicate a former bed of the river, or an interglacial marsh, as Mr. James Geikie has explained in Scotland. (See "The Great Ice-Age.") It is by some called *slush*, and seems not to uniformly hold sticks and leaves, but to be rather a fine sand of a dark color. The well-diggers call it quicksand. This indicates that it is either a bed of Cretaceous black clay, arenaceous, or Cretaceous débris. Dr. Wedge, of Albert Lea, thinks the site of the city was once covered by a lake, and that this *slush* was its sediment; and that the overlying gravel, which is about 38 feet thick, has since been thrown on to it by a later force, perhaps by currents. There is no doubt that the overlying gravel was thus deposited, those currents being derived from the ice of a retiring glacier.

Wells at Geneva are generally not over 20 feet in depth They also pass through a gravel that overlies a quicksand. This village it situated with reference to Geneva lake as Albert Lea is with reference to Albert Lea lake, both being at the northern extremities of those lakes. The phenomena of wells at the two places are noticeably similar, and in the same way different from the usual phenomena of wells throughout the county.

At Albert Lea.

Gravel, about 30 feet.
Quicksand, with water, sometimes black and mucky.

At Geneva.

Gravel, 12 to 15 feet.
Quicksand, with water.

It would seem that the history of the drift at Albert Lea was repeated at Geneva. These villages being both situated at the northern end of lake basins, are probably located where preglacial lakes existed. On all sides, both about Albert Lea and Geneva, the usual drift clay, hard and blue, is met in wells, and has a thickness of about 100 feet.

Material resources.

In addition to the soil, Freeborn county has very little to depend on as a source of material prosperity. As already stated, there is not a single exposure of the bed-rock in the county. All building stone and quicklime have to be imported. The former comes by the Southern Minnesota R. R. from Lanesboro and Fountain, in Fillmore county, though it is very likely that the Shakopee stone from Mankato will also soon be introduced. The latter comes from Iowa, largely, (Mason City and Mitchell), and from the kilns at Mankato and Shakopee. Some building stone is also introduced into the eastern part of the county from the Cretaceous quarries at Austin.

Lime.—At Twin Lake three or four thousand bushels of lime have been burned by Mr. Carter from boulders picked up round the lake shores. This lime sold for 75 cents per bushel. It was a very fine lime, and purely white. The construction of the railroad put a stop to his profits, as the Shakopee lime could then be introduced and sold cheaper. The boulders burned were almost entirely of the same kind as those that are so numerous in McLeod county. They are fine, close-grained, nearly white, on old weathered surfaces, and of a dirty cream color on the fractured surfaces. They very rarely show a little granular or rougher texture, like a magnesian limestone, though this grain is intermixed with the closer grain. They hold but few fossils. There are a few impressions of shells, and by some effort a globular mass of a coarse favositoid coral was obtained.

Besides the above, which are distuinguished as "white limestone," there are also a few bluish-green limestone boulders. One of these, which now lies near Twin Lake, is about 7 feet long, by 5 or 6 feet broad, its thickness being at least 2½ feet. It has been blasted into smaller pieces for making quicklime, but nearly all of it yet lies in its old bed, the fragments being too large to be moved. This stone is also very close grained. It is heavier than the other and more evidently crystalline. It holds small particles of pyrites. It is not porous, nor apparently bedded. On its outer surface it looks like a weathered diorite, and it would be taken, at a glance, for a boulder of that kind. It is said to make a very fine lime. Several hundred bushels of lime were formerly burned at Geneva.

Brick.—At Albert Lea the following persons make brick:

George Broughton, Wm. Cook, (G. C. Dillingham,) Hubbell Manly, (one and a half miles N of Albert Lea; has made none in four years.) These all make what is known as "slop brick," i. e., they handle and dry them after mixing in water, without the use of sand. The latter method (with sand) is much quicker and pleasanter, but in the use of the brick there is not much choice between the methods. At Boughton's the brick are red. The clay used, which is about five feet below the surface, is fine and of a yellowish ashy color. It is underlain by gravel. The clay itself locally passes into a sand that looks like "the bluff." At other places it is a common, fine clay-loam, with a few gravelstones. There is but little deleterious to the brick in the clay, although some of the brick are, on fractured surfaces, somewhat spotted with poor mixing, and with masses of what appear like concretions. The clay itself is apparently massive, but it is really indistinctly bedded, rarely showing a horizontal or oblique, thin layer of yellow sand. Mr. Boughton sells brick at ten or twelve dollars per thousand.

His yard has only been running the past summer, but has turned out 200,000. They have been used in Albert Lea, and by the farmers around. Oak wood costs from five to six dollars per cord.

The yard of Mr. Cook also furnishes red brick. He uses the same stratum of fine clay overlain by the same yellowish sandy clay or loam. The clay here shows to better advantage and is plainly bedded. It contains sticks, the largest observed being a little over half an inch in diameter. These sticks are plainly endogenous in cellular structure, but have a bark. They are not oxydized so as to be brittle, but are flexible still, with small branches like rootlets hanging to them. It is uncertain whether they belong to the deposit, or are the roots of vegetation that grew on the surface since the drift. There are no boulders of any size in the drift just here; but a few granitoid gravel-stones. The aspect generally indicates that this clay has a local character largely, but no outcropping beds can be found in the neighborhood. Mr. Cook has made this year (1874) 250,000 brick. The yard has been running five years. Brick here sell for $1.30 per hundred as they come from the kiln, or $10.25 per thousand. Hard brick from the arch sell at $1.50 per hundred. The brick here seem to show a little more lime, but they are well made and well burned.

Brick were formerly made at Geneva, and at a point about 2½ miles east of that place. At Geneva the clay was taken from the bank of Allen creek, about 18 inches below the surface. It was a drift clay, with small pebbles. That used 2½ miles east of Geneva was of the same kind. In both places sand had to be mixed with the clay. About Geneva sand is abundant, taken from the gravel and sand knolls, and from the banks of the creek.

Peat.—In Freeborn county there is an abundance of peat. The most of the marshes, of which some are large, are peat-bearing. In this respect the county differs very remarkably from those in the western portion of the same tier of counties which were specially examined for peat, in the season of 1873, and which, being entirely destitute of native trees, are most in need of peat for domestic fuel.

The peat of the county is generally formed entirely of herbaceous plants, though the marshes are often in the midst of oak-openings. The peat-moss constitutes by far the larger portion. There is no observed difference in peat-producing qualities between the marshes of the prairie districts and those of the more rolling woodland tracts of the country.

At Alden village, in the midst of the open prairie, the peat of a large marsh rose to the surface and floated, when, for certain purposes, the marsh was flooded. The water now stands ten feet deep below the floating peat, which is about three feet thick.

At Freeborn peat is now being taken out on John Scovill's land. Here it is eight feet thick, two rods from the edge, and it is probably much thicker toward the center of the marsh. That below the surface of the water now standing in the drain is too pulpy to shovel out; and after being dipped out and dried on boards, it is cut into blocks and hauled to town. That above the water is more fibrous, and can be taken out with a spade in convenient blocks. Yet the level of the water varies, and that datum is not constant. It appears as if there was here a stratum of more fibrous peat that separates from the lower, about 20 inches thick, and floats above it at certain times. In the peat at this place a sound elk horn was taken out at the depth of 6 feet.

There is a large peat-marsh in sec. 11, Hayward, owned by non-residents.

REPORT ON THE GEOLOGY OF MOWER COUNTY.

Situation and area.

This county borders on the state of Iowa. It is bounded west by Freeborn county, north by Dodge and Olmsted, and east by Fillmore. It has Mitchell county on the south, in Iowa. Its shape is very nearly that of a rectangle, (5 towns east and west, and 4 towns north and south), but it lacks the northern line of sections in the northeast, across two towns. These sections were set off to Olmsted county when Austin was made the county seat. It has, therefore, about 708 square miles, or more exactly, 455,204.81 acres, according to the records of the State land office.

Natural drainage.

The Cedar river crosses this county from north to south, through the western line of towns, its point of exit being exactly south from its point of entrance. Its chief tributaries from the east are Dobbin's creek, Rose creek, Otter creek and Robert's creek. From the west it receives Orchard creek and Turtle creek. Thus the whole of the western half of the county is drained into the Mississippi, through Iowa. The southeastern portion, also, is drained toward the south, through the sources of the Little Cedar, the Wapsipinicon and the Upper Iowa rivers. The northeastern portion of the county is drained by the head waters of the Root river toward the north and east. This river flows eastward through Fillmore and Houston counties, into the Mississippi near La Crosse. The divide between streams running north and those running south crosses Mower county from SE. to NW. nearly through the center, and

includes some of the highest land in that portion of the state. The highest point in the county, on the Southern Minnesota R. R., is in sec. 13, T. 103, R. 16 W., and that is 738 feet above Mississippi at Grand Crossing, or 1352 feet above tide water.

These streams are all small, and some of them become nearly dry during the summer. Some of them furnish water power at a number of places. This has been improved on the Upper Iowa at Le Roy, and on the Cedar at Ramsey, Austin, and at several places below Austin, in the construction of flouring mills.

Surface features.

The county is distinctively one of prairie, yet has a considerable timber along the streams. This is particularly the case along the Upper Iowa in the southeastern part of the county, along the eastern tributaries of the Root in Frankford. and along the Cedar crossing tbe whole width of the county. There is is also an important tract of timber in Nevada township. The highest portions of the county are entirely destitute of trees. They consist of a wide expanse of undulating prairie. The southern towns of Lyle, Nevada and Adams may be characterized as flat. The same is true of the most of the supposed Cretaceous area. The summit of the principal NE. and SE. watershed is formed by the Lower Devonian, with the strike of which it substantially corresponds. Toward the east from this summit the valleys of the streams running in that direction have been deeply cut out, yet not revealing any rock. They are wide, and their natural scenery is often very fine, as the view of the low expanse, wooded more or less, first appears before the traveler. The western portion of the county is considerably below the central and eastern. This is owing to the valley of the Cedar, the effect of which is felt over a wide belt, in depressing the general level. The following points of elevation above the ocean are derived from the profile of the Southern Minnesota R. R. by O. D. Brown, engineer:

Grand Meadow, (sec. 14, T. 103, R. 15)	1325 feet.
Sec. 13, T. 103, R. 16	1402 feet.
Ramsey, (grade of the Milwaukee & St. Paul R. R.)	1233 feet.*
Hayward	1240 feet.

---

*In the report for 1872 this crossing is given at 593 feet above the Mississippi river at La Crosse. the datum line of the S. M. R. R. on the authority of chief engineer H. W. Holley. Adding 614 feet makes 1207 feet for its hight above the ocean.

The following were derived from the Milwauke & St. Paul R. R., through ——— Angst, chief engineer:

Madison	1127 feet.
Ramsey	1093 feet.
Lyle	1075 feet.

The following minutes, touching the surface features, are based on an examination of the township plats of the government surveys, on record in the land office. The county was surveyed in 1853. There is not a lake of any importance in the county, and but few marshes.

Le Roy. (101,14)—East half.

The Upper Iowa river crosses diagonally the southern portion of this town, and introduces a belt of undulating and more or less timbered land, about two miles in width. Some of the thickets are very dense, but generally the timber is scattering. The remainder of the town is prairie, with a large slough covering portions of secs. 5 and 8. There is a "second bottoms" noted in sec. 18, and John Priest's house in sec. 36. Magnetic variation 9° 12′ to 10°.

Bennington. (102,14.)

In the center of this town is one of the sources of the Root river, a Y-shaped slough, with an outlet toward the east. The whole town is prairie. Mag. var. 8° 15′ to 12° 30′, the former in sec. 6, the latter in sec. 3.

Frankford. (103,14.)

This town is about equally divided between prairie and openings, the former being the SW. portion and the latter the NE. portion. The timber is generally small, and often scattering. There is a marsh in sec. 9, and settlement was begun in NE. corner of sec. 1. Mr. L. Patchin, of Frankford, was one of the first settlers. Mag. var. 7° (in sec. 7) to 12° 15′ (in sec. 36.)

Racine. (104,14.)

There is a belt of openings, and undulating land along the southern line of this town, caused by the tributaries of the Root river, and other areas of sparse timber and brush in secs. 10, 8 and 7, but the greater portion is of prairie. It contains but little marsh. Var. 6° 57′ to 11° 15′. Mr. J. McQuillan was the earliest settler in Racine. The same year Mr. L. Patching settled at Frankford and laid out the village.

Le Roy. (101,15)—West half.

This town consists almost entirely of prairie. The Upper Iowa river in the eastern portion introduces some diversity of surface, and some timber. There is also a small area of similar land in the NW. corner of the town. The headwaters of the Wapsipinicon are in sec. 32, and drain a long, narrow marsh, that extends two miles further north. The most of this town is prairie land. Mag. var. 8° 34′ to 9° 30′.

Clayton. (102,15)

This is a high prairie town, the drainage from it being to the SW. SE., and NE. Mag. var. 7° 39′ to 9° 7′.

Grand Meadow. (103,15.)

This township is all prairie. There is a slough with some standing water in secs. 17 and 20. Several of the high tributaries of Root river drain the eastern portion, introducing but little diversity of surface. Mag. var. 7° 35. to 8° 25′.

Pleasant Valley. (104,15.)

Except very small areas in the NE. and NW. corners of this town, it is entirely taken up with excellent prairie land. Those exceptions are small tracts of undulating and brushy, or sparsely timbered land, along the tributaries of the north fork of Root river. Var. 7° 50′ to 8° 55′.

Adams. (101,16.)

Through the central and northeastern portions of this town run the headwaters of one of the tributaries of the Cedar river, causing a belt of diversified country, widening to the north, and spreading into the northeastern part of the town. On the east and west of this belt is prairie land. Mag. var. 8° 43′ to 10° 5′.

In the northwestern portion of this town Rose creek introduces the usual variety of surface attending drainage val leys. Other areas of the same are in secs. 34 and 36. The rest is prairie. Mag. var. 7° 53′ to 9° 18′.

Dexter. (103,16.)

The southern part of this town is diversified by Rose creek, otherwise it is a prairie with drainage to N. and W. Var. 7° 25′ to 8° 30′.

Sargent. (104,16.)

This is of prairie, except in the eastern portion, where the valley of one of the upper tributaries of Root river causes an undulating belt with some timber. This belt runs NE., and is about a mile wide. Var. 7° 47′ to 8° 55′.

Nevada. (101,17.)

This town is mainly prairie, perhaps one-fifth of the whole area, situated in the southweastern quarter being openings and more undulating. Var. 7° 32′ to 9° 45′.

Wimdon. (102,17.)

The southern and central portions of this town are prairie —a wide strip along the west side, and a narrow one along the eastern, being more wooded. Rose creek crosses it from NE. to SW. It contains no lakes nor marshes. Var. 7° 24′ to 10° 6′.

Redrock. (103,17.)

The eastern half of this town is prairie. the western half openings, with small timber and brush. Mag. var. 7° 9′ to 8° 59′.

Waltham. (104,17.)

This town is mainly prairie, the only exception being about the streams in the SW. quarter. Mag. var. 7° 35′ to 8° 35′.

Lyle. (101,18.)

This township, being crossed by the Cedar, enjoys all the variety of soil and surface, as well as the timber which uniformly accompany the principal drainage courses. A belt of timber along the east side of the Cedar crosses the center of the town from north to south about a mile in width. The prairie on the west side runs to the very river. A wet meadow, or slough, occurs in sections 8 and 17, and another in sec. 2. Mag. var. 6° 57′ to 9° 54′.

Austin. (102,18.)

The western half of this town is prairie reaching up to the river. The eastern half is more wooded and broken. There is also a patch of prairie in the SE. corner south of Rose creek. Dobbin and Nichols were early settlers in the SE. corner. According to Mr. Patchin, of Frankford, Leveridge, was the earliest settler at Austin. Mag. var. 6° 57′ to 9° 42′.

Lansing. (103,18.)

There is a small area of prairie in the northern part of this town, but the most of it when surveyed was taken up with openings with scattered trees and brush. In the SW. quarter of the town is a long marsh drained into the Cedar. It is about three miles in length and a quarter of a mile wide running SE. Mag. var. 7° 9′ to 8° 40′.

Udolpho. (104,18.)

A belt of undulating, and more or less timbered, land crosses this town from N. to S. accompanying the east shore of the Cedar river. It is about two miles in width, increasing to four miles in the north. A small area of similar land is found covering portions of sections 30, 31 and 32. An important marsh also occurs in sections 27 and 34. Var. 7° 35′ to 9° 26′.

Soil and timber.

The soil of Mower county is everywhere dependent on the nature of the drift. The underlying rock has only affected it so far as it may have mingled with the general mass. It is hence primarily a gravelly clay, that being the character of the subsoil throughout the county. This gravelly clay, however, is not now prominently displayed as the immediate soil of the surface. Indeed the farmer in plowing rarely penetrates to it. It lies below a rich loam usually, at depths varying from zero to two or three feet, or even more. The surface itself, which has resulted from it through the agency of the forces of the atmosphere and of vegetation, is of a dark color, and in general may be designated a clayey loam, or a sandy loam, depending on the nature and completeness of the local drainage. In low grounds this loam is thick and of a dark color. It is also apt to be more clayey in low ground than it is on the hillsides or slopes adjoining; and on high hills or steep slopes it is thin or wanting, the wash of the surface having carried it into the valleys. Along streams it often consists of an arenaceous loam, variously mingled with the detritus of the flood plain.

The soil of the county is everywhere characterized by the strength and fertility that the drift soils of the northwest are noted for. They are the most reliable soils for all the purposes of the farmer that are known. The states that are regularly and deeply buried in drift deposits are known as the best farming states of the Union. Certain rock-soils, endowed with unusual special qualities, may excel in the production of certain crops, especially in favorable seasons, but for general tillage they cannot compete with the homogeneous drift soils, through which are disseminated the good qualities of the various rocks concerned in their production, in the proportion that make stability and diversity equally certain.

In the examination of the county the native varieties of trees and shrubs were noted, and the following list comprises the species that were seen. In respect to the trees it is probably nearly complete for the county, but there are, doubtless, other species of shrubs:

Trees and shrubs of Mower county.

Burr oak. Quercus marcrocarpa *Michx.*
Red oak. Quercus rubra *L.* (Not fully identified.)
Aspen. Populus tremuloides *Michx.*
American elm. Ulmus americana (*Pl. Clayt.*) *Wild.*
Different species of willow. Salix.
Hazelnut. Corylus americana *Walt.*
Sumac. Rhus glabra *L.*
Ironwood. Ostrya virginica *Wild.*
Bass. Tilia americana *L.*

Elder. Sambucus canadensis *L.*
Wolfberry. Symphoricarpus occidentalis *R. Br.*
Prickly gooseberry. Ribes cynosbati *L.*
Cornel. Cornus (sp. ?).
American crab. Pyrus coronaria *L.*
Red osier dogwood. Cornus stolonifera *Michx.*
Alder. Alnus incana *Willd.*
Cottonwood. Populus monilifera *Ait.*
Thornapple. Crataegus coccinea.
Wild plum. Prunus americana *Marsh.*
Black cherry. Prunus scrotina *Ehr.*
Frost grape. Vitis cordifolia *Michx.*
Bittersweet. Celastrus scandens *L.*
Black currant. Ribes floridum *L.*
Wild rose. Rosa blanda *Ait.*
Cockspur thorn. Crataegus crus-galli *L.*
White ash. Fraximus americana *L.*
Shag-bark hickory. Carya alba *Nutt.*
[At Lansing, and in the valley of the Cedar, one foot in diameter.]
Sugar maple. Acer saccharinum *Wang.*
Bitternut. Carya amara *Nutt.*
Butternut. Juglans cinerea *L.*
White pine. Pinus strobus *L.*
[Along the rocky banks of the streams in the eastern part of the county.]
Slippery elm. Ulmus fulva *Michx.*
Black ash. Fraxinus sambucifolia *Lam.*
High bush cranberry. Viburnum opulus *L.*
High blackberry. Rubus villosus *Ait.*
Cedar. Juniperus virginiana *L.*

The geological structure.

Of the older rocks the lower portion of the Devonian and the upper portion of the Silurian are found within the county dipping towards the southwest. The western portion of the county is known to be immediately underlain by the lower Cretaceous, without ascertainable eastern limits. The accompanying geological map of the county exhibits the areas of these formations as nearly as can be judged by the data known. The rock is nearly every where hid by the drift and for that reason the actual positions of the boundaries are unknown. It is quite possible, indeed probable, that the Cretaceous area extends further east, with a broken and very tortuous eastern boundary. It occurs in counties further east. In regard to the separation between the limestones of the lower Devonian and the Upper Silurian, none has yet been discovered. It is simply known that a vast limestone formation, the upper part of which lies under Freeborn county next on the west, extends also under Mower, and appears conspicuously along the banks of the streams in the eastern portion. No characteristic fossils have yet been seen in it in Mower county, but those that characterize the Hamilton were seen in it near Northwood in Iowa. The limestone seen at Le Roy is lithologically different from that which occurs at Frankford and resembles the Hamilton seen at Northwood. While lithological distinctions are not reliable always, especially after long intervals, yet at present this is the only reason known, so far as Mower county is concerned for separating that at Frankford from that at Le Roy. In Ohio and Illinois there is an arenaceous formation (the Oriskany) between the Devonian limestones and the Silurian, and it distinctly marks that horizon. While in the lower Devonian some arenaceous layers have been observed in Iowa, the Oriskany has not been identified there, and probably it cannot be depended on in Minnesota to mark the separation between the Upper Silurian and the Devonian. In the absence of good exposures of these limestones in the county, it is only possible to lay down approximately the boundary line between them, and that is all that has been attempted on the accompanying map.

The Cretaceous.

The principal exposures of the Cretaceous are found in the valley of the Cedar, at Austin, and from there to the state line. The quarry of Simon Anderson, at Austin, is in the left bank of the Cedar, and exposes about 20 feet of the bedding. Much of the stone is broken and disturbed, and lies in fine clay which seems to have been jammed into all the cracks and other openings in the rock. The beds here show sudden, broken-down places, in which this clay is deposited instead, the rock being wanting for three or four feet horizontally. The stone is much more entire, and uniform in all its characters at greater depths, some slabs five and six feet long, by three feet wide, and three or four inches thick being taken out. These have a very even, fine grain, and a handsome blue color, This stone is in its natural color, light blue, and that color shows on most of the quarried blocks about the heart of the bedding; and on deep quarrying it would doubtless show only a blue color. Yet the stone seen about the city is very generally of a buff color, to the depth of half an inch to three inches, depending on the amount of weathering and oxydation. The thinner beds are altogether changed to that color. The presence of occasional concretionary iron and mud balls causes a rusty stain of a yellow color over the surface of many of the slabs.

These concretionary balls fall out, or dissolve out, when in the water, and leave cavities which become larger still. Besides these, which are not common in the compact portion of the stone, but are oftenest seen among its thin beds, there are also cavities disclosed by the fracture of the homogeneous thick beds. These are sometimes perfectly empty, but often contain loose, friable matter, easily picked out, but not differing in color or grain from the mass of the rock. At other times such cavities, revealed on the fracture of the stone are lined with a perfect coating of drusy crystals which are white, and as hard as quartz, though sometimes covered with iron-rust, so as to present a red or black exterior. The texture of the stone itself is usually close, and the grain is homogeneous. Some large slabs and blocks are sawn for bases to tombstones, and worked down to a very smooth surface. It is more safely sawn to any desired dimension that cut or broken, since it fractures treacherously; yet it is not in the least crystalline. Its aspect at a distance is that of a fine-grained sandstone; yet it contains no apparent grit. It is so soft that it can be cut without difficulty, appearing much like an unusually indurated blue shale, but it hardens in use and becomes a very enduring and useful material for building. It contains, but very sparingly, a few molluscous fossils, too much absorbed to be identified, though one has the general form of a *Gryphaea*. This description of the stone applies equally well for the stone taken out at other quarries further down the valley, as mentioned below.

In the vicinity of Mr. Alderson's quarry, perhaps fifty rods distant, and about 14 feet higher, this stone was struck in making an excavation for the erection of a brewery. It here rose within two or three feet of the surface. The beds were thin, broken, and of a buff color. Enough stone was here obtained, in the excavation of a small vault, for the masonry appertaining to the brewery. The rock was here overlain by the following section of clays.

No. 1.	Black sandy loam and soil	2 to 4 feet.
No. 2.	Band of red and variegated compact clay	6 in. to 4 feet.
No. 3.	Yellow ocherous band of clay	6 in. to 4 feet.

The superposition of these bands of clay is not so regular as indicated by the foregoing section: occasionally No. 3 is broken through or is wanting, and No. 2 lies on the rock, or passes down into its crevices. Yet No. 3 is generally the first over the rock. They vary in thickness and swell out in shapeless masses of hard clay. Such hard masses are seen sometimes to embrace bits of angular earthy rock, much like ochre, varying in color from a dark, burnt-umber color to a lighter shade, even to buff, and appearing, when of a lighter color, much like the mass of No. 3. They can be scratched easily with a knife, and however black they may be they give a red hematite streak. When they are faded the streak also fades into a brown or yellowish brown like limonite. Intermingled very irregularly with No. 2 and sometimes also with No. 3 are masses of greenish clay which has in every other respect the same outward characters as No. 2. There are here also large crystalline, detached masses of apparently a silicious limestone which is very hard and close-grained. In some cases, however, this varies to a porus and nearly white limestone that appears to be very pure.*

At Austin angiospermous leaves were obtained from this stone in the digging of a well by Mr. L. G. Basford. After passing through soil and loam three or four feet, and clay about 20 feet, the rock was struck and penetrated by removing the upper layers, a thickness of about eight feet. Two species of fossil leaves were found in the layers thus entered. One appears like *Ficus primordialis* Hr., as figured in "*Les phyllites Cretacees du Nebraska par M. M. les prof. J. Capelini et O. Heer,*" and the other is, according to Dr. J. S. Newberry, to whom a photographic copy was submitted, probably a species of *Sequoia*, a gymnosperm of the pine family known as "redwood."

At the mill of J. Gregson, about two miles below Austin, a great deal of stone has formerly been taken out, but now the quarries of that neighborhood are nearly all flooded by the water of the dam. The chief quarry was just above the present site of the mill and near the dam on the left side, though just below the dam the rock shows on both sides and has also been wrought. At this point Rosenberry and Miner have a quarry on the right bank, and a perpendicular bluff of the beds occurs near the roadside, below the mill on the left bank. The exposed section at Rosenberry and Miner's is as follows, in descending order:

---

*In connection with this description of limestone masses, it is interesting to note the occurrence at St. Charles, Winona county, of hard siliceous limestone masses on the surface of the ground, appearing very much like those embraced in this clay.

The reader is also referred to the *Geological report on the exploration of the Black hills under Gen. G. A. Custer, 1874*, for further information on the distribution of foreign limestone masses in Dakota.

No. 1.	Black loamy soil	7 to 8 feet
No. 2.	Loose fragments of the underlying beds and clay mixed	3 feet
No. 3.	Heavy stone like that described at Austin, clay filling the open planes and joints	10 to 12 feet
No. 4.	Rusty bituminous films	¼ to 1 inch
	[On the authority of the owners of this quarry to this section may be added the following.]	
No. 5.	Limestone, filled with shells, blue, contains flint, makes lime, penetrated	2 feet

The bedding of No. 3 is here broken in a manner similar to that of Alderson's quarry at Austin. The corners and angles of the beds are replaced by clay and the color of the stone is changed from blue to buff or drab, to the depth of about two inches.

Some years ago the rock was worked by Dr. Barns, of Austin, about half a mile above Gregson's mill. This quarry is now almost entirely flooded by the dam. The abutments of the upper bridge, at Austin, came from this quarry, in part. Judge Ormanzo Allen owned a quarry still above Barns' that was also considerably flooded by the same means. The quarry most worked was just above the mill, owned by M. J. Woodson. It is now entirely under water. Stone is still taken out, however, all along, both above and below Gregson's. The beds at Gregson's show very nearly the same characters as at Austin. The descent of the stream is over about fourteen feet of rock, the layers of which are sometimes two feet or more in thickess, or massive, much like an indurated shale. In weathering, these thick beds are checked by planes running mainly horizontal, instead of perpendicular or diagonal. Although mainly horizontal these planes are apt to unite after a few feet, splitting up the heaviest beds into wedging, lenticular masses. Some parts are here plainly calcareous, affording traces of fossil remains that have the appearance of Brachiopoda. These portions are porous as if by the absorption of fossils.

Mr. M. J. Woodson now works a quarry about ¼ mile above Gregson's mill, some distance from the river, pumping by windmill the water out of a slough in which the beds are exposed. A small creek passes through here, and this slough seems to be an expansion of the valley, retarding the water. The rock is here entirely below the water, and is nearly all blue, and in that respect appears well.

At the mouth of Rose creek about the same thickness of the same kind of stone can be seen in the bed and banks of the creek. A fine exposure is owned by J. D. Wooodard in the right bank of Rose creek near the crossing of the road from Austin to Officer's mill, perhaps a mile above its union with the Cedar. It is again seen above Officer's on the land of Col. Lewis, on the east bank

At W. H. Officer's mill, the left bank of the river shows about 20 feet of bedding. This is one mile below Rose creek. South of this mill rock of the same kind is seen at a number of places before reaching the state line. At two miles below Officer's it is quarried on R. B. Foster's land; and on Mrs. John Niles', three-fourths of a mile below Foster's, on the west side of the river. Just below the state line is Alderson's mill, where it is again exposed. At officer's, the water power is 8 feet. It is 13 feet at Gregson's and 10 feet at Austin. Between Austin and Lyle the country is apparently a perfectly level prairie, and is doubtless closely underlain with the same rock as at Austin.

Two miles east of Officer's mill a farmer struck the same rock in two separate wells on his farm, in one at the depth of three feet and in the other at eleven.

Dobbin's creek, which joins the Cedar at Austin from the NE., furnishes a water-power of 14 feet by dam, where a mill is erected. A quarry in the left bank of this creek shows the same rock as already described at Austin in the Cedar. The bluffs of the creek just below the mill are about 30 feet, and show about 20 feet of rock. The beds are in every place greatly broken, and in some cases displaced. The rock is parted into blocks of varying size, according to the thickness of the layers, the uppermost being finest. Throughout, the partings, and all the interstices are closely filled with a greenish clay, making the whole a close and almost impervious mass. It has very much the aspect of the Cretaceous on the Silurian, as described at Mankato, (see the second annual report) except that the small cracks and openings are here all densely filled with the clay. The clay also very rarely has any distinct bedding, but seems rather to have been jammed in to fill the vacancies. Besides the greenish clay which often varies in color to a red or a buff, there is also considerable white, clean sand, lodged in these cavities in the rock. This pertains to no particular horizon, and shows no definite arrangement. It is disposed everywhere, just like the clay, occurring from the top to the bottom of the bluff—though perhaps more abundant near the bottom.

These two deposits—the clay and the white sand—are doubtless the result of destructive forces upon other portions of the Cretaceous. There is presumptive evidence, in their being here irregularly mingled with a series of beds that lie nearly *in situ*, that they are derived from some *overlying* members of the Cretaceous. That evidence would be more reliable if the general dip of the Cretaceous were toward the north or northwest, thus throwing the beds of the quarry deeper below the surface in those directions and rendering them less susceptible of such disruption as would expose the underlying members to the glacial forces. That is naturally the first inference on beholding the face of the bluff. On the contrary the actual dip of the Cretaceous, if it have any at all, would be in general toward the south or southwest at this place, and the lower members are thus brought nearer the surface and within the transporting agency of the glacial forces at points toward the north. Thus this clay and sand may have been brought, by the action of ice, in the glacial epoch, from the north or northwest and deposited on the top of an overlying rock, in the same manner as granitic boulders are brought from a granitic region toward the north and are spread by the agency of ice, over the Silurian or Devonian, or even over the Cretaceous, that overlie, by hundreds of feet, the granitic beds from which they are derived. This clay and sand, however, are so fragile that they would soon lose their identity in being carried by the mixing power of a glacier, and cannot have been far transported. Indeed the area over which the beds of the rock with which they are mingled are known to extend unbroken, without perceptible dip in any direction, is quite as great as they could be carried by glacial action and deposited in distinct and characteristic homogeneity. There is hence a strong probability that the rock from which they are derived occupies a higher geological horizon than that among the broken beds in which they appear. This white sand must be the same as that seen on the Blue Earth and its tributaries, and on the Waraju in Brown county (see the second annual report, pages 133 and 185). It there lies on the Lower Silurian unconformably. Here it seems to be underlain by an older member of the Cretaceous—the Austin rock. This indicates the earlier submergence of this portion of the state beneath the ocean of the Cretaceous age, and the approach of the Cretaceous ocean from the east or southeast. As to the relative ages of this dislodged clay and white sand, there is no way of deciding which is the older from any certain evidences in Mower county. But in Brown county there is a bluish-green clay that overlies the white sand.

This rock is also wrought on the right bank, just above the mill, showing here also the same features.

At Sargent's spring, SW. ¼ sec. 31, Redrock, there is apparently an exposure of this white sand below the level of the water of a little pool. This place is a local celebrity. Pure, soft water boils up over the area of about a square rod, and sometimes over double that area, and can be seen issuing from the ground, bringing with it clean, white sand. The bottom of the pool presents a beatiful appearance. The water is as clear as crystal, and the boiling points which appear by reason of the rising white sand, in the midst of the darker sediment, can be minutely inspected at a depth of five or six feet. Running a stick into the agitated sand, it soon strikes a sandrock which is doubtless the source of the boiling sand, and the same bed that furnished that at the quarry in Dobbin's creek.

On the SE. ¼ sec. 12, Windom, Mr. Thomas Smith has struck the Cretaceous in making explorations for coal. From Mr. Smith the following account of his efforts was obtained. His attention was first attracted by a "scum that stood on stagnant water" and by the "mud brought up on horses feet" in crossing the creek bottoms. Having chosen a locality along the bank of Rose creek which he judged suitably free from water, he began to drift into the bank of the creek following a bed of vegetable material that had the appearance of old peat, but which contained some coarse pieces of fibrous wood. The choice of this place was altogether accidental, the desire being to obtain a place free from water. There were no surface indications favoring coal at that point. He accidentally came upon the peat bed. At first the peat, of which Mr. Smith has preserved samples, and which consists entirely of comminuted vegetable fibre, was only half an inch thickness. In the coarse of the drift it gradually thickened at 70 feet, to 18 inches in thickness. This drift was nearly level, inclining a little for the sake of drainage. On the top of this peat, pieces of wood which were judged to be of pine and cedar, of which also Mr. Smith has pieces preserved, were found in abundance. One large piece was two feet long and ten inches in diameter, supposed to be pine. This drift was about 50 feet below the general surface and 6 or 7 feet above low water in Rose creek. Above it was a blue clay with gravel stones. Below it was also a dark blue clay with gravel stones. This peat seems to have been in a genuine ancient peat lake, filled or partly filled, on which floated pieces of wood from the surrounding forest. The whole was buried again by glacial deposits fifty feet thick.*

This drift having been abandoned at 80 feet, a shaft was sunk twenty rods toward the SW. to the depth of 50 feet, meeting the same peat. This shaft passed through fifteen feet of sand, ten or twelve feet of yellow clay, and about 23 feet of gravelly blue clay. Then east of the drift 40 rods a shaft was sunk on lower ground, but not on the bottoms, though somewhat within the general valley. The section here was, as given by Mr. Smith:

No. 1.	Soil and gravel	5 feet
No. 2.	Gravelly blue clay	4 or 5 feet
No. 3.	Gravelly yellow clay	14 feet
No. 4.	Blue clay, not gravelly	9 feet
No. 5.	Brown, waxy clay, fine	6 inches
No. 6.	Rock with water, (Mr. Smith says a specimen of "blue slate" came from this level)	3 feet
No. 7.	A soft rock which furnished fine drillings that were taken for coal	4 feet

In this drill, the first 22 feet of which were a shaft, Mr. Smith next came upon a very hard rock, and as all his work was done by hand he did not succeed in entering this stratum, nor in getting a specimen.

At this point Mr. Smith made efforts to get help from the county commissioners but they declined. He next sank a shaft forty feet in depth, about twenty feet from the last, meeting about the same materials, except that here there was no "blue clay. not gravelly," and no "fine, waxy, brown clay." He struck the rock at the same depth. The bottom of the "gravelly yellow clay" here was hard "like brick," cemented by deposits from the water which came in from below immediately after penetrating through it. This was a shaft throughout. Here the work stopped.

On visiting the last shaft which was all dug, the rock struck is seen in fragments lying about. It is a fine sandstone now rusty brown with iron, but which on being taken out was at first of a bluish gray color, like the deeply cut Austin stone. This is somewhat coarser than that and more loosely grained, but in every other respect appears to be the same rock.

---

*This peat was again struck in a shaft twenty rods further SW. from the drift, and was there about a foot thick, and about the same depth below the surface. It was met in wells two and a half or three miles northwest, at thirty-five feet.

The Devonian.

The most westerly outcrop of these limestones within the county, is that on Mr. Andrew Robertson's land, sec. 26, Windom. The rock here seen is course and porous, but rather firm, and very slightly exposed. It occurs in the valley of a small tributary of Rose creek.

The quarries at Le Roy are owned by Joseph Brevier, Judson A. Palmer, Stephen Drowne, and the heirs of L. Johnson.

The quarry owned by the heirs of Johnson is about forty rods from the state line, in sec. 35, Le Roy. It is in a lightly timbered tract of country, accompanying the upper Iowa river, and about ten rods south of the river. The beds rise to within a foot or two of the surface, on the angle of the river bluff, though the bluffs of the river are not conspicuous, the depth of the valley being only about twelve or fifteen feet below the general level, and broad and basin-like. The foreign drift about is light, but some large boulders are scattered about. This stone is light colored (nearly white) hard and fine, exactly like the Devonian seen near Northwood, in Iowa, though in heavier beds than that. It would make a beautiful white marble. It is uniform in grain and texture, and not in the least porous. With the exception of one or two layers of an inch or two of green clay, the beds are all of this limestone, exposed twelve feet.

At Palmer's quarry the rock is overlain by six inches of soil, though a hundred rods from the river. These beds are all badly weathered so far as opened, and of the same general character as at Johnson's. No drift. Exposed three feet.

Mr. Palmer's other quarry is in the river bluff, and easy of access. The stone is the same as that already described, and has been burned near the quarry for quicklime. It forms a bluff, exposing about twenty feet.

Brevier's quarries, of which two are opened, are in the left bank of the Upper Iowa river, and show about the same beds as seen in the other quarries.

Drowne's quarry is also in the bank of the river, but shows only about six feet, though there is every opportunity for opening the beds to a greater depth. There is here a much more argillaceous and fissile bed than any seen in the other quarries. It is about eighteen inches thick. This layer, coming about midway in the quarried beds facilitates the working of the quarry, but is itself of no value. In the débris thrown out, probably from this layer, a globular mass of *Cœnostroma* was obtained, which, taken with the lithological resemblance of the rock to that containing Hamilton fossils at Northwood, in Iowa, near the Minnesota state line, satisfactorly establishes the Devonian age of the whole of the rock at Le Roy.

Section 16, Le Roy, Mrs. Alice Plummer owns a newly opened quarry near the river.

There is an exposure of the limestone in the valley of the Upper Iowa, near the west line of the SE. ¼ of NW. ¼ of sec. 29, Le Roy. There is here a boiling spring coming out of the rock in the bed of the creek. The rock is also exposed just over the state line, in Iowa, on the Little Cedar, and more particularly at Staceyville, two miles south of the line.

The Silurian.

As already stated, the rock at Frankford is classed as Silurian on lithological evidence only. The quarries here, beginning with the highest up the creek (known as Dear creek) are owned in the following order: A. Bush has a quarry about four miles above Frankford; G. Fryer has a good quarry; E. W. Elder burns and sells lime at Frankford; L. Patchin's quarry is situated in the brow of a small valley tributary to Deer creek, and consists of beds that are much shattered and weathered, so as to afford irregular and small pieces, considerably used for lime. Exposed about seven feet. These beds overlie or are very near the tops of the beds in the next—that of Mr. J. Hawkins. This is in the bluff of Deer creek, and supplied the heavy stone placed in the abutments of the highway bridge at Frankford. The exposure here is about twenty feet. The layers are three feet and more in thickness, and project over the water. This is a characteristic exposure. The rock is different from that at Le Roy. It is of about the same color, somewhat darker, vesicular and porous. It is firm, has abundant calcite, and some chert. While it is plainly fossiliferous, no fossils demonstrating its age are obtainable. J. C. Easton also owns a quarry at Frankford, back from the creek, on the open prairie. Other outcrops occur favorable for quarrying. In the scarcity of fuel, but little lime is made at Frankford. Much more is burnt at Spring Valley.

A stone quarry is opened two miles northwest of Grand Meadow, on Bear creek, owned by Mr. Coin. Another is 2½ miles east of Coin's, owned by Mr. I. O. Huffdaw.

The drift.

In Mower county no diminution of the drift was noticed. It consists of the usual hard-pan clay. This clay shows a light color for the first 10 or 15 feet, and below that depth it is apt to be blue. Gravelstones and boulders are disseminated through it, Some of the boulders are very large and consist of granite. Some very large granite boulders occur near Rose creek village, lying on the surface, and some are near Adams. There are some also in the valley between Adams and Le Roy. Near Mr. Alderson's quarry at Austin a granite boulder has been blasted and broken for building stone. It is at least 16 feet long by 12 feet wide. Its depth is unseen. Others were seen equally large in various parts of the county.

The most interesting development in respect to the drift in Mower county consists in the discovery of an ancient bed of peat by Mr. Smith in Windom. The reader is referred to the account of his operations for coal, already given, for the particulars of this discovery. This bed of peat seems to be of considerable extent, superficially. A similar deposit is struck in wells at Le Roy. Mr. J. D. Wilsey, on sec. 31, met it at 20 feet. Mr. Porter, who dug his well, describes the deposit there as largely made up of distinct woody fiber, among which he thought he recognized hemlock bark. Several other instances of striking this buried vegetation are reported in the neighborhood of Le Roy. The clay overlying the peat bed is described as a gravelly yellow clay.

In the state of Iowa an ancient peat has also been met with at a number of places. Dr. White describes it at Davenport, at Iowa city, and in Adair county (*Geology of Iowa*, 1870, Vol. 1, p. 119) and refers its origin there to marshes that accompanied the valleys of the rivers near which the peats occur, when those rivers spread wider, and flowed at higher levels. But in Mower county the peaty deposit is not confined to the valleys of streams, nor to the proximity of streams. Mower county is on one of the highest divides in the state of Minnesota, and from it flow the sources of streams toward the north, south, and east. Those streams are small and never could have flooded the extent of country in which this peat is found. The positive information now at hand in reference to this peat deposit in Mower county, does not warrant confident assertions as to its origin. From all accounts it appears to be embraced between glacial deposits of gravelly clay, and it seems to mark a period of interglacial conditions where coniferous trees and peat mosses spread over the country. Peat mosses are not necessarily restricted to low, wet places. If the atmosphere be moist they will flourish on any surface, and an accumulation of good peat may take place on a bare. rocky mountain-side. There are extensive marshes now existing in northern Minnesota, mainly covered with ericaceous plants, with some cedars and tamaracks, that are forming immense peat deposits. With an increase in the amount of moisture of the air such peaty accumulations would spread over much higher levels. A return of glacial conditions would bury such marshes below the deposits that are known as drift.

At Le Roy Mr. Porter seems also to have discovered, just in the border of the village, an old valley, now filled with sand. His cistern was dug in the solid rock, which was met at seven feet. A well was bored fifteen feet distant toward the river, to the depth or 32 feet, in sand, without meeting any rock. Between this well and the river other wells have struck the rock at several places, and usualy at about twelve feet. On the prairie throughout the county wells get water generally within thirty feet.

Material resources.

With the exception of the central hight prairie portion of Mower county, it is tolorably well supplied with wood for common fuel. On the prairies referred to wood is costly. That portion of the county is thinly settled with farmers. Along the valleys of the streams in the eastern and western portions of the county, the first settlements took place, and in those valleys are found the most of the population at this time. The principal natural wealth of the county lies in its soil and its agricultural adaptations. The people are generally farmers. The growth of the county in all respects will be primarily dependent on, and co-ordinate with the settlement of the farming lands, and their profitable tillage. There is some water power in the county, as at Austin, and below Austin to the county line, and at Le Roy and Ramsey, and it is well improved in the erection of flouring mills. Mower county contains no peat, and cannot hope for coal. The rocks that underlie the county cannot be depended on for producing anything but building stone and quicklime. Of the former, some of the limestone would produce of good marble, if properly handled. That is the case particularly at Le Roy. For making quick-lime there is amply opportunity. The only difficulty will be a competition with other localities from which transportation is light, that posses cheaper fuel for calcination. Brick can be made at almost any place in the county. Three miles northeast of Lansing Mr. John Just is engaged in brick-making. At Austin Mr. A. H. Alsip now manufactures brick. Formerly they were also made by Smith, Tuttle and Tracy, and by Horace Webb. Mr. Alsip lays his own brick in the wall for $12.50 and $13.00 per thousand, furnishing everything. He sells for $12 and $15 per thousand. He makes a sand-mold brick, free from lime, but rather soft. He burns the common surface, taking off about three inches, so as to remove the grass-roots. During the year he has made about 550,000, oak wood costing about $6.50 per cord. At Austin a light colored brick from Watertown, Wisconsin, is somewhat used. Brick from Chaska, Carver county, are delivered on the cars for $8, costing $13 at Austin. The lime used at Austin is mostly from Mitchell, Iowa. At Le Roy not many brick have been made. The Caswell house and the school house at that place are built of brick made at Le Roy. The quality of the Le Roy brick is as good as any seen at Austin. About three miles above Frankford the Shaw Brothers have begun the manufacture of a fine light-colored brick, though some are also red. This yard is said to turn out some of the best brick made in the county. To those interested in burning lime in the county the following statements obtained from Schuyler and Hulme, of Mitchell, Iowa, extensive lime-burners, will be of value. They have one draw kiln, which is in constant operation, of Page's patent, from Rochester, New York. It affords 200 bushels of quick-lime every 24 hours, It requires 48 hours to take a piece of the rock through the kiln. Every 24 hours four cords of wood are consumed, at a cost of four dollars per cord. One cord of stone is calculated to make 100 bushels of lime, at 80 pounds per bushel, which sells at the kiln at 35 cents per bushel, average price. Coarse lime will fall six pound short by measure, but if the fine lime be put in it will hold out weight, previous to being air-slacked. Air-slacked lime averages about 55 pounds per pushel. To run this kiln requires seven men, including those who take out the stone, or five men and one team.

GEOL. LAB.
557.9
M6

Russell

557.9
M6

THE GEOLOGICAL

AND

NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY

OF

MINNESOTA.

THE FOURTH ANNUAL REPORT.

FOR THE YEAR 1875.

By N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist.

ASSISTED BY

M. W. HARRINGTON, of the University of Michigan.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY, DEC. 31, 1875.

ST. PAUL:
THE PIONEER-PRESS COMPANY.
1876.

I. C. Russell

THE GEOLOGICAL

AND

NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY

OF

MINNESOTA.

THE FOURTH

Presented to I. C. Russell

By N. H. WINCHELL,
State Geologist of Minnesota,
Minneapolis, Minn.

On behalf of the Regents of the University.
Contributions to the Museum and Library are solicited.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY, DEC. 31, 1875.

SAINT PAUL:
THE PIONEER-PRESS COMPANY.
1876.

I. C. Russell

THE GEOLOGICAL

AND

NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY

OF

MINNESOTA.

THE FOURTH ANNUAL REPORT.

FOR THE YEAR 1875.

By N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist.

ASSISTED BY

M. W. HARRINGTON, of the University of Michigan.

SUBMITTED TO THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY, DEC. 31, 1875.

SAINT PAUL:
THE PIONEER-PRESS COMPANY.
1876.

STATE PUBLICATIONS RELATING TO THE GEOLOGY OF MINNESOTA.

---

1. *Sketch of the Lead Region, by Dr. D. F. Weinland, with a statement of the objects of a geological and natural history survey.* 34 *pp.* 1860. *Reprint from the Wisconsin Reports for* 1858. *Out of print.*
2. *Statistics and History of the Production of Iron, by A. S. Hewitt.* 47 *pp.* 1860. *Reprint of a paper read before the American Geographical and Statistical Society, January* 31, 1856. *Out of print.*
3. *Report of Anderson and Clark, Commissioners on the Geology of the State, January* 25, 1861. 8*vo.* 26 *pp. Out of print.*
4. *Report of Hanchett and Clark, November,* 1864. 8*vo.* 82 *pp. Out of print.*
5. *Report of H. H. Eames, on the Metalliferous Region bordering on Lake Superior,* 1866. 8*vo.* 23 *pages.*
6. *Report of H. H. Eames, on some of the northern and middle counties of Minnesota.* 1866. 8*vo.* 58 *pp. Out of print.*
7. *Report of Col. Charles Whittlesey on the Mineral Regions of Minnesota.* 1866. 8*vo.* 52 *pp. close type, with wood cuts.*
8. *Report of N. C. D. Taylor on the Copper District of Kettle river, incorporating Mr. James Hall's estimate of the copper prospects of that district,* 1866. 2 *pp.* 8*vo. Found only in the Executive Documents.*
9. *Report of a Geological Survey of the vicinity of Belle Plaine, Scott county, Minnesota. A. Winchell. June* 17, 1871. 8*vo.* 16 *pp.*
10. *The First Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota, for the year* 1872. *By N. H. Winchell.* 8*vo.* 112 *pp. with a colored geological map of the State. Published in the Regents' Report for* 1872. *Out of print.*
11. *The Second Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of the State, for the year* 1873. *By N. H. Winchell and S. F. Peckham. Regents' Report;* 148 *pp.* 8*vo*; *with illustrations.*
12. *The Third Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota, for the year* 1874. *By N. H. Winchell.* 41 *pp.* 8*vo. with two county maps. Published in the Regents' Report for* 1874.

[NOTE.—Of the foregoing, Nos. 1, 2, 4 and 6 are wanted by the Survey.]

151499

ADDRESS AND SUMMARY STATEMENT.

To the President of the University:

The accompanying report, the fourth since the beginning of the Geological and Natural History Survey of the State, embraces full and detailed reports on the counties of Fillmore, Olmsted, Steele and Dodge. These counties lie nearly contiguous in the southeastern portion of the State, embracing some of the first settled, and now most thickly inhabited counties of the State. The plan for the season embraced other counties, in the central portion of the State, and one or more in the northern. But it has been found impossible to complete more than the four named. Considerable work has been done in Hennepin county, and some in Stearns, but the scattered observations made will be reserved till the work in those counties is taken up and reported in detail. The complicated character of the work done in Fillmore and Olmsted counties will be seen by a glance at the accompanying geological maps of those counties. The eastern portion of these counties, particularly Fillmore, falls within that well-known tract denominated by Prof. J. D. Whitney, a "driftless area." This term very nearly describes the tract as represented in this portion of Minnesota, but I have been able to discern, even in the most eastern part of Fillmore county, occasional small deposits of true northern drift, as detailed by localities in the report on that county. In the absence, or attenuation, of the true northern drift, the underlying rocks make bold and frequent outcrops, governing the immediate contour of the surface, and deciding the agricultural as well as the general industrial resources of the country. It has been necessary, therefore, to give very minute attention to the lines of outcrop of the different formations as they make their way across the county, in order to delineate them correctly on the accompanying colored maps.

In the survey of these counties I have had the assistance of Mr. W. E. Leonard, a student of the University, who accompanied me in the earlier part of the season in Fillmore county, and of Prof. M. W. Harrington, of the University of Michigan, whose report is herewith presented. Prof. Harrington, who ably carried on the work independently in my absence, was compensated only by the payment of his field and traveling expenses. He also had the privilege of retaining such botanical specimens as he could gather, for the purpose of enlarging the already magnificent collection of plants in the museum of Michigan University, a list of all identifications being reported for our survey.

The catalogue of the plants of the State, by Dr. I. A. Lapham, mentioned in the report for 1873, has been printed by the State Horticultural Society, and is published in its report for 1875, where it is duly accredited to the Geological and Natural History Survey, to whose care Dr. Lapham had entrusted it.

In December, 1872, the Board of Regents adopted a resolution asking the representatives and senators in Congress, from Minnesota, to take measures to secure to Minnesota such determinations of latitude and longitude, by the United States Lake Survey, as are done in other States by the officers of that survey. Through the co-operation of Hon. M. H. Dunnell, representative in Congress, the Superintendent of the Lake Survey, Gen. C. B. Comstock, was induced to take immediate steps toward the determination of the latitude and longitude of the University buildings. There being no Congressional appropriation for further determinations in this State, nothing further has been done. It is desirable, in order to construct a correct map of Minnesota, that as many points as possible be established in the same manner. In the State of Michigan, the Lake Survey officers are determining one or more points in each county of the Southern Peninsula. It is done by special act of Congress, appropriating money to enable the Lake Survey to aid the State Survey. I call your attention to this matter, that further efforts may be made to carry out the intent of the original action of the Board of Regents. It is the established policy of the general government to aid those States that are carrying on geological surveys, through the instrumentality of the coast surveys, and it has been so announced. The attention of Congress should be called specially to this matter, in order that our survey may receive its share of such aid.

The following has been sent from the office of the Lake Survey, at Detroit, by order of Gen. Comstock, giving the results of observations made at the University:

Longitude of the Smaller Cupola of the University of Minnesota.

	Longitude.	References.
Longitude of Washington (Naval Observatory) west from Greenwich.	77° 03′ 00″ .00	Admiral Sand's letter, February 9, 1872.
U. S. Lake Survey observatory (1857 to 1870) west from Washington (Naval Observatory.)	5 59 59. 80	L. S. Report 1871 and Office No. 8.
S. E. corner of the new Custom House, St. Paul, Minn., west from the L. S. Obs. (1857 to 1870.)	10 02 32. 25	L. S. Report 1872 and Office No. 8.
Smaller Cupola of the University of Minnesota west from the S. E. corner of the new Custom House.	0 8 36. 50	See office rept. No. —. A. R. Flint, obs'r. T. Russell, computer.
Longitude of the smaller cupola of the University of Minnesota from Greenwich.	93° 14′ 08″. 60	

	Latitude.	References.
Latitude of the S. E. corner of the new Custom House.	44. 56 42. 89	Office No. 8, from A. R. Flint, observer, 1871.
Smaller Cupola of the University of Minnesota north from the S. E. corner of the Custom House.	1 56. 33	Office rep. No. 213. A. R. Flint, ob'r, T. Russell, c'p'r.
Smaller Cupola of the University of Minnesota.	44° 58′ 39″. 22	

	Latitude.	Longitude.
Smaller Cupola of the Univ. of Minnesota	44° 58′ 39″. 22	93° 14′ 08″. 60

(Signed) O. B. WHEELER,
Compiler.

In regard to chemical work I am not informed that anything has been done since the report of 1873. From time to time the following substances have been submitted to the chemist of the survey for examination. This list is here given that the records of the survey may be easily consulted, and that in future analyses samples may readily be referred to their sources.

No. 1. Light, pinkish clay, known as "Tripoli," from Stillwater, Minn. Submitted to Prof. Strange December 10th, 1872. Reported on by Prof. Peckham. (See the Second Annual Report.)

No. 2. Red and yellowish clay, fine grained; no apparent pebbles nor sand. From Spring Valley, Minn. Submitted to Prof. Strange December 10th, 1872.

No. 3. Drab, or brown clay, with a reddish tinge, very fine and soapy to the touch; no sand nor pebbles. From Spring Valley, Minn. Submitted to Prof. Strange December 10th, 1872.

No. 4. Same as No. 2, but evidently arenaceous, and with occasional small pebbles. From Spring Valley, Minn. Submitted to Prof. Strange December 10th, 1872.

No. 5. Peat, from Schmidtz' land, St. Paul, Minn., eight feet below the surface. Submitted to Dr. P. B. Rose August 6th, 1873. Reported November 22d, 1873. (See the Second Annual Report.)

No. 6. Peat, from Schmidtz' land, St. Paul, Minn., 2 feet below the surface. Submitted to Dr. P. B. Rose August 6th, 1873. Reported November 22d, 1873. (See the Second Annual Report.)

No. 7. Manufactured Peat, from Wells; W. Z. Haight. Submitted to Dr. P. B. Rose, August 6th, 1873. Reported by him November 22d, 1873.

No. 8. Peat from Lake Emily, near St. Peter, Minn. Submitted to Dr. P. P. B. Rose, August 6th, 1873. Reported November 22d, 1873.

No. 9. Turf-peat, from Empire City. Submitted August 6th, 1873, to Dr. P. B. Rose. Reported November 22d, 1873.

No. 10. Peat from Wells, not manufactured. Submitted August 6th, 1873, to Dr. P. B. Rose. Reported November 22d, 1873.

No. 11. Cretaceous coal, cannel, from Crow Creek, near Redwood Falls, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, Sept. 6th, 1873.

No. 12. Coal, from the surface, near Bismarck, D. T. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, September 6th, 1873. [The last two have the same external characters.]

No. 13. Earthy coal, from Crow Creek, near Redwood Falls, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, September 6th, 1873.

No. 14. A mixture of charcoal and ash, apparently, from the lignite beds of the cretaceous, at Redwood Falls, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, September 6th, 1873.

No. 15. Kaolin; the result of decomposed granite, greenish, with no apparent grit. From Birch Coolie, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, September 6th, 1873. (See description of this substance, and of the locality, in the Second Annual Report.)

No. 16. Peat, from St. Cloud, 18 inches below the surface. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, September 15th, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 17. Peat from Lura, Faribault county, Minn., 18 inches below the surface. Land of W. Z. Haight. Bog A. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October 9th, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873. (See the Second Annual Report.)

No. 18. Peat from the same bog as No. 17, 3 feet below the surface. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October 9th, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 19. Peat from Lura, Bog B, 18 inches below the surface. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 20. Peat from the same bog as No. 19, 3 feet below the surface. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October 9th, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 21. Turf-peat, from the land of John Haggard, section 4, town 101, range 39. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 22. Peat from K. K. Peck's land, near Windom, 3 feet below the surface. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Professor S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 23. Peat from K. K. Peck's land, near Windom, 2 feet below the surface. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Professor S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 24. Peat, from the land of Rev. Edward Savage, near Windom, Minn., 18 inches below the surface. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 25. Turf-peat, from S. O. Taggart's land, section 24, town 105, range 35. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 26. Peat from land of A. A. Soule, Mountain Lake, Minn., 2 feet below the surface. Submitted October 9th, 1873, to Professor S. F. Peckham. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 27. Peat from the land of the St. Paul and Sioux City Railroad, section 13, town 106, range 37, 2 feet below the surface. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October 9th, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 28. Peat from the land of F. G. Taylor, Brooklyn, Hennepin county. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October 9th, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 29. Lumps from the sandstone near the Red Jacket Mills, in Blue Earth county, apparently magnesia, or magnesia and lime. (See description of that locality in the report for 1873.) Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially examined and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 30. Green specks in the *St. Lawrence limestone*. Sample from St. Lawrence. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially examined and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 31. Green specks from the *St. Lawrence limestone*. Sample from Judson. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham. Partially examined and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 32. Black mineral, accompanying quartz. The quartz occurs in decomposed granite, at Minnesota Falls. The mineral has the appearance of specular peroxide of iron, but is thought by the owners to be a mineral of value. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, who pronounced it haematite iron ore. (See the description of this locality in the Second Annual Report.)

No. 33. Turf-peat, town 101, range 40, section 27. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, March, 1874.

No. 34. Peaty lake sediment, Bigelow, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, March, 1874.

No. 35. Peat, from Red Wing, land of Capt. O. Eames. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, March, 1874.

No. 36. Peat from C. F. Bryan's land, near Winona, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, March, 1874.

No. 37. Ore from the Sauk Valley, said to have been taken from the bottom of a shaft sunk in exploration for coal. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham.

No. 38. Ore, supposed to be of silver, from Colorado, from J. B. Culver. Duluth, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Pechham, September 15th, 1874. Reported to Mr. Culver.

No. 39. Ore, supposed to be of silver, from E. F. Kindred, Brainerd, Minn. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, September 18th, 1874. Reported to Mr. Kindred.

No. 40. Ore, supposed to be of silver, from the north shore of Lake Superior, near Duluth, from H. Burg. Submitted to Dr. P. B. Rose, November 20th, 1874. Reported December, 1874, and forwarded to Mr. Burg.

No. 41. Ore from M. L. Casey, supposed to be of iron, from the corporate limits of Duluth. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, December, 1874.

No. 42. Sample of mineral water from the Belle Plaine Salt Springs. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported December 23d, 1873.

No. 43. Fragment of native copper, apparently, from R. S. Russell, Pleasant Grove, Olmsted county. Submitted to Mr. D. P. Strange in the winter of 1872 and '73. Reported by Prof. S. F. Peckham, December 23d, 1873.

No. 44. Sample of water from the Belle Plaine Salt Springs. Submitted to Prof. S. F. Peckham, October, 1873. Partially analyzed and reported February 16th, 1874.

The accompanying report also embraces a statement of operations in the Museum since the date of the last report thereon. The law ordering the Geological and Natural History Survey contains a clause as follows:

SEC. 6. It shall be the duty of said board of regents to cause proper specimens, skillfully prepared, secured and labeled, of all rocks, soils, ores, coals, fossils, cements, building-stones, plants, woods, skins, and skeletons of animals, birds, insects and fishes, and other mineral, vegetable and animal substances and organisms discovered and examined in the course of said surveys, to be preserved, for public inspection, free of cost, in the University of Minnesota, in rooms convenient of access, and properly warmed, lighted, ventilated and furnished, and in charge of a proper scientific curator. * * *

This clearly establishes in the University a State Cabinet or Museum of Natural History. A report on the progress of the survey, in compliance with law, implies a report on the condition of its collections. Hence it seems proper that hereafter the report on the museum should be embraced in that on the progress of the survey. With the establishment of the State Museum at the University arises the necessity for cases for the exhibition and proper keeping of the collections, and other current expenses involved in their transportation, labeling and custody. Objects of Natural History, requiring careful and often expensive preparation, must be constantly watched and frequently cleansed, to prevent their deterioration and destruction. The mounting of mammals and of birds is expensive. To carry on a system of exchanging, with other institutions, as ordered by the law, involves an outlay of money. None of these expenses have been provided for. The legislature should make an annual appropriation of several hundred dollars to enable the Regents to carry out that part of the law. It will require, at once, about a thousand dollars to fit up the rooms assigned to the use of the Museum, with suitable cases and other appliances.

I wish to call to your serious attention, the propriety of taking steps to place on an active footing other portions of the work ordered by the general law of March, 1872. Sundry practical questions involving the industries of the state and the confort of the people, have arisen since the inception of the survey; and the demand for their solution, by efficient means and in an authoritative manner, has sought expression in attempts at special legislation, creating special commissions for the purpose of investigation and report. These practical questions, which really depend, in their ultimate results, on the means taken to investigate under the guide of science, and to modify or control their operations, are covered by the terms of the general law of March, 1872. I refer to an examination of the peat deposits, and to the collection of statistics concerning the late incursion of the western grasshoppers into the state. If the general law were put into vigorous execution, with ample means, there would be no inducement to originate special commissions to perform the various portions of the work ordered. It seems to me these departments ought not to rest much longer without making a systematic beginning. If nothing more is done than to keep up an organization, with little expense, such organization would be ready in case any public emergency arises to take the work in hand, and to furnish information immediately concerning its proper treatment. In the mean time, any special commission, created to perform work required by the terms of the general law, should be made subject to the Board of Regents, and all official reports on scientific investigations, covered by that law, ought to be made as so much contributed to the progress of the Geological and Natural History Survey. Then the state will not find herself duplicating her employes, and performing twice the same service. Then all these investigations will be judiciously supervised, and the scientific work of the state will be harmonized in all its relations.

Germane to the work of the geological survey, is the collection of a set of the building stones, minerals, limes and soils of the state, for exhibition at the Centennial Exposition, to be held at Philadelphia in the year 1876. The State Board of Centennial Managers having requested the aid of the Geological Survey in making a suitable collection of the objects named, the Board of Regents, through their Executive Committee, authorized me to superintend their collection. Although the desires and plans of the State Board of Centennial Managers have been very widely published, and considerable personal appeal has been resorted to, the present condition of the meager collections thus far made does not warrant ardent expectations that this branch of the exhibition on the part of Minnesota will be creditably sustained.

In submitting this report, I take pleasure in acknowledging the aid of the people of the counties reported on, and especially of Prof. M. W. Harrington, of Ann Arbor, whose former connection with the geological survey of Michigan enabled him to conduct the field work independently, releasing me for other duties.

Very respectfully,

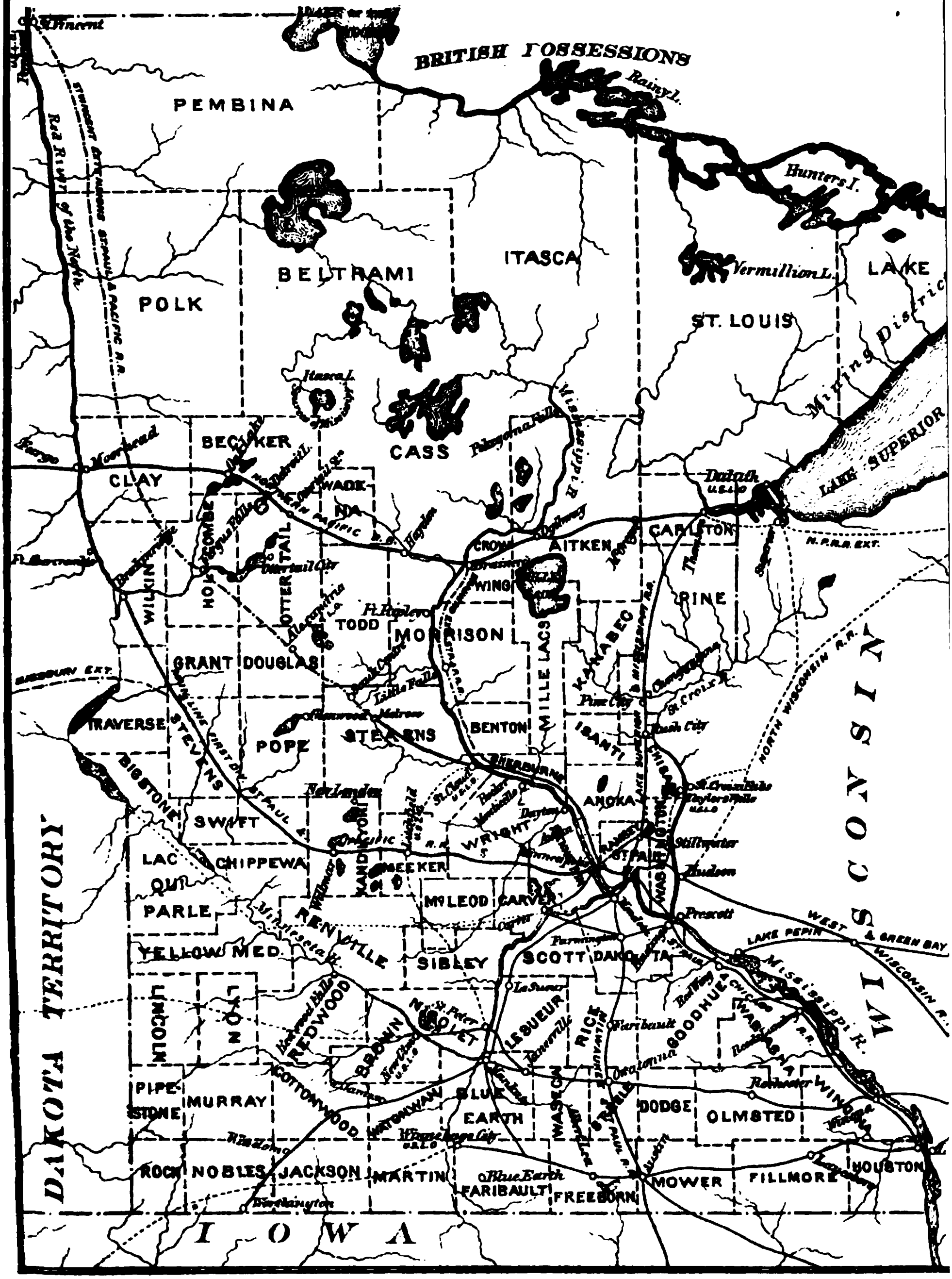
N. H. WINCHELL.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
Minneapolis, Minn., Dec. 31, 1875.

MAP OF MINNESOTA.

Showing Locations of the Counties.

Total area 83,531 Square miles.



REPORT ON THE GEOLOGY OF FILLMORE COUNTY.

Situation and Area.

Fillmore county lies adjacent to the State of Iowa, and is separated from the Mississippi river by Houston county. It lies next east of Mower county, which was reported on last year. It has a width, north and south, of four government towns, each six miles square, and a length, east and west, of six, making it one of the largest of the organized counties. Its area is about 864 square miles, or 553,081.77 acres, according to the records of the State Land Office. It contains no lakes, and but few acres that are unsuited to farm tillage. Preston is the county seat. Lanesboro, Spring Valley, Chatfield and Rushford are the principal towns.

Natural Drainage.

Root river, with its tributaries, drains nearly the whole of the county. The Upper Iowa river, which enters the county in Beaver and Bristol townships, receives a few small streams from the southern tier of townships. Root river, flowing toward the east, spreads out its tributaries north and south, like the rays of a fan, crossing the entire county from west to east. Many of the branches of Root river rise in the counties next west and north of Fillmore county, in a tract of country covered with northern drift. After entering Fillmore county, they soon enter canon-like valleys, and the drift becomes much lighter. They then converge toward the main valley, following deeply cut rocky valleys, and leave the county in one volume at Rushford, in the northeastern corner of the county. These streams furnish frequent water-power privileges, and a number of them have been improved in the erection of mills, which are scattered throughout the county as follows. There are, besides these, several smaller saw mills:

At Chatfield, two flouring mills.

On the southeast quarter of section 17, Chatfield, one flouring mill.

At Clear Grit, one flouring mill.

On section 31, Jordan, one saw mill.

At Preston, one flouring and one woolen mill.

At Carimona, one flouring mill.

At Forestville, one flouring mill.

At Ætna, one flouring mill.

At Fillmore, two flouring mills.

At Baldwin's Bridge, (section 21, Forestville,) one saw mill,—also fitted for grinding feed.

At section 24, Bloomfield, (De For,) one flouring mill.

At Granger, two flouring mills.

On South Root river, three flouring mills.

At Rushford, three flouring mills.

At Peterson, one flouring mill.

At Whalen, two flouring mills.

At Lanesboro, three flouring mills.

On Bear and Deer Creeks, in the northwestern part of the county, eight flouring and four saw mills.

At the Tunnel Mills, section 34, Sumner, advantage has been taken of the winding course of Bear Creek. The creek is enclosed on both sides by high rocky walls. A tunnel has been cut through a narrow neck, excavated in the rock, admitting the water, which falls again into the river, on section 34, producing a fall of 25 feet in 600 feet. The cut in the rock is 600 feet long, for the tunnel, and 100 feet for the tail race. At G. Weisbeck's Mill, a similar opportunity is offered. This is on section 11, Spring Valley. By a tunnel of 70 feet, through the "Hog's back," a fall of 17 feet 10 inches may be secured; and at the lime-kiln of Mr. J. H. Hall, near Weisbeck's, a tunnel of 125 feet will furnish a power of 20 feet. About 20 rods from Weisbeck's, a tunnel of 450 feet will afford 64 feet head of water. The rock is limestone, in horizontal bedding.

Surface Features.

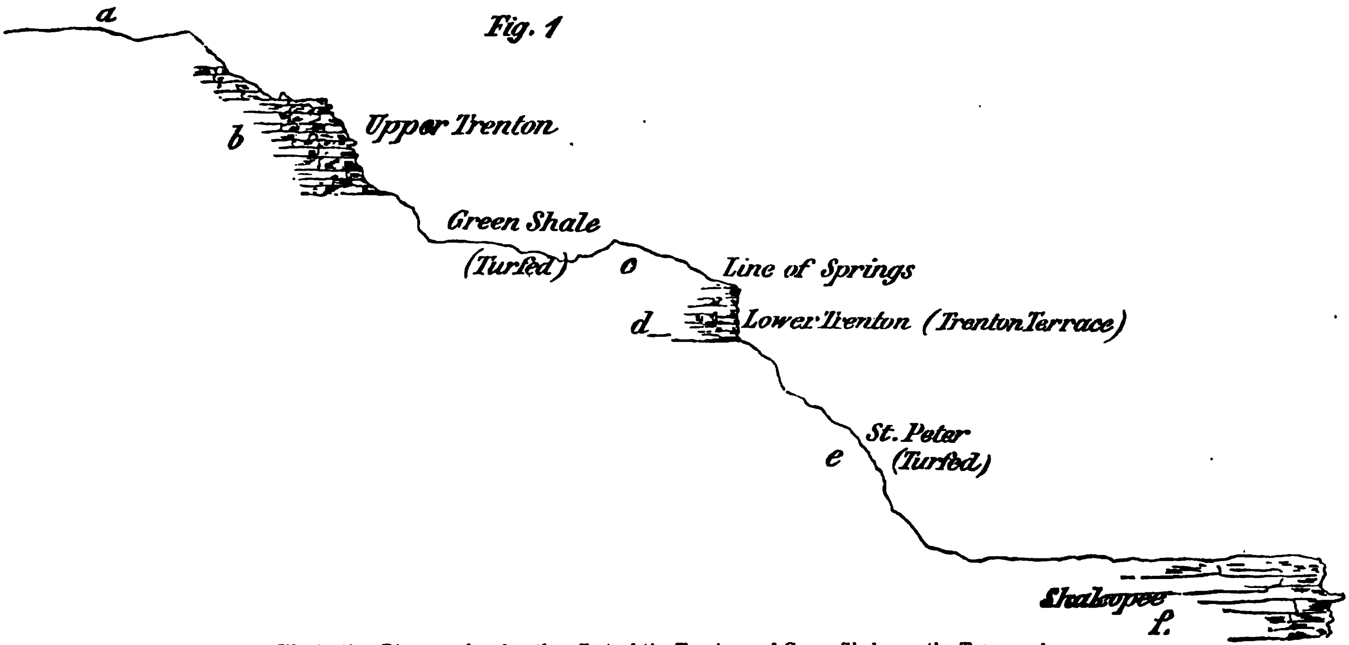
That portion of the county which is covered with a thick deposit of foreign drift presents the usual monotony of surface, characteristic of the drift latitudes. This includes the most of the western range of townships across the western end of the county, and some portions of the next range east. There are, however, even within the drift area, a number of narrow, deeply cut valleys, with precipitous, rocky bluffs, having very much the nature of canons, like those of the driftless territories of the west. Toward the east these deeply cut valleys are more numerous. All the little streams, and a great many narrow valleys that have no running water in them, have high, rocky bluffs along their whole course. These vallies and streams, constituting the drainage system of the county, converge toward the valley of Root river. The valley of this stream, with its principal tributaries, presents some of the most remarkable and instructive phenomena of erosion to be found in the state. It passes nearly at right angles across the strike of the formations. These are alternating limestones and sandstones, with an occasional bed of soft shale. The Trenton limestone, underlain by the easily eroded St. Peter sandstone, the same as at the falls of St. Anthony, although about a hundred and sixty feet in thickness, is eaten into by the retroaction of the water as it plunges over the falls at the point where the streams cross the line of its superposition over the St. Peter, until they have each excavated in the Trenton a deep channel from 15 to 30 miles in extent. Through the line of strike of the St. Peter these valleys are widened out, the surface of the low ground within the bluffs being usually one of rich meadow with undulating surface, from one to two hundred feet below the general level. The Lower Magnesian Formation is entered upon by the streams while they are yet a good many miles within the general area of the Trenton. As this formation consists of three members. (two limestones, separated by a sandstone about 30 feet in thickness,) it repeats the succession of phenomena witnessed in the erosion of the Trenton and St. Peter. As the water leaves the Shakopee limestone and enters upon the Jordan sandstone, it passes over a series of rapids, or a fall of several feet perpendicular, which falls or rapids undergo a process of recession under the same causes as produce the recession of the Ttrenton-St. Peter falls. Again, when the stream passes from the St. Lawrence limestone upon the St. Croix sandstone the same conjunction of circumstances causes another rapid or water-fall. Thus by a series of steps, more or less evident, the branches of Root river descend from the area of the Galena limestone to the St. Croix sandstone. The valleys widen in the sandstone areas, and become abruptly narrow in the limestone belts. In passing down a stream, within a sandstone area, where the valley is perhaps half a mile wide, with tilled farms in the bottom land, the high bluffs being remote from the stream, the first indication of an approaching change in the formation is the rise of a terrace along the immediate river bank, with an occasional exposure of lime rock facing the water. This terrace, which becomes almost continuously rocky, rises slowly till it exposes the full thickness of the rock which causes it. On the other hand, the first evidence of a change from limestone to sandstone, visible in descending the stream, is the occurrence of a waterfall or rapid. Such changes produce water-powers, many of which have been improved. Hence, the location of a flouring mill, on one of these branches, is an intimation to the geolgist that at that point one of his boundary lines crosses that stream. Around these points gathered the first village settlements. Preston is located where the water-power formed by the descent of the river from the Shakopee on to the Jordan induced the construction of mills. The water-power at Chatfield is formed in the same way. Near Fillmore the branches of Root river, known as Deer and Bear creeks, afford good water powers by their descent from the lower Trenton to the St. Peter. Mills have been built at both points. On the south branch of Root river, above Forestville, the stream leaves the Trenton, and the waterfall has been improved in the same manner, at Baldwin's Mill. The same fact is illustrated by a great number of eastward flowing streams, in the eastern border counties, between Fillmore county and the falls of St. Anthony at Minneapolis. Of course, rapids are also likely to be formed, especially in small streams, when passing through the areas of rock of uniform hardness. Such water-powers, and others that are formed by the construction of dams, do not fall into this class.

While the immediate valleys of Root river and its tributaries are apt to be rocky, the country that spreads out in either direction, after leaving the valleys, is not rough. It is rolling, or undulating. In the eastern portion the rocks are covered by a heavy deposit of rich, clayey, loam, known as the *loess*, which fills up many depressions and lends a uniform and remarkable fertility to the soil. It constitutes the soil. The farms are all well drained, naturally. The county contains no lakes. In York township there is a slough which on some maps is represented as a lake. It is about a quarter of a mile across. The Trenton area is distinctly separated, topographically, from that of St. Peter and the lower formations. From the Trenton to the Lower Magnesian the surface descends by a step or terrace, about 125 feet. Some of the Trenton areas are isolated from the main area, and constitute small tables or mounds, which are well known as "Trenton mounds" in the early reports. Some travelers have referred them to the agency of the ancient "mound builders," and a good many of the residents, who are not aware of the geological causes that have produced them, still believe that they are artificial instead of natural. From some of the elevated Trenton areas, overlooking the river valleys, magnificent views of landscape may be had. From the elevated Trenton area in Newburg township, the eye looks over the valley of S. Root river, and can almost discern the Trenton bluffs on the opposite slopes of Root river in the northern part of the county. From the peninsula of the Trenton running north between Camp and Willow creeks, in Preston township, the village of Fountain is plainly discernible across the valleys of the S. Branch of Root river and Watson's creek, with a wide expanse of alternating timber and prairie between, while on either side is a broad undulating valley of prairie land. On the east is Camp creek valley, and on the west is that of Willow creek. These valleys are deep and wide, but owing to the thickness of the loess loam, the slopes are gentle and broad, and, in the fall of the year, when the industry of the farmer is exhibited in the plowing of his wheat fields, and the threshing of his last crop, in every direction may be heard the rattle of threshers, often running by steam, and may be seen a hundred teams preparing for the next harvest. Another magnificent view may be obtained from the Trenton peninsula on secs. 10 and 15 in Carrollton. From here the view extends north over the valley of Root river to the Trenton bluffs along the north boundary of the county, a distance of over forty miles, and toward the south over the valley of the S. Branch of Root river, looking over Preston and Lanesboro, which are situated within the river bluffs, so far below the general level of the country, that they can be seen but a short distance before reaching them. Further down Root river valley, the gorge in which the river runs becomes wider, being at Rushford, about two miles in width with fine farm lands in the bottoms. The bluffs are rounded off with age and have a thin soil, generally turfed, though showing frequent rock exposure. The river is there 565 feet below the tops of the bluffs, as measured by aneroid. At Whalen, in Holt township, the river is, by the same measurement, 470 feet below the top of the Trenton terrace on sec. 20. Whalen's Bluff is 250 feet high above the river. At Lanesboro, in Carrollton, the river is 285 feet below the immediate river bluffs, which consist wholly of the Lower Magnesian formation, and about 440 feet below the top of the Trenton terrace on sec. 20, Holt. At Preston the river at the stone mill is 335 feet below the Trenton terrace, which forms the general level about a mile south of the village. At Isinours Station the river runs 145 feet below the top of the Shakopee limestone which forms there the brow of the immediate river bluffs. At Forestville, the height of the country, north of the village, above the river, is 285 feet. The immediate river bluffs are 190 feet above the mill pond. At Chatfield, the river is about 222 feet below the general level of the country. At Fillmore, the prairie upland is 200 feet above the river level. From Fountain to Isinours station, the track of the Southern Minnesota railroad descends 401 feet, passing from the upper Trenton to the St. Lawrence, and entering the latter formation about 25 feet, the rocks all lying nearly horizontal At Weisbeck's Mill, on Deer Creek, section 11, Spring Valley, the river is 205 feet below the general level of the country. There is here a little drift, but the cut is mostly in the Galena and Trenton limestones. The village of Fountain is about 350 feet higher than the terrace, at Preston, on which the Stanwix House stands. These measurements might be multiplied, but enough have been given to show the unevenness of the surface, due to erosion. The rocks lie everywhere nearly horizontal. The varied topography of the county is due to the influence of running water, and atmospheric forces, on the rocks, combined with their alternations of limestone with soft sandstone. The limestones are firm, and resist these forces much longer than the sandstones. They alternate in the following manner, in descending order:

Trenton limestone.
St. Peter sandstone.
Shakopee limestone.
Jordan sandstone.
St. Lawrence limestone.
St. Croix sandstone.

The limestones form the prominent features in the topography. They have the most frequent outcrops. They project along the summits of the bluffs, and constitute the brows of benches or terraces that diversify the county. The sandstones never, or very seldom, appear in the tops of the bluffs. They outcrop in sheltered nooks, or below the line of the limestone exposure. They are more likely to be hid by soil and turf. The lower Trenton contains, besides about 20 feet above the St. Peter sandstone, a layer of easily eroded green shale, which, outcropping by roadsides, introduces a series of springs and muddy spots, being impervious to water, that invariably follows that boundary line wherever it goes. It withstands the disintegrating action of the elements even more successfully than the limestones themselves. For that reason it protects that portion of the Trenton which lies below it, long after that which lies above it has been entirely denuded. The strike of the upper Trenton is often driven back several miles from that of the lower Trenton. The lime rock which lies below this shale is about 20 feet thick. The singular Trenton mounds, which have already been mentioned, are composed of the lower Trenton protected by a greater or less thickness of the green shale, and a portion of the St. Peter sandstone. The subjoined diagram illustrates the manner of weathering down of the Trenton and St. Peter. Instances of this may be seen in almost any square mile, in the loam-covered area, along the outrunning strike of the Trenton.

Fig. 1



Illustrative Diagram showing the effect of the Trenton and Green Shales on the Topography.

At *a* the Trenton has its full thickness, about 160 feet. Such a point may be found at Fountain; *b* represents an outcrop of the upper Trenton, as seen along the gorges that are frequent in the Trenton area. Such an outcrop is visible at the "Big Spring," a few miles northwest of Fountain, where the water rushes out in a great volume near the base of the bluff, and probably on a level with the top of the Green Shale. At *c* is a marshy tract, or one that is gently sloping, having a springy margin, near the brow of the lower bluff. Such spots are visible particularly at Chatfield, in the northern part of the village, near Jacob's lime-kiln, and west of there. A fine illustration of the effect of this shale on the surface drainage may be seen in section 35, Holt, where a copious spring issues from near the top of the mound of Trenton, the water being shed by the shale overlying, and is gathered by troughs into a tank for watering stock. *d* represents the outcropping edge of the lower Trenton, It is this which is seen in the summits of the isolated mounds, and which forms the conspicuous shoulder that exists wherever the strike of the lower Trenton crosses the county. The slope *e* is occupied by the St. Peter sandstone. Sometimes this is quite precipitous, and its upper forty or fifty feet are very apt to be, but its lower portion is generally very gently descending, so that it is impossible to determine when it is replaced by the Shakopee which underlies it. The horizontal distance between *b* and *d* is sometimes several miles. This is apt to be the case along the eastern margin of the Trenton area. Indeed the detached Trenton areas in Holt and Amherst, and notably that in Pilot Mound, townships, comprise only this lower portion of the Trenton. The Shakopee limestone, *f*, underlying the St. Peter, is that which occurs along the tops of the immediate bluffs of the river, as at Preston, Lanesboro, Clear Grit and Whalen. At Chatfield it is seen at the mill, and rises about thirty feet above the river.

Throughout the Trenton area are found a great many depressions that are well known as "sink-holes." These consist of broken down spots in the drift, or loam, where it had been spread over a pre-existing canon in the rock. In some places they are very numerous, but they are confined, so far as known, with but a single exception, to the Trenton areas. They throw some light on the condition of rocky surface prior to the period which witnessed the spreading of the drift. The rock was wrought, at least in Fillmore county, in very much the same manner as we now see it along the river gorges. The immense valleys of erosion which we see, not only in Fillmore county, but also throughout the tract that has been denominated the "Driftless area," were excavated before the glacial period. When the streams of the present time run in such gorges they have been so located by the exigencies of surface drainage and erosion since the glacial epoch. That these gorges antedate the glacial period is shown by their existence beneath the glacial drift. These sink-holes sometimes occur in lines, and with increasing frequency and size toward a large valley, and at last coalesce so as to form a continuous valley, though frequently without running water, that becomes tributary to the larger gorge. These gorges under the drift can sometimes be traced for some distance by a series of successive sink-holes. Sometimes streams are lost in them, and reappear at lower levels. There are several well-known subterranean passages in the county. Lost Creek, in Jordan township, and the Brook Kedron, in Sumner, both have underground passages for several miles. Canfield Creek, south of Forestville, runs underground about twelve miles, and, finally, the south branch of Root River sinks on the northeast quarter of section 19, Forestville, and runs underground, except in high water, to about the center of section 21, where it reappears again. These underground passages are in the area of the Trenton. They indicate the corrugated surface the country presented prior to the overspreading of the drift and loess loam. The Trenton cannot be supposed to have been any more subject to such causes as produced this channeling in the rock than the other formations of the Lower Silurian. There is some reason, however, why these gorges are found almost entirely confined to that limestone. As has been said, the rest of the Lower Silurian consists of alternating sandstones and limestones, which conduces to their breaking down laterally, the sandstones easily crumbling out. The Trenton limestone, on the other hand, while it has a thickness of 160 feet, more or less, has, near its base, a bed of impervious shale, which prevents the downward infiltration of the surface water, and protects the underlying sandstone. Hence the erosions that operate laterally, in tearing down the other Lower Silurian formations, are occupied, in the Trenton limestone area, in cutting narrow perpendicular gorges. For this reason the Trenton area is everywhere the highest in the county. From the eastern boundary of the Trenton, looking east, one beholds a broad landscape lying several hundred feet, in some places, below him, the effect of the more rapid denudation of the rocks of that portion of the county. Into such narrow gorges neither the drift nor the loess loam, however deposited, would enter with such compactness as to close up the pre-existing water courses; and when partially closed up, as they were wherever sink-holes have since appeared, they have been undergoing ever since a process of re-excavation. This process is revealed in the occasional collapsing of the surface soil, and the formation of a new sink-hole, and in the enlargement of others, since the settlement of the county. The following notes on the various towns of the county show the distribution of timber, the area and the magnetic variation at the time of the United States township survey (1854.) The distribution of timber, however, as herein noted, varies somewhat from the actual facts as existing at the present time. The areas of timber as they exist now, are more correctly shown on the accompanying map, which is based on that of the county published in Andreas' Atlas of Minnesota.

In addition to the timbered areas as here noted, a great proportion of the county is covered with bushes which are composed of hazel, aspen, oak (two sorts) and, where these are wanting, a species of low willow which seems to come up first after the prairie fires are stopped. After the willow, hazel and oak and aspen gradually come in, and in time convert the original prairie to a bushy or timbered region. Over a great deal of the county this process is going on. There are thousands of acres of young native timber not exceeding five or six inches in diameter.

The general elevation of the county above the sea may be seen from the following points along the Southern Minnesota R. R.:

Rushford Depot	711 feet.
Lanesboro Depot	831 feet.
Isinour's Station	888 feet.
Fountain Depot	1,289 feet.
Grand Meadow, Mower County	1,325 feet.

Notes from the Surveyor's Plats of Towns of Fillmore Co.

Newburg. *T.* 101 *N.*, *R.* 8 *W.*

A large portion of this town is prairie. In the N. W. corner the S. Branch of Root river introduces a broken and wooden tract in secs. 6, 5 and 4. Thickets of small timber are found in the central and southwestern portions, and also in the northeast. Magnetic Variation 4° 45′ to 9° 22′. Area, 23,045.54 acres.

Preble. *T.* 102 *N.*, *R.* 8 *W.*

This town is mainly wooded. It is crossed in the northeasterly direction by the south branch of Root river, which, with its tributaries brings in a great diversity of surface. There is a small prairie patch in sections 25, 26, 34, 35 and 36. Magnetic Variation 6° 10′ to 9° 12′. Area, 23,053.60 acres.

Norway. *T.* 103 *N.*, *R.* 8 *W.*

An irregular patch of prairie enters this town from the south and west, becomes narrow in the central portion, but expands to three miles in extent N. and S. in the northeastern. This prairie belt is a divide between the tributaries of the South Branch and of Root river, and is broken into by the bluffs that accompany those tributaries and extend beyond the limit of flowing water. Variation 6° 46′ to 9° 10′. Acreage, 23,012.08.

Rushford. *T.* 104 *N.*, *R.* 8 *W.*

The only prairie land found in this town is that along the bottom land of Root river lying within the rock bluffs. This is marshy, except along the tributary valleys. Root river crosses the central part of the town, and flows several hundred feet lower than the level of the adjoining country. Magnetic Variation 5° 45′ to 9° 6′ Acreage, 23,149.13.

Canton. *T.* 101 *N*, *R.* 9 *W.*

This township is wooded, except in the northeastern and southeastern portions, and a small area entering from the west covering secs. 18 and 19. Mag. Var. 7° 5′ to 10° 56′. Acreage, 23,054.32.

Amherst. *T.* 102 *N.*, *R.* 9 *W.*

The larger portion of this town is prairie, broken with patches of thicket and heavier timber. Mag. Var. 7° 42′ to 10° 50′. Acreage, 23,045.72.

Holt. *T.* 103 *N.*, *R.* 9 *W.*

A prairie tract covers secs. 25, 35 and 36, and a portion of 31. With this exception, and the wet prairie within the river bluffs, this town is wooded. The Root river passes through sections 7, 8, 9, 3 and 2. Mag. Var. 5° 12′ (N. side of sec. 3) to 14° 51′ (N. side of sec. 5). Acreage, 23,046.70.

Arendahl *T.* 104 *N.*, *R.* 9 *W.*

The prairie portion is in the northwest and centre. A belt of timber skirts along the northern boundary, and on the east unites with the timber of the Root river valley in the southeast. About one-half of the town is timbered. Mag. Var. 5° 21′ to 17°. (The former is on the south side of sec. 33, and the latter on the southwest part of the same section.) Acreage, 23,007.34.

Harmony. *T.* 101 *N.*, *R.* 10 *W.*

This town is represented as all wooded except about one section, covering parts of 14, 13, 23 and 24; and about half a section covering contiguous portions of secs. 18 and 19. (There seems to be an error in the plat of this town. The central portion is probably prairie.) Mag. Var. 9° 25′ to 12°. Acreage, 23,018.72.

Preston. *T.* 102 *N.*, *R.* 10 *W.*

This town is greatly diversified with frequent changes from prairie to thicket and timber. The Root river, which enters it in section 6, soon leaves it on section 5, but by its deeply eroded valley has brought in a marked diversity of surface, accompanied by more or less timber. Mag. Var. 9° 17′ to 12° 12′. Acreage, 23,008.29.

Carrollton. *T.* 103 *N.*, *R.* 10 *W.*

There is but little prairie in this town. The only parts so represented being in sections 35 and 36, and the northern portion of section 6. A tract of heavy timber occurs in the northwest, sections 7 and 8. The valley of the Root River, though very rough, is not always wooded. Mag. Var. 6° 12′ to 13° 45′. Acreage, 23,026.34.

Pilot Mound. *T.* 104 *N.*, *R.* 10 *W.*

In the northeastern part there is a prairie tract and also in the northwestern, but the greater portion is represented as wooded, or covered with brush and thickets. The Root river, which crosses it in a southeasterly direction, brings in a deep valley of erosion, with rock-bound bluffs several hundred feet high. Var. 8° 51′ to 13° 45′. Acreage, 22,998.57.

Bristol. *T.* 101 *N.*, *R.* 11 *W.*

This town consists of prairie and thickets, a belt of the former, widening to 5 miles toward the west, crossing it from east to west. Mag. Var. 10° 20′ to 12° 40′. Acreage, 23,026.98.

Carimona. *T.* 102 *N.*, *R.* 11 *W.*

There is an area of prairie in the southwestern corner of this town, but the most of the town is covered with sparse timber, with patches of heavy timber. It has a great many "sink holes." Mag. Var. 8° 30′ to 12° 15′. Acreage, 23,071.37.

Fountain. *T.* 103 *N.*, *R.* 11 *W.*

A great many "sink holes" also are found in this town. It has small patches of timber or oak thickets, scatterred over the whole area, and a considerable heavy timber along the streams. Watson's creek crossing it from west to east, is the cause of a considerable diversity of surface. Var. 8° 5′ to 11° 6′. Acreage, 23,103.77.

Chatfield. *T.* 104 *N.*, *R.* 11 *W.*

The North Branch of Root river, with its various tributaries, causes a rough and sometimes rocky character of surface to prevail in much of this town. It has but little real prairie, though there are openings in the thickets and oak bushes that are without timber. Mag. Var. 7° 51′ to 11° 2′. Acreage, 23,022.63.

York. *T.* 101 *N.*, *R.* 12 *W.*

A tract of wood and thicket crosses this town N. and S., about two miles wide, east of the center. The rest is prairie. Mag. Var. 9° 49′ to 11° 43′. Acreage, 23,076.54.

Forestville. *T.* 102 *N.*, *R.* 12 *W.*

The central part of this town is covered with timber and small oaks and aspens. It has a tract of prairie in the N. W. and in the S., both together covering about six sections. It abounds in sink holes. Mag. Var. 9° 41′ to 12° 2′. Acreage, 23,205.28.

Fillmore. *T.* 103 *N.*, *R.* 12 *W.*

There is a region of heavy timber west of the Middle Branch of Root river, in this town. The rest is prairie interspersed with thickets and patches of oak brush and aspen. Mag. Var. 8° 40′ to 11° 42′. Acreage, 23,032.33.

Jordan. *T.* 104 *N.*, *R.* 12 *W.*

The greater portion of this town is covered with heavy timber, the only noteworthy region of prairie being in the northwestern corner, covering secs. 6, 7 and 18, and parts of 19, 20, 17, 8 and 5. Mag. Var. 9° 42′ to 12°. Acreage, 23,035.51.

Beaver. *T.* 101 *N.*, *R.* 13 *W.*

A strip of timber accompanies the valley of Slough Creek, across the whole of this town, from section 6 to section 35, and the rest is of prairie, with several narrow sloughs, running generally north and south. Mag. Var. 8° 59′ to 11° 15′. Acreage, 23,072.50.

Bloomfield. *T.* 102 *N.*, *R.* 13 *W.*

There is an irregular area of timber and oak brush in the eastern and central part of this town, accompanying and spreading northward from the valley of the South Branch of Root river, but about two-thirds of the whole is of prairie, with a few sloughs in the eastern part. Mag. Var. 9° 8′ to 12°. Acreage, 23,013.96.

Spring Valley. *T.* 103 *N.*, *R.* 13 *W.*

There is a belt of prairie covering the southern tier of sections, including parts of 29, 28 and 27. The rest is sparsely or heavily timbered. Var. 10° 15′ to 13°. Acreage, 23,063.86.

Sumner. *T.* 104 *N.*, *R.* 13 *W.*

The southeastern part of this town is wooded, but more than one-half is of prairie, and flat. Mag. Var. 8° 25′ to 13° 15′. Acreage, 22,915.69.

Soil and Timber.

The soil of the county is generally very fertile. The immediate surface is a loam. This varies in color and composition, as well as in origin. That portion of the county covered with the northern drift has primarily a drift soil, which consists of gravelly clay. Where this forms the immediate surface, which is the case only on knolls and on the brows of the river bluffs, it affords a soil of an ashen color, if dry. In timbered belts it is more stony, or gravelly. In the open prairies, and in low grounds, it is covered with a loam. This is believed to have resulted from the natural decomposition of the coarse materials of the drift, under the calcining influence of the prairie fires, and the frosts of ages. It has never been seen stratified, or arranged with any regularity that would indicate its having been deposited either by standing or running water. In most cases, especially on the open prairie, it is nearly black. As it is mingled with the drift clay, it becomes lighter colored. In the low grounds it is much thicker, and also of a black color. Overlapping the drift area, in a belt about five miles wide, is a soil formed by the mingling of the loess loam with the drift. The loess loam is later than the glacial drift, and in the process of deposition it is modified by contact with the drift clay. The loess loam is indistinctly stratified, though it usually appears massive, and consists of fine, often clayey, sediment. The soil derived from it, usually sandy and light colored, or rusty, is sometimes so clayey as to make, when wet, a fine and very slippery mud. The soil derived distinctively from the loess loam covers at least one-half of the county, and is supposed to extend to the Mississippi river. It makes a rich and apparently a strong soil, as it supports a cropping of wheat from year to year. It is impossible to define its western limit. If it were derived from a long-standing inland lake, some beach lines would be found indicating its western boundary. No beach lines have been found. That it was deposited from standing water can hardly be questioned. It thins out westwardly gradually, passing through a confused or mixed condition, resulting from the mingling of the drift materials with the sediment, or by its overlapping the drift. While the essentially loess loam soil, of the eastern part of the county, can be distinguished easily from the drift soil of the western, no line of demarkation separating them has been noticed. A line drawn from the southeast corner of Bristol to the northeast corner of Jordan would roughly set off the area that has a distinctively loess loam soil. West of that is a belt five or six miles wide, in which the loess loam soil mingles with the drift soil. The rest of the county toward the west is occupied with a distinctively drift soil, or drift loam soil.

The following list embraces such native trees and shrubs as were seen in the survey of the county. The trees are arranged in the estimated order of frequency. The area covered by native timber is steadily increasing:

Burr Oak. Quercus macrocarpa. *Michx.*

Red Oak. Quercus rubra. *L.* (*?*) [This is the oak that is abundant as underbrush, and small trees. It often forms thickets skirting the outlines of a prairie.]

Aspen. Populus tremuloides. *Michx.* [Generally small, and on the borders of prairies.]

White Oak. Quercus alba. *L.* [Common in the timber in Spring Valley and Jordan townships, and generally along the valleys of the principal streams.]

Wild Plum. Prunus Americana. *Marsh.*

Great-toothed Poplar. Populus grandidentata. *Michx.* [Very frequently mistaken for the American Aspen]

American Elm. Ulmus Americana. (*Pl. Clayt.*) *Willd.*

Bass. Tilia Americana. *L.*

White Ash. Fraxinus Americana. *L.*

American Crab. Pyrus coronaria. *L.* [Common along the margins of prairies and in open valleys.]

Iron Wood. Ostrya Virginica. *Willd.*

Red Maple. Acer rubrum. *L.*

Sugar Maple. Acer saccharinum. *Wang.* [Common in the heavy timber in Spring Valley and Jordan township.]

Cottonwood. Populus monilifera. *Ait.*

Black Cherry. Prunus serotina. *Ehr.* [Trees generally small.]

Black Oak. Quercus tinctoria. *Bart.* (?) [Found in the heavy timber in the northwestern portion of the county.

Bitternut, Carya amara. *Nutt.*

Butternut. Juglans cinerea. *L.* [Seen most abundant in the heavy timber in the northwestern part of the county.]

Wild Red Cherry. Prunus Pennsylvanica *L.*

Thorn Apple. Crataegus coccinea. *L.*

Cockspur Thorn. Crataegus Crus-galli. *L.*

White Birch. Betula alba. Var. populifolia. *Spach.* (?) [Trees small; generally on stony soil, or along rocky river banks.]

Black Walnut. Juglans nigra. *L.* [In the heavy timber of the northwestern part of the county.]

Box Elder. Negundo aceroides. *Mœnch.*

Small Cedar. Juniperus Sabina, *L.* Var. procumbens, *Pursh.*(?) [Along the rocky river bluffs.]

White Pine. Pinus Strobus. *L.* An occasional large tree is seen along the river bluffs; but the most of it, suitable for lumber, has been cut.

Water Beech. Carpinus Americana. *Michx.*

Shag-bark Hickory. Carya alba. *Nutt.* [Seen in the valley of Root river, and in the tributary gorges at Rushford.]
Smooth Sumac. Rhus glabra. *L.*
Cornel. Cornus paniculata. *L'Her.*
Cornel. Cornus circinata. *L'Her.*
Wolfberry. Symphoricarpus occidentalis. *R. Br.*
American Woodbine. Lonicera grata. *Ait.*
Juneberry. Amelanchier Canadensis. *Torr. and Gray.*
Hazelnut. Corylus Americana. *Walt.*
High Blackberry. Rubus villosus. *Ait.*
Red Rasperry. Rubus strigosus. *Michx.*
Black Raspberry. Rubus occidentalis. *L.*
Dwarf Wild Rose. Rosa lucida. *Ehr.*
Pipe Vine. Aristolochia Sipho. *L'Her.* (?)
Grape. Vitis cordifolia. *Michx.*
Virginia Creeper. Ampelopsis quinquefolia. *Michx.*
Nine Bark. Spiraea opulifolia. *L.*
Sheep-berry. Viburnum Lentago, *L.*
Staghorn Sumac. Rhus typhina. *L.* (Rare.)
Bittersweet. Celastrus scandens. *L.*
Rose. Rosa blanda. *Ait.*

The Geological Structure.

The rocks of the county belong to the Devonian and to the Upper and Lower Silurian ages. The Cretaceous also appears in Sumner township, in the extreme northwestern corner of the county. They occur as arranged in the following order, with their approximate thicknesses:

1.	Cretaceous. Thickness unknown, perhaps 100 feet, lying unconformably on the older rocks.	
2.	Upper Devonian. Hamilton.	100 feet.?
3.	Lower Devonian. Corniferous.(?)	
4.	Niagara of the Upper Silurian	200–250 feet.
5.	Maquoketa (Cincinnati) of the Lower Silurian	*75–100 feet.
6.	Galena, of the Lower Silurian	75–100 feet.
7.	Trenton, of the Lower Silurian	160 feet.
8.	St. Peter, of the Lower Silurian	122 feet.
9.	Shakopee, Lower Magnesian of the Lower Silurian,	75 feet.
10.	Jordan,	25–40 feet.
11.	St. Lawrence,	200 feet.
12.	St. Croix, of the Lower Silurian, exposed	375 feet.

With the exception of the Cretaceous these formations have a *strike* across the county northwest and southeast. They have a gentle dip, at least theoretically, toward the southwest, though no general dip is perceptible. The oldest rock in the county is the St. Croix sandstone, which appears in the northeastern corner of the county. The latest, except the Cretaceous, is the Devonian, in the southwestern part of the county. The areas of outcrop are shown by the colored map of the county accompanying this report. The boundary between the Trenton and the St. Peter is the most accurately defined, owing to the terrace which marks it. The boundary between the St. Peter and Shakopee it is impossible to ascertain certainly, because of the universality of the loam, which acts, in that respect, just the same as a heavy drift deposit, and also because of the persistency of the Shakopee compared to that of the St. Peter. When the friable rock is below a hard and persistent one, as the St. Peter below the Trenton, the boundary between them can be traced out easily by the resulting topography; but when the soft one is uppermost it wedges out imperceptibly under the loam, or drift, and one cannot say when it is all gone. In the western part of the county the boundary lines are all obscured by the prevalence of the drift. The Maquoketa shales have not been seen in the county. They are visible in the bluffs of the Upper Iowa River, at Lime Springs, about three miles south of the State line, and very probably continue through Fillmore county, in the strike of the Lower Silurian.

---

* Geology of Wisconsin, Vol. 1, p. 181.

The St. Croix Sandstone.

The area of the St. Croix sandstone is small. It only occupies the lower portion of the river bluffs, and the bottom land included between them, from the county line, near Rushford, to near Lanesboro. This bottom land is sometimes two miles, or more, in width, but it is an alluvial deposit, and never reveals the rock. The only visible outcrops are in the slopes of the bluffs. This sandstone also enters the county, in a similar manner, in the valley of the South Branch of Root river, and extends about three miles west of the county line.

Its *general lithological character* is all that can be learned of this rock from its exposures in Fillmore county. The opportunity for examination is very unfavorable. The bluffs, over the interval occupied by it, are almost universally turfed, and a heavy talus rises nearly or quite to the lower level of the St. Lawrence limestone. It is in general a light colored sandstone, with alternations of limestone, and some shale, in its upper portions. The sandstone layers crumble easily. Some of the beds are of a very coarse grain, but the quartz is generally white, almost transparent. The limestone layers are like that of the St. Lawrence, and contain a few fossils, none of which have been studied yet with care sufficient for reliable specific identification. At Whalen, about 95 feet of the St. Croix sandstone are included in the lower slopes of the bluffs. This thickness of bedding disappears below the river level before reaching Lanesboro. At Rushford, the sandstone, and talus which is supposed to consist mainly of sandstone, rise 375 feet above the river. Near the upper portion of the sandstone, a conspicuous terrace or line of frequent exposure, producing a shoulder, may be seen along the creek in entering Rushford from the south.

The St. Lawrence Limestone.

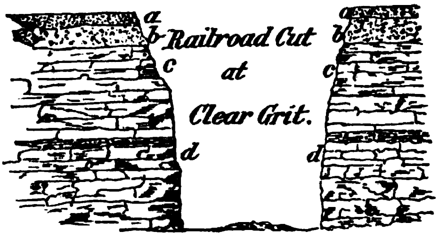
This is the lowest portion of the *Lower Magnesian* formation of Dr. D. D. Owen. In the annual report for 1873, the geology of the Minnesota Valley is given. It is there announced that the great formation to which the name *Lower Magnesian* has been applied, consists of three distinct members—two limestones separated by a sandstone—and the names of the localities where these members have their characteristic outcrops, in that valley, were applied to distinguish them, as they will play an important part in working out the detailed geology of the eastern portion of the state. Since the publication of that report, a similar subdivision of the Lower Magnesian has been discovered in the state of Wisconsin, and it is announced in the American Journal of Science and Arts, for June, 1875, by Prof. R. Irving, of the University of Wisconsin. The county of Fillmore lies intermediate between the two points at which this similar alternation of parts in the Lower Magnesian has been identified, and may throw some light on the question of the parallelism of these principal members. Fillmore county is separated from the Mississippi river by one county, Houston, which is 24 miles in width, east and west, and borders on the state of Iowa.

The *area* of this limestone is embraced in that which is, in general, assigned to the Lower Magnesian on the accompanying map. Along the river bluffs, nearly to Rushford, it is found only in the lower portion of the limestone belt, as the Jordan sandstone and Shakopee limestone are both preserved, and overlie it; but toward Rushford this limestone begins to be the only one that is found in the bluffs, the other members of the lower Magnesian having a strike across the country some miles in either direction away from the immediate valley. There are places, even further east still, where the overlying Jordan and Shakopee are preserved and appear in the tops of the river bluffs. The St. Lawrence extends in the bluffs of the Root river to some distance above Isinours' Station, and nearly to the lower mill at Preston. The valley of Watson's creek at Isinours' Station is cut about 25 feet into the St. Lawrence. At Lanesboro the amount of the St. Lawrence visible is about 195 feet. At Whalen 155 feet are seen in the upper portion of Whalen's bluff. At Rushford the uppermost 190 feet of the bluffs are of the St. Lawrence. The thickness of the formation is not far from 200 feet. It constitutes the principal portion of the Lower Magnesian.

The St. Lawrence, in Fillmore county, is a *dolomitic limestone*, with some of its layers distinctly arenaceous, and stained with green sand. In general, its bedding is regular and evident, but there is a thickness of about 15 feet near the bottom of the formation in which the bedding is confused, or the layers are lost horizontally. Below this confused bedding are, however, about 25 feet of regular beds, which have a fine even grain, and though not plainly arenaceous, yet have a very fine grit. On fresh surfaces it is of a buff color, varying to cream color. The upper portion abounds in patches of white calcite. There are also in the upper portion spots that show thin, concentric, though wavy, laminations, as if from concretionary forces, or the result of silicified masses of *foraminifers*, reminding the observer of the laminated masses of limestone from the *Laurentian* containing the *Eozoon Canadense* of Dr. Dawson. Though the most of the rock of this formation is vesicular, often coarsely so, it is much used for building, for which it furnishes both large blocks for the heaviest masonry, and fine-grained stone that can be cut into delicate forms. When cut for window caps or sills the cut surfaces are nearly white. The bedding varies in thickness from two or three inches to two or three feet, and sometimes embraces thin beds of shaly, light-colored, fine-grained rock that is useless for all purposes.

At Clear Grit Mills, in the valley of Root river, the St. Lawrence begins to show a continious line of bare rock, in the river bluffs, running along the lower slopes, and causes a shoulder or terrace in the general descent. A quarry near the mill-dam shows about 15 feet of even layers. Above these are the layers represented in the railroad cut near that place. These are light-colored, dolomitic, vesicular, abounding in patches of calcite with some chert, and siliceous concretions, the latter sometimes covered with limonite pseudomorphous after pyrite. The annexed profile exhibits the cut and the materials exposed.

Fig 2.



a.—Loess Loam, 3 feet, red.
b.—Drift Gravel, 4 feet, red.
c Jordan Sandstone, 16 feet, red.
d. St Lawrence Limestone, 30 feet.

At Whalen the St. Lawrence is finely exposed in the bluff that stands in the valley about half a mile below the village. It has here been considerably quarried, and furnishes a very good stone for buildings. It lies in even layers, which are easily broken into desirable size and shape, furnishing a good cut-stone of close grain, without openings. Of the 155 feet that here overlie the St. Croix sandstone, only the lower portion is well exposed. The exposed layers are separated from those seen at the quarry at Clear Grit by an interval of 50 feet. They consist of the following parts, aggregating 60 feet:

1.	Slope, hid by turf, (St. Lawrence)	95 feet.
2.	Heavy beds, even-grained, vesicular, the best general building stone	20 feet.
3.	Bedding confused, not evident, lenticular	15 feet.
4.	Fine grit, regular beds, dolomitic	20 feet
5.	Hard arenaceous, projecting, fossiliferous with the remains of trilobites	5 feet.

At Lanesboro the St. Lawrence has been used in the construction of the principal buildings. The quarries are owned by the Lanesboro Company. The stone presents the usual characters, but has associated masses of pyrite, largely converted to limonite, showing octahedral forms of crystals, with combinations. In some of the cherty nodules, are found small orthorhombic crystals of hydrated iron peroxide, formed by the conversion of marcasite into limonite. This iron ore is quite plentiful, but seems not to be a native of the rock. It embraces crag and bog-ore deposits, and is referable to the drift period. (See under *drift.*)

The Jordan Sandstone.

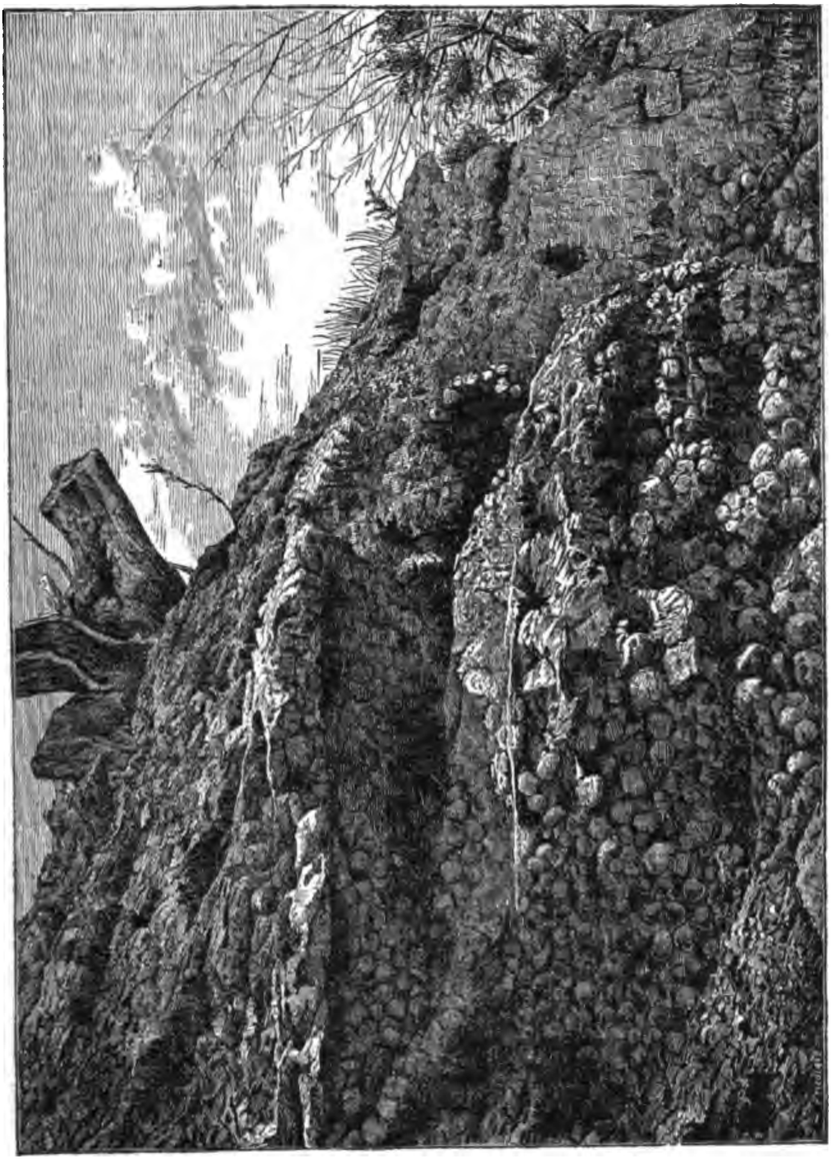
This sandstone, lying next above the St. Lawrence limestone, is not so frequently seen along the river bluffs. It is most commonly embraced in that interval of slope that comes between the two lines of limestone outcrop, and which is mostly turfed over, as in the bluffs at Lanesboro, and at points between Preston and Lanesboro. Further down the river, where the strike of the Shakopee runs back from the river a few miles on either side of the valley, it occupies the undulating surface between the immediate river bluffs and the boundary of the Shakopee, as at Rushford. This sandstone, in the Minnesota valley, has been mistaken for the Potsdam, the overlying Shakopee being supposed to be the lower portion of the lower Magnesian. (*Owen's Geological Survey of Wisconsin, Iowa, and Minnesota*, pp. 481–495. See, also, Prof. James Hall's "*Notes on the Geology of some portions of Minnesota, from St. Paul to the Western part of the State*," 1865.)

In Fillmore county the thickness of the Jordan is not so great as it is in the Minnesota valley. It seems to vary from 25 feet to 40 feet. At Mankato, in Blue Earth county, it is fully fifty feet thick. It is uniformly a coarse grained, quartzose, crumbling and light colored sandstone. It is sometimes locally stained with iron from surface water, when it presents a reddish or rusty color, and is apt to be much harder. It has in such cases a shell or thin coating of harder rock, about half an inch in thickness, on the weathered surfaces, on penetrating which the grains are loosely cemented, and even crumbling. In other places, it presents internally a streaked appearance, due to the stoppage of iron filtering through its strata. No fossils have been found in it.

One of the best exposures for examining this sandstone may be seen at Preston, where it rises 25 feet above the level of the river opposite the stone mill, and is surmounted by about 35 feet of the Shakopee limestone. The bluff itself rises about 95 feet above the river, but the contents of the upper portion, though probably of the Shakopee, are not certainly known. The loam covers it. The bedding of the stone here is regular, though in some places a little wavy, and is of all thicknesses, from a foot to three or four inches.

At Lanesboro the Jordan exhibits, near the top, a finely concretionary structure. The balls vary from a few inches to nearly a foot in diameter. Some of them are elongated, and several are frequently united. The rock itself is generably friable, and crumbles out, leaving the concretionary shapes visible. They are often loosened, and roll down the bluff. They lie in approximate layers for a thickness of four or five feet. Some of them are pendant from the projecting shelf, and stud the whole under surface. They are generally spherical, but when they are lengthened perpendicularly, they show the original lamination that ran through the rock, in the form of rings and furrows. The accompanying view, engraved from a photograph by Andrew Ellickson, of Lanesboro, gives an imperfect representation of this portion of the bluff. This view was taken near the mill dam, above the railroad cut.

FIG. 3.



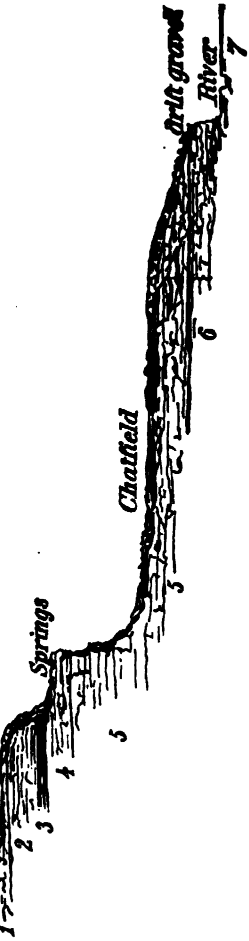
Concretions in the Jordan Sandstone at Lanesboro.

At Clear Grit the Jordan is 25 feet thick, and is exceedingly ferruginous. At Lanesboro it is about 40 feet thick.

The Shakopee Limestone.

This is the uppermost member of the Lower Magnesian, and is so named from the village of Shakopee, in Scott county, on the Minnesota river, where it was first identified as a distinct and entire member of the great Lower Magnesian Formation. In Fillmore county it is more frequently seen along the valley of Root river and its tributaries than any other formation. As it lies between two sandstones, each of which easily crumbles away under the operations of the elements, it is made to have a prominent position in giving form to valleys and river bluffs. The North Branch of Root river enters on it about six miles northwest of Chatfield, in Olmsted county; the Middle Branch near the town line between Chatfield and Jordan, and the South Branch but a short distance below Forestville. South Root river strikes it near Henry, in Amherst township. Thus, throughout about two-thirds of the county, it is the constant companion of the traveler along the river valleys, and it meets him often in the uplands, and in the valleys of little creeks. Its effect on the topography is to render the valleys narrow, rocky and abrupt. Within the general area of the St. Peter sandstone and the Trenton limestone, it produces a shoulder in the descent from the uplands to the valley. The following diagram, taken at Chatfield on the northern boundary of the county, illustrates in general the effect of this limestone in producing a terrace along the lower slopes of the river bluffs, within the general Trenton area.

Fig. 4.



Profile of the north side of the River Valley at Chatfield.

EXPLANATION:—1. Loam..........6–10 feet. 5. St. Peter..........122 feet.
2. Upper Trenton..........20–60 feet. 6. Shakopee..........30 feet.
3. Green Shale..........15 feet. 7. Flood plain.
4. Lower Trenton..........20 feet.

The descent from the general

level of the country at Chatfield (No. 1) to the river (No. 7) is about 222 feet, of which about 80 feet are of the Shakopee, the descent from the Shakopee to the river being at the river. The broad terrace on which Chatfield stands is constituted of the Shakopee overlain by irregular thicknesses of the St. Peter, with some drift and loam. The lithology of the Shakopee is very much the same in Fillmore county as it has been described in former reports at Mankato and Shakopee, in the Minnesota Valley. It is very similar to the St. Lawrence, with much less of green sand. It contains at Chatfield considerable disseminated sand, and nodules of calcite. The calcite is sometimes purely transparent, so as to exhibit the double refraction of Iceland spar, parting into large rhombohedrons, but the most of it is opaque. It is sometimes interspersed with sand grains taken up in the process of crystallization. These are so abundant as to make, of some crystalline masses, a sandstone which is then nodular and hard, with warty projections.

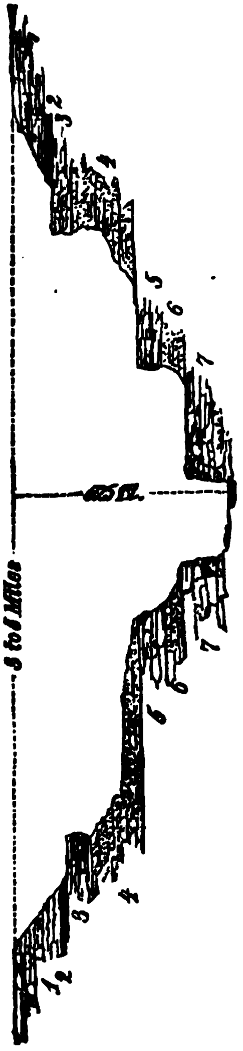


FIG. 5.

General Profile Section of the Valley of Root river.

EXPLANATION:—1. Upper Trenton. 2. Green Shales. 3. Lower Trenton. 4. St. Peter. 5. Shakopee. 6. Jordan. 7. St. Lawrence.

At Parsley's Ford, centre of section 15, Chatfield, a bridge is being built over the river, the abutments being of the Shakopee stone taken out near the ford, on Mrs. Doyle's land. At the ford the river is on the Jordan sandstone. There has been considerable stone cut off the bluffs, in the Shakopee, for use in the railroad bridge near the same place, and laid up in heavy blocks; but much of the Shakopee is in irregular and thin layers, unfit for such use.

At almost any point east of Chatfield and Carimona, the Shakopee can be seen by one crossing the valley of Root river, exhibiting its peculiar tendency to narrow the valley, and forming a conspicuous bench or shoulder. The following diagram of a general profile section of the valley, illustrates its form at points between Preston and Lanesboro; also between Chatfield and Lanesboro, along the North Branch. At Preston the rocks show a dip to the south.

At Isinours' Station the battlements of rock that enclose the valley, rising about 30 feet above the water, are of the Shakopee. There is an undulating ascent thence over the St. Peter to near the Trenton terrace, which rises nearly perpendicular about 50 feet. Beyond this is a flat, running sometimes but 8 or 10 rods, but not infrequently a quarter of a mile, when a further gradual ascent begins, covering the Green Shales and the Upper Trenton. This last ascent, with the loam that here covers the country, generally makes about 175 feet.

At Carimona, the Shakopee is visible in the banks of the river, rising 25 or 30 feet. Its average thickness is about 75 feet.

The St. Peter Sandstone.

The thickness of this well-known formation in Fillmore county does not vary much from its reported thickness in the central portion of the state. It has been taken at 125 feet. At Chatfield, it measures, by aneroid, 122 feet. In lithological characters it is also the same, consisting of clean white sand that easily crumbles. Near Fountain, an exposed section near the top of the formation, afforded fragments of an unknown species of *Lingulepis*, the first and only fossil of any kind that has ever been found in this rock. The following section was taken at this place. It includes the overlying lower Trenton, and the green shales, as seen at the quarry of Mr. Joseph Taylor, section 13, Fountain.

Section Near Fountain—Quarry of Joseph Taylor.

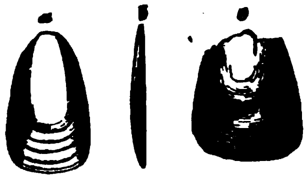
No. 1. Green shale, mixed with fragments of limestone that are eminently fossiliferous............................seen 3 feet.
No. 2. Limestone, of a bluish-gray color, in beds from four to six inches thick, free from shale, though the layers are sometimes thinly separated by shaly partings... ..... 10 feet.
No. 3. Arenaceous and ferruginous shale, alternating horizontally with firmly cemented patches of sandstone......... 2 feet.
No. 4. Massive, coarse sand; white, except where iron stained, containing irony quartzite pebbles, and fragile remains of bivalves.. 6 feet.

No. 5.	Green shale, with some arenaceous and calcareous laminations	8 feet.
No. 6.	Cemented sandstone, the cement being shale and lime, forming when the bluff is weathered, the floor of a bench	1 foot.
No. 7.	White sand, in beds that are about one foot thick, and horizontal	6 feet.
No. 8.	A course in the sandstone more firmly cemented, forming another table, but less persistent than No. 6	1 foot.
No. 8.	Massive sandstone, in some places showing an oblique lamination … seen	6 feet.

The Southern Minnesota railroad here enters on its descent to the Root river valley.

The species of *Lingulepis* mentioned is found in No. 4 of the foregoing section. The remains are exceedingly fragile, and as the grains of sand in which they are embraced are feebly cemented together, it is nearly impossible to transport, or even to handle them without their falling to pieces. These fragments, for no entire specimens were obtained, are arranged promiscuously in the coarse sand, and are all confined within three feet of the top of No. 4. They seem to have suffered the attrition and friction incident to coarse sedimentary transportation. They dispel the idea, which has been suggested, of the possible chemical origin of the St. Peter sandstone, as an oceanic precipitate.

FIG. 6.



Lingulepis Morsensis. (N. sp.) Natural size.

Description.—Shell conical or elongate-conical, with anterior angles rounded; depressed; the apical angle not seen perfect; the front margin gently convex; sides nearly straight, but converging at an angle of about 26 degrees; greatest width is near the front and at a distance from the anterior margin of one-third the greatest width. The surface is smooth and shining, marked with very fine concentric striæ, visible especially in the anterior portion, and with more distant, dim undulations of growth. Entire length of the larger specimen seen (Fig. C.) about .85 inch; width .52 inch; length of the smaller (Fig. B.) .78 inch, width .45 inch. Color of the shell light brown, with spots of brown. The smaller specimen has flattened, or slightly concave margins, for nearly two-thirds the length from the apex. This species in general contour resembles *Lingulepis Briseis*, of Billings, (Palæozoic Fossils, Vol. 1, p. 48,) but differs from it in not having its sides parallel.

Locality and Formation—Near Fountain, Fillmore county. Upper portion of the St. Peter sandstone. Named in honor of Prof. E. S. Morse.

The remarks that have already been made on the topography of the county, and the diagrams that have been given, will sufficiently elucidate the nature of the St. Peter, and its important part in the causes that have diversified the surface of Fillmore county.

The Trenton Limestone.

This formation is the most important one of the county, both on account of the great superficial area it embraces, and because it appears in numerous places under the most favorable circumstances for working for quicklime and for building stone. It is likewise the most conspicuous of all the formations, especially along the line of its strike, where it gives way, and the surface falls rather suddenly on to the lower level of the St. Peter sandstone.

The term *Trenton limestone* is here made to cover a thickness of rock of about 160 feet, and to embrace, within the limits of Fillmore county at least, three distinct members, of which the uppermost is the principal portion.

Upper Trenton limestone	125 feet.
Green shale	15 feet.
Lower Trenton limestone	20 feet.

The transition from the St. Peter sandstone to the lower Trenton is quite abrupt. There is no commingling of qualities from the Trenton downward into the St. Peter, although a shaly layer of about two feet separates them. The limestone always projects boldly beyond the sandstone, and the sandstone becomes immediately white and friable, with a very slight calcareous cement. The lower Trenton plays the most important part in producing the marked topographical characters of the central portions of Fillmore county, since, by its superposition over the crumbling St. Peter, it constitutes the edge of the shoulder or terrace that marks their line of superposition, and not unfrequently spreads out on the top of an isolated table or mound, thinly overlain by the lower layers of the green shale. Under the head of *Surface Features*, this point has been mentioned already, and the reader is referred to that section.

In Fillmore county, the lower Trenton, known sometimes as the "Buff limestone," which corresponds in horizontality with the limestone quarried at St. Paul and Minneapolis, is much less affected by disseminated shale than in those cities, and hence makes a much more desirable building stone. The color is light blue, and in quarrying the layers rarely exceed five inches in thickness. On weathered bluffs, the bedding appears even thinner than that, being apparently not more than two inches. When these layers are opened and considerably quarried they combine, and produce layers that are from four to six inches in thickness. They are generally tough and hard, though when broken they often fracture conchoidally, and in unexpected directions. The fossils they hold are undergoing careful examination. The most striking are species of *Orthoceras*, often regarded by the quarrymen as the remains of huge snakes, though really oceanic shell-fishes, and a beautiful species of *Lingulepis*.

The interval covered by the *green shale* (15 feet) is not often seen well exposed. The uppermost layers have not been seen at all in Fillmore county, but the lower layers are visible in many places where the lower Trenton is quarried. When wet constantly this shale becomes a plastic clay. Along the brow of the Trenton terrace it colors the earth in nearly all roadways that cross it, and produces, by shedding the surface water, very muddy spots, in which teams are sometimes mired. One remarkable spot of this kind is near the top of the bluff a mile and a half west from Chatfield, S. W. ¼ sec. 1, Jordan. This shale always lies in thin layers, and sometimes embraces continuous beds of blue limestone which are exceedingly fossiliferous. It also sometimes holds fragments of limestone, of the same kind, in the form of slabs. A great many fragments of *Chaetetes Lycoperdon* accompany this shale and roll down the face of the weathered slope, besides crinoidal fragments and species of *Orthis*, *Leptaena* and *Strophomena*.

The Upper Trenton, sometimes known as the Blue limestone in the northwest, which is about 125 feet thick, consists of a bluish or grayish, evenly bedded limerock, varying from fine-grained and compact, in layers of a few inches, to more vesicular, sometimes arenaceous, and in beds of one to two feet. It contains but little shale in Fillmore county—and that is near the base and near the top. This rock forms a great many precipitous bluffs. It appears in the form of mural faces along a great many creeks and canons in the central portion of the county. It generally rises nearly perpendicularly from the top of a short talus to the summit, exhibiting a continuous section of the bedding. Its area is pre-eminently the region of sink holes. The canons that are so frequent in it run out in ascending the valleys, and disappear in a succession of sink holes which become smaller and smaller, and more and more distant, till the general prairie level is reached. While in general the lithological characters of this part of the Trenton are quite uniform, near the top the layers begin to alternate with layers that exhibit the characteristic lithology of the Galena, and are accompanied with some thin layers of green shale. It seems to pass gradually into the Galena, or rather to assume the features that have been ascribed to that formation.

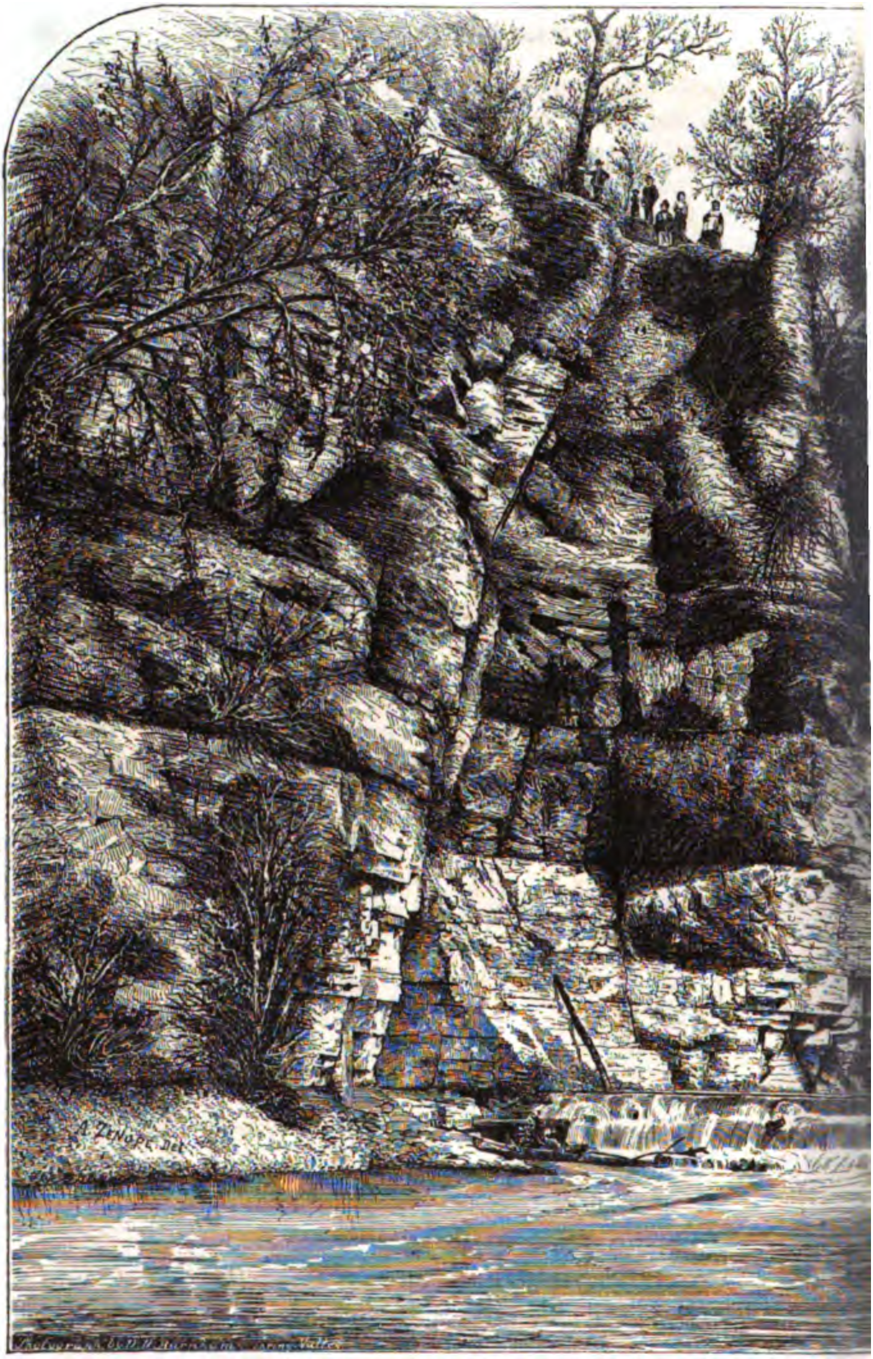
The following views represent the manner of weathering of the Upper Trenton. At Wesbeck's Dam, on Deer Creek, S. E. ¼ sec. 11, Spring Valley, the face of the bluff, which rises perpendicularly about a hundred feet, is wrought into a series of majestic pilasters running from the bottom to the top of the escarpment. The view here given is from a photograph by D. D. Burnham, of Spring Valley, engraved by the *Photo. Engraving Company*, 62 Courtlandt Street, New York.

top. This rock forms a great many precipitous bluffs. It appears in the form of mural faces along a great many creeks and canons in the central portion of the county. It generally rises nearly perpendicularly from the top of a short talus to the summit, exhibiting a continuous section of the bedding. Its area is pre-eminently the region of sink holes. The canons that are so frequent in it run out in ascending the valleys, and disappear in a succession of sink holes which become smaller and smaller, and more and more distant, till the general praire level is reached. While in general the lithological characters of this part of the Trenton are quite uniform, near the top the layers begin to alternate with layers that exhibit the characteristic lithology of the Galena, and are accompanied with some thin layers of green shale. It seems to pass gradually into the Galena, or rather to assume the features that have been ascribed to that formation.

The following views represent the manner of weathering of the Upper Trenton. At Weisbeck's Dam, on Deer Creek, S. E. ¼ sec. 11, Spring Valley, the face of the bluff, which rises perpendicularly about a hundred feet, is wrought into a series of majestic pilasters running from the bottom to the top of the escarpment. The view here given is from a photograph by D. D. Burnham, of Spring Valley, engraved by the *Photo. Engraving Company*, 62 Courtlandt Street, New York.

pears
ons in
erpen-
ting a
ly the
it run
f sink
e dis-
l the
form,
hibit
l with
into
ribed

f the
sec.
larly
sters
view
ring
andt


A. Zenope del.

VIEW OF THE UPPER TRENTON AT WEIS

IG. 7

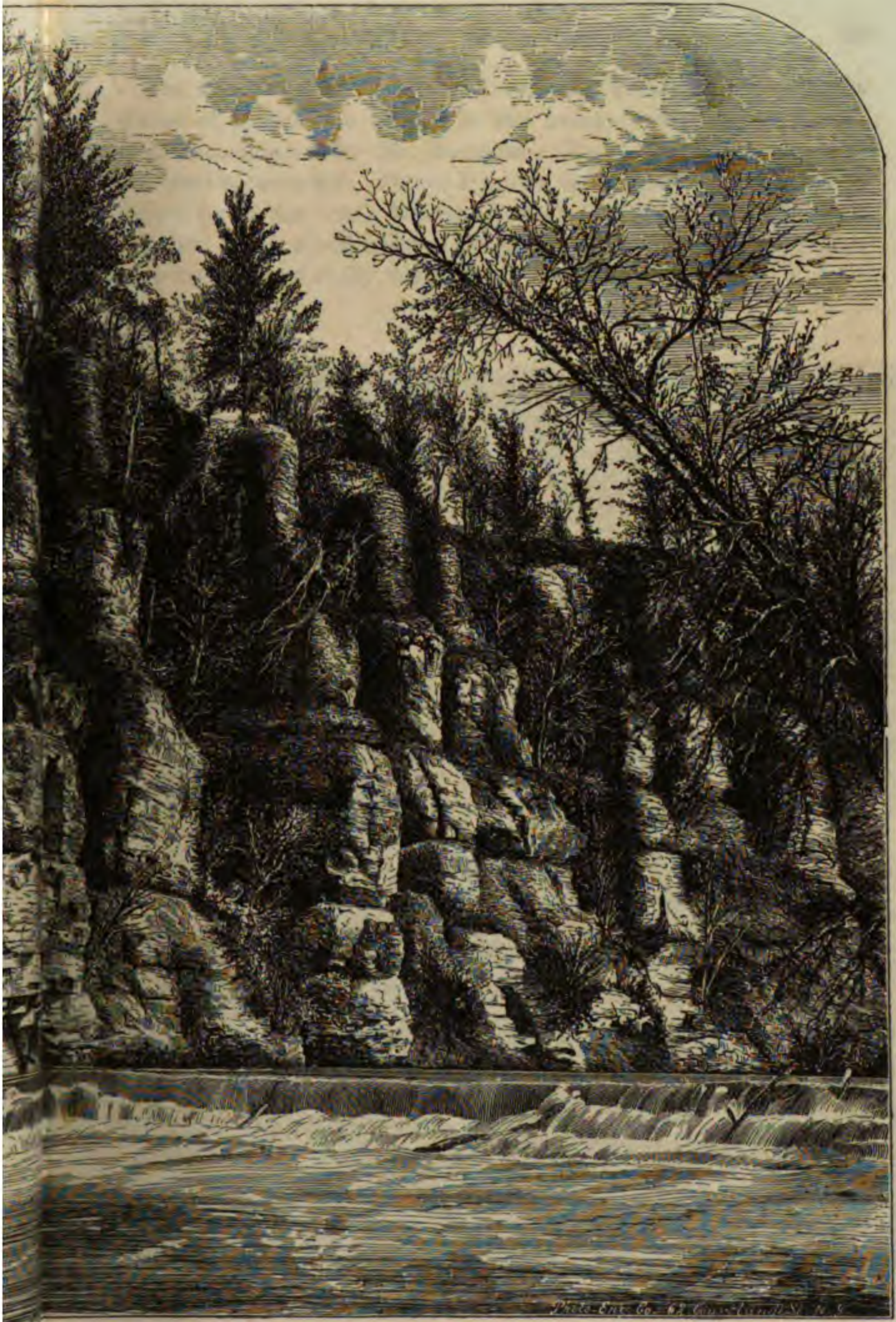
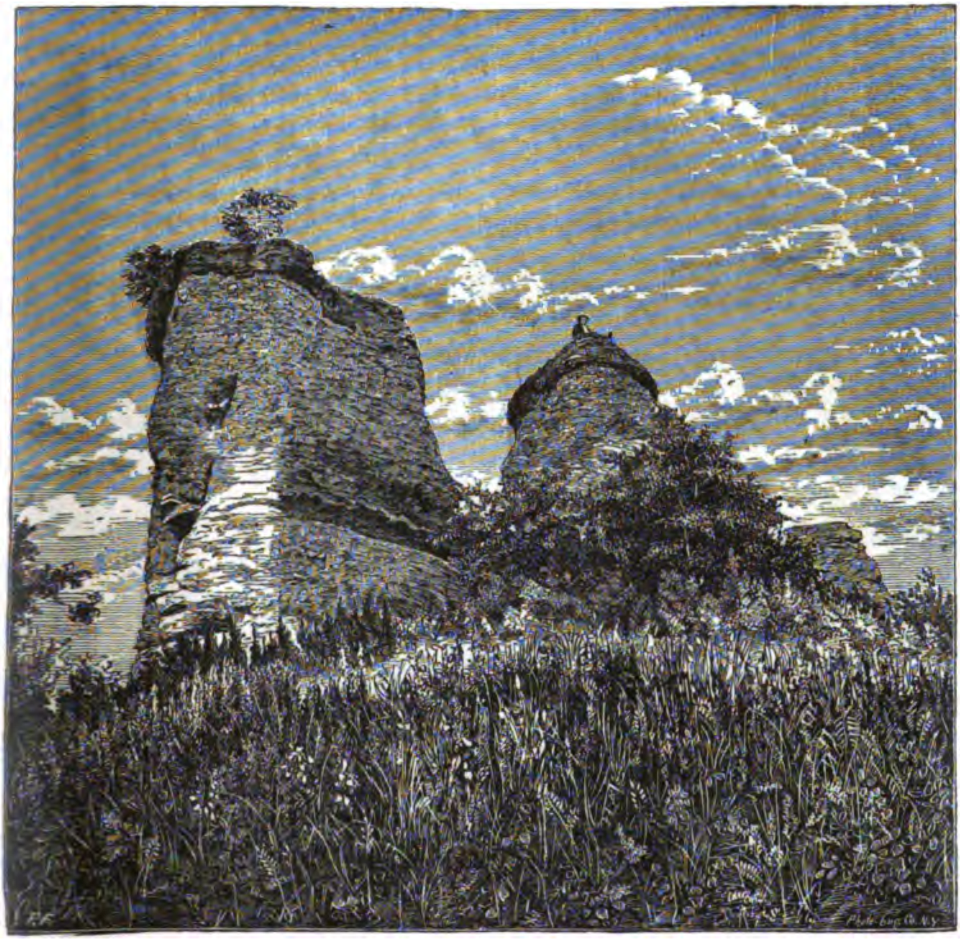


Photo-Eng. Co. 67 Cortlandt St. N.Y.

AT BECK'S DAM. SEC. 11, SPRING VALLEY.

The weathering and erosion of the Upper Trenton have left many scenes of picturesque beauty in the county, some of which have been photographed by Mr. Burnham. The following are some of the most noteworthy. Figure 8 shows the Eagle Rocks situated in the valley of the South Branch of Root River, on section 27, Forestville. They stand isolated in the valley, but do not rise higher than the common rocky walls of the valley.

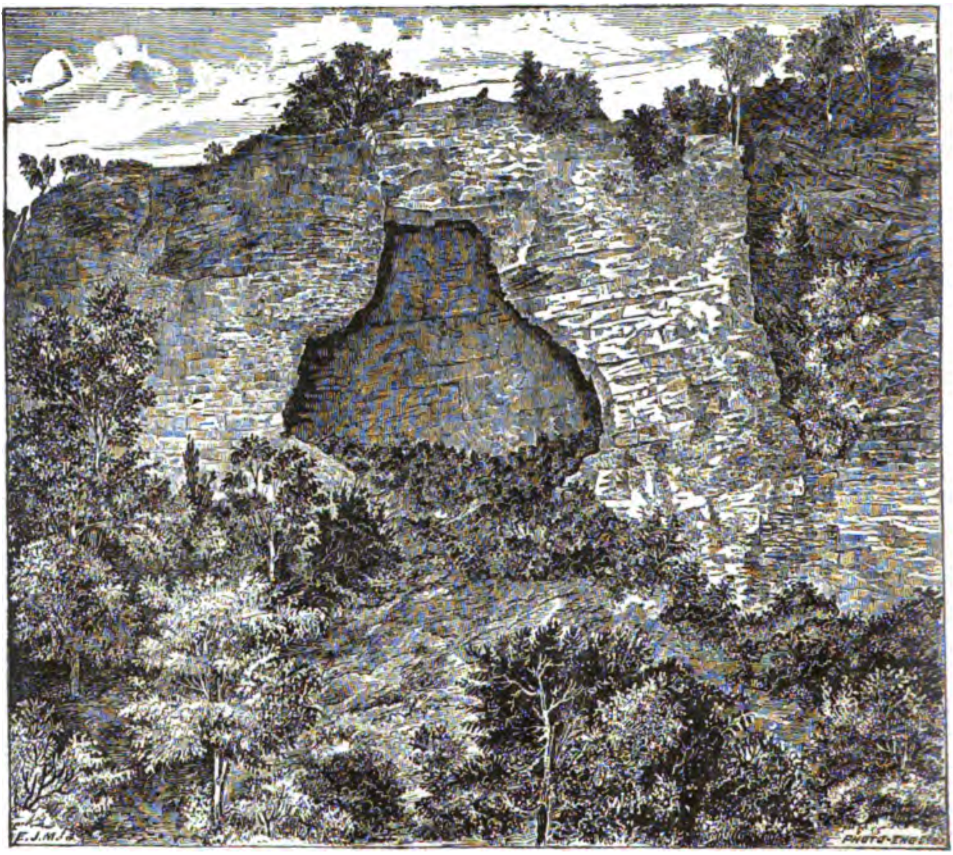
FIG. 8.



Eagle Rocks—Trenton Limestone, Sec. 27, Forestville.

Figure 9, Chimney Rock, is a view on the side of the bluff of a ravine, tributary to the south branch of Root River, on section 27, Forestville. A crevice, originally due probably to a plane of jointage, enters the rock at a small angle with the face of the bluff, and has been widened by frost and water till it will admit a man. The detached, wedge-shaped mass, has been broken through near the foot of the bluff, and by the falling out of repeated fragments an opening having a fancied resemblance to an oven with a low chimney, has resulted.

Fig. 9.



Chimney Rock—Trenton Limestone, Section 27, Forestville.

The following details concerning the Trenton limestone will further elucidate this formation as it appears at various places in the county.

Southeast quarter section 23, Spring Valley, quarry of John Kleckler. The rock here is a gray limestone, with interlaminations of shale. This is very different from the Galena, as seen at Spring Valley village. It is compact, and, with the exception of the thin laminae of shale, consists entirely of limestone. Exposed about 10 feet.

Southeast quarter section 23, Spring Valley, Joseph Lester has a quarry in the valley of the Middle Branch, very similar to Kleckler's. That of Henry Prosser occurs on southeast quarter of section fourteen.

North part of section 25, Spring Valley. At Mr. H. Perkins' saw-mill the same rock is visible, and has been wrought. From this point the banks of this creek become continuously rocky.

G. W. Knight's quarry is near Fillmore, section 10. The stone is hard, gray, compact, brittle and fossiliferous, in beds of all thicknesses, depending on the weathering and exposure, up to eight or more inches. It is situated along the ravine, approaching Fillmore.

Geo. Shepherd's quarry is also near Fillmore, on northeast quarter of section 9, and seems to consist mostly of isolated even layers in the shale that so frequently accompanies the Trenton. In this shale are *Chaetetes*, *Rhynchonella*, and *Strophomena*. The stone is not of much account, owing to its being encumbered so heavily with the shale, but is very desirable for the uniformity of its thickness. S. C. Pettit has a quarry of the same kind on northeast quarter of section 10.

At Chatfield, the lower Trenton appears in the highest bluffs on the north side of the village. It is made up very largely of shale, but affords also some even layers, that are wrought. These have the same stratigraphical horizon as the stone at Minneapolis and St. Paul, but do not contain so much argillaceous matter. They are much firmer and more compact, though not so thick in the aggregate. Below these layers the St. Peter sandstone is seen. The Trenton at this point has a gentle dip northeast, while the Shakopee at the mill by the river dips northwest. The brachiopod *Leptaena deltoidea*, so common at the Falls of St. Anthony, is here seen in great numbers, and an occasional specimen of *Lingulepis quadrata*. The section at the quarry of Dennis Jacob is made up of seven feet of limestone and shale, crumbling away, underlain by about eight feet of limestone.

Extensive working and burning of the upper Trenton into quicklime is carried on along Bear and Deer creeks, the banks of which are continuously rocky, rising perpendicularly from one to two hundred feet from the water, in Sumner and Spring Valley townships. These quarries are described under the head of *Economical Geology*.

Sometimes the Trenton shows, on freshly opened quarries, along the bluffs, almost a white color. This is particularly the case on north half of section 35, Sumner, where an opening in a long-weathered "hog's back" reveals a very light-colored limestone, in beds of about three inches, of a fine grain and compact texture; not much crystalline, and evidently impure with argillaceous and siliceous qualities.

The quarry of Mr. Joseph Taylor, section 13, Fountain, has been mentioned already under the head of the St. Peter sandstone, and the exposed section given. At this quarry very large cephalopods have been taken out, and some fragments of galena have been encountered, though the opening is in the lower Trenton.

The quarry of Mr. Enoch Winslow is on the same horizon as Mr. Taylor's. It is situated on the bank of Sugar Creek, S. W. ¼ sec. 4, Fountain. Another on the same horizon is that of John Johnson, 2 miles south of Fountain. The Trenton is also wrought at Forestville and near Carmiona, presenting no exceptional features. At Forestville it contains *Receptaculites* and *Strophomena*, and exposes a thickness of about 140 feet.

The Upper Trenton appears S. E. ¼ sec. 6, Forestville, along a little ravine, and is slightly opened by John Hipes. It also appears at other points between there and Spring Valley.

At Baldwins' Dam, sec. 21, Forestville, 130 feet of the Trenton are seen. No Galena visible, and no Green Shale.

S. E. ¼ sec. 30, Forestville. In some fragments thrown out in the digging of a well, can be seen a fine grained rock, resembling the fine shale seen in the race at De For's mill, which crumbles to pieces in the weather. It here lies below some heavy Galena beds, seen in the hills enclosing the valley, and contains doubtfully species of *Graptolites*, *Orthis*, and *Orthonota*.

At Granger, the Trenton only occupies the bluffs; but at two miles west of Granger, where the river enters the state for a short distance, the bluffs are high, and are made up of the Trenton, with a topping of fifteen or twenty feet of Galena.

Northwest quarter of section 36, Bristol. Hiram Andrews has a quarry in the Trenton, which alone occupies, at this place, the river banks, though the beds of the quarry are apparently in the upper portion of the formation. The layers are thicker than usual, somewhat vesicular, and present some of the aspects of the Galena. The rock shows a slight dip to the south. Mr. Andrews has built a stone barn and stable.

The Galena Limestone.

The only separating horizon between the Trenton and Galena limestones is a lithological change in the rock. There is no unconformability between the layers of the formations, and there is no known difference of fossil contents. Near the upper portion of the Trenton occasional layers appear that are much more porous, and have a light buff color. They are also much heavier than the layers of the Trenton, reaching, after the change is fully established, a thickness of four or five feet. Mingled with these heavy magnesian layers are thinner layers of green shale. When these heavy magnesian beds are near the top of a bluff, they give it a roughness, but at the same time a persistence of outline which the thinner beds of the Trenton alone do not possess. This rock is generally sharply crystalline. It contains numerous cavities of irregular shape, some due to the weathering out of carious material, and some to the absorption of fossils It holds considerable masses of calcite, and sometimes lumps of galena, from which it has derived its name. Although the Galena limestone, near Dubuque, in Iowa, is stated by Prof. J. D. Whitney to be about 250 feet, (Geology of Wisconsin, vol. I, 172,) it enters Minnesota with a thickness much less than that. From all that can be seen of it in Fillmore county, it appears to be less than 100 feet thick. The Trenton, on the other hand, is given, by the same authority, at 70 feet average thickness, at Dubuque, while it has a thickness of 160 feet in Fillmore county.

The characters that distinguish the Galena are not constant. In Fillmore county the "lead fossil," *Receptaculites*, pervades the Trenton as low as the green shale, at least—although regarded as characteristic of the Galena; and the *Lingula quadrata*, also said by Prof. Whitney to not appear in the lead region, in the "blue" nor the "buff," is found throughout both. A very fine specimen was obtained, of the latter, at Mr. Taylor's quarry, near Fountain, from the lower Trenton, ("buff limestone" of Prof. Whitney,) and another from Chatfield, from the same horizon. Lithologically also the two formations appear to merge into one another. The compact, hard blue limestone, characteristic of the Trenton, gives place near the top of that formation, to a lighter colored, slightly vesicular, even grained, more heavily bedded rock, that is very useful for an ornamental cut-stone. This is seen in some of the quarries a mile or two east of Spring Valley, where it is difficult to assign the beds either to the Galena or to the Trenton. A short distance further east the well characterized Trenton appears, while at the village of Spring Valley, unmistakable Galena features pervade the rock exposed, to the depth of ten or twenty feet. The lead ore, moreover, which has given name to the Galena, is not confined to that formation. It is found to some extent both in the Galena and the Trenton, though in neither to that extent that will warrant sanguine expectations.

The Galena, where not hid by the Cretaceous in the northwestern part of the county, is within the drift area. Hence it has not been so fully observed as is desirable. The line separating its superficial area from that of the Trenton is defined with tolerable accuracy on the map accompanying this report, but the line of its western boundary is very uncertain.

The principal exposures of the Galena in the county are on Bear and Deer creeks, and at Spring Valley on the Middle Branch of Root river. At the latter place quarries are worked to a greater or less extent by Mr. Willard Allen, Thomas Thayer, Emylas Parsons, and Nelson Smith. These openings are on the south side of the valley and are all in about the same kind of stone. Some of them furnish, as yet, only rough large pieces, water worn and rusty, dislodged from their original places. The rock has undergone long weathering and erosion at Spring Valley, and is disintegrated and changed to a considerable depth. Along the road near the public school, a small cut in the shattered crumbling layers has exposed a great number of detached casts of a brachiopod resembling that of *Atrypa reticularis.* These were regarded with great curiosity by many as "little turtles" petrified. At J. Shumaker's quarry, one mile east of the village, about eight feet of the bedding are exposed. The layers here are of a finer and more uniform texture, and are associated with shale. When cut for building they are much whiter than the stone obtained at Mr. Allen's at Spring Valley. Inconsiderable quantities of Galena are obtained at Spring Valley. No systematic exploration, however, has been undertaken, the pieces found being at or near the surface. It has been found at a number of other points in the county, sometimes well within the Trenton area.

N. W. ¼ sec. 16, Jordan. In ascending the south bluff of Lost creek, large loose pieces of Galena limestone are seen in the road, but the Trenton is in outcrop at the creek. Similar pieces appear on sec. 31, Jordan. These are on the most eastern limits of the Galena area, and belong to the lowest layers of the formation.

There is a weathered exposure of the Galena on land owned by Mr. —— Harris, northwest quarter section 26, Sumner. This outcrop fairly presents the typical lithological features that characterize the formation. By the Galena characters are meant a yellowish, or buff, limestone, vesicular, crystalline, in heavy layers, even on weathered bluffs, having usually a very rough exterior, in consequence of atmospheric destruction of the looser portions. When these looser portions are removed, the surface of the rock presents a pitted aspect, being covered with thimble holes, and depressions of all shapes, with angular knobs and excrescences separating them, the whole overgrown with lichens. The exposure here shows perpendicularly about twelve feet, in layers from one to four feet thick, piled up on either side of the road in detached mounds, like bridge abutments, from which the roadway has been removed. The "lead fossil," *Receptaculites*, appears in these layers.

At the crossing of the South Branch of Root River, northeast quarter section 21, Bloomfield, there is no cut in the rock visible. The river is but about twenty feet below the level of the country, which is in a broad, shallow valley; but in the road are a few pieces of Galena, showing fossils and lithology like the rock at Spring Valley, though the layers must be near the top of that formation. The country here, and toward the southwest, is a broad level prairie, gently rising toward the west.

Northwest quarter section 26, Bloomfield. The south bank of the river, near the west side of the section, has a rock bluff exposed about twenty feet above the river. This is massive, or in heavy layers, and is doubtfully assigned to the Galena, as it has some of the features of the Niagara. It is firm, but porous; of a buff color and a coarse magnesian grain, with superficial cavities, due to the weathering out of fossils. It is on the land of Mrs. Annie Postle. The crossing of the survey of the Winona, Green Bay and Grenelle railroad is at the head of the bluff. A similarly doubtful exposure, slightly quarried, is owned by Dora Wright, near the center of section 14, Bloomfield, by the roadside. Wm. B. McVee has has also taken out the same stone near his barn, northwest quarter section 14, and used it in his barn foundation. It here holds considerable calcite.

At Etna Mr. S. S. Belding has a quarry in the Galena. This is a soft, porous stone, in heavy beds, which once held fossils, but which have been lost by absorption, leaving the rock porous, and finely vesicular, Mr. Belding states that this limestone has a hydraulic quality, but as near as can be ascertained it makes simply a quick-lime, which endures well under repeated wetting. An old foundation at De For's Mill was laid with it nineteen years ago, and stands firm yet, though submerged by every freshet. It has not yet been subjected to the test of setting *under water*, which is the essential property of water lime. The rock here seen amounts to eighteen or twenty feet. Other quarries, similar to Mr. Belding's, are owned by O. M. Postle, northwest quarter section 36, Bloomfield, by Geo. Hoy and Mr. De For, northeast quarter section 25, and by H. T. Odell, southeast quarter section 36.

At De For's Mill, N. E. ¼ sec. 25, Bloomfield, the rock exposed is fine and even-grained, belonging probably to the lower portion of the Galena. It embraces one thin layer of a shaly limestone which has turned white. It makes a good quick lime. It is in heavy beds of about eighteen inches, and holds a coarse coralline form seen also at the quarry of Mrs. Postle, already mentioned. Below these heavy layers is a bed of shale which was exposed in the digging of the mill-race, having a thickness of five and a half feet. Below that thickness the shale becomes arenaceous, and in the weather crumbles to pieces. Among the crumbled fragments are indistinct remains of the buckler of a small trilobite.

At Foreston, one mile south of the state line, the Galena appears in the lower river bluffs, and is in very rough and heavy beds. It presents numberless cavities of all shapes, as large as a thimble, and larger, and often iron-stained. It here has a noticeable dip to the south. While it is fossiliferous it is so coarsely and so completely crystalline that the fossils are either entirely absorbed or remain as indistinct impressions or imperfect casts. It contains white calcite in some large masses. The river itself at Foreston is probably on the Trenton, the water-power there improved being due to a change from the firm Galena layers to a softer shale, indicating the upper portion of the Trenton. On the state line, due north from Foreston, a limestone appears in the road, of a coarsely crystalline grain, with calcite and cavities, entirely like the Galena. It is observable in a number of the hill tops, and extends half a mile at least, north of the state line. At a point about a mile north of the state line, north from Foreston, and a fourth of a mile east (N. E. ¼ sec. 35, York) the upper Trenton appears on the N. E. side of a ravine, while the Galena appears on the S. W. side, the road running between the two. The rock has a perceptible dip toward the south. The Galena occupies the high river-bluffs from that point nearly to

Granger, on the north side of the river, when it passes to the south and the Trenton takes its place, both having a dip toward the south. At a point two miles west of Granger the Galena is 15 or 20 feet thick in the top of the river bluffs, the Trenton underlying. These thick beds give a squareness and prominence to the tops of the bluffs, presenting a perpendicular rock-wall toward the river. Large masses of this rock fall from the bluffs and weather into the usual rough forms. Though this exposure embraces rock that is a little softer than the Galena at Foreston, yet in color, crystallization and all general characters it is the same.

The Maquoketa Shales.

This is the name given to the *Cincinnati Group* of shales and limestones, as they appear in Iowa, by Dr. C. M. White, of the Iowa survey of 1870. Without questioning the correctness of his conclusion that where these shales appear in Iowa they embrace a distinct portion, only, of that series known as the Cincinnati Group, his designation is provisionally adopted in our nomenclature. While it is certain that this formation enters the State from Iowa, being seen two miles south of the state line. at Lime Springs, it is still true, that not a single observation has yet been made on it within the limits of the State of Minnesota. Being made up of soft materials its outcrops are to be sought in the low levels, along the bottoms of ravines. As its area in Fillmore county is covered by the northern drift, it will probably be a long time before any well authenticated localities of its existence are known.

The Niagara Limestone.

This formation has been identified in Fillmore county, at but one point. It is much more enduring than the shales underlying it, but it enters on a drift-covered area, with small valleys of drainage only, some distance south of the state line. The nearest important point of its known outcrop is at Lime Springs, in Iowa. It differs from the Galena limestone in being much lighter colored, especially when broken or powdered. It is strongly crystalline, and often porous, but it is also, in some parts, a very firm and enduring limestone. It also has a very different and much more abundant fossil fauna. It is separated from the Maquoketa shales, at Lime Springs, by a limestone breccia of about 18 inches. Its color, in its heavier and close-textured portions, is somewhat grayish, or leaden, and it is interbedded with hard shale, which turns nearly white on exposure. This shale, in broken pieces, makes up the larger part of the breccia mentioned, and falls down the bluff in that condition, where it is lost in the weather, the framework of the cement only remaining, making a curious, open network or mesh, the partitions and threads enclosing angular apartments. The great bed of shale, which causes the water power here, may have a thickness of 75 or 80 feet exposed, at the quarry of Mr. John Smith, though near the mill it is reduced to ten or fifteen feet. Throughout the most of that interval, a heavy debris covers it from sight, the overlying Niagara only being visible along the top of the bluff. The Niagara has a dip of five or six degrees to the southwest, and passes below the lower Devonian (*Corniferous?*) which is exposed and quarried at Lime Springs station, about a mile further south. The thickness of the Niagara included in that interval may be 100 or 150 feet. This underlying bed of shale gives rise to springs of limy water that enter the river along the bluff. and gave origin to the name of the village.

In the southeast quarter section 33, York, about forty rods north of the state line, is a very small exposure of the Niagara, in the bottom of a ravine, with the Devonian in the enclosing hillsides. A slight opening has been made in these beds, which are very porous and light colored, and about three inches in thickness. Although no fossils were found here to identify the formation, the presence of a very different rock, well known as the Devonian, in the hills and ridges surrounding it, as well as the strong resemblance it bears to the Niagara at Lime Springs, will allow of its being regarded only as the Niagara limestone.

The Devonian Limestones.

In the report for 1874 the Devonian limestones were described as occurring at Le Roy, in Mower county. It was then supposed that those limestones extended but a short distance east of Le Roy. They have been found during the past summer to extend considerably further east, and to embrace an area in Fillmore county fully ten miles wide on the southern border. Along the western boundary of Fillmore county the width of this Devonian belt is not certainly known, but it has about the same width as on the southern Hence the eastern boundary line of the Devonian in Mower county should run from about section 13, Bennington, northwestwardly to about section 7, in Pleasant Valley. The Silurian area, as laid off on the map of that county, should probably embrace the Niagara, the Maquoketa and the Galena, overlain, in the northeast, (Racine) by the Cretaceous.

The Lower Devonian limestones are very different from the Upper, at least lithologically. Dr. White has classed them all as Hamilton. But there seems to be some reason for separating them into at least two parts, the upper portion, which contains more shale, being the probable equivalent of the Hamilton, and the lower, which greatly resembles the Lower Corniferous, of the Ohio Geological Reports. The distinctively Onondaga features of the Ohio Corniferous are the only ones seen in Fillmore county. The color of this limestone is like that of the Galena, but its even and non-vesicular texture is enough to distinguish it from that at a glance. The bedding is also less thick, being, when in exposure, usually less than eight inches, though when quarried it is in heavy beds. It is a yellowish, magnesian limestone, sometimes with a finely siliceous composition, and is suitable for most purposes in common masonry. It is tolerably free from calcite lumps, but has some chert nodules. It has a few fossil brachiopods, as *Atrypa*, and an incrusting bryozoon like *Fenestella*.

At Lime Springs station is a quarry in the Lower Devonian, exposing about ten feet. At Hopkins' quarry, situated two miles west and a little south of Lime Springs, about twelve feet, in heavy layers, can be seen, without fossils, but holding some flint. Dip southeast. At Chester similar beds are exposed, near the mill, three-quarters of a mile south of the state line. It is here in heavy beds, of a soft, uniform, granular texture and yellowish color, useful for a cut stone.

This rock is probably that which is said to appear in the river banks, section 34, Beaver, on Jerry Kingsley's land.

Southeast quarter section 20, Beaver. This rock is again seen here, exposed along the banks of Slough Creek; owner's name unknown. It here shows a brachiopod resembling *Orthis*, and a radiating *Fenestella*. It is in the midst of an uninhabited prairie, and only weathered pieces can be found.

Southeast quarter section 18, Beaver. About ten years ago a cellar, dug for a farmer's residence, furnished stone of the same kind in sufficient quantity to construct his house, now owned by Mr. James Smith. Similar rock again appears in the road, northwest quarter section 20, Beaver, but is somewhat more vesicular.

Widow Scarrie has a small quarry in a yellowish, fine-grained rock, almost non-fossiliferous, and probably of the Lower Devonian, on the southeast quarter section 28, Bloomfield. Outwardly this much resembles the Cretaceous sandstone, as exposed at Austin, in Mower county, but it has a doubtful brachiopod that appears like *Atrypa*. Its weathered color, its homogeneity and fineness of grain, its irregularly rounded cavities, containing loose, ochreous dirt, combine to make it Cretaceous. It is with some doubt classed as Lower Devonian.

This limestone is found in loose pieces, and often in surface exposures, on the tops of knolls, near the state line, sections 33 and 34, York, the porous, white Niagara appearing in the ravines.

The Cretaceous.

No attempt is made to map out the Cretaceous area in Fillmore county, inasmuch as it is all embraced in the drift-covered portion, and but one or two localities of its existence are known. It probably extends no further east, however, at any point, than the east side of the first tier of towns along the western border of the county. Its area is most reliably indicated by the surface features, in the absence of actual outcrops. Guided by this only it is supposed to occupy the flat and prairie portion of Sumner Township, stretching southward through Spring Valley and Bloomfield and covering the most of Beaver, and perhaps portions of York. Judging from the prevalence of Cretaceous features in the drift-clay exposed in the railroad cut at Lime Springs, it has played an important part in originating the materials of the heavy drift covering that spreads over not only the western portion of Fillmore county, but all the counties of the state further west.

The lower portion of the Cretaceous, which is that represented in Minnesota, consists of sandstones and lignitiferous clays or shales—the sandstones lying at the base of the formation and being the same that Dr. White has denominated in Iowa the "Nishnabotany Sandstone." Above this sandstone, which is often white and incoherent, with a thickness of about one hundred feet, so far as observed, is a clayey member of the Cretaceous which has been identified by Mr. F. B. Meek as the Fort Benton Group, of Messrs. Meek and Hayden. This is well exposed in the region of the Upper Minnesota Valley, and contains some impure lignite, and is found in small pieces disseminated with its fossils, through the drift-clay cut at Lime Springs, a couple of miles south of Fillmore county, in Iowa. The Niobrara, or chalky member of the Cretaceous, may also exist in the extreme western portion of the state.

So far as Fillmore county is concerned the presence of the Cretaceous is known more by certain indirect or secondary evidences, than by the actual discovery of its beds *in situ*. In the extreme northeastern corner of Mower county it was struck by a farmer in digging a well. It there has the form of the fine-grained sandstone seen at Austin. The surface features that prevail at that point pass into the northwestern corner of Fillmore county, and cover the most of Sumner Township. Southward, at Spring Valley, a similar stone appears in the north side of the creek where it has been opened for building purposes by Messrs. James Wilder and Henry Thayer. It is here a fine-grained, argillaceous sandstone that cracks and crumbles on freezing It has been given up as worthless for a building material. Near the same place, on David Higby's farm, S. W. ¼ sec. 32, is a very fine and tough clay, of a generally bluish color, almost entirely free from grit, which is spread out over a wide area lying but few feet below the surface. The overlying soil, which is annually plowed, is a black loam, (rather clayey) varying below to a yellow, clayey loam. This clay was discovered several years ago, but nothing has been done that will demonstrate or indicate its real orgin, though it is evidently not a part of the drift. It has the appearance of being suitable for pottery or for brick, but would require some sand. A soapy, variegated clay also occurs at J. W. Smith's brick yard, two miles northwest of Spring Valley, though a drift clay, with some gravel, is used in the manufacture of brick. A similar clay is met in abundance at Spring Valley village, but it is mingled with limestone fragments and drift materials.

Besides these clayey deposits, which are believed to have resulted from the degradation, or more or less perfect preservation, of the lower Cretaceous clays, there are a number of white sand deposits in the same portion of the county, which probably are referable to the incoherent layers of the Nishnabotany sandstone. One of these occurs north of Mr. J. W. Smith's brick yard, on section 17, Spring Valley. Another is situated on C. C. Temple's land, southeast quarter of section eight, Bloomfield, where it is 20 feet thick at least, having been tested to that depth, the bottom never having been reached. It here occurs in an open prairie country, and is known to spread out over many acres, lying but two or three feet below the surface. It lies on the Galena, of course unconformably. It is not a purely white sand, like the St. Peter, but yellowish white. It is sometimes very fine, but varies to coarse. Another deposit of this sand is on Mr. Andrew McNee's land, northwest quarter section 22, Bloomfield, and still another on J. M. Rexford's, northeast quarter section 36, where it has been opened, as at the other points named, and used for mortar. These are situated in an undulating tract, with some shrubs and trees. These sand beds are not regarded as belonging to the Cretaceous rock *in situ*, but as being copious local products, under drift agencies, of the Cretaceous. Sometimes they embrace lumps of clay, of a greenish color, like the Fort Benton, and sometimes they show oblique stratification. They are entirely uncemented, so as to be shoveled directly into the wagon. Another singular deposit, in the same manner referable to the immediate presence of the Cretaceous, occurs on the southwest quarter section 15, Bloomfield, land of Peter Peterson. Here a series of knolls, which embrace, indeed, that in which is Mr. Andrew McNee's white sand pit, and are covered with aspen and hazel brush, are found, many of them, to be composed of a beautiful, coarse gravel, the greater part being white, often limpid, quartz, the size of the pebbles varying from that of a pea to that of a hazelnut. On these knolls are a few northern drift boulders, and no doubt the gravel was also placed in the position it now occupies by the drift forces. This gravel, so remarkably homogeneous, like the white sand deposits mentioned, can only be referred to the immediate proximity of the lower Cretaceous. It could not have been far transported without being mixed with other rock material. It distinctly points to the existence of a coarse gravel or conglomerate in the lower Cretaceous, which has not yet been discovered. It indicates also the littoral nature of the Cretaceous beds from which it was derived.

There is still another indirect evidence of the existence of the Cretaceous in the western portion of Fillmore county. There are heavy deposits of limonite iron ore, bearing some unascertained relation to the Cretaceous, or to the drift found in the southwestern part of the county. In the Second Annual Report of the Survey mention was made of the occurrence at a number of places in the Minnesota Valley, and in that of the Blue Earth, of a coating of iron ore on the Lower Silurian rocks, where they are unconformably overlain by the Cretaceous. Dr. Shunard says of this: (*Owen's Geological Survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, page* 487.) "The nodules of iron ore have mostly a concentric structure, and appear to be of good quality. The superficial indications render it probable that this bed of iron ore may be both extensive and easily accessible." In Fillmore county a discovery was made by Mr. C. C. Temple, in digging a well near his sand pit, already described, and referred to the Cretaceous as its probable source, which throws some light on the manner of occurrence of the limonite referred to. He testifies that *this bed of iron ore is at least thirty-six feet in thickness.* In his well, which is six feet circular at the top, he dug down about eighteen feet, when he reached rock, fragments thrown out revealing the Galena limestone. He describes the rock as occupying but about one-half of the diameter of the shaft he was digging, which afforded great quantities of soft limonite, or ochre. He drilled into the iron ore a depth of thirty-six feet. A number of wells in the vicinity of Etna, a few miles further southeast, also struck a similar iron ore. On section 36, Bloomfield, a great many loose pieces of porous limonite are found in the fields, having been plowed up in the soil. The county surveyor, Mr. J. Gregor, also found it impossible to lay out the quarter sections of that section in the usual manner, by the use of the magnetic needle, though the original United States surveyors record no unusual disturbance of the magnetic needle. Limonite iron ore is regarded usually as non-magnetic. In large quantities, near the surface, it seems to influence the magnetic currents. What relation this ore bears to the Cretaceous is not known, except that it has been found to overlie the Silurian rocks, or to cover their surfaces with a scale where the Cretaceous overlies them unconformably. Further and more minute observations in other places may reveal its real source and its value. The reader is referred to the Second Annual Report for an account of the *Cretaceous over the Lower Silurian* at Mankato, in the Valley of the Minnesota.

The Drift.

The drift presents some interesting features in Fillmore county The western limit of that well-known tract denominated *The Driftless Area*, by Prof. J. D. Whitney, crosses this county. This boundary is not well-defined. There is a very conspicuous absence of the bluish clay, and the northern boulders that distinguish the true northern drift sheet of counties further west and north, throughout the eastern two-thirds of the county; the boundary line running approximately, from the southeast corner of Bristol township to the northeast corner of Jordan. West of that line, which is modified, in its course, by valleys and uplands, is a belt of five or six miles in width, which is characterized by an overlapping of the loess loam on the thinning out edge of the drift sheet. This belt is characterized further by peculiar local modifications of the materials of the drift, due to the underlying rock, as mentioned under the head of *Cretaceous*. West of this belt the true drift becomes prevalent, consisting of clay, with many boulders.

That tract which is regarded as driftless,[*] is, so far as Fillmore county is concerned, not without some evidences of having been subjected, at some time, to a force similar to that which is supposed to have deposited the great drift-sheet of the northwest. There are isolated patches of gravel, with small stones, sometimes cemented into a crag, which have been noted in Fillmore county, scattered sparingly over the eastern part of the county, as the following field minutes will show:

Drift pebbles are in the street, north of the schoolhouse, southwest quarter section 22, Amherst.

Drift occurs in the form of gravel and boulders, some of them a foot in diameter, southwest quarter section 4, Fountain, on the east bank of Sugar Creek, in the road; seen in going east from the quarry of Enoch Winslow. At Fountain village there is said to be no drift between the loess loam and the rock.

A little drift may be seen at the Tunnel mills, section 34, Sumner.

There is a little fine drift visible along the road, southeast quarter section 25, Sumner.

At Chatfield there is some gravelly drift, with small boulders, visible in the street, near the millrace.

Drift, with pebbles and stones, appears about a mile south of Clear Grit, on the Shakopee terrace along the highway.

Also on the road to Carimona, near Preston.

About midway between Preston and Carimona, a wash by the roadside revealed—

Loam	8 feet.
Gravelly, red loam	3 feet.

With no distinct separation, a few small boulders lying in the water course below.

At Carimona a thin layer of drift is usually found under the loam.

The same is true at Forestville.

At Spring Valley the drift is so prevalent that the surface of the country is smooth, and has a lighter colored soil, with much more clay. There are but few stones or gravelly patches. The loess loam is hardly noticeable. One large boulder lies at the street corner, half a mile south of the corporate limits.

Between Baldwin's mill, section 21, Forestville, and the state line, due south, the country is one of drift prairie, nearly the whole distance, with stones and boulders, some of the latter pretty large.

At Ætna, section 36, Bloomfield, among a variety of stones pertaining to the drift, may be seen an occasional one that is *glaciated*.

---

[*] J. D. Whitney, Geology of Wisconsin, Vol. 1, pages 114-139.

At Lime Springs and Foreston, a few miles south of the state line, on the Upper Iowa river, the drift is abundant.

At Granger there is a light drift, and also where the road turns north to Preston, northeast quarter section 36, Bristol; but it becomes lighter still or entirely invisible, in traveling to Preston. In its place a heavy, rich loam, rather clayey, covers the country, and smooths it off almost as effectually as if drift-covered. A well, being dug about five miles south of Preston, on the high Trenton area, passes through this loam eighteen feet before striking the rock.

The drift is very thin at Lenora, if not entirely wanting.

About four miles southeast of Preston a large green, dioritic boulder may be seen lying in the loess loam, in the road, and a red quartzose pebble. The pebbles that appear in gullies by the roadside, in the loam area, are generally of chert, from the rock of the locality. It cannot be ascertained whether this dioritic boulder lies on other drift deposits, but it is surrounded laterally only by the loam.

At Elliota is a thin drift, in the form of pebbles, the largest being three or four inches in diameter. Thence northeastward to Newburg nothing but the yellow loam is observable. Between Newburg and Riceford, situated on the western edge of Houston county, no northern drift is visible; but at Riceford, which lies in a deep and narrow gorge, a few drift pebbles occur in the street.

About the center of sec. 29, Holt, is a deposit of drift gravel. It may be seen in descending the hill northward, just before the road forks to Whalen and Lanesboro. It is considerably cemented by lime, forming a crag, large lumps of which, some 18 or 20 inches thick, have been used for embankment on the lower side of the road. In some parts it is quite fine, and useful for mortar, for which it has been hauled away. It is at least ten feet thick.

There are boulders in the valley of Duxbury creek, sec. 28, Preston.

Sec. 19, Pilot Mound. In the road going to the river from the south, are a lot of boulders and other drift. The same can be seen on the north side, going up from the ford. The deposit seems to be five or six feet thick, gradually mingling with, and finally becoming replaced by the loess loam.

Drift gravel and stones are seen along the road in going down the hill to Isinours, from Preston.

Drift pebbles and clay occur at the crossing of Watson's creek, on the direct road between Fountain and Preston, and on the terrace of the Shakopee limestone, a quarter of a mile south of the creek.

Boulders are seen at Spring Valley, and on Mr. Kleckler's farm, two and a half miles east of Spring Valley.

An occasional boulder is seen in the river valley at Geiner's Mill, sec. 31, Jordan, but the most of the surface covering on the rock, in the high prairie region, seems to be of loess loam.

East of Highland P. O., in Holt township, sec. 36, is a conspicuous deposit of drift, exposed in the road, in the form of a stony gravel. It lies on the brow of the Shakopee terrace.

It is noticeable that in nearly every instance where drift pebbles occur in the region known as driftless, they lie on or are very near an outcrop of firm rock. They frequent the brows of the terrace formed by the Shakopee limestone. The above named localities are nearly all embraced within the boundaries of the driftless tract, as already defined in Fillmore county. These patches of northern drift present the appearance of greater age than the drift of the western portion of the county, and are believed to belong to a glacial epoch that preceded the epoch that produced the great drift sheet of the northwest. An "interglacial epoch" separated them. It was probably during that interglacial epoch that grew the peat and coniferous vegetation that has been found in considerable abundance embraced within the great drift sheet, (or at least below fifty feet of drift materials) round its outer margin, as mentioned already in a report on Mower county, and as further demonstrated in Fillmore county. It is this older drift that is covered deeply by the loess loam, and *it is within the loam-covered portion of the county that true river terraces, of alluvial composition, are found.* (Compare *Geology of Ohio*, *Vol. II.*, *Report on Delaware County.*)

Ancient Peat and Vegetation in the Drift Deposits.

Owing to the great geological interest connected with the discovery made last year of a peaty bed within the drift deposits of Mower county, a careful search was made in the survey of Fillmore county for further information concerning its origin and exact relations.* There were found to be quite a number of places in the western portion of the county where farmers, in digging wells, had struck this bed of vegetation. No opportunity has been afforded to make a personal inspection of this bed, and owing to the indefiniteness of the information derivable from the farmers themselves, and its contrariety, it is thought best to give only the statements of Mr. Calvin E. Huntley, of Spring Valley, a professional well-driller. Throughout the whole of the county there is much difficulty in obtaining ready water for farm and domestic use, and a great many wells are drilled deeply into the rock. This is owing to the canoned character of the rock surface, both within the drift area and the loam-covered portion. These canons serve as subterranean drains, though they are generally filled with drift in the western part of the county. Mr. Huntley furnished the following facts concerning this bed of vegetation. Some of these localities are within the limits of Mower county:

---

* For further information on the subject of vegetation in the drift deposits of the northwest, the reader is referred to a paper by the writer in the Proceedings of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1875, Detroit meeting.

Northwest quarter section 6, Beaver. Land of Andrew Oleson (Early.) It was found here at the depth of thirty feet, situated on a ridge in prairie country. It was two or three feet thick, and had a blue clay both above and below it—then struck a lime rock.

N. E. ¼ sec. 12, Le Roy, Mower county. Land of D. B. Bosworth. This was also on a high ridge, with blue clay above and below it, and lay at the depth of about 25 feet below the surface. It had a depth of seven feet, and contained "decayed stuff, like pressed hay."

N. E. ¼ sec. 1, Le Roy, Mower county. Land of Ole Knutson (Stoley): found at the depth of thirty feet; five feet thick; blue clay above and two feet of black clay below; then lime rock.

Sec 30, Bennington, Mower county, on land of Gents Everson. This is situated on a flat, and was found from 30 to 32 feet below the surface. It was three feet thick, and lay below blue clay. Below it was gravel to the thickness of eight feet, when the well struck lime rock.

S. E. ¼ sec. 9, Bennington, Mower county; land of John Mehan. It here had blue clay both above and below it, and a thickness of two feet. It lay at the depth of twenty feet. The underlying blue clay was gravelly.

It was met in the same town on Robert Cooper's land, at the depth of twenty-five or thirty feet. It was here on a very high ridge. It was in a blue clay, with gravel both above and below. It was here three or four feet thick. This well was abandoned on account of quicksand.

On the slope, northeast from Mr. Cooper's, it was reported to have been met with at the depth of six or seven feet from the surface, on the land of Mr. Bass.

Sec. 2, Sumner. Land of Wm. Bailey: met a deposit which was embraced between layers of what was then supposed to be lime rock. This deposit was two feet thick, and consisted entirely of wood. Rock was struck at the depth of eight feet. This wood was thirty-five feet below the surface. The owner called the rock "grindstone rock." (This was probably the Austin sandstone, of the Cretaceous, and the wood a lignite belonging to same age.)

N. part of sec 28, Spring Valley; land of A. B. Hutchinson. An irony deposit, having an unknown thickness, was struck at the depth of thirty-five feet.

This was also met in the central part of Racine, on the farm of D. Reed, at the depth of twenty-five or twenty-six feet, having a thickness of two or three feet. It came up in chunks which glistened, and looked like iron ore.

Under the head of *Cretaceous* the reader will find further statements concerning this iron ore. Two miles west of Spring Valley, on the land of O. H. Rose, Mr. Leonard made an observation on a deposit of surface crag. This he found abundantly cemented with iron, lying on a sloping surface, covering twenty-five or thirty square rods, rendering the land unfit for cultivation, in the vicinity of no rock bluff, and on a prairie country. Iron ore was thrown out of a well S. W. ¼ sec. 24, Bloomfield. It was said to have come out in chunks, and to be as heavy as iron. It rises to the surface and a plow cannot be passed through it. This is owned by Geo. H. Smith. Again on H. T. Odell's land, section 36, Bloomfield, it is found in scattered lumps variously mingled with the soil, and with other stone. These surface pieces are impure, and often hold cemented gravel and pebbles. They are also loose and porous, and pass into ocher. Similar pieces occur on section 1, Beaver, land of O. A. Boynton.

Wood was taken from two wells in Jordan township, sections 29 and 30, on land of M. Robbins and Geo. Hare. This is also on a high prairie. In Mr. Hare's well was said to have been a tree.

Wells.

In order to study further the thickness of the drift, and its lateral extent in the county, a great many observations were made on the phenomena of common wells, and the tabulated list herewith appended will give the results of some of those examinations. It has already been said that there are a great many subterranean streams, especially within the area of the Trenton limestone. Some of these streams gush out along the river bluffs, and give rise to copious springs. Wherever there is an open rock structure, which is not imperviously covered by the drift or by the loam, it acts to receive the surface water and to allow its passage along lower levels to the main river valleys. This necessitates the drilling of a great many wells which penetrate in the rock to a depth, sometimes, of two or three hundred feet before reaching water.

Wells in Fillmore County.

Owner's Name and Location.	Drift or Loam, Feet	In the Rock, Ft.	Total, Ft.	Kind of Water	Remarks.
Public Well, Fountain	12	290	302		Water at 180 feet, but lost it by entering a cavity after [drilling five or six feet deeper.
W. H. Strong, Carimona	20	43	63	Good.	Drilled.
Poor Farm, section 4, Canton	22	30	52	Good.	In yellow sandrock; last two feet in clay.
Wm. Holton, Carimona	28	38	60	Good.	Drilled.
J. H. Hall, N. E. ¼ section 9, Bloomfield	41½		41½	Good.	Sand and clay.
E. Steffins, Spring Valley	6	80	86	Good.	"On the ridge."
Col. C. G. Edwards, Spring Valley	6	47	58	Good.	"On the ridge."
Calvin E. Huntley, Spring Valley	7	81	88	Good.	Very Hard water.
Peter Swab, section 6, Jordan	8 in.	69	70	Good.	In a "red sandstone."
Wm Twiggs, 1½ miles S. E. of Spring Valley	10	40	50	Good.	Three wells; same depth.
S. S. Belding, Etna	10	22	32	Good.	Hard water.
J M. Rexford, N. E. ¼ section 36, Bloomfield	20	75	95		
James Smith, S. E. ¼ section 18, Beaver	5	50	55	Good.	Water in limerock.
A. C. Seelye, Lenora	20	55	72	Good.	
M. L. Potter, Lenora	90		90	Good.	No rock.
Old town Well, Lenora	About 20		55		"In a large crevice in the rock."
Wm. Barton, 1½ miles N. of Lenora	20	110	130		
James Walsh, section 20, Amherst	13	67	80		Sandrock and limestone; water in limestone.
Wm. Kimber, S. W. ¼ section 29, Amherst	34	82	116		
S. S. Stark, N. W. ¼ section 2, Amherst	28	100	128		Gets dry in summer.
Henry Rose, N. E. ¼ section 8, Amherst	25	117	142		Gets dry in summer.
Public Well, Highland P. O			65		
Andrew Vogt, S. W. ¼ section 20, Amherst	7	85	92	No water.	Well incomplete.
Mrs. Simmons, section 35, Spring Valley	8	35	43	Good.	Last three feet in bluish-green shale.
Public well, Spring Valley	12	2	14	Good.	
A. N. Hart, Spring Valley	14	6	20		Last foot in bluish limestone; Some "oily blue clay."
S. W. Knight, section 11, Fillmore	15	95	110	Tolerably good.	
S Hoff, Fillmore	18	8	26	Good.	Eight feet in St. Peter sandstone.
D. S. Hoff, Fillmore	18		18	Good.	Sand and gravel.
John Kleckler, S. E ¼ section 26, Spring Valley	4	27	31	Good.	Twenty-seven feet in Trenton limestone.
F. Greaves, Chatfield	10	40	50	Good.	Forty feet in blue limestone.
Th. Simpson, Chatfield*	9	31	40	Good.	Thirty-one feet in blue limestone.
W. H. Dunham, Chatfield township	10	50	60	Good.	Ten feet yellow clay and stone.
Elisha Leonard, section 14, Sumner	17		17	Good.	Six feet of water.
J. B. Silbert, 2 miles E. of Spring Valley	19		19	Good.	Two layers of gravel.
C. B Brocksom, 2½ miles E. of Spring Valley	16	33	49	Good.	Nine feet in drift; seven feet in loose rock.
F. Lageirg, 3 miles E. of Spring Valley	About 20	32	52	Good.	
J. H. Hall, 2 miles S. of Spring Valley	27	14½	41½	Good.	Clay, quicksand and bluish stone.
O. H. Rose, 2½ miles W. of Spring Valley	20	29	49	Good.	"Found a vein of Venetian Red 10 feet from the surface."
O. H. Rose, 2 miles W. of Spring Valley	8	48	56	Good.	Soil, gravel and clay.

* There are but few wells in Chatfield, because of the necessity of drilling from twenty to a hundred and fifty feet in the limestone.

The price charged by Mr. Huntley, of Spring Valley, for drilling wells, is one dollar per foot the first fifty feet, with twenty-five cents per foot added every ten feet thereafter. Messrs. Sands & Tousley, Amherst, receive fifty cents per foot before striking the rock, one dollar and twenty-five cents per foot for the first twenty feet in the rock, and add twenty-five cents per foot every ten feet.

The Loess Loam.

The greater portion of the county is covered with this loam. It contains no gravel or boulders, or with very rare exceptions, but consists almost entirely of fine siliceous material which becomes in some places quite clayey, making a very slippery mud when wet. This in outward appearance is of a light, yellow or rusty color, and differs in that respect from the loam seen on the drift-covered portion of the county, which is frequently black, or brown, varying to an ash color when mingled with a considerable per cent. of clay from the drift, and also contains gravel. The loess-loam is very homogeneous over wide tracts, while that in the drift area is subject to local and sunden variations. The loess-loam is indistinctly stratified, especially in the valleys, but the usual appearance is that of non-stratification. This stratified arrangement is rendered the less evident from the great similarity of the materials from the top to the bottom. It does not consist, apparently, in any change from coarse to fine in the sedimentation, but in a *lamination* of the homogeneous clayey, loam, and is easily obliterated by exposure, or by trickling water. This condition was noted particularly at Preston, and indicates that it was deposited in still, or gently moving, water. Where this loam lies over the old northern drift, it pass through a gravelly stage, the materials of the loam mingling with the coarser portions of the drift, and becoming finally replaced by the drift. The drift patches covered by this loam, pertaining to the eastern and central portions of the county, and believed to belong to an earlier drift epoch, are, so far as seen, made up of gravel and sand, with small stones. *No drift clay*, like that which covers the western part of the county, has been seen overlain by the loess-loam, except that which pertains to the general drift sheet of the northwest, and which occupies a narrow belt of 5 or 6 miles wide, where the loam overlaps the later drift. It would be reasonable, however, to expect that some such clay would be found. The pebbles that are thus mixed with the lower portion of the loam are smooth and waterworn, not covered with a coating of decayed material of the same nature as the pebbles themselves, as they would be expected to be if the loam were derived from the decay, *in situ*, of the materials of the drift. The thickness of the loess-loam sometimes reaches twenty feet in the open upland, and, under favorable circumstances, where it might have accumulated laterally, as well as perpendicularly, it is much more. It is tickest in the eastern part of the county.

Alluvial Terraces.

At Preston, besides the flood plain, the river has a high terrace-plain. The Stanwix House stands on it. It consists of loam undistinguishable from the loess-loam that covers that portion of the county. The same may be seen at Lanesboro, and at Whalen, but it is not conspicuous. At Rushford fragmentary remains of this high terrace are seen in the valleys of the tributary streams. Along the main valley they are not well preserved. There are two terrace levels, besides the flood-plain. The highest terrace plain is from 70 to 80 feet above the second, and about 130 feet above the river. The lower terrace, on which Rushford stands, is about 40 feet above the river, and is probably never reached by the river in even the highest water. Within this lower terrace-plain, which spreads out laterlly and forms the most of the alluvial land between the rock-bluffs, is the river channel, and a still lower flood-plain about 20 feet above the river at low stage. A similar high terrace is seen along the Mississippi river at Winona, in Winona county, rising about 95 feet above the river, while the flat on which the city of Winona stands is about 25 feet above the river at the boat landing, in low stage of water. At Rushford and Winona the high terrace consists of a material different from the loam that overspreads the country, being made up of stratified sand. This terraced condition of the valleys of Root river, and of the Mississippi, is confined, so far as observed, to the loam-covered area, which nearly coincides with the "driftless area," as defined and described by Prof. Whitney.

Material Resources—Fuel.

In addition to the products of the soil which will always be her chief source of material wealth, Fillmore county cannot expect any important mineral discoveries to augment her material prosperity. She has a good supply of forest for purposes of common fuel, and will not suffer from the absence of coal, as some of the counties further west have suffered. She will have to depend on her native forest trees, or on those that are being propagated successfully, for the most of her home fuel supply. There is as marked an absence of peat in this county as there is in Mower, but a single locality being noted. That occurs on S. E. ¼ sec. 26, Spring Valley, land of John Kleckler and David Broxlem, and is said to be about four feet thick, covering four or five acres. There is no doubt but other, isolated, small areas, of a turf-peat, also exist in the county, but the circumstances which promoted the production of so large a surface of peat in Freeborn county, are certainly wanting in Fillmore county. The frequency of lakes and swamps, and abundance of peat, coinciding as they do in Freeborn county, taken with the absence of both in Mower and Fillmore, point to the existence of a common cause for these surface features.

Iron.

Throughout the western portion of the county there is a great deal of surface iron, manifesting itself generally in the form of a cement in gravel, forming a dark-colored *crag*. There is also much evidence of the existence of a heavy continuous layer or deposit of limonite iron ore a few feet below the surface, in Bloomfield and Beaver townships. The details of these localities, and of the evidence of iron, so far as ascertainable, have been given under the heads of *Cretaceous* and *Drift*. Should this bed prove to be extensive, its actual value for commercial purposes may vary greatly from its intrinsic value. It consists of a loose-textured hydrated peroxyd, with ochery impurities, and bears a close resemblance to some bog-ore deposits; but its occurrence on high land, instead of in swamps, necessitates some other explanation for its existence than that ascribed to the occurrence of most bog-ore deposits. It may have originated during that swampy condition of Southern Minnesota when the peat grew that is embraced in the drift deposits, as already detailed. It is not probable that it will ever be found valuable for the manufacture of iron. Before the opening up of the vast, and richer, iron ore beds of Michigan and Missouri, the bog-ores were considerably used in the production of iron, on a small scale, in several of the western States, but the small furnaces that smelted them have all ceased operations many years ago. Another obstacle to the utilization of this deposit in Fillmore county, will be the lack of fuel in convenient and sufficient quantities.

Lead.

While the Galena limestone, which is eminently lead-bearing at Dubuque and Galena, passes, in its northwestern trend, across the southwestern portion of Fillmore county, it has not been discovered to afford the same amount of lead as in Iowa and Illinois. Indeed, at points more remote from the Mississippi river, in Iowa, no remarkable deposits of lead have been obtained from it. There is not a total absence of lead from its layers, since a few localities are known to have afforded it in limited quantities. The same is true of the lower Trenton; which seems to indicate that the presence of lead in the limestones of this region does not depend on the kind or age of the formation, but rather on some later, superimposed conditions that prevailed over the region, subjecting various formations to the same influences.

Quicklime.

All the limestones of the county are suitable for quicklime, but by far the greater quantity is made from the upper Trenton. In the townships of Sumner and Spring Valley, all the circumstances necessary for the cheap and rapid production of quicklime of the best quality co-exist, viz.: a suitable limestone, abundant exposure, and plenty of fuel. The Trenton there forms some of its characteristic outcrops, constituting the bluffs of the streams continuously for many miles, and rising a hundred or a hundred and fifty feet above the valleys. The kilns are built at the foot of the bluff, and the stone is cheaply obtained, without much cost of transportation. Wood is also abundant at present, much of that portion of the county being covered by a heavy forest growth.

The following list of lime-burners, with their localities and estimated production for the year, will give some idea of the extent of the business now carried on:

Palmer and Miller, Bear Creek, three kilns	2,000 bushels.
N. E. Fetterly, Bear Creek, three kilns	5,000 bushels.
L. G. Odell, Bear Creek, three kilns, (one draw-kiln)	5,000 bushels.
Charles Gorton, Bear Creek, one kiln	1,000 bushels.
Allen Brothers, Bear Creek, one kiln	1,000 bushels.
J. Finley, Bear Creek, one kiln	2,000 bushels.
Isaac Kegley, Bear Creek, one kiln	600 bushels.
Lem. Stout, Bear Creek, one kiln	2,000 bushels.
T. J. Hammer, Bear Creek, one kiln	2,000 bushels.
Elder Cyrus Young, Bear Creek, two kilns	Not in use.

Harvey McQuillan, Bear Creek, two kilns	Not in use.
Olds and Braley, sec. 9, Spring Valley, one kiln	2,000 bushels.
I. N. Cummings, sec. 11, Spring Valley, one kiln	
J. H. Hall, sec. 12, Spring Valley	3,500 bushels.

These all burn the upper Trenton, and there is no noteworthy difference in the quality either of the rock or of the lime produced. According to the testimony of several, however, there are certain layers, near the bottom of the formation, which are not suitable for quicklime. Some layers also are arenaceous, and have to be avoided, but the great mass of the rock is exceedingly well adapted to making quicklime.

The kilns used are, for the most part, of the rudest construction, presenting no improvement over the ancient and well-known "pot-kiln." They have to be emptied and refilled for every burning. Mr. L. G. Odell has the only draw-kiln seen in the county. In this part of the county, mixed wood sells for two dollars or two dollars and fifty cents per cord. The average price of lime is twenty-five cents per bushel, but it fluctuates from twenty to forty. In July, 1875, it was selling for twenty cents; but in September it brought forty cents. The lime itself is generally nearly white after being burnt, but in some places it has an ashen white color, though on slacking it is always white. It slacks with rapidity, evolving considerable heat. It requires from sixty to seventy-two hours to burn a kiln, depending on the size of the kiln, and somewhat on its shape, and consuming about ten cords of dry mixed wood. When freshly and thoroughly burnt, one bushel by measure weighs about 75 pounds, but if not well burnt, it will exceed 80 pounds. "Delivered at Spring Valley, by weight it is sold at the same price as by measure at the kiln." When shipped from Spring Valley it generally goes west, to points along the Southern Minnesota railroad, and is known as *Spring Valley white lime.*

Throughout the county, where the Trenton limestone appears, there are other lime-kilns that supply the local demand. The following were noted:

At Carimona, by William Renslow.
At Forestville, by Frank Turner.
At Chatfield, by Dennis Jacobs.
Sec. 35, Carimona, by Mr. Rollins.
Sec. 25, Canton, by Simon Houck.

The Shakopee is not used for making lime in Fillmore county, though it is extensively burned in the lower Minnesota valley, at

Mankato and at Shakopee. The St. Lawrence limestone is somewhat employed for this purpose, and affords a lime that is nearly white, and is said to weigh 80 pounds per bushel of measure. At Lanesboro this lime sells at $1.25 per barrel, or fifty cents per bushel, wood costing five or six dollars per cord. Mr. Sherman's kiln holds about 300 bushels, and requires 10 to 11 cords of wood for thorough calcination, burning about 48 hours. But little is shipped from here. The lime is about white, and slacks perfectly white. The following list embraces all known kilns that are run from the St. Lawrence:

At Lanesboro, by B. Sherman.
At Lanesboro, by Moses Greer.
At Lanesboro, by Mr. Butler.
At Rushford, by Jos. Otis.
At Rushford, by Wm. Crampton.

Brick.

There is no lack of materials for making common red brick. In some places the surface of the drift clay is used, containing some fine gravel, and at others the loess-loam. Brickmaking machinery was met with in the survey of the county at the following points:

Sec. 20, Spring Valley, J. W. Smith.
Forestville, Michael Shields.
Preston, Franklin Coleman.
Lanesboro, Thomas Dunsmore.
Chatfield, Wm. Stafford.
Lanesboro, W. H. Roberts.
Rushford, Ole Tuff.
Granger, (formerly,) Mr. Ferris.
Peterson, ———.

Gold, Copper.

In small quantities gold has been washed, by rude methods, from the drift at several points in the county. It was found on Luke Hague's land, in gravel, northeast quarter section 26, Spring Valley, and at Yeariton's saw mill, section 31, Jordan. There are accounts also of fragments of native copper having been found in the drift. It is hardly necessary to say that these discoveries do not indicate any valuable deposit of the kind in the rocks of the localities where they may be found. They pertain to the drift, and have been transported hundreds of miles along with the other foreign substances in which they occur, from the northern part of the State. Such discoveries have sometimes awakened an interest that has culminated in stock companies formed for mining, and in the wasting of thousands of dollars. Similar small quantities of gold can be got by a minute washing of the drift at almost any place where the drift sheet is attenuated, or where the older glacial drift has been denuded, leaving the gold, which is indestructible, either by the lapse of time or by the chemistry of the elements, on the rock surface underlying. Almost every geological report in the country makes mention of them, extending at least through Ohio, Illinois, Indiana, Wisconsin and Iowa.

Building-Stone.

With this necessary article Fillmore county is also well supplied, and it has been put to an extensive use. There are hundreds of openings made to supply a local demand, besides a great many more extensive quarries which are known for a good many miles round. A great deal of stone for building is shipped to counties west, which are drift-covered, and without accessible building stone. Probably three-fourths of the building-stone used in the county is derived from the Trenton, the other fourth being made up of the Galena and the St. Lawrence. The Lower Trenton is most frequently employed. This is largely owing to the prominent manner of its outcrops, as shown under the head of *Drainage* and of *Surface-Features.* The Upper Trenton has been used in the construction of several schoolhouses and private residences. At Spring Valley the Galena is principally used. At Lanesboro, Whalen, Peterson and Rushford, the St. Lawrence. The Shakopee and Jordan are but rarely resorted to.

Probably the best known quarry in the county is that of Mr. Joseph Taylor, near Fountain. It is situated near the railroad, from which a side track allows the loading of cars. It is in the Lower Trenton, and supplies the "blue limestone" that is so largely shipped by the Southern Minnesota Railroad to points on its line in Mower, Freeborn and Faribault counties. The beds are usually less than six inches in thickness, and they are easily broken to any desired size. It is a hard stone, not easily cut, but can be dressed if necessary. It is not injured by disseminated shale, as much of the Lower Trenton is, and hence makes a very durable material. Mr. Taylor delivers it on the cars at $4.50 per cord of 128 feet. At Fountain are several buildings constructed of this stone.

Besides the quarries in the Trenton that have been mentioned in giving the scientific geology of that formation, a number were visited at which no new facts of interest were noted. Such were Ole Oleson's, northeast quarter section 36, Harmony; Wm. Wilbright's and Martin Quinn's, section 15, Forestville: George Drury's, section 3, Bristol; Garrett Mensing's, southwest quarter section 27, Forestville. It would be impossible, and unnecessary, to mention all the places where this limestone has been wrought. In traveling over the county a number of stone houses for residence were seen, belonging to farmers. Such are O. O'Hara's, southwest quarter section 18, Amherst, from the Trenton; Mr. George Park's, section 37, Bloomfield, from the Galena of Mr. S. S. Belding's quarry. The stone mill at Preston is of the Trenton. Of the quarries in the Galena at Spring Valley, those of Mr. Shumaker and of Mr. Allen are the most important. The former furnishes a beautiful fine-grained cut-stone for trimmings, as well as stone for common walls. The latter supplies a darker-colored, and coarser stone, which has been considerably used.

From the St. Lawrence limestone a very fine building stone is obtained. It is a fortunate circumstance that very much of this formation is in regular, and often in heavy layers. These are also not so firm as to resist the usual means for quarrying. When the beds are broken the blocks are found to possess often a finely vesicular texture. Their color is a very light yellow, or buff, resembling that of the well known "Milwaukee brick." The principal buildings at Lanesboro, including the Lanesboro Hotel, the flouring mill of Thompson & Williams, the Presbyterian and Catholic churches, the public schoolhouse, and a number of stores, are of the St. Lawrence, quarried at Lanesboro, and from land owned by the Lanesboro Company. At Whalen are excellent opportunities for obtaining this stone in its best condition. It has been somewhat wrought on Whalen's Bluff. Quarries in the same are owned at Rushford by Wm. Crampton, Jos. Otis and Hiram Walker. Mr. Crampton's quarry furnished the stone put into Boyam's store, and also that of A. K. Hanson's. Mr. E. Larson's was built from Mr. Otis' quarry, and that of Kierland & Son from Mr. Walker's. At Amherst P. O. the Jordan is quarried some for foundations, and the Shakopee at Chatfield.

Sand for Mortar and Concrete.

Wherever the St. Peter sandstone is accessible it is employed for making mortar. It is equally good for hard-finish, being, when taken from some depth, purely white and of very uniform fineness. There are, however, some portions of the county where it is much more difficult to obtain a sand suitable for common mortar. In the western part of the county a white sand, or one nearly white is obtained from deposits referable to the Lower Cretaceous. These have been mentioned under the head of *Cretaceous*. They are found on the land of C. C. Temple, southeast quarter section 8, Bloomfield, on section 17, Spring Valley, on Andrew McNee's land, northwest quarter section 22, Bloomfield, and on J. M. Rexford's, northeast quarter section 36. Mr. Temple deliver's sand at Spring Valley for $1.75 per load, of two tons. One team can haul five such loads per day, but generally hauls but three. From three to five hundred dollars worth are taken from Mr. Temple's sand pit annually. Besides these sources for mortar-sand, the Jordan sandstone, which is often as incoherent as the St. Peter, can be used to advantage, though it is rather more apt to be cemented by iron. There can be no question but the compact and impervious nature of the green shales of the lower Trenton have preserved the incoherency of the St. Peter, by preventing the downward percolation of ferriferous and calcareous waters, which certainly would have left their impurities in the form of cement among its beautiful white grains.

The proximity and cheapness of lime and sand have suggested the building of houses by mixing these substances in the form of a concrete. Several such are found at Fillmore, also in Jordan, and at Rushford; but this method is not general. The material is cast in the form of large brick, having the color of common brown mortar, and these blocks are laid up much like common brick walls. Patent presses are used to make the concrete blocks.

REPORT ON OLMSTED COUNTY.

BY M. W. HARRINGTON.

This large and wealthy county lies in the second tier of counties north of Iowa. It is separated from the Mississippi River by Winona county on the east. Fillmore and Mower counties on the south separate it from Iowa. It is bounded on the west by Dodge county and on the north by Goodhue and Wabasha counties. Olmsted county is nearly a rectangle with five ranges of townships east and west and four ranges north and south. The geometrical figure is rendered irregular by Wabasha county which takes out two townships from the northeast corner. This irregularity is farther increased by an east and west row of twelve townships on the western part of the south side of the county, and extending half a section farther west than the rest of the county. The county contains 18 complete townships of 36 sections each, and twelve sections in addition, making 654 sections or square miles in all.

The following table gives the area in acres of each of the townships of the county. It is from the office of the State Auditor, Hon. O. P. Whitcomb:

Name.	Township N.	Range. W.	Acres and Fractions.
Elmira	105	11	23,003.69
Dover	106	11	23,019.01
Quincy	107	11	23,033.81
Orion	105	12	22,992.53
Eyota	106	12	22,983.90
Viola	107	12	22,977.97
Pleasant Grove	105	13	23,020.18
Marion	106	13	22,963.10
Haverhill	107	13	23,005.91
Farmington	108	13	22,810.11
High Forest	104 105	14 (6 sections) 14	26,804.42
Rochester	106	14	22,973.76
Cascade	107	14	22,915.45
Oronoco	108	14	22,968.06
Rock Dell	104 105	15 (6 sections) 15	26,809.22
Salem	106	15	23,002.35
Kalmar	107	15	22,990.60
New Haven	108	15	23,057.89
Total acres and fractions	....	....	421.341.96

Drainage.—Streams are plentiful and their fall moderate. The water reaches the Mississippi by three paths. The central, northern and western parts of the county are drained by the Zumbro River. This stream runs north into Wabasha county, when it turns east and makes its way to the Mississippi. It comes into Rochester from the southwest, and within the city limits Bear Creek, from the southeast, Silver Creek, from the east, and Cascade Creek, from the west, empty into it. Near the north line of the county it receives quite a stream resulting from the union of the Middle and North forks of the Zumbro. The southern tier of townships are drained by Root River, which, very sinuous, takes a generally east course for the Mississippi. It has in the county no affluents of any size, except at Chatfield, where a stream of small size comes in from the north On the eastern border of the county some branches of the small Whitewater River reach this county.

There are no lakes in the county. There are a few small ponds which in no sense deserve the name of lakes. Streams which sink into the ground and disappear are said to be not rare. The U. S. surveyor's plat of Farmington township lays down one such stream. Another is laid down on other maps in Elmira township; and another in Haverhill and Viola townships. From reports in various parts of the county, it seems they prevail where either the Lower or Upper (Galena) Magnesian limestone occurs—a state of things to be expected, as will be noted when these formations are discussed.

Living springs of cool, pure water, of the best quality, are not rare. They are by far most common on the south or west sides of bluffs, where the green clay of the lower part of the Trenton Limestone comes to the surface. This clay is impervious to water. The formations dip slightly toward the southwest. The layer of clay forms a nearly level floor of which the southern and western sides are lower than the others. The water will consequently come out on these sides. The springs are frequently of large size. The phenomenon of a row of springs some distance up the sides of a bluff, while the base of the bluff furnishes no springs, is by no means a rare one. Spongy earth is apt to collect about the mouth of the spring. When filled with water, it is soft and very miry. In former times, when the road crossed such spots, bad mudholes were found. They have now been generally tapped and drained, though they are still occasionally met on the less-traveled roads.

Water-powers.—Olmsted county is more than usually favored with good water-powers. This results from the large number of streams, the swiftness of their currents and the favorable nature of the banks and bottom. The information which is given in the following table was derived from Mr. F. T. Olds, of the firm of Olds & Fishback, owners of Rochester City Mills, and from John M. Cole, owner of Zumbro Mills.

Water-Power Mills in Olmsted County.

Name of Mills.	Owner.	Location.	Stream.	Feet of Head.	Run of Stone.	Capacity per day.
Rochester City Mills	Olds & Fishback.	Rochester City	Zumbro	16	4	100 bbls.
Zumbro Mills	Jno. M. Cole	"	Zumbro with Bear Creek	10	4	100 bbls.
Cascade Mills	Lyman Tondro	"	Cascade Cr.	17	2	50 bbls.
Woolen Mill	Wm. Bartley	"	Bear Creek	17	......	50 horse power, only partly improved.
Oronoco Mills	Allis, Gooding & Hibberd	Oronoco Vil.	Zumbro	15	7	150 bbls.
Middleton's Mill.	R. Middleton	Kalmar	"	6½	2	35 bbls.
Saw Mill.	Jas. Button	New Haven	"	6	......	
Stewartville	Chas. Stewart	High Forest	Root	12	......	50 bbls.
....	J. Fugle	Orion	"	8	......	50 bbls.
Custom Mill	—— English	"	"	small.	small.	
Quincy Mills	....	Quincy	Whitewater.	10	2 or 3	
Saw Mill	—— Ambler	New Haven	Zumbro	10	......	

Several unimproved powers are reported. There are some between Rochester and the north boundary of the county, but bad bottom and banks prevent their improvement. There are said to be two good powers between Oronoco Mills and the main stream. An unimproved power is said to be found at Genoa. At High Forest village a water-power was improved years ago, but has been permitted to go to ruin.

The *Surface* is much diversified and the natural scenery very pleasing to the eye. The surface is generally rolling. Along the streams bluffs are found sometimes nearly 200 feet high. These bluffs are usually steep, level-topped, and characteristic of the geological formation which makes them. They are most common in the central and eastern parts of the county. Rochester lies in a valley, with bluffs all around it. It climbs the bluff toward the west. Dover Center, Marion and Chatfield lie in similar valleys. Curious isolated mounds are common, especially along the east side of the Zumbro in the southwest corner of Farmington and the adjacent corners of neighboring townships. They are also common in Elmira. Toward the west the surface is much more level. Much of Rock Dell township is like the prairies just south and west of it. The name of the township is derived from two or three rocky dells in its northern part.

The following notes were taken from the plats of the government survey of the county. These plats were not dated, but according to the State Auditor's records the county was surveyed in 1854 and 1855. They were found in the office of the county register, where access was given to them with the utmost courtesy:

Farmington.—(T. 108 N., 13 W.) This was a prairie township. From an isolated bluff in section 19 extended a stream which sank in about the middle of section 28. The magnetic variation varied from 8° 24′ to 9° 51′. Several marshes of some size were recorded.

Oronoco.—(T. 108 N., 14 W.) No marshes worth noting are shown on this plat. Wood accompanies the streams, varying from one to three miles in extent. The Zumbro on this and other early maps is called the Embarass R. The bluffs along the river are sometimes marked 100 feet. The magnetic variation varied from 8° 24′ to 9° 55′.

New Haven.—(T. 108 N., 15 W.) This township is represented as quite uneven, and bluffs occur along the streams. Woods follow the streams, and two or three aspen thickets are marked. The magnetic variation was 8° 55′ to 9° 54′.

Quincy.—(T. 107 N., 11 W.) This was mostly prairie when surveyed. There was some wood along streams, and a few scattering thickets. A single small marsh was marked. Bluffs accompany the streams. Magnetic variation, 8° 27′ to 9° 51′.

Viola.—(T. 107 N., 12 W.) Several small marshes were marked. A range of prairie extended, east and west, through the middle. Prairie also occupied the northeast corner. Bluffs accompany the streams here also. Magnetic variation, 8° 26′ to 9° 34′.

Haverhill.—(T. 107 N., 13 W.) About half of the town is prairie. Woods extend, as usual, along the streams, which are accompanied by bluffs. Several marshes, none of great size, are platted. Magnetic variation, 8° to 9° 41′.

Cascade.—(T. 107 N., 14 W.) There are no marshes laid down in this township. It is nearly all prairie-land, brush accompanying the streams generally, and a few scattering thickets being marked. The bluffs along the river are sometimes quite elevated for the county. Magnetic variation, 8° 13′ to 9° 33′.

Kalmar.—(T. 107 N., 15 W.) Rather heavy timber occupies the northwestern part. An isolated grove is marked in sections 13 and 14. A single marsh is laid down in sections 11 and 12. The banks of the fork of the Zumbro are bluffy. Magnetic variation 8° 36′ to 9° 35′.

Dover.—(T. 106 N., 11 W.) The township is an essentially prairie one, though many isolated thickets are marked, and there is some wood along a branch of the Whitewater river. The marshes are few and insignificant. The magnetic variation is from 8° 40′ to 9° 50′.

Eyota.—(T. 106 N., 12 W.) A broad belt of timber, about three miles wide, crosses the township diagonally from the northwest corner. The magnetic variation, 9° to 10° 40′.

Marion.—(T. 106 N., 13 W.) Several marshes are given. The land is wooded along the streams, leaving about one-third of the township in prairie. Magnetic variation, 8° 40′ to 10°.

Rochester.—(T. 106 N., 14 W.) The township is mostly brushy, with scattering timber. Bluffs accompany the streams. Several marshes are laid down. Magnetic variation, 8° 15′ to 9° 50′.

Salem.—(T. 106 N., 15 W.) Two marshes of about 120 acres each, and one of about 160 acres are given. About two-thirds are marked as wooded, but the prairie portion comes at the north, where the streams are most abundant. The streams are not marked as bluffy. Magnetic variation, 8° 47′ to 9° 38′.

Elmira.—(T. 105, N. 11 W.) This township was about half-wooded. An independent drainage is marked in sections 8, 9, 16, 17. Bluffy mounds not on streams are marked. Magnetic variation, 8° 45′ to 10° 55′.

Orion (T. 105 N., 12 W.) is somewhat wooded along streams. In sections 10 and 15 a stream is represented as sinking. The banks of Root river are bluffy. A small lake is given in sections 35 and 36. Magnetic variation 9° 20′ to 12° 12′.

Pleasant Grove.—(T. 105 N., 13 W.) A large marsh of about 120 acres is laid down in the southern part of the township. A band of woods about 3 miles wide accompanies the river, the banks of which are bluffy. Magnetic variation 8° 25′ to 10° 57′.

High Forest.—(T. 105 N., 14 W., with a range of sections in T. 104 N., 14 W.) A large marsh—about 320 acres—is laid down in sections 30 and 31. The township is wooded along the streams, but is about half prairie. Magnetic variation 6° 45′ to 9° 55′.

Rock Dell.—(T. 105 N., 15 W., with a range of sections in T. 104 N., 15 W.) A large marsh—320 acres—in the northwestern part. The land along the streams is little wooded. The banks of the streams in the northern part are bluffy; in the southern, not. Magnetic variation 7° 40′ to 9° 18′.

There seems to be no easily recognizable order in the magnetic variation for different parts of the county. The extremes were 6° 45′ and 12° 12′, in High Forest and Orion respectively. Both these towns are on the south side and not far apart.

Some *elevations* have been taken on lines of railroad, built or proposed, through the county. Those of the Winona and St. Peter R. R. I have not been able to see. Mr. W. D. Hurlbut tells me that the survey for this railroad makes Eyota 1,210 feet above the sea, and gives the same height (1,210 feet) to Byron.

The following are elevations on the line of a proposed railroad from Wabasha to Austin, and along the lines of several other proposed roads. Some of them fall in neighboring counties, but they are given here to make them of general use. They are from the notes of Horace Horton, civil engineer, Rochester, who ran the lines on which the elevations occur. These elevations were referred to the level of low water in the Mississippi River at Wabasha. This is 30 feet below St. Paul and 620 feet above the surface of the ocean.

ELEVATIONS FROM THE NOTES OF HORACE HORTON, C. E.

	Above the Mississippi River at low water at Wabasha.	Above the Ocean.
1 Head of East Indian creek, 5 miles N. E. of Plainview, (Wabasha county.)	534	1,154
2 Street of Plainview (Wabasha county.)	518	1,138
3 Elgin, (Wabasha county.)	390	1,010
4 Near center of sec. 14, Haverhill	634	1,254
5 S. W. corner sec. 24, Haverhill, (Rock, seen some feet above.)	570	1,190
6 Base of Sugar Loaf, sec. 31 and 32, Haverhill	390	1,010
7 College street bridge, Rochester	340	960
8 Surface of water beneath	325	945
9 Summit of Lone Mound, section 11, Farmington, within 10 feet of Plainview level, viz.:	518	1,138
10 S. E. corner sec. 10, High Forest	667	1,287
11 Low water at High Forest village	570	1,190
12 Sec. 29, T. 104 N., 15 W., Mower Co., half mile south John Rowley's house	757	1,377
13 Dr. Thornhill's farm, 4 miles east Brownsdale, in Mower county	730	1,350
14 S. Minn. R. R. at Brownsdale, (Mower county.)	632	1,252
15 St. Paul and Milwaukee R. R. track at Austin, (Mower county.)	560	1,180
16 Chatfield, about	267	887
17 Pleasant Grove, about	667	1,287
18 Creek near the schoolhouse in sec. 15, Cascade, about	365	985
19 N. W. corner section 10, Cascade	500	1,120
20 Quarter stake, sections 33 and 34, Oronoco	490	1,110
21 Center stake, sec. 21, Oronoco	465	1,085
22 Surface of river at Oronoco	315	935

Lone Mound (elevation 9) is about 150 feet above the surrounding country.

Elevation 10 gives the summit of the water-shed between the Zumbro and Root Rivers. From section 5, Orion, to section 21, Rock Dell, the elevation of this water-shed does not vary 10 feet from the figures given. By comparing the figures in the table it will be seen that this water shed includes the highest land in the county of which we have any record of observations. A general elevation toward the south and southwest is visible. This elevation reaches its maximum in the counties south, which include in their borders the most elevated land in the State. On comparing the geological map of the county, accompanying this report, and the table of elevations, a striking relation between the altitude and geological formation is rendered manifest. This will be more particularly referred to under the heads of the individual formations.

Timber.—Heavy timber is found along the large streams, though it is pretty well cut out now. Aspen and brush thickets are common everywhere. The following trees, shrubs and twining plants were observed while driving through the county:

I. *Trees.*

Basswood (*Tilia Americana. L.*)
Sugar Maple (*Acer Saccharinum. Wang.*)
Red Maple (*A, rubrum. L.*)
Soft Maple (*A, dasyoarpum. Ehr.*)

The first two maples do not usually attain any considerable size, while the soft maple, in a state of nature, becomes a large tree.

Box Elder (*Negundo aceroides. Mœnch.*)

This tree is common along streams and is a favorite in cultivation. In transplanting it is trimmed up too much to easily take root. It is a pretty tree, of pleasing form and full foliage.

White Ash (*Fraxinus Americana. L.*)
Slippery Elm (*Ulmus fulva. Michx.*)
Corky Elm (*U. racemosa. Thomas.*)

Of which I saw several trees along the streets in Rochester. It was undoubtedly transplanted from woods close by.

White Elm (*U. Americana. L. pl. Clayt. Willd.*)
Black Walnut (*Juglans nigra. L.*)

A grove of these trees was seen in Kalmar.

Butternut (*Juglans cinerea. L.*)
Hickory (*Carya.*)

Only very small trees were seen. It is said that they are always cut when young to make round barrel-hoops, such hoops having been taken to be characteristic of barrels containing Minnesota flour. It is a destructive and pernicious practice, for thus one of the most valuable of trees is prevented from maturing. The only way to prevent it is to make square hoops the fashion for Minnesota, which could easily be done by a combination of the leading millers.

Bur-oak, (*Quercus macrocarpa. Michx.*)

Is very abundant. On prairies it is low, 3-8 ft. high, forming extensive thickets and fruiting abundantly. In more favorable localities it is larger and may become quite a tree.

White-oak (*Q. alba. L.*)

Is hard to distinguish at a distance from the preceding. Undoubted specimens were seen near High Forest.

Jack-oak, Yellow-oak, etc., etc., (*Q. coccinea, Wang. Var. tinctoria.*)

Like all the species of this group of oaks, this tree is hard to identify. It is very common but is gradually disappearing before civilization. It is frequently seen dead or dying, without apparent cause.

Paper-birch (*Betula papyracea. Ait.*)

Small, along streams in the northern part of the county.

American Aspen (*Populus tremuloides*. *Michx.*)

Very common, usually small.

Coarsely toothed Aspen (*P. grandidentata*. *Michx.*)

Cottonwood (*P. monilifera*. *Ait.*)

A great favorite in cultivation.

Balm of Gilead (*P. balsamifera*. *L.*)

Silver Poplar (*P. alba*. *L.*)

Lombardy Poplar (*P. dilatata*. *Ait.*)

The last three are introduced and are very common in cultivation.

Willows. Several species were seen, some of them becoming large trees.

White Pine (*Pinus strobus*. *L.*)

A few straggling specimens were seen on the bluffs three miles east Rochester.

Locust (*Robinia Pseud-acacia*. *L.*)

Is commonly cultivated. The same is true of several pines and spruces and a larch.

II. *Shrubs.*

Prickly Ash (*Zanthoxylum Americanum*. *Mill.*)

Smooth Sumac (*Rhus glabra*. *L.*)

Poison Ivy (*R. Toxicodendron*. *L.*)

False Indigo (*Amorpha fruticosa*. *L.*)

Lead Plant (*A. Canescens*. *Nutt.*)

Wild Plum (*Prunus Americana*. *Marshall.*)

Apparently several varieties, some of them producing the greatest abundance of pleasant fruit.

Wild Red Cherry (*P. Pennsylvanica*. *L.*)

Choke Cherry (*P. Virginiana*. *L.*)

Wild Black Cherry (*P. serotina*. *Ehr.*)

Nine Bark (*Spiraea opulifolia*. *L.*)

Common Meadow-Sweet (*Salicifolia*. *L.*)

Wild Rose (*Rosa blanda*. *Ait.*)

Wild Red Raspberry (*Rubus strigosus*. *Michx.*)

Wild Black Raspberry (*R. occidentalis*. *L.*)

Flavor of the fruit is said to be remarkably good.

Common Blackberry (*R. villosus*. *Ait.*) Not common.

Black Torn (*Cratægus tomentosa*. *L.* *Var. pyrifolia.*)

Black Thorn (*Cratægus tomentosa*. *L.* *Var. punctata.*)

Choke-berry (*Pyrus arbutifolia*. *L.*)

Am. Mountain Ash (*P. Americána*. *DC.*) Cultivated.

Eu. Mountain-Ash (*P. Aucuparia*. *Gært.*) Cultivated.

Red-osier Dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera*. *Michx.*)

Panicled Dogwood (*C. paniculata*. *L'Her.*)

Wolf-berry (*Symphoricarpus occidentalis*. *R. Br.*)

Sheep-berry, Wild Haw (*Viburnum Lentago*. *L.*)

Cranberry-tree (*V. Opulus*. *L.*)

Is frequently cultivated.

Hazel (*Corylus Americana*. *Watt.*)

Abundant on prairies.

Low Birch (*Betula pumila. L.*) Cold bogs.

Speckled Alder (*Alnus incana. Willd.*) Along streams.

Juniper (*Juniperus Sabina. L.*)

Seen only on a rocky bank on Root River—sec. 35. Rock Dell.

III. *Vines.*

Virgin's Bower (*Clametis Virginiana. L.*)

Frost Grape (*Vitis cordifolia. Michx.*)

Virginia-Creeper (*Ampelopsis quinquefolia. Michx.*)

Common wild and a favorite in cultivation. It is often erroneously called *Ivy*.

Shrubby Bitter-sweet (*Celastrus scandens. L.*)

Hop. (*Humulus Lupulus. L.*)

Wild and in cultivation.

THE GEOLOGICAL STRUCTURE.

The outcrops of rock are numerous throughout the county. It lies just at the edge of the system of deeply eroded valleys extending westward from the Mississippi. To the east of it are the deep ravines which cut through the high bluffs at the base of which the great river lies. The beds of these ravines gradually rise in receding from the Mississippi, and it is in Olmsted county that they rise to near the surface of the surrounding country. To the west and southwest of the county lies the great accumulation of drift which grows deeper and deeper as one passes westward. This material thins out over Olmsted. In the southwest corner it is thick enough to conceal entirely the rock-features below. Eastward it appears only in thin outliers, marking the ragged edge of deposition, or in patches and masses which are remnants left by subsequent erosion. In order to see to the best advantage the changes in the drift, features of erosion, and stratification, one must cross the county obliquely. There is the least drift, generally speaking, in the northeast corner, and the most in the southwest corner. On the other hand, the southeast and northwest corners are much alike in the very feature in which the other two corners differ. In a rough way the lines of change cross the county diagonally in a southeasterly and northwesterly direction. This is due to two facts which may have some relation with each other. In the first place the Great River in the vicinity of the county runs in a generally southeast direction. The erosion-valleys extending from it would tend to take a direction perpendicular to it, and the lines of equal depth of erosion would tend to be parallel to it. Again, the dip of the rocks in this county is slightly southwest. The edges of the strata as presented on the surface would tend to be in lines perpendicular to this direction.

There are no signs of noteworthy upheaval, depression or other changes in the relations of the strata to each other in this county, as in the whole of this part of the state the strata are conformable. The peculiar structure of the bluffs enables one to trace some of the strata at a distance. As far as the eye can follow them their planes occupy the same position with reference to the horizon. The only exception to this is the Cretaceous. Its rather doubtful patches in the county lie in nearly a horizontal plane, and across the edges of the strata below.

The strata of the rocks other than Cretaceous do not lie in a horizontal plane. The dip is very slight, and in this county is toward the southwest. Toward the northwest corner the line of dip alters a little, and is more southerly. Comparison of altitudes and strata over a larger portion of the State has convinced Mr. W. D. Hurlbut that the dip here is 10 feet to the mile southwest. All my observations in the county tended to prove the correctness of this estimate.

The stratigraphy of this fine county is easy to read in most cases. The form of the bluffs, the line of springs making a definite part of the Trenton, the differing solubility of the rock and the consequent occurrence of sink holes, caves, etc., in one formation and not in another, the lithological character of the rocks notably distinct in some of the formations, and the gradual and regular dip of the strata, which, when taken with the erosion, enables one to predict with much certainty the rock over which he is standing, even when it is hidden from view—all these enable one to read the stratigraphical enigma of the county with little trouble. In this study the intimate knowledge of the county possessed by Mr. Hurlbut assisted me greatly. He cheerfully rendered me all the assistance in his power, besides hospitably entertaining me at his house. The stormy weather of the season devoted to this work prevented me from visiting all of the county. In such cases the details of the map accompanying this report were put in by Mr. Hurlbut. You yourself, sir, as director of the survey, have frequently passed through this county, and your observations in it have not only confirmed many of my own, but have added facts which escaped my attention.

I will here embrace the opportunity of recommending Olmsted county as an excellent field for teaching stratigraphy. The strata are interesting, the characters mentioned above make the reading of them easy, the scenery is unusually attractive. I can conceive of no better spot to which to take a class of students for instruction in geological field-work.

The formations found in the county are not numerous. The Potsdam sandstone is said to be found in the beds of the Zumbro and Whitewater rivers, about where they leave the county. It has not been seen by me, however, and the sandstone is probably only one of the lower sandstone layers of the Lower Magnesian. The latter formation, the St. Peter sandstone, the Trenton limestone and the Galena, are found here, the first and last probably only represented by a part of their entire thickness. A little Cretaceous was found.

THE LOWER MAGNESIAN LIMESTONE.

The AREA of this formation in the county is as follows. It follows the larger streams, beginning on them when well in the county, and broadening out until it leaves the county with them. It appears in the beds of the branches of the Zumbro well up in Rochester, Marion, Haverhill and Cascade townships. Rochester lies on a floor formed by the upper surface of this formation. The valley of Rochester city is entirely shut in by bluffs, except where the Zumbro passes out to the north and along a geological valley, now dry, to the northwest. This lower magnesian valley of Rochester city is somewhat crab-shaped, and is formed by the meeting of the various streams which make up this branch of the Zumbro. Cascade township is about half Lower Magnesian, the remaining surface being occupied by spurs and islands of the formations above, one of these islands being quite large. Oronoco township is almost exclusively Lower Magnesian. Farmington is of the Lower Magnesian floor, except the southern edge and some outliers of Trenton and St. Peter. In New Haven the middle fork of the Zumbro soon rises to the Trenton, while the north fork lies on the Magnesian, until it passes into the next county west. A large portion of Quincy is Lower Magnesian, as is a little of the northeast of Viola. An arm of this formation appears at the surface in the bed of the river, passing nearly through Dover from east to west. Elmira is also floored with Lower Magnesian for the most part, as is a small portion of Orion. The village of Dover lies in a Lower Magnesian valley, something like that of Rochester city. The same is true of Chatfield. Something more than 20 per cent. of the county has a floor of Lower Magnesian.

The *Lithological characters* of the formation here partake of its general characters in Minnesota as described by the Director of the Survey in his First Annual Report (for 1872, pp. 81–83.) It varies from a compact, fine magnesian limestone to a pure, friable, saccharine white sandstone. It is frequently in irregular layers, which are not continuous for any distance. Sometimes these layers are thin and continuous; sometimes they are thick and cleave naturally into massive blocks. The rock is often brecciated, occasionally massive. Broken cherty layers, irregular silicious pockets, mottled sandstone, oolitic limestone, vesicular limestone, sparry cavities of considerable size, are all found in this variable yet usually easily recognized rock.

This rock holds its form well and thus produces characteristic *surface features.* When worn deeply into by erosion it presents bold cliffs and craggy, rounded hills. When not covered thickly by drift, it makes a poor surface for agriculture, as may be seen in some parts of Oronoco. It is nearly barren, and is covered with scant grass, with hazel and scrub oak (in this case dwarf *Quercus macrocarpa*) or with small paper birch, and other wood-growth not large enough to be of importance economically. When this floor is covered by drift, as in the beautiful prairie township of Farmington, the soil may be unsurpassed. The most of this township is devoted to wheat, and at the proper season it seems to be one continuous wheatfield.

A *section* of this formation is seen at Quincy Mills. It is described in the First Annual Report, (for 1872) p. 82, and need not be repeated.*

---

* *Note.*—As the report for 1872 is entirely out of print, the section at Quincy is hereby appended, in order to complete the geology of the county. No. 1 of this section is of the Shakopee limestone, and No. 2 is the upper portion of the Jordan sandstone.—N. H. W.

Descending Section at Quincy, Olmsted County.

No. 1.	Dolomitic limestone; quite arenaceous, falling out in huge masses which are rough, distorted in their crude bedding, and unmanageable as a quarry-stone, showing much calc-spar. Limestone and sandstone are mingled with occasional strips of light-green shale. In general the face presents the appearance of an alternation of horizontal layers of thin and more shaly beds, with heavy, coarse and rough limestone beds. Some green shale layers alternate with dark, umber-colored (ochreous) shale, neither being more than two inches thick. They are tortuous and not continuous. This phase appears like the tops of the bluffs at Winona, but is probably at a considerably higher horizon......	30 ft.
No. 2.	Persistent, white sandstone, or granular quartzite, seen....	10 ft.
	Total exposure..	40 ft.

The following section was taken at the lime-kiln of James Barnett, on section 8, Oronoco, just northeast of the village:

Calciferous sandstone, much broken, in thin layers, buff	14 ft.
Compact little broken calciferous sandstone, light buff	3 ft.
Sandstone (mostly saccharine) in layers	4 ft. 3 in.
Aluminous limestone, in thin layers, light buff	1 ft. 7 in.
Dark sandstone with numerous blue spots	1 ft. 8 in.
Arenaceous vesicular dolomite	3 ft. 6 in.
Like second above	4 ft.
Like second above, but more irregularly bedded	1 ft.
Vesicular, sparry, irregularly bedded dolomite	4 ft.
Total as far as seen	37 ft. 8 in.

The above section begins at the top. No fossils could be found. The lowest layer (last described) is employed by Mr. Barnett for making lime. The lime is light buff, slow, and contains considerable cement.

This lime is of considerable *economical value*. The lime of Barnett is good notwithstanding its slowness, and the cement in it only increases its value for many purposes. Mr. Barnett uses 12 cords of wood to one charge of his kiln. The wood costs $2.00 per cord. The kiln burns three days and affords 120 barrels of lime. Mr. Barnett says that the lime is slow in slacking, but that it sets quickly.

This rock does not furnish much good building material in this county. It is not of even bedding and homogeneous, texture generally. Pieces are sometimes employed at Rochester for window-caps and water-tables. These pieces are found only in the uppermost layers. No general use is made of them.

THE ST. PETER SANDSTONE.

The *area* of this rock is difficult to represent on a map. It is so friable that it will not endure erosion when left to itself. It is only when it is capped by the lower layers of the Trenton that it successfully resists the attacks of water. By itself, uncovered by other formations, it occupies but little space. It juts out beneath the cap of limestone only a few feet or rods. From a projecting spur of limestone it may extend farther, as is illustrated in the city of Rochester. A spur of Trenton comes in from the west and ends near the city limits. The sandstone, however, can be struck in sinking wells almost anywhere in the western portion of the city. Occasionally where erosion was incomplete an outlier of crumbling sandstone can be seen, not capped by limestone. Such an outlier may be found in or near SW. Farmington. This must happen but rarely, and the outliers can attain but small size. Streams of considerable size usually leap from the Trenton to the Lower Magnesian, the intervening St. Peter sandstone having been washed completely away at an early period. Sometimes, however, streams of small size remain in a bed of St. Peter sandstone, in which case the valley is sandy, covered with small oaks, and worth little for agriculture. This is seen in the valleys of Bear Creek and its branches.

The *surface features* caused by the presence of this sandstone are interesting, and have already been referred to. As the incoherency of this formation deprives it of the power of resisting erosive forces, it is usually carried away cleanly wherever exposed. The consequence is a precipitous descent from the Trenton to the Lower Magnesian. This appears in lines of remarkable, level bluffs. The height of these bluffs is usually the thickness of the formation, with fifteen or more feet of limestone on the top. These bluffs are especially noticeable around Rochester. To the east their top is reached by a rugged ascent, to the west by gradual dip of the strata. The erosive forces have left many small and isolated bluffs, which can be properly described under this head, though the lower layers of Trenton limestone assist in their formation. They appear as rugged mounds rising from the Magnesian floor, and form a striking feature in the aspect of the neighborhood. They are most abundant in southwest Farmington and in Elmira. A few are seen along the railroad, just east of Rochester. Perhaps the most remarkable is "sugar-loaf mound," about two miles east of the city and close to the railroad. Its shape and relative proportions are those of a sugar-loaf. Another remarkable one is "Lone Mound," of section 11, Farmington. It is about three miles from the line of bluffs south. Two or three miles northwest are two similar mounds, called "Twin Mounds." They are in Wabasha county.

The thickness of the St. Peter was ascertained with an aneroid barometer, near Rochester. The upper layers of the Lower Magnesian were found on Bear Creek, near the woolen mills. The upper surface of the St. Peter was ascertained as carefully as might be near Whitcomb's quarry, and near Jenkins' quarry. Three comparisons were made. The proper allowance having been made for dip and atmospheric change, the value of 111 feet was obtained for the thickness of this formation.

The *lithological character* of the St. Peter is uniform and simple.

It is a rather coarse, white, friable sandstone, pure white, except where contaminated by foreign substances or percolations from the formation above. It contains no fossils so far as I could see in this county.

This formation is *useful* in several ways. When with a tight, magnesian floor, it holds water, and furnishes a good supply to wells. It is sometimes excavated where it comes out on the face of a bluff. Excellent cellars, dry and of uniform temperature, are thus formed which are used especially for the preservation of vegetables. It supplies an inexhaustible amount of pure white sand, round-angular, and excellent for mortar or glass-making.

THE TRENTON LIMESTONE.

As this formation lies next above the St. Peter, and as the dip is southwest, we should expect to find it just behind the sandstone. Such is the case, but being a coherent limestone it occupies much more *area* than the St. Peter. It covers fully one-half of the county, stretching in a broad, interrupted band from southeast to northwest. Its outer edge is the labyrinthine, interrupted line of level, peculiar bluffs which reach in their serpentine course every township in the county, except only Rock Dell and High Forest. The southwestern or upper edge of its outcrop can not be traced so minutely, as this formation passes insensibly into the Galena which overlies it. The formation covers the most of Kalmar, Haverhill, Viola and Eyota townships. It caps also with a few feet of limestone the most of the outliers of St. Peter already mentioned.

The *lithological characters* are described in the First Annual Report (already referred to) and need not be repeated.

In general, as seen in this county, we have, below, a shaly limestone, often presenting beds of blue limestone useful for building. This is more or less interrupted by shale and averages 15 feet thick. Above this is a bed of green shale more or less interrupted with limestone, and about 15 feet thick also. Above this we have 125 feet of yellow, or gray, harsh, magnesian limestone, in regular beds of varying thickness. In deep quarrying this rock also is blue.

Many sections of this rock can be seen. It is the rock most generally quarried. Several sections for Olmsted county are given on pp. 97–99 of the First Annual Report of the survey (for 1872.) The characters of others examined by me were uniform with those there described.

Many fossils are found in these beds. *Chaetetes Lycoperdon* is plentiful in the green shale. *Leptaena*, *Orthis*, *Strophomena*, *Murchisonia*, *Pleurotomaria*, *Orthoceras* are common. The orthoceratites are unusually large.

This stone is the one most used in this county for building purposes. The stone for the buildings about Rochester were for the most part taken from the Trenton quarries near by. The quarry of W. Jenkins, just within the city limits, furnishes a large proportion of this stone.

It has been suggested that the clay of the green shale would make good brick or pottery. The grain is very fine, but the presence of small, calcareous fossils injures it for these purposes. A pottery factory, in which this clay was employed, started some years ago, had to be abandoned on this account.

THE GALENA LIMESTONE.

The *area* of this formation in the county is much less than that of the Trenton. It is found only in the southwestern part of the county, and covers rather less than 20 per cent. of the whole area. Byron, in Kalmar, is located on this rock. It underlies nearly all of Salem and High Forest, and considerable parts of Rock Dell, Rochester and Pleasant Grove. It extends into Marion and Orion, and Mr. Hurlbut tells me that a small scalp of it may yet be found in the western part of Eyota township. The lower and upper edges of its outcrop can not be accurately traced. In the case of the lower edge it is for the reason already mentioned, viz.: the Trenton and Galena blend gradually. The upper edge cannot be traced because it is completely concealed by drift.

In *lithological character*, as seen here, this rock is a heavily bedded, buff dolomite, fine grained, or coarse and porous. It contains often small pieces of iron pyrites, which, by weathering, give it ferruginous stains. Lead has not been found in place in the rock, but farmers sometimes find it isolated on the surface, evidently left behind when the rest of the rock material was weathered away. It often contains crystals of spar; sometimes irregular cavities are found. Under the influence of the weather the rock is seen to vary in solubility. The result is frequently sink-holes of varying dimensions Such holes, a few feet deep, are common on the bluffs of this formation, and I was informed by Mr. Hurlbut of an extensive one on the bluff near Garrick's quarry, the bottom of which has never been reached. Another result of this unequal weathering is the craggy appearance of the bluffs formed by the Galena.

This limestone is well displayed in this county at Garrick's quarry, Sec. 17, Rochester township. The floor of this quarry is about 30 feet above the Trenton. To the top of the quarry is about 35 feet. The rock is a sparry, magnesian and more or less arenaceous limestone. It is in beds one to three feet thick, separated by very thin layers of light blue shale. The beds are massive and yellowish, somewhat stained with iron, arising from the decay of iron pyrites. The upper portions are most arenaceous and fossiliferous. In the crevices is found abundance of satin spar, and in the largest ones stalactites may be found.

R. Williams' quarry, on the north bank of Root river, Sec. 31, High Forest township, is in this formation. This rock is exposed for 25 feet, and is dolomitic, more or less concretionary, with small, spar-lined cavities. It is sparingly fossiliferous. The upper six feet are much broken up. The remainder is compact and unevenly bedded. The concretionary structure is not visible on fresh surfaces. It is brought out by weathering and especially by burning, and then appears in the form of fine rusty lines.

On the left bank of the same stream, about one mile west of Williams' quarry, is an exposure of yellow thin-bedded, broken, uneven, dolomitic limestone, of which only 8 or ten feet are visible. I found no fossils, but was sure, from the lithological characters, that the rock is Galena.

The same rock is well exposed in the ravines of Salem and Rock Dell, where it is quarried to some extent for building.

As to *economical value*, this formation produces the best building stone found in the State. It is much used in Rochester, but has been mostly derived from Mantorville, in Dodge county. It will be further described under that head. At Russell Williams' quarry, near High Forest, it is burned for lime. There are five kilns at this place. Each kiln takes 12 cords of wood for one charge of stone. The wood has to be brought from a distance, and costs at the kiln $6.00 per cord. Three hundred barrels of lime are burned in a kiln. The lime is white and fine, and has the best reputation of any lime hereabouts. It sells at $1.00 per barrel.

THE CRETACEOUS.

A careful search along Root River and elsewhere in the southwest corner of the county, failed to afford me the slightest trace of the Maquoketa shales, which would be naturally expected overlying the Galena. An outcrop was found a few rods west of P. Brewer's residence, in the southwest quarter of section 35, of Rock Dell township, on the north bank of Root River, the character of which is doubtful. The formations in the adjoining counties, and the lithological character, indicate the probability of its being Cretaceous, and it is thus marked on the accompanying map. The exposure is along a road-track going down to a ford of the stream, and was partially covered with soil and overgrown by bushes. The following is the section from below upwards:

Compact, blueish limestone	2 feet.
Indurated, arenaceous, yellowish shale	1 foot.
Yellow sandstone, in broken layers	1 foot.
Light blue clay	½ foot.
Reddish, broken sandstone	1½ feet.
Light blue clay	¼ foot.
Sandstone	1 foot.
Sandy, bluish clay	½ foot.
Total seen distinctly	7¾ feet.

The same arrangement of alternating sandstone and clay could be traced indistinctly four or five feet farther up.

Three rods farther down the river is a compact limestone, siliceous, not dolomitic, non-fossiliferous, much broken by frost. The line of meeting of this with the preceding was concealed by soil and overgrowing plants.

The first described is in all probability Cretaceous; the second I am unable to refer to any formation with certainty. Perhaps it is Cretaceous, perhaps Niagara.

A scalp of Cretaceous, containing fossils in abundance, is said to have been found in the western part of Eyota township. It was of very limited extent.

THE DRIFT.

This covers much of the county. It thins out toward the northeast. It is of considerable thickness in the southwest. Its edge is ragged and shows extensions, which, however, are not in conformation with the present drainage system. It consists of blue clay, washed or yellow clay, stratified gravel and sand, and boulders.

The blue clay is by no means continuous. It is found in limited areas, and bands in various parts of the county. Sometimes it forms distinct ridges, as in western Rochester city and in the valley directly east of Rochester. In such cases it usually abuts on a bluff.

The washed clay, as its name indicates, has been worked over by water since its deposition in the drift. It occupies low pond-like spots, or abuts on the bluffs. It is usually of a uniform reddish-yellow color and quite arenaceous. Sometimes it is in colored layers of red, yellow and green. In this case its derivation is probably from the green shale of the Trenton as well as from the drift. The washed clay is used for bricks.

The exposures of sand and gravel are not extensive in the parts of the county examined by me. Where seen they exhibit the usual characters. The boulders are entirely absent in most parts of the county. In many scattered localities, again, they are abundant; and in the southwest corner of the county they are often found of great size.

The following table of wells will be useful for an analysis of the drift. The facts were furnished by O. Sprague, practical well-digger. Mr. Sprague is an observing man, and has probably dug more wells than any one else in the county:

Wells in Olmsted County.

O. SPRAGUE.

Location.	Owner.	DEPTH IN FEET			Water.	Remarks.
		Drift.	Rock.	Total.		
35. Farmington ...	C. E. Stacy.	22	31	53	Good.	5 feet black soil; then reached clay.
35. Farmington....	W. H. White.	20	24	44	Good.	Yellow clay and blue rock.
36. Farmington....	E. Raymond.	11	..	11	Good.	Blue clay.
25. Farmington....	W. Searles.	44	..	44	Good.	14 feet black heavy soil; remainder blue clay.
30. Haverhill	J. P. Simonds.	25	10	35	Soft.	25 feet sand; 10 feet hard sand rock.
9. Haverhill	P. H. McGovern.	40	50	90	Good.	Red, hard drift.
32. Haverhill	J. E. Brown.	25	..	25	Good.	4–5 feet soil, then sand.
11. Haverhill......	B. F. Bulen.	12	..	12	Plenty.	Red, hard drift.
14. Salem..........	Z. Holt.	25	..	25	Good.	Sand all the way.
14. Salem..........	J. D. Fuller.	40	..	40	Good.	Sand all the way.
26. Salem.........	J. P. Fosdick.	30	6	36	Soft.	White, hard rock.
21. Salem..........	Ole Severson.	27	..	27	Good.	Sand.
16. Salem	C. Peterson.	25	..	25	Good.	Sand.
16. Salem	Nils Jacobson.	25	.	25	Good.	Sand, foot of bluff.
16. Salem..........	T. Thomson.....	57	16	73	Good	Red, hard drift; white limestone.
28. Salem..........	....	32	..	32	Good.	20 feet blue clay.
30. Pleasant Grove.	Fred. Sibeck.	61	..	61	Good.	48 feet blue clay.
29. Pleasant Grove.	J, Collins.	21	..	21	Good.	15 feet blue clay.
25. Pleasant Grove.	D. W. Hymes.	20	40	60	Good.	Sandy, red clay.
11. Cascade........	T. C. Cumings.	30	..	30	Plenty	25 feet blue clay.
17. Cascade.......	J. H. Hodgman.	25	..	25	Plenty.	Sand.
17. Cascade........	E. Babcock.	25	..	25	Plenty.	Sand.
15. Cascade . ..	P. Boardman.	30	..	30	Plenty.	Red, sandy clay.
15. Cascade.......	J. Gardner	30	..	30	Plenty.	Red, sandy clay.
15. Rochester......	I. M. Westfall.	40	..	40	Plenty.	Sand.
2. Rochester......	W.L.Brackenridg	18	..	18	Plenty.	Sand.
6. Viola.....	D. D. Whipple.	44	50	94	Plenty.	

Cedar logs at considerable depths in the drift are found but rarely. Mr. Sprague says they are always under the blue clay. Rotten wood is occasionally found in the blue clay.

It is a striking fact, often mentioned, that water is often found on the bluffs at a much less depth than at their base. The geological formation satisfactorily accounts for this.

Brick are made at many places in the county. Oronoco, Eyota, Pleasant Grove and Byron furnish brick. The most of them are made at Rochester. E. P. Brown burns 350,000 a year. Whitcomb Bros. burn, as they tell me, 1,200,000 brick per year, in five or six kilns. The brick here and at Brown's are machine made. V. Whitcomb has a small brickyard near that of Whitcomb Bros. In all cases coming under my observation the brick are made from the washed clay. This is in beds from two feet to ten or twelve feet or more. Although this material is sandy, more sand is usually put in in making the brick, which are consequently tender, and of poor quality. The brick vitrify but little when burned.

No peat was observed in the county. In some lowlands the turf is thick and comparatively free from inorganic matter. This will burn and produce some heat, but it is much inferior to proper peat. I saw no peat-bogs nor any extensive accumulations of peat-producing plants of any kind in the county.

GOLD has been found in the drift along the Zumbro from Rochester and Oronoco down to the Wabasha border and beyond. It is found only on the Lower Magnesian. Murchison calls attention to this fact as generally true. It is found in the drift about the stream, but mostly in the bed of the stream or in material worked over by it at a comparatively recent date. In the same alluvial material is found a small amount of black sand, of a specific gravity approaching that of gold. When the gold is obtained by washing, after all the other materials are washed away this heavy black sand remains, and the minute fragments of gold are picked out from it. It is therefore here called the "mother of gold," and the two are thought to be always together, a conclusion which need not necessarily follow.

The gold is in minute, angular fragments. The quantity is so small that it does not pay to work it by the ordinary method of hand-washing. Washing on a more extensive scale might be made to pay. It has been tried two or three times, but never under favorable circumstances, or for periods of any length. It remains yet to be seen whether it will pay or not.

It may be worth while just here to call attention to the fact that gold is frequently found under these circumstances. It has been found over extensive regions in Canada, where attempts at obtaining it on a large scale have always failed to pay. I have heard of it in Vermont, Ohio, Wisconsin and Iowa. The Director of the geological survey reports it from several places in Minnesota besides this, i. e., in Fillmore county, at Jordan, in Scott county, etc., etc. From all these facts the conclusion may be drawn that the prospects of its paying in Olmsted county are not good.

DODGE COUNTY.

BY M. W. HARRINGTON.

This county lies immediately west of Olmsted county. Its form is that of a rectangle. It is a small county, having four townships in a north and south direction, and three in an east and west. Its area is as follows. This table is taken from the office of the State Auditor, Hon. O. P. Whitcomb:

AREA OF DODGE COUNTY.

Name of Township.	Township.	Range	AREA IN TOWNSHIP. Acres.
Vernon	105	16	23,057.39
Canisteo	106	16	23,111.88
Mantorville	107	16	23,054.88
Milton	108	16	22,964.09
Hayfield	105	17	24,123.22
Ashland	106	17	24,123.40
Wasioja	107	17	24,081.86
Concord	108	17	24,233.99
Westfield	105	18	23,080.33
Ripley	106	18	23,008.72
Claremont	107	18	22,898.42
Ellington	108	18	22,950.72

The total area is 280,688.90 acres, or nearly 438½ square miles. In addition to this, Rice Lake covers 61 acres in this county.

Drainage.—The water flows, for the most part, to the east and northeast by means of the branches of Zumbro River. The largest of these branches is the South Branch of the Middle Fork of the Zumbro, which rises in Rice Lake, on the western border of the county, and flows eastward through nearly the central portion. The north branch of the same stream has its source in the wet prairies in the northwest corner of the county and flows nearly eastward also. The south fork of the Zumbro reaches this county by two small branches which have their sources in the southeastern part. Cedar River enters near the southwestern angle of the county. It drains Westfield and a part of Hayfield. The fall of the streams is inconsiderable in all parts of the county, but is greater in the northern part of the county than in the southern.

Rice Lake lies partly in this county, partly in the county next west.

Water Powers.—Two streams only furnish them in this county. These are two branches of the Zumbro, both branches of middle fork. The following is the list of these powers:

Mills.	Owner.	Location.	Stream.	Head Feet.	Stone. Run.	Kind of Mill.
Wasioja	A. Mason & Son	Wasioja Village	Middle Fork.	9	4	Cus. & flour.
Blake's	J. D. Blake	Sec. 13, Wasioja	Middle Fork.	12	4	Flouring.
Mantorville	Adams & Kneeland	Mantorville Vill	Middle Fork.	10 7	3	Custom.
Rockton	John Bradford	22, Mantorville.	Middle Fork.	8	2	Cus. & flour.
Agawam	Chase & Swaringan	13, Mantorville.	Middle Fork.	12	2	Flouring.
Eagle Valley.	J. Gordon	15, Concord	North Fork.	12	2	Custom.
Buchanan	Widow Irish.	Buchanan Vill.	North Fork.	10	....	Saw mill.
Milton	James Elias	9, Milton	North Fork.	8	2	Custom.

Of the above mills that at Mantorville has two powers, one about 110 rods below the other. Agawam Mills is the latest name for what has been called Dodge County Mills and Bunker's Mill. An unimproved mill-privilege was found at Concord. The Middle Fork of the Zumbro rises in Rice Lake. This lake also has a natural outlet toward Straight River on the west.

In order to give the mills just enumerated on the Middle Fork as much water as possible the western outlet to the lake has been cut off. Yet for three or four months in the winter of 1874–5 the mills had no water. Some years, however, they continue to have water the year through. The water in the North Branch is even more unreliable than this.

The *surface* is but little diversified. The southern and southwestern part of the county is prairie-land. In the northeastern portion bluffs of some hight are found along the streams. The southwestern part of the county is marshy and thinly settled. The region around Rice Lake is also low and marshy.

The plats of the government surveys were examined in the office of the county register and the following notes were made:

Vernon (105, 16) contains considerable grub-land and a small thicket. The remainder is all prairie. The magnetic variation is from 8° 20′ to 9° 06′.

Canisteo.—(106, 16.) A few acres of marsh and a small pond are found in this township. About two-ninths of the township is set down as brush land. The remainder is prairie. Magnetic variation, 8° 26′ to 9° 0′.

Mantorville.—(107, 16.) This township has a small marsh laid down about 40 acres in extent. A considerable portion of the township is pretty heavily wooded, especially along the streams. Magnetic variation, 7° 24′ to 9° 10′.

Milton.—(108, 16.) A small marsh of 25 acres is platted. The northern half is mostly wooded. The southeastern part is wooded, and isolated groves are found on the remainder. On the portions marked prairie are often found notes of "barren thickets," "barrens," "scattering timber," &c. Magnetic variation, 6° 45′ to 10° 0′.

Hayfield.—(105, 17.) It is but little wooded, only about 16 per cent. The remainder is prairie. Magnetic variation, 7° 40′ to 8° 55′.

Ashland.—(106, 17.) A pond of about 10 acres is found on the eastern line of section 25. About one-ninth of the township is wooded. Magnetic variation, 7° 55′ to 8° 50′.

Wasioja.—(107, 17.) A small marsh of about 160 acres is laid down in sections 8 and 9; also a patch of wet land of 240 acres in the western part of the township. Wood follows the main stream, and a few scattering patches are found elsewhere. The remainder is prairie. Magnetic variation, 7° 22′ to 8° 30′.

Concord.—(108, 17.) Eight small marshes varying from 8 to 40 acres are platted. Some woods but mostly open. Magnetic variation, 6° 25′ to 8° 47′.

Westfield.—(105, 18.) Three marshes from 50 to 320 acres each are recorded. A little wooded land is also present. The remainder is prairie. Magnetic variation, 7° 24′ to 8° 19′.

Ripley.—(106, 18.) A stream terminates in a marsh of 100 acres in section 4. The same is true of a long one near the northeast corner. In addition to these 15 marshes are laid down. They vary from 10 to 320 acres. Some wood is found but the township is mostly prairie. The magnetic variation varies from 7° 10′ to 8° 15′.

Claremont.—(107, 18.) Besides the marsh around Rice Lake, there are 8 small marshes varying from 5 to 60 acres. A band of wood runs through the township diagonally from the northwest, and two or three other small patches of wood are laid down. The magnetic variation varies from 7° 5′ to 8° 15′.

Ellington.—(108, 18.) A good many patches of marsh and wooded land are scattered over the township. Magnetic variation, 6° 48′ to 7° 56′.

TIMBER.

Heavy timber is found here as elsewhere in this part of the State along the streams. The list of plants would be nearly identical with that of Olmsted county. I will, therefore, give two lists, viz.: 1.—The plants seen in Dodge and not in Olmsted county. 2.—Plants seen in Olmsted and not in Dodge county.

1. Woody plants seen in Dodge but not in Olmsted county:

Moonseed. (*Menispermum Canadense. L.*)
Jersey Tea. (*Ceanothus Americanus. L.*)
Hawthorn. (*Crataegus coccinea. L.*)
Hawthorn. (*Cr. Crus-galli. L.*)
Wild Gooseberry. (*Ribes Cynosbati. L.*)
Large-leaved Dogwood. (*Cornus circinata. L'Her.*) Found in cold woods and bluffs.
Green Ash. (*Fraxinus viridis. Michx.*)
Sugarberry. *Celtis occidentalis. L.*)
Hop Horn-Beam. (*Ostrya Virginica. Willd.*)
Yellow Birch. (*Betula excelsa. Ait*)
White Pine. (*Pinus Strobus. L.*) A few straggling specimens were seen in Olmsted county. There is a grove of the trees near Mantorville.
Balsam Fir. (*Abies balsamea. Marshall.*) With the preceding.
Common Juniper. (*Juniperus communis. L.*)
Red Cedar. (*J. Viginiana. L.*)

2. Plants found in Olmsted but not in Dodge county:

Poison Ivy. (*Rhus Toxicodendron. L.*)
Corky Elm. (*Ulmus recemosa. Thomas.*)
Hoary Alder. (*Alnus incana Willd.*)

It does not follow, by any means, that because I did not find the plants given above from one county in the other, they do not grow there. These lists are the results of observations hastily made as I drove through the counties. Many woody plants undoubtedly escaped me.

GEOLOGICAL STRUCTURE.

The outcrops of rock in this county are confined to the northeast portion. Canisteo, Mantorville, Milton, Concord and Wasioja townships include them all. Over the remaining seven townships the drift conceals every feature of the rock below. All the evidence that there is indicates that to some extent, at least, the rock so covered is Cretaceous, but I know of no facts of observation to demonstrate this.

The lowest formation found in the county is that of the *Shakopee Limestone.* This rock is known to enter the county from Olmsted, along the north branch of the Middle Fork of the Zumbro. For a distance of about 2½ miles into the county is found the characteristic arrangement of bluffs surrounding a level valley. These bluffs are usually abrupt and approach much nearer to the north river bank than to the bank on the south. In several places in the bluffs the St. Peter Sandstone was actually observed. So that, though no Shakopee rock was actually seen within the limits of the county, the conclusion is a safe one that it does actually form the floor of the valley designated on the accompanying map.

Surrounding this valley is the bluffy outcrop of the *St. Peter Sandstone.* The structure of the bluffs gives a sure indication of its presence. Besides, as noted above, the rock was actually seen in several places. It was sometimes thrown out in digging wells, and occasionally appeared at the side or in the bed of the road. It preserved its characteristic lithological character of a white, friable sandstone, growing reddish and attaining more consistency when exposed to the air.

The remaining exposures of rock along this stream are *Trenton Limestone.* In descending the stream everything is covered by drift until we reach the vicinity of Eagle Valley Mills, section 15, of the township of Concord. Near here a rock, in rather thin layers, is quarried. The quarries are on the surface, and no good exposure of the rock is found. It is, however, without doubt, Trenton stone. Two miles farther down the stream is a quarry on the south bank, at the village of Concord, (N. W. corner of sec. 28.) Here is a pretty good exposure with the rock as follows, beginning above:

4 ft. black loam and reddish clay.
2½ ft. rubble stone.
3 ft. of dolomitic rock, yellow, with fine reddish lines; layers broken 2–8 in. thick.
3 ft. of bluish stone, less dolomitic, in even beds 1–2 ft. thick.
1 ft. of bluish stone, not dolomitic in thin layers.
3½ ft. of heavy layers of bluish stone, not dolomitic.

17 ft. total exposure.

Below this is a compact limestone, not well exposed. It is not dolomitic and is good for burning.

At the sawmill near the middle of sec. 17, of Milton, the road passes around an exposure of rock. Here are about 10 feet of shaly limestone and blue clay. A fine specimen of *Receptaculites* lay in the wheel-track of the road, and had been considerably marred. Many other incomplete specimens were found.

An eighth of a mile below this saw mill, (still in sec. 17 of Milton,) is an irregular bluff on the south side of the stream. It is concealed by debris, bushes, etc., and not very accessible. The following measurements and observations were obtained with as much accuracy as circumstances would admit. They are taken from above:

10 ft. of yellowish limestone in thin layers.
1 ft. of compact aluminous layers in 2 or 3 layers.
15 ft. of shale, limestone and blue clay in alternate layers, usually thin.

Below, passing under the debris and probably occupying the present river-bed is a thick stratum of compact limestone, with a depth of upwards of 20 feet. *Receptaculites* are abundant in the rock.

As might be anticipated from the structure of the rock, living springs are abundant along these bluffs. One very fine one, the size of one's arm, pours out from the rock just above the sawmill, at a distance of 20 feet above the water of the stream. Here these springs are almost equal in numbers in bluffs facing north or south, betraying the absence of dip at this point in either of those directions.

Other small exposures of Trenton rock were seen in the road in several places within the Trenton area as marked on the accompanying map, as at sections 19 and 30 of Milton township, and in sections 12, 13 and 14 of Mantorville. The lower parts of the exposures at Mantorville and Wasioja are, in all probability, Trenton, but as it is impracticable to tell where this rock begins, and the rock above ceases, these exposures will be described under the Galena. The Trenton can also be traced into this county from Olmsted, in sec. 14, Canisteo.

The *Galena Limestone* is found cropping out along the South Branch of the Middle Fork of the Zumbro, or the Mantorville stream. In descending this stream no rock is found until in sec. 14, and the first important quarry is that of Thomas Arnold, on the north bank of the stream in sec. 18 of Wasioja. At the top of the exposed wall is a layer of 5 feet of rubble stone. Below this are 30 feet of dolomitic sparry stone, yellow when weathered, blue within. It is in evenly bedded layers, 6 in. to 3 ft. thick. It works smoothly and is soft, without flint. Near the bottom the rock was gray when weathered.

A few rods below this, on the same side of the stream, are the lime kilns of James Paul, two in number. This is in the village of Wasioja, in sec. 18. The rock, of which he has 8 or 10 ft. exposed close by, is yellow and in thin, rather irregular fragments. It is in all probability Galena. Mr. Paul obtains from this a lime of a light yellow color. He burns about 840 bbls. per year, for which he obtains $1.00 per barrel. He uses for this 86 cords of wood for which he pays $4.00 per cord. Mr. Paul praises his lime highly, and it is acknowledged on all hands to be good for laying stone. It is, however, generally said to be slow in slacking and not strong.

Blake's Mill is on the eastern edge of sec. 13 of Wasioja. At this place is an exposure of about 30 ft. of rock where materials have been obtained for the mill and dam. The upper 5 ft. are of broken rubble stone. The remainder is in solid, even beds, 6 in. to 3 ft. thick. The stone is a limestone, yellow, dolomitic, compact, coarse-grained.

About half a mile above Mantorville, in section 17 of Mantorville township, is a natural exposure of about 40 ft. of rock, on the north bank. The upper 20 ft. are composed of a compact rock in thick beds, yellow in color, wearing away very evenly by weathering, in a castellated manner. Below it the rock wears much more unevenly and is grayish. Between the two lies a thin soft layer which was not accessible. It wears out much more rapidly than the other rocks. It is probably a clay-shale. About 20 yards from this place is a fine spring, always flowing. It is caused by a layer of green shale lying just below it.

In the bed of the stream, just below the first dam at Mantorville, sec. 20, is a compact, dark limestone in thin beds and not dolomitic.

Just below, in the village of Mantorville, are the quarries of Chas.

Ginsberg and of Willson and Hook. The sections here were described in the first annual report, pp. 99. They have not changed appreciably in that time and the sections need not be repeated. Just below Willson and Hook's quarry is that of Peter Mantor. From the stone in Ginsberg's quarry, his brewery, hardby, was made. It is one of the finest buildings in this part of the State. From the stone in the other quarries were made, the facings of the Court House, Schoolhouse and Cook's Hotel in Rochester; the public buildings and many of the stores at Mantorville; many railroad bridges along the Winona & St. Peter, the highway bridge at Owatonna, etc. The stone is especially prized for the following reasons:

1. It is evenly bedded and can be got out in good shape.

2. There is little grit or flint in it to take off the edge of tools. It therefore works easily.

3. It hardens after exposure.

4. The color is yellow or light blue and is pleasing.

5. There is little iron in it to cause discolored spots. Two or three such spots are seen in the Court House at Mantorville. The iron on weathering makes a rusty blotch on the surface of the stone. These ferruginous spots can be easily detected beforehand, and rock containing them should not be used for the outside.

Mantor's quarry lies on both sides of the stream. That on the north side is quite similar in rock and strata to that of Willson and Hook, described by Prof. Winchell. That on the south side of the stream, opposite and a little below the other, has the following section taken from above:

2 ft. of loose material, broken rubble stone.
1 ft. light yellow rock in layers 3 in. thick.
4½ ft. of yellow dolomitic rock in thick beds.
½ ft. of shaly, yellow rock, including a layer of 2 inches of an uncemented rather fine gravel, containing numerous black quartzite pebbles.
4 ft. yellow dolomitic rock, in thick beds.

12 ft. total exposure.

In the bed of the race at the second dam at Mantorville, 110 rods below the mill, sec. 21, is a fossiliferous green shale.

At Roekton Mills, sec. 22, Mantorville, is a considerable exposure. This section is given at p. 100, in the First Annual Report, under the head of "Section at Pettit's Mill." In secs. 14, 15, 21, 22, 23, occasional exposures, usually slight, were seen.

From the facts stated above, as well as those stated by Prof. Winchell, in his first annual report, the conclusion has been drawn that the Trenton occupies the bed of the stream as high as Wasioja, but that the bluffs are capped by Galena. This is the explanation of the long arm of blue color along the stream on the accompanying map.

Drift.—This covers nearly the whole county. Boulders are abundant and sometimes very large. Blue clay is said to underlie the whole of the southern and western part of the county. It lies at the depth of 10–30 feet, where it is always met in digging wells. Logs are sometimes found in it.

On the railroad between sections 32 and 33 of Wasioja the water washed out a ditch to a considerable depth so that the following section could be made:

2 ft. of black loam above.
6 ft. of yellow sandy clay with some small pebbles below.
4 ft. to bottom, alternations of thin ferruginous sandy films and black or yellowish sandy clay.

12 ft. total.

In the bottom of the ditch was a bluish quartzite bolder, 15 in. across, and 6 in. thick, worn off smoothly on one side by glacial action. The smooth side was polished, but scratched.

At the crossing of the railroad over the stream a similar section, 15 feet thick, was found. It was similar to the above except that the bottom clay was dark blue and without the ferruginous films. In this clay were numerous drift-pebbles; among others a piece of Galena limestone.

The boulders are numerous and usually granitic, syenitic or quartzose in character. In the railroad cuttings in Wasioja township, some ferruginous concretions of small size and much decayed, many fragments of Galena limestone and a solitary piece of argillite were found. Careful search was made for traces of the Maquoketa shales but they were not found.

Brick are made by Wm. Gutherless at Dodge Center. He makes 200,000 per year. They take 75 cords of wood at $2.75 per cord. The yellow or washed clay is employed. Mr. Gutherless puts in about one-third sand which keeps the brick from checking and warping. The bed of clay is worked for a thickness of 3 or 4 feet.

Three miles west of Dodge Center, Mr. Taylor made 222,000 brick last year. They are from the same clay. In a brick building which had been standing barely a year, quite a number of these brick had begun to crumble.

G. F. Rhodes, of Kasson, makes brick from a reddish washed clay obtained from a bank in the village of Mantorville. He makes about 600,000 brick per year. A kiln contains 120,000 and takes 40 cords of wood at a cost of $4.00 per cord. The brick sell at $7.00 per thousand. No sand is put in the clay, and the brick are machine pressed. The brick are tender, like others made from washed clay, except when the burn is exactly right.

The clay in the bed used by Mr. Rhodes varies in the amount of alumina. From the richest clay he has made a batch of drain tiles. They are tough and have the characteristic color of such tiles. He makes three sizes which he sells as follows:

2 inch bore at..........................	$15 00 per thousand.
3 inch bore at................................	17 50 per thousand.
4 inch bore at................................	20 00 per thousand.

In sec. 17 of Milton Township, Jacob Baumgartner has a kiln in which he occasionally burns *lime*. I was unable to see either lime or quarry, but the former is said to be whitish and the stone is evidently Trenton Limestone.

In sec. 10 of Milton Township, N. Irish has a kiln in which he burns lime. The stone is a bed of Travertine, light, porous and soft, apparently 3 or 4 feet thick. The bed is at the base of a small knoll and seems to have been deposited by a spring now running over the bed, though Mr. Irish claims that this spring now produces soft water. I was unable to ascertain the extent of the bed. One hundred and forty barrels of lime are burnt in one kiln, which takes 6 cords of wood, at $1.50 per cord. The lime sells at $1.00 per barrel at the kiln. Thirteen kilns a year are burned. The lime is very white and quick.

STEELE COUNTY.

BY M. W. HARRINGTON.

Position and size. This county lies in the second tier of counties from the Iowa line. It lies next west of Dodge county, being the fourth in number west from the Mississippi river. It has the form of a rectangle, and is bounded on the south by Freeborn, on the west by Waseca, and on the north by Rice counties.

The name, position and size of the townships are as follows. The figures were obtained from the office of the State Auditor, Hon. O. P. Whitcomb, with some additions from the office of the county register:

Position and Area of the Townships.

Name.	T.	R.	Acres & Hundredths.
Blooming Prairie	105	19	22,621.83
Aurora	106	19	22,964.93
Havanna	107	19	22,254.04
Merton	108	19	22,901.48
Summit	105	20	22,982.43
Somerset	106	20	23,001.47
Owatonna	107	20	22,912.82
Clinton Falls	108	20	11,446.00
Medford	108	20	11,483.57
Berlin	105	21	22,805.78
Lemond	106	21	23,005.80
Meriden	107	21	22,798.25
Deerfield	108	21	22,826.99

The total number of acres of land are seen to be 273,455.39. In addition to these there are about 428.66 acres of lake in Blooming Prairie; 676.33 in Havanna; 182.30 acres in Berlin; 144.46 in Meriden; 601.79 in Deerfield. The total lake area in the county is thus made 2,033.54 acres. Adding this to the acres of land, we have 275,488.93 as the total acreage in the county.

Surface.

This county is quite level, and is covered heavily by drift. As will be seen the rock appears at the surface only along the Straight River, near its exit from the county. Grassy swales are common and characteristic of the swamps, especially in Lemond township. Gravelly knoles are quite common in the most of the county, especially in the southern part. They are short and steep in the south part of Somerset and the adjoining parts of Summit and Blooming Prairie. A long straight ridge with many boulders runs nearly on the township line between Aurora and Somerset. The southern part of the county is called the Wilderness and is not thickly settled. The level of the Milwaukee and St. Paul Railroad has been already published. The writer has been unable to get access to that of the Winona and St. Peter Railroad.

The following notes were taken from the field-notes and plats of the government survey in Steele county, access to which was obligingly given me by the County Register. The surveys were made in 1854.

Blooming Prairie, (105, 19,) was covered by thickets and low scrub for the most part. Marshes were numerous and there were two small lakes in the northern part of the township. Magnetic variation, 8° 10′ to 9° 45′.

Aurora.—(106, 19.) This township much resembled the last; thickets and scrub over the most it and numerous marshes, some of them quite large. Magnetic variation, 7° 45′ to 9° 45′.

Havanna.—(107, 19.) This township contains the major part of Rice Lake. It is for the most part brushy or wooded, but the southwestern part is prairie. Marshes are numerous but not large. Magnetic variation, 7° 44′ to 9° 25′.

Merton.—(108, 19.) This township was found to be wooded on the south side and in the northwest corner. The remainder was prairie. A large marsh was located in sections 23 and 24, and many smaller ones were scattered over the county. Magnetic variation, 7° 37′ to 9° 23′.

Summit, (105, 20) was wooded in the eastern half, prairie in the western. A large branching marsh is located along the streams, and there are a few isolated marshes. A stream from the south loses itself in the southwest corner of section 20. Magnetic variation 9° 18′ to 10° 23′.

Somerset (106, 20) had several sections of prairie in the northeast corner, and the portion of the township lying west of the Straight River was prairie; otherwise it was wooded. The marshes platted are few and not large. Magnetic variation, 9° 13′ to 10° 45′.

Owatonna, (107, 20.) A band of woods, 2-5 miles wide, crosses the township accompanying the Straight River, and lying on its eastern bank The remainder is prairie. The banks of the stream were bluffy. Magnetic variation, 9° 10′ to 10° 45′. The site of the city of Owatonna was already in part claimed when the survey was made (1854.)

Clinton Falls (south half of 108, 20) was mostly wooded, though a wedge of prairie lay between the Straight River and Crane Creek. There was also a little prairie on the eastern border. There was a long marsh platted in sections 26 and 27. Magnetic variation, 9° 10′—10° 30′.

Medford.—(north half of 108, 20.) This township is prairie, except for a wooded strip 2–4 miles wide, east of the river. The banks of the stream are rather bluffy. The claims of Sanburn, in section 16, Collings and Johnson, in 9, and Wright, in section 5, were already made. Magnetic variation, 8° 35′ to 10° 30′.

Berlin, (105, 21,) was wooded through the center of the township; the remainder was for the most part prairie. The plats indicate marshes along the streams, and some other scattered marshy spots. Near the center lie Looigana and Beaver lakes, and in the southwestern part a pond. Beaver Lake is now said to be deep and clear, and to contain only soft water. This item, and much other valuable information concerning this county, the writer owes to Rev. G. C. Tanner, superintendent of schools for the county. Magnetic variation, 8° 45′ to 10° 34′.

Lemond.—(106, 21.) The northwest part was woody and marshy, and there are besides two or three isolated groves of small extent. An extensive marsh crosses the north end of the township. Magnetic variation, 10° 00′ to 11° 13′.

Meriden.—(107, 21.) This township was nearly all prairie, a little wood being found north of Crane Creek and also a small amount in the southern part. The land along the creek was marshy. On the northern boundary a small lake was found. Magnetic variation, 10° 22′ to 11° 30′.

Deerfield.—(108, 21.) A lake enters from the south. Another of about 220 acres is platted just northeast of this, and near it is a pond of about half the size. All the township was wooded except the northwest corner, which was prairie. Extensive marshes were platted in the southern and western part. Magnetic variation, 9° 30′ to 11° 40′.

On comparing the magnetic variations given above, it is found that the extremes are 7° 37′ in Merton, and 11° 40′ in Deerfield, being a variation of more than 4° in one small county.

Drainage.

This county is well provided with lakes, as may be seen in the preceding notes. Marshes also are numerous. These are due to the level character of the country, and to the very slight elevation of one part above another. The small amount of the elevation is further shown by the sluggishness of the currents in the various streams. The course of the Straight river shows that what elevation there is in the county, its increase occurs as we travel southward. But, although the county is very nearly level and has little change in elevation within itself, its elevation with reference to the rest of the State is considerable. This is shown by the fact that two streams origninate here, viz.: the Straight river, in the southern part of the county, and a branch of the Zumbro in Rice Lake. It is worthy of remark here, though it was mentioned in the report on Dodge county, that Rice Lake has a natural outlet into the Straight river as well as into the Zumbro.

The small amount of fall of the streams limits the mill privileges in this county. The mills are found only on the Straight River, at Owatonna, and north.

The City Mills at Owatonna, Drought & Whitson, owners. They have 7 feet head of water, and three run of stone. It is a custom mill, but does a little flouring business.

Clinton Mills are at Clinton Falls, Sherman & Winship, owners. They have 10 feet head of water, and three run of stone. It is a custom and flouring mill.

Medford Mills are at Medford, White, Beynon & Co., owners. They have 10 feet of head of water and 4 run of stone. They do only a flouring business.

There is said to be an available water-power, unimproved, at Lindensmith's between Owatonna and Clinton Falls.

Timber.

The time spent in this county was not long enough to make out a list of the woody plants at all approaching completeness. The following were noted:

Basswood. (*Tilia Americana. L.*)
Smooth Sumach. (*Rhus glabra. L.*)
Wild Grape. (*Vitis.*)
Virginia Creeper. (*Ampelopsis quinquefolia. Michx.*)
New Jersey Tea. (*Ceanothus Americanus. L.*)
Sugar Maple. (*Acer saccharinum. Wang.*)
Silvery Maple. (*A. dasycarpum. Ehr.*)
Red or Swamp Maple. (*Acer rubrum. L.*)
Box-elder. (*Negrundo aceroides. Mœnch.*)
False Indigo. (*Amorpha fruticosa. L.*)
Locust. (*Robinia Pseudacacia. L.*) Cultivated.
Wild Yellow or Red Plum. (*Prunus Americana. Marshall.*)
Cherry. (*Prunus.*)
Red Raspberry. (*Rubus strigosus. Michx.*)
Blackberry. (*R. villosus. Ait.*)
Crab. (*Pyrus arbutifolia. L.*)
Dogwood. *Cornus paniculata. L'Her.*)
Wolfberry. (*Symphoricarpus occidentalis. R. Br.*)
Ash. (*Fraxinus.*)
Slippery Elm. (*Ulmus fulva. Michx.*)
White Elm. (*U. Americana. L. pl. Clayt.*)
Butternut. (*Juglans cinerea. L.*)
Walnut. (*Juglans nigra. L.*)
Hickory. (*Carya.*)
Bur Oak. (*Quercus macrocarpa. Michx.*)
Black Oak. (*Quercus coccinea, Wang. var tinctoria, Bartram.*)
Wild Hazel-nut. (*Corylus Americana. Walt.*)
Iron-wood. (*Ostrya Virginica. Willd.*)
America Aspen. (*Populus tremuloides. Michx.*)
Cottonwood. (*P. monilifera. Ait.*)
Largetoothed Aspen. (*P. grandidentata. Michx.*)
Balm of Gilead. (*P. balsamifera. L. Var. candicans. Ait.*) Cultivated.

Geology.

The heaviness of the drift over this county effectually covers all the rock. The slight fall of the river enables it to uncover but little thus covered up. The only exposure of rock in the county is at Lindensmith's, about two miles below, and this exposure is but a slight one.

The rock is *Trenton Limestone*, and is first met at John Abbott's quarry, in section 33, of Clinton Falls. It is in the bed and on the low banks of the Straight River. The exposure at the time visited extended only about 4 feet above the surface of the water. The rock is in horizontal layers, 2–6 inches thick. It is blue on fresh fracture, yellow when weathered, compact, sparry, and contains many minute fragments of blue shale, like the corresponding rock at Minneapolis.

Just below, on section 28, is Lindensmith's quarry. The rock is in thicker layers than in Abbot's quarry. The following section was seen in one place, beginning above:

2 feet loam.
2 feet blue clay and limestone in thin layers.
4 feet—to water's surface—compact blue limestone, in thin layers.

The rock is like that in Abbott's quarry. Near by was another section as follows:

2½ ft. black and red loam.
2 ft. hard yellow clay.
7 ft. blue stone in layers 2-5 inches thick, extending to surface of water.

Below this there is no more rock until the county line is passed. At Wolcott Mills, about 1½ miles in Rice county, blue Trenton limestone has been quarried in the bed of the river.

No fossils were found in the rock. This stone is used for flagging and other purposes at Owatonna, and is considered a good stone.

Some evidence of the existence of a *Cretaceous* area in the State was found. On the southeast quarter of section 26, of Deerfield, on the farm of Aug. Hoffmann, coal has been found in sinking a well. Dr. G. A. Rossbach tells the writer that they went through 25 feet of black-blue clay, in the under part of which were fragments of coal. After that they passed through gravel in which also were coal fragments. At the depth of 63 or 64 feet rock was struck, the drill showed it to be black slate with pieces of coal imbedded in it. Although no specimens of the coal were seen by the writer the description given would answer for Cretaceous lignite. When the matter is further explored by capitalists which will, in probability, soon happen, all doubt as to the geological horizon of the rock will be cleared up. Meantime the evidence from the geology of adjoining counties, as well as the nature of the rock itself, justifies us in calling the rock Cretaceous. Just west of Owatonna another farmer is said to have struck coal also, though the writer was unable to get any further information on the matter.

The *Drift* is here, as already mentioned, very heavy. Sections of it were seen at several places. A gravel-knoll cut through at Owatonna showed one foot of black loam on the top, then four feet of yellow, sandy clay, then seven feet of assorted sand and gravel. Other sections along the railroads showed essentially the same arrangement. Among the gravel-pebbles, fragments of argillite were common.

The Owatonna mineral springs should be mentioned. They are nine in number, and are located about one and one-half miles northeast of the city. They lie along Maple Creek, at the base of a low clayey bluff. Of the five seen by the writer, four deposited iron. The water of the fifth had a decidedly bluish tint. Fountain spring was put down 22 feet and now flows out freely, raising the water about five feet above the surface. The others are natural springs. They are all undoubtedly due to the clay-floor underlying the loose materials of the drift. The taste of the water in the five visited by me was slightly mineral. The analysis of the water, published by the Owatonna Mineral Springs Company is appended. To which of the springs this analysis belonged could not be ascertained:

In one gallon, or 231 cubic inches, there are:

Chloride of Sodium	.1680	grains.
Sulphate of Sodium	.2856	"
Bicarbonate of Sodium	1.8592	"
Bicarbonate of Calcium	13.1992	"
Bicarbonate of Magnesium	5.2920	"
Bicarbonate of Protoxide of Iron	.6160	"
Alumina	.2800	"
Silica	1.1200	"
Organic Matter		a trace.
Total	22.8200	grains.

Cornell Brothers, at Owatonna, manufacture stoneware. The clay employed is a fine, rich, plastic, blue clay, and is at present obtained from Eldora, Hardin county, Iowa. This bed of clay is being exhausted, and its quality is deteriorating. This has determined the firm to try a gray clay found about one mile east of Owatonna. This is the same layer of clay which crops out at the mineral springs near the city. It has been found to work well. Excellent fire-brick is made from this clay. This firm has just started in business. They make about 1,000 gallons a week in jars, jugs, &c.

Dr. E. N. Morehouse makes brick from a bluish, yellow, washed clay, near Owatonna. He puts in the clay about one-third sand. He makes 225,000 bricks a year, for which he charges $8.00 to $12.00 per thousand, according to quality. He uses 50 cords of wood for every 100,000 of bricks. The wood costs $3.00 per cord at the place of cutting. The bricks are, like all of those made from the washed clay, not first-class. Dr. Morehouse has experimented on making unglazed red ware from his clay, with fair results.

Odell and Cornell also make bricks near Owatonna. Bricks are also made on the farm of Mr. Skinner, near Blooming Prairie.

An artesian well has been subscribed for at Owatonna, and will probably soon be sunk. It must obtain results of great value for the Geological Survey.

TOPOGRAPHY.

The lists of railroad elevations given in the first annual report carried a net work of levels over the most of the inhabited portion of the State. They demonstrate the nearly level condition of the general surface of the State. The changes of level are, in that portion through which railroad lines have been run, of the nature of broad swells in the substructure, and indicate the changes in the geological formations, that bring on a series of hard and very enduring rocks, or a thickness of more erosible layers. Thus the Upper Devonian, in the southern tier of counties, is characterized by a considerable elevation above the formations that underlie it. The level surface that characterzes the Cretaceous in Steele and Dodge counties, as well as in much of the western part of the State, is attributable to the effect of that formation in toning down, and concealing, the irregularities in the old Devonian and Silurian surfaces. Thus there subsists a very intimate relation between the topography and the geology in the various parts of the State. The illustrations that have already been given in the report on the geology of Fillmore county, are still more striking proofs that the topography of a country is that which gives the first response to the enquiring geologist when locating the geological boundaries. For this reason it is highly desirable that all lines of railroad survey, which have been run in the State, should be made tributary to this end. It matters but little whether the railroads for which such surveys were intended were ever constructed. All that is needed is the comparative hights of the points along a known line. The undulations of the surface are very significant to the geologist.

The following lists are given as a further contribution to this subject. They have been furnished by the engineers of the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railroad, and refer the points named to the level of the ocean. They pass through some of the principal cities and the wealthiest counties of the State.

RAILROAD ELEVATIONS.

THE CHICAGO, MILWAUKEE AND ST. PAUL R. R.

From the Records, by Robert Angst.

IOWA AND MINNESOTA DIVISION.

[*Note.*—The track is designated in all cases, when not otherwise mentioned.]

	Above the Ocean.
	Feet.
State Line, Lyle	1,099.46
Rose Creek, (Grade)	1,085.41
Rose Creek, (Bottom)	1,068.08
Dobin's Creek, (Grade)	1,094.76
Dobin's Creek, (Bottom)	1,071.46
Y at Austin Junction	1,094 45
Austin, (Station)	1,097.06
Wolf Creek, (Grade)	1,108.06
Wolf Creek, (Bottom)	1,076.06
Cedar River, (Grade)	1,100.00
Cedar River, (Bottom)	1,080.06
Ramsay, (Crossing S. M. R. R.)	1,114.86
Indian Creek, (Grade)	1,110.06
Indian Creek, (Bottom)	1,096.56
Lansing	1,124.06
Ingham's Creek, (Grade)	1,120.86
Ingham's Creek, (Bottom)	1.107.56
Top of swell, NE. ¼ Sec. 33, Udolpho, (Cut 3½ feet)	1,148.56
Swell, half a mile south of Madison, (Cut 1½ feet)	1,149.56
Madison	1,150.06
Top of divide 7½ miles N. of Madison, (Natural Surface)	1,149.50
Top of divide 7½ miles N. of Madison, (Grade)	1,146.00
Blooming Prairie, (Depot)	1,185.76
One-half mile S. E. of Aurora, (Bottom of marsh)	1,106.56
One-half mile S. E. of Aurora, (Grade)	1,114,56
Aurora Station. Sec. 17, Aurora Township	1,150.66
Havana. S. W. ¼ sec. 31	1,118,62
Top of divide between Havana and Owatonna. Sec. 24, (Grade and natural surface)	1,141.06
Winona and St. Peter Crossing. Owatonna	1,041.56
Owatonna, (Depot)	1,041.56

		Above the Ocean.
		Feet.
Maple Creek, (Grade)		1,028.46
Maple Creek, (Bottom)		1,012.06
Clinton Divide. Section 21, ½ mile South of road-crossing, (cut 2 feet)		1,007.56
Medford		997.08
Straight River, (Grade)		986.40
Straight River, (Bottom)		958.06
Divide in Wolcott. S. W. ¼ sec. 19, (Natural surface)		1,051.06
Divide in Wolcott. S. W. ¼ sec. 19, (Grade)		1,084.06
Faribault		998.06
Cannon River, (Grade)		966.71
Cannon River, (Bottom)		948.56
Divide in Cannon City Township. N. E. ¼ sec. 24, (Natural surface)		1,039.06
Divide in Cannon City Township. N. E. ¼ sec. 24, (Grade)		1,007.06
Bottom of swamp, five miles N. of Faribault		961.56
Five miles N. of Faribault, (Grade)		998.06
Divide, S. W. ¼ sec. 31. Bidgewater, (Natural surface)		1,086.56
Divide, S. W. ¼ sec. 31. Bridgewater, (Grade)		1,027.56
Wolf Creek, (Grade)		964.56
Wolf Creek, (Bottom)		986.06
Dundas. Depot		945.71
Spring Creek, 1¾ miles S. W. of Northfield, (Grade)		907.06
Spring Creek, 1¾ miles S. W. of Northfield, (Bottom)		894.00
Heath Creek, (Grade),		912.06
Heath Creek, (Bottom)		894.56
Northfield. Depot		905.71
S. end of Plateau, 2 ms. N. of Northfield, (Nat. sur.)	Sec. 19, Waterford.	972.06
S. end of Plateau, 2 ms. N. of Northfield, (Grade)		960.06
N. end of Plateau, 3 ms. N. of Northfield, (Nat. sur.)		969.06
N. end of Plateau, 3 ms. N, of Northfield, (Grade)		959.06
Foot of slope, near Chub Creek, (Grade and nat. sur.)		918.06
Foot of slope, 5 miles from Northfield, (Natural Surface)		910.06
Foot of slope, 5 miles from Northfield, (Grade)		918.06
Castle Rock Depot		925.76
Divide, sec. 18, Castle Rock Tp., (Natural Surface)		1,004.46
Divide, sec. 18, Castle Rock Tp., (Grade)		998.56
Divide, one mile south of Farmington, (Natural Surface)		904.81
Divide, one mile south of Farmington, (Grade)		898.31
Farmington		894.09
Farmington, Crossing H. & D. R. R		891.81
Vermillion River Crossing, (Bottom)		879.06
Vermillion River Crossing, (Grade.) Rolling surface to—		888.06
Rosemont Depot. Rolling surface to—		950.06
Westcott Station		878.06
St. Paul Junction, (at Mendota)		749.90
Crossing of the St. Paul & Sioux City R. R., Mendota		728.40
Mendota Junction		712.40
Crossing of the Minesota River. Fort Snelling		708.48
Crossing of the Minnesota River, (Bottom)		662.60
Fort Snelling Station		712.50
Minnehaha Station		802.80
Minnehaha Creek (grade)		806.20
Minnehaha Creek (bottom)		792.10
Minneapolis Depot		816.00

McGregor Division.

	Above the Ocean.
	Feet.
State Line, near Le Roy, Mower county (Nat. Sur. and Grade)	1,168.47
Le Loy Depot	1,180.57
Divide, section 28, Le Roy, (Natural Surface)	1,205.47
Creek 2¼ miles west of Le Roy (Grade)	1,185.67
Creek, 2¼ miles west of Le Roy (Bottom)	1,167.97
Creek, 2¾ miles west of Le Roy (Grade)	1,185.67
Creek, 2¾ miles west of Le Roy (Bottom)	1,170.47
Taopi, (formerly Bellevue) section 16, Lodi (Grade)	1,236.47
Divide, ⅞ mile west of Taopi section 17 (Natural Surface)	1,245.47
Divide, ⅞ mile west of Taopi section 17 (Grade)	1,243.47
Adams, (Grade)	1,176.47
Creek, ¼ mile west of Adams, (Grade)	1,174.47
Creek, ¼ mile west of Adams, (Bottom)	1,159.47
Little Cedar river crossing (Grade)	1,172.47
Little Cedar river crossing (Bottom)	1,152.47
Divide, ¾ mile west of the Little Cedar (Natural Surface)	1,208.47
Divide, ¾ mile west of the Little Cedar (Grade)	1,201.17
Rose Creek Station	1,144.97
Rose Creek Crossing, (Grade)	1,136.47
Rose Creek Crossing, (Bottom)	1,122.47

River Division.

Low water at St. Paul	672.84
Grade of the L. S. & M. R. R., St. Paul, (near the old warehouse on the trestle work)	692.84
Dayton's Bluff, St. Paul, (Grade of R. R.)	696.84
Newport Station	787.87
Langdon	799.84
Hastings Depot, (Junction H. & D. R. R.)	696.31
Etter	677.84
Red Wing	673.84
Frontenac	707.34
Lake City	691.84
Reed's Landing	669.84
Wabasha	699.24
Kellogg	689.09
Weaver	660 84
Minneiska	659.44
Minnesota City	664 44
Crossing of the Winona & St. Peter R. R. (St. Peter Junction)	662.92
Winona	649.44
Homer	650.54
La Moille	647.44
Richmond	660 94
Dakota	644.44
Dresbach	663.44
La Crescent lime kiln, N. side of Houston county (Grade)	637.44

Hastings and Dakota R. R.

	Above the Ocean.
	Feet.
Hastings. Junction with the River Division Mil. & St. P. R R.	696.31
Edge of prairie 3 miles W. of Hastings, Sec. 5, Marshan, (Grade and Nat. Surf.)	814.31
Thence slightly rolling surface, or nearly level, to—	
Nine and a half miles W. of Hastings, (Grade)	814.31
Nine and a half miles W. of Hastings, (Nat. Sur.)	822.31
Auburn	848.81
Sec. 27, Empire. Change of grade, (Nat. Sur.)	877.31
Sec. 27, Empire. Change of grade, (Grade)	876.31
Farmington, Crossing of the I. and M. Division	891.81
Fairfield, (Lakeville)	930.31
26½ miles from Hastings, (Nat. Surface)	1,079.31
26½ miles from Hastings, (Grade)	1,069.81
¼ mile E. of Prior Lake Station, (Natural Surface)	960.31
¼ mile E. of Prior Lake Station, (Grade)	948.31
Prior Lake Station	936.31
Prior Lake, (Surface of water)	896.31
Prior Lake Crossing, (Bottom)	871.31
Cut ½ mile W. of Prior Lake Crossing, (Nat. Surface)	952.81
Cut ½ mile W. of Prior Lake Crossing, (Grade)	926.31
Cut 3 miles W. of Prior Lake Station, (Nat. Surface)	915.31
Cut 3 miles W. of Prior Lake Station, (Grade)	890.31
8 miles W. of Prior Lake Station, (Nat. Surface)	749.81
8 miles W. of Prior Lake Station, (Grade)	750.81
Shakopee, Crossing of the Sioux City R. R	742.81
Shakopee, Crossing of the Minnesota River, (Bottom)	657.81
Shakopee, Crossing of the Minnesota River, (Low water)	679.31
Shakopee, Crossing of the Minnesota River, (High water)	706.41
[Extreme range of water, 27.1 feet.]	
Shakopee, Crossing of the Minnesota River, (Grade)	714.31
Chaska depot	715.21
Chaska, Crossing of the Minneapolis and St. Louis R. R	716 81
Carver depot	802.11
Carver, Crossing of highway ¼ m. W. of depot, (Ravine, Bottom of)	786.31
Carver, Crossing of highway ¼ m. W. of Depot, (Grade)	805.00
Dahlgren, (Grade)	968.81
Dahlgren Station, (Nat. Surface)	975.81
Divide ½ m. W. of Dahlgren Station, (Nat. Surface)	976.31
Divide ½ m. W. of Dahlgren, (Grade)	970.31
Carver Creek crossing, (Bottom)	895.81
Carver Creek crossing, (Grade)	917.31
Benton Station, Divide, (Natural Surface)	943.31
Benton Station, Divide, (Grade)	934.31
Divide ¾ m. W. of Bonngard's Crossing, (Nat. Surface)	987.31
Divide ¾ m. W. of Bonngard's Crossing, (Grade)	978.31
Young America	977.31
Tiger Lake, Sec. 16, (Surface of water)	966.31
Divide 3½ miles W. of Young America; ½ m. E. of County Line, (Nat. Surface)	997.31
Divide 3½ ms. W. of Young America; ½ m. E. of Co. Line, (Grade)	991.31
Buffalo Creek Crossing, (Bottom)	958.31
Buffalo Creek Crossing, (Grade)	970.00
Divide ½ mile E. of Glencoe, (Nat. Surface)	1,018.31
Divide ½ mile E. of Glencoe, (Grade)	1,008.31
Glencoe Depot	990.01

Hasting and Dakota R. R. west of Glencoe, as surveyed in 1871 by F. A. Kimball, commencing on the range line between 30 and 31, at Round Grove, eighteen miles west of Glencoe.* From J. T. Dodge.

		Above the Ocean.
		Feet.
Glencoe Depot. Station 2,464.50		990.01
Nearly level to		
Station, 3,407		1,036.31
" 3,460		1,046.31
" 3,500		1,056.03
" 3,510		1,046.03
" 3,560		1,061.03
" 3,570		1,064.00
" 3,585		1,052.00
" 3,600		1,066.00
" 3,625		1,059.00
" 3,645		1,068.00
" 3,655		1,055.00
" 3,680		1,066.00
" 3,698		1,056.00
" 3,710		1,069.00
" 3,725		1,058.00
" 3,780		1,058.00
" 3,840		1,060.00
" 3,866		1,088.00
" 3,880		1,071.00
" 4,000		1,071.00
" 4,100		1,082.00
" 4,140		1,067.00
	(Undulations 5–10 feet.)	
" 4,300		1,072.00
" 4,390		1,083.00
" 4,400		1,072.00
" 4,500		1,086.00
" 4,600		1,089.00
" 4,610		1,079.00
" 4,663		1,094.00
" 4,706		1,070.00
" 4,720		1,082.00
" 4,740		1,068.00
" 4,762		1,074.00
" 4,774		1,060.00
" 4,780		1,074.00
" 4,802	(E. Fork of Beaver Creek)	1,036.00
" 4,820		1,060.00
" 4,860		1,071.00
" 4,870		1,060.00
" 4,940		1,051.00
" 4,980	(W. Fork of Beaver Creek)	1,021.00
" 4,992		1,049.00
" 5,030		1,047.00
" 5,100		1,045.00
" 5,140	In N. E. ¼ Sec. 26, 115–36	1,047.00
" 5,160		1,041.00
" 5,165		1,056.00
" 5,170		1,045.00
" 5,190		1,046.00

---

* From Round Grove to Beaver Creek the survey was nearly in a due west course. From Hawk Creek to Big Stone Lake it ran from four to six miles north of the Minnesota River.

	Above the Ocean.
	Feet.
Station, 5,230	1,057.00
" 5,260	1,072.00
" 5,300	1,056.00
(Undulations of 15 feet.)	
" 5,380	1,048.00
" 5,420 (Sec. 13–18, R. 37–36.)	1,042.00
(Undulations.)	
" 5,460	1,022.00
" 5,490	1,046.00
" 5,570	1,056.00
" 5,610	1,041.00
(Undulations between 1,036 and 1,051.)	
" 5,740	1,031.00
" 5,750	1,026.00
" 5,760	1,038.00
" 5,790	1,048.00
" 5,810	1,031.00
" 5,830	1,039.00
" 5,900	1,026.00
" 5,930	1,038.00
" 5,947	1,028.00
" 5,970	1,036.00
" 6,020	988.00
" 6,023 (Hawk Creek)	970.00
" 6,030	999.00
" 6,040	1,007.00
" 6,090	1,009.00
" 6,094	1,010.00
" 6,096 (Creek)	989.00
" 6,100	1,008.00
" 6,140	1,012.00
" 6,142	996.00
" 6,145	1,012.00
" 6,230	1,031.00
" 6,315	1,010.00
" 6,340	1,018.00
" 6,400	1,004.00
" 6,417	988.00
" 6,460	1,021.00
(Undulating 5–10 feet.)	
" 6,600	1,014.00
" 6,625	985.00
" 6,660	997.00
" 6,672	988.00
" 6,730	1,008.00
" 6,770	987.00
" 6,820	1,000.00
" 6,824	1,001.00
" 6,826	980.00
" 6,828	996.00
" 6,850	980.00
" 6,870	970.00
" 6,880	988.00
" 6,910	978.00
" 6,930	941.00
" 6,960	959.00
" 6,968 (R. 40-41, Sec. 31–36.)	959.00
" 6,990	934.00

		Above the Ocean.
		Feet.
Station,	7,070	931.00
"	7,090	925.00
"	7,149	928.00
"	7,150 (Chippewa River)	913.00
"	7,154	931.00
"	7,260	913.00
"	7,320	934.00
"	7,350	915.00
"	7,370	913.00
"	7,390	933.00
"	7,403	925.00
"	7,405	940.00
"	7,415	932.00
"	7,426	950.00
"	7,432	941.00
"	7,490	968.00
"	7,590	974.00
"	7,603	991.00
"	7,630	986.00
"	7,645	969.00
"	7,690	977.00
"	7,790	980.00
"	7,860	997.00
"	7,910	981.00
"	8,030	986.00
"	8,039 (Pomme de Terre River)	960 00
"	8,050	985.00
"	8,120	994.00
"	8,240	1,000.00
"	8,310	986.00
"	8,370	996.00
"	8,390	1,017.00
"	8,420	1,018.00
"	8,480	987.00
"	8,500	985.00
"	8,560	991.00
"	8,580	986.00
"	8,640	1,002.00
"	8,700	1,012.00
"	8,800	1,017.00
"	8,850	1,038.00
"	8,880	1,012.00
"	8,930	1,015.00
"	8,970	1,018.00
"	8,994–5	978.00
"	8,998–9,000	990.00
"	9,003. (Creek)	965.00
"	9,008	1,011.00
"	9,030	1,017.00
"	9,060, (Sec. 13, 121.46)	1,006.00
"	9,100	1,041.00
"	9,110	1,044.00
"	9,140	1,068.00
	(Undulations, 10–15 feet.)	
"	9,170	1,072.00
"	9,190	1,079.00
"	9,200, (Opposite foot of Big Stone Lake, 1½ ms. SE. of it)	1,077.00
	Big Stone Lake, opposite Sta. 9,316	933.50

REPORT ON THE GENERAL MUSEUM.

CONTAINING THE COLLECTIONS OF THE GEOLOGICAL AND NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY FOR 1875.

BY N. H. WINCHELL, CURATOR.

The Museum of the State University, at Minneapolis, is designed to exemplify to the people of the State the natural resources of the State of Minnesota, so far as the same are covered by the investigations ordered by the law creating a geological and natural history survey. It is also designed to afford to the students who may avail themselves of the instruction offered by the University, the means of illustration needed in the study of the Natural Sciences. In addition to the collections directly made by the survey, the law orders a system of exchanging with other institutions with a view of so augmenting the number of specimens on exhibition as to comprise finally a tolerably complete series of the different species and objects of interest and curiosity that are afforded by the Natural Sciences.

Prior to the commencement of the Geological and Natural History survey, there was a nucleus of a museum already in existence in the University. This comprised a variety of objects, many from the State of Minnesota, and others from foreign localities. The collections that have accumulated since the survey began have been withheld necessarily from exhibition owing to the lack of suitable room with proper cases and furniture for their exhibition and preservation. During the past year, however, the new University building having been substantially completed, room has been set aside for the museum, and a set of cases are rapidly approaching completion, suitable for the reception of some, if not all, of the collections that belong to the museum.

The mammals that were collected in the Black Hills, mentioned in the last statement on the condition of the museum, have been mounted by Prof. H. A. Ward, of Rochester, New York, and are only awaiting the arrangement of the room to be set up in the University. They comprise antelope, male and female, deer with young, elk, elk head, badger, grizzly bear with young, and weasel. The moose which was secured last winter has also been mounted by Prof. Ward, and for the same reason is not on exhibition. It is kindly kept in store by Prof. Ward till our rooms are ready. This fine specimen was killed in December, 1874, by Peter Young, ("Wild Pete,") in the east part of Otter Tail county, on the north end of Parker's Prairie, after having been pursued about five miles. He was seen about a mile away, coming toward the hunter, on a trot, and passed within six rods of him. The first shot put a ball through his throat, but it required four or five more to bring him down. He was billed as freight to St. Paul, after the entrails were removed, with a weight of 590 pounds. His flesh and bones, without the neck and lower leg-bones, weighed 465 pounds. The specimen, as mounted, is pronounced one of rare size and perfection. In procuring and caring for this moose, before he was sent to Prof. Ward, Messrs. Wm. A. Van Slyke and Merrill Ryder, both of St. Paul, rendered much assistance.

In August the generosity of a few citizens of Minneapolis aided the Board of Regents to make the purchase of a fine set of Prof. Ward's casts. These are in plaster of paris, and are of life size, and will give the rooms assigned to the Museum a very attractive appearance. The contributors to this fund were the following gentlemen:

Judge E. S. Jones	$50 00
Gov. J. S. Pillsbury	150 00
Hon. L. Butler	150 00
Dr. H. H. Kimball	10 00
R. J. Mendenhall	10 00
Hon. E. M. Wilson	10 00
Hon. R. B. Langdon	50 00
Hon. H. T. Welles	50 00
S. C. Gale, Esq	25 00
Chute Brothers	10 00
Judge Isaac Atwater	15 00
D. S. Story	5 00
Jonathan Chase	100 00

Anthony Kelly	5 00
Wyman Elliott	5 00
Thomas Lowry	25 00
Hon. A. M. Reid	25 00
Hon. Paris Gibson	25 00

The full cost of the set was $1,500. It embraces the following specimens:

LIST OF WARD'S CASTS OF FOSSILS IN THE UNIVERSITY MUSEUM.

VERTEBRATA.

MAMMALIA.

[NOTE.—The numbers prefixed are those of Prof. Ward's Catalogue.]

2. Homo.................................Engis Cavern, Belgium.
Pleistocene.

4. Homo..Guadaloupe.
Modern Concretionary Limestone.

4. (C.L.) Mesopithecus Pentelici. *Wagner*..............Pikermi, Greece
Upper Miocene.

7. (C. L.) Machairodus cultridens. *Cuv*................Pikermi, Greece.
Upper Miocene.

11. Hyæna eximia. *Wagner*..........................Pikermi, Greece.
Pleistocene.

15. Amphicyon major. *Lartet*......................Sansans, S. France.
Miocene Tertiary.

16. Ursus spelæus. *Blum*, (skull.)........Cave of Gallerneuth, Bavaria.
Quaternary.

17. Ursus spelæus. *Blum*, (pair of molars).Cave of Gailenreuth, Bavaria.
Quaternary.

18. Ursus spelæus. *Blum*. (canine tooth.)..Cave of Gailenreuth, Bavaria.
Quaternary.

19. Gulo spelæus. *Goldf*.................Cave of Gailenreuth, Bavaria.
Quarternary.

20. Trogontherium Cuvieri. *Fisch*.....................Ostend, England.
Pliocene Tertiary.

21. Castoroides Ohioensis. *Foster*..........................Clyde, N. Y.
Pleistocene.

23. Megatherium Cuvieri. *Desm*...................Buenos Ayres, S. A.
Pampean Formation.

26. Megatherium Cuvieri. *Desm.* (tooth.)..........Buenos Ayres, S. A.
Pleistocene.

34. Megalonyx Jeffersonii. *Harlan*......................Henderson, Ky.
Pleistocene.

35. Megalonyx Jeffersonii. *Harlan*................Cave, West Virginia.
Pleistocene.

36. Glyptodon typus. *Nodat*.........Pampean Deposit, Buenos Ayres.
Pleistocene.

41. Glyptodon reticulatus. *Owen.* (caudal armor.)......Buenos Ayres.
Pleistocene.

43. Glyptodon clavipes. *Owen.* (reduced.)...............Buenos Ayres.
Pleistocene.

54. Bootherium cavifrons. *Leidy*.........Ft. Gibson, Indian Territory.
Pleistocene.

55. Bootherum bombifrons. *Leidy*..................Big-bone Lick, Ky.
Pleistocene.

57. Oreodon Culbertsonii. *Leidy*...............Mauvaises Terres, Neb.
Miocene Tertiary.

59. Anoplotherium commune. *Cuv*..................Montmatre, Paris.
Eocene Gypsum.

60. Anoplotherium commune. *Cuv.* (right forefoot)..Montmatre, Paris.
Eocene Tertiary.

61. Anoplotherium commune. *Cuv.* (left hindfoot)...Montmatre, Paris.
Eocene Tertiary.

69. Chœropotamus Parisiensis. *Aym.* (skull).........Montmatre, Paris.
Eocene Tertiary.

71. Anthracotherium magnum. *Cuv*.................Auvergne, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

72. Lophiochaerus splendens......................St. Albans, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

73. Hippohyus Sivalensis. *Falc. and Caut*.........Sewalik Hills, India.
Miocene Tertiary.

78. Hippopotamus major. *Cuv.* (right tusk.)

79. Hippopotamus major. *Cuv.* (left hindfoot).......Auvergne, France.
Pliocene Tertiary.

80. Equus namadicus. *Falc. and Caut*.............Sewalik Hills, India.
Miocene Tertiary.

83. Hipparion elegans. *Christol*...................Concurron, France.
Lower Pliocene.

87. Anchitherium Aurelianense. *Gerv*...............St. Alban, France.
Upper Miocene.

89. Rhinoceros platyrhinus. *Falc. and Caut.*........Sewalik Hills, Ind.
Miocene.

90. Rhinoceros palæindicus. *Falc. and Caut.*.......Sewalik Hills, India.
Miocene Tertiary.

95. Rhinoceros pleuroceros, (lower jaw)................Gannat, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

99. Rhinoceros Merkii. *Kaup*..................Steinheim, Wirtemberg.
Miocene Tertiary.

100. Rhinoceros incisivus. *Cuv.*, (upper incisor).........Steinheim, Ger.
Miocene Tertiary.

102. Tapirus Avernensis. *Croix and Job*......Auvergne, Central France.
Pliocene Tertiary.

103. Tapirus Avernensis. *Croix. and Job*............. Auvergne, France.
Plocine.

104. Lophiodon Parisiense. *Gerv.*.........................Paris, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

105. Pliolophus vulpiceps. *Owen*...........................England.
London Clay (Eocene.)

106. Palæotherium crassum. *Cuv*........................Montmartre, Paris.
Eocene Gypsum.

109. Palæotherium crassum. *Cuv*....................Monturartre, Paris.
Eocene Gypsum.

111. Palæotherium crassum. *Cuv.*, (left hind foot)........Paris, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

113. Dinotherium giganteum. *Kaup*...........Eppelsheim, Rhine Valley.
Miocene Tertiary.

118. Dinotherium levius, (upper jaw, left ramus)......St. Albans, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

119. Dinotherium levius, (upper jaw).................St. Albans, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

124. Dinotherium giganteum. *Kaup*..........St. Jean le Vieux, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

132. Elephas primigenius. *Blum*.........................Lippe, Prussia.
Pleistocene.

133. Elephas primigenius. *Blum*..................Dept. of Ain, France.
Pleistocene.

136. Elephas intermedius, (molar.)..................River Saone, France.
Pleistocene.

137. Elephas intermedius, (molar.)................St. Germain, France.
Pleistocene.

138. Elephas meridionalis. *Nesti*..................Basses Alpes, France.
Pliocene Tertiary.

142. Elephas Americanus. *Dekay*...........Homer, Cortland Co., N. Y.
Pleistocene.

143. Elephas Americanus. *DeKay*.................St. Catharines, C. W.
Pleistocene.

155. Mastodon giganteus. *Cuv*. (molar).............Big Bone Lick, Ky.
Pleistocene.

159. Mastodon longirostris. *Kaup*. (molar).............Lyons, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

169. Mastodon longirostris. *Kaup*. (tusk of lower jaw)...Lyons, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

171. Mastodon giganteus. *Cuv*....................St. Catharines, C. W.
Pleistocene.

176. Zeuglodon cetoides. *Owen*. (two teeth).............Claiborne, Ala.
Eocene Tertiary.

178. Rhizoprion Schinzi, (head.).......................Central France.
Miocene Tertiary.

179. Balaenodon gibbosus. *On*. (tympanic bones).....Suffolk, England.
Pliocene Tertiary.

181. Diprotodon Australis. *Owen*.............Darling Downs, Australia.
Pleistocene.

AVES.

184. Didus ineptus, (head)....................................Mauritius.
Alluvium.

186. Æpiornis maximus. *St. Hil*. (egg)...................Madagascar.
Pleistocene.

186. Æpiornis maximus. *St. Hil*. (metatarsal)..............Madagascar.
Pleistocene.

188. Palapteryx ingens. *On*. (right foot)..................New Zealand.
Pleistocene.

189. Brontozooum gigantum. *Hitch*. (tracks).......Northampton, Mass.
Lias.

192. Brontozooum Sillimanium. *Hk*. (tracks).........Middletown, Conn.
Lias.

REPTILIA.

196. Polemarchus gigas. *Hk*. (track)..............Chicopee Falls, Mass.
Lias. ?

149. (C. L.) Iguanodon Mantelli. *Meyer*..................Isle of Wight.
Wealden.

211. Ichthyosaurus communis. *Conyb*............Lyme-Regis, England.
Lias.

212. Ichthyosaurus communis. *Conyb.* (head).....Barrow-on-Soar, Eng.
Lias.

213. Ichthyosaurus communis. *Conyb.* (head).........Lyme-Regis, Eng.
Lias.

214. Ichthyosaurus communis. *Conyb.* (paddle)......Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

219. Ichthyosaurus platyodon. *Conyb.*................Lyme-Regis, Eng.
Lias.

220. Ichthyosaurus tenuirostris. *Conyb*..............Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

222. Ichthyosaurus tenuirostris. *Conyb*.............Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

225. Plesiosaurus dolichodeirus. *Conyb*...............Glastonbury, Eng.
Lias.

227. Plesiosaurus macrocephalus. *Conyb*..............Lyme-Regis, Eng.
Lias.

231. Pliosaurus brachydeirus. *Owen.*, (paddle).........Dorchester, Eng.
Upper Oolite.

233. Pliosaurus grandis. *Owen*, (tooth)................Dorchester, Eng.
Upper Oolite.

237. Placodus gigas. *Agass*..........................Laineck, Bavaria.
Muschelkalk (Trias.)

239. Placodus gigas. *Agass*..........................Laineck, Bavaria.
Muschelkalk (Trias.)

241. Pterodactylus crassirostris. *Goldf*.............Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Upper Oolite.

242. Pterodactylus rhamphastinus. *Wagner*........Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

247. Crocodilus biporcatus. *Cuv.* (head)............Sewalik Hills, India.
Miocene Tertiary.

249. Crocodileimus robustus......................Dept. of Ain, France.
Upper Oolite.

251. Aligatorellus Beaumontii....................Dept. of Ain, France.
Middle Oolite.

253. Teleosaurus Mandelslohi. *Bronn*.........Holzmaden, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

255. Teleosaurus longipes. *Bronn*...................Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

256. Teleosaurus Cadomensis. *St. Hil.* (ventral scales)....Caen, France.
Lower Oolite.

262. Mosasaurus Hoffmanni. *Mantell*................Maestricht, Holland.
Upper Chalk.

268. Homœosaurus Maximiliani. *Meyer*...............Kelheim, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

270. Saphæosaurus laticeps. *Meyer*...................Kelheim, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

277. Sauranodon incisivus.........................Dept. of Ain, France.
Middle Oolite.

278. Dicynodon lacerticeps. *Owen*.........Fort Beaufort, Cape Colony.
Trias.

281. Testudo hemispherica. *Leidy*.........Mauvaises Terres, Nebraska.
Miocene Tertiary.

285. Pleurosternon ovatum. *Owen*................Swanage, England.
Upper Oolite.

286. Chelonemys ovata, (ventral surface.)................Cirin, France.
Middle Oolite.

287. Chelonemys plana, (ventral surface.).................Cirin, France.
Middle Oolite.

289. Hydropelta Meyeri. *D'Orb*........................Cirin, France.
Middle Oolite.

292. Labyrinthodon Jægeri. *Owen*.............Stuttgardt, Wirtemberg.
Keuper (Trias.)

297. Andrias Scheuchzeri, *Tschudi*...............Œningen, Switzerland.
Miocene Tertiary.

298. Andrias Tschudi. *Meyer*......................Rott, Rhine Valley.
Miocene Tertiary.

225. (C. L.) Cheirotherium Barthi. *Kaup*.............Jena, Germany.
Lower Trias (New Red Sandstone.)

299. Rana diluviana. *Goldf*.......................Bonn, Rhine Valley.
Miocene Tertiary.

302. Pterodactyle (restored.).........................Kent, England.
Chalk.

303 Megalosaurus, (restored.)...............Oxfordshire, etc., England.
Oolite.

304. Iguanodon, (restored.)..................Sussex and Kent, England.
Wealden.

305. Labyrinthodon, (restored.) ....Cheshire, England.
Trias.

306. Icthyosaurus, (restored.).............Somersetshire, etc., England.
Lias.

307. Plesiosaurus macrocephalus. *Conyb.* (restored.)...Dorsetshire, etc.,
Lias. England.

808. Plesiosaurus dolichodeirus. *Conyb.* (Restored.)...Somersetshire, etc., England.
Lias.

PISCES.

809. Holoptychius nobilissimus. *Agass*...........Clashbinnie, Scotland.
Old Red Sandstone.

813. Cephalaspis Lyelli. *Agass*....................Forfarshire, Scotland.
Old Red Sandstone.

815. Lepidotus maximus. *Wagn*...................Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Upper Oolite.

816. Lepidotus oblongus. *Agass*.................Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

817. Lepidotus minor. *Agass*.................Isle of Portland, England.
Upper Oolite.

820. Microdon (Pycnodus) elegans. *Agass*............Kelheim, Bavaria.
Upper Oolite.

821. Microdon notabilis. *Munst*.....................Kelheim, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

824. Gyrodus circularis. *Agass*.......................Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Upper Oolite.

828. Megalurus lepidotus. *Agass*..................Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Lithographic Slate (Upper Oolite.)

830. Squatina acanthoderma. *Fraas*.....................Eichsädt, Bav.
Upper Oolite.

831. Thaumas alifer. *Munst*........................Eicshtadt, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

833. Carcharodon...................................Isle of Malta.
Miocene.

836. Acrodus nobilis. *Agass*.........................Lyme-Regis, Eng.
Lias.

838. Plycodus decurrens. *Agass*............................Kent, Eng.
Chalk.

842. Mesturus verrucosus. *Wagner*................Eichstadt, Bavaria,
Middle Oolite.

844. Ichthyodorulite, (dorsal spine)..................Lyme-Regis, Eng.
Lias.

847. Holocentrum pygæum. *Agass*..................Monte Bolca, Italy.
Eocene Tertiary.

1201. Coprolite of Fish..................................Kent, Eng.
Lower Chalk.

ARTICULATA.

CRUSTACEA.

853. Enoploclytea Sussexiensis. *Mant.* (claw)..........Lewes, England.
Lower Chalk.

854. Eryon propinquus. *Germar*....................Eichstadt, Bavaria.
Upper Oolite.

858. Pemphyx Sueurii. *Meyer*..................Crailsheim, Wirtemberg.
Muschelkalk (Middle Trias.)

865. Limulus Walchii. *Desm*.........................Eichstadt, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

867. Euripterus lacustris. *Harlan*...................Williamsville, N. Y.
Waterlime Group, (Upper Silurian.)

868. Eurypterus lacustris. *Harlan*..................Williamsville, N. Y.
Waterlime Group, (Upper Silurian.)

872. Pterygotus Anglicus. *Agass*.................Forfarshire, Scotland.
Old Red Sandstone.

873. Asaphus gigas. *Dalm.* (restored from fragments.)..Adams Co. Ohio.
Lower Silurian.

874. Asaphus gigas. *Dalm.* ....Cincinnati, Ohio.
Lower Silurian.

880. Asaphus expansus. *Dalm*.........................Motala, Sweden.
Lower Silurian.

882. Asaphus tyrannus. *Murch*.................Bishop's Castle, Wales.
Llandeilo Flags. (L. Sil.)

884. Asaphus Barrandi. *Hall*...........................Platteville, Wis.
Trenton limestone, (L. Silurian.)

888. Angelina Sedgwicki. *McCoy*..........................Garth, Wales.
Lower Silurian.

890. Bumastus Barriensis. *Murch*..............................New York.
Niagara Group.

893. Bronteus planus. *Barr*..........................Beraun, Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

894. Calymene Blumenbachii. *Brongniart*.............Dudley, England.
Upper Silurian.

895. Calymene Blumenbachii. *Brong*...................Dudley, England.
Upper Silurian.

896. Calymene senaria. *Conrad*.......................Cincinnati, Ohio.
Lower Silurian.

897. Calymene læviceps. *Dalm*.........................Motala, Sweden.
Lower Silurian.

398. Ceraurus pleurexanthemus. *Green.* (partially restored.)
Lower Silurian.

399. Ceraurus pleurexanthemus. *Green*..................Ottawa River.
Trenton limestone.

400. Chirurus claviger. *Beyr* ....Wesela, Boh.
Lower Silurian.

401. Conocephalus Sulzeri. *Schloth*.....................Ginetz, Bohemia.
Lower Silurian.

402. Cychaspis Chrystyi. *Hall*..........................Waldron, Ind
Niagara Group.

405. Dalmania calliteles. *Green*..........................York, N. Y.
Hamilton Group.

408. Dalmania micrurus. *Green*................Schoharie county, N. Y.
Lower Helderberg.

411. Dalmania nasutus. *Conrad*................Schoharie county, N. Y.
Lower Helderberg.

414. Dalmania selenurus. *Eaton*..........................Auburn, N. Y.
Upper Helderberg.

415. Dalmania socialis. *Barr*..................................Bohemia.
Lower Silurian.

417. Dindymene Bohemica. *Barr*....................Rokycan, Bohemia.
Lower Silurian.

421. Harpes ungula. *Barr*.......................Kronieprus, Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

422. Harpides Grimmi. *Barr*.......................Przibram, Bohemia.
Lower Silurian.

423. Homalonotus delphinocephalus. *Murch*...........Dudley, England.
Upper Silurian.

428. Lichas Boltoni. *Green*.............................Lockport, N. Y.
Niagara Group.

429. Lichas grandis. *Hall*. (head.)..............Schoharie county, N. Y.
Schoharie Grit, (Devonian.)

430. Lichas grandis. *Hall*. (pygidium reversed.)....Schoharie Co., N. Y.
Schoharie Grit, (Devonian.)

433. Ogygia Buchii. *Goldf*..............................South Wales.
Lower Silurian.

436. Olenellus Thompsoni. *Hall*..........................Georgia, Vt.
Quebec Group, (Lower Silurian.)

437. Paradoxides Bohemicus. *Bock*...................Ginetz Bohemia.
Lower Silurian.

439. Pradoxides Davidis. *Salter*....................St. Davids, Wales.
Lower Silurian.

442. Phacops cephalotes. *Corda*........................Tetin, Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

INSECTA.

451. Æchna eximia. *Hagen*.........................Solenhofen, Bav.
Lithographic Limestone, (Middle Oolite.)

ANNELIDA.

454. Vermetus gigas. *Biv*..............................Asti, Piedmont.
Miocene Tertiary.

455. Tentaculites elongatus. *Hall*..................Schoharie Co. N. Y.
Lower Helderberg.

MOLLUSCA.

CEPHALOPODA.

456. Belemnites Oweni. *Pratt*, (guard)......Christian Malford, England.
Upper Oolite.

457. Belemnites Oweni. *Pratt*..............Christian Malford, England.
Upper Oolite.

458. Belemnites giganteus. *Schloth*..................Ehningen, Wirt.
Lias.

461. Belemnites acuarius. *Schloth*....................Whitby, England
Lias.

462. Belemnites lateralis. *Phil.* (guard.)...............Yorkshire, Eng.
Cretaceous.

463. Beloteuthis subcostata. *Munst*...................Holzmaden, Wirt.
Lias.

467. Ammonites armatus. *Sow*.......................Charmouth, Eng.
Lias.

468. Ammonites Aon. *Munst*......................St. Cassian, Austria.
Trias.

472. Ammonites Batesi. *Trask*..................Shasta Co., California.
Cretaceous.

473. Ammonites bisulcatus. *Brug*..............Rautenberg, Brunswick.
Lower Lias.

475. Ammonites Blagdeni. *Sow*..................Dorsetshire, England.
Lower Oolite.

476. Ammonites Birchii. *Sow*....................Charmouth, England.
Lias.

477. **Ammonites Bechei.** *Sow*....................Charmouth, England.
Lias.

478. **Ammonites Brongniarti.** *Sow*....................Yeovil, England.
Lower Oolite.

484. **Ammonites cordatus.** *Sow*....................Calvados, France.
Middle Oolite.

485. **Ammonites cordatus.** *Sow*....................Calvados, France
Middle Oolite.

487. **Ammonites coronatus.** *Brug*....................Villere, France.
Middle Oolite.

490. **Ammonites fimbriatus.** *Sow*....................Charmouth, England.
Middle Lias.

491. **Ammonites fimbriatus.** *Sow*....................Charmouth, Eng.
Middle Lias.

492. **Ammonites gigas.** *Zieten*....................Yonne, France.
Upper Oolite.

495. **Ammonites Goliathus.** *D'Orb*....................Dives, France
Middle Oolite.

497. **Ammonites Henleyi.** *Sow*....................Charmouth, England.
Lias.

498. **Ammonites Herveyi.** *Sow*....................Wilts, England.
Middle Oolite.

500. **Ammonites heterophyllus.** *Sow*..........Reutlingen, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

501. **Ammonites Humphriesianus.** *Sow*....................Yeovil, England.
Lower Oolite.

502. **Ammonites** ———....................Calvados, France.
Middle Oolite.

503. **Ammonites interruptus.** *Brug*....................St. Florentin, France.
Cretaceous.

504. **Ammonites interruptus,** *Park*....................France.
Gault (Cretaceous).

505. **Ammonites Jason.** *Rein*....................Christian Malford, Eng.
Middle Oolite.

509. **Ammonites linguiferus.** *D'Orb*....................Calvados, France.
Lower Oolite.

511. **Ammonites macrocephalus.** *Schloth*............Wiltshire, England.
Middle Oolite.

515. **Ammonites margaritatus.** *Mum*....................Charmouth, Eng.
Lias.

518. **Ammonites Milletianus.** *D'Orb*....................Rouen, France.
Chalk.

519. **Ammonites modiolaris.** *Luid*..................Wiltshire, England.
Middle Oolite.

521. **Ammonites obtusus.** *Sow*..................Charmouth, England.
Lower Lias.

523. **Ammonites peramplus.** *Mant*..........................Germany.
Chalk.

525. **Ammonites planicostatus.** *Sow*..................Dorset, England.
Lias.

527. **Ammonites raricostatus.** *Ziet*...............Charmouth, England.
Lias.

529. **Ammonites Rhotomagensis.** *Brong*................Rouen, France.
Chalk.

531. **Ammonites serpentinus.** *Schloth*..............Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

536. **Ammonites Woollgari.** *Mant*.....................Sussex, England.
Chalk.

537. **Ammonites Woollgari.** *Mant*.....................Sussex, England.
(Enlarged from 536.)

538. **Ammonites gigas.** *Ziet.* (Enlarged from 492.)......Yonne, France.
Upper Oolite.

539. **Ancyloceras Andouli.** *Astier*.....................Cheiron, France.
Cretaceous Greensand.

540. **Ancyloceras Emerici.** *D'Orb*....................Barrème, France.
Upper Neocomian, (Cretaceous)

541. **Ancyloceras gigas.** *Sow*.................Atherfield, Isle of Wight.
Cretaceous Greensand.

543. **Ancyloceras Tabarelli.** *Astier*....................Barreme, France.
Cretaceous.

546. **Baculites anceps.** *Lam*....................................France.
Chalk.

547. **Ceratites nodosus.** *DeHaan*.....................Luneville, France.
Muschelkalk, (Trias.)

551. **Crioceras bifurcatus.** *Quenst*...............Reutlingen, Wirtemberg.
Jurassic.

552. **Crioceras Duvalii.** *Lev*.......................Escragnolles, France.
Neocomian (Cretaceous.)

553. **Goniatites expansus.** *Vanux*.......................Manilus, N. Y.
Goniatite limestone (Devonian.)

554. **Goniatites ixion.** *Hall*..........................Rockford, Ind.
Carboniferous.

555. **Hamites attenuatus.** *Sow*.....................Folkestone, England.
Gault (Cretaceous.)

557. Hamites Astierianus. *D'Orb*...................... Barreme, France.
Neocomian (Cretaceous.)

558. Hamites (Hamulina) cinctus.) *D'Orb*.............. Barreme, France.
Upper Neocomian (Cretaceous.)

563. Scaphites Ivanii. *Puzos*.......................... Barreme, France.
Lower Greensand.

564. Scaphites compressus. *Röm*.................... Haldem, Westphalia.
Chalk.

566. Toxoceras obliquatum. *D'Orb*................ Escragnolles, France.
Greensand (Cretaceous.)

567. Turrilites costatus. *Lam*.............................. Rouen, France.
Chalk Marl (Lower Cretaceous.)

569. Nautilus bidorsatus. *Schloth*................. Brunswick, Germany.
Muschelkalk (Trias.)

573. Nautilus Neocomensis. *D'Orb*................ Escragnolles, France.
Neocomian (Cretaceous.)

574. Nautilus pseudo-elegans. *D'Orb*..................... Rouen, France.
Chalk.

575. Nautilus semistriatus. *D'Orb*..................... Charmouth, Eng.
Lias.

578. Nautilus ———....................................... Charmouth, Eng.
Middle Lias.

579. Nautilus ———.. Kentucky.
Carboniferous ?

580. Lituites undatus. *Conrad*......................... Middleville, N. Y.
Black River limestone, (L. Sil.)

582. Discites ornatus. *Hall*............................... Manlius, N. Y.
Goniatite limestone, (Devonian.)

585. Orthoceras amplicameratum. *Hall*.............. Middleville, N. Y.
Trenton Limestone, (Lower Silurian.)

586. Orthoceras crebrum. *Sæm*..................... Eifel, Rhine Valley.
Devonian.

587. Orthoceras inequale. *Barr*..................... Butowitz, Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

592. Gomphoceras inflatum. *Quenst*................ Eifel, Rhine Valley.
Devonian.

597. Phragmoceras subventricosum. *D'A and De V*.. Eifel, Rhine Valley.
Devonian.

598. Cyrtoceras macrostomum. *Hall*................ Mineral Point, Wis.
Trenton Limestone (L. Sil.)

599. Cyrtoceras corbulatum. *Barr*................................ Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

600. Cyrtoceras elongatum. *Barr*....................Beraun, Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

602. Gyroceras trivolvis. *Conrad*..............Schoharie county, N. Y.
Upper Helderberg, (Devonian.)

604. Gyroceras expansum. *Sæm*.....................Cazenovia, N Y.
Hamilton Group.

605. Gyroceras Eifelense. *D'Arch*..................Eifel, Rhine Valley.
Devonian.

GASTEROPODA.

608. Rostellaria carinata. *Mant*..................Folkestone, England.
Gault. (Cretaceous.)

609. Pyrula melongena. *Grateloup*....................Saucats, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

611. Fusus longaevus. *Lam*.....................Brackleshem, England.
Eocene Tertiary.

619. Cerithium giganteum. *Lam*.........................Damery, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

620. Cerithium giganteum. *Lam*, (inner cast)........Vaugirard, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

621. Cerithium cornucopiæ. *Sow*...................Contentin, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

624. Euomphalus rugosus. *Sow*......................Dudley, England.
Upper Silurian.

633. Capulus elegans. *Barr*.................................Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

634. Capulus robustus. *Barr*.....................Zochkow, Bohemia.
Upper Silurian.

637. Dentalium Noe. *Bon*.........................Astezan, Piedmont.
Pliocene Tertiary.

LAMELLIBRANCHIATA.

647. Ostrea frons. *Park*..............................Royan, France.
Chalk.

648. Ostrea Santonensis. *D'Orb*........................Royan, France.
Chalk.

650. Gryphæa arcuata. *Lam*............................Semur, France.
Lias.

651. Exogyra columba. *Goldf*..........................Boussa, France.
Cretaceous.

652. Exogyra costata. *Morton*.....................Perry Co., Alabama.
Cretaceous.

658. Radiolites crateriformis. *D'Orb*......................Royan, France.
Chalk.

660. Sphærulites Bournoni. *Desm*....................Dordonge, France.
Chalk.

661. Sphærulites calceoloides. *Desm*.................Dordogne, France.
Chalk.

663. Caprina adversa. *D'Orb*.........................Charente, France.
Chalk.

664. Avicula flabella. *Conrad*............ ....Onondaga Co., N. Y.
Hamilton Group (Devonian.)

670. Pterinea radians. *Conrad*.........................Casenovia, N. Y.
Hamilton Group (Devonian.)

671. Posidonia alveata. *Conrad*.......................Sherburne, N. Y.
Hamilton Group (Devonian.)

672. Megambona cordiformis. *Hall*. ....Onondaga Co., N. Y.
Corniferous Limestone (Devonian.)

675. Hippopodium ponderosum. *Sow*..................Cheltenham, Eng.
Lias.

679. Trigonia costata. *Park*.........................Œschingen, Wirt.
Lower Oolite.

683. Modiola plicata. *Sow*...........................Rendcomb, Eng.
Oolite.

686. Thracia —— .... .Thebes, Egypt.
Cretaceous.

689. Teredina personata. *Lam*.......... ....Mt. Bernon, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

BRACHIOPODA.

690. Spirifer pinguis. *Sow*............................Dublin, Ireland.
Carboniferous limestone.

696. Spirifer oxypteris. *Buro*........................Carignan, France.
Lias.

706. Terebratula grandis. *Blum*.....................Bunde, Westphalia.
Miocene Tertiary.

716. Terebratula intermedia *Sow*....................Calvados, France.
Lower Oolite.

755. Productus giganteus. *Martin*................Derbyshire, England.
Carboniferous.

RADIATA.

ECHINODERMATA.

762. Cidaris coronata. *Goldf*.................... Nattheim, Wirtemberg.
Coral Crag (Middle Oolite.)

776. Hemicidaris intermedia. *Flem*................. Wiltshire, England.
Oolite.

781. Palaechinus multipora. *Nor. and O*................. St. Louis, Mo.
St. Louis Limestone (Carboniferous.)

802. Echinobrissus clunicularis. *Blainv*............... Stroud, England.
Lower Oolite.

814. Clypaeaster umbrella. *Agass*............................ Sardinia.
Miocene Tertiary.

821. Discoidea cylindrica. *Agass*....................... Rouen, France.
Chalk Marl (Cretaceous.)

825. Galerites albo-galerus. *Lam*...................... Kent, England.
Upper Chalk.

838. Dictyophyton tuberosum. *Hall*............. Steuben county, N. Y.
Chemung (Upper Devonian.)

842. Hemipneustes radiatus. *Agass*................ Maestricht, Holland.
Upper Chalk.

847. Micraster cor-anguinum. *Agass*..................... Kent, England.
Chalk.

860. Ophioderma Egertoni. *Broderip*............. Lyme-Regis, England.
Lias.

861. Ophioderma Egertoni. *Brod*...................... Lyme-Regis, Eng.
Lias.

868. Solastor Moretonis. *Forbes*............. Gloucestershire, England.
Great Oolite.

898. Apiocrinus Parkinsoni. *Schloth*..................... Bradford, Eng.
Great Oolite.

899. Apiocrinus Parkinsoni. *Schloth*..................... Bradford, Eng.
Oolite.

901. Apiocrinus Parkinsoni. *Schloth*..................... Bradford, Eng.
Oolite.

904. Astrocoma Cirini................................... Cirin, France.
Lithographic Limestone (Middle Oolite.)

911. Crotalocrinus rugosus. *Miller*................... Dudley, England.
Upper Silurian.

917. Encrinus liliiformis. *Schloth*................ Brunswick, Germany.
Muschelkalk (Middle Trias.)

918. **Encrinus liliiformis.** *Schloth*......................Brunswick, Ger.
Muschelkalk, (Trias.)

919. **Encrinus liliiformis.** *Schloth*......................Brunswick, Ger.
Muschelkalk, (Trias.)

942. **Pentacrinus subangularis.** *Miller*................Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

943. **Pentacrinus subangularis.** *Miller*................Boll, Wirtemberg.
Lias.

947. **Periechocrinus moniliformis.** *Miller*..................Dudley, Eng.
Upper Silurian.

958. **Platycrinus Sarae.** *Hall*............................St. Louis, Mo.
St. Louis Limestone (Carboniferous.)

954. **Pterocoma pinnata.** *Agass*...................Solenhofen, Bavaria.
Middle Oolite.

ACALEPHAE.

963. **Graptolithus octobrachiatus.** *Hall.*
Lower Silurian.

PROTOZOA.

RHIZOPODA.

966. **Amphistegina vulgaris.** *D'Orb*..................Bordeaux, France.
Miocene Tertiary.

968. **Fusulina cylindrica.** *D'Orb*......................Ohio and Nebraska.
Carboniferous.

999. **Cassidulina serrata**..Austria.
Miocene.

1002. **Clavulina communis.** *D'Orb*................ ...Nussdorf, Austria.
Pliocene.

1007. **Globigerina bulloides.** *D'Orb.*
Miocene; Austria.
Pliocene; Italy.
Living; Adriatic.

1015. **Proroporus complanatus.** *Reuss.*
Gault.

1036. **Siderolina calcitrapoides.** *Lam*...............Maestricht, Holland.
Chalk.

1039. **Siphonina reticulata.** *Reuss*............................Germany.
Miocene.

1043. Textularia conulus. *Reuss.*
Upper Chalk.

1047. Textularia pupoides..............................Meudon, France.
Upper Chalk.

1049. Textularia spinulosa. *Reuss*...........................Germany.
Miocene Tertiary.

1059. Cristellaria cassis. *Ficht*...........................Sienna, Italy.
Pliocene.

1077. Globulina gibba. *D'Orb*..................France and Adriatic Sea.
Tertiary and Living.

1094. Nodosaria inflata. *Reuss.*
Upper Chalk.

1097. Nodosaria oblonga. *Reuss.*
Eocene Tertiary.

1098. Nodosaria radicula. *Lam.*
Gault (Cretaceous.)

1138. Orbitolites macropora. *Lam*..................Maestrict, Holland.
Chalk.

1150. Spirolina cylindrica. *Lam*.................... .....Paris, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

1161. Vertebralina nitida. *D'Orb*.....................Grignon, France.
Eocene Tertiary.

PORIFERA.

1164. Amorphospongia ——.......... ....Franklin county, Ky.
Lower Silurian.

1165. Cœloptychium agaricoides. *Goldf.*...........Haldem, Westphalia.
Chalk.

1166. Placoscyphia meandroides. *Leym*.................Kent, England.
Cretaceous Greensand.

1168. Polypothecia dichotoma. *Ben*..............Warminster, England.
Cretaceous Greensand.

1172. Scyphia polyommata. *Goldf*..............Streitberg, Wirtemberg.
Middle Oolite.

1184. Siphonia costata. *Lam*.....................Warminster, England.
Cretaceous Greensand.

1177. Siphonia pyriformis. *Goldf*.................Blackdown, England.
Upper Greensand (Cretaceous.)

1185. Tentriculites ———.........................Birdlington, England.
Chalk.

MISCELLANEOUS.

1204. Cycadoides megalophylla. *Buckl.* (Trunk of a short cycad. Isle of Portland, England.
Wealden.

1206. Dammarites ——, (conifer.).........Burton, Somerset, England.
Inferior Oolite.

1207. Nipadites Burtini. *Brong*....................Schaerbeck, Belgium.
Eocene Tertiary.

1212. Welcome Nugget (gold).........................Ballarat, Australia.

1216. Platinum Nugget................... ....Ural Mts., Siberia.

1237. Rosetta Stone...........................Rosetta, Lower Egypt.

1245. Bust of Linnæus, life size.

1247. Bust of Cuvier, life size.

1248. Bust of Geoffroy St. Hilaire, life size.

Bust of Huxley, life size.

ERRATA.

Page 15, lines 3 and 4 from top, for vallies read *valleys*.
Page 15, line 14 from bottom, for Ttrenton read *Trenton*.
Page 33, line 9 from bottom, for continious read *continuous*.
Page 41, line 2 from bottom, after seen, insert *if restored*.
Page 51, line 6 from bottom, for McVee read *McNee*.
Page 58, line 13 from top, for M. read *A*.
Page 58, line 8 from bottom, for Shunard read *Shumard*.
Page 67, line 6 from top, for tickest read *thickest*.
Page 108, line 8 from top, for knoles read *knolls*.
Page 115, line 12 from top for characterzes read *characterizes*.

INDEX.

PAGE.

Abbott, John, quarry of, in the Trenton limestone 111
Address and Summary Statement 5
Allen, Willard, quarry of 50
Alluvial terraces in Fillmore county 67
Amherst, surface character of township 24
Amherst P. O., the Jordan quarried at 78
Ancient peat and vegetation in the drift deposits 62
Andrews, Hiram, quarry of 48
Angst, Robert, railroad elevations by 116
Appropriation, needed for Museum 4
Arnold, Thomas, quarry of, in the Trenton 108
Area of the St. Peter sandstone in Olmsted county 88
    of the Trenton limestone in Olmsted county 90
    of Fillmore county 18
    of Olmsted county, by townships 76
    of Dodge county, by townships 97
    of Steele county, by townships 107
Arendahl, surface features of township 25
Ashland, surface features of township 99
Atrypa in the Devonian limestone 55
    brachiopod resembling 56
Atwater, Judge Isaac, contributor to the Ward cast fund 124
Aurora, surface features of township 108

Baldwin's Dam, the Trenton limestone at 48
Barnett, James, lime made by 88
    James, section at lime-kiln of 88
Baumgartner, Jacob, lime-burner, Milton township 106
Bear Creek, the Lower Magnesian on 89
Beaver, surface features of township 27
    rock in river banks in 55
    the Cretaceous in 56
Beach lines, absence of, in Fillmore county 28
Bennington, the Devonian limestone at 54
Belding, S. S., quarry of 51

PAGE.
Berlin, surface features of township ... 109
Big Stone Lake, hight above the ocean ... 122
Blake's Mill, the Galena limestone at ... 103
Black Hills, mammals collected in ... 124
Blooming Prairie, surface features of township ... 108
Bloomfield, surface features of township ... 27
  the Galena limestone in ... 51
  quarry of Widow Scarrie in ... 56
  Limonite in ... 59
  supposed Cretaceous in ... 56
"Blue Limestone," in Fillmore county ... 43
Bluffs, description of in Fillmore county ... 17
  character of, in Olmsted county ... 78
Bog-ore in Fillmore county ... 68
Boynton, O. A., lump of ancient peat and vegetation on land of ... 64
Brachiopods in the Devonian ... 55
Brick, made in Fillmore county ... 71
  yard of J. W. Smith ... 57
  made in Olmsted county ... 95
  made by William Gutherless at Dodge Centre ... 105
  made by E. P. Brown ... 95
Bristol, surface features of township ... 26
  drift boundary in ... 59
  drift seen in ... 61
Broxlem, David, peat on the land of ... 68
"Buff Limestone," in Fillmore county ... 43
Building stones in Fillmore county ... 72
Butler, Hon. Levi, contributor to the Ward cast fund ... 124

Calcite in the Shakopee limestone ... 39
Canisteo, surface features of township ... 99
Canton, surface features of township ... 24
Carimona, surface features of township ... 26
  the Shakopee at ... 40
  drift near and at ... 60
Carrollton, surface features of township ... 25
Cascade, surface features of township ... 79
  the Lower Magnesian in ... 86
Cedar River, its course in Dodge county ... 98
Centennial Exposition, collections for ... 12
Chaetetes Lycoperdon in the Trenton ... 43
Characters of the Galena ... 49, 51
Charcoal and ash from Redwood Falls submitted for analysis ... 10
Chase, Jonathan, contributor to the Ward cast fund ... 124
Chatfield, surface features of township ... 26

PAGE.

Chatfield, diagram of the valley at.. 38
  Lower Trenton at.. 47
  gravelly drift at.. 60
Chemical work.. 7
Chester, beds of limestone exposed at.. 55
Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railroad, elevations on.............. 116
  Iowa and Minnesota Division.............. 116
  McGregor Division.............. 118
  River Division.............. 118
Chimney Rock, view of.. 46
Chute Bros. contributors to the Ward cast fund.............. 124
Claremont, surface characters of township.............. 99
Clay, green, in Olmsted county..77, 91
  from Spring Valley, submitted for analysis.............. 7, 8
Clear Grit Mills, St. Lawrence limestone at.............. 38
Clear Grit, drift near.. 60
Clinton Falls, surface features of township.............. 109
Coal, cannel, from Crow Creek, submitted for analysis.............. 8
  earthy, from Crow Creek, submitted for analysis.............. 8
  from surface near Bismark, D. T., submitted for analysis...... 8
  in Steele county, location of.............. 112
Cole, John M., information on water-powers by.............. 77
Collections for Museum, how made.............. 123
Comstock, Gen. C. B., determination of latitude and longitude, by.... 6
Concrete houses.. 74
Concretions in the Jordan sandstone.............. 37
Conglomerate in the lower Cretaceous, suspected existence of........ 58
Concord, surface character of township.............. 99
Contributions to the Ward cast fund.............. 124
Cornell Bros., makers of stoneware.............. 118
Copper, in drift deposits in Fillmore county.............. 71
  fragment of, from Pleasant Grove, submitted for analysis..... 10
Cretaceous, the, over the Lower Silurian.............. 59
  in Olmsted county..86, 92
  in Fillmore county.............. 56
  indirect evidence of existence of.............. 58
Cupola, smaller, of the University, latitude and longitude of.......... 7

Deerfield, surface features of township.............. 109
Devonian limestone in Fillmore county.............. 54
De For's mill, Fillmore county.............. 48
  the Galena at.............. 52
Diagram illustrating topography.............. 84
Dioritic boulder in loess loam.............. 61
Dodge, J. T., elevations by.............. 120
Dodge county, report on.............. 97

PAGE.
Dodge county, area of, by townships...... 97
  drainage of...... 97
  water-powers of...... 98
  surface of...... 98
  notes on, from plats of government survey...... 99
  timber of...... 100
  shrubby plants of...... 100
  geological structure of...... 101
  the Shakopee limestone in...... 101
  the St. Peter sandstone in...... 101
  the Trenton limestone in...... 101
  the Galena limestone in...... 103
  the drift in...... 105
  brick made in...... 105
  lime burned in...... 106
Dover, surface features of township...... 79
Drainage, the natural, of Fillmore county...... 13
  of Olmsted county...... 76
  of Dodge county...... 97
  of Steele county...... 110
Drift, the, in Fillmore county...... 59
  in Olmsted county...... 93
  in Dodge county...... 105
  in Steele county...... 112
  thickness of in Olmsted county...... 20
  evidences of in the "driftless area."......60, 61
Drift gold in Fillmore county...... 71
  in Olmsted county...... 95
Driftless area......5, 21
Duxberry Creek, boulders in valley of...... 61

Eagle Rocks, view of...... 45
Elevation of points along the Southern Minnesota Railroad...... 28
Elevations, remarks on...... 80, 115
  list of railroad, in Olmsted county...... 81
  list of, on Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul Railroad...... 116
  list of, on Hastings and Dakota Railroad...... 119
Elliota, thin drift at...... 61
Ellington, surface features of township...... 100
Elliott, Wyman, contributor to the Ward cast fund...... 125
Elmira, surface features of township...... 79
Erosion, remarkable in Fillmore county...... 15
Etna, the Galena at...... 51
  Iron ore in vicinity of...... 59
  drift with glaciated boulders, seen at...... 60
Eyota, surface features of township...... 79

PAGE.

- Farmington, surface features of township........ 78
- Fillmore, surface character of township........ 27
- Fillmore County, report on........ 13
  - situation and area........ 13
  - natural drainage........ 13
  - water-powers of........ 14
  - surface features of........ 14
  - soil and timber........ 28
  - the geological structure of........ 30
  - the St. Croix Sandstone in........ 31
  - the St. Lawrence limestone in........ 32
  - the Jordan Sandstone in........ 35
  - the Shakopee Limestone in........ 38
  - the St. Peter Sandstone in........ 40
  - the Trenton Limestone in........ 42
  - the Galena Limestone in........ 49
  - the Maquoketa Shales in........ 53
  - the Niagara Limestone in........ 53
  - the Devonian Limestone in........ 54
  - the Cretaceous in........ 56
  - the Drift in........ 59
  - ancient peat and vegetation in the drift deposits of.. 62
  - common wells in........ 64
  - the Loess Loam in........ 66
  - alluvial terraces in........ 67
  - material resources of........ 67
  - Iron in........ 68
  - Lead in........ 69
  - quicklime produced in........ 69
  - brick made in........ 71
  - Gold and Copper in the drift deposits of........ 71
  - building stones in........ 72
  - sand for mortar and concrete in........ 73
- *Fenestella* in the Devonian........ 55
- Flouring mills of Fillmore county........ 14
  - Olmsted county........ 64
  - Dodge county........ 98
  - Steele county........ 110
- Foreston, the Galena at........ 52
  - drift abundant at........ 61
- Forestville, surface features of township........ 26
  - drift in........ 60
- Formations, geological, of Olmsted county........ 86
- Fountain, surface features of township........ 26
  - drift-gravel and boulders in........ 60

PAGE.

- Fountain, section at........ 40
- Fuel of Fillmore county........ 67

- Gale, S. C. contributor to the Ward cast fund........ 124
- Galena Limestone in Fillmore county........ 49
  - in Olmsted county........ 86
  - in Dodge county........ 103
  - as a building stone........ 78
  - the area of in Olmsted county........ 91
  - the lithological character of in Olmsted county........ 91
  - economical value of in Olmsted county........ 92
- Garrick, Thos., quarry of in the Galena........ 92
- Geology of Minnesota, State publications relating to........ 3
  - Steele county........ 111
- Geological structure of Fillmore county........ 30
  - of Olmsted county........ 84
  - of Dodge county........ 101
- Genoa, unimproved water-power at........ 78
- Gibson, Hon. Paris, contributor to the Ward cast fund........ 125
- Ginsberg, ——, quarry of........ 104
- Gold, in the drift deposits of Fillmore county........ 71
  - of Olmsted county........ 95
- Gorges, existence of and how occasioned........ 22
- *Graptolites*, at De For's mill........ 48
- Granger, the Trenton at........ 48
  - the drift at........ 61
- Grasshoppers, investigation of recommended........ 11
- Green Shales in the Trenton........ 21, 22, 48
- Gregor, Mr. I., difficulty in use of magnetic needle........ 59
- Gutherless, Wm., brick made by........ 105

- Harrington, Prof. M. W., assistant on the survey........ 6
  - report on Olmsted county, by........ 75
  - report on Dodge county, by........ 97
  - report on Steele county, by........ 107
- Haematite iron ore at Minnesota Falls........ 9
- Hague, Luke, gold on land of........ 71
- Hare, Geo., tree said to have been found in well of........ 64
- Harmony, surface features of........ 25
- Hastings & Dakota R. R., elevations on........ 119
- Havanna, surface features of township........ 108
- Haverhill, surface features of township........ 79
- Hayfield, surface features of township........ 99
- Hickory, how prevent destruction of........ 82
- Higby, David, Cretaceous clay on farm of........ 57

PAGE.

High Forest, water-power at.. 78
surface features of township.. 80
Hipes, John, quarry of.. 48
Holt, surface features of township.. 24
drift gravel seen in.. 61
Horizon between the Trenton and Galena.. 49
Horticultural Society, list of plants published by.. 6
Horton, Horace, list of R. R. elevations by.. 81
Hopkins, ——, quarry of.. 55
Huntley, Mr. Calvin E., facts concerning ancient peat, by.. 62
prices for well-drilling.. 66
Hurlbut, W. D., details of map by.. 85

"Inter-glacial epoch".. 62
Irish, N., lime-burner.. 106
Iron in Fillmore county..59, 68
Iron ore at Lanesboro.. 34
Limonite..58, 59
Irving, Prof. R., on the Lower Magnesian.. 32
Isinour's Station, bluffs at.. 40
drift-gravel and stones near.. 61

Jacob, Dennis, quarry of.. 47
Jenkins, W., quarry of, in the St. Peter near Rochester..89, 91
Jones, Judge E. S., contributor to the Ward cast fund.. 124
Jordan, surface features of township.. 27
drift boundary line.. 47
Jordan Sandstone in Fillmore county.. 35

Kalmar, surface features of township.. 79
Kaolin, from Birch Coolie, submitted for analysis.. 8
Kasson, brick kiln at.. 106
Kelly, Anthony, contributor to the Ward cast fund.. 125
Kimball, F. A., Surveyor of the Hastings and Dakota R. R.. 120
Kimball, Dr. H. H., contributor to the Ward cast fund.. 124
Kleckler, John, quarry of.. 47
peat on the land of.. 68
Knight, G. W. quarry of.. 47
Knolls, remarkable series of.. 58

Lakes, absence of in Olmsted county.. 76
Lake Survey, determination of Latitude and Longitude by.. 7
Lanesboro, the St. Lawrence Limestone at.. 34
concretions in the Jordan Sandstone at.. 35
high terrace plain at.. 67
lime burned at.. 71

PAGE.
Landscape, magnificent views of 17
Langdon, Hon. R. B. contributor to the Ward cast fund 124
Lapham, Dr. I. A. list of plants by 6
Latitude of smaller cupola of University 7
"Lead Fossil" in the Galena 51
Lead in Fillmore county 69
  in Olmsted county 91
Lenora, drift thin at 61
Lemond, surface features of township 109
Le Roy, the Devonian Limestone at 54
Lester, Joseph, quarry of 47
Leonard, W. E. assistant on the Survey 5
  observations by, on surface crag 68
Leptæna in the Trenton in Fillmore county 43
  in Olmsted county 91
Lime in Fillmore county 70
  made by J. Barnett in Oronoco township 88
  burned by R. Williams in High Forest township 92
  made by James Paul in Wasioja 103
  burned in Milton township 106
Lime Springs, quarry at 55
  Cretaceous features in drift-clay at 56
  Maquoketa shales at 31
Lime-burners in Fillmore county, lists of 69, 70
Limonite iron ore in Fillmore county 58, 68
Lindensmith, ——, sections in quarry of 112
Lingulepis Morsensis in the St. Peter Sandstone 41
Lingulepis quadrata in the Trenton 47
List of Ward's casts 126
  of Railroad Elevations 81, 116
  of publications relating to the Geology of Minnesota 8
Lithological characters of the St. Peter Sandstone 89
  of the Trenton Limestone 90
Loess Loam, mingled with drift 28
  belt of 59
  in Fillmore county 66
Longitude of smaller cupola of the University 7
"Lone Mound" 89
Lower Magnesian, the, divided into three members 32
  area of in Olmsted county 86
  lithological characters of 86
  upper layers of, on Bear Creek 89
Lower Silurian, coated with iron 58
Lower Trenton, in Fillmore Co 43
Lowry, Thomas, contributor to the Ward cast fund 125

PAGE.
Magnetic needle, disturbance of 59
Magnetic variation, in Olmsted County 80
  extremes of, in Steele Co 110
Mantor, Peter, quarry of 104
Mantorville, surface character of township 99
  exposures of Galena near 103
Maquoketa Shales in Fillmore Co 58
  not found in Dodge Co 105
Marcasite at Lanesboro 34
Marion, surface features of township 79
Marshes in Steele Co 110
Material Resources of Fillmore Co 67
McNee, Wm. B., quarry of 51
McNee, Andrew, white sand deposit on land of 57
Meek and Hayden, the Fort Benton Group of 56
Mendenhall, R. J., contributor to the Ward cast fund 124
Meriden, surface features of township 109
Merton, surface features of township 108
Mills, kind and number of in Dodge Co 98
  kind and number of in Steele Co 110
  kind and number of in Fillmore Co 14
  kind and number of in Olmsted Co 64
Milton, surface features of township 99
Mineral water, sample from Belle Plaine submitted for analysis 10
Mineral springs at Owatonna, analysis of 113
Morehouse, Dr. E. M., brick maker 113
  maker of unglazed red-ware 114
Moose, from Otter Tail Co 124
Mortar sand in Fillmore Co 73
Mounds, in Olmsted Co 78
"Mound Builders," supposed works of 16
Murchisonia in the Trenton in Olmsted Co 91
Museum, law establishing 10
  report on 123

Natural drainage, of Fillmore Co 13
Newberg, surface features of township 24
New Haven, surface features of township 78
Niagara Limestone in Fillmore Co 53
Notes from surveyor's plats of Fillmore Co 23
  of Olmsted Co 78
  of Dodge Co 89
  of Steele Co 108
Niobrara 56
"Nishnabotany Sandstone" 56, 57
Norway, surface features of township 24

PAGE.

Ochre, quantities of 59
Odell and Cornell, brick makers 114
Odell, H. T., iron ore found on land of 64
Odell, L. G., draw-kiln of 70
Olds, F. T., information on water-powers by 77
Olmsted county, report on 75
  area of, by townships 76
  water-powers of 77
  drainage of 76
  surface of 78
  notes from government plats 78
  elevations in 81
  timber of 82
  geological structure of 84
  the Lower Magnesian in 86
  the St. Peter Sandstone in 88
  the Trenton Limestone in 90
  the Galena Limestone in 91
  the Cretaceous in 92
  the Drift in 93
  common wells in 94
  brick in 95
  gold in 95
  peat, absence of 95
Ore, from Sauk Valley, submitted for analysis 10
  supposed silver, from Colorado, submitted for analysis 10
  supposed silver, from Brainerd, submitted for analysis 10
  supposed silver, from N. shore of Lake Superior, submitted for analysis 10
  supposed iron, from Duluth, submitted for analysis 10
Orion, surface features of township 80
Oronoco, surface features of township 78
  the Lower Magnesian in 86
Orthis, in the Trenton in Fillmore county 48
    in Olmsted county 91
  at De For's Mill 48
  brachiopod resembling 55
Orthoceras, in the Trenton in Fillmore county 48
    in Olmsted county 91
Orthonota, at De For's Mill 48
Owatonna, surface features of township 109
  mineral springs at 113

Parsley's Ford, Shakopee Limestone at 39
Paul, James, lime kilns of 103

PAGE.
Peat, from Red Wing, land of Capt. Eames submitted for analysis.... 9
  from C. T. Bryan's land, Winona, submitted for analysis....... 9
  in Fillmore county.......... 68
  from Schmitz's land, St. Paul, submitted for analysis........... 8
  manufactured, from Wells, submitted for analysis............... 8
  not manufactured, from Wells, submitted for analysis.......... 8
  from Lake Emily, submitted for analysis....................... 8
  turf, from Empire City, submitted for analysis 8
  from St. Cloud, submitted for analysis.......................... 8
  from Lura, submitted for analysis.............................. 8
  turf, from land of J. Haggard, submitted for analysis........... 9
  from K. K. Peck's land, near Windom, submitted for analysis... 9
  from S. O. Taggart's land, near Windom, submitted for analysis. 9
  from land of Rev. E. Savage, submitted for analysis............ 9
  from land of A. A. Soule, near Mountain Lake, submitted for analysis 9
  from sec. 18, T. 106, 37, submitted for analysis................ 9
Peaty lake sediment, from Bigelow, submitted for analysis.......... 9
Perkins, H., rock at saw-mill of.......... 47
Peterson, Peter, quartz-gravel on the land of.......... 58
Pettit, S. C., quarry of 51
Pillsbury, Gov. J. S., contributor to the Ward cast fund.......... 124
Pilot Mound, surface features of township.......... 25
  drift seen in.......... 61
Plants, list of by Dr. I. A. Lapham 6
  shrubby, seen in Dodge county.......... 100
  shrubby, seen in Olmsted county.......... 100
Pleasant Grove, surface features of township.......... 80
Pleasant Valley, the Devonian at.......... 54
Pleurotomaria in the Trenton in Olmsted county.......... 86
Position and size of Steele county.......... 107
Postle, Mrs. Annie, quarry of.......... 51
Potsdam Sandstone, said to be in Olmsted county.......... 91
Preble, surface features of township.......... 28
Preston, surface character of township.......... 25
  county seat of Fillmore county.......... 13
  why thus located.......... 16
  dioritic boulder near.......... 61
  Loess Loam at 66
  high terrace plain at.......... 67
Prosser, Henry, quarry of.......... 47
Pyrite at Lanesboro.......... 84
  in the Galena, in Olmsted county.......... 91

Quicklime produced in Fillmore county 69

PAGE.
Quincy, surface features of township 78
Quincy Mills, section in Lower Magnesian at 87

Racine, the Cretaceous in 56
Railroad elevations, list of 116
in Olmsted county 81
Railroad Cut at Clear Grit 34
Receptaculites in the Trenton 48, 102
in the Galena 51
Report on the General Museum 10
Reid, Hon. A. M., contributor to the Ward cast fund 125
Rexford, J. M., white sand on land of 57
Rhynchonella in the Trenton 47
Rhodes, G. F., brick maker at Kasson 106
Rice Lake, its location in Dodge county 98
Ripley, surface features of township 99
Rochester, surface features of township 79
the Lower Magnesian in 86
thickness of the St. Peter near 89
Rock Dell, surface features of township 80
derivation of name of 78
quarries in the Galena limestone in 92
Rocks, list of with thickness 30
distribution of in Fillmore county 31
Root river, in Fillmore county 13
general section across 39
Rushford, surface features of township 24
alluvial terrace at 67
lime made at 71
the St. Croix Sandstone at 32

Sand for mortar and concrete in Fillmore county 73
Sands and Tousley, well drillers 66
Salem, surface features of township 79
the Galena Limestone in 92
Sandstone near Red Jacket Mills, submitted for analysis 9
Scarrie, Widow, quarry of 55
Scenery in Olmsted county 85
Section, taken at Mantor's quarry 104
in the drift in Wasioja 105
at Clear Grit 34
near Fountain 40
general, of the Trenton Limestone 42
at Quincy, in Olmsted county 87
on Sec. 8, Oronoco 88

PAGE.
Section, in the Cretaceous.......................... 98
 at quarry in Concord.. 101
 in Sec. 17, Milton... 102
 in the Trenton at Lindensmith's quarry....................... 112
Shakopee terrace, the drift on.....................................60, 61
Shale under the Niagara.. 54
Shakopee Limestone in Fillmore county.............................. 38
 in Dodge county 101
Shepherd, Geo., quarry of.. 47
Shrubs, list of in Olmsted county.................................. 83
Shumaker, J., quarry of.. 50
Silurian area in Mower county...................................... 54
Sink holes, in Fillmore Co... 21
 in the Galena, in Olmsted Co........................... 91
Situation and area, of Fillmore Co................................. 18
 of Olmsted Co 75
Somerset, surface features of township 109
Soil and timber of Fillmore Co..................................... 28
Smith, John, quarry of 54
 James, house of from the Devonian Limestone.................. 55
 Geo. H., iron ore found in well of........................... 64
Spar, crystals of in the Galena.................................... 91
 Satin.. 92
Sprague, O., table of wells, furnished by................. 94
Spring Valley, surface features of township........................ 27
 the Cretaceous in.................................... 56
 white lime... 70
 the Galena at.. 50
 drift prevalent at...................................60, 61
Springs in Olmsted county.. 77
 in Dodge county... 102
St. Croix Sandstone, in Fillmore county............................ 18
St. Lawrence Limestone, green specks in............................ 9
 in Fillmore county.......................... 32
 lithological characters of.................. 33
 for quicklime............................... 71
 as a building stone....... 73
St. Peter Sandstone, in Fillmore county............................ 40
 effect of on Topography................... ... 21
 origin of.................................... 41
 fossils in............... 41
St. Peter Sandstone, area of in Olmsted county..................... 88
 lithological character of................... 89
 economical value of.......................... 90
 in Dodge county.............................. 101

PAGE.

St. Peter Sandstone in Olmsted county 88
State Cabinet, law establishing 10
Steele county, report on 107
    position and size of 107
    area of, by townships 107
    surface of 108
    notes of from Government plats 108
    drainage of 110
    timber of 110
    geology of 111
    the Trenton Limestone in 111
    the Cretaceous in 112
    the drift in 112
    mineral springs in 113
    brick in 113
    artesian well 114
Story, D. S., contributor to the Ward cast fund 124
Straight River, rock near surface of in Steele county 108
Strata, of rocks in Olmsted county 85
Stratigraphy of Olmsted county 85
Strophomena in the Trenton, in Fillmore county 48
    in Olmsted county 91
Subterranean passages in the Trenton 22
"Sugar loaf mound" 89
Subterranean streams in Olmsted county 76
    in Fillmore county 21
Summit, surface features of township 108
Sumner, surface features of township 27
    the Cretaceous in 56
    the drift seen in 60
    quicklime burned in 69
Surface features of Fillmore county 14
    of the Lower Magnesian 87
    of the St. Peter Sandstone 89
Surface, general character of, in Olmsted county 78
    in Dodge county 98
    in Steele county 108

Taylor, Joseph, quarry of 40, 72
Taylor, Mr. ——, brick-maker 105
Temple, C. C., white sand on land of 57, 78
Terraces, alluvial, in Fillmore county 67
Timbered areas increasing in Fillmore county 28
Timber, in Fillmore county 29
    in Olmsted county 82

PAGE.
Timber, in Dodge county 100
in Steele county 110
Topography, relations to geology 115
of Fillmore county 18
illustrated by diagram 20
Trees, list of, in Olmsted county 82
in Fillmore county 29
in Steele county 111
" Trenton Mounds " 16
Trenton Limestone in Fillmore county 42
in Olmsted county 86, 90
in Dodge county 101
for quick-lime 70
effect on topography 21
for building stone 72
Tripoli from Stillwater, submitted for analysis 7
Turf-peat, submitted for analysis 9
Tunnel Mills, drift seen at 60

United States township survey, 1854 23
University of Minnesota, Latitude and Longitude of 7
Upper Minnesota Valley, Fort Benton group in 56
Upper Trenton, in Fillmore county 43

Vegetation in the Drift in Fillmore county 62
Viola, surface features of township 79
Vines, list of, in Olmsted county 84
Vernon, surface features of township 99

Ward, Prof. H. A., mounting of mammals by 124
set of casts purchased of 126
Wasioja, surface features of township 99
Water from Belle Plaine Salt Springs, submitted for analysis 10
Waterfalls, how formed 16
Water-powers in Fillmore county 14
in Olmsted county 64
unimproved, where located 77
in Dodge county 98
in Steele county 110
list of mills run by, in Olmsted county 77
Watershed in Olmsted county 81
Watson's Creek, drift-pebbles and clay at crossing of 61
Weisbeck's Mill, water powers near 14
rock bluffs at 44
Welles, H. T., contributor to the Ward cast fund 124

PAGE.

Wells, common, in Fillmore county........ 78
  in Olmsted county........ 94
Westfield, surface features of township........ 99
Whalen, sandstone at........ 81
  high terrace plain at........ 67
Whitcomb, Hon. O. P., notes from the office of........ 75, 76
  ——, St. Peter near the quarry of........ 89
Whitney, Prof. J. D........ 59
White, Dr. C. A........ 53, 55, 56
Wilson, Hon. E. M., contributor to the Ward cast fund........ 124
Willson and Hook, quarry of........ 104
Williams, R., quarry of, in the Galena........ 92
Winona, alluvial terraces at........ 67
Winslow, Enoch, quarry of........ 48
Wright, Dora, quarry of........ 51
Wolcott Mills, Trenton Limestone quarry at........ 112
Wood taken from wells, in Jordan township........ 64

York, surface features of township........ 26
  the Devonian Limestone seen in........ 56
  the Niagara and Cretaceous in........ 56

Zumbro River, in Olmsted county........ 76
  the Lower Magnesian exposed on........ 86
  its course in Dodge county........ 98

Pres.

J. C. Russell

THE GEOLOGICAL

AND

NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY

OF

MINNESOTA.

THE FIFTH ANNUAL REPORT.

FOR THE YEAR 1876.

OFFICERS OF THE SURVEY:

N. H. WINCHELL, State Geologist............In charge.
S. F. PECKHAM..............................Chemistry.
M. D. RHAME................................Topography.
P. L. HATCH................................Ornithology.
ALLEN WHITMAN.............................Entomology.
CLARENCE HERRICK ....Laboratory Assistant.

Submitted to the President of the University, Dec. 31, 1876.

SAINT PAUL:
PIONEER PRESS COMPANY.
1877.

THE BOARD OF REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY.

HON. H. H. SIBLEY, Saint Paul, President.
HON. T. S. BUCKHAM, Faribault.
HON RICHARD CHUTE, Minneapolis.
HON. PARIS GIBSON, Minneapolis, Secretary and Treasurer.
HON. MORRIS LAMPREY, St. Paul.
HON. WM. R. MARSHALL, St. Paul
HON. A. A. HARWOOD, Austin.

EX-OFFICIO.

HON. J. S. PILLSBURY, Governor of Minnesota, Minneapolis.
HON. D. BURT, Superintendent of Public Instruction, St. Paul.
HON. WM. W. FOLWELL, President of the University, Minneapolis.

ADDRESS.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
MINNEAPOLIS, MINN.,
December 31, 1876.

To the President of the University:

DEAR SIR:—I have the honor to offer, and to transmit through you to the Board of Regents of the State University, the Annual Report required by law on the progress of the Geological and Natural History Survey of the State, being the fifth since the beginning of the survey.

Very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
N. H. WINCHELL.

131500

STATE PUBLICATIONS RELATING TO THE GEOLOGY OF MINNESOTA.

---

1. *Sketch of the Lead Region, by Dr. D. F. Weinland, with a statement of the objects of a geological and natural history survey.* 34 *pp.* 1860. *Reprint from the Wisconsin Reports for* 1858. *Out of print.*
2. *Statistics and History of the Production of Iron, by A. S. Hewitt.* 47 *pp.* 1860. *Reprint of a paper read before the American Geographical and Statistical Society, January* 31, 1856. *Out of print.*
3. *Report of Anderson and Clark, Commissioners on the Geology of the State, January* 25, 1861. 8*vo.* 26 *pp. Out of print.*
4. *Report of Hanchett and Clark, November,* 1864. 8*vo.* 82 *pp. Out of print.*
5. *Report of H. H. Eames, on the Metalliferous Region bordering on Lake Superior,* 1866. 8*vo.* 23 *pages.*
6. *Report of H. H. Eames, on some of the northern and middle counties of Minnesota.* 1866. 8*vo.* 58 *pp. Out of print.*
7. *Report of Col. Charles Whittlesey on the Mineral Regions of Minnesota.* 1866. 8*vo.* 52 *pp. close type, with wood cuts.*
8. *Report of N. C. D. Taylor on the Copper District of Kettle river, incorporating Mr. James Hall's estimate of the copper prospects of that district,* 1866. 2 *pp.* 8*vo. Found only in the Executive Documents.*
9. *Report of a Geological Survey of the vicinity of Belle Plaine, Scott county, Minnesota. A. Winchell. June* 17, 1871. 8*vo.* 16 *pp.*
10. *The First Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota, for the year* 1872. *By N. H. Winchell.* 8*vo.* 112 *pp. with a colored geological map of the State. Published in the Regents' Report for* 1872. *Out of print.*
11. *The Second Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of the State, for the year* 1873. *By N. H. Winchell and S. F. Peckham. Regents' Report*; 148 *pp.* 8*vo.*; *with Illustrations.*
12. *The Third Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota, for the year* 1874. *By N. H. Winchell.* 41 *pp.* 8*vo. with two county maps. Published in the Regents' Report for* 1874.
13. *The Fourth Annual Report on the Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota, for the year* 1875. *By N. H. Winchell, assisted by M. W. Harrington;* 162 *pp.* 8*vo*; *with four county maps and a number of other illustrations. Also published in the Regents' Report for* 1875.

[NOTE.—Of the foregoing, Nos. 1, 2, 4 and 6 are wanted by the Survey.]

REPORT.

I.

SUMMARY STATEMENT.

The field work of the survey was continued during a portion of the season of 1876, in the southeastern portion of the state, where the county of Houston, which borders on the Mississippi river, was examined in detail, and is herewith reported, with the necessary maps and diagrams. Later in the season the county of Hennepin was surveyed in the same manner. It was hoped that by an examination of these two counties, the latter of which embraces the interesting locality of the Falls of St. Anthony, which have receded several miles up the Mississippi from the point at which they existed in earlier geological ages, some new light would be thrown on some of the problems that invest the history of the drift, and which have presented themselves in new phases in the counties of Fillmore and Houston. In the detailed reports on Hennepin and Houston counties these problems are briefly discussed, in the light of such facts as we possess. In the further examination of the region of the Falls of St. Anthony, which embraces parts of the counties of Ramsey, Washington ad Dakota, the remainder of the great gorge excavated by the recession of the falls will come under careful inspection. Until these counties are surveyed the history of this excavation cannot be given. Some progress has, however, been made in this interesting investigation.

In the latter part of August an examination of the fossils of the Trenton was begun, including those of the Galena division. This is our chiefly fossiliforous formation. Favorable opportunities for collecting fossils from the Lower Trenton exist at Minneapolis and at St. Paul. Tolerably full collections of its fossils are found in the possession of the survey, which, added to those of the Academies of Science at St. Paul and Minneapolis, will make it possible to give, finally, a pretty good description of the Trenton fauna, as exemplified in Minnesota. In this examination, which is but just begun, there have been identified, at least provisionally—

10 species of Cephalopoda.
11 species of Gasteropoda.
11 species of Brachiopoda.
8 species of Polyp Radiates.
2 species of Crustacea.
2 species of Protozoa.

These are entirely from points in the southern part of the state. Several species have been met with that cannot be identified by any published descriptions, and a few drawings have been made.

In this connection should be mentioned the interesting fact that some indications have been discovered of an unconformability between the Devonian and Silurian which will necessitate changes in the colored county maps that have been published. This evidence is at present entirely of a palæontological character, and shows the necessity of keeping that branch of the work abreast of the field work. In the western part of Fillmore county the Niagara limestone seems to be wanting, or at least reduced to in significant dimensions, since the Lower Devonian, or what has been regarded hitherto as rock of that age, lies but a few feet above that which contains undoubted Trenton fossils. Further examination of these outcrops is needed before the question can be fully settled.

In respect to the chemical work of the survey the report of Prof. Peckham shows what has been done. It is highly desirable that there be no further obstacles to the vigorous prosecution of the chemical investigations. The laboratory is now completed and well equipped.

In December, 1875, the Board of Regents took action ordering the commencement of thorough botanical observations, and the collection of specimens at the State University. A circular was issued asking the co-operation of the botanists of the state, and prescribing general directions for the work. A number of favorable responses have been received, and several valuable papers on the flora of different localities have been contributed. This portion of the work of the survey seems to have been eagerly taken hold of, and there is every prospect that the botany of the state will be thoroughly and at the same time economically worked up. Ultimately the aid of an expert will be needed to compare and digest the material that may be gathered. It will certainly be vastly cheaper, as well as more satisfactory to the people of the state, to carry on this great work of a state survey *as a unit,* with its different parts in harmony where each can aid the other by the various opportunities that arise, than by scattering it along so that each part is done separately. This is particularly true of the field-work. This economy and co-operation is so palpably essential that it has already been demanded by the intelligent press of the state.*

The Board of Regents have also taken action looking to the examination of the ornithology of the state, in the appointment of Dr. P. L. Hatch as ornithologist. His results, heretofore published only in the Proceedings of the Minnesota Academy of Natural Science, will hereafter be reported to the survey, and ultimately a complete memoir on the Birds of Minnesota will be prepared. It is to be regretted that some such action had not been taken before, since many good specimens, and needed information from different parts of the state might have been secured with but little extra expense, in the prosecution of the field-work of the survey. Mr. Herrick has also collected about a hundred species of birds in the immediate vicinity of Minneapolis, which are stored in the Museum.

The entomology of the state was also begun by the Board of Regents the past year, by the appointment of an entomologist to the survey, and his first report is herewith published. He was instructed to confine himself to an investigation of insects injurious to farm products, especially to the ravages of the Rocky Mountain locust. This investigation was begun the year before by Mr. Whitman, under instructions from Gov. C. K. Davis.

Further correspondence has been had with Col. C. B. Comstock, in charge of the United States survey of the lakes, in reference to the determination of the latitude and longitude of points in Minnesota by the officers of the Lake Survey. At his request certain points were designated, the latitude and longitude of which, if ascertained, would aid the Geological and Natural History Survey of the state. In connection with the survey of Houston and Hennepin counties the usual topographical data are given.

A complete series of meteorological observations should be established at the State University. They are especially appropriate to the Agricultural College. The law ordering the survey requires the tabulation of statistics relating to the weather, and the investigation of the climate of Minnesota. An incomplete series of observations has been kept up by the writer at Minneapolis since the beginning of the survey and reported to the Chief Signal Officer of the Army at Washington. It requires, however, an outlay of about one hundred dollars for instruments to carry on the full series of observations contemplated by the Chief Signal Officer. To make a comparative study of the climate of Minnesota and of the northwest, with a view to the elimination and explanation of any peculiarities that Minnesota may possess, the observations of many observers at widely distant points must be collated. It is hoped that the survey may be able to avail itself of, if not to institute, complete observations made at the University. The Monthly weather Reviews, which are received regularly by the University Library, will be of the greatest service in accomplishing this work.

---

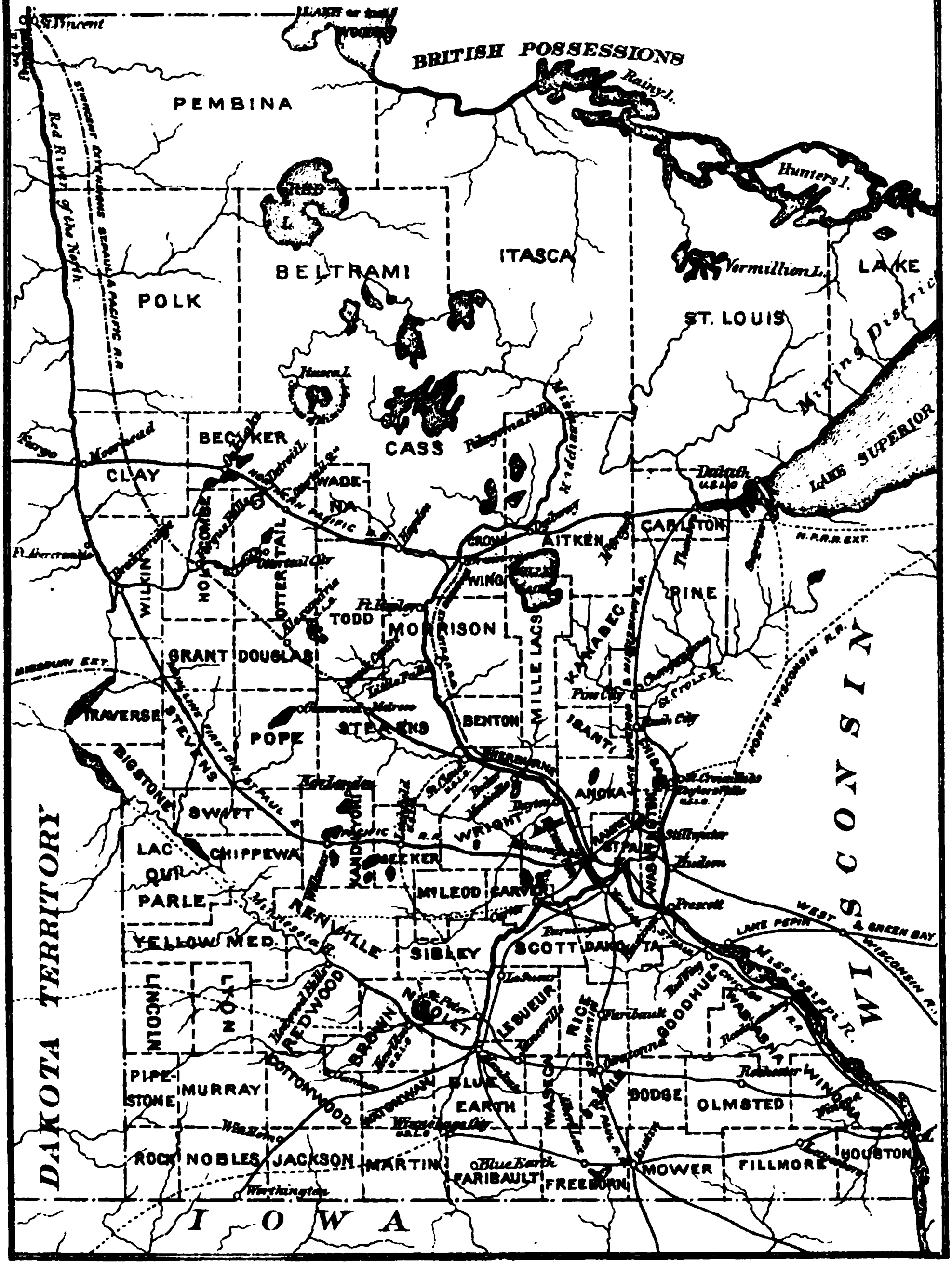
* Compare the First Annual Report on the progress of the survey, Regents' Report, pp 41, 44, and 119: also the Fourth Annual Report, p. 11.

The year has been one of special activity in the University Museum. Besides the display of the casts of fossils purchased of Prof. H. A. Ward, and the mammals obtained in the Custer expedition to the Black Hills, in 1874, the invertebrates purchased of H. T. Woodman in 1872 have been examined and labeled, and placed on exhibition. Considerable collections of plants have been made, including some fungi; about a hundred species of birds have been prepared for mounting, and several hundred specimens illustrating the paleontology of the Trenton formation have been named, and await the construction of cases for exhibition. At the close of the Centennial exhibition at Philadelphia eight boxes of ores and minerals were obtained from the various exhibits, mostly by donation, and have already been safely deposited in the storage room in the basement of the University, where, along with more than forty other similar boxes and cases, they also await the construction of other cases for their exhibition. In addition to these a purchase was made at Hoboken, N. J., of a fine general collection of mineral species, with many duplicates, especially intended to illustrate mineralogy. These consist very largely of crystalline forms. This collection, costing $400, will comprise at least forty boxes in excess of those already mentioned. For full details in respect to the Museum the reader is referred to the report on the Museum.

MAP OF MINNESOTA.

Showing Locations of the Counties.

Total area 83,531 Square miles.



II.

THE GEOLOGY OF HOUSTON COUNTY.

Situation and Area.

This county is the most southeasterly in the state, and contains sixteen government towns, forming very nearly an exact square. Its area is about 576 square miles, or 364,084.79 acres, according to the records of the State Land Office. It contains no lakes, but there are low lands both along Root river, and along the Mississippi, between the high bluffs, which are flooded most of the year. These lands when meandered by the original survey, and the actual water area of these rivers within the county, should be added to the aggregate acreage as above stated. The county seat is Caledonia. Houston, Hokah and Brownsville are the other principal towns, the last being the oldest in the county, having been settled in June, 1848.

Natural Drainage.

The general drainage is toward the Mississippi river, which lies along the east side of the county. Through the northern tier of towns Root river passes to the Mississippi. Thompson's creek joins it from the southwest at Hokah, and the south fork of Root river at Houston. It receives Money creek, Silver creek and Stover creek from the north, while Pine creek passes through the township of La Crescent and joins the Mississippi from the northwest a few miles below the village of La Crescent. Winnebago and Crooked creeks drain the southeastern portion of the county. There being no foreign drift in this county, these streams run in their ancient channels and several hundred feet below the general upland level. The loam which covers the county is generally almost impervious to water, so that these deep drainage courses do not operate to abstract the moisture from the surface soils so disastrously as they would in more sandy soils. It is only along the immediate river bluffs that any injury to the soils from this cause is noticeable. These streams furnish water power at frequent points, even more than have been improved. At some of these points the following flouring mills have been erected:

At Riceford, on Crystal creek, one custom mill, by Oatman and Co., having a power of 18 feet head. This creek issues from the rock bluffs within a few miles of Riceford, nearly all in one volume.

At Riceford Mr. V. T. Beebe also has a custom mill with 12 feet head of water.

There is a custom mill on Bear creek, near the state line, (Sec. 34, Spring Grove,) owned by Mr. Swartzhoff.

At Freeburg, on Crooked creek, is a custom mill owned by Hill and Graff, with 16 feet head of water, and a sawmill owned by Wm. Oxford. Here are also two other mill privileges.

On Winnebago creek (Sec. 22 Winnebago) is a stone mill owned by B. T. Barbour, and on Sec. 15 a custom mill owned by McMillin, Johnson & Clark.

At Sheldon, on Beaver creek, is a mill of 12 feet power, owned by John Blain, and another of the same power owned by Snyder Brothers.

J. & C. B. Howe have a saw mill on Sec. 24, Yucatan.

Nathan Vance has a flouring mill on Sec. 12, Money creek, with 12 feet fall. Fox and Perkins have another on Sec. 30, with 10 feet power, from which shipments are made by railroad.

There is a mill at Houston with 7 feet fall, in the Root river, belonging to Mr. Grorsland.

There is a shipping and custom mill SE. ¼ Sec. 23, Houston, with 20 feet power, owned by G. W. McSpadden.

At Brownsville are two mills, one by Shaller Bros. of 2 run of stone, and 12 feet power, for shipping flour, and the other by J. Hankey, of 5 feet power and one run, for custom.

At Hokah all the mills ship flour. One is owned by C. Fischer, situated on Thompson creek, and has 24 feet of water fall; another by White and Brothers, and a third by E. Thompson. The last two have a fall of 9 feet in Root river. At Hokah the Railroad Machine Shops, and the Plow Factory also run by water power.

There is also a mill on Pine creek, near the county line (Sec. 3 La Crescent,) with 4 run of stone, and 13 feet fall, owned by Graff & Co., for custom and shipping; and another on the same creek, S. W. ¼ Sec 9, by J. D. Cameron, having 9 feet fall and 4 run of stone, for shipping.

The Toledo Woolen Mill, by Fletcher and Webster, S. W. ¼ Sec. 5, La Crescent, on Pine creek, has 7 feet power. This is built of stone quarried near.

Surface Features.

The topography of Houston county is very similar to that of the eastern, and particularly that of the northeastern part of Fillmore county. Taken altogether it is produced by the same causes. The strata cover the same geological horizons, at least the same as the non-drift-covered portions of Fillmore county. It varies from undulating to rough and hilly. The surface of the rock was gorged by numerous canons, each with its tributary gorges, prior to the spreading of the loam. These gorges are not so narrow as in much of the western and central parts of Fillmore county, but are of the same character as those in the Shakopee and St. Croix areas—broader and smoother, allowing the loam, when deposited, to enter their deepest recesses and to spread itself evenly over the whole. While the loam itself becomes thicker and more clayey toward the Mississippi river, it has so effectually and so deeply covered the whole country that generally a rolling or undulating surface has resulted which is almost free from the peculiar sink-holes so common in the Trenton area, but is characterized by deep, wide valleys and long ridges. The bluffs that enclose the valleys are sometimes tillable, or at least turfed over from top to bottom. They are of all hights from the more shallow depression sufficient for ready drainage, to valley lines over five hundred feet deep. The whole of Root river valley, which is in the St. Croix sandstone, is over five hundred feet in depth, with limestone capping the bluffs. Some of its tributary valleys are equally deep and wide, but the smaller tributary valleys become shallow and more rocky as the gorges ascend in the Lower Magnesian—the whole system making a series of deep valleys along the river and of alternating vales and ridges at greater distance from the main valley. The county is nowhere destitute of excellent natural drainage. There are very few of the characteristic sink-holes of the Trenton, that formation having but a small superficies in the county, and that not within the reach of important drainage couses which were capable of producing the pre-glacial gorges. Within the Shakopee area have been seen three or four similar sink-holes, but they differ from the Trenton sink-holes in being more plainly a part of continuous ravines and in being broader in comparison to their depth.

If the valleys excavated by drainage were filled up, the county would be very nearly flat, the highest part being in the southwestern corner, in the area of the Trenton limestone. The great diversity of surface that appears arises entirely from the effect of erosion by streams and atmospheric forces, on the rocks, which consist of alternating sandstones and limestones. This effect would be still greater, or rather would be still more apparent, were it not that the loess loam, which is very thick in this part of the state, tones down, with its overspreading canopy, the roughness which the rocky surface really possesses, leaving it actually one of an undulating or rolling character except along the immediate river bluffs, where the rocks frequently appear in craggy bluffs and cause precipitous or steep hillsides. The valleys excavated by the streams are remarkable and instructive. Not only have the larger streams cut out gorges of enormous depth in the rocky floors on which they run, but every little creek and tributary runs in a gorge which shows the same rock-sculpture. Even the freshet creeks, and the rivulets born after every summer shower, dry entirely the greater part of the year, find their way to the main valleys through rock-bound, canon-like valleys. This makes the county present the usual characters of southern latitudes where the northern drift sheet has not been spread. There is nothing more evident than that these valleys antedate to the great ice age. In other portions of the northwest where the drift does prevail, larger streams than those found in Houston county have generally worn their channels only through the drift sheet. The Mississippi river itself, above the Falls of St. Anthony, has no rocky bluffs. It very rarely even strikes the rock. It is occupied still in dissolving and removing the materials of the drift which covers that portion of the state. It would require a great many interglacial periods, or pre-glacial periods, to excavate it as deeply as the same valley is wrought in the southeastern portion of the state. In the limestone areas the valleys are narrow and more generally rock-bound; they widen out so as to inclose good farm lands on the bottoms in the sandstone areas. This distinction, however, is less evident than in Fillmore county, where the St. Peter sandstone plays a more important part in bringing about the present topography. It is, however, well illustrated in the upper portion of many of the tributaries of Root river. In descending one of these valleys from the upland the first descent is very rocky and very impracticable. This is caused at first by the cut through the Shakopee limestone. The Jordan sandstone that underlies the Shakopee sometimes relieves this ruggedness a little, but its thickness is so small compared to that of the whole Lower Magnesian that it is barely observable in this way. Through the underlying St. Lawrence limestone the descent is also rough and the valley narrow, with little or no arable land in the valley. On reaching the horizon of the top of the St. Croix sandstone the change introduced into the aspect of the valley is very noticeable. It widens, the rock is seen exposed in a nearly continuous escarpment along the tops of the now more distant bluffs, the descent is easy, the stream flows with a winding course, and is perhaps fringed with a small shrubby growth, the lower slopes of the bluffs on either side are turf-covered, and finally a rich alluvial soil, spreading out over the bottoms shows here and there a spot that has been cleared and cultivated. This character then extends to, and follows, the whole course of Root river to its mouth, the valley constantly increasing in width, and showing a terraced condition, where ancient floods or periods of high water have stood, and whence, after vast accumulations of alluvium, have retired, reducing the river at last to its present insignificant dimensions. This is the general character of the valleys tributary to Root river, but this succession of changes can be seen within Houston county only in those tributary valleys on the south side of Root river. Those on the north side enter on the St. Croix sandstone before reaching Houston county. The best agricultural portion of the county is in the center and southwest quarter. The valleys throughout the county are generally wooded, and in the eastern part of the county a great deal of the upland is also wooded. Taken altogether the county may be denominated rolling, broken and hilly, though there are also some fine prairies that are simply undulating. All the farms are well drained naturally.

The following measurements by aneroid will show the depth of some of the valleys below the immediate upland at the points named.

Sec. 17, Caledonia, 3 miles south of Sheldon. Beaver creek, at the great spring, is 230 feet below the tops of the bluffs, which embrace the Shakopee limestone, Jordan sandstone and a part of the St. Lawrence limestone.

At Sheldon the bluffs are 420 feet high.

At Houston the bluffs north of the city are 520 feet above the level of water in Root river in summer.

At Hokah Mt. Tom rises 530 feet above the flood plain of Root river.

On Sec. 11, Union, the ridge between Thompson's creek and the railroad, at the sculptured rock, rises 355 feet above the highway directly south of the ridge.

At Brownsville the hight of the bluff above the flood plain of the Mississippi is 495 feet. Mr. Fred. Gluck, of Brownsville, measured the same by triangulation in the winter season, and obtained 486 feet as the hight above the ice. Railroad surveyors are said to have obtained 483 feet as the hight of the same bluff. The most of this hight is made up of sandstone, there being but 105 feet of limestone in the upper part of the bluff, belonging to the St. Lawrence formation.

Elevations on the Caledonia and Mississippi Railroad.

This road runs from the Mississippi river westward 14½ miles up the valley of Crooked creek. It is graded, but not yet furnished with track. These levels were furnished by Mr. Till, engineer of the road. The datum is the level of the track of the C. D. & M. R. R., just north of Crooked creek, Sec. 35, Town 102 N., Range 1 W.:

Datum	**0.**
Freeburg	**21.92**
Water at Oxford's dam, Freeburg	**42.95**
Crossing of Crooked creek at Sec. 36, 102 N., R. 1 W. (Powlesland's) bottom	**56.32**
Crossing of Crooked creek at Sec. 36, 102 N., R. 1 W. (Powlesland's) grade	**65.32**
Crossing of Crooked creek, SE. ¼ Sec. 26, 102 N., 2 W., below the junction of S. Fork—bottom	**76.74**
Crossing of Crooked creek, SE. ¼, Sec. 26, 102 N., 2 W., below the junction of S. Fork—grade	**86.74**
Surface of water at crossing of Crooked creek, NE. ¼ Sec. 22, Mayville	**152.13**
Bottom of creek at crossing of Crooked creek, NE. ¼ Sec. 22, Mayville	**151.85**
Bottom of creek at second crossing below John Molitor's, Sec. 16, Mayville	**236.70**
Grade at second crossing below John Molitor's, Sec. 16, Mayville	**244.87**
Bottom of creek at first crossing below John Molitor's, Sec. 16, Mayville	**250.77**
Grade at first crossing below John Molitor's, Sec. 16, Mayville	**256.72**
Dorsh's quarry, Sec. 17, Mayville, grade	**338.10**
Natural surface at the Methodist church, Caledonia	**551.18**
Summit, Natural surface, NE. ¼ Sec. 18, Caledonia	**571.57**

Elevations on the Houston, Hesper and Southwestern Railroad. *(Proposed.)*

This line runs from Houston, on the Root river, where it intersects with the Southern Minnesota Railroad, southwestwardly, ascending the valley of Beaver creek, through Sheldon, Caledonia and Spring Grove townships. The following data were furnished by Dr. F. Worth, president of the eonpany. The datum point was at Houston, on the grade of the S, M. R. R. where it crosses the line between sections 33 and 34, seven hundred and eleven feet above the ocean :

	Sections.	Above Houston.	Above the Ocean.
		Feet.	Feet.
Crossing township line between	4 and 9	6	717
Crossing section line between............	8 and 9	7	718
Crossing section line between............	7 and 8	7	718
Crossing section line between............	7 and 18	9	720
Crossing section line between	18 and 19	23	734
Crossing section line between............	19 and 30	29	740
Crossing section line between............	30 and 31	49	760
Sheldon village plat on section 31.........	....	79	790
Crossing section line between............	31 and 32	76	787
Crossing section line between............	32 and 5	82	794
Crossing section line between............	5 and 6	87	799
Crossing section line between............	6 and 7	109	820
Crossing section line between............	7 and 12	118	829
Crossing section line between...........	12 and 13	119	830
Crossing section line between............	13 and 24	167	878
Crossing section line between............	24 and 25	248	862
Crossing section line between............	25 and 26	269	888
Crossing section line between............	26 and 35	331	1,042
Crossing section line between............	35 and 34	384	1,095
Crossing section line between............	34 and 3	395	1,106
Crossing section line between............	3 and 4	422	1,133
Crossing section line between............	4 and 9	428	1,139
Crossing section line between............	9 and 8	457	1,168
Crossing section line between............	8 and 17	494	1,205
Crossing section line between............	17 and 20	500	1,211
On section 17, highest point..............	....	524	1,235
Crossing lines between sections..........	20 and 19	456	1,167
Crossing lines between sections..........	19 and 30	462	1,173
Crossing lines between sections..........	30 and 25	476	1,187
Line between Houston and Fillmore Co...	....	562	1,273
Crossing section line between...........	25 and 26	437	1,148
Crossing section line between............	26 and 35	442	1,153
State line west of center of Sec. 35, Newburg Township.....................	....	465	1,176

Notes on the Plats of the United States Survey in Houston County, on record in the Register's Office at Caledonia. (*The county was surveyed in* 1852–3–4.)

T. 101 *N.*, 3 *W.—Fractional; East part of Jefferson.*

This is embraced wholly within the river bottoms of the Mississippi. It is timbered but low, with some marsh and standing water. Mag. Var. 8° 15' to 8° 50'. Acreage, 3,169.76.

T. 101 *N.*, 4 *W. West part of Jefferson and South part of Crooked Creek.*

The Mississippi bluffs run north and south across the east end of this town, which embraces some marsh and slough land in the eastern tier of sections. These bluffs, which unite with those of Winnebago creek from the west, in the southeastern corner of the town, introduce in that portion a very rough and rocky character of surface. The town is nearly covered with timber. Mag. Var 7° 36' to 8° 45'. Acreage, 22,546.52.

T. 101 *N.*, 5 *W. Winnebago.*

This is crossed by Winnebago creek, which receives several tributaries from the north and from the south. There is a tract of prairie in the southwest corner of the town, and another in the northwest corner. The remainder is either timbered or shrubby with oaks and aspens. The creek valley is deep and rocky. Mag. Var. 8° to 8° 52'. Area, 23,045.05 acres.

T. 101 *N.*, 6 *W. Willmington.*

This town is about equally divided between prairie and timber, which are irregularly intermingled. Waterloo creek, in Secs. 29, 32 and 33, runs in a deep valley, with steep and rocky banks. Mag. Var. 5° 49' to 8° 31'. Area, 23,037.13 acres.

T. 101 *N.*, 7 *W. Spring Grove.*

Along the northwest edge of this town the South Fork of Root river causes a deep valley, which is rough, timbered, and rocky. The rest of the town is variously overspread with mingled prairie and timber or oak bushes, with gently undulating and sometimes rolling surface. Mag. Var. 5° 3' to 9° 5'. Area, 23,045.12 acres.

T. 102 *N.*, 4 *W. Crooked Creek and South part of Brownsville.*

This town is named from the creek which crosses it from west to east, south of the center. This creek, with its branches, causes a rough and rocky surface, with deep gorges over a considerable area. The town has no natural prairie. Mag. Var. 7° 35' to 8° 45'. Area, 20,403.73 acres.

T. 102 *N.*, 5 *W. Mayville and West part of Crooked Creek.*

In the central portion of this town are the sources of Crooked creek, which leaves the town toward the southeast, in Sec. 25. With the exception of small portions of Secs. 31 and 32, this town has no prairie, but the heaviest timber is along the creek and its tributaries. The surface is undulating to rough. Mag. Var. 6° 57' to 8° 30.' Area, 22,976.20 acres.

T. 102 *N.*, 6 *W. Caledonia.*

Beaver creek is the only stream in this town. It causes a rough and bluffy surface in Secs. 19, 18, 7, 6, 5, 8 and 17, flowing northward. A little more than one half is of prairie, the timber being along the creek and in the eastern side of the town. Mag. Var. 6° 13' to 9° 35'. Area, 23,063.95 acres.

T. 102, *R.* 7 *W. Black Hammer.*

The south fork of Root river crosses the western portion of this town in a northerly direction, accompanied by a heavily timbered and rocky tract affecting nearly one-half of the town. There is an irregular strip of prairie which enters the town from the southeast and runs northwest past the center. Mag. Var. 5° 24' to 8° 15'. Area, 23,042.34 acres.

T. 103 *N.*, 4 *W. North part of Brownsville and South part of Hokah.*

This is a border town along the Mississippi, and in the north has some bottom land east of the bluffs. In the southern portion the river approaches near the bluffs. No prairie is shown. The Wild Cat creek joins the Mississippi at Brownsville, Sec. 26, and Thompson creek flows across the northwest corner. These streams, like others in the county, run in deep, rocky valleys, and cause a great diversity of surface some distance on either side from the immediate valley. They have a great many tributary valleys which do not contain streams, but which are equally deep and bluffy. Mag. Var. 7° 35' to 9° 1'. Area, 20,912.18 acres.

T. 103 *N.*, 5 *W.* *Union and South part of Mound Prairie.*

Root river, with its tributaries, the Crystal, Bear, and Thompson creeks, causes a rolling, and even a rough, surface over much of this town, with frequent rock exposure. There is a small area of prairie covering Sec. 4, with adjoining parts of 5, 8, 9 and 3; but the greater part of the town is represented as timbered, or overgrown with small oaks and aspens, and with hazel. Mag. Var. 6° 39' to 8° 51'. Area, 22,951.16 acres.

T. 103 *N.*, 6 *West.* *Sheldon and South part of Houston.*

The South Fork of Root river, with its tributaries from the south, Beaver, Crystal and Badger creeks, covers this town with a network of deep valleys, in many places very rough. In the eastern portion of the town the surface is more uniform and open. Mag. Var. 6° 39' to 8° 54', Area, 22,854.31 acres.

T. 103 *N.*, 7 *W.* *South part of Yucatan.*

The South Fork of Root river crosses the southeastern quarter of this town. The whole town is rough and wooded, except a narrow prairie belt occupying the river bottoms. Mag. Var. 6° 35' to 9° 15'. Area, 23,045.67 acres.

Town 104 *N.*, 4 *W.* *North part of Hokah, and East part of La Crescent.*

This is a Mississippi river town, and between the line of the river bluffs and the channel of the river is a belt of bottom land, much of it marshy, from two to four miles wide. The Root river cuts a deep gorge across the southern part of the town, and Pine creek crosses the northern portion. Mag. Var. 7° 45' to 8° 58'. Area, 20,398.03 acres.

T. 104 *N.*, 5 *W.* *Prairie Mound and West part of La Crescent.*

This town is crossed by Root river, along the southern two tiers of sections. It has a belt of prairie within the rocky bluffs, covering Secs. 33, 34 and 35, and a marsh in Secs. 30 and 31, but the rest is more or less wooded. Pine creek also crosses the northeastern portion of the town. Mag. Var. 7° 45' to 8° 49'. Area, 23,045.07 acres.

T. 104 *N.*, 6 *W.* *Houston and East part of Money Creek.*

This town is broken by Root river and Money creek. It also has Silver creek in the eastern portion. There is a belt of prairie land along the south side of Root river, within the rock bluffs, and in the western portion of the town in Money creek valley, but the most of its area is wooded and broken. Area, 22,984.56 acres.

T. 104 *N.*, 7 *W.* *North part of Yucatan and West part of Money Creek.*

This town has prairie bottom-land along Root river, which crosses it from W. to E. in the southern half, and along Money creek in Secs. 1, 2 and 12. The rest of the town is more or less wooded, with a rolling surface Mag. Var. 7° to 8°. 45'. Area, 23,179.03 acres.

The Soil and Timber of Houston county.

The soil of the county is formed by the loess loam. It is very fertile, and apparently very enduring. It is mainly a clayey deposit, without stones or gravel, but yet in some places becomes arenaceous, the sand grains being very fine. The loess is hardly pervious to water. In the scarcity and costliness of common wells, many farmers resort to the expedient of retaining the surface water, after rains, in open reservoirs produced by throwing a low dam across some of the shallow drainage valleys that intersect their farms, thus forming with the common loam a small pool or lake for the use of their stock. Except on the brows of the bluffs which inclose the valleys this loam is thick enough to make a reliable subsoil as well as surface soil. In some of the valleys it is very thick, but here it is apt to be influenced by the causes that produced the river terraces and to mingle with the ordinary alluvium. On the uplands generally where it may not have been reduced by wash, its average thickness might reach 30 feet, but in some of the valleys material of the same aspect is sometimes encountered to the depth of over one hundred feet.

In the valley of Root river, and also along the Mississippi, the soil of the alluvial terraces, greatly resembling that of the loam in the uplands, is apt to be more sandy, and sometimes becomes very light and very poor. These materials are generally seen to be in obliquely stratified layers, and to embrace, in the Mississippi valley, small gravel stones of northern origin. The immediate flood plain of these rivers presents still another variety of soil. While it is generally sandy, and often very light, it is also a very rich soil, and is apt to be enduring by reason of the Nile-like overflows to which it is subjected, and the decomposition of large quantities of vegetation. This variety of soil sustains some of the heaviest forests to be found in the county.

The county is supplied with plenty of timber for fuel, and with some that is useful for lumber. The following list comprises a nearly, if not quite, complete catalogue of the trees and shrubby plants of the county:

Quercus rubra. *L.* (?) (Red Oak.)
Quercus macrocarpa. *Michx.* (Burr Oak.)

[These two oaks are common in the uplands. As brush and small trees they often form thickets. There are also trees of the black oak, or what are accepted as black oak by the farmers, and it may be that only the black and bur oaks exist in the county. Although considerable time has been spent in the attempt to identify this oak, mentioned in former county reports as *Q. rubra*, with doubt, it is still unsettled. There seem to be two species in some places, but in others the characters are blended in one. There is a plain popular distinction between the red and the black oak, and solitary trees of the latter are often seen of large size standing in the midst of brush, belonging apparently to a former forest growth now destroyed, while the former is very abundant as small trees or underbrush, often presenting some of the popular characteristics of the latter.]

Quercus alba, *L.* (White oak.)
Populus tremuloides, *Michx.* (Aspen.)
Populus grandidentata, *Michx.* (Great-toothed poplar.)
Populus monilifera, *Ait.* (Cottonwood.)

[Of these poplars, the first two are by far the most common, but in proportion to their numbers make fewer large trees than the last. They rarely exceed six or eight inches in diameter, while the cottonwood sometimes becomes two or three feet in diameter, as seen in the Root river valley at Houston. The cottonwood has a rough bark. The bark of the aspen may be distinguished from that of the great-toothed poplar at a distance by the fact that the former becomes white, or mottled with white, as the tree gets the size of three or four inches in diameter, while that of the latter maintains its greenish or dingy-yellow color.]

Populus balsamifera, *L.* (Balm of Gilead.) [Common in cultivation. There are some fine large trees of this kind at Mr. Powlesland's, Sec. 36, Crooked Creek.]

Populus dilatata, *Ait.* (Lombardy poplar.) [Only seen in cultivation.]
Acer rubrum, *L.* (Red maple.)
Acer saccharinum, *Wang.* (Sugar maple.)
Acer saccharinum, *Wang.* Var. nigrum, *Gray.* (Black Sugar-maple.) [Sometimes known as Rock Maple.]

Ulmus Americana, *L.* (*Pl. Clayt.*) *Willd.* (American Elm.)
Ulmus fulva, *Michx.* (Slippery Elm.)

[The first named elm is very common, and acquires a very large size in the bottom lands of the Root river, but the latter is comparatively rare. As with the oaks, the popular ideas of the elm do not agree with the scientific distinctions of Prof. Gray's Manual. Good observers and woodsmen insist invariably that there are three elms found commonly in the central and southern part of the state, viz., *Rock*, *Water* and *Red*. The first is easily understood to be the well known *American* or *White Elm*, the last the common *Slippery Elm*, but the second is not distinguishable by any botanical characters. It is named from the abundant discharge of water or sap, which it furnishes on being wounded or cut, especially at certain seasons of the year. In addition to these, sometimes a so-called *Swamp Elm* is insisted on. Prof. Harrington has reported the *Corky Elm* from Olmsted county, and this may be one of the elms popularly recognized. The demands of the geological work have not yet permitted the careful examination of these distinctions.]

Tilia Americana, *L.* (Basswood.)
Carya amara, *Nutt.* (Bitternut.)
Carya alba, *Nutt.* (Shag-bark hickory.)

[Of these the former furnishes the great bulk of the hoop-poles for flour barrels cut in the southern and central portions of the state, the latter being a much more rare tree. It is only in Houston county that the shag-bark hickory is known to occur generally. It is exceedingly rare in Fillmore county, and does not occur in the Big Woods.]

Juglans nigra, *L.* (Black Walnut.)
Juglans cinerea, *L.* (White Walnut or Butternut.)

[The former is comparatively rare, but the latter is one of the most common trees along valleys.]

Fraxinus Americana, *L.* (White Ash.)
Fraxinus sambucifolia, *Lam.* (Black Ash.)

[The former is often seen as a large tree, but the latter is rare, having been noted only in the timbered bottoms of the Root river at Houston.]

Prunus Americana, *Marsh.* (Wild Plum.)
Prunus Pennsylvanica, *L.* (Wild Red Cherry.)
Prunus Virginiana, *L.* (Choke Cherry.)

Prunus serotina, *Ehr.* (Black Cherry.)
Pyrus coronaria, *L.* (American Crab-apple.)
Negundo aceroides, *Mœnch.* (Box Elder.)
Crataegus coccinea, *L.* (Thorn Apple.)
Crataegus tomentosa, *L.* (Black Thorn.)
Celtis occidentalis, *L.* (Hackberry.)
Betula excelsa, *of American Authors.* (Gray Birch.)
Betula alba. var. populifolia, *Spach.* (?) (White Birch.)

[Of these two birches the latter is quite common, but the former is rare. The outer bark of the latter is snowy white, and the tree rarely becomes larger than three or four inches in diameter, and indeed is usually less than two. It frequents rocky banks and sterile soils, being rarely seen except along a hillside, where its white small trunks make it very noticeable. The former has been seen only in moist, rich lowlands, with large timber surrounding, and is apt to grow, unless injured, to a large tree of a foot or two in diameter. It is probably the same as *B. lutea*, *Michx. f.* of Gray's revised manual. Its twigs and bark are so aromatic as to cause it to be mistaken for the black, or cherry-birch of the Middle and Eastern States, which has not yet been reported as occurring within the State of Minnesota.]

Pinus Strobus, *L.* (White Pine.)

[On Crooked creek; at La Crescent; on Bear creek ; on Winnebago and Money creeks.]

Ostrya Viginica, *Willd.* (Ironwood.)
Salix—Sp. (?) [Various species; one species becomes a large tree, as seen in the bottoms at Houston.]

Gymnocladus Canadensis, *Lam.* (Kentucky Coffee tree.)

[The Coffee tree occasionally is seen, even 18 inches in diameter, and is used for lumber. It was particularly noted about Houston.]

Larix Americana, *Michx.* (Tamarack.)

[Only known on Pine creek.]

Cornus circinata, *L'Her.* (Round-leaved Cornel.)
Cornus sericca, *L.* (Silky Cornel.)
Cornus paniculata, *L'Her.* (Panicled Cornel.)

[Along the ravines.]

Cornus alternifolia, *L.* (Alternate-leaved Cornel.]
Gaultheria procumbens, *L.* (Wintergreen.)

[Seen only at Mound Prairie.]

Alnus incana, *Willd.* (Speckled Alder.)
Diervilla trifida, *Mœnch.* (Bush Honeysuckle.)

[Along the bluffs of the Mississippi.]

Rhus typhina, *L.* (Stag-horn Sumac.)

[Rare; seen at Brownsville.]

Sambucus Canadensis, *L.* [Common Elder.]
Castanea vesca, *L.* (Chestnut.)

[Cultivated; seen on Sec. 29, Union.]

Robinia Pseudacacia, *L.* (Locust.)

[Only cultivated.]

Gleditschia monosperma, *Walt.* (Water Locust.)

[Only in cultivation; seen at Hokah.]

Rosa blanda, *Ait.* (Early Wild Rose)
Rosa Carolina, *L.* (Swamp Rose.)

[This is a bushy rose, eight feet high and less.]

Rhus glabra, *L.* (Smooth Sumac.)
Rhus Toxicodendron, *L.* (Poison Ivy.)
Abies balsamea, *Marshall.* (Balsam Fir.)

[Only in cultivation.]

Rubus strigosus, *Michx.* (Red Raspberry.)
Rubus villosus, *Ait.* (High Blackberry.)
Rubus occidentalis, *L.* (Black-cap Raspberry.)
Rubus ——— (?) (Low-bush Blackberry.)

[More or less trailing.]

Juniperus Sabina, *L.* Var. procumbens, *Pursh.* (Trailing Cedar.)

[Hokah and Sheldon.]

Juniperus Virginiana, *L.* (Red Cedar.)
Apocynum androsæmifolium, *L.* (Dogbane.)
Carpinus Americana, *Michx.* (Water Beech.)
Spiræa opulifolia, *L.* (Nine-bark.)
Zanthoxylum Americanum, *Mill.* (Prickly Ash.)
Amorpha canescens, *Nutt.* (Lead Plant)
Lonicera parviflora, *Lam.* (Small honeysuckle.)
Amelanchier Canadensis, *Torr. & Gray.* (Juneberry.)
Vitis cordifolia, *Michx.* (Grape.)
Ampelopsis quinquefolia, *Michx.* (Virginia Creeper.)
Celastrus scandens, *L.* (Bittersweet.)
Clematis Virginiana, *L.* (Common Virgin's Bower.)

[Common in the valley of Root river, below Hokah.]

Viburnum Lentago, *L.* (Sheepberry.)
Viburnum Opulus, *L.* (High-bush Cranberry.)

Ceanothus Americanus, *L.* (Jersey Tea.)
Aristolochia Sipho, *L'Her.(?)* (Pipe Vine.)
Ribes Cynosbati, *L.* (Gooseberry.)
Ribes floridum, *L.* (Wild Black Currant.)
Ribes rotundifolium, *Michx.* (Gooseberry.)
Corylus Americana, *Walt.* (Hazel.)
Symphoricarpus occidentalis, *R. Br.* (Wolfberry.)
Dirca palustris, *L.* (Leather-wood.)

[This was found along the bottoms of Beaver creek, in Caledonia township, in the neighborhood of the Great Spring. The wood, instead of being "very brittle," as described by Gray, was pliable and spongy, resembling a green cornstalk. This was in the month of July.]

Smilax rotundifolia, *L.* (Common Greenbrier.)

[This was seen growing very luxuriantly in the sandy alluvium of the Root river bottoms, below Hokah, associated with the Virgin's Bower and the Climbing Bittersweet. In the same vicinity were also the wild grape, the Virginia Creeper, and a number of herbaceous vines. The leaves on the different parts of the Greenbrier differ very noticeably. Those on the large annual shoots, which run 10 or 15 feet, are ovate and heart-shaped, large, 3 inches long; those of the fruiting stems or branchlets are rarely heart-shaped, but are ovate, and less than half the size of the former. Both sorts are rough on the edges, and on the prominent ribs beneath, and are barely pointed. The Carrion Flower, *Smilax herbacea, L.*, was doubtfully identified in the ravines on the north side of the valley at Houston.]

It is noticeable that many of the valleys, particularly those running east and west, as Crooked creek valley, have the bluffs along the north side of the creek destitute, or nearly so, of timber, but are heavily timbered along the opposite bluffs, on the south side. This may be due to warm days in winter or early spring, when the sap may have started in the trees on the north bluffs, followed by severely cold weather, before the actual setting in of steady warm weather. Of course the sun's heat would be quickest felt on the bluffs facing south. This process, repeated for a good many years, would injure and at last destroy the timber on the north bluffs, if it were ever possible for trees to have come to maturity there, while timber on the south bluffs would escape these sudden changes, owing to the shaded condition of the bluffs during the warmest portion of the day, and would only experience a steady increase of warmth due to the progress of the season.

The Geological Structure.

The rocks of Houston county are embraced wholly within the Lower Silurian. They are as follows:

The *Trenton limestone,* confined to the southwestern quarter.

The *St. Peter Sandstone,* in an irregular area surrounding the area of the *Trenton* above.

The *Lower Magnesian* formation, comprising the three parts, *Shakopee limestone, Jordan sandstone* and *St. Lawrence limestone,* and underlying the greater portion of the county.

The *St. Croix sandstone,* which is found only in the bluffs of the Mississippi and Root rivers, and of their tributary valleys.

The accompanying map of the county shows the superficial areas to which each of the foregoing formations pertains. Owing to the frequent deep valleys the geographical boundaries of the formations make very crooked and tortuous lines. Although these valleys are more or less filled with the loess loam, the topography still is so marked, pertaining to and even caused by each different formation in the county, that the outlines of the geological structure are very evident to the observer. As in Fillmore county, there is more or less doubt about the position of the boundary between the St. Peter and the Lower Magnesian. The incoherency of the St. Peter causes it to crumble easily, and to leave no evidence of its final dissolution where the exact contact between the formations cannot be examined—and the loam generally securely hides this horizon.

The Trenton Limestone.

The greater portion of this formation, which is found within the county, is of the Lower Trenton, so-called, and produces the same topographical features as in Fillmore county. The reader is referred to the report of progress for 1875, where the geology of that county is given, and the effect of the Lower Trenton on the surface features is discussed and illustrated by diagrams.

This formation is found in Spring Grove and Willmington townships. It runs also in a narrow, but interrupted belt, nearly to Caledonia, where it may be distinctly seen, in its peculiar features, and its flat-topped mounds, or tables, a mile west of that village. There is reason to suppose that it formerly extended much farther east than it does now, covering the most, perhaps the whole, of the county, and being continuous with the horizon of the same formation on the east of the Mississippi river, in Wisconsin.

The usual characters of the Lower Trenton, both lithological and palæontological, were the only ones noticed in Houston county It has been opened for quarries only in the vicinity of Spring

Grove. It generally presents a stained and long-weathered aspect, as if split and dissolved by the action of water. The layers are at first about an inch in thickness, but become thicker, by adhering to each other, on being wrought to some depth, and possess a blue color.

The St. Peter Sandstone.

This lies next below the Trenton. Its area embraces not only the slope from the high table-land of the Trenton area, but also a belt extending in width from the foot of that slope over the more level country surrounding, so that its irregular area is often a mile or two in width. As already remarked, while its upper limit has a very easily recognized location, by reason of the terrace like topography of the Lower Trenton, its lower horizon is often very uncertain on account of the very easy and gradual destruction of its layers, and the prevalence of the loess loam.

The character of this sandstone in Houston county is about the same as described in other counties, and need not be detailed again here. It was noticed, however, that for some reason it is more frequently hardened by iron, or lime and iron in Houston county, into a firm rock, which causes it to sustain a weathered exposure without crumbling rapidly away, than in counties further north or west where the northern drift prevails. This, however, is purely an accidental and surface quality, the interior of the formation being about the same as at other places. The cement which it possesses in Houston county, in its exposed portions, in excess of the same at other points, is no doubt due to the water by which it has been submerged and stained during the deposition of the loess loam.

The thickness of the St. Peter sandstone was very satisfactorily ascertained on the S. W. ¼ Sec. 17, Wilmington. The well of Mr. O. A. Bye is situated near the Trenton bluff, and by uniting the known depth drilled in the sandstone with aneroid measurement of the bluff, the St. Peter was found to be between 75 and 80 feet thick, the Shakopee below having a thickness of 64 feet.

The Shakopee Limestone.

The continuity of this formation from the Minnesota valley to the Mississippi, and its identity with the limestone at Shakopee, where it was first recognized as a distinct member of the Lower Magnesian in Minnesota, was fully established in the survey of

Houston county. It is everywhere distinct as the uppermost portion of the Lower Magnesian, and is everywhere separated from the other great calcareous member of the same formation by a sandstone as distinct and continuous, and as clearly recognizable, as the St. Peter sandstone. There can be no further question of its existence and its great extent. There seems every reason to believe also that it exists across the Mississippi, in the state of Wisconsin, but at this time there is no distinct published notice of its occurrence there. The Lower Magnesian in Wisconsin has been divided by Prof. R. Irving, of the Geological Survey of Wisconsin, into three parts, as exemplified near Madison, (*American Journal of Science and Arts, June,* 1875,) but there is much reason to believe that his proposed subdivisons do not include the Shakopee limestone at all, and that the distinctions in the Lower Magnesian which he mentions are wholly confined to the St. Lawrence limestone of Minnesota. This subject was discussed by the writer in the *Bulletin of the Minnesota Academy of Natural Sciences, for* 1875, when this hypothesis was first published. It is rendered still more plausible, in the absence of further facts in Wisconsin, from the fact that even in Houston county the St. Lawrence exhibits variations of composition and lithology which are comparable to those Prof. Irving describes.

The characters of the Shakopee in Houston county are not noticeably different from those mentioned in the reports of progress for 1873 and 1875. Its bedding is much less regular than that of the St. Lawrence. It is apt, indeed, to be disturbed by cherty, or concretionary masses, which on the weathering away of the bluffs become detached and fall into the bottom of the valley, where they lie long after the non-silicious portions of the rock have dissolved and disappeared. Such cherty lumps are often a foot, or even two or three feet in diameter. They are roughened by cavities opening on the surface, by dissolution of the most calcareous parts, and by the natural openings and pores they acquired in the act of formation. They are the only portions of the formation in which fossils have been found in Houston county. These masses sometimes show surfaces of drusy quartz crystals, also amethyst crystals, and great quantities of pyrites, oxydized and hydrated so as to produce a limonite, the form of the crystal alone remaining to indicate the original mineral. A careful study of these fossils has not yet been made, but there is some evidence, from the handling to which some of them have been subjected in the examination of the Trenton fossils now going on, that the Shakopee limestone is the equivalent of the Chazy of New York, a formation which has not been recognized in the state, though the St. Peter has been regarded by Prof. Hall as its equivalent.

This formation does not appear in the bluffs of the Mississippi river, in Houston county, nor in those of Root river generally; but its line of strike is some miles back in the country away from the immediate bluffs. This is due to the crumbling nature of the Jordan sandstone which underlies it, and which operates, in that respect, to tear down the Shakopee in the same manner, and for the same causes, as the St. Peter on the Trenton. To this fact, and to its general resemblance to the St. Lawrence limestone, may be attributed the non-discovery of this limestone by the United States geologists who have reported on the geology of the state, or by others, whose examinations were largely confined to the main water courses, before the general settlement of the state and the construction of good roads. Its area is embraced, on the colored map of the county, in that assigned to the Lower Magnesian.

This limestone may be seen frequently in the central portion of the county, in the upper reaches of the ravines which radiate in all directions from the vicinity of Caledonia. It is seldom quarried, or used for any purpose, for the St. Lawrence limestone is generally accessible in the immediate neighborhood, and that is much more desirable for building-stone, or for lime-making. In descending the ravine toward the quarries east of Caledonia the Shakopee is the first limestone seen exposed. The quarries are much lower—in the St. Lawrence. It may be seen also in the upper tributary valleys that feed Badger, Beaver, Crystal and Thompson creeks. It causes the first rugged or rocky portion of those valleys. It is exposed in the tops of the bluffs at the great spring, Sec. 17, Caledonia, three miles south of Sheldon. Its thickness at Mr. O. A. Bye's, Sec. 17, Willmington, when drilled through, was found to be 64 feet, which is probably about its average thickness throughout the county.

The Jordan Sandstone.

The lithological features of this sandstone are nearly the same as those of the St Peter, but it has only about one-half the thickness of the St. Peter. Its area of outcrop is quite small, and its exposures are few. As it lies between two hard limestones, which are apt to form perpendicular, walled bluffs, its line of outcrop is known by a belt of non-exposure of rock separating the Shakopee from the St. Lawrence, which is less steep in the ascent, and perhaps turfed over. It often becomes rusty and firm from a cement of iron, when it endures longer exposure, and is seen as detached blocks in the valleys. Some blocks of this kind are visible by the roadside in the ravine that descends to the quarries of Aikin and Molitor, a mile east of Caledonia.

The St. Lawrence Limestone.

This is the most important formation in the county. It not only occupies a greater superficial area of outcrop than any other, but it takes the most prominent part in causing the varied topography of the county. It surmounts the St. Croix sandstone, an easily eroded rock, into which the valleys are deeply and rapidly cut, and maintains a bold and sharp outline along their tops. It is the immediate cause of a great many hills and ridges. It confronts the observer in every nook and on every promontory, along the whole course of the Root river, and down the Mississippi bluffs as far as the state line, and it is especially conspicuous in the little valleys that ascend from the streams, and that often are more rocky than the larger valleys.

The thickness of the St. Lawrence in Houston county is about 200 feet, though other geologists have reported it as 250 feet thick at La Crosse. It is a dolomite, or magnesian limestone. Its layers, while generally regular and useful as a building-stone, are also sometimes very much brecciated, rendering it at once more firm, but also more refractory. It furnishes more stone for building than all the other formations of the county combined. It is of a light, lively color, and endures the weather perfectly, showing not the least change in the oldest buildings in which it has been used

The St. Croix Sandstone.

This name was applied, in the first annual report, provisionally to the light-colored and often friable sandstones which occur along the Mississippi river in Minnesota, and which have by some been regarded as the stratigraphical equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York. This was done because, in the existence of another formation, of different lithology, affirmed also to be the equivalent of the New York Potsdam, it was necessary to have some designation for each of them. It seemed from considerations there given, that the lower of these two sandstones was the probable equivalent of that formation in New York, and in subsequent reports, while no facts have been gathered that confirmed that view, the survey not having been carried on where these rocks are exposed, the provisional name has been continued. It is only in the county of Houston that any opportunity has been afforded for an examination of this formation, since the season of 1872.

It is not intended here to enter upon an examination of the evidences of the parallelism of this sandstone with any eastern formation, nor to cite or compare authorities one way or the other. Considerable has been written on the sandstones of the Lake Superior region as developed in Michigan, Wisconsin and Canada, tending to show the existence of two distinct sandstone formations. Prof. Irving (American Journal, 3rd Series, Vol. VIII, p. 46.) reports *three* different sandstones existing in the northwest involved in this disputed horizon, as exemplified in his study of northwestern Wisconsin, viz.: (1) Copper-bearing, highly tilted sandstones, conglomerates and shales, associated with trap. (2) Horizontal, aluminous, red sandstones, lighter than those associated with the trap, which "*appear to dip* underneath the light colored Lower Silurian sandstones of the Mississippi Valley," and (3) the light-colored sandstones of the Mississippi valley. In this he agrees with Dr. C. Rominger (Vol. I, p. 95, Palaeozoic Rocks, Geological Survey of Michigan,) who makes them—(1) Copper-bearing rocks, (2) Lower Division of the Lake Superior sandstone, and (3) the Upper Division of the Lake Superior sandstone. Brooks and Pumpelly, however, do not make mention of but two series of sandstones in the Lake Superior region, viz.: (1) The copper-bearing series, and (2) the Silurian sandstones. (Michigan Geological Survey. Vol. 1. Part I, pp. 75 and 185; and Part II. p. 1.) Foster and Whitney in 1851 referred all the sandstones in question to the Potsdam of N. Y., regarding them as deposited over an uneven surface, producing local cross-stratification and unconformability. (Report on the Geology of the Lake Superior Land District. Part II, p. 120.) In this they were seconded by Prof. James Hall, and followed by Prof. J. D. Dana in his Geological Manual, First Edition. More lately, in 1862, Prof. Hall parallelized the uppermost of these sandstones with the New York Potsdam, (16th Regents' Report, p. 119,) with the cautionary remark that "it may not yet be regarded as proved that the sandstone from which I have described these fossils is in all respects the equivalent of the Potsdam sandstone of New York, Vermont and Canada. It may represent more, or it may represent less than that formation. The *lower* accessible beds of the Mississippi valley may represent the Potsdam of one hundred and fifty or two hundred feet in thickness in the typical localities in New York, while the middle and upper beds of the west may be of epochs not represented in that part of the series studied in New York." As long as the Potsdam sandstone at the typical localities in New York was accepted as the base of the fossiliferous primordial strata, while at the west there are two recognized sedimentary sandstones, though not yet proved fossiliferous, lying below the sandstones of the Mississippi valley, it seems quite presumptious to affirm the horizontality of the light-colored sandstones with the New York Potsdam, especially when, as admitted by Prof. Hall, "there are no species of fossils in the western sandstones which are positively identical with those of New York." It would be more in keeping with recognizing stratigraphical laws, to allow that formation which in New York begins with the top of the "azoic" to begin there also in Minnesota.

In this state of the question concerning these sandstones it seems justifiable to retain for the present the term St. Croix, inasmuch as there can then be no misunderstanding of the horizon under consideration. It is perfectly legitimate, in the further investigation of this question, for the geologists of states further east to inquire which of the sandstones lying below these beds may be the equivalent of the New York Potsdam, for it seems as if on ascertained stratigraphical evidence, as well as on lithological and palæontological facts that are undisputed, these beds occupy a much higher horizon. They seem rather to be embraced in the great calciferous or Canadian epoch.

Although these sandstone beds occupy the river bluffs along the Mississippi and the Root river throughout the county, they afford but very few opportunities for satisfactory examination. They are in the lowest part of the bluffs and are generally hid by a sloping talus that is usually turfed over. The only point at which a useful section of their composition could be had was at Hokah. The general section at this place, as nearly as it could be made out, is as follows, in descending order:

General Section at Hokah.

	Feet.
St. Lawrence limestone, of the Lower Magnesian, about	200
Slope, unseen	80
Sandstone, line of constant exposure	80
Slope, rock unseen	30
Whitman's quarry, made up as follows:	
1. Broken, shaly, and sandy, crumbling and fragmentary	10
2. Shale bed, greenish, with remains of trilobites	1

3. Tough, persistent layers, like an indurated, arenaceous shale, with green sand, in thin layers	12
4. Crumbling sand, in oblique stratification	3
Rock very similar to No. 3 extends downward, covering the horizon of an old quarry east of Hokah, now abandoned as worthless, embracing a thickness, that is generally a turfed slope, of about	150
Rusty, coarsely arenaceous sandrock with Lingulepis (Lingula)	10
Crumbling, white sandrock, massive	25
Variegated, arenaceous quartzyte, purple and white, hard and persistent, level with the top of the dam	2
Massive, white sandrock	20
Total rock, about	523

The hight of Mt. Tom at Hokah, by aneroid, above the flood plain, was found to be 530 feet.

At an old quarry east of Hokah, and across Thompson's creek, now abandoned because the rock is worthless for all purposes, the general aspect of the layers is much like that at Whitman's quarry, but the sand is less firmly cemented, making a stone not so good. It is a shaly and arenaceous standstone, of coarse and fine grain, marked with fucoids and abundant greensand, and is below the stratigraphical level of Whitman's. In the same bluff, about twenty-five feet higher, is a blind shoulder or terrace which is more likely to contain the layers of Whitman's quarry. This stone as taken from Whitman's quarry, although very shaly, becomes firm and enduring on exposure.

At Houston the bluffs north of the village are 520 feet in hight, and of this the lower 420 feet at least belongs to the St. Croix sandstone. They probably contain the St. Croix 20 feet further up, shown by the toppling over of huge blocks of St. Lawrence limestone, from the crumbling out of friable sandrock along the salient angles of the bluffs. The interval of the sandstone layers is mainly turfed over so as to render an inspection of their contents impossible, except at points near the top and near the bottom. There is a line of nearly constant exposure about 40 feet below the top of the St. Croix, occupying an interval of 30 or 40 feet, which is particularly noticeable along the north side of the river, and was mentioned in the report on Fillmore county. There is another exposure of these beds near the level of the river at the dam at Houston. The former consists of a hard, firm sandrock, and the latter is soft and crumbling, with cross stratification. Above the line of constant exposure, about 25 feet, is a blind terrace which occasionally reveals the rock which causes it.

It is a sandstone, and is included in the foregoing thickness of 420 feet.

At one mile north of Sheldon there is an apparent dip in the outcropping upper edge of the St. Croix, as it strikes across the bluffs. Its direction is perhaps a little west of south, and amounts to two or three degrees. It is entirely local, and the corresponding upward dip in the opposite direction is invisible. The bluffs south and north have their usual hight.[*] No such dip was noticed in any other part of Houston county, but it is very likely this is on the strike of the noticeable dip in these formations which has been mentioned by Dr. Owen and by the geologists of Iowa as occurring in the bluffs of the Mississippi river at McGregor and Lansing, in the State of Iowa.

In Caledonia township, Sec. 2, the following section was taken:

Section covering the junction between the St. Croix and the St. Lawrence.

	Feet.
Slope, covered with large blocks of limestone	200–300
Even layers of limestone quarried	12
Hid. Mainly limestone, like the next	40
Limestone, broken and curling bedding. Cherty, arenaceous or massive with some green sand	25
Lime and sand, lumpy with irregular concretions, mainly massive	15–20
Soft sand, with cemented or quartzitic lenticular lumps	10
Soft, massive sand. (Causes the blind terrace at Houston)	25

The line of constant exposure mentioned as occurring at Houston, near the top of the St. Croix sandstone, lies below this section. This line is more evident in the north than on the south bluffs—due, probably, to the erosive action of the prevailing winds, which are from the southwest, and to the greater scarcity of timber on the north bluffs, as already noted under the head of *Soil and Timber.*

The fossils that have been gathered from this formation consist very largely of trilobite remains. They will be examined as opportunity may be afforded in the future progress of the survey.

On Sec. 11, Union township, the sandstone which has been mentioned as having a nearly constant line of exposure, is sculptured, along the north bluffs, into isolated columns and tables, with some rounded buttresses which present a very conspicuous and highly interesting instance of atmospheric erosion. There can be no doubt that the bluffs themselves are the result of the erosion of the valley by water by a process that began thousands of years before the glacial epoch, but the present condition of most of the curious forms, like that of the "sculptured bluffs," is certainly due to the effect of wind in conjunction with moisture and frost. There are also cavities and sheltered nooks, and deep, crooked passages and sharp niches in which the wind could barely enter, and from which there could not have been any wind exit sufficient to have maintained a current capable of producing the most of this sculpture, which, moreover, are lichen-covered, and bear an aspect of age and roughness that forbids their reference to any present atmospheric forces. These can be explained only by the solvent action of water in agitation, and are comparable to the purgatories that are often seen about the rocky shores of lakes or of the ocean. But when the rock shows a recent, fresh erosion, and is soft and crumbling, the present forms are due to more recent causes, and can only be assigned to wind and frost.

---

[*] Compare *Geology of Iowa, Hall & Whitney*, 1858, *Part II, p.* 51.

The Drift.

The true northern drift is not spread over this county. It contains no drift clay, nor boulders of foreign origin. There is a thin deposit of foreign gravel at Riceford, in the extreme southwestern part of the county, and there is a terrace along the Mississippi river that is made up of gravel and sand of northern origin, but this county wholly escaped the operation of those forces which spread the well-known drift clay and boulders over the most of the state. Whether any former glacial era caused it to be covered with the ice of the northern glaciers cannot be determined, since the materials left by that era, if any there were, may have been decomposed, and may have entered into the stratified clays and the soils of the Mississippi valley further south under the combined influence of time, and the intense activity of the destructive forces of the latest glacial era.

There is to be seen occasionally a local drift, or debris, derived from the rock of the country round about, and this sometimes has a deceitful resemblance to true northern drift, yet it can always be distinguished from it on examination. On the northwest quarter of section 25, Caledonia, along the road, near the brow of the Shakopee limestone, there is a bank of such loose materials. There is a cut of about three feet, which consists mainly of rusty loam, rather sandy, embracing large masses of black quartzite, which also vary to a lighter color but show very little, if any, lime.

Other lumps consist of pyrite crystals, now converted to limonite, and of rusty, hardened sandstone, perhaps from the St. Peter. These last, indeed, comprise perhaps a majority of the stony masses. There are also large quantities of ordinary chert, and an occasional piece of water-worn limestone. The bank shows no stratification, but consists of these materials simply mingled with the loam. The whole appears red and rusty, but discloses not a single piece but can be referred to the Lower Magnesian formation.

As to the cause of this exemption of a part of southwestern Minnesota, and portions of Wisconsin, Iowa and Illinois adjacent, from the forces of the northern drift epoch, there has been but one opinion advanced, so far as the writer is aware. It is that of Prof. J. D. Whitney, who attributes it to the *non-submergence of this region since the deposit of the Silurian rocks and their elevation above the ocean.* If it were demonstrated or generally believed that the prevalence of the drift in other parts of the Northwest, in the same latitude, is due to the submergence of the continent beneath the ocean since the Tertiary age, this assumed cause would be apropos. But on the contrary it is pretty generally agreed by geologists, both in America and Europe, that the drift is due to the former existence of glaciers that covered the surface of the country, and, moving generally southward, not only brought from the northern regions the foreign substances that constitute the drift, but required, for their existence, that the land surface should be raised several hundred feet at least above the ocean during their prevalence.* Again there is every reason to suppose this region *has been submerged* since the age of the Silurian. It is difficult to conceive what could have produced the horizontal lamination of the loess loam, unless it be attributed to the action of standing, or but slightly agitated water. This loam not only exists along the immediate river valley, but is spread widely over the highlands of the whole district. It is true there is no evidence of its having been the product of marine depositions, on the contrary it is evidently of fresh water origin ; but that the country has been deeply submerged and remained so for a long period within recent geological time can hardly be questioned. There is also reason to believe that some portions of it were buried beneath the waters of the Cretaceous ocean.

In the light of the more recent investigations of geologists it is safe to take for granted the following conclusions respecting the drift, so far as they bear on this question.

---

* Those interested in this subject will find it exhaustively treated in James Geikie's *Great Ice Age, and its relation to the antiquity of Man.* Second Edition, 1877.

1st. That the earth suffers such changes of climate that, after the lapse of long periods, the temperate latitudes become frigid, and are covered with continental ice-fields or glaciers, which have a slow movement southward.

2d. That between these periods conditions of more genial climate prevail, when vegetation and animal life return slowly to inhabit the countries from which they had been driven by the rigors of the previous cold.

3d. That the severity of the cold during the successive glacial epochs is not always the same; but that the ice-fields are more extensive during some than during others.

These continental ice-fields, while conforming in general to the laws and conditions of a solid, yet exhibited, as glaciers do now, many of the characteristics of a plastic body, warped and moved by the force of gravity, and hence exemplified many of the principles of running water. The tendency for them was to seek the low lands and to avoid the natural obstructions presented by mountains or by hills.

In examining the topography and the geological structure of the country lying to the north of this so-called driftless tract, it is evident that the great valley of the Lake Superior region, once occupied by glacial ice, would overflow, both first and last, along the lines of the lowest outlet, and that perhaps the higher and less passable parts along its southern barrier-shore would never be entirely surmounted. The continental glacier, in this region, would flow toward the southwest or south, guided by the main topographical features. In north-central Wisconsin is an isolated area of granitic and metamorphic rock, which not only extends to the shore of Lake Superior, but wedges out northeastwardly in the form of a long, high and persistent point or spur, in the southern part of Lake Superior, known as Kewenaw Point, in the State of Michigan. It is plain to see that this point would act on a crowding but somewhat flexible mass of ice as an entering wedge to split it into two main masses, and that the widening of the wedge, in the granitic region of northern Wisconsin, would perpetuate the division so as to cause, if other topography were favorable, a constant flow along the northwest side, and another in a more southerly direction, that would spread over northern Michigan and find its easiest exit through the valleys of lakes Michigan and Huron. According to Prof. R. Irving, and Messrs. Foster & Whitney,* the western end of Lake Superior lies in an Archaean synclinal trough

---

**American Journal of Science, 3d Series, Vol. VIII, p. 54.* Report on the Geology of the Lake Superior Land District.

running southwesterly. This again would divert the flowing ice over the northeastern portions of Minnesota to the expense of northern Wisconsin. Glacial scratches on the rocks at Duluth, at the western extremity of the lake, have a west-southwesterly direction.

Now it is a striking coincidence that this driftless tract lies nearly south and in the lee of this wedge-like area of metamorphic rock, and would be protected from the ice-flow by it. It is hence reasonable to infer that the absence of the drift in this region is due to the existence of this protecting barrier lying to the north of it in Wisconsin, while further to the south the two main branches of the ice-flow again united and spread, before their final retirement, a continuous sheet of drift over central Illinois, and southern Iowa.

It is very evident, from the fact that the remains of an older drift sheet are found under the loam in some of the western parts of this tract, (see report on Fillmore county,) while the latest drift sheet does not spread so far nor so wide, that the last period of cold was far less intense than some former one had been. This last drift sheet is spread over the ancient soil, containing vegetation in a nearly continuous layer, the remains of a forest which flourished between the two glacial periods, along the margin of the last ice-field. This belt, characterized by buried soils and wood, crosses Fillmore and Olmsted counties, and it is probably true that wherever such remains are found, in a flat country like southern Minnesota, lying under glacial drift, they mark the point where glacier ice ceased to act powerfully enough to disrupt the old soils. Such ancient soils may have existed on the top of older glacial drift, or on any other surface. It is probable that it was during the prevalence of the last glacial period, or just as the ice began to recede so as to produce copious waters, that the loess loam of the Mississippi valley was deposited over this region, and that at the same time the waters of the Minnesota were augmented by the drainage of the entire Winnepeg and Red river valleys through its channel, some of them at first reaching the Mississippi through the Cannon and the Vermillion river valleys. At first these waters spread irregularly and widely, fluctuating with the seasons, so as to leave no recognizable beach lines ; but at length when the most of the state had been left by the retreating glacier, they became more uniform in their volume and were confined to the actual river gorge. They seem to have maintained, for a long period, a pretty uniform stage at this point, for when, on the drainage of the Winnepeg basin toward the north, consequent on the final retreat of the ice beyond the mouth of the Nelson river, in British America, the Minnesota was reduced to about its present dimensions, a high terrace was left along the Mississippi, through all this driftless region and also further south. The high water in the Mississippi ascended the gorges of the tributary streams, retarding their flow and causing similar terraces along their lower reaches.

[NOTE.—In the report for 1875 it was stated (page 66), that no drift-clay like that which covers the western part of Fillmore county had been seen overlain by the loess-loam, except that which pertains to the general drift sheet of the northwest, where the loam overlaps the later drift. In passing through Fillmore county in 1876, the remains of this ancient drift sheet were seen at numerous places between Sec. 4, Canton, and Lenora. At one point it is a light-colored, or ashen, gravelly clay which above is very irony or rusty. Over the surface are numerous fragments of chert with some small boulders of granite, and greenstone, and jasper and quartzite pebbles. This is the first satisfactory identification of the *old* gravelly clay within the loam-covered area, or driftless tract. It is covered with several feet of loam. It is seen similarly NE. ¼, Sec. 12, Canton.]

Alluvial Terraces.

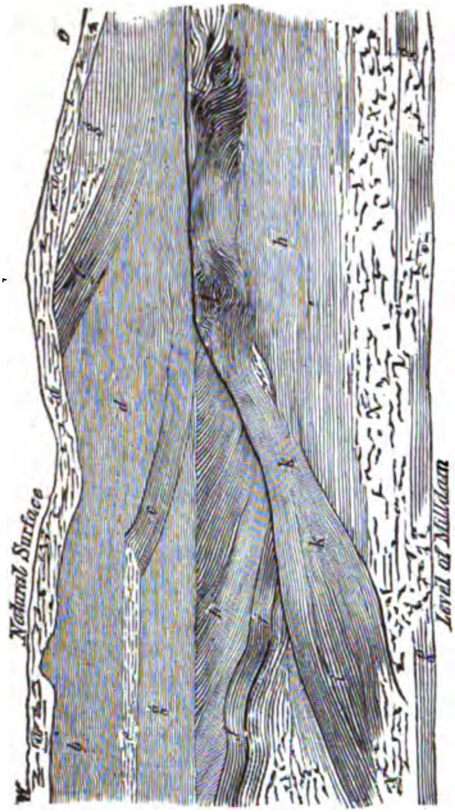
There is a marked alluvial terrace that accompanies the Mississippi and Root rivers, and ascends their lower tributaries, but it does not seem to be true that all the streams are terraced before reaching the level of this terrace. This indicates that the high water which produced that terrace was due to backing up from the Mississippi, and that possibly the country itself in general was not more wet than it is at present; in other words, that the amount of surface drainage that passed down the valleys was no greater than now. Root river was simply wider and deeper, with a sluggish current, due to the greater volume of the Mississippi. The highest point at which the terraced condition of Root river has been observed is Preston, in Fillmore county, but it must certainly extend several miles further up that valley. By aneroid measurements, united with levels of the S. M. R. R., the hight of this terrace at Preston is found to be about 300 feet above the Grand Crossing of the S. M. R. R. near the mouth of Root river, while the same terrace at Hokah, likewise near the mouth of Root river, is only about 100 feet above the flood plain. It is also probable that the loam terrace, as seen at La Crescent, is the same continued to and coalescent with the Mississippi terrace; and there it is 90 feet above the Mississippi flood plain. This would necessitate a fall of about 200 feet in the Root river at its highest stage, in a distance of 50 miles in a right line. If this fall can be explained consistently with the assumed back-water condition of the Root river, at that time, it will further confirm the hypothesis that the Mississippi then drained the Red River and Winnipeg regions, receiving their waters from the Minnesota. It seems further that this explanation is necessary to the maintenance of that hypothesis; for if Root river was maintained at that high level by the demands of its own drainage area, then much more the Mississippi could also have been kept there without the aid of the Winnipeg waters. Root river valley, between the rock-bluffs, has an average width, through Houston county, of about two miles, and that would have been the width of the stream, with a depth of over one hundred feet.

There is, besides this high, loam-terrace, a second terrace level, visible specially at La Crescent, on the Mississippi, which there rises 50 feet above the flood plain of the river and spreads out in a pleasant plateau on which the village has been located. This terrace is made of gravel and pebbles of northern origin, and was identified only along the Mississippi. The largest stones it contains are about 3 in. in longest diameter. It is passed through in wells, and seems to be entirely pervious to water, as all wells on it get water at about the level of the flood plain of the river. This material is used for grading, and road-bed, on the C. D. & M. R. R., and elsewhere. It consists entirely of rounded waterworn materials, the main part being the usual parti-colored quartzite pebbles, granitic, hornblendic, amyglaloidal, and lamellar, as well as uniform and massive. A great many of them have a red color, or some shade varying from red. The coarsest pieces are rare, found only in the upper portions of the *debris* of alluvial fans.

The following more special observations were made on these terraces in Houston county. At Sheldon, six miles from Root river, in the valley of Beaver creek, the terrace on which the Newberry House stands is 30 feet above the water of the creek below the dam. The materials of the terrace at this place are sandy loam horizontally stratified, with more clay near the top, and less evident stratification.

At Houston the only observable terrace, measured about a mile west of the city, is 65 feet above the flood plain. The track of the R. R., is about one foot above the flood plain of the river, which is 18 feet higher than the water below the mill-dam.

At Money creek the terrace rises 30 feet above the flood plain which is 20 feet above low water below the mill-dam. The contents of the terrace are stratified. On Sec. 30 in this town the contents of the Root river terrace, and their arrangement, are shown by the following sketch which was taken on the spot:



Explanation.

- *a.* Mixed and broken stratification, roots, soil, etc., 2-4 feet.
- *b.* Loam and sandy loam, 3-6 feet.
- *c.* Oblique strata of light sand.
- *d.* Loam and light sand.
- *e.* One layer of sand—blown out, 8 inches.
- *f.* Oblique layers of sand.
- *g.* Horizontal strata of fine sand.
- *h.* Strata of fine sand, or clay.
- *i.* Sloping clay layers, damp, rusty.
- *j.* Dry, blowing sand.
- *k.* Wet clay with rusty lumps.
- *l.* Contorted, curling, or massive strata.
- *x.* Hid from view by debris.

The full hight of the bank is about 20 feet where the section is taken. At a point further to the right than is shown in the sketch a couple of bones were found, but in the confused and broken uppermost layer. They were where that layer comes down to the river, and about 3 feet below the surface, or 5 feet above the water of the dam, the surface of the bank sloping about 45 degrees.

At Hokah the village is on a terrace 65 feet above the flood-plain of Root river, and there is a distribution of loam about the bluffs at a higher level, (as well as at many other points along Root river valley) reaching to a hundred feet, or a little more, above the flood-plain. This loam appears in indistinct benches or terrace-levels, or patches of terrace, rising often with a slope, far up the rock-bluffs. It very rarely appears level, as a well-marked terrace. It suggests rather a worn-out old terrace-level, the upper surface of which has suffered erosion by being gullied out and smoothed off toward the river. It is generally cultivated for farms, and has good wheat-fields, consisting of the same materials as the lower terrace. Its actual hight is difficult to ascertain.

SW. ¼ Sec. 22, La Crescent. By the roadside appears a terrace rising about 50 feet, which at the top consists of the fine loam of which the foregoing terrace is composed, showing at least eight feet of such material, while its lower 20 feet are of drift-gravel, which is coarse and obliquely stratified, the coarsest pebbles being one or two inches in diameter. This occurs on the rounded point of the rock-bluff which faces both valleys.

The village of La Crescent stands on a beautiful terrace of drift-gravel, generously laid out, with wide streets and alleys, 50 feet above the flood-plain of the Mississippi. This terrace slopes gradually toward the high rock-bluffs. It is surmounted, along the bluffs, by another terrace, rising 40 feet higher, which consists of loam.

This drift-gravel must be attributed to the agency of the river. It has every feature of a water-worn alluvial deposit. It is not found in Houston county in any of the valleys of other streams, back from the Mississippi. It ante-dates the loess loam, as that is terraced above it, and probably bears the same relation to an earlier glacial epoch as the terraced loam does to the last.

At Brownsville the loam-terrace is 80 feet above the flood-plain of the Mississippi.

At Yucatan the terrace flat is 40 feet above the present flood-plain of the South Fork of Root river. The flood-plain is 6 feet above low water.

At Freeburg the terrace is 20 feet the flood-plain of Crooked creek, which is 5 feet above the water of the creek.

Wells in Houston County.

A few wells situated in the valley of Root river have disclosed vegetable remains at about the level of the flood-plain, and probably the terraces generally cover a layer of vegetable remains that was caused by the decay and burial of pre-glacial plants. This has only been detected, so far as known, at Hokah, and at La Crescent. At the former place the well of Isaac West was filled again because the "muck-bed" rendered the water unfit for use. The same is true of William Wykoff's and W. F. Weber's, and a number of others. Probably the characters of Mr. Pidge's, as given below, are those common to most of them.

B. F. Pidge's Well at Hokah.

It is situated on the lower terrace.

	Feet.
Loam and sand	50 or 55
Vegetation, leaves, stick, muck, &c,	4
Sand, with some course pubbles, "literally filled with snail shells"	4
White sand, yielding water	5

The water of this well tastes rather peculiar, and at first it was not fit for use. Sometimes still it comes up black, like dye, but by use it becomes clearer, and is used for all domestic purposes, without injurious effects. Sugar of lead causes it to become milky white. Acetate of potassa produces no change; sulphate of zinc no change. When it rises in the bucket it is not clear, but somewhat cloudy, as if with clay.

The well of Mr. Thos. Fairbanks, at Mound Prairie, disclosed a bone, now said to be in the possession of Dr. Armstrong, at Hokah. Efforts that have been made to secure facts in referrence to this discovery, and further account of the bone, have been unsuccessful.

Wells in Houston County.

Owner's Name and Location.	Loam, Feet.	In the Rock, Ft.	Total Feet.	Kind of Water.	Remarks.
Timon Gilbertson, Spring Grove	7	40	47	Good.	
Mons Fladager, Spring Grove	8	122	130	Good.	Drilled.
Ingval Miller, Spring Grove	10	30	40	Good.	On lower ground.
Nels Hendrickson, Spring Grove	8	77	85	Good.	
Ole Thompson, section 7, Willmington.	8	65	73	Good.	
J. Dailey, N. E. ¼, section 34, Caledonia	28	72	100	....	No water.
Public Well, Caledonia	25	245	270	Good.	
W. N. West, Caladonia	20	50	70	Good.	
A. Calmus, Caledonia	20	28	43	Good.	
M. Creagan, Caledonia	20	23	48	Good.	
O. A. Bye, S. W. ¼, section 17, Willmington	18	77	95	Good.	Two feet sandrock ; 64 feet limerock ; 11 feet sandrock.
W. H. Harris, Caledonia	18	33	51	Good.	
M. Newberry, Sheldon	36	....	36	Good.	The rock has never been struck at Sheldon.
J. B. Williams, Sheldon	36	....	36	Good.	
Cottrell Hotel, Houston	16	....	16	Good.	Eight feet to water. All alluvium.
W. R. Anderson, La Crescent	57	....	57	Good.	At 54 feet struck leaves, &c.
D. Gurley, La Crescent	49	....	49	Good.	Gravel and sand.
Sawyer House, La Crescent	45	....	45	Good.	Gravel and sand.
James Day, La Crescent	50	....	50	Good.	Gravel and sand.
James Brown, La Crescent	45	....	45	Bad.	Sticks and leaves ; refilled.
J. Knapp, La Crescent	63	....	63	Good.	Gravel and sand.
Wm. Miller, La Crescent	30	....	30	Good.	On lower ground.
Chas. Oldenbaugh, La Crescent	20	....	20	Good.	On low ground, near the rock bluff.
Thomas Minshall, La Crescent	37	11	48	Good.	On low bench.
Jos. Garner, La Crescent	30	....	30	Good.	On low bench.
Nicholas Prive, section 31, Caledonia	12	2	14	Good.	Four feet of water.
B. Smitz, section 32, Caledonia	12	10	22	Good.	Ten feet in sandrock.
N. Charles, section 32, Caledonia	12	....	12	Good.	
G. Anderson, section 4, Willmington	....	....	40	Good.	Drilled.
John Prive, section 33, Caledonia	12	90	102	Good.	
M. Blasen, section 33, Caledonia	12	36	48	Good.	
Ole Hanson, section 4, Willmington	15	55	70	Good,	Drilled.
Peter Carrier, section 32, Yucatan	55	....	55	Good.	In the valley : no rock struck.

Throughout the county are numerous springs, some of which are very large, and gush out along the valleys. They seem to be the outlets of subterranean streams. Those above Riceford furnish the water for the flouring mills at that place. There is also a large one on Sec. 17, Caledonia, three miles south of Sheldon. They seem to frequent the horizon of about 80 feet below the top of the St. Lawrence limestone, and indicate a shaly, or otherwise impervious, layer there in that formation.

Material Resources.

The rocks of the county do not contain any valuable minerals. They are everywhere abundantly exposed, and are quarried at many places for ordinary building-stone and for quicklime.

Building Stone.

At Spring Grove the Lutheran society is building a large church, of brick, the basement being from the Lower Trenton, in layers of four to six inches, taken from quarries near the village. The heavy trimmings are from the St. Lawrence limestone. The quarries are owned by George Timansen and Ole Tostenson.

The Toledo Woolen Mill, of Fletcher & Williams, Sec. 5, La Crescent, is built of the St. Lawrence, quarried near.

At Caledonia the St. Lawrence is extensively used for building, quarried about a mile east of the village. The German Catholic church is the principal building made of it, being also the largest building in the place. The county jail is a fine building of the same, the courses being about ten inches thick, rubble dressed, with trimmings of the same. The business blocks of Nicholas Koob, J. J. Belden, John Krantz, Joseph Vossen, Jacob Bouquet and Nix Erstine are also constructed of the same stone. The quarries are owned by John Molitor, John Dorsh, Anton Molitor, Widow Cunningham and John Aiken.

On Sec. 24, Spring Grove, Mr. K. Gilbertson has a two-story stone residence on his farm, quarried from the Trenton.

At Money Creek, Harvey Chapel has a quarry that furnishes good stone for building, though much of that which is used is taken from the surface near the tops of the bluffs, having been loosened and broken up by the weather.

On the NE. ¼ Sec. 11, Caledonia, is Mrs. M. Brown's stone house, built of the Lower Magnesian.

Mr. J. Kline has a fine farm-house of stone taken from the St.

Lawrence, on Sec. 19, Union. Near Mr. Kline's quarry is an other owned by Henry Snure. There is another on Sec. 29, Union, owned by Michael Wilhelm. L. Svenson's is on Sec. 2, (S. E.) Houston.

The principal quarries at Hokah, now worked, are those of Nath. Whiteman, in the St. Croix sandstone, and Widow Prindle. The stone of Mr. Whiteman's quarry is a harsh, argillaceous sandrock, in layers a few inches thick, which becomes firmer on exposure. The best building stone lies higher up in the bluffs, and was opened in Mt. Tom by the S. M. R. R. for the construction of their shops. It is from the St. Lawrence.

At La Crescent the public school-house was built of stone from Potter & Taylor's quarry, likewise in the St. Lawrence, north of La Crescent, in the edge of Winona county.

Lang's brewery, Sec. 28, Hokah, is a large stone building near the river, built of limestone from near the top of the bluff.

There is also a fine stone farm-house owned by Wm. Splitter, on Sec. 21, La Crescent, in Root river valley. The Nunnery, Sec. 28, La Crescent, was constructed of stone got from the bluffs near, including also that used for quicklime. These are all from the St. Lawrence.

On Winnebago creek (Sec. 22, Winnebago,) Mr. B. T. Barbour has a stone flouring mill.

O. T. West has a limestone quarry at Brownsville, which supplied heavy stone for the railroad and for other uses. Mr. Job Brown's, at the same place, furnished the limestone foundation for the public school-house.

The foregoing are a few of the stone buildings in the county, but there are several others which, though noticed in the progress of the survey, were not carefully located, and cannot be referred to. The St. Lawrence supplies by far the greater portion of the building-stone used in the county. There is not a single known workable quarry in the Shakopee, though exposed as favorably as the St. Lawrence. It is uniformly ignored. It is harder to work, has cherty lumps and siliceous concretions which not only disturb the bedding but render it difficult to cut into desired shapes, and is generally in thinner layers. The color is much the same as that of the St. Lawrence, being buff, or slightly salmon-colored, but the St. Lawrence is, where most used for building, also somewhat open or vesicular in texture. Thus mortar sets firmly upon it, and forms a sutured attachment. When the St. Lawrence stone is first taken out it cuts more easily than after exposure for a few weeks, a fact which seems to be true of nearly all good building stone.

Strength of Minnesota Building-stones.

A series of experiments has been carried on by Gen. Q. A. Gilmore, under the direction of Gen. A. A. Humphreys, Chief of Engineers, U. S. A., during several years, on the strength of varirious building-stones in the United States. The tests that have been made are conducted with great care and precision, and demonstrate the compressive strength, specific gravity and ratio of absorption, of the stones tested. In the report of the Chief of Engineers for 1875 is a general table giving results, and in that table are named the following building stones from Minnesota. Two-inch cubes were crushed under a powerful press.

Kind and Location.	Position in trial.	Strength of Specimen	Strength per Sq. Inch.	Specific Gravity.	Weight of Cubic Feet.	Ratio of Absorption.	Remarks.
		Pounds.	Pounds.		Pounds.		
Granytes.							
Dark Syenytic granyte, Duluth................	On bed.	70,200	16,950	2.780	173.7	1-711	
Dark Syenytic granyte, Duluth................	On bed.	75,200	18,200	2.800	175.	0	
Dark Syenytic granyte, Duluth................	On bed.	66,500	16,025	2.800	175.	0	
Dark Syenytic granyte, Duluth................	On bed.	67,200	16,200	... .	....	Slight.	Specific gravity not reported.
Dark Syenytic granyte, Duluth..........	On edge.	67,950	16,387	....	....	Slight.	Specific gravity not reported.
Light colored, St. Cloud....................	On bed.	63,200	15,300	2.69	168.2	1-289	
Light colored, St. Cloud....................	On edge.	73,200	17,700	2.69	168.2	1-239	
Other Granytes.							
Dark granyte, Quincy, Mass..................	....	70,200	16,950	2.660	166.2	Very slow.	Cracked at 18,700 pounds.
Light granyte, Quincy, Mass.................	....	58,200	13,950	2.695	168.7	Very slow.	Cracked at 17,200 pounds.
Bluish-gray, Keene, N. H....................	On bed.	40,200	9,575	2.656	166.0	1-800	Used in inside of New Capitol, Albany, N. Y.
Limestones.							
Pink limestone, Kasota, Minn................	On bed.	42,000	9,900	2.630	164.4	1-56	The "Shakopee" limestone. Specimen cracked at 26,200 pounds
Pink limestone, Kasota, Minn.........	On edge.	45,900	10,875	2.630	164.4	1-56	Did not crack before crushing.
Light-buff, Frontenac, Minn.......	On bed.	24,200	5,450	2.325	145.3	1-28	The "St. Lawrence Limestone."
Light-buff, Frontenac, Minn.................	On edge.	30,200	6,975	2.325	145.3	1-28	The "St. Lawrence Limestone."
Other Limestones.							
White, Marblehead, Ohio.....................	On bed.	44,200	10,450	2.4	150.	1-30	The "Corniferous."
White, Joliet, Ill.........	On bed.	57,800	13,850	2.54	158.8	1-91	The "Niagara"
Bluish-drab, Lemont Quarry, Cook Co., Ill...	On bed.	47,200	11,200	2.645	165.3	1-89	
Sandstones.							
Purple sandstone, Fond du Lac, Wis*........	On bed.	24,200	5,450	2.220	138.8	1-23	"Potsdam Sandstone."
Purple sandstone, Fond du Lac, Wis...	On bed.	24,100	5,425	2.220	138.8	1-22	"Potsdam Sandstone"
Purple sandstone, Fond du Lac, Wis.........	On edge.	19,640	4,310	2.220	138.8	1-22	"Potsdam Sandstone."
Purple sandstone, Bass I., Wis..............	On bed.	21,000	4,650	2.040	127.5	1-15	"Potsdam Sandstone."
Purple sandstone, Bass I., Wis..............	On bed.	16,200	3,450	2.040	127.5	1-15	"Potsdam Sandstone."
Purple sandstone, Bass I., Wis..............	On edge.	16,350	3,487	2.040	127.5	1-15	"Potsdam Sandstone."

* These are probably from Fond du Lac, Minn.

Sand.

The St. Peter formation is excavated for mortar-sand by Jesse Schofield, Sec. 14, Caledonia, and by John Burns on Sec. 26. This white sand is delivered at Caledonia village for $1.25 per load, or occasionally for $1.50.

The St. Croix furnishes a similar sand near Mr. Kline's, Sec. 16, Union. These formations will supply a similar sand in any part of the county where they are accessible, the layers in the St. Croix, however, are about 200 feet below the top of the formation.

At Mr. Schofield's sand quarry, about a mile west of Caledonia, is a large mass of "lamellar calcite," lying on the slope of the St. Peter, and nearly covered by the loam. In that respect it is like a similar mass seen near St. Charles, in Winona county, in 1872, and mentioned in the report for that year, but it seems more firm than that. This appears like a firm, very compact rock, consisting of almost pure carbonate of lime, but somewhat colored. It is mainly massive, and striated, or laminated, but shows some crystalline grains. It weathers into undulating or wavy, smooth surfaces. There is another much larger mass, weighing many tons on the land of Mr. Willard, a short distance west. These masses can be burnt into a purely white quicklime of great strength.

The age and origin of this calcite involves an interesting problem. When that piece was found in Winona county, in 1872, it was referred hypothetically to the Trenton Green Shales, or to the worn-out Cretaceous that may have covered that country, making it of rock origin, either Lower Silurian or Mesozoic, but there is much reason to believe these calcite masses are not referable to the rock *in situ*, but are of atmospheric origin, being, in short, the remains of immense travertine deposits from limy water running down the St. Peter slope from springs that once existed but are now dry. They lie on the slope of the outcropping edge of the St. Peter, just below the Green Shales which shed all the water that works downward through the Upper Trenton limestone ; but they are also, so far as discovered, in regions where the Upper Trenton does not now exist, the only remaining portion of the Trenton being that which lies below the Green Shales. This is strikingly the case near Caledonia, where the Trenton is reduced to mounds and tables, capping the St. Peter sandstone, very far isolated from the main area of the Trenton. To suppose this calcite is due to springs caused by the Green Shales, a common phenomenon now in Fillmore county, is to require the former existence of the Upper Trenton, with a considerable thickness of strata, over all the region of Caledonia, and extending far enough north and east to furnish drainage surface sufficient to maintain such springs. This is not inconsistent with the history of geological changes, nor with the lapse of time since the Trenton was elevated to the condition of dry land. The present existence of isolated patches of the Lower Trenton, both in Minnesota and Wisconsin, can only be explained on the theory that the whole formation was once more largely spread in horizontal strata over those states, than at present. Then an extension of the Lower Trenton so as to embrace in one sheet of layers these isolated patches, is no more than enough to bring also the Upper Trenton into the region of these calcite masses. The present outlines, shape and position of the areas of the Lower Trenton, demonstrate that they are only the relics of once greater areas which have been eroded and removed slowly, and left as they are because they have been better protected against destructive agents. While Root river has been excavating the gorge in which it runs, 500 feet deep and two miles wide, the Trenton limestone, which at first may have extended as far northeast as to Hokah, has been slowly receding under the operation of denudation and surface drainage. These calcite masses, then, are relics of pre-glacial time, and perhaps of early pre-glacial time, since the last glacial epoch did not operate in Houston county so as to disturb the older surface.*

Brick.

The loam everywhere is suitable for making brick, which are uniformly red. The following establishments were seen:

Stephen Robinson, Money Creek; two miles south of the village

Fischer & Keller, Caledonia; began last year; burnt three kilns, and sold at $8.00 per thousand.

Brick were formerly made at La Crescent.

The Lutheran Society, at Spring Grove, manufacture on the spot a fine red brick from the loam taken out for foundations and basement of their large new church edifice.

Lime.

The Trenton and the St. Lawrence furnish all the quicklime made in Houston county. There are no extensive manufacturers, but the common pot-kiln is found at a number of points, by which enough is made to satisfy the local demands.

---

*See the First Annual Report, p. 47.

Ole Timro, sec. 24, Money Creek	St. Lawrence.
Gilbert Nelson, Spring Grove	Trenton.
Michael Blasen, 1½ mile west of Caledonia	Trenton.
Peter Kreer, ne. ¼ sec. 29, Mayville	St. Lawrence.
John Gross, 1 mile nw. from Brownsville	St. Lawrence.
John Molitor, 1 mile east of Caledonia	St. Lawrence.
George Timansen, Spring Grove	Trenton.
Ole Tostenson, Spring Grove	Trenton.
Wm. E. Potter, LaCrescent	St. Lawrence.
Samuel Pound, sec. 12, Hokah	St. Lawrence.

Lead.

It is a common belief at La Crescent, held by Mr. Knapp, Mr. Day and others, that the lead enterprise at Dresbach, mentioned by Dr. Owen in his final report on the geology of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, was a speculating job, got up for the purpose of creating an excitement and selling land. The reputed discoverers were men from Galena, Ill., and the lead found is believed to have been brought from that place. The excitement soon died out, and all operations ceased the same season they began, and have never been revived. Whether this be true or not the rock, though not the same as that at Galena, is about the same as that in which are the lead mines in Missouri.

Earthworks.

At La Crescent are a great many so-called *Indian Mounds*. Many have been graded away, but a good many still exist. They are on the brow of the drift-terrace, or lower bench, and none are known on the upper, loam-terrace. They are, as usual, in rude rows, and about three feet high, some of them being four feet. When opened they have been found to contain human remains of men of large stature, and it is said that in grading for the railroad a copper skillet and other trinkets were found at the depth of 18 feet below the surface.

III.

PALÆONTOLOGY.

Notes on the fossils of the Trenton limestone in Minnesota.

Since the examination by Prof. James Hall, of the fossils of the Trenton, Black river and Birdseye limestones of New York, and the publication in 1846 of his large *pioneer volume* on the palæontology of the rocks of the United States, which makes the 1st volume of the New York State Palæontology, nothing so thorough as his work has been undertaken on the fossil contents of that geological horizon.

In Dr. Owen's report on the geology of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, which followed Prof. Hall's first volume, in 1851, a few species occurring at the falls of St. Anthony, and on Turkey river in Iowa, are described, and others are mentioned as identified at various other points in the northwest. The names applied are generally those of Prof. James Hall, and the identifications are based on those of the Trenton group of New York State.

In Foster & Whitney's Report on the Lake Superior Land District (1851) a few more species are described and figured by Prof. Hall, derived from the Trenton limestone in Michigan and Wisconsin.

In the First Canadian Decade (1859) by J. W. Salter, other species are described, particularly gasteropods, and there is also a full account of *Receptaculites occidentalis*, a genus which Prof. Hall first announced from the Trenton but failed to fully elucidate, owing to not having favorable specimens.

In the Third Canadian Decade (1858) Mr. Billings has named and figured a number of cystids from the Trenton rocks of Canada.

In the Fourth Decade (1859) the same eminent palæontologist describes the crinoids of the Trenton as found in Canada.

In 1861 was published by the legislature of Wisconsin a small volume containing descriptions of a number of new species of fossils from the Trenton of that state by Prof. Hall, who was then State Geologist of Wisconsin. This contribution to the palæontology of the Lower Silurian was printed only in the legislative documents, and is very rare.

The Reports of the New York State Cabinet, containing the papers of the Curator, Prof. Hall, are many of them given largely to palæontology, and a number of them pertain to the Trenton limestone. These reports are issued annually, and now number 27.

In the Annual Reports of Progress of the Geological Survey of Canada, Mr. Billings also continued to add to our knowledge of the palaeontology of the Trenton, such material as was gathered in Canada. The reports for 1854, 1857 and 1858 contain matter relating to the Trenton. Subsequently to that he published his descriptions of fossils separately, and in 1865 was issued a fine volume on the Palæozoic fossils of Canada which was entirely the work of Mr. Billings, and contains figures of a number of Trenton species.

In 1863 appeared *The Geology of Canada*, which, however, only gives figures and names of species already described.

In 1868 was published the third volume of the publications of the Geological Survey of Illinois, which contains some descriptions of fossils from the Trenton and Galena formations, by Messrs. Meek and Worthen.

Meantime, in Tennessee, Prof. J. M. Safford had closely examined the fauna of the Trenton and Nashville series in that state, and without describing many new species he has given in his volume on the geology of that state much accurate information concerning its palæontology, as correlated to the same horizon in New New York state. This was published in 1869.

In 1874 appeared the first part of Vol. 2 of Palæozoic Fossils of Canada, by Mr. Billings, but it is mainly taken up with the Quebec Group.

By the aid of the foregoing works some progress has been made in the examination of the Trenton fossils of Minnesota. The specimens thus far examined are a part of those gathered by the Geological Survey of the State. The examination is far from complete. Indeed it has but just begun. Those have been named which are identifiable readily, leaving doubtful specimens, as far as the investigation has gone, to some future time when more pains can be taken to make sections and minute examinations. Moreover, there is a good collection of Trenton fossils in the cases of the Minnesota Academy, and another in the Academy at St. Paul, while one of the best collections of Galena fossils that have ever been made is in the possession of Mr. Frank Wilson, at Mantorville, who has kindly loaned them to the Survey.

It is hoped that with the aid of these collections, after a while, a complete account of the Trenton fauna may be made out for the Northwest, and that the study of this formation—so long neglected—may be made more easy and attractive.

The following species have been identified already. This list, though very incomplete, is here given that it may be seen how far the work has gone:

Cephalopoda.

Endoceras angusticameratum. Hall.
Endoceras magniventrum. Hall.
Orthoceras multicameratum. Con.
Endoceras proteiforme. Hall.
Endoceras proteiforme. Hall. Var strangulatum. Hall.
Endoceras distans. Hall.
Lituites undatus. Con.
Ormoceras tenuifilum. Hall.
Conularia Trentonensis. Hall.
Orthoceras bilineatum. Hall.
Orthoceras junceum. Hall.

10 species.

Gasteropoda.

Maclurea magna. Hall.
Murchisonia bellicincta. Hall.
Murchisonia bicincta. Hall.
Murchisonia perangulata. Hall.
Murchisonia angustata. Hall.
Pleurotomaria umbilicata. Hall.
Pleurotomaria ambigua. Hall.
Pleurotomaria lenticularis. Con.
Murchisonia subfusiformis. Hall.
Maclurea Logani. Sal.
Rhaphistoma lapicida. Salter (?)

11 species.

Brachiopoda.

Strophomena alternata. Con.
Strophomena tenuistriata. Sow. (a variety.)

Orthis testudinaria. Dal.
Strophomena fluctuosa. Bill.
Discina Pelopea. Bill.
Rhynchonella capax. Con. (increbescens of Hall.)
Orthis plicatella. H.
Orthis subquadrata. H.(?)
Strophomena nitens. Bill. (?)
Lingula quadrata. Eich.
Orthis occidentalis. H.

Also undetermined species of Orthis Leptaena, Strophomena Chonetes, Lingula, Rhynchonella, and of the *Acephal*, Ambonychia.

11 species.

Polyp Radiates.

Petraia corniculum. H.
Chaetetes Lycoperdon. H.
Chaetetes petropolitanus. Pander.

3 species.

Crustacea.

Illaenus latidorsata. Hall (?)
Isotelus (Asaphus) gigas. Hall.

2 species.

Protozoa.

Receptaculites occidentalis. Sal.
Receptaculites Oweni. Hall.

2 species.

In addition to these there is a number of species that have been examined that have proved to be unidentifiable by the use of references accessible, and some of them may prove to be new to science.

Of the foregoing species the following pertain to the Lower Trenton or to the Green Shales that separate the Lower Trenton from the Upper, and may probably be found in the neighborhood of Minneapolis, or along the bluffs of the river below the Falls of St. Anthony:

Endoceras angusticameratum. Hall.
Endoceras magniventrum. Hall.
Endoceras proteiforme. Hall.
Endoceras distans. Hall.

Chaetetes Lycoperdon. Hall.
Chaetetes petropolitanus. Pander.
Rhaphistoma lapicida. Salter(?)
Petraia corniculum. Hall.
Orthoceras junceum. Hall.
Orthoceras multicameratum. . Con.
Orthoceras bilineatum. Hall. (Record doubtful.)
Isotelas gigas. Hall.
Orthis testudinaria. Dal.
Rhynchonella capax. Con.
Lingula quadrata. Eich.

The specimens from the locality of Minneapolis have not yet been subjected to careful examination. There are known to be other species of brachiopods, graptolites and fucoids, besides gasteropods and corals.

The following have been identified from the Upper Trenton, not including the Galena:

Orthoceras multicameratum. Con.
Lituites undatus. Con.
Endoceras distans. Hall.
Receptaculites occidentalis. Sal.
Endoceras proteiforme. Hall. Var strangulatum. Hall.
Ormoceras tenuifilum. Hall.
Maclurea magna. H.
Maclurea Logani. Salter.
Pleurotomaria Lenticularis. Con.
Chaetetes petropolitanus. Pander.
Murchisonia subfusiformis. H.
Murchisonia bellicincta. H.
Receptaculites Oweni. H.
Rhynchonella capax. Con.

The following are known from the Galena within the limits of this State:

Endoceras magniventrum. Hall.
Endoceras proteiforme. Hall.
Receptaculites Oweni. Hall.
Petraia corniculum. H.
Conularia Trentonensis.
Strophomena alternata. Con.
Murchisonia bicicnta. H.
Isotelus gigas. H.

Murchisonia perangulata. H.
Murchisonia angustata. H.
Murchisonia bellicincta. H.
Pleurotomaria umbilicata. H.
Pleurotomaria ambigua. H.
Strophomena tenuistriata. H. (variety.)
Orthis testudinaria. Dal.
Strophomena fluctuosa. Bill.
Discina Pelopea. Bill.
Orthis plicatella. H.
Orthis subquadrata. H. (?)
Strophomena nitens. Bill. (?)
Orthis occidentalis. H.

IV.

CHEMISTRY.

REPORT OF PROF. S. F. PECKHAM.

Prof. N. H. Winchell:

MY DEAR SIR :—I have the pleasure of reporting the chemical work on the Geological Survey for the past year as consisting of a complete analysis of the so-called, Russell Mineral Spring, in Minneapolis ; four specimens of coal and their ashes the serial numbers of which are 11, 12, 13 and 14 ; No. 15, a sort of clay, and a stone known as the St. Lawrence limestone, of which there were two specimens numbered 30 and 31. I also report the analyses made for Messrs. Kindred and Culver in the fall of 1875.

The process of analysis employed for the coals was the same as that used by myself for the analysis of some 25 specimens belonging to the Geological Survey of California. The specific gravity was first determined by sifting the dust from the finely granulated coal and weighing in a sp. gr. flask, after standing under water at least 12 hours. One gramme was then weighed in a platinum crucible and dried at a temperature of 215°–220° Fahr. until it ceased to lose weight. The loss is water.*

The residue was then heated over a Bunsen's burner for 3.5 minutes, and then over a blast lamp for the same length of time, and weighed. The loss was considered to be volatile combustible matter. The residue was burned to an ash and the ash weighed. The loss from combustion was considered to be non-volatile combustible material, or fixed carbon.

---

*The question has been raised whether or no this loss be water. Very carefully conducted experiments were made during my research upon the California coals, to ascertain if the coal was oxidized by prolonged heating at the temperature above mentioned. The amount of water escaping was absorbed by chloride of calcium and weighed. It exactly corresponded to the loss experienced when the experiment was conducted as described above, and no oxidation products could be detected.

In conformity with your wishes I also made a quantitative analysis of the ashes of each of these coals.

The coals are quite unlike. Nos. 11 and 12 are semi-cannel coals. No. 13 consists of a mass of clay containing carbonaceous matter. No. 14 consists of an earthy mass, chiefly silica containing fragments of mineral charcoal.

No. 11 is homogeneous and brittle, of a dull black color, and cracks in a dry atmosphere. When heated it is non-caking, the pieces retaining their form and size, and in this respect it resembles some of the cretaceous coals of the Pacific coast. The results of analysis are as follows:

Specific gravity	1.441	
Water	13.53	per cent.
Volatile combustible matter	54.11	“
Fixed carbon	29.49	“
Ash	2.87	“
	100.00	“

The ash contained—

Insoluble silicic acid, etc	3.698	per cent.
Soluble silicic acid	14.159	“
Sulphuric acid	23.363	“
Ferric oxide and alumina	23.419	“
Lime	7.592	“
Magnesia	16.055	“
Carbonic acid, chlorine, alkalies, etc	11.714	“
	100.000	“

The total amount of combustible matter in this coal is 83.60 per cent.

No. 12 in some respects resembled No. 11. It is a semi-cannel in appearance, very friable in dry air, and non-caking. The results of analysis are as follows:

Specific gravity	1.425	
Water	12.70	per cent.
Volatile combustible matter	38.32	“
Fixed carbon	45.61	“
Ash	3.37	“
	100.00	“

The ash contained—

Insoluble silicic acid, etc	8 338	per cent.
Soluble silicic acid	22.963	“
Sulphuric acid	19.674	“
Ferric oxide and alumina	20.006	“
Lime	16.353	“
Magnesia	8.946	“
Carbonic acid, chlorine, alkalies, etc	8.720	“
	100.000	“

The total amount of combustible matter in this coal is 83.93 per cent.

No 13 is a specimen of dark colored clay containing an unusual amount of organic combustible matter, not enough, however, to give it any value as fuel. It burns to a very light-colored ash consisting largely of alumina, and would therefore in all probabilty make very good brick if sufficient sand were mixed with it. The results of analysis were as follows:

Specific gravity	1.968	
Water Volatile combustible matter Fixed carbon	29.55	per cent.
Ash, consisting of clay	70.45	“
	100.00	“

The ash contained—

Insoluble portion, consisting of insoluble alumina and silicic acid	92.751	per cent.
Soluble silicic acid	.490	“
Sulphuric acid	.282	“
Ferric oxide and alumina	2.894	“
Lime	1.076	“
Magnesia	.848	“
Undetermined matters	1.159	“
	100.000	

No. 14 consisted of a soft, siliceous rock, containing small fragments, grains and specks of mineral charcoal. The results of analysis are as follows:

Specific gravity	2.141	
Water and combustible matter	26.54	per cent.
Ash	73.46	"
	100.00	"

The ash contained—

Insoluble matter, chiefly silicic acid	96.549	per cent.
Soluble silicic acid	0.836	"
Sulphuric acid	0.178	"
Ferric oxide and alumina	0.257	"
Lime	1.023	"
Magnesia	0.462	"
Undetermined matters	0.695	"
	100.000	

No. 15 is a dull-green, amorphous mineral, unctuous and soapy to the touch. Fracture uneven, coarsely granular. Hardness 1.5. Easily cut with a knife, giving a smooth surface. Specific gravity 2.562. Lustre dull, waxy, with very minute pearly scales. Color mottled, dull-green to grayish-green, opaque, scales translucent. When wetted it absorbs water and softens, but does not become plastic.

In closed tube it gives water. B.B. infusible. Gives blue color with cobalt, which is indistinct from excess of iron. Is decomposed by hydrochloric acid, leaving a white insoluble residue containing only a trace of iron. The oxidation of the iron varies according to the extent of the exposure. The following are the mean results of three closely concordant analyses:

$Si\,O_2$	37.88	per cent.
$Fe_2\,O_3$	15.78	"
$Al_2\,O_3$	26.96	"
$Mg\,O$	1.74	"
$K_2\,O$ $Na_2\,O$	0.95	"
$H_2\,O$	15.88	"
	99.16	"

A trace of lime was not determined.

These results show the mineral to be allied to Fahlunite, var. Huronite of T. S. Hunt. See Dana's Mineralogy, Ed. 1870, p. 485.

It is doubtless one of the numerous decomposition products of a ferruginous Feldspar.

Nos. 30 and 31 are pieces of the St. Lawrence limestone. This stone consists of a hard, siliceous, magnesian limestone containing sufficient iron to give it an ocherous shade of color with yellowish streaks. It also contains angular grains of quartz and small grains of a green mineral quite uniformly distributed through the rock. These grains are of all sizes from that of a large pin's head to those of scarcely preceptible dimensions. They are irregularly spherical in form, sometimes slightly flattened, or elongated. Cold commercial hydrochloric acid dissolves all of the constituents of the rock except the grains of quartz and the green grains. By sifting and careful sorting, the largest of the green grains may be obtained quite pure. The specific gravity of these grains is 3.634—Hardness about 2.0. B. B. infusible becoming brown from oxidation of iron. In the closed tube gives water becoming more or less oxidized. The following are the mean results of three analyses :

$Si\,O_2$	48.20	per cent.
$Fe\,O$	27.09	"
$Al_2\,O_3$	6.94	"
$K_2\,O$	7.54	"
$Na_2\,O$	1.02	"
$H_2\,O$	8.72	"

These characteristics and results give a variety of Glauconite not decomposed by hydrochloric acid. See Dana's Mineralogy, Ed. 1870, p. 462.

Russell Mineral Spring Water. This water flows from a spring in the cellar of the house at present occupied by Perkins Russell, Esq., on the corner of Fifth street and Fifteenth avenue S. E., in this city. The flow of the spring is very uniform throughout the year and the volume is copious, bubbling up in the center of a curbed area about four feet in diameter. On exposure to the atmosphere the water deposits sesqui-oxide of iron. No gas escapes from super-saturation. The water is very clear and sparkling, with a slight green color and the taste of a dilute solution of hydrosulphuric acid gas.

Analysis showed that one U. S. wine gallon of 231 cubic inches contains of,

		Grains.
Potasium chloride,	KCl	0.170161
Sodium chloride,	$NaCl$	1.226701
Calcium chloride,	$CaCl_2$	0.393765
Calcium carbonate	$CaCO_3$	10.060996
Calcium sulphate,	$CaSO_4$	0.867690
Calcium Phosphate,	$Ca_3(PO_4)_2$	0.171380
Magnesium carbonate,	$MgCO_3$	4.371058
Iron proto-carbonate,	$FeCO_3$	0.169227
Manganese proto-carbonate,	$MnCO_3$	0.032561
Silicic oxide,	SiO_2	1.393182
Organic matter,		0.208340
Sodium biborate,		A trace.
Potassium nitrate,		A trace.
Ammonium chloride,		A trace.
Calcium fluoride,		A trace.
Barium carbonate,		A trace.
Barium sulphate,		A trace.
Total solid matter,		19.065061
Specific gravity at 60° Fahr.		1.000638
Temperature,		45.5° Fahr.

At that temperature one gallon contains of

Carbonic acid gas,	CO_2	41.037432 C. inches.
Of which is combined to form bicarbonates,		25.651171 C. inches.
Leaving in solution,		15.386261 C. inches.

The water also contains an amount of hydrogen sulphide (H_2S), varying in amount at different times from a trace to a few cubic inches per gallon.

These results give a water of somewhat peculiar character, yet not sufficiently remarkable in any respect to lead one to expect unusual results to follow its use. The amount of solid matter is small and consequently all of the ingredients present are found in small proportion; yet we find, on comparing these results with the analysis of other waters, that the amount of calcium phosphate present is relatively large. The reputation which the water has attained as a remedial agent, may be, in part, due to the presence of this salt, or it may be due to the peculiar combination presented by the simultaneous presence of phosphate of lime, proto-carbonate of iron and sulphide of hydrogen.

It may be said, however, that the causes producing certain physiological effects are very obscure, and when these effects are observed to follow the use of complex mixtures dissolved in large quantities of water, but little satisfaction can be gained from theoretical speculations that attribute them to the presence of one or the other ingredient of the mixture. But little more can be said than that the water contains small quantities of substances that give, when found in large proportions, the specific characters to seltzer, chalybeate, and white-sulphur springs, and that its use in many instances has been attended with beneficial results.

In accordance with your request, that I should furnish you the results of the analyses that were made in the fall of 1875 for Messrs. Kindred and Culver, I submit the following:

I. Three specimens supposed to contain silver were sent to Dr. P. B. Rose to be assayed. The first two were from J. B. Culver, Esq., of Duluth, and were reported as not containing silver. The third specimen was from C. F. Kindred, Esq., of Brainerd. It was reported as containing "52.32 oz. of silver to the ton of ore, which at $1.30 per oz. = $68.01 per ton."

II. A sample of iron ore, supposed to contain tin, from the neighborhood of Duluth, was sent to Prof. E. W. Morley, of Hudson, Ohio, a gentleman of large experience on iron assays. He reported two assays as yielding iron, 16.19 per cent. and 16.17 per cent. "Tin not present in any appreciable quantity. The ore appeared to contain quite a notable quantity of Titanium. Titanium is now supposed to be injurious. * * The amount of iron in the ore is so small that iron produced from it could hardly compete with richer ores, even if flux and coal were both near at hand. One would not like to say the ore is valueless without knowing the relative amount of silica and calcium in the ore; but the probability that they are in such proportions as to render the addition of a flux needless, is very slight."

Another sample of iron ore from near Duluth, was sent Prof. Morley with instructions to determine the quantity of any thing he might find in it of commercial value. After giving the details of the process of analysis, he says: "You will see that everything of any commercial value is pretty thoroughly excluded. It is an iron—magnesium—sodium silicate; with not enough iron to make it of value as an iron ore."

The first mentioned iron ore resembles an iron ore found in the northern part of Rhode Island, where it occurs in a protruded mass, in some respects resembling porphyry.

Respectfully submitted,

S. F. PECKHAM,
State Chemist.

MINNEAPOLIS, Jan. 9, 1877.

V.

BOTANY.

The survey has received a hearty response to the following circular, which was issued in conformity with the instructions of the Regents, in the spring of 1876:

THE GEOLOGICAL AND NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY OF MINNESOTA.

(BOTANY.)

To the Botanists of the State:

At the annual meeting of the Board of Regents, held in St. Paul in December, 1875, action was taken ordering the commencement of a thorough and systematic examination of the flora of the state. This was done in conformity to the law ordering a geological and natural history survey of the state, and placing it in charge of the Regents of the University. One clause of that law reads as follows:

"SEC 8. The natural history survey shall include, first, an examination of the vegetable productions of the state, embracing all trees, shrubs, herbs and grasses native or naturalized in the state; second, a complete and scientific account of the animal kingdom as properly represented in the state, including all mammalia, fishes, reptiles, birds and insects."

In the prosecution of this examination it is expected that the Regents will have the assistance of the botanists of the state, and it is for their information that the following suggestions are made concerning the collection and preservation of information, and especially of botanical specimens.

1st. Make as full notes as possible on the flora of your own locality, not only naming species, but mentioning peculiarities and variations of structure, habitat, color, and relative abundance. Recollect that there is no published text book that professes to give an account of the flora of the country west of the Mississippi in this latitude, and that you are very largely an independent observer. Therefore repeated verifications of an observed variation or peculiarity, or of a species not named in the familiar text-books, should be made *before reporting such observation as a fact.*

2d. Collect and preserve as many specimens as possible. They will exemplify the local flora of your region, and will serve as duplicates for exchange with other portions of the state and with foreign botanists. The most valuable portion of your contribution to the survey will be, after all, the collections which you may make and forward for careful identification.

3d. It is the design of the Regents to collect together at the University, a complete representation of the plants of the state as ordered by the law, and to have them so arranged and exhibited that they can be seen for comparison by any of the botanists of the state that may wish to examine them.

4th. For aid in the study of the flora of the state, the following works will be useful:

Gray's *Manual of Botany.*

Torrey & Gray's *Flora of North America*, 2 vols., to *Lobeliaceæ.*

De Candolle's *Prodromus*, 18 vols., down to *Endogenae.*

U. S. Geological Exploration of the Fortieth parallel. Vol. V, Botany. (Watson.)

Pacific R. R. Reports.

Transactions of the St. Louis Academy.

Proceedings of the American Academy, Philadelphia.

Catalogue of the Plants of Minnesota, by I. A. Lapham, published in the Annual Report of the State Horticultural Society for 1875. Furnished by the Secretary of the Society.

Hayden's *Nebraska Plants.*

Hooker's Fl. Bot. Am., 2 vols.

Flora of Colorado, I vol., Porter & Coulter.

Nuttall's Genera, 2 vols.

Bentham's Genera, 4 parts.

5th. It is evident that there is no botanist, nor even any public library in the state that possesses the books necessary for the thorough study and satisfactory determination of the species of our flora. Within certain limits our flora can be studied, but the burden of our first efforts must be the collection of specimens. Their exhaustive study can only be done by experts, with the fullest facilities for comparison.

6th. The present design of the survey is to act as a means of communication between botanists of the state, to enable them to compare specimens, and as a depository for duplicates. To this end exchanges will be made with such as desire to compare species, and any aid or information will be rendered that it is possible to give. Lists of the local flora in different parts of the state should be made out as thoroughly as possible, to judge of the distribution of species. The areas that are covered with timber in the various counties, or townships, and the kinds of trees, should be stated. It is highly desirable that a local botanist be assigned to the working up of each county. For this purpose, the survey should be furnished with the

names of such botanists as are known to be interested in our state flora. Annual reports made by such local botanists would indicate the progress of the work.

N. H. WINCHELL.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
May 1st, 1876.

The survey has received several hundred specimens representing the flora of the state, and others have been gathered by Mr. Leonard and Mr. Herrick, assistants on the survey. Nothing systematic has been attempted in the way of identifications, but through the kindness of others, chiefly Mr. O. E. Garrison, of St. Cloud, and Dr. A. E. Johnson, of Minneapolis, valuable assistance has been rendered in determining our local flora.

FUNGI.

BY DR. A. E. JOHNSON.

Prof. N. H. Winchell:—I believe no attempt prior to this has been made to collect and list the Mycologic Flora of Minnesota. As a small contribution to the Natural History of Minnesota, I present the following list of plants, in the Mycologic Flora of our state, for such use as you may be pleased to make of it.

The list has been collected mainly from Hennepin county; some from Anoka, Ramsey and Wright counties.

I have placed the Gen. or Sub-Gen. before each species; as for example, Sub-Gen. 1. *Amanita*. Hence, in reading *Agaricus vaginatus*, the word *Amanita* should be supplied thus: *Agaricus* (Amanita) vaginatus. *Bull.* And so with all the species under each Gen. or Sub-Gen. Following the specific name of the species are initials or letters used by botanists to designate the name of the author of the species, and immediately following is the common name of the plant if it has received one; then follow such words as, wood, woods, ground, sticks, stumps, epiphytal, terrestrial, etc., indicating the habitat, and lastly the month or months in which the plant is found in our climate. If there is but one month named, the plant has only been observed in that month, but if two months are named, as June, Nov. the plant has been observed in both months and most always during the intervening months:

DIVISION 1. Sporifera.

FAMILY 1. Hymenomycetes.

ORDER 1. Agaricini.

SERIES 1. Leucospori. Spores white.

SUB-GEN. Amanita. *Pers.*

GEN. Agaricus. *L.*

1. Agaricus vaginatus. *Bull.* Slick Amanita. Woods. August.
2. A. Ceciliae. *B. & Br.* Grey, ringless Amanita. Woods. Aug., Sept.
3. A. adnatus. *Smith.* Adnate-gilled Amanita. Woody places. Aug.
4. A. vernus. *Bull.* Spring Amanita. Woods, open places. June to Aug
5. A. phalloides. *Fr.* Stinking Amanita. Woods. August, Nov.
6. A. mappa. *Batsch.* Delicate Amanita. Under trees. Poisonous.
7. A. muscarius. *L.* Fly Amanita. Thin woods. Aug. & Sept. Poisonous.
8. A. excelsus. *Fr.* Tall Amanita. Woods. Aug. and Sept.
9. A. pantherinus. *D. C.* Spotted Amanita. Woods and open ground.
10. A. asper. *Fr.* Rough Amanita. Woods. June to Sept.

SUB-GEN. Lepiota. *Fr.*

11. A. procerus. *Scop.* Parasol mushroom. Woods. Aug. to Sept.
12. A. excoriatus. *Schæff.* Flaky Lepiota. Woods. May to Sept.
13. A. gracilentus. *Krombh.* Slender Lep. Ground. Sept. Edible.
14. A. acutesquamosus. *Wm.* Squarrose Lepiota. Ground. July.
15. A. clypeolarius. *Bull.* Fragrant Lepiota. Woods. Ju.
16. A. Americanus. *Peck.* Prairies. Aug. to Sept.
17. A. cristatus. *Fr.* Stinking Lepiota. Woods, fields. Aug.
18. A. naucinus. *Fr.* Large spored Lepiota. Woods. Aug. to Sept.
19. A. granulosus. *Batsch.* Granular Lepiota. Forests. July.
20. A. polystictus. *Berk.* Little Brown Lepiota. Ground. July.

SUB-GEN. Armillaria. *Fr.*

21. A. melleus. *Vahl.* Honey-coloured Armillaria. W. Aug to Sept.

SUB-GEN. Tricholoma. *Fr.*

22. A. vaccinus. *Pers.* Scaly Tricholoma. Ground, in woods. Sept.
23. A. crassifolius. *Berk.* Thick-gilled Tricholoma. Larch swamps.
24. A. varigatus. *Scop.* Variegated Tricholoma. Ground. June, July.
25. A. sulfureus. *Bull.* Sulphury Tricholoma. Woods. July, Aug
26. A. gambosus. *Fr.* St. George's Mushroom. Grassy ground. June.
27. A. melaleucus. *P.* Changeable Tricholoma. Cleared ground. Sept.

SUB-GEN. Clitocybe. *Fr.*

28. A. nebularis. *Bätsch.* Clouded Clitocybe. On ground in woods. Sept.
29. A. Adirondackensis. *Peck.* Smooth Clitocybe. Woods. Aug., Sept.
30. A. candicans. *Fr.* Whitish Clitocybe. Woods. Sept.
31. A. phyllophilus. *Fr.* Leaf-loving Clitocybe. Woods. Sept.
32. A. dealbatus. *P.* Ivory Clitocybe. Woods. July.
33. A. giganteus. *Fr.* Giant Clitocybe. Woods. Sept.
34. A. cyathiformis. *Fr.* Cup-shaped Clitocybe. Woods. Aug., Sept.
35. A. laccatus. *Scop.* Waxy Clitocybe. Woods. June-Oct.
36. A. cerussatus. *Fr.* White lead clitocybe. Larch. May.
37. A. radio-zonaria. *n. sp.* Radiated Clitocybe. Ground, wood. June.

A full description in Bulletin of the Minnesota Academy of Natural Sciences for 1876.

SUB-GEN. Pleurotus. *Fr.*

38. A. ostreatus. *Jacq.* Oyster Pleurotus. Trunks in woods. July.
39. A. seratinus. *Schrad.* Yellowish Pleurotus. Larch. May.
40. A. mastrucatus. *Fr.* Imbricated Pleurotus. On wood. June.
41. A. atrocœruleus. *Fr.* Blue-black Pleurotus. On wood. July.
42. A. sulfuroides. *Peck.* Pine logs, &c. Sept.
43. A. serotinoides. *Peck.* Trunks in woods. Nov.

SUB-GEN. Collybia. *Fr.*

44. A. radicatus. *Relh.* Rooting Collybia. Ground, stumps. July.
45. A. velutipes. *Curt.* Velvet-stemmed Collybia. Stumps. May.
46. A. confluens. *P.* Confluent Collybia. Woods. July.
47. A. cirrhatus. *Schum.* Cirrhate Collybia. June, September.
48. A. tuberosus. *Bull.* Tuberous Collybia. Ground, &c. Aug., Oct.
49. A. acervatus. *Fr.* Tufted Collybia. Woods. Aug., Oct.
50. A. xanthopus. *Fr.* Yellow-stemmed Collybia. Ground. July, Aug.
51. A. dryophilus. *Bull.* Wood Collybia. Epiphytal. June to Oct.
52. A. exsculptus. *Fr.* Sulphur-gill Collybia. Ground. Sept.
53. A. plexipes. *Fr.* Twisted Collybia. On trunks.
54. A. stipitarius. *Fr.* Fibrillose Collybia. Epiphytal. July to Aug.

SUB-GEN. Mycena. *Fr.*

55. A. praelongus. *Peck.* Epiphytal. Swamps. June to July.
56. A. paluster. *Peck.* Larch swamps. Sphagnum. June.
57. A. radius. *n. sp.* Pale-yellow Mycena. Ground. May.

See Bulletin of the Minn. Acad. of Natural Sciences. 1876.

58. A. strobilinus. *Pers.* Fir-cone. Mycena. Epiphytal.
59. A. purus. *P.* Amethyst Mycena. Larch swamps. June to July.

60. A. pauperculus. *Berk.* Little-stump Mycena. July.
61. A. sanguineolentus. *A. & S.* Stinking Mycena. June to Oct.
62. A. crocatus. *Schrad.* The Stainer. Woods. June to July.
63. A. epipterygius. *Scop.* Yellow-stem Mycena. July to Aug.
64. A. stylobates. *P.* Discoid Mycena. Epiphytal. Woods. Aug.
65. A. corticola. *Schum.* Bark Mycena. July, Aug.
66. A. capillaris. *Schum.* Capillary mycena. Leaves. Aug.

SUB-GEN. Omphalia. *Fr.*

67. A. pyxidatus. *Bull.* Variable Omphalia. Ground. July.
68. A. affricatus. *Fr.* Hairy Bog Omphalia. Ground. July.
69. A. muralis. *Sow.* Wall Omphalia. Ground. July.
70. A. umbilliferus. *L.* Common Omphalia. Ground. July. Sept.
71. A. rufulus. *B. & Br.* Reddish Ompahlia. Ground. July.
72. A. campanella. *Batsch.* Tawny Omphalia. Larch swamps.
73. A. chryseus. *Peck.* Logs in woods. August.
74. A. fibula. *Bull.* Button Omphalia. Ground. June, Oct.
75. A. gracillimus. *Weinm.* Delicate Omphalia. Epiphytal. Aug.
76. A. integrellus. *P.* Little-white Omphalia. Epi. Aug., Sept.

SERIES. 2. Hyporhodii. *Fr.*

SUB-GEN. Volvaria. *Fr.*

77. A. bombycinus. *Schæff.* Silky Volvaria. Epiphytal. July, Aug.
78. A. volvaceus. *Bull.* Stove Volvaria. Ground. July, Aug.
79. A. Taylori. *Berk.* Taylor's Volvaria. Ground. Aug., Sept.
80. A. gloiocephalus. *Fr.* Umbonate Volvaria. Ground. June.

SUB-GEN. Chamæota. *Smith.*

81. A. cretaceus. *Fr.* Chalky Chamæota. Ground. Aug.

SUB-GEN. Pluteus. *Fr.*

82. A. cervinus. *Schæff.* Fawn Pluteus. Ground. May, Oct.
83. A. nanus. *P.* Mealy Pluteus. Logs in woods. Aug.
84. A. petasatus. *Fr.* Broad-capped Pluteus. Epiphytal. Aug.
85. A. leoninus. *Schæff.* Yellow Pluteus. On wood. Aug., Oct.
86. A. chrysophæus. *Schæff.* Dingy Pluteus. On wood. Aug.
87. A. phlebophorus. *Ditm.* Veined Pluteus. On wood. Aug.

SUB-GEN. Entoloma. *Fr.*

88. A. strictior. *Peck.* Ground. Sept., Oct.
89. A. sinuatus. *Fr.* Woods. Ground. Poisonous. July.
90. A. prunuloides. *Fr.* Plum-like Entoloma. Woods, ground. Sept.

91. A. helodes. *Fr.* Moor Entoloma. Ground, woods. Sept.
92. A. repandus. *Bull.* Repand Entoloma. Ground, woods. July.
93. A. ardociacus. *Bull.* Meadow Entoloma. Ground, woods. Sept.
94. A. sericellus. *Fr.* Silky Entoloma. Woods. Aug., Sept.
95. A. rhodopolius. *Fr.* Rosy Entoloma. Ground, woods. Aug., Sept.
96. A. costatus. *Fr.* Costate Entoloma. Ground. Sept.
97. A. cuspidatus. *Peck.* Swamps. Sphagnus marshes. Sept.

Sub-Gen. Clitopilus. *Fr.*

98. A. prunulus. *Scop.* Plum Clitopilus. Woods, ground. Season.
99. A. cretatus. *Berk.* Chalky Clitopilus. Woods, ground. Aug., Sept.
100. A noveborasensis. *Peck.* Dingy white Clitopilus. Ground. Aug.
101. A. Woodianus. *Peck.* On ground, and wood. Sept.
102. A. undatus. *Fr.* Waved Clitop. Aug., Sept.

Sub-Gen. Claudopus. *Smith.* Seem. Journal.

103. A. euosmus. *Berk.* Tarragon Clau. Wood. June.
104. A. depluens. *Batsch.* Ground Clau. Ground. Sept.

Sub-Gen. Leptonia. *Fr.*

105. A. chalybæus. *P.* Steel-blue Leptonia. Prairies. July, Sept.
106. A. incanus. *Fr.* Hoary Leptonia. Prairies. Dayton. Aug.

Sub-Gen. Nolanea. *Fr.*

107. A. pascuus. *P.* Pasture Nola. Wet prairies. June.
108. A. rufo-carneus. *Berk.* Red-brown Nola. Marshes. Aug., Sept.
109. A. Babingtonii. *Blox.* Babington's Nola. Woods. Sept.
110. A. conicus. *Peck.* On rotton wood. Swamps. Aug.
111. A. delicatulus. *Peck.* Delicate Nola. Larch swamp. Aug.
112. A. Clintonianus. *Peck.* Clinton's Nola. Swamps. Aug.

Series 3. Dermini. *Fr.*

Sub-Gen. Pholiota. *Fr.*

113. A. præcox. *P.* Spring Phol. Prairies. May.
114. A. comosus. *Fr.* Hairy Phol. Decaying trunks. Aug.
115. A. squarrosus. *Mull.* Scaly Phol. Trunks. Aug.
116. A. flammans. *Fr.* Yellow scaly Phol. Ground. June.
117. A. temnophyllus. *Peck.* Brownish Phol. Ground. June, July.

Sub-Gen. Hebeloma. *Fr.*

118. A. punctatus. *Fr.* Ground in woods. Sept.
119. A. crustuliniformis. *Bull.* Ring Hebeloma. Woods. Sept.

120. A. fastibilis. *Fr.* Ochrey Hebe. Woods. July-Oct. Common.
121. A. stellatosporus. *Peck.* Stellate Hebeloma. Ground. Sept.
122. A. griseo cabrosus. *Peck.* Rough Hebeloma. Popple groves. Sept.
123. A. illicitus. *Peck.* Smooth Hebeloma. Popple groves. Sept.
124. A. ascophorus. *Peck.* Viscid Hebeloma. Burned ground. Sept.
125. A. mutatus. *P.* Changeable Hebeloma. Ground. July, Aug.
126. A. pyriodorus. *P.* Pear-scented Hebeloma. Woods. Sept.
127. A. obscurus. *P.* Violet Hebeloma. Ground. July.
128. A. flocculosus. *Berk.* Flocculose Hebeloma. Ground. Sept.
129. A. deglubens. *Fr.* Peeling Hebeloma. Woods. Aug., Sept.
130. A. fastigiatus. *Fr.* Peaked Hebeloma. Woods. July.
131. A. rimosus. *Bull.* Cracked Hebeloma. Ground. June, Sept.
132. A. trechisporus. *Berk.* Rough-spored Hebeloma. Ground. Aug.
133. A. auricomus. *Batsch.* Golden-haired Hebeloma. Woods. July.
134. A. floculentus. *Poll.* Woolly Hebeloma. Ground. July.

SUB-GEN. Flammula. *Fr.*

135. A. polychrous. *Berk.* Reddish Flammula. Ground, wood. Aug., Sept.
136. A. gummosus. *Lasch.* Viscid Flammula. Wood. July.
137. A. sapineus. *Fr.* Bright-Spored Flam. Ground and wood. Aug.

SUB-GEN. Crepidotus. *Fr.*

138. A. mollis. *Schæff.* Soft Crepidotus. On wood. July-Oct.

SUB-GEN. Naucoria. *Fr.*

139. A. semiorbicularis. *Bull.* Half-round Naucoria. Dung. June.
140. A. vernalis. *Peck.* Decaying wood. June.
141. A. lignicola. *Peck.* Decaying wood. June.
142. A. erinaceus. *Fr.* Hedgehog Naucoria. Wood. Nov.

SUB-GEN. Galera. *Fr.*

143. A. ovalis. *Fr.* Oval Galera. Cow-dung. Aug.
144. A. tener. *Schæff.* Slender Galera. Dung. July-Oct.
145. A. sparteus. *Fr.* Meadow Galera. Mossy ground. June.
146. A. hypnorum. *Batsch.* Moss-loving Galera. July. Sept.
147. A. sphagnorum. *Pers.* Bog-moss Galera. July, Sept.

SUB-GEN. Tubaria. Smith. Journ., 1870.

148. A. inquilinus. *Fr.* Little Tubaria. On wood, swamps. June, Sept.
149. A. furfuraceus. *P.* Mealy Tubaria. Chips, wood. July, Sept.

SERIES 4. Practellæ. *Fr.*

SUB-GEN. Psalliota. *Fr.*

150. A. campestris. *L.* Common Mushroom. Ground. August.
 Var. pratensis. *Vitt.* Rich muck. Aug.
 Var. silvicola. *Vitt.* Ramsey and Wright counties. Aug.
151. A. silvaticus. *Schaeff.* Wood Psalliota. Woods. Aug.
152. A. Johnsonianus. *Peck.* Woods. Sept.

SUB-GEN. Pilosace. *Fr.*

153. A. eximius. *Peck.* Decaying logs in woods. Sept.

SUB-GEN. Stropharia. *Fr.*

154. A. stercorarius. *Fr.* Dung Stropharia. May, Sept.
155. A. semiglobatus. *Batsch.* Semiglobose Stropharia. June, Sept.

SUB-GEN. Hypholoma. *Fr. Hab.* Generally on stumps.

156. A. sublateritius. *Fr.* Brick-red Hypholoma. Sept.
157. A. fascicularis. *Hud.* Tufted Yellow Hypholoma. Sept.
158. A. lacrymabundus. *Fr.* Weeping Hyph. July, Nov.
159. A. velutinus. *P.* Velvety Hyph. Trunks. July.
160. A. perplexus. *Peck.* Ground about stumps. Sept.
161. A. phyllogenus. *Peck.* Fallen leaves. July

SUB-GEN. Psilocybe. *Fr. Hab.* Mostly on the ground.

162. A. limicola *Peck.* Aug., Sept.
163. A. spadiceus. *Schæff.* Bay Psilocybe. Wood. Ground. Aug.
164. A. cernuus. *Mull.* Nodding Psilocybe. Wood. Ground. Sept.
165. A. fœnisecii. *P.* Brown Psilocybe. Ground. Sept.

SUB-GEN. Psathyra. *Fr. Hab.* Ground. Wood.

166. A. mastiger. *Berk & Br.* Peaked Psathyra. Ground. Aug., Sept.
167. A. corrugis. *P.* Wrinkled Psathyra. Ground. Aug.
168. A. obtusatus. *Fr.* Obtuse Psathyra. Ground. June.

SERIES 5. Coprinarii. *Fr.* Spores black.

SUB-GEN. Panæolus. *Fr.* Mostly on dung.

169. A. separatus. *L.* Ochrey Panæolus. June, Sept.
170. A. leucophanes. *B. & Br.* Shiny-White Panæolus. May, Aug.
171. A. fimiputris. *Bull.* Dark-gray Panæolus. June, Aug.

172. A. campanulatus. *L.* Campanulate Panæolus. June, Aug.
173. A. papilionaceus. *Bull.* Butterfly Panæolus. June, July.
174. A. solidipes. *Peck.* July.
175. A. fimicola. *Fr.* Dung Panæolus. June.

SUB-GEN. Psathyrella. *Fr.*

176. A. gracilis. *Fr.* Slender Psathyrella. Sept.
177. A. pronus. *Fr.* Stooping Psathyrella. Ground. Sept.
178. A. atomatus. *Fr.* Sprinkled Psathyrella. Manure. June, July.
179. A. disseminatus. *Fr.* Clustered Psathyrella. Woods. July, Sept.
180. A. odoratus. *Peck.* Manure heaps. May, June.

GEN. 2. Coprinus. *Fr.*

181. C. comatus. *Fr.* Shaggy Coprinus. Rich ground. Sept.
182. C. atramentarius. *Fr.* Inky Coprinus. Dung. June, July.
183. C. fuscescens. *Fr.* Brownish Coprinus. Wood. June, July.
184. C. picaceus. *Fr.* Magpie Coprinus. Ground. Sept.
185. C. similis. *B. & Br.* Striate Coprinus. Wood. Sept.
186. C. fimetarius. *Fr.* Shaggy-dung Coprinus. June, July.
187. C. tomentosus. *Fr.* Downy Coprinus. Dung. May, June.
188. C. miveus. *Fr.* Snowy Coprinus. May, June.
189. C. micaceus. *Fr.* Glistening Coprinus. May, Sept.
190. C. deliquescens. *Fr.* Deliquescent Coprinus. June.
191. C. lagopus. *Fr.* Hare's foot Coprinus. Dung. July.
192. C. radiatus. *Fr.* Delicate Coprinus. Dung. May, June.
193. C. ephemerus. *Fr.* Ephemeral Coprinus. May, June.
194. C. insignis. *Peck.* About roots of trees. July, Aug.
195. C. angulatus. *Peck.* Ground in woods. Aug., Sept.
196. C. plicatilis. *Fr.* Rich ground. June, July.
197. C. hemerobius. *Fr.* Collared Coprinus. July.
198. C. silvaticus. *Peck.* Ground. Sept.
199. C. semilanatus. *Peck.* Dung. Aug.

GEN. 3. Bolbitius. *Fr.* Manure, rich soil.

200. B. Boltoni. *Fr.* Bolton's Bolbitius. Dung. June, Sept.
201. B. fragilis. *Fr.* Fragile Bolbitius. Epiphytal. May, Aug.
202. B. titubans. *Fr.* Wavering Bolbitius. Ground. Forest. Open. Ju., Oct.
203. B. apicalis. *Smith.* Two-coloured Bolbitius. Ground. June, July.
204. B. nobilis. *Peck.* Noble Bolbitius. Ground. Woods. Sept.

GEN. 4. Cortinarius, *Fr.*

SUB-GEN. 1. Phlegmacium. *Fr.*

205. C. varius. *Fr.* Variable Cort. Ground. Woods. Aug., Sept.

206. C. cyanipes. *Fr.* Blue-stemed Cort. Woods. July, Aug.
207. C. russus. *Fr.* Ruddy Cort. Woods. Sept.
208. C. coloratus. *Peck.* Amongst moss. Larch swamps. Sept.
209. C. communis. *Peck.* Woods. Sept.
210. C. multiformis. *Fr.* Multiform Cort. Woods. Sept.
211. C. glaucopus. *Fr.* Brown-zoned Cort. Sept.
212. C. callochrous. *Fr.* Tawny-viscid Cort. Woods. Aug., Sept.
213. C. cœrulescens. *Fr.* Azure-blue Cort. Woods. Sept.
214. C. turbinatus. *Fr.* Top-shaped Cort. July, Sept.
215. C. scaurus. *Fr.* Club-footed Cort. Woods. Sept.
216. C. corrugatus. *Peck.* Woods. June.

SUB-GEN. 2. Myxacium. *Fr.*

217. C. collinitus. *Fr.* Smeared Cort. Woods. Sept.
218. C. sphærosporus. *Peck.* Woods. Sept.

SUB-GEN. 3. Inoloma. *Fr.*

219. C. violaceus. *Fr.* Violet Cort. Woods. Aug.
220. C. camphoratus. *Fr.* Strong-scented Cort. Ground. Sept.
221. C. callisteus. *Fr.* Stout Cort. Woods. August.
222. C. pholideus. *Fr.* Scaly Cort. Woods. Sept.
223. C. sublanatus. *Fr.* Woolly Cort. Woods. Sept.
224. C. lilacinus. *Peck.* Woods. Sept.
225. C. squamulosus. *Peck.* Scaly Cort. Woods. Aug., Sept.
226. C. asper. *Peck.* Newly cleared places. Sept.

SUB-GEN. Dermocybe. *Fr.*

227. C. anomalus. *Fr.* Thin-capped Cort. Woods. Sept. Oct.
228. C. spilomeus. *Fr.* Scaly-stemmed Cort. Woods. Sept.

SUB-GEN. Telamonia. *Fr.*

229. C. bulbosus. *Fr.* Bulbous Cort. Woods. Aug., Sept.
230. C. lignarius. *Peck.* Decayed wood. June.
231. C. limonius. *Fr.* Lemon Cort. Decaying pine. June.
232. C. hinnuleus. *Fr.* Fawn Cort. Woods. June.
233. C. psammocephalus. *Fr.* Little Tawny Cort. Woods. Aug., Sept.
234. C. ileopodius. *Fr.* Tan-colored Cort. Woods. June, Sept.

SUB-GEN. Hygrocybe. *Fr.*

235. C. Armeniacus. *Fr.* Peach Cort. Woods.
236. C. vernalis. *Peck.* Spring Cort. Ground. June.
237. C. castaneus. *Fr.* Chestnut Cort. Woods. Sept.
238. C. Reedii. *Berk.* Reed's Cort. Shores of lakes. June.

239. C. leucopus. *Fr.* White-stemmed Cort. Woods. May.
240. C. decipiens. *Fr.* Deceptive Cort. Woods. Sept.

Gen. Lepister. *Smith.* Sieem. Jour. 1870.

241. L. nudia. *Bull.* Amethyst Lep. Woods. Prairies. Aug. Sept.
242. L. personata. *Fr.* Purple-stemmed Lep. Ground. Aug. Sept.

Gen. Paxillus. *Fr.*

243. P. involutus. *Fr.* Involute Pax. Ground in woods. Aug. Sept.
244. P. strigosus. *Peck.* Hairy Pax. Ground, woods. Sept.

Gen. Hygrophorus. *Fr.* Terrestrial. Woods, on ground.

245. H. eburenus. *Fr.* Ivory Hygroph. Woods. Sept., Oct.
246. H. cossus. *Fr.* Goat-moth Hygroph. Woods. Sept., Oct.
247. H. cerascinus. *B.* Waxy Hygroph. Woods. Sept., Oct.
248. H. aromaticus. *B.* Aromatic Hygroph. Woods. Sept.
249. H. mesotephrus. *B. & Br.* Brown-disk Hygroph. Woods. Aug.,Sept.
250. H. hypothejus. *Fr.* Pine-wood Hygroph. Sandy soil. Woods. Sept.
251. H. olivaceo-albus. *Fr.* Olive Hygroph. Woods. Sept.
252. H. leporinus. *Fr.* Hare-colored Hygroph. Terrestrial. Sept.
253. H. pratensis. *Fr.* Pasture Hygroph. Open places, woods. Sept.
254. H. niveus. *Fr.* Snow-white Hygroph. Mossy ground. Aug., Oct.
255. H. ceraceus. *Fr.* Wax-like Hygroph. Woods. Sept., Oct.
256. H. miniatus. *Fr.* Vermillion Hygroph. Woods. Aug., Sept.
257. H. coniscus. *Fr.* Conical Hygroph. Terrestrial. Aug., Oct.
258. H. nitidus. *B. & R.* Amongst moss in wet places. Aug., Sept.

Gen. Gomphidius. *Fr.* Terrestrial mainly.

259. G. viscidus. *Fr.* Viscid Gomphidius. On wood. Aug.

Gen. Lactarius. *Fr.* Terrestrial. Mainly in woods.

260. L. torminosus. *Fr.* Woolly Lactarius. Aug., Oct.
261. L. cilicioides. *Fr.* Tomentose Lact. Sept.
262. L. turpis. *Fr.* Dirty Lact. July.
263. L. pubescens. *Schrad.* Pubescent Lact. Aug., Sept.
264. L. zonarius. *Fr.* Zoned Lact. Aug., Oct.
265. L. blennius. *Fr.* Slimy Lact. Aug., Sept.
266. L. pyrogalus. *Fr.* Pear-scented Lact. Aug., Sept.
267. L. plumbeus. *Fr.* Lead-coloured Lact. Aug., Sept.
268. L. chrysorrhæus. *Fr.* Yellow juiced Lact. July, Aug.
269. L. piperatus. *Fr.* Peppery Lact. July, Sept.
270. L. vellereus. *Fr.* Woolly-white Lact. July.
271. L. deliciosus. *Fr.* Delicious Lact. Aug., Oct.

272. L. pallidus. *Fr.* Pallid Lact. Aug., Sept.
273. L. theiogalus. *Fr.* Sulphur-juiced Lact. Aug.
274. L. cyathala. *Fr.* Cup-like Lact. Aug., Sept.
275. L. glyciosmus. *Fr.* Scented Lact. Aug., Oct.
276. L. serifluus. *Fr.* Thin-juiced Lact. Sept.
277. L. fuliginosus. *Fr.* Dingy Lact. July, Oct.
278. L. affinis. *Peck.* Viscid Lact. Sept., Oct.
279. L. volemus. *Fr.* Orange-brown Lact. July, Sept.
280. L. platyphyllus. *Peck.* Aug., Sept.
281. L. sordidus. *Peck.* Sandy soil. Sept.
282. L. griseus. *Peck.* Low ground. Aug.

GEN. Russula. *Fr.* Terrestrial. Usually late Summer and Autumn.

283. R. nigricans. *Fr.* Blackish Rus. July, Aug.
284. R. aduster. *Fr.* Scorched Rus. Sept., Oct.
285. R. delica. *Fr.* Whitish Rus. Woods. Aug.
286. R. furcata. *Fr.* Forked Rus. Woods. Sept.
287. R. sanguinea. *Fr.* Blood-red Rus. Woods. July.
288. R. rosacea. *Fr.* Rosy Rus. Woods. July.
289. R. sardonia. *Fr.* Changeable Rus. Woods. July.
290. R. depallens. *Fr.* Bleached Rus. Woods. July.
291. R. virescens. *Fr.* Greenish Rus. Woods. July, Sept.
292. R. lepida. *Fr.* Scaly Rus. Woods. July, Aug.
293. R. rubra. *Fr.* Red Rus. Woods. July, Aug.
294. R. fœtens. *Fr.* Fœtid Rus. Woods. July, Sept.
295. R. emetica. *Fr.* Emetic Rus. Woods. July, Oct.
296. R. fragilis. *Fr.* Fragile Rus. Woods. July. Aug.
297. R. integra. *Fr.* Entire Rus. Woods. July, Aug.
298. R. decolorans. *Fr.* Discolored Rus. Woods. Sept.
299. R. veternosa. *Fr.* Sleepy Rus.
300. R. nitida. *Fr.* Shining Rus. Woods. Sept.
301. R. alutacea. *Fr.* Tan-colored Rus. Woods. July, Aug.
302. R. lutea. *Fr.* Yellow Rus. Woods. August.
303. R. chamæleontina. *Fr.* Chameleon Rus. Woods. Sept.
304. R. mariæ. *Peck.* Woods. July, Aug.

GEN. Cantharellus. *Adams' Fung.*

305. C. cibarius. *Fr.* Edible Chantarelle. Woods. July.
306. C. aurantiacus. *Fr.* False Chant. Ground and wood. Aug.
307. C. umbonatus. *P.* Umbonate Chant. Ground. July.
308. C. tubæformis. *Fr.* Tubæform Chant. Woods. July.
309. C. infundibuliformis. *Fr.* Funnel-shaped Chant. Ground. July, Aug.
310. C. minor. *Peck.* Ground in woods. July, Aug.
311. C. dichotomus. *Peck.* Damp ground. Woods. July, Aug.

GEN. NYCTALIS. *Fr.* Gen. Hymen.

312. C. asterophora. *Fr.* Star-bearing Nyctalis. Dead Fungi. Sept.

GEN. MARASMIUS. *Fr.* Epiphytal. Terrestrial.

313. M. oreades. *Fr.* Fairy-ring. Champignon. May, Oct.
314. M. fusco-purpureus. *Fr.* Purple brown Maras. Woods. June, July.
315. M. Wynnei. *B. & Br.* Wynne's Maras. Leaves. June, July.
316. M. erythrophus. *Fr.* Pallid Maras. On ground and wood. July.
317. M. terginus. *Fr.* Clustered Maras. In woods on wood. June.
318. M. alliaceus. *Fr.* Onion-scented Maras. Wood. July, Aug.
319. M. rotula. *Fr.* Collared Maras. Ground. June, Oct.
320. M. androsaceus. *Fr.* Black stemed Maras. June, Sept.
321. M. insititius. *Fr.* Horny stemed Maras. Aug., Oct.
322. M. epiphyllus. *Fr.* Leaf Maras. Woods. June, Oct.
323. M. saccharinus. *Fr.* Granular Maras. Epiphytal. Woods. June, July.
324. M. spodoleucus. *B. & Br.* Stemless Maras. Epiphytal. Woods. June, Sept.
325. M. velutipes. *B. & C.* Woolly Maras. Woods. July.
326. M. plancus. *Fr.* Hairy Maras. Woods. June, Oct.
327. M. subvenosus. *Peck.* Leaves in woods. Aug., Oct.
328. M. campanulatus. *Peck.* Leaves in woods. Aug.
329. M. cæspitosus. *Peck.* Decaying branches, woods. June.
330. M. longipes. *Peck.* Among fallen leaves, woods. Aug., Oct.
331. M. glabellus. *Peck.* Amongst leaves, woods. July, Sept.
332. M. anomalus. *Peck.* Sticks, leaves in woods. July.

GEN. Lentinus. *Fr.* Generally on wood.

333. L. tigrinus. *Fr.* Tiger-spot Len. June, Oct.
334. L. Dunalii. *Fr.* Dunal's Len. June, Sept.
335. L. lepidius. *Fr.* Scaly Len. June, July.
336. L. cochleatus. *Fr.* Shell Len. June, July.
337. L. vulpinus. *Fr.* Strong-scented Len. May, Aug.

GEN. Panus. *Fr.* Epiphytal. Stumps.

338. P. torulosus. *Fr.* Twisted Pan. Sept.
339. P. conchatus. *Fr.* Shell Pan. May, Oct.
340. P. salicinus. *Peck.* On Salix discolor. Michx. Sept., Oct.
341. P. strigosus. *B. & C.* Aug.

GEN. Trogia. *Fr.*

342. T. crispa. *Fr.* Crisped Trogia. On dead branches. Sept

GEN. Schizophyllum. *Fr.*

343. S. commune. *Fr.* Common Schiz. On dead wood. The season.

Gen. Lenzites. *Fr.*

344. L. betulina. *Fr.* Birch Lenzites. Stumps. Perennial.
345. L. floccida. *Fr.* Flaccid Lenzites. Stumps. Sept., Oct.

Order II. Polyporei.

Gen. Boletus. *Fr.* Terrestrial.

346. B. elegans. *Schum.* Elegant Boletus. Woods. June, Oct.
347. B. flavus. *With.* Bright-yellow Bolet. Woods. July.
348. B. badius. *Fr.* Bay Boletus. Woods. Wright county. August.
349. B. striæpes. *Sec.* Striate Bolet. Aug.
350. B. chrysenteron. *Fr.* Red-cracked Bolet. Sept.
351. B. subtomentosus. *L.* Yellow-cracked Bolet. Woods. Aug.
352. B. pachypus. *Fr.* Thick-stemmed Bolet. Aug., Sept.
353. B. edulis. *Bull.* Edible Bolet. Woods. Aug.
354. B. æstivalis. *Fr.* Early Bolet. Woods. Esculent.
355. B. purpureus. *Fr.* Purple Bolet. Woods. Aug.
356. B. scaber. *Fr.* Shaggy Bolet. Woods. Aug. Esculent.
357. B. alutarius. *Fr.* Tan-colored Bolet. Woods. Aug.
358. B felleus. *Bull.* Bitter Bolet. Woods. Sept.
359. B. cyanescens. *Bull.* Sibthorp's Bolet. Woods. Aug.

Gen. Polyporus. *Fr.*

360. P. leptocephalus. *Fr.* White-pored Poly. On wood. June, July.
361. P. perennis. *Fr.* Perennial Poly. Ground, stumps. Aug., Oct.
362. P. Rostkovii. *Fr.* Rostkovius' Poly. Rotton wood. June, Sept.
363. P. elegans. *Fr.* Elegant Poly. Trunks, branches, woods. July.
364. P. quercinus. *Fr.* Oak Poly. Old oaks. June.
365. P. sulfureus. *Fr.* Sulphury Poly. Logs, stumps. June, Sept.
366. P. alligatus. *Fr.* Connected Poly. Base of stumps. June, Sept.
367. P. heteroclitus. *Fr.* Grand Poly. Ground. Wright county. Aug.
368. P. salignus. *Fr.* Willow Poly. On Willows. July, Nov.
369. P. chioneus. *Fr.* Soft white Poly. Roots of stumps. Aug.
370. P. cassius. *Fr.* Blue-gray Poly. On pine logs. July, Oct.
371. P. destructus. *Fr.* Destructive Poly. Larch, ground. July, Sept.
372. P. rutilans. *Fr.* Reddish Poly. Branches, woods. June.
373. P. adustus. *Fr.* Scorched Poly. Stumps.
374. P. hispidus. *Fr.* Hispid Poly. Living oaks. Perennial.
375. P. spumeus. *Fr.* Oozing Poly. Trunks, branches. July.
376. P. nigricans. *Fr.* Black-hoof Poly. Living birch. Perennial.
377. P. annosus. *Fr.* Imbricated Poly. Larch stumps. Perennial.
378. P. connatus. *Fr.* Connate Poly. Crab trunks. Miss R. A. Johnson.
379. P. hirsutus. *Fr.* Bristly Poly. Dead trunks. Woods. July.
380. P. versicolor. *Fr.* Common Zoned Poly. Stumps, &c. Persistent.

381. P. abietinus. *Fr.* Whitish Fir Poly. Larch. July.
382. P. contiguus. *Fr.* Contiguous Poly. Decayed wood, &c. June, Sep.
383. P. ferruginosus. *Fr.* Rusty Poly. Posts, &c. June, Sept.
384. P. Armeniacus. *Berk.* Buff Fir Poly. June.
385. P. incarnatus. *Fr.* Flesh-Colored Poly. Larch. July, Aug.
386. P. violaceus. *Fr.* Violet Poly. Poplar Larch. July, Aug.
387. P. medulla-panis. *Fr.* Crumb of Bread Poly. Wood. June, Sept.
388. P. obducens. *Fr.* Incrusting Poly. Rotten wood. Perennial.
389. P. vulgaris. *Fr.* Common-effused Poly. Dead wood.
390. P. vaporarius. *Fr.* Creeping Poly. Fallen branches.
391. P. glomeratus. *Peck.* On Acer saccharinum. *Wang.* Aug.
392. P. Gordoniensis. *B. & Br.* Gordon's Fir Poly. Decaying wood. Sep.

Gen. Trametes. *Fr.*

393. T. pini. *Fr.* Fir trunk Trametes. Pine trunks. Perennial.
394. T. odora. *Fr.* Small pored Trametes. Willows.

Gen. Dædalea. *Fr.*

395. D. unicolor. *Fr.* One-coloured Dædalea. Stumps. Trunks.
396. D. latissima. *Fr.* Effused Dædalea. On fallen dead branches.

Gen. Merulius. *Fr.*

397. M. tremellosus. *Schrad.* Tremellose Merulius. Sept.
398. M. corium. *Fr.* Leathery Merulius. Dead trunks.
399. M. malluscus. *Fr.* Thin Merulius. Dead wood.
400. M. rufus. *P.* Rufous Merulius. Dead oak branches.
401. M. serpens. *Fr.* Creeping Merulius. Dead wood. June, Sept.

Gen. Porothelium. *Fr.*

402. P. Friesii. *Mont.* Fries' Porothelium. Pine wood.

Order III. Hydnei.

Gen. Hydnum. *Linn.*

403. H. repandum. *L.* Spreading Hyd. Ground. Aug., Sept.
404. H. zonatum. *Batsch.* Zoned Hyd. Ground. Woods. Sept.
405. H. tomentosum. *L.* Tomentose Hyd. Ground. Woods. July.
406. H. erinaceus. *Bull.* Hedgehog Hyd. Living Oak. Sept., Oct.
407. H. niveum. *P.* Snowy Hyd. Dead wood. Leaves. Sept.
408. H. farinaceum. *P.* Mealy Hyd. Decaying wood. July, Sept.

Order IV. Auricularini. *Fr.*

Gen. Cratorellus. *Fr.*

409. C. cornucopioides. *Fr.* Horn-like Cratellus. Ground.

GEN. Thelephora. *Fr.*

410. T. cæsia. *P.* Ash-gray Thelephora. Incrusting grass.
411. T. arida. *Fr.* Dry Thelephora. Decaying pine.

GEN. Stereum. *Fr.*

412. S. purpureum, *Fr.* Purple Stereum. Trunks. Perennial.
413. S. hirsutum. *Fr.* Hairy Stereum. Stumps. Peren.
414. S. acerinum. *Fr.* Maple Stereum. Living maple trunks.

GEN. Hymenochæte. *Lev.*

415. H. rubiginosa. *Lev.* Rubiginous Hymenochæte.

ORDER V. Clavarici.

GEN. Clavaria. *L.*

416. C. amethystina. *Bull.* Amethyst Clavaria. Sept.
417. C. fastigiata. *D. C.* Fastigiate Clavaria. Woods. Aug., Oct.
418. C. coralloides. *L.* White Coral Clavaria. Woods. Aug., Sept.
419. C. umbrina. *Berk.* Umber Clavaria. Woods. Aug., Sept.
420. C. cinerea *Bull.* Cinereous Clav. Woods. Sept.
421. C. cristata. *Holmsk.* Crested Clav. Woods. Sept.
422. C. rugosa. *Bull.* Wrinkled Clav. Woods. Sept.
423. C. Kunzei. *Fr.* Kunze's Clav. Woods. Sept.
424. C. aurea. *Schæff* Golden Clav. Open woods. Sept.
425. C. formosa. *Pers.* Beautiful Clav. Aug., Oct.
426. C. crocea. *P.* Saffron-yellow Clav. Decaying wood. May.
427. C. purpurea. *Mull.* Purple Clav. Woods. Sept.
428. C. inæqualis. *Mull.* Unequal Clav. Woods. Sept.
429. C. vermiculata. *Scop.* White-tufted Clav. Aug., Sept.
430. C. fragilis. *Holmsk.* Brittle Clav. Woods. Sept.
431. C. contorta. *Fr.* Contorted Clav. Branches. Aug.

GEN. Calocera. *Fr.*

432. C. glassoides. *Fr.* Soft Calocera. Decayed stumps. Sept.

ORDER VI. Tremellini.

GEN. Tremella. *Fr.*

433. T. fimbriata. *Pers.* Fringed Tremella. Dead branches. June.
434. T. frondosa. *Fr.* Large Pale Tremella. Ground. Aug., Oct.
435. T. foliacea. *P.* Foliaceous Tremella. Stumps. Aug.
436. T. lutescens. *Fr.* Yellowish Tremella. Old stumps. Aug., Sept.
437. T. mesenterica. *Retz.* Orange Tremella. Sticks. Aug., Oct.

438. T. vesicaria. *Bull.* Bladdery Tremella. Ground. Aug., Sept.
439. T. albida. *Hud.* Whitish Tremella. Logs. June, Aug.
440. T. intumescens. *Sow.* Contorted Tremella. Wood. July, Sept.
441. T. indecorata. *Somm.* Dingy Tremella. Dead willows. Aug.
442. T. tubercularia. *Berk.* Horny Tremella. Branches. Sept., Oct.
443. T. torta. *Willd.* Twisted Tremella. Oak. July, Sept.
444. T. epigæa. *B. & Br.* Ground Tremella. Ground. Sept.

Gen. Exidia. *Fr.*

445. E. glandulosa. *Fr.* Witches'-Butter Exidia. Oak branches. Aug.

Gen. Hirneola. *Fr.*

446. H. Auricula-Judae. *Berk.* Jew's-ear Hirneola. Wood.

Gen. Dacrymyces. *Nees.*

447. D. stillatus. *Nees.* Orange Dacrymyces. Pine logs.

Gen. Apyrenium. *Fr.*

448. A. lignatile. *Fr.* Wood loving Apyrenium. Decayed wood.

HYPOGÆI.

Family II Gasteromycetts.

Order VII. Hypogæi.

Gen. Hymenogaster. *Tul.*

449. H. muticus. *B. & Br.* Cracking Hymenogaster. Sept.
450. H. luteus. *Vitt.* Yellow Hymenogaster. Woods. July, Sept.
451. H. decorus. *Tul.* Comely Hymenogaster. Woods. Aug. Sept.

PHALLOIDEI.

Order VIII. Phallôidei.

Gen. Phallus. *Linn.*

452. P. impudicus. *Linn.* Common Stink-horn. Sept., Oct.

TRICHOGASTRES.

Order IX. Trichogastres.

Gen. Tulostoma. *Pers.*

453. T. mammosum. *Fr.* Nippled Tulostoma. Ground.

Gen. Geaster. *Mich.*

454. G. fornicatus. *Fr.* Vaulting Geaster. Ground. Sept., Oct.
455. G. striatus. *D. C.* Striate Geaster. On sand.
456. G. Bryantii. *Berk.* Bryant's Geaster. Sandy soil.
457. G. hygrometricus. *P.* Hard-coated Geaster. Ground. Woods. Oct.
458. G. lageniformis. *Vitt.* Flask-like Geaster. Woods. Oct.

Gen. Bovista. *Dill.*

459. B. nigrescens. *P.* Blackish Bovista. Prairies. May.
460. B. plumbea. *P.* Lead-colored Bovista. Prairies. Common.
461. B. ammophila. *Lev.* Rooting Bovista. Woods. Sept.

Gen. Lycoperdon. *Tourn.*

462. L. giganteum. *Batsch.* Giant Puff-ball. Pastures. Oct.
463. L. cælatum. *Fr.* Collapsing Puff-ball. Prairies. Aug., Sept.
464. L. atropurpureum. *Vitt.* Purple-spored Puff-ball. Aug.
465. L. pusillum. *Fr.* Little Puff-ball. Prairies. June, Sept.
466. L. saccatum. *Vahl.* Elongated Puff-ball. Thickets. July.
467. L. gemmatum. *Fr.* Warted Puff-ball. Meadows. Prairies. Aug.
468. L. pyriforme. *Schæff.* Pear-shaped Puff Ball. Stumps. Sept.

Gen. Scleroderma. *P.*

469. S. vulgare. *Fr.* Common Scleroderma. Borders of woods. Aug.
470. S. bovista. *Fr.* Thin-coated Scleroderma. Aug., Sept.
471. S. verrucosum. *Pers.* Warty Scleroderma. Prairies. Aug.

Gen. Polysaccum. *D. C.*

472. P. olivaceum. *Fr.* Olive Polysaccum. Ground, woods. Aug.

Order X. Myxogastres.

Gen. Lycogala. *Mich.*

473. L. epidendrum. *Fr.* Stump Lycogala. July, Oct.

Gen. Reticularia. *Bull.*

474. R. maxima. *Fr.* Large Reticularia. Trunks, fallen trees.
475. R. atra. *Fr.* Black Reticularia. Pine logs. Aug.
476. R. umbrina. *Fr.* Umber Reticularia. Stumps. July.

Gen. Æthalium. *Link.*

477. A. septicum. *Fr.* Æthalium. Woods. Decaying wood.

Gen. Spumaria. *Fr.*

478. S. alba. *D. C.* White Spumaria. Living grass. June.

Gen. Ptychogaster. *Ca.*

479. P. albus. *Corda.* White Ptychogaster. On ground. July.

Gen. Diderma. *P.*

480. D. farinaceum. *Peck.* Invests fern stems in low woods.
481. D. Mariae-Wilsoni. *Clinton.* Sticks, woods. Aug.
482. D. globosum. *Fr.* Globose Diderma. Dead leaves. Sept.

Gen. Didymium. *Schrad.*

483. D. melanopus. *Fr.* Black-stemmed Didymium. Sticks. Aug.
484. D. connatum. *Peck.* Decaying *Russula.* Sept.
485. D. furfuraceum. *Fr.* Scurfy Did. Rotten wood. July, Aug.
486. D. squamulosum. *A. & G.* Scaly Did. Dead leaves, &c. Aug.
487. D. farinaceum. *Fr.* Mealy Did. Dead leaves. Aug.
488. D. pertusum. *Berk.* Pierced Did. Stumps. Oct.

Gen. Physarum. *P.*

489. P. pulcherripes. *Peck.* Rotten wood. July.
490. P. cæspitosum. *Peck.* Rotten wood. Aug.
491. P. atrum. *Fr.* Black Physarum. Dead Branches. Aug.

Gen. Angioridium. *Grev.*

492. A. sinuosum. *Grev.* Twisted Angioridium. Sept.

Gen. Craterium. *Trent.*

493. C. mutabile. *Fr.* Changeable Craterium. Bark. July.

Gen. Diachæa. *Fr.*

494. D. elegans. *Fr.* Elegant Diachæa. Dead leaves. Aug.

Gen. Stemonitis. *Gled.*

495. S. fusca. *Rath.* Brown Stemonitis. Dead wood. June.
496. S. ferruginea. *Ehrb.* Rusty Stemonitis. Dead wood. July.
497. S. ovata. *P.* Ovate Stemonitis. Rotten wood. June.
498. S. obtusata. *Fr.* Obtuse Stemonitis. Rotten wood. June.

GEN. Arcyria. *Hill.*

499. A. nutans. *Fr.* Nodding Arcyria. Rotten wood. June.

ORDER XI. Nidulariacei. *Tul.*

GEN. Polyangium. *Link.*

500. P. vitellinum. *Ditm.* Egg-yellow Polyangium. Stumps.

FAMILY III. Coniomycetes.

ORDER XII. Sphaeronemei.

GEN Phoma. *Fr.*

501. P. ampelinum. *B. & C.* Dead grape vines. Woods. July.
502. P. exiguum. *Desm.* Little Phoma. Elder shoots. Aug.
503. P. glandicola. *Lev.* Acorn Phoma. Acorns. Sept.

GEN. Discella. *B. & Br.*

504. D. carbonacea. *B. & Br.* Black Discella. Dead twigs.

ORDER XV. Pucciniæi.

GEN. Phragmidium. *Link.*

505. P. mucronatum. *Link.* Rose Brand. Living Rose leaves. Aut.
506. P. gracile. *Greve.* Raspberry Brand. Rasp. leaves. Aut.
507. P. obtusum. *Link.* Strawberry Brand.
508. P. graminis. *Pers.* Corn mildew. Leaves of corn. Aut.
509. P. striola. *Link.* Sedge Mildew. Rushes. Autumn.
510. P. coronata. *Corda.* Coronated Mildew. Grasses.
511. P. vaginalium. *Link.* Knot-grass Brand Aut.
512. P. primulae. *Grev.* Primrose Brand. Primroses. June.
513. P. variabilis. *Grev.* Variable Brand. Taraxacum. July.

GEN. Gymnosporangium. *D. C.*

514. G. juniperi. *Lk.* Living branches.

ORDER XVI. Cæomacei.

GEN. Tilletia. *Tul.*

515. T. caries. *Tul.* Bunt. On wheat filling the grains. Aut.

GEN. Ustilago. *Link.*

516. U. carbo. *Tul.* Corn smut. Autumn.
517. U. antherarum. *Fr.* Anther Smut. Lychens, &c.
518. U. violae. *B. & Br.* Violet Smut. Violet leaves. August.
519. U. occulta. *Preus.* Rye smut. On culms of rye.

GEN. Uredo. *Lev.*

520. U. Quercus. *Brand.* Oak-leaf Uredo. Sept.
521. U. bifrons. *Grev.* Twin-faced Uredo. On *Rumex.* Aug., Sept.

ORDER XVII. Æcidiacei.

GEN. Æcidium. *Pers.*

522. A. euphorbiæ. *Pers.* Spurge Cluster-Cups. May, June.
523. A. urticæ. *D. C.* Nettle Cluster-Cups. June.

FAMILY IV. Hyphomycetes.

ORDER XVIII. Isariacei.

GEN. Isaria. *Fr.*

524. I. arachnophila. *Ditm.* Spider Isaria. Dead spiders.
525. I. citrina. *P.* Lemon-colored Isaria. Decaying fungi. Aug.
526. I. intricata. *Fr.* Intricate Isaria. Decaying fungi. Sept.

ORDER XIX. Stilbacei.

GEN. Tubercularia. *Tode.*

527. T. granulata. *P.* Granulate Tubercularia. Dead branches.

DIVISION II. Sporidiifera.

FAMILY VI. Physomycetes.

ORDER XXIV. Mucorini.

GEN. Ascophora. *Tode.*

528. A. elegans. *Corda.* Elegant Ascophora. Fowls' dung.

GEN. Mucor. *Mich.*

529. M. ramosus. *Bull.* Branched Mucor. Decaying fungi. Aug.
530. M. Mucedo. *L.* Common Mucor. Decaying fruits.
531. M. caninus. *P.* Dog's dung Mucor. Dung of dogs.

FAMILY VII. Ascomycetes.

ORDER XXVIII. Elvellacei.

GEN. Morchella. *Dill.*

532. M. esculenta. *Pers.* Common Morel. Woods. May, June.

GEN. Helvella. *Linn.*

533. H. gigas. *Kromb.* Large Helvella. Ground, woods. Spring.
534. H. crispa. *Fr.* Pallid Helvella. Ground, woods. Early Summer.
535. H. sulcata. *Afz.* Sulcate Helvella. Ground, woods. Oct.

GEN. Verpa. *Swartz.*

536. V. digitaliformis. *Pers.* Finger-shaped Verpa. Wood.

GEN. Spathularia. *P.*

537. S. flavida. *Prs.* Yellow Spathularia. Woods. July.

GEN. Leotia. *Hill.*

538. L. lubrica. *Pers.* Slimy Leotia. Woods. Sept.

GEN. Geoglossum. *P.*

539. G. viride. *P.* Green Geoglossum. Decayed wood.
540. G. glutinosum. *P.* Glutinous Geoglossum. Woods.

GEN. Peziza. *Linn.*

541. P. macropus. *Pers.* Long-stemmed Peziza. Ground. July.
542. P. badia. *P.* Large Brown Peziza. Pond margin. July.
543. P. aurantia. *Fr.* Orange Ground Peziza. June.
544. P. lutea-nitens. *B. & Br.* Bright Yellow Peziza. Ground.
545. P. fibrillosa. *Curr.* Woolly Orange Peziza. Oct.
546. P. repanda. *Wahl.* Spreading Peziza. Gound. June.
547. P. trachycarpa. *Curr.* Rough-spored Peziza. Woods.
548. P. leiocarpa. *Curr.* Smooth-spored Peziza. Ground.
549. P. cupularis. *L.* Scolloped Peziza. June.
550. P. subhirsuta. *Schum.* Hirsute Peziza. Ground.
551. P. humosa. *Fr.* Ground Peziza. Woods.
552. P. scutellata. *L.* Shield-like Peziza. Woods. May, Sept.
553. P. unicisa. *Peck.* Ground in woods. Sept., Oct.
554. P. echinosperma. *Peck.* Ground in woods. June.
555. P. rubra. *Peck.* Burnt ground. June.
556. P. tiliae. *Peck.* Dead branches. Tilia Americana. July.
557. P. coccinea. *Jacq.* Carmine Peziza. Wood. Nov.

ORDER XXXI. Sphæriacei.

GEN. Valsa. *Fr.*

558. **V. pulchella.** *Fr.* Beautiful Valsella. Cherry and birch.

With three or four exceptions, the plants constituting the foregoing list of *Fungi*, have been found by the writer.

Respectfully contributed,
A. E. JOHNSON.

MINNEAPOLIS, January 1st, 1877.

VI.

ORNITHOLOGY.

REPORT OF DR. P. L. HATCH.

Prof. N. H. Winchell:

In accepting the position of Ornithologist on the Geological and Natural History Survey of the state to which I have been appointed by the Board of Regents, I desire to express to you and the Board my appreciation of the honor thus conferred upon me.

When first proposed to me to undertake this work, its objects were so accordant with my inclinations that I had only to harmonize its requirements with the exacting duties of my profession, to enter enthusiastically upon it. This our mutual arrangements have enabled me to do more satisfactorily than I had hoped. I therefore permit myself to expect to have something to report to you at the end of another year appropriate to an embodiment in the permanent records of your comprehensive work.

To do this I must be permitted to rely upon the co-operation of not only yourself and the other members of your staff, but of the Board, and all collectors temporarily or permanently associated with the survey.

I have had sufficient experience in the work before me to realize the necessity of aid from reliable sources, and this department of your survey has been so long delayed that it must be rigorously prosecuted if it shall keep its place alongside of the others in the years to come. I do not commence it, however, entirely *de novo*, having had some nineteen years observations in which I have accumulated some notes on birds in my vicinity, with occasional explorations into other sections as fully represented by them. The rapid settlement of the state has changed the relative representation of this class of its fauna very materially, and the increasing extent of the cultivation of the soil for varied productions is at present not only changing the aggregate numbers of birds that come here to breed, and those that permanently reside here, but the relative proportions of species, which shows the importance of early attention to this department of the zoology of the state.

The earliest information on this subject that I have been able to get has been obtained through interviews with persons connected with the army or trappers and traders, stationed at the several military posts at a very early day. Of course this has been meagre, and unsatisfactory because, to a large extent, it has been unreliable. After sifting it as carefully as possible I find about fifty to sixty species that are known to be territorial and aboriginal.

The first approximation towards a listing of species was made by Henry Patton in connection with Owen's geological survey of Wisconsin, Iowa and Minnesota, in 1848–9. As he did not record the locality, or any of the circumstances of his observations, his list I regret to say is but little more valuable than the foregoing, as it is impossible to ascertain what portion of the ninety-five species he gives were obtained within our own special province. It is not a little remarkable that in the several explorations by the national government preliminary to the location of our great transcontinental railroad, made upwards of twenty years ago, while ample provisions were made for collecting the birds along the various lines of exploration in every other instance, that from St. Paul to the Rocky Mountains had none. From thence to the Pacific the collections were as abundant and the reports as full as on any other route embraced in these extensive explorations. But in subsequent railroad surveys—in 1870,I think,—along the line of the Northern Pacific, Mr. Tripp reported a list of 138 species observed, which only recently came to my notice in the Proceedings of the Essex Institute of Massachusetts. Excepting the few mentioned, my own notes of observation, published by the Minnesota Academy of Natural Sciences in 1874, had antedated them so far as this section was involved.

There have been occasional observations noted by persons visiting or passing through the state, which have been preserved, that are reliable.

During the last year—1876—several species hitherto unknown here have been identified, making at the present time a list of about two hundred and seventy-five species, embracing one hundred and sixty-one genera, in thirty-eight families under six orders.

This comprises nearly the entire history of the ornithology of Minnesota, up to the present time, so far as my knowledge extends.

Very respectfully yours,

P. L. HATCH.

Minneapolis, Jan. 10, 1877.

VII.

ENTOMOLOGY.

REPORT OF ALLEN WHITMAN.

SAINT PAUL, MINNESOTA,
December 23d, 1876.

Prof. N. H. Winchell, State Geologist:

SIR:—I have the honor to present the following report upon the Rocky Mountain Locust,* as it has appeared in and near Minnesota during the year 1876. At the time of my appointment (in May) to make this report, through the State Geological Survey, there was a hope, and apparently a reasonable one, that the coming summer would close our present opportunities for observing the destructive species of locust, at least as far as our state was concerned. The insects were found to be hatching in a region covering the whole or parts of five or six of our southwestern counties, in a strip of country reaching from Madelia westward across the state, and into two of the eastern counties of Dakota. A few were also found in the northern part of the state in Clay county, and in a few scattered spots in Dakota along the Red river. No other hatching-ground nearer than Colorado was known, and there was reason to believe that the amount of damage resulting from their presence here would be comparatively small, and a fair probability that their swarms would be so scattered and so diminished during the summer, that the injury would, for the present, end with the flying season. Under these circumstances, it seemed best to make such additions and corrections to the Report of the Grasshopper Commission of 1875, as the experience of the present year should furnish. But as the season has advanced, and events have multiplied themselves, the subject has assumed, both in extent and urgency, a new and continued importance. Following close upon the attack of 1874, we have a new locust invasion, surpassing all former ones in the amount of territory visited, in the magnitude of the invading swarms, in their repeated comings, and in the length of their combined stay. In addition to the losses inflicted upon the crops during the last four summers, amounting to at least eight millions of dollars, we find the evil still confronting us as in 1873, and while we have gained something by our four years' experience, we have also lost something by the disheartenment which four successive years of damage necessarily bring. To meet in any such report as this the demands of a subject so extensive and important, or the expectations of the large number of people who are so deeply interested in it would be simply an impossibility, but I should be glad if anything contained in it could add to the knowledge necessary for intelligent action, or to the hopefulness which we may reasonably entertain in regard to the locust problem in the long run. Such as it is, the report is the result of several visits to the southwestern counties during the spring and summer, of replies to circulars sent to nearly every infested town in the state, and of a large amount of correspondence addressed freely to various points in Minnesota, Dakota, and elsewhere. To compile such information as could be collected from all these, and from hundreds of items published in our state papers during the summer, has been a work of a good deal of time and trouble. The practical value of the results of work of this kind seldom corresponds to the amount of trouble incurred, but this is simply the fault of the subject.

---

* The name "Rocky Mountain Locust" is expressed or implied throughout this report. I suppose that every one knows that it is the *Caloptenus Spretus*, or the "grasshopper," that is referred to. Although the name "hopper" holds its place in popular usage, by force of its brevity and euphony, the use of the word locust can occasion no ambiguity, at least in Minnesota. In regard to the latter name, an old etymology is still often repeated, which has done duty long enough. The word *locust* (Latin, *locusta*,) is not derived from the Latin *locus-ustus*, a *burnt place*, and that for half a dozen reasons. The root of the word (*loc*) is probably found in the Greek root *lak* (in *lasko*, *e-lak-on*,) and in the Latin *loqu-or*, referring in this case to the chirping or shrilling sound of some insect called *locusta*. Its form is confirmed by such Latin words as *robustus*, *venustus*, &c See *Fick*, *Vergleichendes Woerterbuch der Indogermanischen Sprachen*. *Part IV. Root* (8.)

GENERAL VIEW OF LOCUST INVASIONS.

Taking into consideration the whole cultivated region from

Manitoba to Texas and from the Rocky Mountains to the Mississippi, there have been in the series of thirteen years from 1864 to 1876, but four, (or at most five) years when some portion of this area was not attacked by locusts, coming in from somewhere outside of the cultivated area. In other words there have been no less than nine locust invasions, (differing much in extent and degree, but still occurring,) in the Mississippi and Red River valleys during the last thirteen years. And these nine attacks stand against some seven or eight recorded appearances of destructive locusts in the same territory during the 46 years preceding, from 1818 to 1864. Again we have on the one hand the sudden appearance of the immense swarms which are said to have overrun a vast extent of territory on both sides of the Rocky Mountains in 1855, the gradual disappearance of their progeny in the course of the next three years, apparently without furnishing material for subsequent invasions, and their continued absence for the next six years. On the other hand we have, since 1864, a series of attacks occurring at intervals of one, two, or at most three years, and apparently of late an annual vibration between the country lying along the mountains and the lower cultivated regions, each in its turn becoming a breeding-ground. The causes of the increase and continuance of the evil of late years lie outside the range of common observation. That they do not result entirely from an increase of acreage under cultivation, is to be inferred from the locust history of other countries, and from the facts that while Central America has suffered from the same evil at least as far back as 1514 (Bancroft's Native Races of the Pacific Coast, vol. v., page 601,) and Mexico and California at least as lately as 1855, the exemption of these countries since the latter date has been as noticeable as the repeated devastation of our own vicinity. As for any analogy to be derived from the locust history of European countries the books are not at hand in this state to furnish the exact chronology of the evil; but from such a source as I have at hand, the record of Germany for the last four centuries shows intervals of exemption from injury for eight, twelve, sixteen, forty (1763—1803,) or even fifty (1636—1686) years, and again no less than fourteen years of injury between 1727 and 1755, and among these series of three, four, or even five successive years of damage, as in the five years from 1727 to 1731, and again from 1746 to 1750.*

---

* These dates are taken from a work entitled, Die Kleinen Feinde der Landwirthschaft, by Prof. H. Nordlinger, Stuttgard. 1855, furnished by the kindness of Gustav Kyllander, Esq., of Severance, Sibley county. For a

The locust problem still presents a great deal upon which nothing like complete information has been furnished. Even in regard to the locust as it appears in our own State, not only does the farmer ask many questions, to which the entomologist can as yet give no decisive answer, but even in the practical economy of the locust question opinions are still at variance, where experience should, by this time, have brought some degree of unanimity. When it comes to the exact origin of our invading swarms, their manner of increase from year to year before leaving their native regions, their growth, habits, and movements in those regions, how far eastward those regions may or do extend, the causes of the repeated appearance of migrating swarms, or their continued absence for years or even decades, no one can at present offer in answer much more than a mere show of probabilities. It is evident that the whole question is becoming too urgent to wait for private investigation to solve it. The claims which an agricultural population of at least thirteen States and Territories may justly urge upon the National Government in this regard, have been fully set forth during the past season; but purely in the interest of science, if for no other reason, we might fairly ask that some portion of the sums annually devoted to national discovery might be expended upon the further elucidation of a subject which touches us so nearly and so powerfully. Having at hand the time, the place, and the opportunity, we might at least attempt the solution of some questions which the Old World has been obliged to leave unanswered for a thousand years. We might, perhaps, learn enough of the causes of locust invasions to know in what years such invasions would become probable, and enough of their origin to say whether prevention is possible or impossible.

THE EVIL AS IT APPEARS IN MINNESOTA.

The growth and habits of the young locust as it appears in the cultivated regions, have been so fully described of late years, (particularly in the seventh and eighth annual reports of the State Entomologist of Missouri, Prof. Ch. V. Riley,) that it seems im-

---

systematic and connected view of the locust evil in general see a paper contained in the Report (for 1876) of the Hon. Commissioner of Statistics of Minnesota, Dr. J. B. Phillips. Notice is particularly called to a chronological table published therein. It will be seen that there is no state or territory west of the Mississippi that is not in the "grasshopper regions," and no year since 1863 that has not been a locust year. The year 1871 should be included in the table, for reasons stated in this report.

possible to add much that can contribute to that practical end which the farmer has in view, the protection of his crops from the locusts which hatch in his immediate vicinity. If anything practical is still to be expected in this direction it ought to come from those who are brought face to face with the young locust, and are obliged to act upon knowledge gained upon the spot. Enough has been learned already to make it certain that almost any community may, by enlisting all the forces at its disposal, effect a measurable saving of its crops, and that the evil, if it could be confined to the locusts that hatch here, might be practically eradicated in a few years at most. But there is a growing apprehension in the minds of the people of Minnesota, brought about mostly by a consideration of events occurring in our own state only, and that too only within the last four years, that we are more liable to locust invasions than other states; that the locust evil may become a permanent one here even without reinforcements from abroad, and that its area may gradually extend until it covers regions still unknown to it. This apprehension is increased by the fact that the invasion of the present year has reached, (to the south of St. Paul,) about one degree of longitude farther east than it has ever been known to extend before. It is possible that Minnesota may, from its geographical position, suffer from locust invasions more frequently in the long run of fifty or a hundred years than Kansas or Manitoba, though a history of the last twenty years shows no special preponderance in favor of either state; it is possible that its cold climate, and the high and dry soil of its southwestern counties may furnish a more congenial and permanent home to the swarms that breed here, though the events of the last four years, when fairly considered, show that even here there is a constant decrease in the numbers of such swarms as remain; and finally the history of the whole Mississippi Valley shows that the Rocky Mountain Locust is confined on the east by a tolerably well defined limit which up to the present time, neither invading swarms, nor their progeny have essentially altered. Upon all these points entomologists are repeatedly called to express their opinions, which have been freely and in most cases cautiously given; and these opinions are in turn repeatedly called into question by those who persist in mistaking opinion for prophecy, or in applying a general rule to a limited area, or to a particular year. But it is evident that there is still room for the study of the physical character of the locust, and of the geographical, geological, climatic or other causes by which it is influenced.

HISTORY OF PAST INVASIONS.

Until within the last four years the migratory species of locusts has been so infrequent and transient a visitor in Minnesota, that the details of its former visits are almost forgotten. There is no definite knowledge of any such visit down to the year 1855, unless the ravages committed in the Red River Settlement in 1818 and 1819 may be said to concern this State. But the statement of Capt. Jonathan Carver in 1766, in regard to the large swarms which "infest these parts and the interior colonies" shows the occasional presence of the migratory locust, although it is hard to say exactly what localities are referred to. But late in July, 1856, invading swarms came from the Northwest into the Upper Mississippi Valley, and gradually spread along the river during the season, much the same as they have done in the past summer, and reaching nearly the same limits. The injury was, of course, felt most severely along the Mississippi and the cultivated region adjacent, but the locusts are said to have appeared along the Minnesota River, in the Yellow Medicine country, and at various points in the northwestern counties of the State. It is probable that the northwestern part of the State was swept over by migrating swarms during the summer, much the same as in the present year. But few traces of these were seen in the following year, except along the Upper Mississippi, where the damage was even greater than the year before. A general flight took place in July, and the direction of the departure was to the south and southwest generally, and was, perhaps, the occasion of the injury done in Iowa that year.

Again, in 1864, swarms appeared early in July, along the Upper Minnesota river, and spread eastward gradually during the season, and reached about as far east as in 1874, *i. e.*, to the third tier of towns in Le Sueur county. Scattering swarms also visited Manitoba in the same year, and probably some portions of these reached Northwestern Minnesota, for we hear of slight appearances of them in the Red River and the Sauk Valleys in 1864 and 1865. But the greater portion of the injury was done in the Minnesota Valley, and was followed by a general departure to the southwest in 1865. The injury in Colorado also was very severe in the same years, but there seems to have been no large movement to the eastward, such as occurred later, in 1866 and 1867.

It seems very likely that the swarms which entered Minnesota in 1864 were hatched at no great distance, and were the offspring of swarms that had alighted in eastern Dakota in the preceding year. This may perhaps be inferred from the following letter of the Rev. S. R. Riggs, missionary at the Sisseton Indian Agency, dated Sept. 9, 1875:

> "In 1863, it will be remembered, that on Gen. Sibley's expedition to the Missouri we met with the *ravages* of the grasshoppers in various parts of Dakota, particularly, as I remember, near Skunk Lake (in Minnehaha county) where the large grass had been eaten to the bare stalks, and our animals fared badly." He adds:
>
> "In 1865, I visited a camp of Dakota scouts, near the 'Hole in the Mountain,' at the head of the Redwood. That was in the month of August. The valley of the Minnesota clear out to the Coteau was so full of grasshoppers as to make it unpleasant traveling. For the next four years, I traveled every summer on the Missouri River, coming over to and from Minnesota. Every season I met with grasshoppers at some point on the east side of the Missouri. In 1867, and also in 1868, we found them near Fort Randall. In 1869, in August, we met them above Fort Sully, near Grand River. In all these cases, they were only in small battalions, and appeared to have come there from other parts."

Again, in 1871, slight and scattering swarms of locusts appeared in Stearns, Todd, Douglas, Pope, Otter Tail, Becker and Polk counties, and perhaps in others. In all these counties they were in sufficient numbers to make themselves noticeable, and in some cases crops were injured, or a few eggs laid; but the occurrence would have been mostly forgotten by this time if it had not been brought to mind by more recent events.

The invasion of 1873 was something unusual in its character from the earliness of its arrival, the direction from which it came, and from the fact that it was the beginning of a visitation which has been prolonged to the present time by what, judging from former years, would appear to be unusual circumstances. Each summer since 1873, instead of being the scene of a general departure of the hatching swarms as in former years, has seen portions of these alighting but a few miles from where they were hatched, (generally in the next range of counties, and sometimes in other parts of the same county,) and depositing eggs for another brood. In addition to these, new swarms coming in from the northwest in 1874 and again in 1876, have added greatly in the area of devastation in both these years, and in the latter year to the area of egg-deposit.

MINNESOTA AS A BREEDING GROUND OF THE LOCUST.

Without saying anything for the present about the new coming swarms, the history of those that have bred inside the State since 1873 has been as follows: They reached the southwestern corner of the state about the first of June, 1873, brought by a wind that had been blowing freshly from the southwest for several days. During June and July, they spread themselves over the whole or portions of fourteen different counties, lying adjacent to each other, and throughout all this area locusts were found to be hatching in 1874. On acquiring wings, these flew northward early in July, and portions of them alighted in the range of counties next beyond those they had already occupied, leaving vacant the ground they had covered on hatching. By the 15th of July they had entered Blue Earth, Nicollet, McLeod and Renville counties. By the latter date, new swarms had begun to pour in from the northwest, and passed over the western counties to the southward. That these additional swarms did not add much to the stock of eggs deposited by our own brood is probable, for two or three reasons; first, because their progress, so far as it could be traced, was entirely across the state, and even across most of western Iowa, before laying eggs; and secondly, because the principal hatching-ground of 1875 was precisely in those counties which had been already occupied by our own stock in 1874 (before the arrival of new comers) with some slight additions to the eastward. Eggs were also laid, later in the season, in scattered spots in some of the northern counties, and in six towns in Meeker county, by swarms coming in from the northwest about the first of August. But the greater portion of the locusts hatched in 1875 were found along the Minnesota River, and these on flying moved southward, and alighted in the range of counties next beyond those they had just occupied, where they remained and deposited eggs during July and August. Of the swarms hatched from these last spring (1876) some flew away to the southward early in July, while others flew northward, some alighting along the Minnesota, and others moving still further north. Other swarms also came from the west, from the Red River valley, into several of the northern counties, and were probably a portion of those that hatched along the Red River. By the 10th of July all these had made their appearance in thirteen counties besides those in which they were hatched, but generally in small and scattered bodies, and in only two or three towns in a county; they were most numerous in Renville, Douglas, and Otter Tail counties.

The object of the preceding paragraph is to show that it is probable that the locusts which hatched in Minnesota last Spring were to a considerable extent the descendants of the swarms which entered the State in 1873. However unimportant it may seem, it has a certain value if it enables us to judge of the effect upon the Rocky Mountain locust resulting from a four years' continuous breeding in our climate.

DEGENERATION.

So much has been said of late years of the tendency of the migratory locust to "degenerate" in the more easterly and southerly portion of the area visited by it, and this theory has been considered by our people so complete a failure, that it is worth while to state exactly what the theory is, and how truly it applies to our State. It might have been submitted at the start that opinions based upon a consideration of events still occurring, and more or less liable to be modified by new circumstances, should not be pressed too far nor too literally; and it was just that in judging as to the correctness of these opinions, that they should have been fairly stated. I give them in the briefest form in which I find them: "There is nothing more certain than that the insect is not autochthonous in West Missouri, Kansas, Nebraska, Iowa, or even Minnesota, and that when forced to migrate from its native home, from the causes already mentioned, it no longer thrives in this country." (Riley's Seventh Annual Report, p. 165.) It will be noticed that Dakota and Colorado are not included in this list; that Minnesota is to some extent excepted, and that, though not directly stated in the sentence quoted, the application is to swarms breeding one year after another in the regions mentioned, and not to such fierce hordes as have swept down upon us from the northwest in the summers of 1874 and 1876. The discouraging events of the last four years have served to confuse the question, and it is no wonder that our farmers, seeing the considerable numbers that have remained to breed here from one year to another, with the intolerable numbers that have been added in two out of four seasons, should come to believe that Providence has given over one half of our state to be henceforth the perpetual home of the locust. We have a series of occurrences so different from those of Missouri, Kansas and Nebraska, that it seems hard to account for them on any basis of mere accident or of which way the wind happens to blow when our swarms are ready to migrate.

The winds which sweep clean away the hatching swarms of the more southern states carry our own but a few miles from their birth place. It is evident that they are not detained here merely by abundance of food, for the swarms of Kansas and Missouri leave behind them fields as rich as ours; nor by force of winds, for the same winds that bring down upon us invaders born hundreds of miles away, and carry them across our state and into more southerly regions, might also carry with them the broods of our own hatching. I believe it is not as yet fully known what connection there may be between the migrations of the locust and its season of egg-laying, but it seems that some cause for the fact that portions of our swarms remain here to breed can be found in an early stage of egg-laying. Here again we have a difference between our own broods, and not only the new swarms that come in upon us from the mountain regions, but also those which leave the more southerly regions and fly to the northwest on acquiring wings. As for the latter, in the flight from the Missouri Valley northward in 1875, Prof. Riley was able to learn of no case of their depositing eggs, nor were the hatching grounds, (outside of Minnesota,) of last spring found to be anywhere in the vicinity of those of 1875; as for the swarms that have descended upon us during the summer, I have not been able to learn of any deposit of eggs whatever in any of their stopping places on their way toward this state, and even on arriving here it was evident in most cases that they had not yet reached the season of egg-laying. Between the 17th and the 31st of July there was a gradual movement, apparently of new-comers, across the state towards Iowa, and the egg-laying did not become general until about the latter date. Between the first and sixth of August other swarms came in, and these again in most cases did not begin to lay until a week or more after their arrival. Still others came in later, and the laying was kept up until late in September and was seen to occur in October, or as long as the locust remained alive. On the other hand our own stock were seen in 1875 to be laying within eight days after their flight commenced and in the places where they first alighted, and during the past season the laying had already begun on the third of July and by the tenth had become general in the western part of Nicollet county, within a few miles from their hatching-ground, and within two weeks from the time when the flying began. This early period of laying may be of itself a sufficient cause for portions of our swarms remaining here, while the less mature pass on.

NATURAL DECREASE FROM ONE YEAR TO ANOTHER.

But though portions remain, there is no increase in their numbers from one year to another. So far from holding its own, the locust has seen its breeding grounds decrease from nearly fourteen counties in 1873, to some seven and a half counties in 1874, and about five and a half counties in 1875; and in this latter area though able to inflict serious damage in many places (owing chiefly to the small acreage planted) they were in other places noticeably fewer than in former years.

This continuous decrease has resulted from several causes, and the first of these is the early stage of laying just alluded to, by means of which considerable numbers of locusts have hatched out during the last two autumns, and have died without reproducing themselves. In this connection, the state of Minnesota has an advantage over more southerly regions, in the fact that we are situated nearer to the breeding-grounds of invading swarms. Of these the earlier comers are more likely to pass over us before reaching the full period of their development, while the later comers are cut off by our earlier frosts; and of the eggs which are left with us, being deposited earlier in the season, more are likely to hatch in the fall and become harmless. On the other hand, the invaders are more likely to mass their forces in more southerly states, reach them in full maturity, and remain later in the season, while the eggs, being deposited later than ours, remain mostly unhatched until spring. These considerations enable us to understand why certain counties in Missouri, where the locusts hatched in 1875, presented in May such a picture of devastation and desolation as Minnesota has never seen in all its locust experience.

But while becoming prematurely developed, (if this is a correct expression of the facts as stated,) the locust had also become shorter lived. One year ago, there was hardly such a thing as a Rocky Mountain locust to be found in Minnesota by the first of September. The swarms that had hatched along the Minnesota River in the spring, and had alighted but a few miles further to the south in July, had almost totally perished in August, without extending the territory of their occupation more than the width of one county beyond the area which they covered on alighting. And in this connection we owe more to the Tachina maggot than many are willing to allow. But of the invading swarms of the present year, though large numbers of the bodies of the dead could be found in the fields early in September, (something unusual, from the fact that heretofore they have hardly ever been found at all,) large numbers remained alive until they were killed by frost, and even then died with eggs unlaid.

Still another effect of naturalization during the last four years is an apparent change in character, slight in itself, but showing what the tendency would be if the locust were to continue to breed here. While it has lost some portion of its inclination or its ability to migrate, it has also lost somewhat of its gregarious character. This was shown by the young locusts last spring, moving over the fields in scattered bodies, or in no bodies at all, a peculiarity so noticeable as to attract the attention of the farmers; by the movements of the swarms on leaving their hatching-grounds, in small squads and in various directions; and by the fact that where they alighted first they left their eggs promiscuously here and there in the grain fields, instead of in bodies and in selected spots as heretofore. There was no general flying from their hatching-ground in large bodies, mostly in one direction, as was the case in 1874 and 1875. By the last week in June they began to leave some places so imperceptibly that their departure could hardly be seen, though their numbers were noticeably diminished. For the first ten days of July, small squads went careering up and down, south of the Minnesota river, and wherever there was anything like a movement of large bodies they seem to have left the state to the northwest, west, and southwest. In the meantime, others had spread themselves northward towards the North Pacific Railroad, and had alighted here and there in numbers sufficient to do considerable damage. But, judging from the occurrences up to the 10th of July, had it not been for new-comers, next year would have seen the insects so few and so scattered as to be incapable of great damage, and they might become, in a year or two, as flitting and as unnoticeable as the Red-Legged Locust that breeds with us every year.

Probably this is all that can be made of the "degeneration" of the locust so far as observed in Minnesota. It had not become so impaired in strength nor so diminished in numbers as not to prove a serious evil wherever it alighted or laid eggs. It was however decreasing in numbers, and gradually becoming less capable of reproducing itself. Something might perhaps be added in regard to changes in color and appearance; while the locusts which hatched in Minnesota last spring had when fully developed something of the darkness and dullness of old age, the brightness and fierceness of the fresh invaders was apparent to every one.

The facts stated show the general tendency, but there is a more vital question than the tendency of the locust to degenerate here. How long the state will continue to be one of the breeding-grounds of the locust, is simply how long new hordes will continue to sweep over us and leave here fresh seeds of future devastation.

Nothing is more certain than that we might, by general and continued effort, practically eradicate the offspring of almost any one year's invasion; nothing is more probable than that in almost any season, the whole body of our hatching swarms might be utterly swept away from our midst by favorable winds; and finally, if we may judge from the last four years, our breeding-swarms would decrease gradually from one year to another, and if not reinforced from abroad would finally become so few and so scattered as to be harmless.

ANNUAL DEPARTURE OF THE LOCUSTS.

Besides the causes of decrease already mentioned, still another has been found in the impulse which moves the locust to leave its birthplace on acquiring wings. The considerable numbers that have remained behind each year, have created the impression that none were gone, and that the locust had become a permanent appendage of the state. But a collection of various items for the last three years, together with letters received from the eastern tier of counties in Dakota, shows that considerable numbers have left the state, generally to the northwest in 1874, and in various directions during the past summer. But, with Dogberry, we have been content to "take no note of him, but let him go, and thank God we were rid of a knave." It is only within the last year or two that it has become fully apparent that the final destination of these departing swarms is an important consideration, and one which serves to complicate the locust question more deeply than ever.

Whether or not it is a general rule that the locusts on acquiring wings seek the direction from which their parents had come in the preceding year, (a rule which the experience of Minnesota fails to substantiate,) it is at least certain that in 1875 "the main direction taken by the insects that rose from the lower Missouri valley country was northwesterly." (Riley's 8th Ann. Report, p. 105.) These swarms were traced by Prof. Riley, moving northerly from the end of May, through June and into July, and passing various points in Dakota, Wyoming and Montana.*

---

* He adds (page 108) "nor can I learn of any instance where these swarms that left our territory deposited eggs." The different case of our own breed of locusts, laying eggs within two weeks after the flying commences, is remarkable. But I am informed by Captain J. S. Poland, commanding at Standing Rock, that a swarm from the south alighted near that post, July 4th, 1875, and deposited considerable quantities of eggs between the 4th and the 18th of July.

They passed northward over Bismarck at various times between June 6th and July 15th. (Same report, p, 86.) But a still more definite statement as to the final destination of these northward moving swarms is found in an editorial of the Winnipeg *Standard,* of August 19, 1876, entitled "Locust Flights." It is there stated that in 1875,

> "The locusts which hatched in Missouri, Kansas and Nebraska, in an area of 250 miles from east to west, and 300 miles from north to south, took flight in June, and invariably went northwest, and fell in innumerable swarms upon the regions of British America, adjoining Forts Pelly, Carlton and Ellice, covering an area as large as that they vacated on the Missouri River. They were reinforced by the retiring column from Manitoba, and it seemed to be hoping against hope that the new swarms of 1876 would not again descend upon the settlements in the Red River valley. Intelligence was received here that the insects took flight from the vicinity of Fort Pelly on the 10th of July, and then followed a fortnight of intense suspense."

There is of course in all this a failure to connect by any direct chain of continued observations the swarms that left the Mississippi valley in 1875 and those which finally disappeared in the region of the mountains and in British America; still less is it shown that those swarms were the parents of those which are known to have hatched in the same regions in 1876, or even that those which are known to have hatched there were those which descended upon the lower country in July and August. But there is at least a strong series of probabilities.

A great deal has been said within the past two years about the practical help which the general government may perhaps find itself able to extend to the people of the Mississippi valley by attacking the locust in its native breeding-places, and it has been considered possible that some means might eventually be discovered of preventing or at least mitigating such inroads as that which has just ended. But if the events of 1875 and 1876 have any such connection as is claimed for them in the preceding paragraph, if the more northern and western breeding-grounds of the locust are recruited from the lower cultivated regions in alternate years, the problem of how to give practical help to the farmer will be greatly simplified. It would be hard to imagine a method of extirpating the swarms or the eggs of a hurrying insect from an extended area, or perhaps several such areas, of mountains and deserts, the resort of wild beasts and savages, where only armed bands can maintain a foothold; and on the other hand it would be hard for the government to find a time better fitted to begin the extermination of the locust than when the mountain region must be measurably depleted of its stock, nor a place better situated for the warfare than a region where, with any fair assurance of conquering a peace, every inhabitant stands ready to do battle.

STARTING POINTS OF INVADING SWARMS IN 1876.

Besides the region named in the article above quoted from the Winnipeg *Standard*, various parts of Montana are known to have been considerable hatching-grounds during the past spring. In the Bismarck *Tribune* of June 14th is found the following, which is quoted because it gives an idea not only of the place but of the nature of a breeding-ground:

> "IN THE FIELD, NEAR ROSEBUD BUTTES, May 29, 1876.
>
> "As we move westward the grazing improves, and here in the Little Missouri Valley the season is at least a month in advance of the season on the Missouri. This would be a splendid grazing region, were the water good. The grass is heavy and nutritious, but the water is strongly impregnated with alkali. Millions of locusts are just now making their appearance in this region. Too young to fly or do much harm, in a few days, should the winds favor them, they will sweep down upon the defenceless agriculturalists on the border, doing untold damage."

Officers who passed over the country between the Little Missouri and the Yellowstone rivers during the spring, state that at various points in that region young locusts were found in immense numbers. Shortly before the 23d of July, migrating swarms of locusts appeared in the vicinity of Gen. Crooks' camp; "myriads of grasshoppers filled the air, appearing like an immense drifting snow-storm, trending toward the southeast, and apparently taking advantage of a northwest wind to favor their flight to the same fields that they have effectually devastated for two consecutive seasons." (Extract from a letter of July 23d, quoted in the *Pioneer-Press and Tribune.*)

MOVEMENTS OF SWARMS OUTSIDE OF MINNESOTA.

It is difficult to show any eastward movement across Dakota of these swarms that hatched in Montana. At Standing Rock, the movement was from the north. On the 19th of July, quite a large number were observed coming from the north, and by the 26th had about all disappeared from the vicinity of that station. Capt. Poland states that the main body appeared to pass to the west of that station, moving south. No eggs were laid at Standing Rock, or in the immediate region. At Fort Sully, as shown by the records of the Signal Observer, the locusts appeared at various dates from the 14th to the 30th of July, and again from the 10th of August till September 2d ; but whenever the direction of their flight is given, it is to the northwest. No eggs were known to be deposited there. At Lower Brule Agency, on the 29th of July, an immense swarm alighted from a westerly direction, and flew again to the northwest, after remaining five days. At different times during the month of August, small swarms, coming from a westerly direction, alighted and died there. No eggs deposited. At Yankton, the course was generally south, through the flying-season.

It is probable that both in 1874 and 1876 the swarms that came into this state, at least in the earlier part of the season, were hatched in or near British America. This is to be inferred from the direction of their coming, the fact that we know of extensive hatching-grounds in British America in both these years, and that we know of no nearer hatching-ground. There is here also a failure to connect Minnesota with any known breeding-place by any continuous observations. But it is known at least that at Bismarck swarms passed south at various times during July, 1876. At Jamestown, (on the N. P. Ry., east of Bismarck,) a large swarm coming from the northwest on the 12th of July, dropped and remained until the 24th when they left, going south. On the 14th of August a very large swarm passed over southward without alighting. At Worthington, D. T., (still farther east, on the Northern Pacific Railroad,) the first flight appeared from the south on the 25th of June, stayed about 24 hours and on a change of wind went south. For the next six weeks locusts passed over that station in various directions.

At Fort Totten, "in the summer of 1875, grasshoppers hatched in the vicinity of the post, took wing in June, and left in the beginning of July. In 1876, there was no hatching, but they came and departed without doing material damage. They always go and come with the wind. They came about the middle of July, and left in about four days; came again two weeks afterwards and left without depositing any eggs. Swarms generally came from the northwest. They often pass over in large numbers without doing damage."

L. C. HUNT,
Lieut. Col. 20th Inf.

ENTRANCE OF INVADING SWARMS.

The rate at which swarms have been pouring into the state during the summer, may be judged from notes taken at points along the western line of the state of Minnesota, and from the eastern tier of counties in Dakota. I give them in regular succession, from Pembina southward:

Pembina, D. T., Aug. 31, 1876.—"No locusts hatched near here, and no eggs now deposited."—W. R. Goodfellow.

July 8.—"Grasshoppers first observed to-day. They could scarcely be seen with the naked eye, but by using colored eye-glasses they were made plainly visible. They were in great numbers, flying very high, far above cumulus clouds, and in a northeasterly direction."

July, 9.—"Grasshoppers flying northeast.

July 11.—"Grasshoppers, flying high, and moving southeast, were observed in great numbers."

July 12.—"Grasshoppers still appear moving south-southeast, flying very high; can scarcely be seen with the naked eye"

July 13.—"Grasshoppers still continue to be seen moving south by east."

July 17.—"Grasshoppers noted to-day, moving southeast, in greater numbers than heretofore, and flying considerably lower. None have as yet alighted."

July 20.—"Grasshoppers continue to fly over this place, moving from the northwest."—Records of the Signal Observer, J. Kabernagle.

Grand Forks, Grand Forks county, D. T. (nearly opposite Crookston) Aug. 28, 1876.—"A few locusts were hatched here and flew to the southeast early in July.

"A few lit on the 9th of July. They came from the north before alighting, but on the 8th the same grasshoppers flew north and returned next day, a few alighting, and all left on the 10th, without doing any injury—direction southeast.

"From the 10th, all through the month of July, when the weather was fine and clear, and the wind from the north or northwest, more or less of them flew over, moving in a southerly or southeasterly direction. But in no instance have I seen very heavy clouds of them until the 4th and 5th of August, when I was out on the head waters of the Turtle and Big Sault, from thirty-five to forty miles west and northwest of this place, I saw them moving in a southeasterly direction, in thicker and heavier clouds than I ever before saw grasshoppers flying. On the evening of the 5th it rained, and a considerable portion of them fell, and rose next day, moving in the same direction as before. And, strange to say, they rose without much sunshine, as the day was cloudy, and the sun showed itself only at intervals, and that for a few minutes at a time. I never saw them move before except upon a clear, sunshiny day, with a wind favorable to the direction in which they wanted to move. None lit near the Red River at this time.

"I do not think that any eggs have been laid here by those alighting in July, nor by those alighting on the 5th of August, west of here thirty-five or forty miles."—Hector Bruce.

Crookston, Polk Co., Minn., Sept. 2, 1876.—"On July 10th and 11th, swarms of 'hoppers came from the southwest, and lit at Crookston and vicinity, remaining two and a half days, and without doing any damage worth noticing; they were pairing. They got up on the third day, and went northeast. Three days later, a large swarm passed over us, going east of southeast, coming from the north. July 31st, a few lit here from the west, but doing no damage. August 10th, a few straggling ones came from the north, until August 15th, when they disappeared, going south."—Ross and Walsh.

Caledonia, Traill Co., D. T., (a few miles south of Crookston,) Aug. 30th, 1876.—"No locusts hatched here in the spring, nor were any eggs deposited. They began to fly over about July 5th, generally going south or southwest, and for ten days there was hardly a day but what we could see some flying, most always going south."—Ara Sargeant.

Fargo, Cass county, D. T., Aug. 31, 1876.—"A few locusts were hatched here, and flew northeast on acquiring wings. A large swarm alighted on the 18th, and remained two days, without doing much damage. During the last half of July, and until August 5th, extensive swarms were passing over this county. Their destination was determined by the direction of the wind, either northwest or southeast.

"I cannot learn that any eggs have been laid here this season."—A. J. Harwood.

Breckenridge, Minn., Sept. 27, 1876.—"Grasshoppers hatched here from May 23d onward.

June 27.—"First seen flying to-day, few in numbers, going with the wind, from northwest to southeast, between 11 A. M. and 2 P. M.

July 4.—"Flying in great numbers this forenoon from 9 to 11:30, going from the north with the wind.

July 11.—"Hoppers coming down in swarms this forenoon, and flying from the north.

July 12.—"Hoppers left to-day, going south, as there was a strong wind blowing from the north all day.

July 19.—"Hoppers flying from the northwest to-day, in millions. Seen first about 9 A. M., and kept going until sundown; largest swarm seen yet, and looked like a great drift of snow.

July 22.—"A few hoppers seen to-day, flying between 10 A. M. and 3 P. M., from the north, slowly.

July 23.—"Hoppers flying from 9 A. M. to 5 P. M, from the north and northeast, but not in great numbers as on other days, none of them coming down.

July 24.— "Hoppers returning to-day, coming from the southeast, flying with the wind; began moving about 10 A. M. and till 4 P. M. None came down.

Aug. 1.—"Hoppers have appeared again in millions, coming from the north; are destroying the crop in Minnesota and Dakota. But few of them are rising to-day, as the weather is cloudy.

Aug. 8.—"Hoppers still remain, and are destroying everything, crop, vegetables and grass. A few seen flying during the entire day, from the southeast.

Aug. 6.—"Hoppers began to leave about 10 A. M., going southwest; wind very light, and from the west. First seen depositing eggs to-day.

Aug. 7, 9, 10, and 12.—"Hoppers seen flying in small numbers from the southeast; still remain here, depositing eggs."—From the Records of the Signal Observer, M. L. Hearne, M. D.

Wahpeton, Richland Co., D. T., (opposite Breckenridge,) Aug. 30, 1876.—"A few locusts hatched here; so few that the dates of their hatching or departure was unnoticed. Eggs were laid only in scattering spots, after August 1st. They left before the egg-laying was finished."—D. Wilmot Smith.

Sisseton Agency, D. T., (opposite Big Stone Co., Minn.,) Aug. 12, 1876.—"In the upper portions of the Reservation, twenty-five miles north of the Agency, a small quantity of grasshoppers were hatched, in the latter part of May, and destroyed several grain fields and gardens. At different times in the month of July, we saw them flying over, sometimes in large numbers. Only a few straggling ones came down. The direction has generally been from a point south of southwest.

"On Sabbath, the 30th of July, we had a visitation all over the Reserve. They came down like snowflakes in winter, and covered the earth. Garden vegetables, especially beans and onions, were eaten up to the roots. Corn was pretty much destroyed, and potatoes and oats were very much damaged. The wheat was generally ripe, and but little eaten. They commenced leaving about twenty-four hours after they came, but it was the last of the week before we were free from them. They left on the same line on which they came, going towards the northeast or east of northeast. They were probably the same that have lately visited Herman and Morris, on the St Paul & Pacific Railroad. I understand they were quite as thick to the west of us, twenty miles, as here."—Rev. S. R. Riggs.

[These swarms appear to have reached Ortonville, Big Stone county, about the first, Herman on the third, and Morris on the fifth of August. They came eastward from the James river. The settlers along the James river state that no locusts were hatched there, and that all that appeared there during the season came from the northwest.]

GARY, DEUEL Co., D. T., (Opposite Yellow Medicine Co., Minn.) Dec. 8th, 1876. "No locusts were hatched in this county last spring. The first flying swarm appeared in the latter part of June, flying northwest and did no alight. July 20 a very large swarm came from the southwest and went northeast; a few stopped and remained about 24 hours.

"August 15, they flew very thick, the largest swarm I ever saw. They came from the northwest and flew southeast. This swarm, as near as I can learn, was about 20 miles wide. [This probably furnished a portion of the swarms which reached Le Sueur, Mankato, and other points to the east and southeast on the 18th of August.] August 19th a swarm flew from north to south. August 24th a small swarm passed from northwest to southeast; and again in the same direction on the the 30th of August. On September 4th, 5th, 7th, and 9th small and scattering squads flew over to the southeast."—H. H. Herrick.

Medary, Brookings Co., D. T., (opposite Lincoln Co., Minn.,) August 30, 1876.—"The hoppers hatched last spring in this county and the northern half of Moody county. These became fully developed from the 25th of June to July 1st, and on the days between those dates they left in great clouds. The favorable winds for them seemed to be from north, northwest or northeast. They seemed inclined to go southwest.

"From July 1st until now the hoppers have been seen flying overhead nearly every day, moving with the wind, most numerous always with northerly wind. These alighted only once or twice in July, but only in small numbers, and remained only a short time.

"On Saturday, July 22d, very dense clouds passed over, (some so low as almost to darken the atmosphere,) with a northeast wind. They were going west. I have since learned that they rose from Minnesota, from the State line eastward.

"On Saturday, August 5th, very great swarms passed from west to east. At that time many alighted on the prairies, but not many in the settlement. The next morning, Sunday, I drove from Medary to Oakwood, about 18 miles north, and when about half way, I could see, for a distance of thirty miles up and down the valley of the river, dense clouds of hoppers rising. I have since learned that they extended more than 40 miles south of here, and I know more than 20 miles north, making a belt more than sixty miles wide.

"These I note as remarkable displays of hoppers. They could be seen every day, in what any reasonable man would call sufficient numbers. No eggs were laid in this county so far as heard from."—Rev. G. S. Codington.

Flandrau, Moody county, D. T. (opposite Pipestone county, Minn.) Sept. 12, 1876.—"A few hoppers hatched here, but did little damage, and flew to the south and southwest with the army which came over in July.

"The first flying over came about the 21st of July, from a northeast course, and that was the time they visited our crops and made a general raid. Since that time to the first of September, they have been flying more or less, but have done no great harm.

August 6.—"They passed over in large swarms to the southeast. These did us little harm. They have laid eggs to a limited extent in our county."—M. D. L. Pettigrew.

It will be seen from this that swarms from some source or other began to cross the state line to the eastward on July 8th, at Pembina, and that, as a general rule, the date of arrival of large swarms becomes later in the season the farther southward the point of arrival moves. And all these are only the incomings of swarms noticed at prominent points on the border; how many more have crossed or recrossed at other places where there was no one to report their comings, can only be guessed at from the immense clouds that have rolled over the state, passing and repassing each other to the south and east, from the 20th of July to the first week of September. At least one large swarm, in addition to those already recorded, must have entered somewhere to the northwest of Douglas county, shortly before the 18th of August. But whatever form or continuity these bodies may have had before reaching the state, it was soon lost after their arrival. It is not easy to trace them, even from one county to another, as they passed over ground already occupied by earlier comers. All we can say is, that there were extensive movements in certain directions, on certain days.

MOVEMENT OF SWARMS WITHIN THE STATE.

The movement of the various swarms of our own hatching early in the season has been already given. By the 10th of July the counties to the south of the Minnesota river were generally free from locusts, and had begun to congratulate themselves on their delivery. Between the 10th and the 20th the locusts had begun to increase largely in numbers in the northern counties, but the fact that additions had already begun from abroad was not generally known. The greater portion of these had begun to move southward by the latter date and passed various points between Lac qui Parle and Madelia on or soon after July 20th. They passed gradually along over the counties that had been injured during the spring by our own stock, and by the first of August had reached the southern line of the state and many had passed on into Iowa. As they moved along, portions remained behind here and there, but there was no extensive deposit of eggs until they reached the southern half of the lower range of counties in the state. It seems probable that these bodies also brought with them to the southward, parts of our own hatching swarms that had flown northward early in the month. But by the twentieth of the month the locusts had mostly disappeared from along the lines of the Saint Paul and Pacific, and the Saint Paul and Sioux City Railroads, and there were congratulations once more that "the hoppers were gone." A line showing the eastern limit of their raids at this date would pass, generally speaking, along the eastern boundary of Todd county, through Stearns, Meeker, the eastern part of McLeod, through Sibley, Nicollet, and the northwest corner of Blue Earth, and in Martin county as far east as Fairmont.

Between the end of July and the sixth of August, new swarms had been collecting in Otter Tail, Grant, Stevens, and Big Stone counties, and in some of the eastern counties of Dakota; and on the latter date, a wind from the northwest gave these an opportunity they had apparently been waiting for, and there was a general flying to the east and southeast, over a large portion of the western half of the state. In the southwestern counties, where the new-comers could be traced directly back to Dakota, there was very little alighting, and they mostly passed over into northwestern Iowa. By this raid of the sixth of August, the area of visitation was extended eastward to St. Cloud, into Wright and Le Sueur counties, and across Blue Earth and Martin counties. After the sixth of August, clear weather and favorable winds, at various dates, carried the line still further eastward, as on the eleventh, the fourteenth, and especially on the eighteenth of August, when large swarms flew over Elk River, Monticello, Glencoe, Shakopee, Blakeley, Belle Plaine, Le Sueur, Mankato, and Blue Earth City, and one flight was seen as far east as Hastings. During the week ending August 26th, they were seen flying over or alighting at various times in Rice, Waseca, Steele, Faribault and Freeborn counties, and are said to have appeared over Rochester. By the first of September they had added Waseca, Freeborn, Carver, and portions of Hennepin, Sherburne, and Benton counties to the "grasshopper regions," and some slight additions to the eastward have been made since the latter date.

The comparatively slow rate of progress to the eastward through the season is surprising, considering the long distances which the locust is supposed to travel, and the impression which one receives from seeing a swarm passing in one direction through an entire day. It is easy to imagine that such flights must have come immediately from British America or Montana, and that they will shortly reach Wisconsin and Illinois. But the locust, as it appears in our state, moves (with perhaps rare exceptions,) by day only and often for only a few hours in the day, and a halt for the night is easily prolonged by head winds or cloudy weather into a halt for several days; nor do the swarms move continually eastward, although the line of encroachment is continually moving in that direction.. In one case at least, a body that had moved easterly over a county on the 24th of August, returned directly west one week later. (Freeborn County *Standard*, editorial, Aug. 31, 1876.) There is no knowledge that any swarm has (in Minnesota) reached the Mississippi river south of Hastings.

But the general direction of movement since the twentieth of July has been to the southward and eastward. The experience of the summer has shown that the Big Woods offer no impassible barrier. Hitherto, the incoming swarms have reached about as far east (but not in great numbers) as Lake Washington, in Le Sueur county, longitude 16° 50' (nearly) west. They have reached this point toward the end of August, when impaired in strength and activity. But the invasion of the past summer has been characterized by the incoming of fresh and still active swarms late in August, and these have been carried by winds blowing freshly from the west, as far east as Mower county, longitude 16° west. It may be proved in future that the eastern limit of invasion is determined solely by the extent to which winds prevail from the west, together with the length of the season during which the locust retains its full activity and strength. The connection between the movements of the locust and the prevailing direction of the winds, seems likely to receive more attention than has hitherto been paid to it. While the timbered country of the northeastern part of the State has been but little infested, to any great distance east of the Mississippi, it may be said that that portion of the state does not lie in the direct line of invasions. There is nothing to show that swarms purposely turn aside from the heavily timbered regions and go elsewhere, although in partially timbered sections they alight mostly in the open farms. But, having once entered the timber, their progress is soon ended, and no more fortunate destination could be selected for our departing swarms than Northeastern Minnesota. Locusts have been quite numerous about Brainerd throughout the summer, since early in July, and their numbers were perceptibly increased on the sixth of August, apparently brought in by a strong wind from the southwest; but these evidently found their progress impeded by the timber, for they did not extend to any distance east of Brainerd, along the Northern Pacific Railroad, nor did they lay eggs extensively about Brainerd.

The connection between flying movements and the direction of the winds may be shown by the following diary kept by Lieut. R. B. Plotts, of Elk township, Nobles county:

July 5.—"Light wind; first flight came from the northeast, and commenced to settle down about 10 A. M.; attacked gardens first of all. They remained here till Sunday, the 9th, when in a brisk breeze from north-northwest, a light rain the night before, they flew from early in the morning till after sundown, and lit heavily south of me.

July 10.—"Wind southeast; flew heavily to the west, the highest appearing to sheer off southwest. Got a heavy light from those east of me.

July 13.—"Late in the afternoon wind suddenly veered to northeast, and they started immediately. Nearly all left me.

July 15.—"Wind north, veering to the east. Not a very heavy flight to the west.

July 16.—"Wind south-southeast. Still going west.

July 17.—"Wind east, trending north, showery. Before the showers commenced, could be seen going west. That ended the first raid. No more flying over till

July 20.—"Second raid came in on a west-northwest wind, and lit at night.

July 22.—"Wind north-northeast, heavy flight, and coming down all day.

July 23.—"Wind northeast, haling east. Heavy flight; came down heavily, and covered everything nearly.

July 24.—"Wind varying from north-northeast to east. Coming and going all day; some commenced laying eggs, which was kept up till this raid all left us.

July 27.—"Wind from north and east. Heavy flight, and most of them left here.

July 29.—"An east wind took all this raid away, the upper current being to the southwest. No more flights until

Aug. 6.—"Light wind from northwest. Another heavy raid came in. These remained till

Aug. 10.—"When wind again came from the northwest, and it rained. As soon as the shower was over and before the sun shone out, the hoppers started in heavy flight.

Aug. 12.—"The red mites were first noticed doing much damage to the eggs.

Aug. 13.—"Another showery day, and immediately after the rain they started south.

Aug. 14.—"Wind from north and north-northeast. They started early and before the sun came out, although it was quite cool; about all of this raid left.

Aug. 16.—"Very cloudy, with variable winds. Suddenly, while it was quite dark with clouds, the hoppers jumped up and flew off southwest; the very first puff of wind from the northeast, and they all left here.

Aug. 18.—"Wind again from the north. A very heavy flight passed over, high up in the air. None alighted. Red mites disappearing.

Aug. 23.—"Wind hauling to westward, and some few stragglers flew as near south as they could.

Aug. 24.—"Wind northwest. Grasshoppers very high and heavy flight to the southwest.

Aug. 25.—"Wind northwest Heavy flight to the southwest, very high.

Aug. 31.—"Showery for several days before; wind suddenly north-northwest, and by 10 A. M. many grasshoppers were flying. By noon, in the upper air and almost indistinguishable, was a heavy body going southwest. None lit here.

"On the dates intermediate between those given the wind was very light, and there were no flights, except perhaps short ones, from one part of a field to another.

"When the directions of flight are not expressly stated, they correspond almost exactly with the direction of the wind."

AREA OF THE PRESENT DEPOSIT OF EGGS.

A line showing the eastern limit of the area where eggs are now deposited in Minnesota would include (very nearly) the western tier of towns in Mower county, the western part of Steele, Rice, and Scott counties, the whole of Carver, the western part of Hennepin, along the river, (and in many places thickly in the timber farms,) in Sherburne and Benton counties, the southern part of Todd county, then westerly including Otter Tail, the southwestern part of Becker, and portions of Clay counties. To the south and west of this line the locusts have had possession of more or less of the state from the fourth of July to the first of October, and it would be difficult to specify with any exactness especially in the eastern part of this area, where eggs are most or least thickly laid. But the counties along the Red river from Glyndon to Lac qui Parle are comparatively free from eggs, unless in the eastern portions, and again many towns from Madelia westward in Watonwan, Cottonwood, Murray, Redwood, and the whole of Lyon and Lincoln counties are almost entirely free from eggs.

The accompanying map will show the areas of egg-deposit for the last four summers, but the lines must not be construed too exactly. They are intended to cover generally the outside limits As for the limit of the deposit during the present year, it is impossible to draw it exactly, and no doubt a few locusts will be found hatching in many spots next spring which lie to the east of this line. Late in the season, considerable numbers passed over Owatonna to the eastward, some over Mantorville, and possibly a few over Rochester, and these, perhaps, will be found to have alighted and laid eggs somewhere in the southeastern counties. On our borders eggs are laid in the southwestern counties of

Dakota as far north as Rock Co., Minnesota, and in Iowa as far east as Mower county.

PLACES WHERE EGGS ARE DEPOSITED.

These eggs have been deposited, as a general rule, in the vicinity of cultivated fields, and in each township the extent of the deposit is measured, in some degree, by the amount of land under cultivation. It is not presumable, at least, that wild prairies or lands lying far distant from tilled fields, are extensively filled with eggs. The locust is attracted and held by the growing crops, and it seems to be something more than a mere coincidence that the area devastated by the young in the spring does not become a laying-ground in the summer; this is especially true of the present year, and the same strip of country where the locusts hatched in the spring, and where the little that was planted, was mostly consumed by them, is at present exactly that portion of the infested area that is now most nearly free of eggs, although the deposit is abundant enough in the counties to the north and south of it. Nor do the prairies, when covered with grass, present many favorable situations for the deposit of eggs. The experience of the summer would seem to show that almost any bare, sunny spot, where the earth is hard enough or moist enough to retain the shape of a hole, is selected by the locust when she is ready to lay. To what extent the prairies in general are filled with eggs, cannot be told, of course, until the time of hatching arrives, but in the vicinity of cultivated fields the wild prairie has received its share of eggs. Throughout the whole area already given, with the exceptions named, there is hardly a town where the deposit was not so extensive by the first of October as to form one of the most serious of all considerations for next year's crop. These eggs are laid sometimes in ground so hard as to resist the point of a knife-blade, sometimes in sand-heaps so soft that the next shower washes off the sand and leaves the egg-cones standing like pegs in the ground; on knolls high and clear of all moisture, on sand-bars in the rivers, and in flats so low as to be overflowed by the next rain. But the most favorable spot of all, everywhere, is new breaking. Grain fields have generally suffered most damage on the sides nearest to new breaking, and, conversely, in new breaking more eggs are laid on the sides nearest to grain fields. In some counties, a large amount of new breaking has been done by non-residents, and will furnish a fruitful source of evil next spring. Of circulars sent to nearly all the infested towns to ascertain the extent to which eggs were deposited during the season, the following, from Blue Earth county, is a sample of all, as to the extent of the deposits, and the spots where they are situated:

Beauford.—"All over the town; not much in the stubble, but on all bare spots, such as sheep-pastures, between the rows of corn and potatoes, gardens, all places that were clean of weeds, river bottoms, where fed close, timothy stubble and road sides."—J. S. Larkin.

Butternut Valley.—"It would be difficult to run down a spade and turn the dirt anywhere in stubble, corn, potato fields, meadow, or road, without finding eggs. It seems as twenty to one before, and they destroyed everything."—Samuel D. Shaw.

Ceresco.—"Over the whole township, very thick in most places."—J. M. Mead.

Jamestown.—"They have deposited their eggs on nearly every farm in this township."—A. P. Davis.

Judson.—"They have laid eggs very extensively, especially on new breaking and roads, some in the stubble, grass, prairie and corn lands."—Humphrey H. Jones.

Leray.—"Eggs are laid on every clear, dry place in the town; mostly in corn fields, potato fields, gardens, and in the highway."—Ira B. Reynolds.

Lime.—"In the flats along the Minnesota river they are thicker than in the timber, but along the roads, and in old pastures, they are so thick that nobody can have an idea, unless he has seen it himself."—Jacob Born.

Mapleton.—"There is not a farmer but claims that every favorable spot on his farm is thoroughly peppered."—J. E. Brown.

Medo—"All timothy pastures, all new breaking, in the roads, and in some stubble to a limited extent—from 6 to 10 acres in each quarter."—B. F. Steadman.

Rapidan.—"Every favorable place is well filled; roadsides, tame pastures, and new breaking thickest, corn fields next, and stubble fields and unbroken prairie least."—James B. Swan.

Shelby.—"All along the highways and especially on all new breaking and old pastures, corn fields and prairie lands that are eaten out by pasturage, and in fact there is no such thing as exception from them."—Thomas J. Cross.

South Bend.—"Eggs are deposited in every rood of dry ground in the township."—D. P. Davis.

Sterling.—"In some places the eggs are stuck in very thick, but in the fields generally the eggs cannot be very thick. Still, in the aggregate there are very many, being everywhere, even in the timber."—N. A. Hunt.

Vernon Center.—"Eggs are deposited all over the township, and in some places very thick, seemingly no room for more, and in other places (wheat stubble,) not so many."—E. W. Washburn.

The laying this year seems to surpass that of former years not only in the area filled, but in the numbers deposited everywhere. This could hardly fail to be the case when the laying commenced early in July and was prolonged into September, and when some towns received deposits from two, three, or even four different bodies. Where new breaking was harrowed in the fall the eggs often appeared strewn on the surface as thickly as grain is sown; e. g., "I have just dragged a new piece of breaking, and the eggs were as thick as wheat sown at the rate of one and a half bushels per acre; but I think they are thicker on breaking than anywhere else. (S. S. Clevenger, town clerk of Bismarck, Sibley Co.)

TIME OF DEPOSITING EGGS.

The time when eggs have been deposited this year has been stated already. The time when, or rather the age at which the Rocky Mountain Locust deposits its eggs, is a different question. The same species has laid eggs in Kansas, this year, as late as the 13th of November, and may continue to lay in Texas as late as the first of December. (Riley's 7th Ann. Report, p. 192.) If the mission of the locust is to lay eggs once and die, what could be the time or place of birth of those insects which have apparently just reached maturity by the first of December? Although it has been considered possible that these are a second brood whose parents were hatched in the preceding April or May in Texas or Colorado, there is no knowledge of the time or place of any such second hatching. If these late laying swarms are such as those which come down from the Snowy Range in Colorado, in the latter part of August (vide N. C. Meeker, quoted in Riley's 8th Ann. Report, p. 84) it must be admitted that the mountain-born broods are a longer-lived and more vigorous race than any bred in Minnesota. Besides this, among the swarms which have come in upon us this year, many were found dying as late as October, containing eggs.

That the Rocky Mountain Locust lays eggs twice or three times in a lifetime, has been the result of some guess-work among our farmers, who considered it necessary in order to account for facts as they saw them. I give the result of a single experiment.

On the 25th of June, I shut up in wire gauze cages nine pupæ of the Rocky Mountain Locust. The bottoms of the cages were filled with earth packed hard, and the insects appeared to thrive in confinement. By the second of July they had all become perfect insects. By the 8th of July they commenced coupling, and were seen repeating the act for several days. On the 15th and 16th two of the females went through the form of depositing eggs, and I marked the place of deposit on the edge of the cage. The coupling was repeated again as before, until the third of August. At that date the coupling ended, and the locusts became almost inactive, and were seen to eat very rarely afterward.*

On the 14th of August one of the males died; the female died on the 9th of September, and was found to contain fourteen full sized eggs, but I found on examining the cage that there was also a full sized egg-cone where she had already appeared to deposit on the fifteenth of July. Of the rest of the Rocky Mountain Locusts the males were caged with some female Red-Legged Locusts caught in my garden, and although the two species did not seem inclined to have much commerce with each other, I saw one pair coupling. These observations are very slight and imperfect, but are given for whatever they may be worth. That the male dies first may be inferred not only by the above experiment, but from the fact that in September it was common to find many pairs coupled, of which the female was alive, but the male had died without releasing himself.

PARASITES AND ENEMIES.

The various insect enemies of the Rocky Mountain Locust have been described sufficiently for common information by Prof. Riley on pp. 44-46 of the "Report of the Proceedings of a

---

* The early part of this coupling season was one of the greatest activity on the part of these insects; they dashed themselves against the wire of their cages as though all space would be too small to contain them; there would be a flash of the wings, extended and closed again in an instant, or that movement of the hind legs known as "fiddling," which seemed to be a well known signal between the male and female. In cages, where several pairs were confined together, the male, while in the act of coupling, would repeat this movement, if brushed against by another.

Conference of the Governors of several Western States and Territories, at Omaha, Nebraska, in October, to consider the Locust Problem." As the descriptions are further illustrated by figures, and as the pamphlet is intended for public distribution it may serve to prevent some of the confused knowledge about these parasites and enemies which has heretofore prevailed to a considerable extent. The amount of help which may be expected, or has already been received, from these enemies of the locust is, in *limited areas*, even greater than Prof. Riley would assign to them. There are farms where in loose, mellow soil it is now almost impossible to find eggs, yet but a short distance away eggs may be found in abundance in hard ground. There was also great difference in the different flying swarms in regard to the presence of the internal grub. While in some places hardly a locust (one out of five,) could be found that was not affected by some internal parasite, in others they were almost entirely free from them. Mr. W. C. Ralls, of Le Sueur, examined 624 locusts between the 7th and 10th of September, and in 9 of these the grub was found, and in 10 the hair-worm. It would be well if we could add to this help which is given without expectation of bounty or relief, the help which might have been added by thousands of prairie-chickens killed during the fall. When a whole community stands in need of every form of assistance that man and nature can render, it is worse than useless to throw away the help, however slight, that any willing instrument is ready to contribute.

DAMAGE TO CROPS.

The form and substance which this report might have been expected to assume early in the season, have changed considerably under changing circumstances. The various means of contending with the locust have been set forth generally and in detail during the past four months; and the amount of damage which has been inflicted upon the crops, while it might have been ascertained with some precision in five or six counties, has become a different matter when combined with severe losses by drouth, and extending over thirty-five or more counties. The exact amount of loss in so many different counties, varying as it does from almost total loss of the grain crops to slight injury to gardens and late corn, can not be arrived at with any less efficient machinery than that of the Commissioner of Statistics, to whom the whole of this portion of the subject properly belongs.

Of grain, the oats and barley have, as usual, suffered the most; in Raymond, Stearns county, where the locusts were most numerous from the 23d of July to the 20th of August, "the Lost Nation wheat was only slightly damaged, while the Fife wheat was ruined." (So stated by L. B. Raymond, Esq.) The same fact was noted by P. Hoffman, Esq., of Westport, Pope county; but it is not known how generally the rule will apply.

Corn and potatoes have escaped with less damage everywhere, though corn attacked in the silk has been ruined. Peas are never specially mentioned except to note their escape from injury. ("On the whole, we consider peas and potatoes the best crop to raise."—S. S. Gillam, Big Bend, Cottonwood county.) Sorghum is almost locust proof so far, both against the young and old. Flax, tobacco and beans are generally mentioned to note their almost total destruction. Farms lying on the east side of lakes have often suffered less than others, both in this state and Dakota. In some cases farms situated in the timber have been passed over altogether; in others they have yielded 5 to 10 bushels to the acre, while crops on the prairies in the same town have been failures; on the other hand, rarely the timbered portions of a town have suffered more severely than the prairie farms.

PRACTICAL METHODS OF CONTENDING WITH THE YOUNG LOCUST.

The different means of contending with the locust both in the egg and the unfledged state, have been set forth so fully and so often within the last two years, that they ought by this time to have reached, in some form or other, the hands of every reading man in Minnesota. The report of the commission appointed by Governor C. K. Davis in 1875, (of which some 5,000 copies were printed,) the proclamation of Governor J. S. Pillsbury, issued August 30th, 1876, containing the gist of all the known methods of locust warfare, and the many and oftentimes excellent amplifications and details of these methods, as they have appeared in the state newspapers during the summer, cover the whole ground so far as it is known. Finally the Report of the Proceedings of the Omaha Convention repeat, in twelve excellent pages, the whole subject once more, and a reprint of these in the newspapers of those counties where the evil is new and comparatively unknown, ought to leave no further lack of information.

It ought also to be understood that these sources contain all that has so far been made public on the subject, and that the farmer must for the present defend his crops by these means or not at all. We are so accustomed to the comprehensive methods of farming by machinery that it is hard for us to come down to the petty exercise of individual exertion which the European peasant would consider only a regular portion of his daily existence. But whatever may be the success of various machines and applications which are now in preparation, but not to be disclosed at present, there is as yet no labor-saving contrivance, capable of being applied over large areas, which can accomplish anything like a universal destruction of the young locust, and the general law of labor holds good, that a man's success is measured by the earnestness of his own endeavor. Even the difficulty which results from sparseness of population may be overcome in some little measure; where a few farmers in a township where eggs are laid have determined to sow a small acreage and to defend it to the best of their abilities, something may be gained by combining and sowing in partnership, or side by side, the fields that would otherwise be distributed over a township. Of course there are objections and difficulties to any such method of proceeding, but they are at least no greater than those already presented in the mere fact that the locust is present. On the other hand the advantages would be great; half a dozen families acting in concert and in the defense of one large field would accomplish far more than by any disjointed efforts; it would be far easier to defend the four sides of one large field than the twenty-four sides of half a dozen smaller ones; and lastly the single field would have a smaller number of locusts in the aggregate to contend against, and insects hatched at a distance from it might never reach it before flying; at least it is certain that fields lying within three miles of the hatching grounds of last spring, remained untouched until the flying season.

WHAT MAY BE DONE BY ENERGY AND PERSEVERANCE.

Although it is impossible for me to add at present anything to the many and various methods of locust-warfare that have been repeated so often, it may be of some value to show what has been or may be done with those already known. It was not as a mere form of speech that the conference at Omaha concluded with these words:

"That our consultation with each other and with those who have tested the matter, has resulted in the firm conviction that by proper efforts, concerted action, and a vigorous and determined warfare against them, the young grasshoppers which may be hatched out next year, or any subsequent year, can be successfully fought and our crops saved; that we are not without remedy, but we may protect our crops against them if we will but make use of the means within our reach."

The conditions of success here noted, "proper efforts, concerted action, and vigorous and determined warfare," have never yet been applied in Minnesota. The truth of the above quotation, is shown by the fact that where even individuals, contending not only against the locusts hatched about them, but against those which the concerted action of their neighbors should have rendered harmless, have defended their crops with perseverance and determination through a whole season, they have in the end received a return which justified both their usual and their extra labor. Even the most petty means of defence, if kept up persistently through a whole spring, will often effect a saving of a considerable portion of the crop. The town of Lime, in Blue Earth county, one-half of a government town, in 1875 turned out its whole population to battle with the young locusts with brooms, switches, and every weapon they could lay hands on, and returned an average crop of 12 2-3 bushels of wheat, 36 bushels of oats, and 36 bushels of corn to the acre. The town reported no damage from locusts, and the return was about the average crop for the whole county, and a fair yield.

Charles Pelzel, of Milford, Brown county, by spreading tar over strips of building paper, and placing these along the sides of his fields, saved most of his crop, while those of his neighbors were badly damaged. The paper was re-spread with tar as often as it became covered with young locusts. On 25 acres of wheat he saved 223 bushels, and on eight acres of oats 400 bushels. All this was at a cost of $3 for tar.

Mr. N. V. McDowell, of Bigelow, Nobles county, who has fought the locusts persistently ever since they came in 1873, by 10 days' extra labor in hauling and burning straw, saved a fair crop on 55 out of 70 acres cultivated, but his exertions were rendered useless by the raids of July and August. Even after these he was able to harvest five bushels of wheat to the acre on early sowing.

The only crop of small grain harvested in the town of Holly, Murray county, this year, was by Mr. J. M. King. He writes:

"I put in about 50 days' labor for one man. I caught 100 bushels in my net, and destroyed as many more by scattering straw over their hatching grounds and burning them. I also put to flight swarms and droves of them after they began to fly by use of bags nailed on to from 25 to 50 feet of pole or board, with which I trailed back and forth across my fields, at times driving them like sheep, and at other times not making much impression. I saved 450 bushels of wheat from 52 acres, but firmly believe that if we had had a favorable season, the hoppers would have hurt it but little; but the dry weather, coming as it did, seemed to kill it."

The following experience is also worthy of being recorded:

"Mr. S. W. Danforth, of Madelia, Watonwan county, after having once resolved (in 1874) that he would put in no crop whatever should the locusts deposit eggs on his farm a second time, resolved once more in 1876 that he would determine whether he or the locusts should be master of his farm. On the north side of his wheat field was a prairie ridge where the locusts hatched in the spring. These, while very young, began to come into the field on the north, and had reached it before being discovered. He began by burning them with straw on the edge of the field and on the adjoining prairie, constructing a ditch along the side of the field at the same time. Smaller ditches were also made inside the field to stop those which had already entered. When young, they were also delayed by simply harrowing over the soil and presenting a rough surface for them to crawl over. Seven or eight days were spent in this way, and after the ditch was finished, it turned away the locusts so completely that the work was considered done, and the crop saved. On the western edge of his field was a strip of prairie grass, 40 rods wide, and beyond this some stubble and old corn grounds, belonging to a neighbor. Here the locusts hatched out abundantly. About a week after work was done on the north side of the field, these had crossed the strip of prairie and entered the field from the west before being noticed. As soon as they were discovered, he got all the help he could and made a ditch as fast as possible. This stopped them for nearly a week, and then they began to cross it. He hitched a horse to a plank and walked him up and down in the ditch, and this turned them aside for a while. There was a cloudy day on which the locusts rested, but when the sun came out they were ravenous, and there was no stopping them. They crossed the ditch, and filled the straw-fire so full as to extinguish it. He called in his neighbors to see what would happen to them if the locusts were allowed to keep on in their course, and five or six turned out with teams, hauling straw. With this they burned over a strip three or four rods wide and a hundred rods long, along the edge of the field. But in spite of all his efforts, the locusts had made their way into his wheat, and by this time he had finished a catching-net. The next day, in five hours, he caught from 15 to 20 bushels. This was continued daily, until 75 or 80 bushels had been caught, and it was not necessary to use it, except as occasion demanded on certain days, or in certain spots where the locusts were thickest. This work was so effectual that there should have been (except for drouth) a fair crop of wheat, or at least half a crop all over the farm, except where the burning was done. This demonstrates the possibility of one farmer's fighting two farmers' locusts, and still saving half a crop."

CATCHING-MACHINES.

Many other isolated cases of persistent and partially successful efforts in saving crops from the young locusts have occurred this year; I mention these because they have been reported more fully than others. It also shows what can be done with machines in the later part of the season, and what might have been done by attacking the locusts in their hatching-grounds instead of waiting for them to approach the grain. The coming spring seems likely to test what can be done with catching-machines. Not only are several elaborate ones patented or prepared for use when the time comes, but many farmers are already preparing such machines after their own fashions. To those who are deterred by cost or by lack of a model, it should be said that an efficient machine can be made at a cost of a few poles or strips of board, a pair of wheels, a few yards of stout canvas, and just sufficient ingenuity to construct a long, open-mouthed bag to run over the fields with its lower edge near the ground, and running back in the rear to a sack to contain the locusts that are caught. Mr. King's net was such, and captured from two to eighteen bushels per day, depending on the size and age of the locusts.

Mr. Danforth's machine consisted of two wheels, connected by an axle 20 feet long and six inches in diameter; this was made of a stout pole obtained from the woods, and it was necessary that it should be so large and strong, for the loads of young locusts captured were sometimes so heavy as to bend even this badly. Across the top of this axle two poles, of about the same diameter as the axle, were fastened, running back nearly to a V some eight or ten feet behind the middle of the axle, and extending forward and opening out in front of it. The front ends of this V was steadied by a cross-piece. This was the frame-work. The net was made of about 40 yards of cotton cloth, cone-shaped, in front about 18 feet wide, from one side to another along the axle, and six or eight feet high from the ground to the top of the net. This net narrowed back about seven feet until it was some five or six feet in diameter, and terminated in a stout canvas bag three or four feet long, closed with a string at the rear end. The heavy loads of locusts caught (sometimes 500 pounds) made it necessary to have a support for the net and bag, and for this purpose a triangular floor-work of boards was made, the front end supported from the axle, and the hind end from the hind end of the V poles, and running as near the ground as possible. The lower edge of the net in front was kept close to the ground by a piece of light scantling fastened to the edge of the cloth, and rising and falling over uneven surfaces. The horses were hitched to the ends of the axles, outside of the wheels, their breasts extending forward nearly to the front ends of the V poles, where they were fastened by the head. The net sloped backward at the top in front, and when the machine was in motion a man stationed on the axle with a broom gave the locusts as they entered the net a start toward the rear end. Just where the cone terminated in the oblong bag, a large piece of canvas had been cut out and wire gauze inserted, and the locusts moved towards this on getting into the net, attracted by the light. The only outlay in constructing this machine was for the 40 yards of cotton cloth. This net captured from eight to twelve bushels of pupæ per day when first used, and the amount diminished daily till the 24th of June, when about two bushels were taken.

Mr. Andrew Webster, of Norseland, Nicollet county, had, in 1875, about 230 acres of wheat sown. The locusts began to hatch about May 17th, and he commenced at once to destroy them by burning with straw. As it was impossible to protect the whole of his crop with the help at hand, he selected a field of fifty acres to defend, and burned all the locusts that hatched near it. This continued until June 11th, when the straw was exhausted, and the locusts had begun to come in from the adjoining fields. Two catching-nets were then rigged up, (of the usual form,) attached to axles fourteen and sixteen feet long, each drawn by one horse moving at a fast trot. The amounts caught were: From June 11th to 17th, (part of the time with one net,) 121 bushels; with both nets, June 17th, 37 bushels; June 19th, 20 bushels; June 21st, 77 bushels; June 22d, 63 bushels; June 23d, 45 bushels; June 24th, 71 bushels; June 26th to 28th, 128 bushels; June 29th, 59 bushels; June 30th, 28 bushels; July 1st, 18 bushels, when the work was discontinued, as the locusts had begun to fly, and had become too scattered to be caught easily. The catching was done along the edge of the field, and between the hours of five and ten P. M. It required the labor of four men and four horses during these hours. The whole number of bushels caught was 667, and, on threshing, 658 bushels of wheat were harvested from the fifty acres.

DITCHING.

The experience of Minnesota in regard to ditching, in 1875, was so successful, and so strongly and fully confirmed by the testimony of reliable men, that the experiment should have seemed worthy of a more extended trial than it has received this year. But few ditches have been dug, but these, even when left to take care of themselves, have generally served as a barrier during the earlier half of the season. A ditch, to be effectual, needs care and watching; when its sides have been washed down by repeated rains, and it becomes a mere curved surface, it is a very slight barrier indeed. The time and trouble of constructing such ditches as these, would be spent better otherwise.

CONTENDING WITH WINGED LOCUSTS.

Here and there during the past season have been cases of one farmer or a few farmers in a township who were able to save some portion of their crops from the flying swarms. The number of cases where this has happened is in some twenty-five or thirty out of the whole number of towns in the state that have been invaded. When there has been any success at all it has generally been early in the season, and over small patches of garden or cornfields. There are towns where farmers have smudged, roped, discharged fire-arms, and rattled tin pans, until straw stacks and patience were exhausted; and all to no avail. Others have worked hard smoking and roping their fields, supposing all the while that they were accomplishing something, only to find in the end that they were worse off than neighbors who had done nothing. Others, who have had plenty of straw at hand, have, by firing it at just the right moment, managed to save a field. But the uselessness of all such attempts has generally been too apparent to encourage any hope of even a chance of success.

BURNING PRAIRIES.

The amount of help which may be received from burning the grass on the prairie at the time of hatching, seems likely to be well tested next year, as the efforts to preserve the grass have so far been generally successful. The exact amount of help that can be derived from a general burning must vary much, with differing circumstances, from one year to another, and the opinions as to its value differ greatly. To those who believe that the whole region of uncultivated prairie in the western part of the state is extensively dotted with eggs, nothing could seem more important than a general preservation of the grass, difficult or impossible as this may be. There is no question whatever as to the value ot preserving it in all cultivated neighborhoods, or in all regions that are interspersed with farms. And yet even in these it is difficult to select a time for burning which will not allow the escape of some portions of those already hatched or of those still unhatched. But even if the help falls a great deal short of general destruction it is still a help; even if no insects are hatched on the prairie they often hop away in large numbers off the bare fields into the prairie grass, and may be destroyed in large quantities. In addition to this, where the grass is burned late in the spring it gives place to a growth of young and tender grass which often serves to entice the locusts away from the crops. In Watonwan county last year only about one half of the grass was saved through to May or June, in Cottonwood county less than one half, in Redwood, Murray and Lyon counties, hardly any. Wherever it was fairly tried in Cottonwood county, those who had charge of attending to the preservation and firing of it are strongly convinced that efficient service was rendered by it.

PLOWING AND HARROWING.

The prevention of the eggs from hatching by deep plowing or by surface harrowing has been urged in the Report of the Omaha Conference, and none too strongly. While there is much difference of opinion in regard to deep plowing, there is strong testimony to show that where the eggs are turned under to the depth of ten inches they either never hatch at all, or come forth so late as to be incapable of harm, appearing sometimes after the corn has reached the height of three or four feet, sometimes as late as the end of August. But if there is any point in the whole subject where opinions seem to be unanimous, it is in regard to the value of harrowing up the eggs in the fall, and exposing them to the influence of weather, birds and other enemies. In this connection the general harrowing of new breaking and plowing of roadsides that have been done by many farmers, or by townships, cannot fail to be of benefit. That this work should commence in our climate as soon in the fall as there is any assurance that the egg-deposit is ended, is evident from the consideration that the longer the egg is exposed to the above mentioned influences the more sure its destruction is likely to become, and from the fact that in many places the ground became frozen before the work of harrowing was nearly finished.

THE NEED BOTH OF STATE AND OF INDIVIDUAL EXERTION.

It will be fortunate if science and national discovery shall finally be able to dispel for us some of the uncertainties which beset the locust problem in general. It is the doubt in regard to the future and the fear that each year may prove more disastrous than its predecessor, that give the evil more than its real magnitude and paralyze hands that are not otherwise accustomed to refuse labor. To simplify the conditions of the problem as far as possible, to determine how far the goings and comings of a fitful insect hurrying destructively over thousands of miles of grain fields, and sowing everywhere the seeds of future devastation, may be foreseen or prevented, is an object worthy of the highest science and the most liberal enterprise. But the help that can come from any such source must necessarily be long in action and slow in results. With all our uncertainties, we have one certainty before us in the immediate future; it is that of a great and wide spread injury which only prompt, efficient, concerted and continued effort can remedy. We cannot offer to do less than to render at once by ourselves and to ourselves a portion of that help which we ask a broader knowledge and enlarged means to render unnecessary in the future. The state of Minnesota has already taken the lead in the proposal of a conference upon the locust subject, which, if the results correspond in any fair measure to the objects proposed, will end in more definite knowledge and more efficient action throughout all the region that has been overrun for so many years. The state may fitly supplement the action of the conference by determining once for all just what can be done with the evil when it has taken root here. It is no longer a question that that is a state matter which concerns more or less intimately forty-four out of seventy-one counties.

But the matter does not end with the state. After all that can be done by legislation, success depends purely upon how much each man is willing to do with his own hands. Without united effort to meet the evil wherever it occurs, and with every means or instrument that lie at our disposal, without a determination to plow and sow and defend, each and every man on his own domain, nothing will be done that is worth legislating about. No effort is worth securing that does not recognize the need of the broadest possible exertion, or offer the largest possible assurance of ultimate success.

BOUNTY.

The conference at Omaha, while recognizing the necessity for united action, both of the state and of every individual throughout the present infested regions, resolved "That it will be wise and politic for the legislatures of each of the states and territories most deeply interested in the locust question, to enact a state bounty law," etc. As there is in the minds of many a grave doubt as to the expediency of offering any bounty at all which shall take the form of a specified amount to be paid per bushel for locusts, and as it will be difficult to enact any law which shall be equally adapted to the thickly settled counties and the thinly settled frontier, I have included in circulars to the different towns the question, "If a bounty were offered in your township, next spring, for the destruction of locusts, could it be made to any extent successful in saving crops?" and "How small a price per bushel would accomplish the purpose?" The farmers ought to know at least as well as any one the capabilities of their own communities, and it is some proof of the sincerity with which they have made their replies, that in counties where the locust is comparatively unknown, it is answered that they are unable to give an opinion; in the sparsely settled counties, the fear is often strongly expressed that such a bounty would be useless for the purpose stated; while in those counties where the locusts have hatched of late years or where the bounty system has already been applied, it is considered that a bounty per bushel would undoubtedly accomplish the object named. The amount is generally placed at one dollar per bushel, seldom more, and often one-third or one-fourth of that amount; and while one dollar per bushel might be none too great a price per bushel for locusts immediately after hatching, it is certain that in a very few days a much smaller amount would more than equal it.

By referring to the experience of Mr. Andrew Webster, already given, it will be seen that from the 11th of June to the first of July, even ten cents per bushel would have been a paying bounty, when added to the crop that was saved by the exertions made in catching. With the improved machines and contrivances for capturing that are being brought forward at this date (Jan. 30, 1877) it is certain that the state need not offer a larger bounty, at the utmost, than ten cents per bushel after the tenth of June. If the locusts exist in sufficient numbers to do great injury after that date, a few cents per bushel added by counties, or by towns, to the amount given above, will make a bounty that will amply repay labor, to say nothing of the saving in crops. It would be also an improvement, both in convenience and exactness, if a bounty were offered per pound, instead of per bushel. It is no pleasant matter to measure a few bushels of locusts that have been standing for a day or two under a hot June sun, and the hurry of an unpleasant task may be a cause of inaccuracy in measurement; but the measure in pounds of almost any quantity of dead locusts can be obtained at once, with ease and accuracy.

CONCLUSION.

In conclusion it remains to thank the many persons, both known and unknown to me, who have so kindly replied to my circulars and letters of inquiry during the season. The writers are so many that it is impossible to name them, but they have helped greatly to give this report whatever value it may have. This value must necessarily appear different to different readers; many will miss what they expected to find, or find what may appear of comparative little value. But I have endeavored to compile from all available sources what might be of benefit to our citizens and at the same time worthy of appearance in a report upon the Natural History of the State; I have tried to show not only the requirements of the present year in meeting the locust evil as we find it upon us now, but also the connection between one year and another. But whatever the value of the report may be, the State should provide fitting means for the continuance of similar (or better) efforts during the year 1877. Not only is an enterprise of this sort, if properly conducted, always a worthy one in any State which labors under an evil of such magnitude, but the help which a national commission may derive from assistants acting under its direction in every one of the States now infested may be of great value, and will help to bring completeness to a task which any commission will find too widely extended to reach with personal observation. There is no need to regret the trifling sums which have so far been expended upon "grasshopper investigations," nor to begrudge the few hundred dollars that will enable us to do what little we can in aid of that scientific inquiry for which we now ask of the National Government competent maintenance and the best learning that America can supply.

Respectfully submitted.

ALLEN WHITMAN.

VIII.

THE GEOLOGY OF HENNEPIN COUNTY.

Situation and Area.

Hennepin county lies west of the Mississippi river, and in the angle formed by the Minnesota and the Mississippi. It extends thirty miles north and south and about the same distance east and west, but its form is more that of a square with rounded corners. Its aggregate area is 354,904. 96 acres, as follows, by towns. This tabulated statement was furnished by Mr. F. E. Snow, under the direction of Sur. Gen. J. H. Baker, St. Paul.

Surveying Statistics of Hennepin County, Minnesota.

Township.	Range.	TOWNSHIP LINES.		SUBDIVISIONS.	Acres.	Remarks.
		When Surveyed.		When Surveyed		
27	23	....	....	....	....	Frac'l Ft. Snell. Res'n.
28	23	N. & W.	July, 1853.	August, 1853.	1,804.67	“ “ “
29	23	N. E. S. W.	Oct., 1847.	Oct. Nov., 1847.	8,126.94	East of Miss. River.
29	23	S. & W.	July, 1853.	July, 1853.	434 02	West of Miss. River.
27	24	N. E. W.	July, 1853.	August, 1853.	14,251 79	Frac'l Minn.R.& Res'n
28	24	N. E. S. W.	July, 1853.	August, 1853.	19,671 79	Frac'l Ft. Snell. Res'n.
29	24	N. & E.	Oct., 1847.	Nov., 1847.	5,674.58	East of Miss. River.
29	24	N. E. S. W.	July, 1853.	July, Aug., 1853.	16,268.72	West of Miss. River.
115	21	E.	July, 1853.	Sept., 1854.	1,374.75	Frac'l Minn. River.
115	21	N. & W.	Sept., 1854.	....	....	
116	21	E.	July, 1853.	Oct., 1854.	8,674.30	Frac'l Bal. 4th P. M.
116	21	N.	Oct., 1853.	....	....	
116	21	S. W.	Sept., Nov., 1854.	....	....	
117	21	E.	July, 1853.	Nov., 1854.	9,654.96	Frac'l Bal. 4th P. M.
117	21	S.	Oct., 1853.	....	....	
117	21	N. & W.	Nov., 1854.	....	....	
118	21	S. & E. Frac'l	July, 1853.	Oct., 1855.	13,654.25	Frac'l Bal. 4th P. M.
118	21	N. S. W.	May, 1855.	....	....	
119	21	N. S. W.	May, 1855.	July, 1855.	20,274.59	Frac'l Miss. River.
120	21	S. & W.	May, 1855.	July, 1855.	8,371.20	Frac'l Miss. River.
115	22	N. E. W.	Sept. Oct. Nov., 1854.	Oct., 1854.	62.95	Frac'l Minn. River.
116	22	N.	Oct., 1853.	Oct., 1854.	19,769.41	Frac'l Minn. River.
116	22	S. E. W.	Nov., 1854.	Oct. Nov., 1854.	....	
117	22	S.	Oct., 1853.	Nov., 1854.	21,877.28	
117	22	N. E. W.	Nov., 1854.	....	....	
118	22	N. E. S. W.	May, 1855.	August, 1855.	21,487.87	
119	22	N. E. S. W.	May, 1855.	Sept., 1855.	21,639.66	[& Crow Rivers.
120	22	N.	Oct., 1853.	Sept., 1855.	16,823.03	Estimated Frac'l Miss.
120	22	S. E. W.	May, 1855.	....	....	[& Crow Rivers.
121	22	S.	Oct., 1853.	Sept., 1855.	202.30	Estimated Frac'l Miss.
121	22	W.	May, 1855.	....	....	
117	23	S.	Oct., 1853.	Nov., 1854.	12,312.62	
117	23	N. E. W.	Nov., 1854.	....	....	
118	23	N. E. S. W.	May, 1855	July, 1855.	21,599.26	
119	23	N. E. S. W.	May, 1855.	June, July, 1855.	22,980.48	
120	23	S. E. W.	May, 1855.	Oct., 1855.	16,538.32	Est'd Frac'l Crow Riv.
121	23	E.	June, 1855.	July, 1855.	22.00	“ “ “ “
117	24	S. & W.	Oct., 1853.	June, 1855.	18,729.09	
117	24	E.	Dec. 1854.	....	....	
117	24	N.	May, 1855.	....	....	
118	24	W.	Oct., 1853.	June, 1855.	21,463.03	Est'd Frac'l Crow Riv.
118	24	N. E. S.	May, 1855.	....	....	
119	24	N. S. E.	May, 1855.	June, 1855.	13,841.54	Est'd Frac'l Crow Riv.
120	24	E. & S.	May, 1855.	Oct., 1855.	444.50	“ “ “ “

Total surveyed area..............................347,928.90 acres.

The following is the area of the unsurveyed portion of the Fort Snelling Reservation, as estimated by Mr. F. E. Snow:

Tp. 27, Range 23..............................	**760.00 acres.**
Tp. 27, Range 24..............................	**464.44 acres.**
Tp. 28, Range 23..............................	**4,334.24 acres.**
Tp. 28, Range 24..............................	**1,417.38 acres.**
Total..............................	**6,976 06 acres.**

Natural Drainage.

Nearly three-fourths of the boundary of this county is formed by rivers. The Mississippi is along the northeast, the Minnesota is along the south and southeast, and Crow river runs along the northwest. It has numerous lakes of clear water, and small streams that flow from the central or southwestern portions outward, in nearly all directions, but no large streams enter the county, except where the Mississippi intersects the city of Minneapolis. Lake Minnetonka is a large and irregular expanse of water, in the southwestern part of the county, with high shores and knolls of drift on all sides, navigable for small steamers of which there are already five on the lake. The frequency of lakes throughout the county is one of its most noticeable features. They are generally surrounded by high drift hills, and have deep water, and gravelly shores. Steamers ply on the Mississippi above the Falls of St. Anthony, and also below, though the rapids below the Falls, extending about a mile, and the rapids at Meeker's Island, about three miles below the Falls, prevent the general navigation of the river within the limits of the county. The Minnesota river is also navigable throughout its extent in Hennepin county. In the north central portion of the county are several extensive marshes, about the headwaters of some of the streams running north, and extending along their valleys.

The Surface Features.

The most of the county has an undulating or rolling drift surface, and a nearly level general contour. The Mississippi river has modified the drift in a wide belt of country along both sides, but especially on the west side, within Hennepin county, making the surface nearly flat, with a lighter, or more sandy soil. This belt of flat land, on the west side, is markedly set off from the rolling portion of the county by a line which nearly coincides, through Dayton, Champlin and Brooklyn, with the supposed boundary line between the St. Peter sandstone and the lower magnesian formation. In the northern part of Crystal Lake this line changes its direction, and approaches rapidly toward the river, entering the corporate limits of the city of Minneapolis in Sec. 16. It then strikes nearly south, running along the west side of Lakes Calhoun and Harriet; then east toward the river, keeping on the east of Lakes Amelia and Mother, after passing which it strikes rapidly toward the west and southwest to Sec. 33, in Richfield township, when it turns nearly south; and in Sec. 16, Bloomington, it coalesces with a similar line which follows the Minnesota river. The belt of land thus set off, is generally flat and often sandy or gravelly with only an occasional knoll of hardpan drift. At some depth below the surface the hardpan drift is uniformly met with in all excavations. This flat tract is, in its widest parts, six miles across from east to west. The narrowest point is in N. Minneapolis where it is less than a mile across. A similar flat belt runs along the east side of the river in Anoka and Ramsey counties. This land is at the present time never reached by even the highest freshet stage of the river. There is *within* the flat tract, along the river, a flood-plain level, subject to annual overflow. If ever the river operated over this belt so as to affect its topography, it must have been at a time when it was of vastly greater volume than at present, and probably during the period of recession of the ice of the last glacial epoch, and while the material of the drift was itself being deposited. This tract is underlain in some places by a laminated clay, which, when burned for brick, makes the well-known "Milwaukee brick" which are of a light buff or cream color.

The elevation of the county above the ocean is, perhaps on an average, about one thousand feet. The following points have been determined.

Elevations in Hennepin County.

	Above the Ocean.
St. Anthony Junction, St. P. & P. R. R.	829 feet.
Mississippi (low water) at Nicollet Island	791 feet.
Minneapolis Junction, St. P. & P. R. R	821 feet.
Mississippi (low water), half a mile below St. Anthony Falls	711½ feet.
Self's Lake (water), St. P. & P. R. R	842 feet.
Wayzata Station, St. P. & P. R. R	922 feet
Lake Minnetonka (water)	913 feet.
Long Lake Station, St. P. & P. R. R	940 feet.
Anoka, (opposite Champlin,) St. P. & P. R. R	869 feet.
Minneapolis Depot, M. & St. P. R. R	816 feet.
Minnehaha Creek, (bottom,) M. & St. P. R. R	792 feet.
Minnehaha Creek, grade of M. & St. P. R. R	806 feet.
Minnehaha Station, M. & St. P. R. R	802 feet.
Fort Snelling Station, M. & St. P. R. R	712½ feet.
Bottom of Minnesota river, at crossing of M. & St. P. R. R	668 feet.
Bridge at crossing of Minn. R. at Ft. Snelling, M. & St. P. R. R.	708½ feet.

Elevations on the Minneapolis & St. Louis R. R.

FURNISHED BY COL. J. B. CLOUGH.

[East from Minneapolis.]	Above the Ocean.
Crossing of St. P. & P. R. R., near St. Anthony Junction	828 feet.

140 "stations" east of crossing,* (cut of 7 feet,)	Rolling surface.	938 feet.
220 "stations" east of crossing, (cut of 16 feet,)		918 feet.
240 "stations" east of crossing, (track,) Robinson L.		906 feet.
240 "stations" east of crossing, water surface, Robinson L.		898 feet.
265 "stations" east of crossing, (cut of 7 feet)		917 feet
300 "stations" east of crossing, (track,) Bennett L.		885 feet.
300 "stations" east of crossing, water surface, Bennett L.		883 feet.
300 "stations" east of crossing, bottom, Bennett L.		868 feet.
308 "staltons" east of crossing, clay ridge, (cut 20 feet,)		888 feet.
320 "stations" east of crossing, track, (cut 18 feet,)		897 feet.
405 "stations" east of crossing, track at Owassa L.		888 feet.
405 "stations" east of crossing, bottom Owassa L.		871 feet.
405 "stations" east of crossing, water surface Owassa L.		878 feet.
415 "stations" east of crossing, track, (cut 17 feet,)		897 feet.
Tamarack Swamp, ("no bottom,") track		873 feet.

[NOTE.—This swamp seems to consist of a mass of floating peat, grass-roots, &c., supporting small tamarack trees. Three piles were driven (spliced), each 60 feet long, making 180 feet, without reaching solid foundation. The track was then supported on a raft consisting of logs, slabs and brush thrown on the surface, and remains so still.]

465 "stations" east of crossing, track	Rolling.	873 feet.
465 "stations" east of crossing, water, (30 ft. piles driven)		869 feet.
600 "stations" east of crossing, track, (ground on either side 30–50 feet higher)		931 feet.
650 "stations" east of crossing, White Bear flats		923 feet.
670 "stations" east of crossing, Junc. of L. S. & M. R. R.		917 feet.
White Bear Lake, (water,) cannot be far from		918 feet.

[NOTE.—The depot at White Bear may be six or ten feet higher than the grade at this Junction.]

[South from Minneapolis.]

Minneapolis & St. Louis Depot, Minneapolis, cor. 2d street and 4th avenue	816 feet.
Crossing of Hennepin avenue, foot of Bridge street, at the old suspension bridge	808 feet.
St. Paul & Pacific Depot, Minneapolis	821 feet.

[The line, to Cedar Lake, follows the valley of Basset's creek.]

Cedar Lake, (track)	855 feet.
Cedar Lake, (water surface)	852 feet.
Bass Lake, (track)	876 feet.
Bass Lake, (water surface)	868 feet.
Divide between Bass Lake and Minnehaha creek	908 feet.
Divide between Bass Lake and Minnehaha creek, (nat. sur.)	920 feet.
Marsh at Minnehaha creek, (track)	885 feet.
Marsh at Minnehaha creek, (surface of marsh)	880 feet.

---

* One "station" equals one hundred feet.

Crossing of Minnehaha creek, (track)	897 feet.
Crossing of Minnehaha creek, (water)	885 feet.
Divide east of Hopkins Station, (cut 14 feet)	918 feet.
Divide between Hopkins Station and Shady Oak, (cut 18 feet)	901 feet.
Shady Oak Lake, (track)	900 feet.
Shady Oak Lake, (water surface)	898 feet.

[Piles were here driven 78 feet, to a hard bottom, which now support the track; water 20 feet; the rest mud, "or something else." Soundings at first indicated but 20 feet of water; but in filling, the bank settled at least 40 feet further; after two months' work at filling, with little visible progress, the builders had to resort to pile-driving.]

Mud Lake, (track)	898 feet.
Mud Lake, (water)	890 feet.

[Rolling Surface.]

Elevation between Mud Lake and Glen Lake marsh, (cut 8 feet)	918 feet.
Glen Lake marsh, (track)	898 feet.
Glen Lake, (surface of marsh)	895 feet.

[At Glen Lake marsh, after the track was built it sank, and was entirely lost, a lake being formed. Then piles were resorted to, with a depth of 50 feet, for a distance of 250 feet.]

Divide 1,000 feet west of Glen Lake marsh, (cut 18 feet)	908 feet.
Rolling descent to—	
Island Lake, (track)	898 feet.
Island Lake, (water surface)	881 feet.
Divide 1,000 feet west of Island Lake, (track; no cut)	908 feet.

[On the east side of the line hills rise 75 or 100 feet higher, the road running through a gap; on the west side hills rise 30 or 40 feet. At 1,500 feet further south the road passed through a ridge of gravel and red clay (mixed) in which was found a piece of native copper weighing 78 pounds. This was a cut of 80 feet.]

Purgatory creek crossing, (track)	844 feet.
Purgatory creek crossing, (ground)	828 feet.
Purgatory creek crossing, (bottom)	820 feet.

[Piles were driven here 36 feet without finding a hard bottom.]

Eden Prairie Station, (8 feet cut)	878 feet.
Divide between Eden Prairie Station and Lake Bradford, (cut 8 ft.)	891 feet.
Lake Bradford, (track)	868 feet.
Lake Bradford, (water)	855 feet.
Elevation at county line, (Hennepin and Carver; track)	865 feet.
Elevation at county line, Hennepin and Carver, (Nat. Surface)	895 feet.

[At 1,000 feet west of the county line is a cut of 40 feet.]

Ravine 2,000 feet west of last cut, (track)	886 feet.

[Trestle work is built here 75 feet high, and 450 feet long; stiff clay on the west side of the ravine and sand on the east side. Sudden changes occur in the drift in going down to the Minnesota valley.]

One mile further on, ravine, (track)	791 feet.
One mile further on, ravine, (bottom)	726 feet.
Foot of the Minnesota river bluffs, near Chaska	742 feet.

[Then comes a quaking, or peaty, marsh for 3,000 feet.]

Crossing of Hastings and Dakota R. R., Chaska	716 feet.
Carver Station, (12 feet fill)	710 feet.
Minnesota river crossing, (track)	716 feet.
Botton of Minnesota river, (Carver)	678 feet.
Water in Minnesota river, (Carver)	688 feet.
Sioux City Junction	758 feet.

Description of the towns of Hennepin county.

In the following notes on the various towns of the county the magnetic variation given is that recorded by the U. S. Surveyors on the township plats:

TOWNS 27 AND 28, R. 23 W. OF 4TH PRIN. MER. (*Fractional.*) *E. parts of* RICHFIELD *and* MINNEAPOLIS.

These embrace the bluffs of the Mississippi and Minnesota rivers south of Minneapolis, and a narrow strip of level and prairie land along the west side of those rivers above the point of their confluence, not exceeding two miles in width.

T. 29, R. 23 W. OF 4TH PRIN. MER. (*Fractional.*) *E. part of* ST. ANTHONY.

This is a belt of one mile wide embracing six sections, and lies mostly on the east side of the Missitsippi river. It is all included within the prairie land that characterizes the Mississippi valley, except about a mile square in its northern portion, which is rolling and wooded.

T. 27, R. 24 W. OF 4TH PRIN. MER. (*N. of the Minnesota.*) *E. part of* BLOOMINGTON.

By far the larger portion of this town is prairie, lying in the northeastern portion. Along the southern side the bluffs of the

Minnesota river are rarely rocky, but usually turfed and frequently timbered. The bottom lands sometimes embrace large water areas, and are very wide, the bluffs running from one-half mile to a mile from the river channel. The timber is generally light, except a small area in the northwest corner of the town. The town has several small lakes in the uplands.

T. 28, R. 24 W. OF 4TH PRIN. MER. *Central part of* RICHFIELD *and northern part of* MINNEAPOLIS.

The central and northern portions of this town are rolling, and contain numerous lakes, such as Wood, Grass, Mother, Amelia, Calhoun, Harriet, Diamond, Pearl, Rice, Duck and Mud. This rolling tract is crossed by Brown Creek (now known as Minnehaha Creek). Toward the northeast and southeast are patches of level prairie.

T. 29 N., R. 24 W. OF 6TH PRIN. MER. *E. part of* MINNEAPOLIS.

This town embraces the city of Minneapolis, on both sides of the river, and the Falls of St. Anthony. The largest part of the town is flat, and the southeastern portion contains prairie belts, particularly on the west side of the Mississippi river, within the ancient drift bluffs of the river. The western portions, and a small area in secs. 1 and 12, are rolling and timbered, with lakes. There are also small areas of swamp, the largest being east of the Mississippi river in secs. 12, 13 and 24. Bassett's Creek breaks the surface in the central part of the town on the west side of the river, entering the Mississippi about a mile above the Falls. Mag. var. 9°, 39' to 11°, 20'.

TOWNS 115 AND 116 N., R. 21 W. OF 5TH PRIN. MER. (*Fract.*) *W. part of* BLOOMINGTON, *and S. W. part of* RICHFIELD.

This embraces a little prairie tract in the southern portion, and several lakes in the northern, but it is mostly undulating and timbered. The Minnesota bluffs bound it on the south, but they are not rocky. They rise about 150 feet above the river. In the northern portion are some high drift-knolls. Anderson lake is the principal body of water. Mag. var. 10° to 12°, 30'.

TOWNS 117 AND 118 N., R. 21 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. (*Fractional.*) CRYSTAL LAKE, *with parts of* MINNEAPOLIS *and* RICHFIELD.

This is entirely a wooded and undulating or rolling tract, running N. and S., about 2½ miles wide, and east to the Mississippi north of Minneapolis. It has small marshy areas, and one irregular patch of prairie northwest of Minneapolis city. Mag. var. 10°, 5' to 11°, 53'.

T. 119 N., R. 21 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. BROOKLYN.

This town is altogether level, except in the southwest corner, and is mainly one of prairie. The scattered timber is small. Palmer Lake is in Sec. 26, and through it runs Shingle creek, which is accompanied by some marsh. The Mississippi river forms the eastern boundary, but the bluffs are low and consist of drift only. A belt of heavier timber skirts the river in the northeastern portion of the town. Mag. var. 10° 45' to 12° 39'.

T. 120 N., R. 21 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. *E. part of* CHAMPLIN.

There is a small area lying on the Mississippi river, having a variety of surface, flat prairie, timbered bottom land, and lightly timbered upland.

T. 116 N., R. 22 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. EDEN PRAIRIE.

While this town is mainly rolling or hilly, with lakes and some marshes, and heavily timbered, it took its name from a flat prairie which lies in the southern portion, bordering on the Minnesota river, including the bottom land and a belt about a mile wide north of the bluffs. Mag. var. 10° to 13° 57'.

T. 117 N., R. 22 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. MINNETONKA.

This town is wholly wooded and rolling, some parts being hilly. It also has small areas of marsh, intervening between the drift hills, and occasional lakes, the largest body of water being a part of Minnetonka Lake, from which flows Little Falls creek, (known now as Minnehaha creek,) and crosses the center of the town easterly. Mag. var. 10° 9' to 14° 45.

T. 118 N., R. 22 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. PLYMOUTH.

This is also a rolling and timbered town, with several lakes and tamarack swamps. Medicine Lake in the S. E. corner is the largest body of water. Mag. var. 11° 21' to 14° 45.

T. 119 N., R. 22 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. MAPLE GROVE.

The town is entirely rolling and wooded, except a small portion in sections 1, 12 and 13, which is an extension of the Brooklyn prairie. It is crossed by a small creek running N. through the center, and by its tributary in the N. W. It contains several fine lakes. Mag. var. 9° 45' to 12° 38'.

T. 120 N., R. 22 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. DAYTON, *and W. part of* CHAMPLIN.

This town resembles the last, but borders on the Mississippi river, which has drift-banks that rise about 100 feet above the river. Crow river also touches it on the north. Mag. var. 9° 45 to 12°.

T. 117 N., R. 23 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. EXCELSIOR, *and part of* MEDINA, *and part of* MINNETONKA.

About one-half of this town is covered with water, pertaining to Lake Minnetonka. The rest is rolling and heavily timbered, with occasional marshes. Mag. var. 11° 15' to 13° 12'.

T. 118 N., R. 23 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. *N. part of* MEDINA.

This town is much diversified with lakes, marshes, and a rolling surface. It is entirely wooded. Mag. var. 10° 20' to 13° 12'.

T. 119 N., R. 23 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. CORCORAN.

A wooded, rolling town, with frequent small marshes and two or three lakes. Mag. var. 10° 40' to 11° 45'.

T. 120 N., R. 23 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. (*S. of Crow River.*) HASSAN.

This is a wooded, rolling town, similar to the last, but has Crow river along its northern boundary. Mag. var. 9° 13' to 11° 30'.

T. 117 N., R. 24 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. MINNETRISTA.

This is a rolling timbered town embracing a part of Lake Minnetonka, and several smaller lakes, as well as numerous marshes. Mag. var. 10° 40' to 13° 12'.

T. 118 N., R. 24 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. INDEPENDENCE.

This is a rolling timbered town, dotted with small marshes and lakes. Mag. var. 10° 5' to 12° 30'.

T. 119 N., R. 24 W. 5TH PRIN. MER. (*S. of Crow River.*) GREENWOOD.

Crow river, which crosses this town, separates Greenwood from Wright county. It is in every respect similar to those already described. Mag. var. 10° 25' to 10° 12'.

Soil and Timber.

The most of the county has a close, clay soil of a grayish color. This is particularly the case in the heavily wooded portion. At least three-quarters of the county are embraced under this description. The soil of the eastern quarter of the county is more sandy. The change from clay to sand, while in general taking place along the boundary line already defined under the head *Surface Features*, still is not always abrupt. It is always accompanied by a change of timber species. In the clay land are found sugar maple, elm, bass, butternut, and a variety of others, while in the sandy or loam covered portions are found only oaks and aspens which generally are also quite small. The belt containing this small, sparse timber runs north and south across the eastern portion of the county covering the eastern part of Maple Grove, the eastern part of Plymouth, the western part of Minneapolis and the central portions of Richfield and Bloomington, with isolated areas in Minnetonka and Eden Prairie. This feature in the forest of the county gradually dies out toward the east, and most noticeably after passing the boundary between the rolling surface and the flat land along the Mississippi; the country becoming nearly a continuous and open prairie. Throughout this belt of sparse and small timber there are occasional large bur oaks on the uplands, and also occasionally gigantic black oaks, with charred trunks, in clusters, having no other company than an undergrowth of oak bushes. There are also, in the bottom land along some of the ravines, occasional trees of elm or bass. The eastern boundary of the heavily timbered rolling area, with a distinctively clay soil, strikes the Mississippi river about three miles southeast of Dayton.

The following species of trees and shrubs are known to grow in the county. The trees are named in the estimated order of abundance:

American Elm. Ulmus Americana, L. (*Pl. Clayt.*) *Willd.*
Bass. Tilia Americana, L.
Sugar Maple. Acer saccharinum. *Wang.*
Red Oak. Quercus rubra. *L.* (?)
Butternut. Juglans cinerea. *L.*
Bur Oak. Quercus macrocarpa. *Michx.*
Red Elm. Ulmus fulva. *Michx.*
Soft Maple. Acer rubrum. *L.*
Bitternut. Carya amara. *Nutt.*
White Ash. Fraxinus Americana. *L.*
Black Oak. Quercus tinctoria. *Bart.* (?)
Ironwood. Ostrya Virginica. *Willd.*
Black Ash. Fraxinus sambucifolia. *Lam.*
Wild Plum. Prunus Americana. *Marsh.*
June-berry. Amelanchier Canadensis. *Var.* Botryapium. *Torr. & Gr.*
American Crab-Apple. Pyrus coronaria. *L.*
Aspen. Populus tremuloides. *Michx.*
Tamarack. Larix Americana. *Michx.*
Box Alder. Negundo aceroides. *Mœnch.*
Great-toothed Poplar. Populus grandidentata. *Michx.*
Black Cherry. Prunus serotina. *Ehr.*
Cottonwood. Populus monilifera. *Ait.*
Water Beech. Carpinus Americana. *Michx.*
Willow. (*Salix.*)
Hackberry. Celtis occidentalis. *L.*
White Birch. Betula alba. *Var.* populifolia. *Spach.* (?)
White Oak. Quercus alba. *L.*
Red Cedar. Juniperus Virginiana. *L.*
White Pine. Pinus Strobus. *L.*

A few trees of white pine occur on Minnehaha creek, and at Dayton.

Shrubs and Woody Vines.

Virginia Creeper. Ampelopsis quinquefolia. *Michx.*
Bittersweet. Celastrus scandens. *L.*
Frost Grape. Vitis cordifolia. *Michx.*
Hazel. Corylus Americana. *Walt.*
Smooth Sumac. Rhus glabra. *L.*
Wild Red Cherry. Prunus Pennsylvanica. *L.*

Wolf-berry. Symphoricarpus occidentalis. *R. Br.*
Black-cap Raspberry. Rubus occidentalis. *L.*
High Blackberry. Rubus villosus. *Ait.*
Red Raspberry. Rubus strigosus. *Michx.*
Choke Cherry. Prunus Virginiana. *L.*
Thorn. Cratægus coccinea. *L.*
Rose. Rosa lucida. *Ehr.*
Prickley Ash. Zanthoxylum Americanum. *Mill.*
Staghorn Sumac. Rhus typhina. *L.*
Wild Rose. Rosa blanda. *Ait.*
Round-leaved Cornel. Cornus circinata. *L'Her.*
Common Elder. Sambucus Canadensis. *L.*
High-bush Cranberry. Viburnum Opulus. *L.*
Black Currant. Ribes floridum. *L.*
Alternate-leaved Cornel. Cornus alternifolia. *L.*
Panicled Cornel. Cornus paniculata. *L'Her.*
Red-osier Dogwood. Cornus stolonifera. *Michx.*
Speckled Alder. Alnus incana. *Willd.*
Sheep-berry. Viburnum Lentago. *L.*
Elder. Sambucus pubens. *Michx.*
Honeysuckle. Lonicera parviflora. *Lam.*
Honeysuckle. Lonicera ciliata. *Muhl.*
Yellow Honeysuckle. Lonicera flava. *Sims.*
Kinnikinnick. Cornus sericea. *L.*
Dwarf Cornel. Cornus Canadensis. *L.*
Prickly wild Gooseberry. Ribes Cynosbati. *L.*
Smooth wild Gooseberry. Ribes rotundifolium. *Michx.*
Ninebark. Spiræa opulifolia. *L.*
Meadowsweet. Spiræa salicifolia. *L.*

THE GEOLOGICAL STRUCTURE.

The only rocks seen in actual outcrop within the county are those belonging to the Trenton limestone, and the St. Peter sandstone; but the Shakopee limestone (of the Lower Magnesian formation) is seen in outcrop at Shakopee, on the opposite side of the Minnesota river, and must exist in the immediate bluffs of the Minnesota river in the southwestern portion of the county. It is very likely also that large areas of the Cretaceous formation exist within the county, though its presence is only known by the abundance of Cretaceous *debris* that is found in the drift throughout the county. The geology of the county then may be embraced in the following list of formations:

1. The Drift and the loess loam.

2. The Cretaceous.
3. The Green Shales and Trenton Limestone.
4. The St. Peter Sandstone.
5. The Shakopee Limestone (of the Lower Magnesian.)

The respective areas of the Trenton, St. Peter and Lower Magnesian, are represented on the accompanying colored map of the county, so far as those areas can be ascertained or estimated. It must be borne in mind that there are no outcrops of rock in the county except along the valley of the Mississippi river, and that hence the boundary lines as laid down are not intended to express anything more than an approximation to their actual positions.

The Shakopee Limestone.

The reader is referred to earlier reports for the details of lithology and special characters of this limestone. It is sufficient here to say that it is named from the city of Shakopee, in the Minnesota valley, where it was first recognized as a different limestone from that along the bluffs of the Mississippi river below Hastings; and that it is the uppermost member of the *Low. Magnesian* series. It lies just below the sandstone which is seen at the Falls of St. Anthony, and is known as the "Kasota stone" among builders when wrought at Kasota, a few miles above Shakopee, in the Minnesota valley. It is strictly *an arenaceous dolomite* of a buff color varying to pinkish, or "fawn-colored," as described by Featherstonhaugh. Its thickness is about seventy feet. There is no known outcrop of it within the limits of Hennepin county, but it certainly underlies a belt of territory running northward from Shakopee and Bloomington, toward Dayton, through the central part of the county. Were it not for the heavy covering of drift, it might be expected in outcrop about the shores of Minnetonka Lake.

The St. Peter Sandstone—Its Area.

This well known formation is seen in the bluffs of the Mississippi river at and below the Falls of St. Anthony to the mouth of the Minnesota, and exists also in the Minnesota river bluffs for several miles above Fort Snelling; though, for reasons which pertain to the history of the Minnesota river and its age as compared with that of the Mississippi in this vicinity, it is but rarely exposed in the bluffs of that river above Fort Snelling.

The slopes from the upland to the river level, along the Minnesota, are uniformly smoothed over by the drift, and are turfed or wooded; but the descent from the upland to the river along the Mississippi, above Fort Snelling, is perpendicular and rocky, the river running in a canon-like gorge. Owing to a dip of the rocks toward the east, the St. Peter sandstone is brought above the level of the Mississippi at points above the Falls of St. Anthony, within the immediate river valley. On the east side of the river it outcrops along Main street, and is struck by digging wells at points further north and east. It underlies a belt of country running north and south across the county, next east of that of the Shakopee, which is probably about six miles wide. In the vicinity of the Falls of St. Anthony the St. Peter is also caused to be the surface rock by the cutting through of the over-lying Lower Trenton by the ancient drainage-courses of the Mississippi, or of its tributaries. Thus there is a break in the continuity of the Trenton where Bassett's creek enters the Mississippi, above the falls. That stream runs at no point over the Trenton limestone, but over the St. Peter sandstone. The valley in which it lies was cut by some more powerful force than the creek itself, and perhaps by the Mississippi river before the last drift epoch. At that time the Mississippi must have reached the Minnesota valley at some point above Fort Snelling, without running over the Trenton limestone at all, and hence without causing any falls. The width of the St. Peter area in the immediate river valley, *above the falls*, as compared with that in the same valley *below the falls*, considered in connection with the Bassett's-creek St. Peter area, clearly points to the ancient continuation of the Mississippi valley southward by the way of Bassett's creek, to the Minnesota, instead of by way of Fort Snelling. There is another break in the overlying Trenton on the east side of the river, leaving the St. Peter as the surface rock, in a low tract of land in the First Ward, northwest from the Cemetery. This low area is crossed by the Branch Line of the St. Paul & Pacific railroad longitudinally. This area of the St. Peter becomes quite narrow near the St. Anthony Junction, but rapidly widens out toward the south and east, so far as can be judged from the topographical features and from information gathered from dug wells. Just how far this St. Peter area extends south under the extensive peat marsh which covers a large tract in that direction, it is impossible to say; but the Trenton replaces it, at the surface, within a mile, since it occupies the river bluffs uninterruptedly from Fort Snelling to the

Falls of St. Anthony, and since Tuttle's brook passes over it in joining the Mississippi near the University.

Its Lithological Characters.

The outward, and also the chemical, characters of this sandstone, in Minnesota, are, so far as seen, remarkably constant and simple. It is white, "saccharoidal," friable, non-fossiliferous, (or almost so,) and consists almost entirely of pure quartz sand. It contains not enough lime to act as a cement, and hence can almost everywhere be excavated even with the fingers. On exposed surfaces, as along the bluffs of the Mississippi, where dripping water passes over it, the grains become more firmly cemented together by deposition of carbonate of lime and iron oxide, and its delicate whiteness is lost. Indeed, wherever water in the smallest quantity is allowed to trickle through it, a deposit of iron oxide is invariably seen, since rarely, if ever, is any surface water found entirely free from that impurity.

The thickness of the St. Peter at the Falls of St. Anthony is 164 feet as developed by a drilled well sunk at E. Minneapolis in 1874-5; but that is considerably more than it is accredited with at points further south. At Chatfield, in Fillmore county, it is 122 feet in thickness, and in the S. W. part of Houston county it is but 75-80.

The St. Peter, operating in conjunction with the overlying Trenton limestone, is the immediate cause of a great many waterfalls. The Falls of St. Anthony are caused by the passage of the Mississippi from the limestone on to the sandstone. The latter, worn away at the foot of the fall by the retro-action of the water, leaves the limestone projecting to fall down in heavy blocks as fast as it becomes too feeble to support further its own weight. This protecting cap of limestone extends but a few rods above the present brink of the falls; and had it not been that vigorous measures were taken a few years since for its protection, it is very probable that ere this the falls themselves would have disappeared, or changed to a foaming rapid, thus destroying, or greatly damaging, one of the most important water-powers of the world. The first alarm was occasioned by the effect of the water of the river in running through an artificial tunnel in the underlying St. Peter sandstone, and the collapsing of large areas of the limestone. The water was immediately excluded from the tunnel, the sandstone behind the waterfall was protected from the retro-action of the water, and a wall or dike of concrete or *beton* was constructed under the river in the sandrock, and below the limerock, crossing the Mississippi a short distance above the brink of the falls. This wall of concrete has a width of four feet and extends downward from the limerock to below the bottom of the river, below the falls. The chief object of this dike is to cut off all streams of water from running in the St. Peter and so perforating it and eroding it as to cause the downfall of the limerock. A number of such streams, some of considerable size, were found to be passing through the sandrock, having entered it from the river at points above the limit of the limerock. Being under considerable hydrostatic pressure their force of erosion on the sandrock was greater than ordinary surface streams of the same size. One such stream, or sheet, of water was struck by Mr. Franklin Cook, in sinking a drilled well into the sandrock at a point within the gorge some distance below the falls, when the water rose at once above the surface and has continued to flow ever since.

No fossils have been taken from this sandstone in Hennepin county; indeed, the only trace of organic structure known to have been found in it, in the entire northwest, consists of a species of *Lingulepis*, obtained in Fillmore county, and described in the report on that county, in 1875.

The Trenton Limestone.

This formation, as it occurs in Minnesota, comprises three main parts. The lowest, only, can be seen generally in Hennepin county, though that next above exists also, and is struck in wells at some distance back from the river. Those parts are—

The Upper Trenton.
The Green Shales.
The Lower Trenton.

The *Green Shales* are often called *soapstone*, but they do not contain the mineral constituents of soapstone, and should not have that name. They are about 20 feet in thickness, but being rather soft and easily covered up, they are hid by the overlying drift or loam at nearly all points along the river bluffs. Within the shales are often thin lenticular layers of very fossiliferous crystalline limestone, the upper and lower surfaces of which are literally covered with fossils in a fine state of preservation, but firmly bound to the limestone layers. There are also fossils distributed through the shales themselves, which, on the weathering of the shales, wash out in perfect preservation. *Orthis Lynx*, *Rhyn-*

chonella capax and *Chaetetes Lycoperdon*, are the most common in such conditions ; but on the slabs of limestone that weather out of the shales are often a great many minute fossil forms of encrusting corals, as well as other species of brachiopods. The Green Shales may be seen at Finn's Glen, about three miles below the Falls of St. Anthony, on the east side of the river, where a little stream enters the Mississippi.

The *Lower Trenton* is tpyically that which occurs at the Falls of St. Anthony, and thence in the bluffs of the Mississippi to St. Paul. It has generally the following alternation of parts in descending order :

1.	Impure limestone	9–12 feet.
2.	Calcareous shale	4– 6 feet.
3.	Argillaceous limestone	15 feet.

The above are the main distinctions as seen in Hennepin county. The characters of No. 1 are not always uniformly distributed through the whole thickness designated, but they are apt to fade out downward being replaced by some of the characters of No. 2 ; which also exhibits a tendency to pass gradually into the rock of No. 3. On the other hand, there is very generally a thin stratum of shale exactly like the most of No. 2, under the limerock, and lying on the St. Peter sandstone.

The following more special section will show the alternations referred to, as they appear at the quarry of E. Malony, on the east side of the river, below the University, at Minneapolis :

Section of the Trenton below the University.

No. 1.—Impure limestone, crystalline, rough to the touch, hard, but splitting to thin lenticular chips under the weather. This is of a blue color within, but on exposed surfaces becomes a dirty buff. The grain is close, except for the cavities resulting from absorbed fossils. The fragments into which the stone weathers out are brittle and somewhat sonorous. It is very fossiliferous especially with *Strophomena deltoidea*. It also has frequently, associated with this, *Strophomena*, a species of *Orthis*, which is perhaps *costalis*, species of *Murchisonia*, *Leperditia*, *Edmondia*, and occasionally of *Asaphus*. Thickness not fully exposed ; seen about .... 8 ft.

No. 2.—Similar to the last, but gradually becoming more impure with shale, the fossils being gathered more into sheets or layers, making mere calcareous belts .... 2 ft.

No. 3.—Green shale, calcareous, weathering blue, with but few fossils. Occasionally is found a large specimen of *Endoceras magniventrum*, H., in this shale, the form only being preserved, surrounded by a thin black film of bituminous matter..........4 ft. 8 in.

No. 4.—The last passes gradually into a calcareous shale resembling the well-known building rock of this place, in which still there are few distinguishable fossils. This stone is sometimes used for rough walls, or in protected positions. It is markedly set off from the rock below by a projecting shoulder formed by the upper portion of No. 5....................................2 ft. 4 in.

No. 5.—The building stone of this place, and St. Paul. This stone is rather too argillaceous to be a reliable building material, yet is extensively used. The shale is intimately disseminated through the calcareous layers, without showing regular lamination, yet causes a mottled or blotched color over the surfaces when cut or broken. The darker spots are shaly; the lighter ones are more purely calcareous. The color of the whole is blue, which makes it have the appearance of strength and durability when placed in a structure. The fossil remains in this member are apt to be comminuted, so as to be wholly undistinguishable, yet sometimes large specimens of *Endoceras magniventrum*, H., are found in the layers. Rarely also, on separating the layers in quarrying, a rock-surface is disclosed that is eminently fossiliferous with forms of *Rhynchonella capax*, *Orthis*, and other brachiopods and incrusting corals. This is the principal and most constant member of the *Lower Trenton*. Thickness about............. 15 ft.

No. 6.—Blue shale, parting conchoidally under the weather, lying on the St. Peter sandstone. Seen.................................. 2 ft.

Total.. 34 ft.

The section exposed at the quarries on the east side of the river, at Minneapolis, is essentially the same as the foregoing, viz.:

No. 1.—"Gray rock".. 8 ft.
No. 2.—"Soft stone," (shale)..... .... 6 ft.
No. 3.—"Blue stone"...... ....14 ft.
No. 4.—Slaty clay....... .... 2 ft.
No. 5.—White sandrock to the river. ....25 ft.

About one block above the railroad bridge over the Mississippi, at Minneapolis, the line of strike of the limerock from the north runs down to the river, but probably crosses the river considerably further down—but a short distance above the Falls. On both sides of the river, above the Falls, the strike diverges from the actual river channel, and passes inland, nearly parallel, however, with the river, and extends some miles northwest; but below the Falls the line of strike is very near the river, and indeed constitutes the bluff of rock which encloses the gorge. The valley occupied by Bassett's creek is wider and deeper cut in the rock than that of the Mississippi below the Falls, as may be seen more clearly by consulting the accompanying map, but the line of strike of the limerock, along the creek, and along the river above the mouth of the creek, is covered by the loam deposit, which is not the case below the Falls to Fort Snelling. Below Fort Snelling the Mississippi bluffs are again covered and masked by the loam. Above the Falls the line of the edge of the limerock forms a terrace ascent facing the river, and about one-half a mile from it, and can be traced by this means on the west side of the river northward to Shingle creek, where it bears westwardly away from the river, along the south side of the creek and becomes lost by reason of the prevalence of the drift; on the east side, at about the same distance from the river, it runs northwardly across the blocks of the Second Ward and diagonally northeastwardly across the blocks of the First Ward, and returns upon itself toward the Junction of the St. Paul & Pacific R. R. Further east another area of the Low. Trenton approaches the river, and its line of strike forms a similar terrace which extends northward to the line of Anoka county and beyond. It is exposed and worked in one or two quarries situated exactly on the Anoka county line, northwest of Sandy Lake, near the railroad. It is evident from its weathered condition and stained color, although still buried under the loam, that it has been subjected, at this point, and also all along the terrace-like ascent that it forms, on either side of the river, above the falls, to the action of water, and alternating sub-ærial agencies, for a long period of time, and that perhaps it was the water of the river, in times prior to the glacial epoch that stained and shattered it. Indeed it is with some difficulty recognizable, as the same rock that forms the falls at St. Anthony, without a knowledge of its stratigraphical continuity; this is especially true of the quarries near Sandy Lake on the east side of the river.

There is a gentle dip in the layers of Lower Trenton at Minneapolis toward the southeast. At the lower, or iron, bridge it is very slight, hardly perceptible; at the falls it is about an inch in one hundred feet; it increases soon to three or four inches in one hundred feet, and at Central Avenue, on the east side of the river, it is about five feet in one hundred feet. This dip causes the rock to rise from under the river and into the river banks, finally running in the country, as already stated, half a mile or more from the river, and more than fifty feet above it. The dip of five feet in one hundred at Central Avenue is a little away from the river, so that sewers will not empty themselves unless they are run at variance with the dip. It does not continue of the same amount but decreases northwardly, else the layers could not lie at the level they occupy where quarried at points in the north part of the city. This change may be gradual, or there may be a fault, or break, at some point in E. Minneapolis, north of Central Avenue. The St. Peter sandrock is exposed, above the level of the river, above the falls, near the upper bridge, in E. Minneapolis; and on the west side of the river, at the mill-pond at Shingle creek, two miles north of the limits of the city.

On the west side of the river the strike of the limerock, above the falls, leaves the river-bank about halfway between the railroad bridge and the mouth of Bassett's creek, sweeping round on the south side of the creek so as not to cross it, nor to be visible in its banks. It is quarried in the lumber yard opposite Boom Island, but turns from their rapidly toward the west and south, barely extending north of Sixth Avenue, North. It re-crosses the railroad between Fourth and Fifth streets, and follows the line of the road, but a block or two south of it, to the crossing of Hawthorne Avenue where it turns abruptly to the eastward, and southward along the north side of the lake in the Seventh Ward; but whether it continues in the same direction further than Nicollet Avenue, or bears more to the southward is unknown. The "hardpan" ridge crossing the south end of the Seventh Ward indicates the proximity of the strike of the Lower Trenton along the south side of the same lake, which would require an abrupt change of direction, again to the westward, or the existence of a separate area of Trenton rock lying toward the southwest. On the north side of Bassett's creek is another Trenton area, the eastern edge of which enters the city limits from the north, about one block east of Lyndale Avenue in a southwestward course, crosses Lyndale Avenue between Twenty-third and Twenty-fourth Avenues N., passes through blocks 5, 6, 7, and 8 toward the south, and again across Lyndale Avenue between Sixteenth and Seventeenth Avenues N. It crosses Plymouth Avenue two blocks east of Lyndale, and on reaching the valley of the creek it turns westward, but its location cannot be further definitely traced owing to the prevalence of the drift, and the fact that the surface becomes one of a generally rolling character. It is tolerably certain that it does not cross the valley of Bassett's creek, but sweeps round by the west and north and unites with itself along the south side of Shingle creek, about two miles north of the city limits.

The intimate connection which the features and position of the Lower Trenton areas bear to the Post-Tertiary, about the Falls of St. Anthony, has led to a more careful study of history of the drift, and some further allusion to this formation will be found under the head of *The Drift.*

The Cretaceous.

Although the Cretaceous *in situ* has not been seen in Hennepin county, it deserves to be named among the formations of the county on account of the important and conspicuous part it takes in the composition of the drift, and the strong probability that it does exist in horizontal strata below the drift in much of the western portion of the county. There is no portion of the county in which pieces of lignite from the Cretaceous have not been discovered; and throughout the rolling area, where the drift is a close clay, the color of the whole mass is frequently perceptibly tinged with green. Not infrequently pieces of green shale a foot or more in diameter are met with along the cuts by the roadside particularly in the western part of the county—disintegrated and ready to separate on the least disturbance. These of course could not have been far transported by the drift forces. The drift itself is greatly thickened by Cretaceous debris, and *is conspicuously free from foreign stones and boulders of a more enduring nature.* No other Cretaceous debris than pieces of green fissile shale and of black lignite has been recognized, and from these no fossils have been taken.

Seventeen years ago there was some excitement in the vicinity of Dayton over a reported discovery of coal, about two miles west of the village, in Wright county, by a man named Charles Williams. Upon visiting the place, the excavation was found to consist of two shafts sunk in the drift, now nearly refilled. About the place the drift thrown out shows nothing but drift clay with pebbles of all kinds and colors. One is said to have been about eighty feet deep. The general belief now is that all the coal that was found was brought for the purpose from St. Paul, as the owner, after vainly attempting to sell his land, placed a heavy mortgage on it and abandoned the country, allowing the sale of the land for the mortgage. There is certainly now no evidence of the existence of coal, or lignite, in the vicinity, though there are traces of the Cretaceous in the drift which points to the near proximity of its layers. There is also a reported exposure of "slate" in a ravine a mile or so beyond, but it could not be found.

NOTES ON THE DEEP WELL DRILLED AT EAST MINNEAPOLIS, MINN., IN 1874—1875.

(*From the Bulletin of the Minnesota Academy of Natural Sciences for* 1875.)

BY N. H. WINCHELL.

NATURAL SURFACE OF GROUND.

1	42		Sand.	42
2	28	Blue.	Limestone.	70
3	164	White.	Sandstone.	234
4	102	Red.	Limestone.	336
5	16	Gray.	Limestone.	352
6	116	White.	Sandstone.	468
7	128	Blue.	Shale.	596
8	82	White.	Sandstone.	678
9	170	Blue.	Shale.	848
10	9	Sandy.	Limestone.	857
11	130	White.	Sandstone.	987
12	8	Sandy.	Marl.	995
13	79	White.	Sandstone.	1074
14	57	Red.	Marl.	1131
15	290	Red.	Sandstone?	1421

The accompanying diagram of the strata passed through, with the designations of the strata, was furnished by Col. J. B. Clough, City Engineer, in whose charge the work was put by the City Council when money was appropriated to aid the enterprise. This occurred at the depth of about 1,000 feet.

No. 1. This sand is the well-known *loess loam* of the Mississippi bluffs. Though it is represented here as having a thickness of 42 feet, it shows less than one-half that thickness along the river bluff opposite the site of the well, less than 15 rods distant. It is here underlain by a heavy deposit of boulder-clay drift. It is presumable that this boulder-clay, which is itself rather sandy, was penetrated without the knowledge of the workmen, since it is seen to extend as far from the river as the site of the well along Central Avenue and on other streets, and is struck uniformly over the East Division of the city in digging wells at the depth of ten to twenty feet.

No. 2 is the *Lower Trenton Limestone,* embracing some layers of green shale, and is that which causes, in conjunction with the St. Peter sandstone (No. 3,) the Falls of St. Anthony.

No. 3 is known as the *St. Peter Sandstone.* Its thicknes, as here developed, is greater than observed at any other point in Minnesota. It is generally accredited with a thickness of about 125 feet, but here shows 164 feet. It is a purely white sand with very slight cement and very little variation in texture or grain.

No. 4 is known as the *Shakopee Limestone.* It has been placed as the uppermost member of the great Lower Magnesian Formation of Dr. D. D. Owen, but perhaps the St. Peter should be regarded as the uppermost member of that formation. Its color here appears to be nearly the same as seen at Kasota, where it is largely wrought and sold under the name of *Kasota Stone.* Its thickness, 102 feet, is greater than has been observed at any other point

No. 5 is designated a *gray limestone,* with a thickness of 16 feet. It is a new feature in the lithology of the Lower Magnesian, and may belong to the Shakopee.

No. 6. Below the *gray limestone* is a white sandstone, similar to the St. Peter above, with a thickness of 116 feet. This can be identified as the *Jordan Sandstone,* so named from Jordan village on the Minnesota river, above Shakopee, where it was first recognized as a distinct portion of the Lower Magnesian.

No. 7, which is here denominated a *blue shale* having a thickness of 128 feet, has not before been recognized as a distinct portion of the Lower Magnesian. It occupies the place, in order of stratification, of the St. Lawrence Limestone, but is not so thick.

No. 8 is likewise an unknown stratum.

No. 9, in like manner, has never before been discovered. It is highly probable that, taken together, Nos. 7, 8, 9 and 10 are the actual equivalents of the St. Lawrence Limestone in point of stratification, modified in character and increased in thickness by proximity to the ancient Laurentian belt that lies but few miles further north. This would indicate the early origin of the Minnesota spur of the old Laurentian belt or nucleus of North America, as a shore line along which shale and sand were accumulated at the same time that limestone was being formed at points more remote in deeper water.

No. 10 pertains to the same horizon, and bears a stronger resemblance to the St. Lawrence.

Nos. 11, 12 and 13 represent the St. Croix Sandstone, but it is of less thickness than where seen in the Mississippi bluffs.

No. 14 may represent the "Lingula flags," or the upper portion of the Potsdam Sandstone.

No. 15 was rather clayey to be designated, unqualifiedly, a sandstone. It is undoubtedly the upper portion of the great series of marls and sands that characterize this horizon in Minnesota, as made known by Dr. Owen, and by him and others referred to the age of the Lower Potsdam Sandstone of New York. It seems to be the same formation in which the salt well, drilled at Belle Plaine, stopped at the depth of 710 feet, though much less compact than where it is exposed at the surface in southwestern Minnesota. It is the same formation as the rock that embraces the well-known "pipestone" or *Catlinite* of Minnesota.

THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA,
Minneapolis, May 25, 1876.

The Drift.

In Hennepin county this deposit appears under still other features than those reported from more southern counties, and considerable light is thrown on the history of that interesting epoch of geological history. Three important facts respecting it can now be considered pretty clearly established.

1st. There are two distinct glacial or hardpan deposits in Hennepin county.

2d. The limit of the ice and moving drift of the latter was, toward the east, not far from the present line of the Mississippi, between Minneapolis and Fort Snelling, passing between Minneapolis and St. Paul.

3d. The Falls of St. Anthony have receded, since the last glacial epoch, or since the retirement of the lake-like expanse of water that filled the Mississippi valley, reducing the river more nearly to its present size, only from the mouth of the Minnesota, at Fort Snelling, a distance of about nine miles.

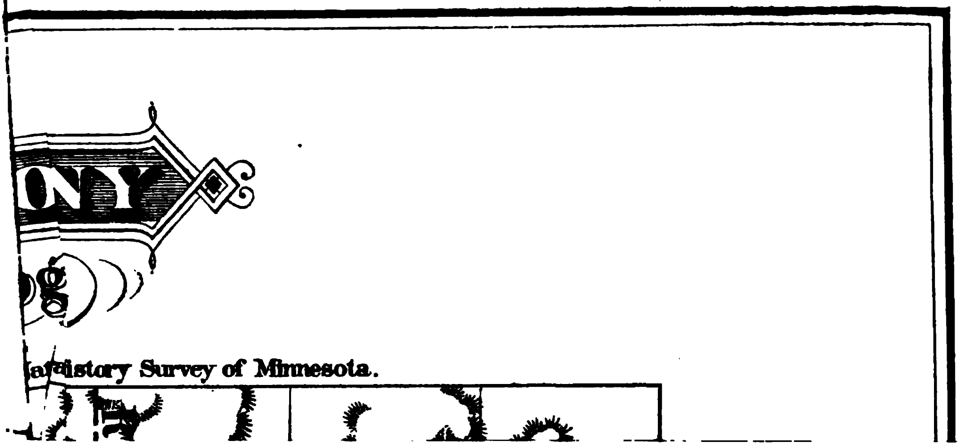
The facts on which these conclusions are based may be grouped under three heads, as follows:

1st. *Detailed observations on the composition of the drift.*
2nd. *The geographical distribution of the different parts.*
3rd. *The gorge below the falls.*

1. *Detailed observations on the composition of the drift in the vicinity of the Falls of St. Anthony.*

Section 1. *At the Falls of St. Anthony, near the river.*

The drift-bank has been considerably excavated near McAlester College on the east side of the river for use in the repairs on the Falls by the United States Engineers. As the point of excavation


ONY
og
History Survey of Minnesota.

changes, thus successively revealing different parts of the bank, the nature of the whole may be ascertained. A common general section is as follows:

No. 1.	Loam	3 ft. to 6 ft.
No. 2.	Stones and boulders, rounded, sometimes with a considerable thickness of sand	5 ft. to 15 ft.
No. 3.	Red hardpan clay, with stones and boulders, lying on the rock	10 ft. to 20 ft.

In a few places along this excavation the color of No. 3, is not so distinctly red or copper-colored. It seems to be lighter, as if it had been mingled with hardpan of a later date which in much of the county is seen to overlie the red hardpan. This shading of color pertains only to the upper portion of the deposit. There are also places along the same bank where the light-colored or gray hardpan was deposited in considerable quantities, and still remains, and as the bank recedes a little from the river this light-colored hardpan occupies the inner and lower portion of the main slope in such a way as to hide the red entirely, and give a false impression of its having replaced it. In other places it is seen to lie directly on the red.

By further and more detailed examination of the same bank the foregoing No. 2 is seen to become separated into two or three pretty constant parts. It is sometimes clayey, and of a gray color. It is sometimes entirely made up of gravel and sand with belts of boulders, the alternation of parts being in general expressed by the following:

Section 2. Detailed Section at the Falls of St. Anthony, near the river.

1.		Loam	3 to 6 feet.
2.	2 (a).	The gray sand and gravel	0 to 10 feet.
	2 (b).	The gray stones and boulders	1 to 10 feet.
	2.	The gray hardpan	0 to 6 feet
3.	3 (a).	The red sand and gravel	0 to 10 feet.
	3 (b).	The red stones and boulders	1 to 2 feet.
	3.	The red hardpan	10 to 25 feet.

There are three main parts or members. No. 1 is never wanting. No. 2 is always seen as far as this excavation is concerned, but its subordinate parts are not always all present. Very often 2 (a) and 2 (b) are the only portions seen; and in other places 2

(a) is wanting, the only thing that separates No. 1 from. No. 3 being No. 2 (b). Of No. 3, the red sand and gravel may be absent, but in no case has the line of red stones and boulders been found wanting. The red hardpan, No. 3, is the most conspicuous portion of the whole, and is always present, rising sometimes by alternations with No. 2, (gray hardpan to near the top of the bluff.) There is in that case always a loam (No. 1) overlying, and a similar mixture of red stones and boulders with gray, immediately overlying the red hardpan. The gray hardpan at this point is quite unimportant as a member of the bank, but it is found to embrace very large boulders, not only of granite, but also of the Lower Trenton formation. Its color is very marked in contrast with the red hardpan. The stones in it have the appearance of glaciation. The *red hardpan at this place has not been seen to embrace a piece of the Lower Trenton.* Its boulders are usually small, rarely exceeding ten inches in diameter, while the bulk of it has only stones, less than four inches in diameter, and of a red color and quartzitic composition. "Greenstone" as a boulder is also common in the red hardpan. The iron in it, which causes the color, is *peroxide, non-hydrated.* The iron in the gray hardpan is *hydrated.*

The drift surface on the bluffs along the northeast side of the river, at Minneapolis, shows no gray hardpan. The bluffs rise about one hundred feet, average, higher than the top of the foregoing section and consist, so far as seen, of red clay and gravel. Toward the southeast, where the St. Paul and Pacific R. R. passes out of the valley of the Mississippi, the characters of the gray and red are mingled at first in an overlying stratum of gravel and sand, but before reaching St Paul the gray has entirely disappeared so that in the bluffs at that place the drift is all red clay, or sand, gravel and boulders derived from red clay, the whole having a characteristic prevailing red color. There are places where the shales of the Trenton have stained the drift clay at St. Paul, but those are low in the valley and near the river. The country generally at St. Paul and thence to Stillwater, on the St. Croix river, fifteen miles east, on the Wisconsin boundary, is everywhere covered only with the red drift. This statement is made without regard to the loam which is found very generally over this portion of the state. Within the valley of the Mississippi at St. Paul the upper portion of the drift is affected by the mingling of gray and red. The following observations, made in St. Paul, belong to this general class of facts.

Section 3. On Sibley street, in St. Paul.

No. 1.	Loam	2 feet.
No. 2.	Stones and gravel, mostly limestone, also boulders, large stones, sloping to the SE. and E	12 feet.
No. 3.	Sand and gravel in beds irregularly alternating with No. 2. Some beds of gravel are two feet thick	10 feet.
No. 4.	Stones and gravel. In this are some northern boulders and limestone pieces, also pieces of green shale; the large stones sloping E. and SE	20 feet.
No. 5.	Red sand, horizontally and somewhat obliquely stratified, often fine and clayey	8 feet.
No. 6.	Red hardpan, seen	12 feet.

No. 6 above is often of the color of common red brick, and is very hard and compact. The stones in it are apt to be small. The upper portion at least shows in some instances a kind of lamination which still holds stones and is very sandy. In other places it passes into No. 5 gradually. But there is a very sudden and marked transition from No. 4 to No. 5, showing plainly a distinct deposit and a different origin. The iron in No. 4, and all above is hydrated, giving the whole a yellowish-gray, or olive cast, but although No. 5 consists of sand, and will admit water as freely as No. 4, it has only the red color of non-hydrated peroxide of iron. Hence the cause given for the color of the iron and of the drift (and generally accepted) as in Ohio, in contrasting the upper and lower portions, is not applicable here. Nos. 2, 3 and 4 make substantially one great deposit, and may come from the disintegration, under glacial water, of the usual clayey drift-sheet in the act of deposition—as the whole locality is in a low spot in St. Paul where the Trenton is broken down by some great drainage force. The boulders and stones in No. 6 are generally of metamorphic rock, there being but very rarely a piece of limestone. What pieces there are of limestone are of some foreign formation not evidently of the Lower Trenton. The stones in No. 4 are nine-tenths of them from the Lower Trenton.

Descending from Sibley street toward Wacouta street, and so toward the general centre of the tributary valley in which these excavations are made, Nos. 2, 3 and 4 gradually taper out and become no thicker than three feet, and other deposits replace them uncomformably thus.

Section 4, between Wacouta and Sibley streets, St. Paul.

No. 1.	Loam	2 to 4 feet.
No. 2.	Horizontally stratified yellow clay, varying to blue near the bottom, with no stones nor gravel	2 to 6 feet.
No. 3.	The same as Nos. 2, 3 and 4 of the last section, diminishing in thickness from 25 feet to 2 feet where it runs under the above No. 2, towards the lower portion of the valley	25 ft. to 2 feet.
No. 4.	The same as No. 5 of the last section, red and clayey, showing oblique stratification along the right of the cut, but horizontal along the left; at the extreme right hand passing downward into No. 5—the red hardpan	10 feet.
No. 5.	Stony, red hardpan, seen	5 feet.

No. 2 becomes, at the crossing of Wacouta street, about 16 feet thick, and continues horizontally bedded, but with a gentle, general slope toward the N. E. or toward the centre of the valley. Its lower portion also changes to a quicksand. The gravel and sand of No. 3, of the last section, lie sometimes on No. 5 without the intervention of No. 4. The limestone masses, as well as the granite boulders in No. 3 have their angles rounded and decomposed, some masses even falling to pieces in the process of digging, though this is of course due largely to the quality of the rock. They are all water-worn and stained, rather than glaciated. The limestone masses are generally changed in color through and through, as if having been water-soaked in contact with air, or alternately in contact with air and water, for a great many years. They are not blue and fresh as water-soaked specimens are from a quarry, nor so well preserved as masses seen along the gorge below the Falls of St. Anthony. There are spots below Wacouta street where this member (No. 3) becomes clayey, making a gray stony hardpan, resembling that which covers the western part of Hennepin county, but still very gravelly and stony. This character does not rise above the lowermost two feet, so far as seen in the excavations on Wacouta and Sibley streets. Below Wacouta street the thick clay (No. 2 of the last section) is seen lying *below* a layer of stones and gravel, and this position can be traced in the opposite bank to some distance above Wacouta street, the clay gradually becoming thinner till it allows the overlying gravel and stones to come into contact with those of No. 3, the only remaining difference between the upper and lower parts being then a difference in *throw*, or slope, of the larger stones, as noted in *Section* 3. It is supposed to be the equivalent of the brick-clay at Minneapolis, at Lake Minnetonka and at Carver, though it does not everywhere make brick of the same color. It lies directly on the gravel and stones of No. 3, with a sudden transition, indicating some great and sudden change in the force depositing the material, followed again by a revival of the former drainage force, giving origin to the overlying course of stones and gravel. It is wholly embraced within the period of deposit of the gray or later drift.

The exposures within the Mississippi valley at St. Paul may be summarized in a general way as follows:

Section No. 5. Summarized section of the drift within the valley at St. Paul.

1.		Loam	3 to 10 feet.
2.	2 (a).	Gray sand, gravel and stones	0 to 10 feet.
	2 (b).	Fine, laminated blue brick-clay	0 to 16 feet.
	2 (c).	Gray sand, gravel and stones	20 feet.
	2.	Gray hardpan	2 feet.
3.	3 (a).	Fine, laminated red sand or clay, the *Tripoli* of Stillwater	0 to 10 feet.
	3 (b).	Red hardpan	10 to 20 feet.

Outside of the valley of the Mississippi near St. Paul, and within the limits of the city, the general aspect of the drift is red, particularly toward the east, the red hardpan, or its product, the red sand and gravel, rising to the tops of the bluffs, the foregoing No. 2, of the general section, being absent. The red hardpan is sometimes locally modified, and is largely converted by wash and drainage to a coarse sand, as seen in the cuts near the St. Paul and Pacific Junction with the West Wisconsin Railroad. Along the north bluffs of the river this character prevails, overlain by a thickness, usually not great, of No. 1.

At three-quarters of a mile below the University the drift at the rim bank consists as follows:

Section 6. Three-quarters of a mile below the University.

1.	Loam	5 feet.
2.	Gravel and gravelly clay	20 feet.
3.	Red hardpan to the rock, perhaps	15 feet.

At Minneapolis, near the west end of the lower bridge, the drift consists apparently of gray hardpan, 7 feet, without any trace of the older red drift. The same is true at the stone quarries about a quarter of a mile further S. E.—thus in more detail at the quarries.

Section 7. *At Bank's Arenson's quarry, Minneapolis.*

1.	Loam	3 feet.
2.	Gravel and stones, the latter being mostly granitic, but with a few pieces of limestone, varying to	12 feet.
3.	Stony, gray hardpan clay	

Section 8. *Corner of Washington avenue and Sixth avenue, north, Minneapolis.*

1.	Loam, stratification not evident; apparently passing downward into brick-clay	2 to 4 feet.
2.	Brick-clay	1 to 4 feet.
3.	Fine sand, lying unconformably under the last	1 to 4 feet.

No. 1 contains calcareous concretions as large as peas and walnuts. It cannot be said to merge certainly into No. 2, but it seems to. The stratification of No. 2 fades out gradually upward, while the texture and composition continue somewhat into No. 1, becoming also yellow, or at last rich brown or black when it is termed soil. No. 2, as seen in this exposure, consists of a long synclinal, the axis running nearly north and south, toward the west, so lifted as to disclose what it lies on, (No. 3.) It is quite calcareous, showing concretionary lumps, and coatings, and also at a point on Fifth street, fresh water species of shells—though the cut there may be more nearly the equivalent of No. 1. This section shows that the source of the water which spread the brick clay was toward the west, and that the bottom on which it was spread was one of stratified fine sand which increased toward the west. This is near the descent to Bassett's creek, and over the St. Peter sandstone, (the Trenton having been broken down,) and that stream or its valley, had something to do, probably, with the sudden transition seen here from sand to brick clay. Although there is at one point in this cut an agreement in direction between the strata of the sand and those of the clay, yet on close inspection it appears that the clay came on suddenly.

At the yard of the *Union Brick Company* (Baxter, Woodward and M'Nair) the clay is yellow, with some beds of fine white sand to the depth of about eight feet, when it begins to show blue.

Upward here it becomes a clayey loam. The strata have a wavy outline, synclinals and anticlinals following each other twice in about 14 rods, rising and falling six feet.

At Woodbury's brickyard, which is about half a mile west of the Union Brick Company's, within the valley of Bassett's creek, the clay is underlain by a quicksand which furnishes water that rises to within twelve feet of the surface. The clay is about forty feet in thickness and contains thin layers of sand, interlaminated, which becomes white on drying. The upper portion gradually becomes yellowish by exposure and the hydration of the iron, the lower portion being blue. There are also in it calcareous concretions and a few large *Unio* shells which are very fragile. This clay seems to occupy the valley of Bassett's creek generally. At the Sumner School house, which is in the valley of this creek, north of Woodbury's yard, after drilling through this clay, over 100 feet, an artesian overflow of water was obtained.

Passing across Bassett's creek, on Western avenue, and ascending the bluffs on the west side of the creek, the drift is found to consist of the red gravelly hardpan, covered by a light loamy soil. The surface is rolling, with frequent springs and numerous lakes.

At Richfield P. O., Minnehaha creek runs about 35 feet below the general level of the country, and the banks are composed of gravelly, gray or yellow clay. No red clay can be seen. But at the school house in Richfield, Sec. 18, on Minnehaha creek, the well, dug, disclosed the red drift clay some feet below the surface. At the Edina Mills there is a bank of drift, composed of clay and gravel of the usual gray color, containing many pieces of the Trenton limestone.

On the NW. ¼ of Sec. 8 (S.) Crystal Lake, a cut in the Osseo road shows the gray and red hardpan as follows:

Section 9. *NW.* ¼ *Sec.* 8 (*S.*) *Crystal Lake.*

1. Gray or yellowish hardpan, with few Cretaceous pieces, and some boulders...................................... 8 feet.
2. Red hardpan passing into red sand and gravel below........... 6 feet.

The red passes into the yellow by a series of blotches interchanging one with the other, as if coarsely mixed. Even between the blotches there is a sudden change of color. When the line of union is not broken up into blotches the change of color is abrupt. The late, or gray hardpan is more calcareous than the older. The appearance of the red drift is, as if there had been a lake, or at least a low spot in it, prior to the deposition of the gray.

In Sec. 16, Eden Prairie, a cut by the road shows the red drift, on a low level, but five or six feet above the creek, while in the higher portions the gray only is seen.

Near the mill at Minnetonka City the old red drift can be seen in a little excavation by the road, on a level with and near the creek. It is overlain by a course of stones and gravel, in which appears a piece of the Trenton, and that again by the great deposit of the gray hardpan generally over the country.

The drift knolls at Wayzata are of the brown hardpan, but occasionally show the red at low levels where cut by the roads.

About the west end of Lake Minnetonka the drift is very clayey and has a great proportion of Cretaceous materials. The water of wells is very hard.

The ridge which enters the corporate limits of Minneapolis (Sec. 27) is a spur from the main drift-bluff running along the west side of the river. The most of it, within the limits of the city, is of gray hardpan and gravel, with variations toward the west and northwest toward the red hardpan, of which there is a considerable area extending to and beyond Cedar Lake.

Sec. 36, Champlin. The rolling land begins gradually, the timber changing also gradually. The rolling land is stony, clayey or gravelly, with patches of sand as revealed in wells, and some places of stratified clays near the flat country. The stones are mostly granitic, but have among them, also, numerous large masses of light-colored, fine-grained dolomite, which are burned for quick-lime. The ridges are said to run generally S. W. and N. E., but are very irregular, with depressions and cross-ridges. Water is easily got in wells at about 40 feet—sometimes in 15 or 20.

At the mouth of Elm creek, near Champlin, the bank is exposed by a recent wash, disclosing the composition of the plain on which are Osseo and Brooklyn. The upper portion of the bank, including the loam, is 18 feet, and consists of coarse sand, with gravel and pebbles obliquely stratified, the whole of a light brown color. The lower portion—25 feet—consists of red hardpan which continues down to the level of the water of the Mississippi.

In traveling the river road from Champlin to Dayton, a very noticeable change occurs in the nature of the surface drift, before reaching the latter place. It becomes lighter colored, shaly or ashy, with pieces of slate. About a mile below Dayton a large freshet wash by the roadside, where a creek enters the Mississippi river, shows an exposure of about 35 feet of pebbly clay of a light, gray color, with pieces of slate, and an occasional boulder near the bottom, underlain by a sand of the same color, 20 feet thick, varying to very fine or clayey, stratified, which, washing out easily, causes the downthrow of large masses of the clay, both in the creek gorge and along the river bluff. No red drift is visible. The surface about is rolling, with occasional boulders.

At Dayton the general character of the surface is of the gray, or ashen, slaty, rolling hardpan. Along the bank of Crow river the drift is exposed in a good section.

Section 10. *At Dayton.*

1.	**Stratified fine sand and clay**	**10 feet.**
2.	**Blue drift hardpan**	**25 to 30 feet.**
3.	**Red drift hardpan**	**8 to 10 feet.**

In No. 2 are many fragments of Cretaceous slate, sidorite, iron concretions, (covered with gravel and cemented by iron rust,) granitic pebbles, and (Devonian ?) limestone masses which have supplied a great deal of quick-lime, and an occasional large granite boulder. In No. 3 are a great many small greenstone and quartzite stones, and but few that are large, also many granitic stones. Along the bank of the river a piece of native copper about the size of a hickory-nut was found by James Ream.

At the old bridge on Sec. 18, Hassan, or a few rods below it, on the right bank of Crow river, is a deposit of coarse crag, three feet thick, comprising the pebbles and stones that were washed out of the old red hardpan. It dips a little to the east, and shows as a persistent layer for 30 or 40 rods, causing a terrace in the surface of the alluvium of the flood plain, and rising, at the bridge, about 18 feet above the river, beyond which it seems to strike inland and is lost. It also appears on the opposite side of the river above the bridge. In the opposite direction it finally runs down to the level of the river, eastward, and disappears. It has been used by Mr. Hoag for underpinning for his house.

About the lakes (Mother, Amelia, Calhoun, &c.,) the country is rolling, but is less so toward the southeast part of that tract; indeed the rolling area gradually dies away into the plain in some parts of Richfield so that its eastern margin is not so marked. On the plain the soil and the subsoil is gravelly or sandy, very rarely stony. The same is true of the rolling tract about Diamond Lake. There are no stones in the fields nor about the lake shores. This seems to indicate the agency of water rather than of ice in piling up these outer knolls, and in spreading the gravel of the plain. Minnehaha creek has a gravelly bottom all the way below Richfield, at least.

Through sections 20 and 19, in the southern part of Bloomington, the hardpan drift, on the north side of the Ferry road, rises above the flat on which the road runs, with the appearance of a terrace, and is wooded with oaks, aspens and ironwood. For some distance the terrace-like level on the surface of the hardpan is about half a mile north of the road, and rises about 40 or 50 feet. It is stony with occasional boulders, becoming more rolling further north.

At Bloomington Ferry the river runs near to the hardpan bank on the north side. The bank rises 140 feet above the water in summer. This is about the average, the top of the hardpan being of irregular outline. This includes the "terrace" of hardpan mentioned in sections 20 and 19. That terrace appears to approach the river here. The surface farther back is still higher, and indeed continues to ascend with an irregular contour. The hardpan is yellowish brown or gray, and gravelly near the top, but also has afforded some large granite boulders, that now lie in the street near the ferry, and others that are on the beach below the ferry. The Minneapolis and Chaska brick-clay is seen also at the ferry, and some years ago supplied a red brick seen in the house of Mr. Chadwick. Within a mile and a half, toward Eden Prairie, the surface rises apparently about 100 feet higher.

The well of Mr. J. Miller, N. W. ¼ sec. 9, Crystal Lake, was dug March, 1875, by Mr. J. G. Sommers, who gives the following section:

Section 11. *N. W. ¼ Sec.* 9, *Crystal Lake.*

1.	Loam	1 foot.
2.	Yellow hardpan, with little stones	5 to 6 feet.
3.	"Blue black clay" with no stones nor bedding; "one solid mass." This had sticks at different depths, and small pieces of Cretaceous coal, but positively no stones. Small quantities of water were met at 15 feet below the surface, and again at 25 feet	45 feet.
4.	Sand, boulders and gravel, all mixed; clean, with no clay. Some of the boulders being very large	8 feet.
5.	Light clay (even lighter than No. 2) with small stones but no boulders; nothing red about it	19 feet.
6.	Mixed stones and gravel; cemented	1 foot.
7.	Sand with water	2 feet.
8.	Blue limerock; rough, not polished nor scratched; depth of well	76 feet.

At Charles Grotjann's old brickyard, in Upper St. Anthony, the clay contains lumps and concretions of clay, and also the usual limy concretions. The most interesting feature at this point is the jamming and folding to which this otherwise regularly laminated brick-clay has been subjected. There is a thrust-up place near the river, at the brickyard, which shows these laminations crumpled and broken, with a sudden transition upward into gravel and sand, which is unconformably stratified. This might possibly have been done by floating ice in the river at some earlier stage of the valley when the river may have covered this level which is 15 or 18 feet higher than the usual freshet rise of the water. Yet it hardly seems attributable to that cause, since it is not only covered with the loam, which is referable to that last high stage, in undisturbed continuity, but is so deeply within the bank that crowding ice could hardly reach it. The terrace flat of Upper St. Anthony, underlain by the brick-clay, is 25 feet higher than the river.

The highest drift knolls in the neighborhood of Minneapolis are in Anoka county, about Sec. 24 Manomin, in the neighborhood of Sullivan's and Moore's lakes, but east of them. They are of red drift clay, with gravel and granitic boulders, yet *the boulders are not so common* as might be expected from the fact that these areas suffered the exposure and surface drainage incident to the last glacial epoch. The soil is clayey, and loamy, but between the bluffs and the river are extensive sandy flats. Little wet spots, even lakes and swales which never become dry, lie between these knolls. These hills continue SE. toward Bower's Lake in Ramsey county. The high hill north of and near Bower's Lake is 130 feet higher than the NE. corner of Moulton's Nursery, which may be taken as an average height for the hardpan drift bluffs along the east side of the river. From the Nursery to the foundation of the University is a further descent of 110 feet; thence to the river at the University 137 feet, making a total descent from the high knolls at Bower's to the river below the falls, in the rapids near the University, of 377 feet.

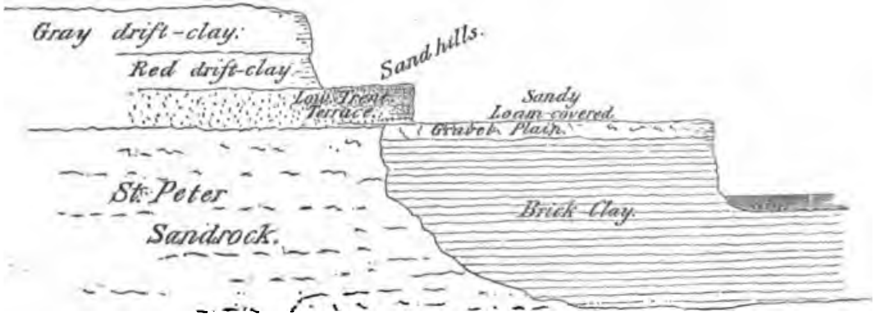
On section 12, Crystal Lake, near the mouth of Shingle creek, in digging a well for Mr. J. Kesler, Mr. O. E. Spear found a stick as large as his wrist in a blue clay, (the brick-clay) that had no stones nor gravel, about 18 feet beneath the surface.

On the N. E. ¼ sec. 12, Crystal Lake, at Peterson and Swansen's brickyard, this same clay is manufactured into cream colored brick. It is obtained in the immediate river-bank, and runs apparently beneath the river. It is blue, stoneless and horizontally stratified.

Section 13. *N. E.* ¼ *Sec.* 12, *Crystal Lake, at Peterson and Swansen's Brickyard.*

1.	Loam............	3 feet.
2.	Sand, gravel and pebbles; stratified; sometimes rusty.....	4 to 6 feet.
3.	Brick-clay; blue; horizontally bedded.....................	15 feet.
4.	Slope to the river; apparently clay........................	15 feet.

An ideal section of the right bank of the river at this place, (near the mouth of Shingle creek,) would be as shown by the following diagram. This is based on the observed exposures of the various parts in such topographical positions as indicate its correctness:



Section of the right bank of the Mississippi near the mouth of Shingle Creek.

The above figure represents the brick-clay as lying immediately on the St. Peter sandstone, because at that point no drift-clay can be seen to lie between them. It is more probable, however, that a deposit of drift-clay, perhaps both the red and the gray, runs below the brick-clay, as seen at St. Paul; or at least that such a deposit ante-dated the brick-clay, though sudsequently perhaps entirely swept away.

Further information concerning the drift was sought for in developments of the common wells throughout the country. The following table shows the result:

Wells in Hennepin County.

Owner's Name.	Location.	Feet in the drift.	Feet in the rock.	Total Depth.	Remarks.
N. O. Phillips	NW. ¼ Sec. 6, St. Anthony	20	..	20	Water comes from the clay; fails in dry season.
D. D. Moore	SE. ¼ Sec. 6, St. Anthony	40	..	40	Clay nearly 40 feet; then coarse sand; little water.
D. D. Moore	" "	40	..	40	No water.
Frank Thery	" "	87½	..	87½	"Blue clay" 24 feet; then red clay sand and gravel; good water.
——— Wilson	Hoyt's Addition to St. Anthony	15	..	15	All sand; then struck the rock, which is smooth like a floor.
Crystal Lake House	Sec. 10, Crystal Lake	30	..	30	No rock; good water; near the river.
Jesse N. Richardson	Richfield P. O.	68	..	68	Gravel and gravelly clay; good water.
——— Rankin	Eden Prairie Station	48	..	43	Sand and coarse sand; good water.
John Brown	Near Bloomington Ferry	88	..	88	Clay and sand; good water.
John Scofield	Four or five miles E. of Bloomington Ferry.	53	..	53	Good water.
——— Marville		75	..	75	Clay and hardpan 50 feet; sand and clay alternating.
——— Clark	½ mile N. of Highland Park	52	16	68	Clay and sand; drilled in lime rock.
N. Palmer	Gale's 2nd Addition, Minneapolis	26	19	45	26 feet boulders and clay; then in limerock.
Fred Wagner	No. 1200 N. 23rd St., Minneapolis	25	19	44	
——— Bailiff	4 miles E. of Bloomington Ferry	56	..	56	First 25 feet all sand.
Wm. Knight	SE. ¼ Sec. 10 Crystal Lake	14	..	14	Sandy loam; good water.
C. H. Sanborn	NW. ¼ Sec. 5, Crystal Lake	40	..	40	Good water.
All wells in	Osseo, and Brooklyn generally	12–14	..	12–14	Flat country; good water.
Wm. Schmidt	Sec. 36, Champlin	45	..	45	Sandy knoll.
Mathias Zopli	Sec. 36, Champlin	20	..	20	Ten feet of good water.
Ferdinand Schmidt	Sec. 1, Maple Grove	44	..	44	Twelve feet stratified clay and sand; good water.
Fonduck House	Champlin	33	.	33	Got water at 8 feet above a "dark clay" (red clay ?)
Wells at	Champlin, generally	25–33	..	25–33	Good water.
——— DePuy	Sec. 12, Hassan	17	..	17	All clay; seeps.
Peter Hill	SW. ¼ Sec. 4, Minneapolis	22	.	22	Gravel and sand; near a tamarack swamp.
David Corban	NE. ¼ Sec. 12	70	..	70	Nearly all clay; water in sand; rose 25 feet.
Joseph Hennesey	SW. ¼ Sec. 29, Maple Grove	16	..	16	In clay.
Thomas Hennesey	" "	15	..	15	In clay.
Martin Devery	SW. ¼ Sec. 28, Maple Grove	65	..	65	Blue clay; water in sand.
Wells generally at	Maple Grove	15–25	..	15–25	In blue clay; no knowledge of any red clay.
Crystal Lake House	SE. ¼ Sec. 6, Crystal Lake	40	..	40	Sand nearly all the way; then clay.

Wells in Hennepin County.—Continued.

Owner's Name.	Location.	Feet in the drift.	Feet in the rock.	Total Depth.	Remarks.
Frank Paul	SW. ¼ Sec. 31, Richfield (E)	75	..	75	40 feet loam; the rest clay; no rock; no water.
Frank Paul	" "	27	..	27	Sand all the way; no rock; no water.
Frank Paul	" "	53	..	53	No rock, nor water.
Wm. Franchon	NW. ¼ Sec. 31, Richfield	53	11	46	11 feet in lime rock; then white sand, and good water.
F. X. Brousseau	Sec. 14 Bloomington	27	..	27	Sand; near the river bluff; water on clay.
J. Stansfield	NW. ¼ Sec 14, Richfield	56	..	56	Some clay, but mostly gravel; good water.
T. Vessey	Sec 5, Bloomington	56	..	56	Near the river; in the bluffs.
E. M. Snow	Long Lake	14	..	14	Mostly sand and gravel; then blue clay; good water.
May and Co	Long Lake	60	..	60	Mostly hardpan; water "irony."
Medina Mills	Long Lake	175	..	175	Gravel and sand; then blue clay; good, soft water.
D. E. Priest	Sec. 23, Minnetrista	25	..	25	Yellow clay hardpan and sand; "hard" water.
Jacob Schleh	St. Bonifacius, Minnetrista	36	..	36	18 ft. yellow clay; 18 ft. blue clay hardpan and sand; good water in gravel.
J. Metz	" "	36	..	36	" " " "
J. Miller	NW. ¼ Sec. 9, (S.) Crystal Lake	56	20	76	Loam, yellow clay and blue clay 56 feet; contained sticks; struck the limerock.
R. S. Lee	Highland Park, Minneapolis	27	..	27	Clay, sand, clay, sand; good water.
Lambert Negley	19th St., bet. 20th and 21st Aves., N	45	..	45	Sand all the way to white sand rock.
—— Halsey	19th St., bet. 20th and 21st Aves., N	37	8	45	Eight feet of limerock.
John Eagle	Cor. 20th St., and 21st Ave., N	20	25	45	Limerock 15 feet; sandrock 10 feet.
—— Parker	Christmas Ave. and 23rd St	39	9	48	Clay; struck rock at 39 feet.
John Hooper	NE. ¼ Sec. 8 (SE.) Crystal Lake	?	..	?	Struck the limerock.

2. *Geographical distribution of the different parts.*

(a). *The red hardpan.*

This, which from its position must be regarded the oldest of the different parts, is found exclusively in the eastern part of the county, and thence eastwardly to St. Paul, and through Washington county to Stillwater. It seems to be the principal deposit, rising from immediate contact with the indurated rocks to the surface of the country. It is locally modified by the loss of its clay, so as to consist almost entirely of coarse sand and gravel, or, in other places, of stones and boulders. Along the main valleys, as at St. Paul and at Stillwater, its upper portion, to the thickness sometimes of twenty feet, consists of very fine clay, which yet seems to contain a large per cent. of silica, (nearly 75 per cent. according to Prof. Peckham,) the whole derived doubtless from the gentle washing of the red hardpan. This fine red clay has been referred to in a former report as possibly pertaining to the Cretaceous. Its color is due to non-hydrated ferric oxide. The red hardpan also appears on the west side of the river at the surface of the drift, and constituting its principal mass, in the western part of the township of Minneapolis, in the rolling tract that embraces lakes Calhoun and Cedar; also northwardly to Bassett's creek; also, with some modifications in much of the townships of Richfield, Eden Prairie and Minnetonka. As a loam covers much of this part of the county it is not possible to define the exact limit of its distribution. There is a rolling belt of small timber, (oaks and aspens,) that extends north and south across this part of the county, which seems nearly to coincide with the superficies of the old red drift clay on the west side of the river. In general that is the timber that characterizes it on the east side of the river. Even within this area on the west side of the river there are spots where the color of the hardpan is modified toward the gray color; and other places where there are important deposits of gray hardpan overlying the red. This is particularly the case in the northern part of Minneapolis, and in Crystal Lake townships, covering the locality at which the Mississippi seems to have been deflected from its old channel. The extensive flat in eastern Minneapolis, Richfield and Bloomington townships is also underlain by this red hardpan, but it is also supplied with extensive superimposed gravel deposits, as well as with patches of unmodified gray hardpan. The gray hardpan may be seen in the immediate bluffs of the river in some cases, both on the west and on the east sides, within the limits of the city of Minneapolis, but the red is found to lie nearly everywhere, under this flat as the lowest portion of the drift. The red extends under the gray hardpan an unknown distance westward. It is seen in deep valleys and excavations along the central portions of the county, but with decreasing frequency toward the west and northwest, until nothing is known of it, at least within the limits of Hennepin county.

(b) *The Gray Hardpan.*

This covers the greater part of the county, gradually becoming thinner toward the east and southeast. Within the valley of the Mississippi it extends at least to St. Paul, found in the depressions between the rock bluffs, or in the lower depressions in the old drift-surface. In those areas, however, not embraced within the river valley, nothing has been seen of the gray hardpan as far east as St. Paul. The gray hardpan, or the gravel, sand and stones that result from its modification, seems to be spread generally over the upper flats and terraces that exist, from different causes, along the river below the Falls of St. Anthony. It begins to be mingled with the red drift, and finally to cover it entirely, within the limits of Minneapolis. The conspicuous ridge of hardpan within the city, (sec. 27,) is of a gray color, but it blends with the main river bluffs toward the northwest, along the west side of Bassett's creek, and loses its distinctive characters. The gray color, however, prevails on the north and east side of the creek, through a rolling tract of country, and into Crystal Lake township—and thence, uninterruptedly, northwestwardly. The gray hardpan surface is specially characterized by heavy timber, particularly after passing out of the valley of the Mississippi, and thus beyond the area liable to its modified conditions. It is observable that the eastern line of the Big Woods, properly so-called, (i. e. comprising large trees of Sugar Maple, Bitternuts, Elm, Bass, Oaks, &c.,) nearly coincides with the eastern line of the unmodified gray hardpan, and approaches the Mississippi river at Champlin, actually reaching the river bluffs a few miles below Dayton. This line may be said to run, in general, from the eastern end of Lake Minnetonka to Champlin. Whatever gray hardpan is found to the east of that line, or to the southeast, speaking generally, seems to have been mingled with the red, and to have lost much of its clay. It is hence often converted to a gray gravel and sand, and is in many places replaced by red hardpan or by red gravel and sand. A gray gravel which varies to a hardpan, is spread out over the flat on which Minneapolis stands. This is covered by the loam, and is underlain by the red hardpan.

(c) *The Brick-Clay.*

This is found particularly within the valley of Bassett's creek, and, above its mouth, in the valley of the Mississippi. It very rarely rises above the level of the top of the Trenton terrace, but has a thickness, as shown by the well sunk at the Sumner School house, of over 100 feet in some places. A similar clay, supposed to be of cotemporaneous origin, is seen embraced between deposits of gravel and boulders, at St. Paul, as shown by the general section at that place, and lying above the gray hardpan. A similar stratified clay is found at Lake Minnetonka, and at Carver, in the valley of the Minnesota.

The general distribution of these parts, in the vicinity of Minneapolis, is shown by the accompanying map, but a great many details, and exceptions are disregarded.

At Banks Arenson's quarry, on the west side of the river, nearly opposite the State University, the gray hardpan, which is stripped off the rock for quarrying, lies over a glaciated rock-surface, the marks running N. NW. and S. SE. While these marks correspond with the general direction of the river at this point, their regularity and persistence over a large surface preclude their having been caused by the action of the water of the river. The quarry has also been worked back from the line of the strike of the bluffs, and this stripping is about four rods back from the old line. The marks are also immediately overlain by a stony hardpan which is of the last glacial epoch, being olive-colored or earthy, not red like that which lies on the rock generally on the east side of the river.

Glacial striæ on Hennepin Island, above the paper-mill, run 32° West of North, by compass.

When the rock-surface was exposed for the City Market, it was not striated, but polished and scratched promiscuously.

The rock-surface is said to be glaciated on Nicollet Island, but no opportunity has been afforded of taking the direction.

According to Col. J. B. Clough, of Minneapolis, a piece of native copper weighing 70 pounds was taken from the drift in a R. R. cut, on the Minneapolis and St. Louis R. R., about 13 miles S. W. of Minneapolis, in 1872.

A piece weighing about two pounds was found in the fall of 1874, in grading the streets of Minneapolis.

Mr. W. D. Hurlbut has also found several pieces in the drift near Rochester, in Olmsted county.

3. *The Gorge below the Falls.*

From the Falls to Fort Snelling the gorge between the rock bluffs is about a quarter of a mile in width, and the rock has a freshly-broken appearance, the large fragments thrown down by the action of the water, as the falls receded, still existing in the talus along the bluffs. Throughout this distance (nine miles) the rocks lie horizontal, hence the recession, so far as it depends on that element, has been of uniform rate. The hight of the bluff above the river remains also nearly the same throughout this entire distance, increasing a little perhaps near Fort Snelling. The relative length of time during which the rocks of this gorge have been exposed to atmospheric forces, compared to that of the bluffs below Fort Snelling, or to that in the ancient valley now occupied by Bassett's creek, is indicated by the depth to which they have been weathered or stained. It is well known that the same rock may present different colors from the effect of atmospheric agents. The Lower Trenton, for instance, is blue within, when freshly quarried at fresh exposures. That is the color it has in all the quarries below the falls at Minneapolis, and which it shows in deep quarrying at St. Paul. This color is met with either immediately at the surface, as at the Falls, or within an inch or two of the surface as at Fort Snelling. When weathered long, the stained coating becomes thickened. The stone then is either rusty-buff, or yellowish and dirty, resulting from the oxydation and hydration of the iron which it contains. This color may penetrate to the depth of several feet, depending on the porosity of the rock, and the length of exposure. At quarries above the falls of St. Anthony, near the mouth of Bassett's creek, this stained condition is found to penetrate the whole Lower Trenton, the rock at the same time having become more easily separable along some of its bedding planes, and also more firmly cemented by the permeation of the iron through the more shaly parts. The same change is visible in the old river bluffs above the falls where the Lower Trenton is wrought on the east side of the Mississippi, opposite the mouth of Shingle creek, and to a considerable extent in the quarries in Upper St. Anthony.

The gorge below Fort Snelling, where the Minnesota and the Mississippi unite, is about a mile wide, between the rock-bluffs; and the Minnesota above Fort Snelling has the same width between the rock-bluffs. Besides the aspect of greater age, as indicated by the greater change of color in the rock below Fort Snelling, the bluffs themselves are smoothed and the rock hid by drift and loam since the action of the river ceased. The top of the rock along the gorge above the fort is surmounted with a thickness of drift gravel and clay, which shows a section, as cut by the river, continuous, perpendicularly, with the rock-bluff itself. This thickness of drift is nearly uniform from the Fort to the Falls, and indicates the spreading of the drift before the recession of the Falls; but below Fort Snelling (with a single exception, to be noted,) the rock-bluff is generally hid by a subsequent accumulation of drift. The same is true of the bluffs of the Minnesota above the Fort. This subsequent accumulation is so abundant above the Fort along the Minnesota, that the strike of the Trenton limestone is totally hid within less than a mile.

The direction of the Mississippi changes at Fort Snelling, making a right angle, from S. E. to N. E., but the change is caused by its entering the wide gorge which runs in that direction. The wide valley in which the Minnesota runs is out of proportion with the amount of water which it carries, but its valley continues of the same width, and in the same direction beyond the confluence of the Mississippi, the valley taking the latter name.

Below Fort Snelling, opposite the mouth of the Minnesota, is a low, long, alluvial island, (Pike Island,) running to a point downstream. The existence of this island, which lies in the wide gorge, and which must have been formed since the excavation of the gorge, points directly to some force not now existing; since the joint action of the two streams uniting, instead of accumulation, would be the reverse under normal conditions. If the volume of the two rivers were to be increased so as to have sufficient momentum to move the substructure of Pike Island, the result would be the gradual destruction and removal of the island, instead of its increase. The retardation of the current causes it to drop sediment, but when two streams unite, the current is not retarded, but generally by reason of closer confinement in a proportionately narrower channel, it is increased.

The right bank of the Mississippi, just below the confluence of the two streams, shows, for about half a mile, a fresh erosion of the rock-bluff similar to that of the bluffs above the fort, the current of the river having been driven against that bank so as to undermine the limerock and cause its downfall. This is opposite the point at which the Mississippi enters the wide gorge. Pike

Island lies alongside of it, and between it and the debouchure of the Mississippi into the wide gorge.

Above the mouth of Bassett's creek the Mississippi runs between rock-bluffs of the same kind as those below Fort Snelling. They are about a mile apart and show all the above named indications of greater age. They, however, rise but about thirty or forty feet above the river, and are buried under the loam, or under the drift and loam. This old valley continues southwardly by way of Bassett's creek, and its course, as supposed, is expressed on the accompanying map of the region, drawn on a scale of one inch to one mile. This old valley was cut down into the St. Peter sandstone over one hundred feet, since it has been drilled into at the Sumner Schoolhouse in Minneapolis without striking rock, to even a greater depth than that.

From the foregoing facts the following interesting history may be read. It is believed that the glacial theory of L. Agassiz, and nothing but that, will explain the grand changes which this history relates.

Prior to the last glacial epoch the Mississippi river did not run over the Trenton limerock at all, but passed, in a wide, deep valley, similar to that which it now occupies below Fort Snelling, by way of the valley of Bassett's creek, and lakes Calhoun, Harriet and others, along the western side of the Trenton area, and joined the Minnesota at some point above Fort Snelling, but probably between Shakopee and Fort Snelling. The country was then covered with the drift of an older glacial epoch, and was probably timbered with species of trees the same as those now living.

As the last glacial epoch approached, the transport of drift material was from the northwest. After the closing of the northward outlet of the Winnipeg waters by the accumulated ice and the perpetual winter, they were drained southwardly through the valley of Big Stone lake and Lake Traverse, into the Minnesota valley, and thence into the Mississippi, past the site of Fort Snelling. Their volume was augmented not only by the proper volume of the Minnesota itself, but by the dissolution of the ice of the glacier that gradually crept over the state from the north, and northwest, as it arrived in latitudes too genial for the existence of ice.

The land ice not only disrupted the old drift surface and distributed its material as it moved on, but also gathered a great deal of the bed-rock itself, particularly of the Cretaceous. This Cretaceous debris, being abundant and easily transported, gave its own shaly color to the drift with which it was mingled, and even stamped on the clay of this drift period a peculiar and characteristic quality, thus rendering it easily distinguishable from the older drift which was of a red color and charged with small red or green stones, with few granite boulders. The later drift contains more numerous large granite boulders than the older. Round the southern limit of the land ice, the old red drift was thrown up into hills and ridges and shoved into old valleys, and locally mixed with, or covered by, the gray drift of the later period.

In the valleys, particularly those having a southward drainage, the gray drift was transported most freely and distributed most widely, partly by the agency of the abundant water. The Minnesota was much larger than the Mississippi, and the Mississippi was much larger than it is now. Large quantities of floating ice would also pass down these streams, carrying from the glacier, stones and gravel, distributing them on the then flood-plains, the now gravelly terraces of the Mississippi.

The margin of the ice did not extend across the Minnesota into Dakota county.—At least it did not obstruct the Minnesota river so as to permanently divert it from its course, and certainly did not reach far south of that river, since the isolated outliers of the St. Peter, (as Castle Rock,) round whose bases the older drift lies, were not destroyed. The ice choked up the old valley of the Mississippi below the mouth of Bassett's creek, and filled it with drift clay, the river itself being, at the acme of the cold, reduced to smaller dimensions by the contraction of the field drained, and by the changed topography of the country toward the north. The river was thus forced to pass round the eastern foot of the ice further to the southeast, a lake of standing water perhaps covering the valley which it had abandoned, and setting back into a portion of the valley still occupied. This water, fresh from the glacier, was very muddy, and gave origin to the brick-clay that lies in its old valley, as shown by the accompanying map showing the surface geology.

The Mississippi, thus forced out of its old channel, after rising to the level of the limerock of the Lower Trenton, ran *over* the rock, to reach the same valley again by plunging over the precipice at Fort Snelling, thus giving birth to the Falls of St. Anthony. In reaching that point it had crowded on to the old drift bluffs along the east side of the river, driving them, by erosion, further toward the east, while the old valley itself served to retard, and even to limit, the transportation of the drift clay toward the east.

Later, as the volume of the river increased by the dissolution of the ice and the opening of the tributary valleys as it withdrew, the waters spread over the whole area from the line of the old drift bluffs on the east, to the recently made moraines along its west banks, receiving and distributing not only gravel and sand over the whole broad valley, as at Minneapolis, but also large quantities of the gray hardpan clay.

It was at this time that Pike Island began to form; and also that the current of the Minnesota was carried, by the added momentum of the Mississippi, against the opposite bluffs below Mankato, so as to produce new exposures of the sand and limerock.

The Falls must have begun at Fort Snelling near the acme of the cold, as the effect of the ice is not important at any points south or east of the mouth of Bassett's creek. They have occupied the interval of time elapsed since then in receding to their present position. Were it possible to establish a unit of recession for a calculation, the length of that interval could be computed. The rate has been much greater since the construction of dams and mills, diverting the water, or concentrating it at points; and hence the data of recession since the permanent occupancy of the region, are valueless for this purpose. The only other means of estimating the rate of natural recession is to employ the statements of the early travelers who have described the Falls. Their discoverer was Father Louis Hennepin. In returning from his captivity among the Dakotas, he saw the Falls in July, 1680, and briefly describes them as follows: "This fall is forty or fifty feet high, divided in the middle by a rocky island of pyramidal form."

"In ascending this river ten or twelve leagues, navigation is interrupted by a fall, which we named in honor of St. Anthony of Padua, whom we had chosen as patron of our enterprises. This fall is 50 or 60 feet in hight, and has an island of rock, in the form of a pyramid, in the middle of the chute." (See the Amsterdam edition of Hennepin's works, 1704, chapter 44, p. 319.) A translation of Hennepin's narration is found in the *Historical Collections of Louisiana, Part IV*, in which he gives "40 or 50" feet as the hight of the fall.

In the London edition of Carver's journal, 1778, p. 69, Carver thus describes the Falls of St. Anthony, as he saw them in 1766: "This amazing body of waters, which are above 250 yards over, form a most pleasing cataract; they fall perpendicularly about 30 ft., and the rapids below, in the space of 300 yards more, render the descent considerably greater. * * * * * * In the middle of the falls stands a small island, about 40 feet broad, and somewhat longer, on which grew a few cragged hemlock and spruce trees; and about half way between this island and the eastern shore is a rock lying at the very edge of the fall in an oblique position, that appeared to be about five or six feet broad, and 30 or 40 long. * * * * At a little distance below the falls stands a small island, of about an acre and a half, on which grow a great number of oak trees, every branch of which, able to support the weight, was full of eagles' nests."

The engraving accompanying this description is that seen in *Winterbottom's America*, and is reproduced in *Harper's New Monthly Magazine for October*, 1875, and wrongly attributed to Father Hennepin. Carver's original engraving shows an island above the falls, which is omitted in the copy in Harper's. Carver states on the engraving that the breadth of the fall is about 600 feet. This engraving shows an insignificant island just in the brink of the falls, extending neither below nor above the falls, and an apparently detached block of limerock lodged on the brink between it and the eastern (or northern) shore. In the stream below the falls is represented a larger low island, not rocky, but alluvial, nearly circular, and covered with timber.

Lieut. Z. M. Pike visited the falls of St. Anthony Sept. 30, 1805. His journal, published in London in 1811, is entitled: *Exploratory Travels through the Western Territories of North America in* 1805–6–7. He says of the falls: "The Falls of St. Anthony did not strike me with that majestic appearance which I had been taught to expect from the descriptions of other travelers. On an actual survey I find the portage to be 260 poles, but when the river is not very low, boats ascending may put in 31 poles below at a large cedar tree, which would reduce it to 229 poles. The hill on which the portage is made is 69 ft. ascent, with an elevation at the point of debarkation of 45°. The fall of the water between the point of debarkation and of re-loading is 58 feet; the perpendicular fall of the chute is 16½ feet; the width of the river above the chute 627 yards, below 209. In high water the appearance is much more sublime, as the great quantity of water then forms a spray which in clear weather reflects from some positions the colors of the rainbow, and when the sky is overcast, covers the falls in gloom and chaotic majesty."

Major Stephen H. Long visited the Falls of St. Anthony in a six-oared boat in 1817. His journal, which was not published till 1860, and then by the Minnesota Historical Society, gives a more minute description of the Falls than that of any of his predecessors. The courtesy of Rev. E. D. Neill renders it possible to give a transcript from this rare document.* "The perpendicular fall of the water at the cataract, as stated by Pike in his journal, is sixteen and a half feet, which I found to be true by actual measurement. To this hight, however, four or five feet may be added for the rapid descent which immediately succeeds the perpendicular fall within a few yards below. Immediately at the cataract the river is divided into two parts by an island which extends considerably above and below the cataract, and is about five hundred yards long. The channel on the right side of the island is about three times the width of that on the left. The quantity of water passing through them is not, however, in the same proportion, as about one-third part of the whole passes through the left channel. In the broadest channel, just below the cataract, is a small island also, about fifty yards in length and thirty in breadth. Both of these islands contain the same kind of rocky formation as the banks of the river, and are nearly as high. Besides these there are immediately at the foot of the cataract two islands of very inconsiderable size, situated in the right channel also. The rapids commence several hundred yards above the cataract, and continue about eight miles below. The fall of the water, beginning at the head of the rapids, and extending two hundred and sixty rods down the river to where the portage road commences, below the cataract, is, according to Pike, fifty-eight feet. If this estimate be correct the whole fall from the head to the foot of the rapids, is not probably much less than one hundred feet. But as I had no instrument sufficiently accurate to level, where the view must necessarily be pretty extensive, I took no pains to ascertain the extent of the fall. The mode I adopted to ascertain the hight of the cataract was to suspend a line and plummet from the table rock on the south side of the river, which, at the same time, had very little water passing over it, as the river was unusually low."

Beltrami in 1823† thus describes the Falls: "Seated on the top of an elevated promontory, I see, at half a mile distance, two great masses of water unite at the foot of an island which they encircle, and whose majestic trees deck them with the loveliest hues, in which all the magic play of light and shade are reflected on their brilliant surface. From this point they rush down a rapid descent about 200 feet long, and, breaking against the scattered rocks which obstruct their passage, they spray up and dash together in a thousand varied forms. They then fall into a transverse basin, in the form of a cradle, and are urged upward by the force of gravitation against the side of a precipice which seems to stop them a moment only to increase the violence with which they fling themselves down a depth of twenty feet. The rocks against which these great volumes of water dash, throw them back in white foam and glittering spray ; then plunging into the cavities which this mighty fall has hollowed, they rush forth again in tumultuous waves, they once more break against a great mass of sandstone forming a little island in the midst of their bed, on which two thick maples spread their shady branches."

---

* *Voyage of a six-oared skiff to the Falls of St. Anthony in* 1817, *by Major Stephen H. Long, T. E., U. S. A.*

† *A Pilgrimage in Europe and America, leading to the discovery of the sources of the Mississippi and Bloody river. J. C. Beltrami. London,* 1828. *Vol.* 2, *p.* 205.

Keating, who narrates Maj. Long's Expedition in 1823, says, (Vol II, p. 306.)

"On the 6th of July we walked to the falls of St. Anthony, which are situated nine miles (along the course of the river, seven by land) above the fort. The first glimpse which we caught of the fall was productive of disappointment, because it yielded but a partial view, but this was amply redeemed by the prospect which we obtained of it when the whole fall opened itself before us. We then discovered that nothing could be more picturesque than this cascade. We had been told that it appeared like a mere mill-dam, and we were apprehensive lest a fall of sixteen feet would lose all its beauty when extended upon a breadth of several hundred yards; but we soon observed that this was by no means the case. The irregular outline of the fall, by dividing its breadth, gives a more impressive character. An island, stretched in the river both above and below the fall, separates it into two unequal parts, the eastern being two hundred and thirty yards wide, and the western three hundred and ten. The island itself is about one hundred yards wide. From the nature of the rock, which breaks into angular, and apparently rhomboidal, fragments of a large size, this fall is subdivided into small cascades, which adhere to each other so as to form a sheet of water unrent, but composed of an alternation of retiring and salient angles, and presenting a great variety of shapes and shades; each of these forms in itself a perfect cascade, but when taken together in one comprehensive view they assume a beauty of which we could have scarcely deemed them susceptible. * * * * * * * * * Concerning the hight of the fall, and breadth of the river at this place, much incorrect information has been published. Hennepin, who was the first European who visited it, states it to be fifty or sixty feet high. It was this traveler that gave it the name which it now bears, in honor of St. Anthony of Padua, whom he had taken for the protector of his discovery. He says of it, that it 'indeed of itself is terrible, and hath something very astonishing.' This hight is, by Carver, reduced to about 30 feet; his strictures upon Hennepin, whom he taxes with exaggeration, might with great propriety be retorted upon himself; and we feel strongly inclined to say of him, as he said of his predecessor, 'the good father, I fear, too often had no other foundation for his accounts than report, or at least a slight inspection.' Pike, who is more correct than any traveler whose steps we have followed, states the perpendicular fall at sixteen and a half feet; Major Long measured it in 1817, with a plumb line, from the table rock from which the water was falling, and found it to be the same. Mr. Colhoun measured it while we were there with a rough water level, and made it about fifteen feet. The difference of a foot is trifling, and depends upon the place where the measurement was made; but we cannot account for the statement made by Mr. Schoolcraft, that the river has a perpendicular pitch of forty feet, and this so late as fourteen years after Pike's measurement. The same author states the breadth of the river, near the brink of the fall, to be two hundred and twenty-seven yards, while Pike found it to be six hundred and twenty-seven yards, which agrees tolerably well with a measurement made on the ice. Messrs. Say and Colhoun obtained an approximate admeasurement of five hundred and ninety-four yards; this resulted from a trigonometrical calculation, the angles having been measured with a compass that was small and not nicely graduated, and the base line having been obtained under unfavorable circumstances. Below the fall the river contracts to about two hundred yards. There is a considerable rapid both above and below; a portage of two hundred and sixty poles in length is usually made here; the whole fall, or difference of level between the place of disembarking and reloading, is stated by Pike to be fifty-eight feet, which is probably very near the truth; the whole fall to the foot of the rapids, which extend several miles down the river, may be estimated as not far short of one hundred feet."

Mr. G. W. Featherstonhaugh says (*Report of a Geological Reconnoissance made in* 1835 *from the seat of government to the Coteau de Prairie:*) "An island about 450 yards long divides the Mississippi into two parts at the Falls of St. Anthony, which have a very irregular outline, owing to the soft sandstone being washed out unequally in places, and the superincumbent strata of limestone falling down in large blocks; these are piled up in large quantities on the bed of the river immediately at the foot of the falls. That part of the river on the north side of the island is about two hundred and twenty yards in width. There is a very fine smooth section of the rocks here to the water, about 90 feet. I should think the fall would not average more than twenty feet. * * * * * On the south side of the river the line of the falls is a very irregular curvature, and measures about 450 yards to the island. The hight of the fall does not appear so great on this side, owing perhaps to the bed of the river being so much choked up with the fallen slabs. It is a wild rocky scene, but deficient in interest as a waterfall on account of its want of hight."

Data.

From these descriptions the following data may be eliminated:

Hennepin, 1680—Pyramidal island in the middle of the fall. Hight of fall 50 or 60 feet (or "40 or 50 feet.")

Carver, 1766—Width of river 250 yards (or "about 600 feet;") hight of the fall 30 feet; a small island in the middle of the fall 40 feet broad and "somewhat longer," with hemlock and spruce trees, and another of an acre and a half a little below the falls, with great quantities of eagles' nests; an island also above the falls; an oblique rock in the brink of the falls half way between the island and the east shore, "about five or six feet broad and thirty or forty long."

Pike in 1805—Portage 260 poles; waterfall 16½ feet; width of river above the falls 627 yards; below 209.

Long in 1817—Island 500 yards long divides the cataract and river above and below the falls; channel on the west side three times that on the east side; one-third of the water descends the east channel; waterfall 16½ feet. In the broadest channel, just below the cataract is a small island, 50 yards by 30; both islands rocky, with the same formations as in the banks, "and nearly as high;" two others of inconsiderable size immediately at the foot of the falls, both in the right channel.

Beltrami in 1823—Only distinctly mentions an island in the falls, and an island of sandstone below, with maples.

Keating in 1823—Island in the river both above and below the fall, separating it into two unequal parts, the eastern 230 yards wide, the western 310; the island is 100 yards wide; total width of river at the falls about 594 yards, with rough data; below the fall the river contracts to about 200 yards.

Featherstonhaugh in 1835.—Island 450 yards long divides the fall unequally ; east channel 220 yards wide, west channel 450 ; fall 20 feet average.

* In 1856, just before the erection of permanent mills, and the diversion of the water so as to disturb the recession, the falls on the west of the island were, in general terms, abreast of the saw-mill of Farnham and Lovejoy. They had a bend upward in the center of the channel, and a sweep downward near the west shore. Their ends were nearly opposite each other. The total width of the river, including Hennepin island, was 1,700 feet at the falls. Putting together the statements of the earliest settlers, the downward sweep of the falls along the east side of the west channel met the island about 100 feet below the lowest portion of the flat undisturbed portion of the limerock on which Farnham and Lovejoy's milldam is erected, the mill itself having originally been erected in a little notch or jog in the falls, partly on the limerock and partly below the falls, close on the shore of the island. Since then the falls in the west channel have receded about 500 feet, hastened by these artificial means ; the falls on the east side, having been more protected, have not receded any perceptible amount.

Considering all these statements, and adjusting their descriptions with each other and with the known position of the Falls in 1856, before the permanent improvements for milling were made, the following conclusions may be made out :

Hennepin saw the falls in 1680, when Spirit island divided them, and their hight was much greater than now. The river gorge is 1,350 feet wide across Spirit island. The confinement of the water in this narrower channel caused the greater hight of the fall.

Carver saw the falls in 1766, just as they were leaving Spirit island and entering on Hennepin island. The "oblique rock" seen was the submerged toe, or lower, rocky end of Hennepin island. No doubt the river completely surrounded the visible part of Hennepin island, *above the brink of the falls ;* the rock, which is its substructure, only showing a small area in the fall. The rhomboidal masses, into which the limerock is cut by pre-existing jointage flaws, would very likely cause an oblique fracture along the brink, as piece after piece fell, as fully detailed by Keating in 1823 in describing the west channel. The width of the whole channel at this point, stated by Carver as about 600 feet, is 1400 feet by careful measurement. The island which Carver's engraving shows above the falls must be intended for Hennepin island which now divides the fall, but is very much out of the right position—even to represent any island. The island which his engraving shows in the brink of the falls was the upper end of Spirit island, while the low island below the falls, on which he mentions great quantities of eagles nests, can be no other than the lower end of the same island,* the narrow limerock having fallen away in the intervening space, making really (if his engraving shows correctly at this point) two parts, or islands, each being rocky. His engraving is the copy of his pencil-sketch, made probably from memory after he had left the place, and the representation of an island as *low*, which ought to have been *high* and rocky, rendered somewhat necessary to avoid the hiding of the falls, and engraved in London, would be no unexpected error, and would hardly be regarded an imperfection by any but a geologist or a professional artist. It is possible also, if his sketch was made after he left the place, *that there was really but one island of the whole.* His attention had been directed during his stay to *the island with the eagles' nests*, about which he speculates at some length in his journal, and to *the island dividing the falls.* When he came to make his sketch he represented both prominent ideas without regard to the exact manner in which they were topographically related or united; and finding that a continued *high* island would hide the west channel, (his view being from the east bank) which would materially interfere with the general effect of his illustration, he so reduced the hight of the lower portion of the island as to make it appear like another island; the engraver then perpetuated the *appearance*, not knowing the facts. Whichever hypothesis be correct, it is not possible for the island represented in the brink of the falls, to have been Hennepin island. Besides the general agreement of the whole account with the accounts of future travelers, on the supposition of its having been Spirit island, and the statement that it was *in the middle of the falls*, Carver's engraving shows *two men in the act of portage of a canoe along the east shore*, below the falls; showing that the view presented was intended to represent the *principal fall*, (if not the whole,) while the channel on the east of Hennepin island is now, and always has been, since it began, about one-third that on the west side. Thus Carver's description, aided by his very imperfect illustration, fixes the position of the falls in 1766 at the very foot of Hennepin island.

---

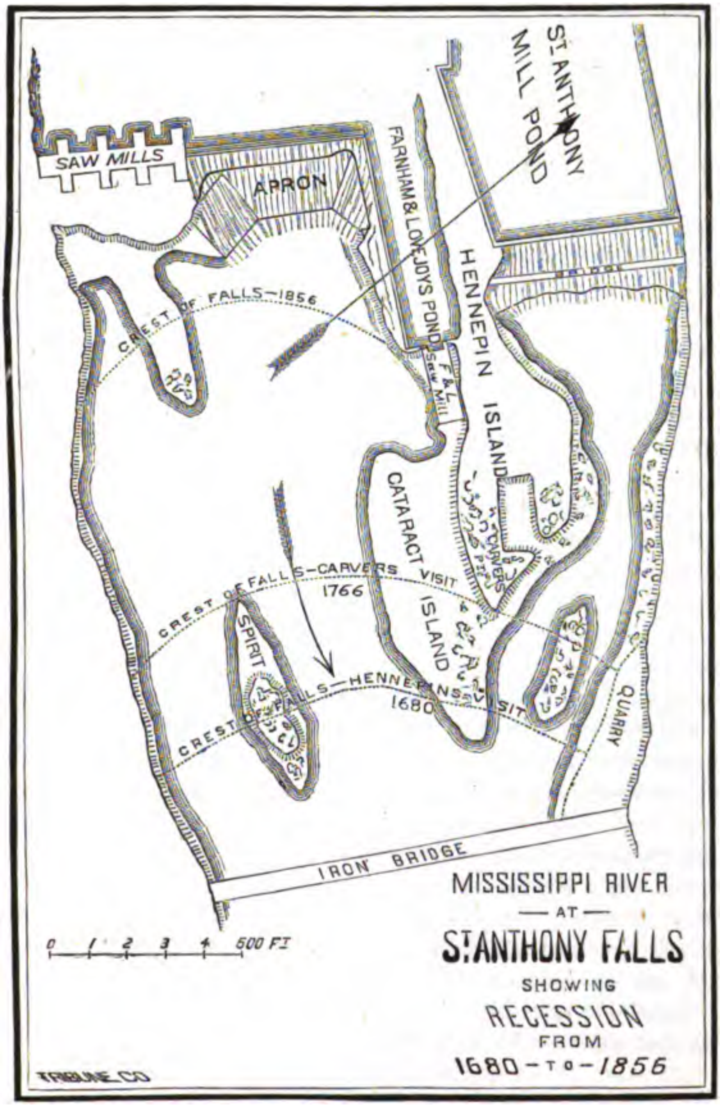
* These statements are made on the authority of Messrs. Chute, Dr. A. E. Johnson and Mr. S. W. Farnham.

When Lieut. Pike arrived in 1805 probably nothing remained of Spirit island in the brink of the falls, though he gives no description of the falls themselves.

In 1817, when Major S. H. Long first visited them, Hennepin

---

* Spirit Island (what was left of it) in 1856, was still the abode of eagles.



MISSISSIPPI RIVER
—AT—
ST. ANTHONY FALLS
SHOWING
RECESSION
FROM
1680—TO—1856

island divided them unequally, and Spirit island was wholly below the falls, and is described as high and rocky, with the same formations as are seen in the banks of the river. This statement demonstrates the incorrectness of Carver's engraving in this particular. If Carver did not see that high, rocky island, it never could have got there, where it exists still, between his visit and that of Long.

In 1823, Keating and Beltrami saw the falls in pretty much the same position as Long in 1817.

Again, Featherstonhaugh, in 1835, repeats the same general description.

There has been no published careful measurement of the river from Fort Snelling to St. Anthony Falls, but a lining of the map constructed by Gen. G. K. Warren, with the U. S. township and section lines represented, makes the distance almost exactly eight miles. Prof. Rhame has made for the survey a series of triangulations and chain measurements at the falls, and in the gorge below, with the view of finding the distance the falls have receded since Carver's visit to 1856, and also since Hennepin's discovery. A line across the river gorge through Spirit island may represent the position of the falls at the time of their discovery ; another across the foot of Hennepin island with an upward curve in the west channel will represent Carver's line of the falls, and another, one hundred feet below the limerock on which stands Farnham and Lovejoy's mill-dam, may represent them in 1856. It is evident that the interval between Carver's time and 1856, is the most reliable datum, the statements of Hennepin not enabling us to determine *at what point* in Spirit island the falls were when he first saw them. Still, for the purpose of comparison, a point has been assumed as that at which they were when abreast of Spirit island at the time of Hennepin's visit, and Prof. Rhame has taken measurements from it. That point is about the middle of the undisturbed limerock of the island, and 415 feet above the line of the upper end of the piers of the lower bridge immediately below, in a large re-entrant angle in the undisturbed limerock on the east side of the island, which angle runs from the top of the limerock to the bottom. The interval between Hennepin's line and that of Carver is 300 feet, between that of Carver's and that of 1856, is 606 feet, making the whole recession since Hennepin 906 feet.

Conclusion.

Between Hennepin, 1680, and 1856, are 176 years ; the recession in that time was 906 feet, or an average of 5.15 feet per year.

The time needed at that rate to recede from Fort Snelling would be 8,202 years.

Between Hennepin and Carver are 86 years; the amount of recession was about 300 feet, or 3.40 feet per year. The time needed at that rate to recede from Fort Snelling would be 12,103 years.

Between Carver in 1766, and 1856, were 90 years; the recession in that interval was 606 feet, or 6.73 feet per year; at that rate it would take 6,276 years to recede from Fort Snelling.

The average of these three results is 8,859 years. Still, the exactness of the datum between Carver and 1856, is such that the actual time of such recession is probably more nearly expressed by taking that only into the calculation. This brings the glacial period to a much more recent date than some other means of calculation; but it is probable that no other datum so exact for such a calculation has ever before been used.

The only elements of possible error in this calculation are:—changes in the volume of the river, and incorrect statement for the length of the gorge between the falls and Fort Snelling.

In regard to the first of these elements of uncertainty, it is true that the river may have been larger during the first portion of its occupancy of this channel, on account of the proximity of the glacial ice, and the recession hence more rapid than during the latter; yet the width of the gorge between the rock-bluffs does not perceptibly change from Fort Snelling to the present position of the falls. Indeed, the widest portion of this gorge seems to be where the falls are at the present time. Again, the *datum* for the calculation is all taken from the latter portion of the time involved, and would more than balance any error in the opposite direction. It is not altogether certain, moreover, that an increase of the volume of water would hasten the recession. The rate of recession is dependent on the rapidity of the undermining of the limerock by the retro-action of the falling water on the loose sandrock. While the increased momentum of the water, incident to an increase of volume, would *highten* the falls, by digging deeper into the sandrock, it would by that very change remove further from the limerock the retro-action of the falls, and hence would leave a quantity of undisturbed sandrock to support longer the limerock. In regard to the second element of uncertainty, it would be found that the gorge, if measured carefully, is a little longer than eight miles rather than less.

If the occurrence of our winter in aphelion, caused by the precession of the equinoxes and the revolution of the line of the apsides, about 11,300 years ago, was the cause of our last glacial period, the greatest *effect* of those causes which had their greatest *force* at that time, was probably felt at a considerably later date, as suggested by Prof. Rhame, in the same manner as the greatest heat of summer is not felt at the same time when the causes which produce it have their greatest activity.

This subject has been treated of by Dr. E. Andrews, in a paper read last year before the Chicago Academy of Sciences, but the writer has only seen a telegraphic newspaper notice of it. The same data employed by Dr. Andrews were furnished the writer by Mr. J. L. Gillespie, of the U. S. Engineers' office, St. Paul, and are employed and extended in the data foregoing.

The reader is referred to the Report of the Chief of Engineers, 1875, Part I, p. 385, for Gen. G. K. Warren's *Essay concerning important physical features exhibited in the valley of the Minnesota river, and upon their signification.*

Neill's history of Minnesota from the French Explorations to the present time.

Father Hennepin's works, published at Paris, Utrecht, London, Amsterdam, and other cities, to the number of twenty-two editions, from 1683 to 1742.

Historical collections of Louisiana, Part IV, contains original narratives of Hennepin and others relative to the early exploration of the Mississippi river, translated into English.

Three years' travels throughout the interior parts of North America. Jonathan Carver, 1766–7–8.

Voyage in a Six-oared Skiff to the Falls of St. Anthony in 1817. By Major Stephen H. Long. Collections of the Minnesota Historical Society.

Narrative Journal of travels from Detroit northwest through the great chain of lakes to the sources of the Mississippi river, in 1820. H. R. Schoolcraft.

Narrative of an expedition to the Sources of the St. Peter, Lake Winnepeek, &c., in 1823, under Major S. H. Long; by W. H. Keating.

Geological Reconnoissance made in 1835 *from the seat of government to the Coteau de Prairie.* G. W. Featherstonhaugh.

Material Resources. Fuel.

There is a large annual cut of cord-wood from the timbered portions of Hennepin county, which finds market at Minneapolis and St. Paul. This comprises sugar maple, iron wood, oak, bass, elm and soft maple. The price per cord varies with the stringency of the money market. During the past year hard wood has brought five and six dollars per cord. Osseo is an important primary wood-mart; but large quantities are hauled by the first owners directly into Minneapolis. The county is generally heavily wooded, the thinly wooded and prairie portions being along the valleys of the Mississippi and Minnesota rivers, in the southeastern portion.

Building Stone.

The quarries on the east side of the river, most accessible, are owned by the St. Anthony Falls Water Power Company, and are leased by them to various parties, mainly to Patterson and Baxter.

The quarries on Hennepin island are turned over to the Government for use in the tunnel, but are owned by the St. Anthony Falls Water Power Company.

The quarries on Nicollet island are owned by Eastman and Company and are worked by Henry and Abrams.

The Mississippi and Rum river Boom Company have opened some quarries near 13th street north on the east side of the river, and take from the old river bluffs, back from the river, a thin and weathered stone for their piers. There are also a great many openings in the upper portion of the E. Division, by parties owning lots that cover the brink of the Trenton terrace. In these cases attention was called to the rock generally in making excavations for cellars.

The quarries below the University a short distance, furnished the stone for the older portion of the University building. The rest of the building was constructed from quarries on Nicollet island. Quarries are now wrought below the University near the "Old Cheever Landing," by Edward Maloney, and Mr. Malone.

The quarries on the west side of the river are owned by various parties, the whole being cut up into lots according to the city subdivisions. Banks Arenson, Andrew Ernson, Michael Delaney, Holscher and Weeks, Henry Wax and George McMullen own those below the falls opposite the University.

Three-fourths of a mile below these are quarries opened by Franklin Cook and Edward Murphy.

Quarries in Sec. 32, Bloomington, are owned by H. T. Welles and by Mr. Neuser.

The stone taken from these quarries is, in general, an aluminous blue limerock, without much variation in characters. It is true that there are two or more different, distinct, strata, with different qualities of rock, as described in giving the sections of the Lower Trenton, but the great bulk of the building stone is taken from the same stratum, about 15 ft. in thickness, which is the persistent stratum occupying the immediate brink of the Falls of St. Anthony. The rock of this stratum varies only with the degree of exposure to which it has been subjected, so far as it is seen in Hennepin county.

In the upper part of the city, along the bluffs of the old river, as in the quarries opposite Boom island, and on the county line of Anoka county, this rock is very different, to a considerable depth, from that taken out below the falls. It shows the effects of very long weathering, probably dating from pre-glacial times. These differences are all accounted for by the known effect of water and iron, with the aid of time, on the shale with which the Lower Trenton is permeated. The thin sheets of shale, which appear as dark belts of irregular and crooked direction on the newly-cut face of a "dimension stone," begin to decompose after the lapse of a number of years, causing a shattering and splitting of the whole mass. When the change takes place under the surface of the earth, but where the natural surface waters get free access, the iron that always accompanies such water, aided by the pyrites of the rock itself, gives a rusty and dirty, or yellowish color to the rock to a considerable depth. This is marked sometimes by the slow decomposition of the limestone itself, and by the sprinkling of sand or loam that covers the rock. In the face of these changes it is no wonder that a great many who have not watched them closely should be firmly persuaded that the different aspects could not be assumed by the same rock.

Stone sells from 50 cents per perch of 16½ feet (for "gray rock") to 65 cents. This is for rough, non-dimension stone. For range rock, ("blue stone,") water table, 75 cents to $1.00 per foot, cut; uncut 15 to 18 cents per foot.

Brick and Pottery.

There is a small pottery establishment in upper St. Anthony, owned by Louis Kampf, the clay being taken from the Mississippi bank adjoining. The jars are light-colored, but not cream-colored.

The following brick-yards were noted in Hennepin county:

Peterson and Swansen, N. E. ¼ Sec. 12, Crystal Lake, above the mouth of Shingle creek. The brick made here are cream-colored; except, if poorly burnt, the topmost tier of the kiln has a reddish color. They are molded in water. Although this is the first year this yard has been opened, it will turn out about 700,000. Delivered in Minneapolis these brick sell for $8.00 per thousand; at the yard for $7.00 per thousand. Mixed wood costs $2.25 to $2.50 per cord.

The Union Brick Company, (Baxter, Woodward and McNair,) Minneapolis, have made two and a half millions the present season (1876;) generally burn five millions per year. Sell for $9.00 per thousand, average price. Soft wood (basswood) costs $3.25 to $3.50 per cord; mixed wood (all kinds except hard maple and basswood) costs $3.75 to $4.00 per cord delivered at the yard. For a description of the clay the reader is referred to the drift-sections preceding. The brick are cream-colored.

Daniel Woodbury's yard is a short distance above the Union Brick Company's yard, within the valley of Bassett's creek, and he uses the same general deposit of clay, but perhaps encounters more calcareous matter in the form of concretions and bivalve shells. His brick are cream-colored, and also reddish. Mixed wood costs here $3.25, delivered; makes 400,000 per year, selling at $8.50 per thousand, or $9.00, according to the haul.

At Dayton, brick are made by Medorre Arseno, his yard being the same as that occupied 21 years ago by Lyman Dayton, situated on the north side of Crow river. The brick, which sell for $8.50 per thousand, at the kiln, are generally of a cream color, but those from the outside of the kiln are tinged with red. Two or three kilns per year are made here. Mixed wood is worth $1.50 per cord; hard wood $2.00.

In Upper St. Anthony the old brick-yard of Charles Grotjann has been closed. The brick made were red, and were not readily saleable.

Geo. Erhardt has opened a new yard at the N. end of Lake Calhoun, and sells red brick at $8.00 per thousand, or $8.50 delivered.

Quick-lime.

There has been some lime burnt from the Lower Trenton at Minneapolis, but nothing is being done at the present time. There is one old pot-kiln, below the falls, within the river gorge, built of lime-rock, owned by ———

Levi Guia burns lime from boulders at Dayton. His kiln has been erected eleven years, and is emptied sometimes to the number of six times per year. He sells at Anoka, Princeton, Elk River, Monticello and Dayton, and sometimes at Minneapolis, from $1.50

to $1.75 per barrel. Another establishment of the same kind is run at Frankfort, in Wright county, by Mr. Burnings, and another at Otsego by Mr. Ingleson.

Mills and Water-powers.

The following extracts, from the Annual Report of the Minneapolis Board of Trade for 1876, by C. C. Sturtevant, secretary, convey a correct idea of the importance of the water-powers of Hennepin county, and particularly of the Falls of St. Anthony;

"The vast water power which has given to Minneapolis her preeminence as the great manufacturing centre of the Northwest, and is destined to make it the chief commercial city of the State, is furnished by the Mississippi river, which has a fall of 82 feet within the city limits. The volume of water passing over these falls and rapids at the ordinary stage has been estimated by competent engineers at 120,000 horse-power. Most of it can be used with the present improvements with from 40 to 60 feet head, and the entire flow is available for manufacturing purposes. The first practical use made of this power was in 1848, when a dam was built from Hennepin island to the east shore, and four saw mills erected on it. It was not till 1857, however, that the present substantial improvements were fairly inaugurated. On the 26th of February, 1856, the St. Anthony Falls Water Power Company was chartered by the Territorial Legislature, and on the 27th of the same month and year the Minneapolis Mill Company was chartered. Both charters are perpetual, the former controlling the water from the centre of the channel on the west side of Hennepin island to the east shore, the latter from the same point to the west shore.

"Robert Smith, of Alton, Illinois, was the first president of the Minneapolis Mill Company, and in 1857, W. D. Washburn, Esq., was appointed secretary and agent. The same year C. H. Bigelow, of Lawrence, Mass., a civil and hydraulic engineer, made surveys and submitted plans for improving the water-power of the Mill Company. The construction of the dam and opening of the canal, commenced in September, 1857, and the dam was completed in January, 1858. The first flouring mill (the Cataract) was built by Eastman and Gibson the same year.

"The appliances for controlling and utilizing the water-power of this company consist of a low or waste dam built on the ledge, commencing in the center of the channel of the river and connecting with the dam of the St. Anthony Water-Power Company, thence running down stream diagonally toward the westerly shore 400 feet; thence a high dam again down the stream, parallel with the shore 500 feet, forming a pond above the mills; thence at right angels 400 feet to the pier at the head of the canal, upon which last portion is built the block of saw mills. With this dam a head of 13 feet is obtained, and a sufficient supply of water is directed to the canal, while the large proportion of the water passes over the low dam and is wasted on the falls.

"The canal is excavated along the shore 350 feet to a point opposite the brink of the fall, of a width narrowing from 80 feet to 55 feet, and below this point 500 feet further of a uniform width of 55 feet, and carrying a depth of 14 feet of water.

"The mills located upon the property improved by the Minneapolis Mill Company are as follows:

(1.) *Upon or near the canal and supplied with water therefrom.*

Sixteen Flouring Mills, 181 runs of stone.
One Woolen Mill.
One Cotton Mill.
One Iron Works.
One Railroad Machine Shop.
One Planing Mill, Sash, Door and Blind Factory.
One Paper Mill.
One 300,000 bushel Grain Elevator.
One Machine Shop.
One Mill-furnishing Shop.
One Carding Mill.

(2.) *Upon the dam of the Company:*

Seven Saw-mills, having nine gangs, seven double circulars, and other appropriate machinery; daily capacity 900,000 feet.

(3.) *Upon the river bank above the canal, and discharging water through the First street tunnel:*

One Saw Mill.
One Planing Mill.
One Machine Shop.
The City Water Works.

"The total amount of power utilized by the Company is about 4,500 horse power.

"The present officers of the Company are Gen. C. C. Washburn, President; R. J. Baldwin, Treasurer; William D. Hale, Secretary and Agent; C. C. Washburn, D. Morrison, W. D. Washburn, R. J. Baldwin and C. J. Martin, Directors.

"The improvements of the St. Anthony Falls Water Power Company consist of a dam from the east shore to Hennepin island, 400 feet up the shore of Hennepin island, 650 feet from head of island, west 200 feet, thence diagonally to the dam of the Minneapolis Mill Company, 600 feet; total length of dam, 1,850 feet. The Company has sold eight saw-mill sites on the dam in the east channel, which, together with two flouring mills, one machine shop, and other mills, renting power for manufacturing purposes, utilize about 1,300 horse power under varying heads.

"The whole water-fall on the Company's lands is 69 feet. In all further developments it will be the aim of the Company to use the water under a head of from 40 to 60 feet, voiding the water through a tunnel, or tail-race, now excavated in the sand-rock under the limestone ledge.

"The original improvements, made at an early day, amounting to some twenty mills, of different kinds, were destroyed, mainly by fire, some eight years since, and have been replaced by substantial structures. The Company are now in a condition to utilize to the highest capacity the power controlled by them, and it offers to manufacturers a field unsurpassed in the Northwest.

"The present officers of the company are Richard Chute, President; Samuel H. Chute, Agent; Ernest Ortman, Treasurer.

"In addition to the mills located on the power controlled by these companies there is one large paper mill and one double saw mill in operation. By the above it will be seen that only a small portion of this vast water-power is now in use, while the improvements of these companies have rendered the whole flow of water available."

* * * * * * * * * * *

"The permanency of this water power is now established beyond a question. There was a time when fears were expressed that the ledge which forms the falls might at some future day be swept away by the action of the water; but all apprehensions of such a catastrophe are at an end. The Government in providing for the improvement of the navigation of the river above, aided by the water power companies and the city, has now completed such works as render the falls secure for all future time."

Flouring Mills in operation in Minneapolis in 1876.

	Name.	When Built.	Number Runs of Stone.	Name of Firm.
1.	Cataract	1859	10	D. R. Barber and Son.
2.	Union	1860	5	Darrow and Dibble.
3.	Arctic	1861	5	Hobart, Shuler & Co.
4.	Pillsbury	1865	11	C. A. Pillsbury & Co.
5.	Minneapolis	1865	9	Crocker, Fisk & Co.
6.	Washburn B	1865	11	Washburn & Hazard.
7.	Dakota	1867	6	S. S. Brown & Co.
8.	Zenith	1871	6	Day, Rollins & Co.
9.	City	1862	5	J. C. Berry & Co.
10.	North Star	1870	5	H. J. G. Crosswell.
11.	Holly	1872	4	W. F. Cahill & Co.
12.	Empire	1872	9	C. A. Pillsbury & Co.
13.	Palisade	1873	11	L. Day & Sons.
14.	Washburn A	1873	41	J. A. Christian & Co.
15.	Galaxy	1874	12	W. P. Ankeny.
16.	Anchor	1874	12	C A. Pillsbury & Co.
17.	Hennepin	1875	6	Mills, Thompson & Co.
18.	Humboldt	1875	6	Bull, Newton & Co.
19.	Phœnix	1876	5	Stamwitz and Shober.
20.	Pettit and Robinson	1876	15	Pettit and Robinson.

"The product of the foregoing mills for the year 1876 was as follows:

	Product.	Value.
Flour, barrels	1,135,160	$6,810,960
Bran, tons	50,945	509,450
		$7,320,410

"The total shipment of flour, in car lots, from Minneapolis by rail during the year 1876, amounts to 1,000,676 barrels. A large quantity is shipped in small lots, and sent out by teams, while the city consumption amounts to 40,000 barrels. There were also 50,000 barrels in store in the city. These several amounts make up the difference between the production and the shipment.

Lumber Mills in operation in Minneapolis in 1876.

Owner.	Lumber.	Shingles.	Lath.
Morrison Bros	13,597,000	1,645,000	2,565,000
J. Dean & Co	14,128,164	6,955,000	1,650,850
Pettit & Robinson	8,000,000	3,500,000	850,000
Minneapolis Lumber Co	17,000,000	5,000,000	....
J. B. Bassett	8,500,000	3,000,000	2,000,000
Eastman and Bovey	10,200,000	3,000,000	1,300,000
Farnham & Lovejoy	23,500,000	....	....
O. C. Merriman	19,936,404	2,701,750	2,319,500
Minneapolis Mill Co., two mills	12,557,537	2,580,500	2,818,000
Elias Moses	8,000,000	3,000,000	2,000,000
F. P. Clark	11,500,000	....	2,000,000
McMullen & Co	2,000,000	10,000,000	....
F. G. Mayo	3,850,000	4,600,000	450,000
Todd, Haven, Leavitt & Co	9,500,000	4,500,000	500,000
W. C. Baker, Assignee	13,752,172	4,522,000	1,406,000
Lee Brothers & Co	500,000	5,000,000	....
Wm. H. Eldred	....	28,000,000	....
Jno. Gains	8,000,000	2,000,000	1,500,000
	184,521,277	85,004,250	21,359,350

"The production of lumber was the first manufacturing industry introduced into Minneapolis, and has added more largely to the population of the city than any other branch of business. The first mill was erected in 1848, but all the original mills built have given place to new and improved structures. At this time there are eighteen sawmills and one shingle mill in the city. Nearly all the saw mills have shingle and lath mills attached. The lumber product is distributed through the states of Minnesota, Iowa, Missouri, Kansas, Nebraska, and the territory of Dakota. The most of it is shipped by rail, although a small portion is rafted below the falls and floated down the Mississippi river to St. Louis and other points."

Mills in operation in Hennepin County outside the city of Minneapolis.

Pratt and Baird, Richfield P. O.; custom and ship to Minneapolis; 4 runs of stone; seven feet head; dam in Minnehaha creek.

Craik and Sons, Edina Mills (also known as the Red Mills;) dam in Minnehaha creek; 13 feet head; 4 runs of stone; custom and ships at Minneapolis.

Metz and Peacka, below Minnehaha Falls; dam in Minnehaha creek; 11 feet head; two runs of stone; custom.

Baxter and Northway, Champlin; Champlin Mills; two runs of stone; Elm Creek power; fall 16 feet; shipping and custom.

Weitzel and Hurlbut, Dayton; Dayton Mills; Crow river power; fall 9 feet; five runs of stone; ships at Itasca.

Henry Weitzel, sec. 10, Maple Grove; Maple Grove Mills; Elm creek power; 12 feet fall; two runs of stone; custom.

McAfee and company, N. W. ¼ sec. 21, Bloomington; Bloomington Mill; 26 feet head; three runs of stone.

Balm Brothers, sec. 26, Eden Prairie; Eden Prairie Mills; two runs of stone.

Minnetonka Mill Company, Minnetonka City; Minnetonka Mills; dam in Minnehaha creek; 12 feet head; seven runs of stone; shipping.

Herrick, Douglas & Co., on Minnehaha creek; Globe Mills; eight feet head; four runs of stone; shipping.

Medicinal Waters.

Some of the springs of the county have a local repute for medicinal qualities. The Chalybeate Springs of Minneapolis consist of a copious discharge of water from the top of the shale layer between the main calcareous members of the Lower Trenton in the bluff of the river. They are situated just below the falls, on the east side of the river. The overlying layer of limerock is parted along some planes and allows the water to enter it, but the shale is nearly impervious, and sheds it. The water is not originally from the rock, but is the drainage from the drift, and the bog swamp east of St. Anthony. It probably derives its iron from the ferriferous drift of the bluffs east of St. Anthony; passes into the swamp, deposits, after evaporation, a considerable iron as a bog iron ore, and carries on what it does not leave in the swamp, penetrating the gravelly and sandy drift between the swamp and the river bank. The iron is deposited as a peroxide on the rock over which the water runs. The taste of the water is very pleasant, and is similar to that of a number of wells, which afford Chalybeate water, situated further back from the river and on the margin of the swamp. Although this water is known as Chalybeate, from the copious deposit of iron it gives on exposure to the air, yet the quantity of iron present is very small.

On analysis Mr. S. Dana Hayes, of Boston, has said: "When heated it evolves gas; after some evaporation it becomes opalescent, and finally deposits a precipitate, while it becomes more and more alkaline. It has the chemical character, and is strictly an *alkaline mineral water*, resembling well-known waters found in the northern part of Vermont, and in Germany and elsewhere in Europe." Mr. Hayes gives the following

Analysis.

"One United States gallon, or 231 cubic inches, contains nineteen and eighty-four hundredths grains of solid dry mineral matter, consisting of:

Potash	1.257
Soda	1.900
Sodium	.060
Lime	5.894
Magnesia	1.589
Ammonia	Trace
Alumina	Trace
Protoxide of Iron	.028
Sulphuric acid	.117
Chlorine	.104
Silicic acid	.645
Carbonic acid, combined	8.106
Crenic acid, organic	640
Total	19.840

"These elements are probably combined in the water forming the following salts and compounds :

Carbonate of potash.
Carbonate of soda.
Carbonate of lime.
Carbonate of magnesia.
Sulphate of potash.
Silicate of soda.
Chloride of Sodium.
Crenate of iron, etc.

"All the corbonates named exist in the state of bicarbonates ; and the gases present are carbonic acid, oxygen and nitrogen ; the water containing three and three-tenths volumes of mixed gases in one hundred volumes of water. The aeration of this water renders it a pleasant beverage, and prevents the sense of heaviness after it has been drank in quantities. Beside the alternative medicinal qualities possessed by this water when taken internally, it will be found beneficial in hot and cold baths, especially in certain cases of skin disease. And it may be bottled and kept, retaining all its virtues for months without material alteration."

The Russell Mineral Spring, situated near the margin of the same swamp, is described by Prof. Peckham on page 61, of the general report for 1876. This water has nearly the same chemical composition as that above mentioned, and within less than a grain the same total solid matter per gallon, deposits on exposure a peroxide of iron, and is probably from another drainage course from the same general reservoir—the peat marsh lying between the river and the drift bluffs, on the east side of the river.

At points a little further down the river, near the University, the water that runs down the bluff from springs issuing near the top of the bluff, deposits a calcareous tufa, which, in favorable circumstances, has become several feet thick. When the spattering water falls on moss, which often grows in such damp spots, it covers the moss with a film of carbonate of lime which, by gradually increasing, imprisons the moss, killing it, but takes its form and even its name, the moss itself gradually oxidizing and passing off in the air, as grass decays on the prairie. The deposit—loose and spongy—is then known as "Petrified Moss."

The "Great Medicine Spring," an old resort for the Indians, is situated a few miles west of Minneapolis, on the land of Mr. Wales. It also is chalybeate, but its exact chemical qualities are not known.

Earthworks.

Hennepin county presents a rich field for the anthropologist, a field, however, which has not been much explored. In the survey of the county artificial mounds were seen in a number of places ; the following were noted :

There are two large mounds on the south bank of Crow river, at Dayton, forty feet across and about ten feet in hight.

Four are on Mr. Aaron Hoag's land, sec. 18, Hassan.

There is another large mound on James Ream's land, two miles above Dayton, on the north side of the river.

There are a great many mounds along the Minnesota river, above Fort Snelling ; two or three on sec. 1, Bloomington ; one is on the road near Mr. Van Ness', near the line between sections 1 and 12, Bloomington They occur on Mr. Brosseau's land, sec. 14, and frequently, along the bluff, further up, as far as Shakopee at least.

There is a large mound on sec. 27, Eden Prairie, visible for some distance across the prairie.

There is a mound on S. E. ¼ sec. 1, Minnetonka, near Wayzata.

At Mound City, at the western end of Lake Minnetonka, are "about 40" mounds on Sec 24, Minnetrista. A number of others are on Nobles island, near the same place; others are on N. Saunders' farm near Halstead's Bay, Sec. 22. There are others at Excelsior, on P. M. Gideon's land, Sec. 28.

Some at Palmer's lake have been opened by members of the Minnesota Academy of Natural Sciences, and their contents described by Dr. A. E. Johnson. A fine specimen of a shin-bone, characteristic of the Mound-Builders was taken from a mound at Palmer lake.

On the land of James Shaver, NW. ¼ Sec. 17, Minnetonka, are a great many mounds. In the summer of 1875 a number of these were located by chain and compass by a party from the Minnesota Academy of Sciences. They were found to lie on the bluff and knolls overlooking the water of the lake, following the higher land, without regard to direction or relative position. No plan or order was discernable, though about 20 were carefully surveyed. They vary in height from two or three feet to five or six, and from ten feet in diameter to forty. There are in that neighborhood fifty or more within the area of a quarter-section of land.

Eight mounds of the same kind are seen on Widow Ferguson's land, Sec. 23, Excelsior, also overlooking the lake. Others are on NW. ¼ Sec. 11, Medina, land of Albert Johnson; and on Samuel Barto's, Sec. 7, Minnetonka; a large one is on the first high point east of Gale's island, on Big island.

IX.

REPORT ON THE GENERAL MUSEUM.

CONTAINING THE COLLECTIONS OF THE GEOLOGICAL AND NATURAL HISTORY SURVEY; FOR THE YEAR 1876.

By N. H. Winchell, Curator.

During the Fall of 1875 the cases designed for the Museum were completed so far as they had been contracted for, and during the Christmas vacation they were filled by the display of the Ward Casts. Another larger case was immediately built in the same room for the reception of the mounted mammals. Thus three sides of the room were occupied with suitable cases. In the center were placed some of the larger of the casts, including the Glyptodon, and the Mastodon, on pedestals. The Megatherium is also designed for this group, but has not yet been unboxed. It became evident at once that the room, even if supplied with all the cases it could contain, was too small to accommodate the collections on hand. The Regents have concluded therefore to carry out the original plan and to devote the other large room, across the hall from the first, to a strictly geological and mineralogical cabinet, reserving the first mainly for zoological specimens.

Several boxes of fossils belonging to the survey were opened and carefully studied and labeled during the summer, but owing to the lack of suitable cases they were retained in the geological laboratory. Mr. Herrick labeled the shells on exhibition that were purchased of H. T. Woodman, and collected about a hundred native birds. These are not mounted, but are skinned and stuffed.

The Museum has had large accessions during the year through donations and purchases at the Centennial Exhibition. Some of these specimens have been catalogued and labeled, as may be seen by the accompanying statement, but the most of them have not. The principal donors were the following:

The Geological Survey of Canada, through A. R. C. Selwyn, Director.

The Central Pacific R. R. California.

The Pennsylvania Diamond Drill Company.

The Wisconsin Geological Survey, through Mr. E. T. Sweet.

The Pacific Guano Company.

The Kentucky Geological Survey, through John R. Proctor, Secretary of the Survey.

Tennessee Centennial Commission, through Gen. J. T. Wilder.

The Land Department of the Little Rock and Fort Smith R. R.

The Selma, Rome and Dalton R. R. Alabama.

Some minerals also were purchased at favorable rates of Mr. Herbert R. Saunders and of Prof. A. E. Foote.

The most important addition to the mineralogical collections made during the year was in the purchase of the entire cabinet collection of Mr. Geo. F. Kunz, of Hoboken, N. J. This has not been received yet at the University, and is not enumerated in the following catalogue. In general it embraces a complete set of zinc and iron ores, and species, so far as they can be got in the locality of Franklin and Ogdensburg, N. J.; also a collection prepared by the late Charles Clifton, for Owen's college, England; also a general series of mineral species in excess of the foregoing zinc and iron compounds amounting to at least 125 species, with many duplicates. Fifteen boxes of this collection have been received. There are still about twenty more. No systematic attempt has been made to catalogue the zoological specimens. The following is a list of the geological and mineralogical specimens so far as they have been examined and labeled:

CATALOGUE OF THE GEOLOGICAL AND MINERALOGICAL SPECIMENS OF THE MUSEUM, TO DECEMBER 31, 1876.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When	Whence.					
1	1869 ?	Dalmellington Iron Com., Ayrshire, Scotland	Black band Iron-stone	1	Ayrshire, Scotland	Coal Meas.	Prof. G. Campbell.
2	"	" "	" " " " calcined	1	" "	"	" "
3	"	" "	Iron ore	1	" "	"	" "
4	"	" "	Core from drill ?	2	" "	"	" "
5	"	" "	....	1	" "	"	" "
6	"	" "	Calamites sp. ?	2	" "	"	" "
7	"	" "	Lepidodendron sp. ?	1	" "	"	" "
8	"	" "	Lepidodendron sp. ?	1	" "	"	" "
9	"	" "	....	1	" "	"	" "
10	"	" "	....	1	" "	"	" "
11	"	" "	(Conchifers)	7	" "	"	" "
12	"	" "	No. 1 Pig Iron	1	" "	"	" "
13	"	New Commock, Ayrshire.	Lammark Cannel Coal	1	" "	"	" "
14	"	Dundee, Scotland	Shark's tooth	1	Dundee, Scotland	....	" "
15	"	Dalmellington, Scotland	Iron ore. (Haematite) with quartz	4	Ayrshire, Scotland	....	" "
16	"	....	Cinnabar	2	Europe	....	" "
17	"	....	Iron pyrites	5	"	....	" "
18	"	....	Pyritiferous conglomerate. (Auriferous)	3	"	....	" "
19	"	....	Iron ore. "Parkside"	1	Whitehaven, Eng.	....	" "
20	"	....	Chert, flinty	1	Whitehead, Ireland.	....	" "
21	"	Rome, Italy	Samples of the building-stone of ancient Rome, Palaces about the Forum and Palatine Hill	20	....	....	" "
22	"	....	Orthis and Strophomena	3	....	Trenton	" "
23	"	....	Ormoceras tenuifilum, Hall. (Cephalopod)	2	....	" ?	" "
24	"	H. P. Van Cleve	Endoceras magniventrum, H. "	1	Mendota, Minn	Trenton	....
25	"	....	Leptaena deltoidea. Con	1	Minneapolis	"	Records doubtful.
26	"	....	Calcite	Many	....	Metamorphic.	No records of any kind.

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
27			Amygdaloid with Epidote	1		Metamorphic.	No records.
28			Amygdaloid with Epidote	2		"	" "
29			Calcite as a segregated vein in Argillite.	1		"	" "
30			Calcite in Argillite (or Jasper)	1		"	" "
31			Porphyrytic Granite	1			" "
32			Franklinite	1	Franklin, N. J		" "
33			Syenite	1			" "
34			Marble (rosy)	1			" "
35			Quartzite	1			" "
36			Mica Schist	1			" "
37			White Sandstone	1			" "
38			Grit	1			" "
39			Conglomerate	1			" "
40			Marble (reddish)	1			" "
41			Marble (white)	4			" "
42			Hydromia Slate	1			" "
43			Catlinite	1	Pipestone Co., Minn.	Potsdam	" "
44			Syenite ?	1	St. Cloud		Seems to contain only Labordorite and Quartz.
45			Granite ?	1			No records of any kind.
46			Calciferous Sandrock	1		Lower Mag	" " "
47			Gypsum	2	Fort Dodge, Iowa		" " "
48			Gneiss	1			" " "
49			Grit	1			" " "
50			Pyrites and Chert	1			" " "

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
51			Quartz in Greenstone	1			No records of any kind.
52			Saccharoidal marble	1			" "
53			Serpentine rock, (Ophiolyte.).	1			" "
54	1872	J. F. Kenworthy		4		Hamilton	Records in doubt.
55	"	"		2		"	" "
56	"	"		17		"	" "
57	"	"		4		"	" "
58	"	"		10		"	" "
59	"	"		7		"	" "
60	"	"		1		"	" "
61	"	"		1		"	" "
62	"	"		7		"	" "
63	"	"		1		"	" "
64	"	"		2		"	" "
65	"	"		1		"	" "
66	"	"		56		"	" "
67	"	"		1		"	" "
68			Haematite (botryoidal),	1			No records whatever.
69			Galenite	23			" "
70			Calcite	2			" "
71			Pyrite	9			" "
72			Pyrite and Galenite	1			" "
73		Dr. Stoneman	Glass quartz	2			Records doubtful.
74		"	Strophomena alternata. Con.	1		Trenton.	" "
75		"	Strophomena alternata. Con.	1		"	" "

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
76			Lead	1		Trenton ?	Records doubtful.
77		Dr. Stoneman	Cyathophylloids	3		"	" "
78		" "	Chaetetes sp.?	2		"	" "
79		" "	Chaetetes Lycoperdon. H.	7		"	" "
80		" "	Chaetetes sp.?	1		"	" "
81		" "	Crinoid stems	3		"	" "
82		" "	Orthis lynx	1		"	" "
83		" "	Resembles in shape Pleurotomaria **subconica.**	2			Has not the proper surface markings.
84		" "	Murchisonia ventricosa. H. (or **perangulata.**)	1			Records doubtful.
85		" "	Drusy Quartz	1			" "
86		" "	Native Copper	1			" "
87		" "	Barite	2			" "
88		" "	Selenite	1	Kansas		" "
89		" "	Endoceras angusticameratum. H.	1		Trenton	" "
90		" "	Fossiliferous Limestone	1		"	" "
91		" "	?	1		"	" "
92		" "	Quartzite pebble	1			" "
93		" "	Conglomerate	1			" "
94		" "	Strophomena sp.?	2			" "
95		" "	Strophomena sp.?	3			" "
96		" "	Strophomena sp.?	3			" "
97		Prof. Beardsley	"Variegated marble"	1	West Rutland, Vt.		
98		" "	"Traprock"	1	Mt. Holyoke, Mass.		
99		" "	New Red Sandstone	1			
100		" "	Conglomerate. New Red Sandstone	1	Mt. Holyoke, Mass.		

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
101		Prof. Beardsley	“Jasper”	1	W. Rutland, Vt.		
102		" "	“Chalcopyrite”	1	S. Hampton, Mass.		
103		" "	“Copper Pyrites”	2	" "		
104		" "	Chalcopyrites and Chrysocolla	1	?		
105		" "	“Serpentine”	1	Chester, Mass.		
106		" "	“Margarite”	5	" "		
107		" "	“Muscovite and Quartz”	1	?		
108		" "	“Soapstone with Garnets”	1	Chester, Mass.		
109		" "	“Garnets” in Soapstone	1	" "		
110		" "	“Talc”	1	" "		
111		" "	“Steatite”	1	" "		
112		" "	“Emery”	1	" "		
113		" "	“Hornblende”	1	" "		
114		" "	“Serpentine”	1	" "		
115		" "	“Emery Mine”	1	" "		
116		" "	“Corundum”	4	" "		
117		" "	“Corundum”	1	" "		
118		" "	“Galena”	3	S. Hampton, Mass.		Lead Mines at S. Hampton.
119		" "	“Talcose Schist”	2	" "		
120		" "	Calcite on opalescent and drusy Quartz	1	" "		
121		" "	Quartz	2	" "		
122		" "	Calcite and (actinolite ?)	1	" "		
123		" "		1	" "		
124		" "	“Galena”		" "		
125		Burdett Thayer	Large crystal of Quartz		Near Montreal, Ont.		

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
126	Oct. 1872	Geol. Sur	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	3	Mantorville	Galena	N. H. Winchell.
127	"	W. D. Hurlburt	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	1	Near Rochester	"	"
128	"	"		1	"	"	"
129	"	Geol. Sur		1	Mantorville	"	"
130	"	" "		1	Mantorville ?	Trenton	"
131	"	" "	Orthoceras multicameratum. Con.	1	Pettit's Mill	"	"
132	Sept. 1875	" "	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	9	Sec 7, Viola, Olm. Co	Galena	M. W. Harrington
133	"	W. P. Farrell	Endoceras proteiforme. Hall	2	NE¼, Sec. 32, Dover, Olm. Co.	"	M. W. Harrington.
134	Oct 1875.	John Kleckler	Lituites undatus. Con	1	2 ms. N.E. Spring Valley	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
135	Sept. 1875	Geol. Sur	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	1	Sec. 7, Viola, Olm. Co	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
136	"	" "		2		"	"
137	Oct. 1875.	" "	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	2	Fountain, Fill. Co	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
138	"	John Kleckler	Endoceras distans	1	2 ms. N.E. Spring Valley	"	"
139	Oct. 1872.	Geol. Sur	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	1	Mantorville	Galena	"
140	Oct. 1875.	John Kleckler		1	2 ms. N.E. Spring Valley	Trenton	"
141	"	" "		1	" " "	"	"
142	Sept. 1875	Geol. Surv	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	1	Olmsted Co	"	M. W. Harrington.
143	"	Rev. H. P. Satchwell.		1	Salem, Olm. Co	"	" (Quarry of John Vosburg.)
144	"	Geol. Surv	Endoceras proteiforme Hall	4	Cascade, Olm. Co	"	" (Jenkins' Quarry.)
145	Jan. 1876.	S. H. Chute	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	2	Minneapolis, E.	"	N. H. Winchell (From green shales.)
146		W. P. Farrell	Receptaculites sp.?	1	N.E.¼, Sec. 32, Dover, Olm. Co.	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
147	1875	Geol. Surv	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	8	Sec. 7, Viola, Olm. Co	"	"
148	1875	" "		1	Fillmore Co	"	N. H Winchell.
149	1875	Geo. Shepard		1	"	"	"
150	1875	Geol. Surv	Receptaculites occidentalis. Sal	1	Jordan, Fillmore Co	Trenton	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
151	Oct. 1875	Geol. Surv.	Chaetetes ?	2	Chatfield	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
152	Sept. "	" "	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	2	Sec. 17, Rochester, Olm. Co.	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
153	" "	" "	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	1	" " "	Galena	"
154	Oct. "	" "	'Receptaculites globularis. H." (After M. & W.)	1	Chatfield	L. Trenton	N H. Winchell. (Ill. Rep., Vol. III, p. 301.)
155	Sept. "	" "	Endoceras proteiforme. Var. strangulatum. H.	1	Cascade, Olmsted Co.	L. Trenton	M. W. Harrington (Jenkins' q'ry.)
156	Oct. "	" "		1	Sec. 20, Beaver, Fill. Co.	Devonian	N H. Winchell.
157	Sept. "	" "	Receptaculites Oweni Hall	1	Sec. 17, Rochester, Olm. Co.	Galena	M. W. Harrington. (Garrick's q'ry.)
158	" "	" "	Receptaculites. sp. ?	1	" " "	Galena	" "
159	" "	" "	Ormoceras tenuifilium. Hall	2	" " "	Gray Limestone.	" (below Garrick's q.)
160	" "	" "	Receptaculites. sp. ?	1	" " "	Galena	" (Garrick's q'ry)
161	" "	" "	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	4	" " "	Galena	" "
162	" "	" "	Petraia corniculum. Hall	1	" " "	Galena	" "
163	" "	" "	Illaenus latidorsata. Hall ?	1	" " "	Galena	" "
164	" "	" "	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	1	Olmsted county	Galena	" "
165	Oct. "	" "	Maclurea magna. Hall	1	Weisbach's Mill, Fill. Co.	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
166	July "	" "	Maclurea magna ?	1	Northfield ?	Shakopee.	"
167	Sept. "	" "	Receptaculites occidentalis. Sal. ?	2	Manterville, Dodge Co	Galena	S. Wilson.
168	" "	" "	Conularia Trentonensis. Hall	1	" " Wilson's quarry.	Galena	The longitudinal striæ are not quite like the figures of Hall, Plate 59. M. W. Harrington. (Upper layer.)
169	" "	" "	Receptaculites. sp. ?	1	Rochester, Olmsted Co	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
170	Oct. "	" "	Chaetetes. ?	1	2 miles N. E. Spring Valley.	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
171	Sept. "	" "		2	No. 7, Viola, Olm. Co	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
172	" "	" "		1	" " " ?	Galena	"
173	Oct. "	" "	Productus. ?	4	Spring Valley	Galena. ?	N. H. Winchell.
174	Sept. "	" "	Strophomena. sp. ?	1	Garrick's quarry, Rochester	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
175	Oct. "	" "		1	Etna, Fillmore Co	Drift	N. H. Winchell.

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
176	1875	Geol. Sur.	Murchisonia bicincta. Hall. Isotelus gigas. Hall. Orthis? Streptelasma corniculum. H. Leptaena? Murchisonia perangulata. Hall Murchisonia angustata. H	2	Rochester, (Garrick's quarry.).	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
177	"	"	Rhynchonella sp. ?	1	" "	"	" "
178	"	"	Murchisonia bellicincta. Hall	1	" "	"	" " Shows no siphuncle.
179	"	" "	Non-septate, portion of an orthoceras shell.	1	" "	"	" "
180	1872	" "	Strophomena deltoidea. Con.	1	Minneapolis	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
181	"	" "	" recta. Con.	2	St. Charles	"	N. H Winchell. Cast of the interior of the concave or ventral valve with the crenulated striæ of the dorsal valve preserved on the margin. Pal. Foss. p. 130.
182	1875	" "	" alternata. Con.	1	Rochester, (Garrick's quarry.)	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
183	"	" "	Pleurotomaria umbilicata. Hall	1	" "	"	" "
184	"	" "	" ambigua. Hall. (or umbilicata.)	1	" "	"	" "
185	"	" "		8	Fillmore County	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
186	"	" "		1	" "	"	" "
187	"	" "	Orthis ?	1	" "	Galena	" "
188	"	" "		1	Spring Valley	"	" "
189	"	" "		1	Fillmore County	Trenton	" "
190	"	" "		1	" "	"	" "
191	"	" "		1	" "	"	" "
192	"	" "		1	" "	"	" "
193	"	" "	Strophomena sp. ?	1	" "	"	" "
194	"	" "		1	" "	"	" "
195	"	" "		1	" "	"	" "
196	"	" "	Pleurotomaria lenticularis. Con.	1	" "	"	" "
197	"	" "	Orthoceratite ?	1	" "	"	" "
198		" "		1	Spring Valley	"	" "
199		" "	Strophomena deltoidea. Con.	3	Minnehaha	"	" "
200		" "		1	"	"	" "

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
201		Geol. Surv.	Strophomena deltoidea. Con.	1	Minnehaha	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
202		“ “	Edmondiea subtruncata. Hall ?	2	“	“	“
203		“ “	Strophomena deltoidea. Con.	2	“	“	“
204	1875.	“ “	“ tenuistriata, Sow. (allied to)	2	Sec. 17, Rochester, Olmsted Co	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
205	“	“ “	Receptaculites ?	1	“ “	“	M. W. Harrington.
206	“	“ “	Chaetetes Sp, ?	1	Finn's Glen, Minneapolis	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
207	“	“ “	Petraia corniculum. Hall	1	Sec. 17, Rochester, Olmsted Co	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
208	“	“ “		1	“ “	“	“
209	“	“ “	Strophomena tenuistriata ? Phacops rana ?	1	“ “	“	“
210	“	“ “		1	High Forest		
211	“	“ “	Chaetetes petropolitanus. Pand.	1	2 miles N. E. Spring Valley	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
212	“	“ “		1	“ “ “	“	“
213	“	“ “	Endoceras distans. Hall	1	“ “ “	“	“
214	“	“ “		1	Spring Valley	Galena	“
216	“	“ “	Pleurotomaria umbilicata. Hall,	1	St. Anthony	Trenton	“
217	“	“ “		1	Rochester, (Garrick's Quarry)	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
218	Oct. 1872.	“ “	Murchisonia subfusiformis. Hall	1	Mantorville, (Pettit's Mill)	Trenton	N. H. Winchell, (compare 343 and 255.)
219	“	“ “		1	“ “	“ “	M. W. Harrington.
220	Sept. 1875.	“ “	Orthis, Leptaena nucleata (?). Productus. Atrypa. 298 and 299.	1	Sec. 28, Bloomfield	Galena ?	N. H. Winchell.
221		“ “		1	Chester, Iowa	Devonian	“
222		“ “		1	“ “	“	“
223		“ “		2	“ “	“	“
224		“ “		1	“ “	“	“
225	Oct. 1875.	“ “		1	“ “	“	“

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
226	Oct. 1875.	Geol. Surv.		2	Forreston, Iowa	Galena.	N. H. Winchell.
227	"	" "	Spirifer. Productus and Leptaena nucleata?.	1	Spring Valley	" ?	"
228	"	" "	Strophomena sp.?	1	Fillmore County	Trenton	"
229	"	" "	Spirifer sp.?	1	Spring Valley	Galena?	"
230	"	" "	"	1	" "	"	"
231	"	" "	Orthis testudinaria. Dal.	1	" "	Galena.	"
232	"	" "	Strophomena fluctuosa. Bill	1	" "	"	"
233	June, 1 73	" "	Cyclonema?	1	Finn's Glen, Minneapolis	Trenton	"
234	"	" "	Spirifer sp.?	1	Spring Valley	Galena?	"
235	Oct. 1875.	" "	Productus sp.? (distorted.)	1	" "	" ?	"
236	"	" "	Orthis testudinaria. Dal	1	" "	Galena.	"
237	"	" "		1	" "	"	"
238	"	" "	Spirifer and Productus	1	" "	Galena?	"
239	"	" "		1	Chatfield	Trenton	"
240	"	" "		6	High Forest.		"
241	"	" "	Orthoceras, with remains of trilobites	2	Holden, Goodhue Co.	Trenton	"
242	"	" "		2	" "	"	"
243	"	" "		1	" "	"	"
244	"	" "		1	" "	"	"
245	"	" "		3	" "	"	"
246	"	" "		1	" "		"
247	"	" "		1	" "		"
248	"	" "		3	Sec. 20, Beaver, Fillmore Co.	Devonian	"
249	"	" "		5	" "	"	"
250	"	" "		2	" "	"	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
251	Oct. 1875	Geol. Surv.	Maclurea Logani. Sal	14	Lime City, Fillmore Co.	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
252	July 1875	" "		1	Holden, Goodhue Co.	"	" "
253	Oct. 1875	" "	Maclurea magna. Hall	1	Lime City, Fillmore Co.	"	" "
254	" "	" "		1	" "	"	" "
255	" "	" "	Murchisonia subfusiformis. Hall?	1	" "	"	" " compare 343 & 318
256	" "	" "	Receptaculites occidentalis. Sal.	1	" "	"	" "
257	" "	" "	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	1	" "	"	" "
258	" "	" "		3	" "	"	" "
259	" "	" "	Chaetetes Lycoperdon. Hall	37	Fillmore, Fill. Co., (Shepherd's quarry)	"	" "
260	Sept. 1875	" "	Fragment of trilobite shield?	1	Mantorville	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
261	" "	" "	Strophomena sp.?	1	"	"	" "
262	" "	" "	" fluctuosa. Bill.	1	"	"	" "
263	" "	" "	Discina Pelopea. Bill.	1	"	"	" "
264	Sep. 1875	" "		2	Olmsted Co.	Trenton	" "
265	Oct. 1875	" "		2	Sec. 26, Bloomfield, Fill. Co.	Galena	N. H. Winchell.
266	" "	" "	Rhynchonella capax. Con. (increbescens of Hall.) Has the internal markings of Atrypa but the shape of a Rhynchonella. ? (Eatonia ?)		Fillmore, Fill. Co.	Trenton	" "
267	" "	" "		24	Spring Valley	Galena?	" "
268	" "	" "		1	Sec 26, Bloomfield	"	" "
269	" "	" "		1	Sec. 30, Forestville, Fill. Co.	Trenton	" "
270	" "	" "	Same as No. 267, (shows a number of fragments)	2	Spring Valley	Galena?	" "
271	" "	" "	Slab with Strophomena sp.?	1	Mantorville, Dodge Co.	Trenton	M. W. Harrington.
272	" "	" "	Orthis testudinaria. Dal	Indefinite	Spring Valley	Galena	N. H. Winchell.
273	" "	" "	Orthis plicatella. Hall	1	" "	"	The dorsal beak is but slightly more prominent than that of the ventral valve. The casts of the interior of the dorsal valve are not with a "subquadrangular visceral impression" Pal. N. Y. I., p. 126.
274	" "	" "	" subquadrata. Hall. ?	Indefinite	" "	"	The areas seem not to form an angle greater than 90°.
275	" "	" "	Strophomena nitens. Bill?	3	" "	"	

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
276	Oct. 1875	Geol. Surv.	Petraia. ?	1	Spring Valley	Galena	N. H. Winchell.
277	" "	" "	Cast of an Orthis. (not subquadrata.)	1	"	"	"
278	" "	" "	Orthis Plicatella. Hall. (v. 273.)	2	"	"	"
279	" "	" "		4	"	"	"
280	" "	" "	Leptaena nucleata. (v. 220)	2	Sec. 22, Bloomfield	" ?	"
281	" "	" "	Chaetetes. (Or Bolboporites, Geol. Can., p. 124.)	3	Minneapolis	Trenton	"
282	" "	" "	Chaetetes Lycoperdon. Hall	1	"	"	"
283	" "	" "	Rhynchonella capax. Con.	1	"	"	"
284	Sept. "	" "	Murchisonia bellicincta. Hall	1	Sumner tp., Fillmore Co.	"	Geo. Ten Eyck. (N. H. W.)
285	" "	" "	Pleurotomaria. sp. ?	1	" "	"	" "
286	" "	" "	(Resembles Macrocheilus.)	1	" "	"	" "
287	" "	" "	Strophomena alternata. Con.	1	" "	"	" "
288	" "	" "	Maclurea Logani. Sal. (with a Strophomena attached).	1	" "	"	" "
289	" "	" "		1	Wasioja, Dodge Co.	Galena	M. W. Harrington.
290	" "	" "	Orthis. sp. ?	1	Rochester. (Garrick's q.)	"	"
291	" "	" "	Lingula quadrata. Eich	3	Olmsted Co	Trenton	W. D. Hurlburt.
292	" "	" "	Chaetetes. (And a fucoidal fragment.)	5	Sec. 25, Cascade, Olm. Co.		M. W. Harrington.
293	" "	" "		2	Mantorville, Dodge Co.	Galena	" (Upper layers Wilson's quarry.)
294	" "	" "		1	" "	"	M. W. Harrington.
295	" "	" "		1	" "	"	"
296	" "	" "		1	" "	"	"
297	" "	" "	Strophomena fluctuosa. Bill	1	" "	"	N. H. Winchell—Has a part of a pygidium of a trilobite.
298	Oct. "	" "		1	High Forest		N. H. Winchell.
299	" "	" "	Atrypa ? Eatonia ? (v. 220 and 496)	2	Sec. 22, Bloomfield	Galena ?	"
300	" "	" "		1	" "	"	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
301	1875......	Geol. Surv.	Productus ?	1	Sec. 22, Bloomfield, Fill. Co.	Galena ?	N. H. Winchell.
302	"	" "		2	Forestville, Fill. Co	Maquoketa	" (S.E. qr. Sec. 20.)
303	Oct. 1875	" "		1	Lime Springs, Iowa	Niagara	"
304	"	" "	Orthoceras multicameratum. Con.	1	Minneapolis	Trenton	"
305	"	" "	Murchisonia bellicincta. Hall	1	Sec. 2, Forestville, Fill. Co.	"	"
306	"	" "	Pleurotomaria umbilicata. Hall	1	" " "	"	"
307	"	" "		1	Sec. 21, " "	"	"
308	"	" "		1	Lime Springs, Iowa	Niagara	"
309	"	" "	Lingula Cobourgensis. Bill.	1	Chatfield, Fillmore Co.	Trenton	"
310	"	" "	Chaetetes petropolitanus. Pander.	1	Rochester	"	W. D. Hurlburt.
311	"	" "		2	Spring Valley	Galena ?	N. H. Winchell.
312	"	" "	Orthis occidentalis. Hall? v. 220.	1	" "	" ?	N. H. Winchell—Resembles Leptaena nucleata H. of the Oriskany. (Ill Rep. III. p. 393, Pl. 8, fig. 8.)
313	June, 1873	" "	Chaetetes sp. ?	Indefinite	Finn's Glen, Minneapolis	Trenton	N. H. Winchell. (Probably not a Chaetetes.)
314	Oct. 1873	" "	Productus?	1	Spring Valley	Galena ?	"
315	"	" "		1	" "	"	"
316	"	" "		1	" "	Niagara	"
317	"	" "		1	" "	"	"
318	"	" "	Petraia corniculum. Hall	1	Minneapolis	Trenton	"
319	"	" "	Petraia? sp.?	1	"	"	"
320	"	" "	Edmondia ventricosa. Hall	4	"	"	"
321	"	" "		6	"	"	"
322	"	" "		3	"	"	"
323	"	" "		8	"	"	"
324	"	" "		5	"	"	"
325	"	" "		1	"	"	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	Number of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When	Whence.					
326	1876.	Geol. Surv.		2	Minneapolis	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
327	"	" "		2	"	"	"
328	"	" "	Atrypa. ? (v. 220)	1	"	"	"
329	"	" "		1	Spring Valley		J. Kleckler.
330	1873.	" "	Chaetetes Lycoperdon. Hall	Indefinite.	Finn's Glen, Minneapolis	"	N. H. Winchell.
331	"	" "		6	" "	"	"
332	"	" "	Murchisonia bicincta. Hall	1	" "	"	"
333	"	" "	Pleurotomaria subconica. Hall	1	" "	"	"
334	"	" "		4	" "	"	"
335	"	" "		1	" "	"	"
336	"	" "		3	" "	"	"
337	"	" "	Bellerophon bilobatus. Sow	2	" "	"	"
338	"	" "	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	2	Rochester, Olmsted Co.	"	N. H. Winchell, Whitcomb's Quarry.
339	1872.	" "		11	" "	"	N. H. Winchell, Whitcomb's Quarry.
340	"	" "	Isotelus gigas. Hall. Asaphus platycephalus. Stokes	1	" "	"	N. H. Winchell, Whitcomb's Quarry.
341	"	" "	Murchisonia bellicincta. Hall	1	Pettit's Mill, Mantorville	"	N. H. Winchell.
342	"	" "	Chaetetes petropolitanus. Pander	3	" "	"	"
343	"	" "	Murchisonia subfusiformis. Hall ?	1	" "	"	"
344	"	" "	Receptaculites occidentalis. Salter ?	2	Sec. 16, Pleasant Grove, Olm. Co	"	"
345	"	" "	Strophomena filitexta. Hall. (Dorsal valve)	1	" " "	"	" as described by Billings (i. e. changing the name of the valve.)
346	"	" "		2	Rochester, Olmsted Co.	"	N. H. Winchell.
347	"	" "		1	Sec. 16, Pleasant Grove, Olm. Co	"	"
348	"	" "		2	" " "	"	"
349	"	" "	Murchisonia bicincta. Hall	1	" " "	"	"
350	"	" "		2	" " "	"	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	Number of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
351	Oct. 1872	Geol. Surv.	....	2	Pettit's Mill	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
352	"	" "	....	1	Pleasant Grove	"	"
353	"	" "	Strophomena deltoidea. Con	1	St. Anthony	"	"
354	"	" "	Pleurotomaria umbilicata. Hall	1	Rochester, Olmsted Co	"	"
355	"	" "	Murchisonia bicincta. Hall	1	"	"	"
356	"	" "	....	3	Pleasant Grove	"	"
357	"	" "	Chaetetes Lycoperdon. Hall(or stenopora fibrosa. Gold.)	4	Pettit's Mill	"	"
358	"	" "	Slabs of Trenton (fossiliferous)	10	" "	"	"
359	"	" "	Receptaculites Oweni. Hall	4	Near Rochester, Olmsted Co.	Galena	"
360	"	" "	Has the same as 371, which may not be Strophomena	1	" " "	"	"
361	"	" "	Ambonychia bellistriata. Hall?	1	" " "	Trenton	"
362	"	" "	....	1	" " "	Galena	"
363	"	" "	Murchisonia bellicincta. Hall	1	" " "	"	"
364	"	" "	Petraia corniculum. Hall	1	" " "	"	"
365	"	" "	....	1	" " "	"	"
366	"	" "	Ambonychia?	1	" " "	"	"
367	"	" "	Isotelus gigas. DeKay. (Caudal shield.)	1	" " "	"	"
368	"	" "	Endoceras magniventrum. Hall	1	" " "	"	"
369	"	" "	Strophomena fluctuosa Bill	1	" " "	"	"
370	"	" "	Rhynchonella capax. Con	8	Finn's Glen, Minneapolis	Trenton	"
371	"	" "	Strophomena (tenuistriata? v. No, 204.)	1	Near Rochester, Olmsted Co.	Galena	"
372	"	" "	" "	1	" " "	"	"
373	"	" "	" "	1	" " "	"	"
374	"	" "	Orthis testudinaria. Dal	12	St. Charles	Trenton	"
375	"	" "	Orthis testudinaria. Dal. Strophomena deltoidea. Con. Asaphus platycephalus. Rhynchonella bisulcata. Hall.	1	" "	"	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	Number of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
376	Oct. 1872	Geol. Surv.		1	St. Charles	Trenton	N. H. Winchell.
377	" "	" "		1	"	"	" "
378	" "	" "	Strophomena deltoidea. Con	1	"	"	" "
379	" "	" "		1	"	"	" "
380	" "	" "	Atrypa reticularis	1	" ?	"	" "
381	" "	" "		1	"	"	" "
382	" "	" "		3	"	"	" " Cast of the interior of the [convex valve.
383	" "	" "	Strophomena (sp. unidentifiable)(v. 391.) Graptolithus, Lingula. Strophomena, Orthis	1	Mantorville	Galena	" "
384	" "	" "	Orthoceras? and Pentremites.? (v. Fauna Silurienne. p. 106, fig. 60)	1	"	"	" "
385	" "	" "	Strophomena alternata. Con	1	"	"	" " may be alternistriata. Hall.
386	" "	" "	Graptolithus. sp. nov	1	"	"	" "
387	" "	" "	Strephomena sp.?	1	"	"	" " cast of the interior of [convex valve.
388	" "	" "	Fragment of trilobite shield?	1	"	"	" "
389	" "	" "	Strophomena sp.?	1	"	"	" "
390	" "	" "		1	"	Trenton	" "
391	" "	" "	Strophomena (sp. unidentifiable) (v. 383)	1	"	Galena	" "
392	" "	" "		1	"	Trenton.	" "
393	" "	" "	Lingula sp.?	1	"	"	" "
394	" "	" "	Strophomena sp.?	1		Galena	" "
395	" "	" "		1	Minneapolis	Trenton	" "
396	" 1875	" "	Orthis subquadrata. Hall	1	Spring Valley	Galena	" "
397	" 1871?	" "	Ammonites communis	1	Paris Basin. Fr.	Tertiary	
398	" " ?	Dr. Stoneman	Orthoceras bilineatum. Hall	1	Minneapolis	Trenton?	Records doubtful
399	" 1872	W. D. Hurlburt	Caudal extremity of trilobite	1	Trenton Falls, N. Y.	"	
400	" "	" "	Stenopora petropolitana. Pander. Or Chaetetes Lycoperdon. Hall. or Chaetetes petropolitanus. M. & W	1	" "	"	

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
401	1874	W. W. McNair	Cinnebar ore	1	California		From the New Almaden Mines
402	Oct. 28, 1872	J. W. Pomeroy	Native Copper	3		?	Probably from Lake Superior Mines.
403	" "	"	Copper Scoria	1			" " "
404	Jan 10, 1873	J. Clarence Bryant.	Fern Leaves	3	Illinois Coal Measures.	Coal Meas.	
405		G. D. B. Bainbridge	Talc. (Soapstone.)	1			
406	1872	S. D. Haskin	Straparollus Minnesotensis. (Pl. II, figs. 12 & 13.) (v. Pal. N. Y., I, Pl. 3, fig. 1.)	1	Traverse Des Sioux, Jordan Sandstone.	Jordan	32 feet from surface of ground, 20 feet from top of rock.
407	Jan. 6, 1875.	Burdett Thayer	Large Crystal of Quartz	1			
408	Oct. 1872	Geological Survey.	Pseudomorph after Pyrites	1	Winona	L. Mag.	N. H. Winchell.
409	"	" "	Orthoceras junceum. Hall	1	St. Charles	Trenton	"
410	"	" "		1	"		"
411	Sept. 1875	W. D. Hurlburt	Isotelus gigas. Hall. (Cast.) Asaphus.	1		Trenton	M. W. Harrington.
412	Oct. "	Geological Survey.	Galena	1	Near Rochester	Galena	Found on the surface.
413	" "	" "	Surface bog-ore	1	" Mantorville		" "
414	Sept. "	" "	Asaphus. sp. ? (Or Bathyurus.)	1	Rochester	Trenton	Presented by W. D. Hurlburt.
415	Oct. "	" "	Siliceous iron ore	1	4 ms. N. W. Cannon Falls	Potsdam	N. H. Winchell. (At Valentine's. See Andreas' Map.)
416	Jan. 8, 1875	James Hinton	" "	1	Quincy, Olmsted Co	"	Obtained as a boulder at Quincy. It is magnetic and is known as "Loadstone."
417	July, 1873	Geological Survey.	Cretaceous sandstone, with vegetation.	1	8 miles below New Ulm.	Cretaceous.	Fritz' quarry. Left branch of Minn. R.
418	Aug. 1876	" "	Siliceous iron ore	4	4 miles w. Cannon Falls	Potsdam	N. H. Winchell. (At Valentine's. See Andreas' Map.)
419	Oct. 1872	" "	Isotelus gigas. Hall. (Cast.)	1	Mantorville	Galena	Presented by Frank Wilson.
420	"	" "	Receptaculites ?	1	Near Rochester	"	N. H. Winchell.
421	"	" "	Isotelus gigas. Hall.	1	" "	"	"
422	"	" "	(Cast)	1	Mantorville	"	Presented by Frank Wilson.
423	"	" "		1	Near Rochester	"	N. H. Winchell.
424	Apr. 1876	J. A. Armstrong	Mountain Bank (Penn.) soft coal	1		Coal Meas.	"
425	"	"	Briar Hill (Ohio) soft coal	1		"	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	Number of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
426	April 1876	A. J. Armstrong	Anthracite, Penn. Hard coal	1	Lehigh, Penn	Coal Meas.	N. H. Winchell.
427	“ “	“ “	Canton Shaft, Illinois. Soft coal	1	Canton, Ill.	“	“
428	Oct. 1875	Geol. Surv.	Atrypa ?	13	Spring Valley	Galena ?	“
429	“ “	“ “	Orthis occidentalis. Hall	1	“ “	Galena	“
430	“ “	“ “	Strophomena fluctuosa. Bill	5	“ “	“	The specimens are smaller than stated by Billings. (Pal. Fos. p. 124.)
431	Sept. 1875	“ “	Murchisonia bicincta. Hall ?	1	Mantorville	“	M. W. Harrington.
432	Oct. 1872	“ “	Rhaphistoma lapicida. Salter ?	2	Rochester, Olmsted Co.	Trenton	N. H. Winchell
433	“ 1875	“ “		2	Chatfield, Fillmore Co.	“	“
434	“ 1872	“ “	Orthis testudinaria. Dal. Orthoceras, Strophomena deltoidea. Con. Cyrtoceras. Rhaphistoma lapicida. Sal.? Murchisonia. Isotelus gigas. Hall. Licahas sp. ?	1	Rochester, Olmsted Co.	“	“ (Slab.)
435	“ “	“ “	Strophomena deltoidea. Con. Orthis testudinaria. Dal. Asaphus platycephalus. Lichas. ? Lingula quadrata. Eich	1	“ “	“	“ “
436	“ “	“ “	Atrypa recurvirostra. Hall	5	St.Charles, Winona Co.	“	“
437	“ “	“ “					
438	“ “	“ “	Rhynchonella bisulcata. Hall	1	“ “	“	“
439	“ “	“ “	Rhynchonella capax. Con	1	“ “	“	“
440	“ “	“ “	Slab with Rhynchonella, Orthis and Strophomena	1	“ “	“	“
441	Nov. 1876	Centennial Exhibition.	Cannel Coal	1	Greenup Co., Ky.	Coal Meas.	N. H. Winchell, from the Kentucky Survey.
442	“ “	“ “	Itacolumite	1	Mariposa Co., Cal.		“ Purchased of A. E. Foot.
443	“ “	“ “	Beryl	1	Ackworth, N. H.		“ “ “
444	“ “	“ “	Crystalized Brown Haematite	4	Stewart Co., W. Tenn.		“ From Tenn. Commissioners
445	“ “	“ “	“ “ “	1	Brierfield, Ala.		“ From S. W. Baird.
446	“ “	“ “	Haematite	4	——Kentucky		“ From Kentucky Survey.
447	“ “	“ “	Magnetic Oxide of Iron	7	Port Henry, N. Y.		“
448	“ “	“ “	Ochreous Brown Haematite	1	——Pennsyvania		“ From Penn. Commissioners
449	“ “	“ “	Crystals of Franklinite	1	Franklin, N. Y.		“ Purchased of Geo. Kunz.
450	“ “	“ “	Sulphate of Strontia	1	Ontario		“ From Geol. Surv. of Canada

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
451	Oct. 1876	Cent. Exp.	Apatite	1	Bedford, Ontario		N. H. Winchell, Geol. Surv. of Canada.
452	"	"	Carbonate of Zinc	1	Union Co., Tenn		" Tenn. Commissioners.
453	"	"	Albertite	3	Albert Co., N. B		" { Geol. Surv, of Canada. { P. 57, Canada Catalogue.
454	"	"	"	Indefi	Canada		" Geol. Surv. of Canada.
455	"	"	Sapphire	1	Near Franklin, N. J		" Purchased of Geo.F. Kunz.
456	"	"	Antimony Ore	1	Prince William, N. B		" Geol. Surv. of Canada.
457	"	"	Spathic Iron Ore	1	Sutherland's R., N. S		" " "
458	"	"	Gmelinite, Natrolite and Datholite	1	Bergen Hill, N. J		" Purchased of Geo. F. Kunz.
459	"	"	Magnetite	1	Crosby, Ont.		" Geol. Surv. of Canada.
460	"	"	Fluor Spar coated with Pyrites	1	Thunder B., B A		" Purchased of A. E. Foote.
461	"	"	Copper Pyrites in micaceous sandstone.	2	Alleghany Co., N. C		"
462	"	"	Coal. (Said to be nearly pure carbon)	1	Poplar Creek, E. Tenn		" 7 ft. thick.
463	"	"	Magnetite	3	New Bed Mine, Port Henry, N.Y.		"
464	"	"	Semi-Anthracite Coal	1	Rockwood, Tenn		" 104 ft. thick.
465	"	"	Ankerite (ferriferous dolomite)	1	Canada		" Geol. Surv. of Canada.
466	"	"	Brier Hill Coal	2	Ohio		"
467	"	"	Quartz Crystals	4	Herkimer Co., N. Y.	Calciferous	Purchased of Geo. F. Kunz.
468	"	Geol. Surv.	Crag	1	Banks of Crow R., Hennepin Co.	Drift	N. H. Winchell.
469	"	Cent. Exp.	Haematite and Magnetite	1	Hull, Ottawa		Geol. Surv. of Canada.
470	"	"	Sulp. Baryta	1	Two Islands, N. S		" "
471	"	"	Dolomite, with crystals of Magnetite and carb. of Manganese	1	Sutton, Quebec		" "
472	"	"	Sussexite (containing Magnesia.)	1	Franklin, N. J		Geo. F. Kunz.
473	"	"	Amazon Stone (smaller crystals)	5	Pike's Peak, Col.		Purchased of A. E. Foote.
474	"	"	Spinel	1	{ Orange Co., N. Y { Harvey Hill Mine		" "
475	"	"	Veined Copper Ore	2			Geol.Surv.of Canada. { See p. 29, No. 10. { a. & b. Canada Cat.

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 1, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
476	Nov. 1876	Centen'l Exposition.	Chromic Iron ore	1	Bolton, Quebec		Geol. Surv. of Canada.
477	"	" "	Crysoprase. (Cut.)	1	S. Park, Col		A. E. Foote, cut at Oberstein, Ger.
478	"	" "	Agate. (Cut.)	2	" "		" " " " "
479	"	" "	Black Agate. (Cut.)	1	" "		" " " " "
480	"	" "	Moss Agate. (Cut.)	2	" "		" " " " "
481	"	" "	Cuprite on Copper	1	England		" "
482	"	" "	Native Copper	1	Lake Superior		" "
483	"	" "	Embolite	1	Silver City, N. Mexico		" "
484	"	" "	Rutile	1	Georgia		" "
485	"	" "	Celestite and Sulphur	1	Sicily		" "
486	"	" "	Orthoclace. Amazon Stone	3	Pike's Peak, Col		" "
487	"	" "	Milky Quartz	1	Lake Superior		" "
488	"	" "	Ruby	3	Near Franklin, N. J		Geo. F. Kunz.
489	"	" "	Amethyst	1	Amethyst Harbor, L. Sup		N. H. Winchell, Geol. Surv. of Canada.
490	"	" "	Calymene Senaria. (Trilobite.)	1	Warren Co., Ohio		A. E. Foote.
491	"	" "	Azurite	1	Chesse, France		" "
492	"	" "	Bornite	1	Mt. Catine, Tuscany		" "
493	"	" "	Smoky Quartz, Cairngorm Stone and Smoky Topaz	1	Pike's Peak, Col		" "
494	"	" "	Saponite, *var.* Agalmatalite	1	Cherokee Co., N. C		" "
495	"	" "	Wavellite	1	Montgomery Co., Ark		" "
496	"	" "	Fossiliferous Iron ore	2	Pilot Knob, McMun Co., E. Tenn		Gen. Wilder.
497	"	" "	Magnetite	1	Chattanooga, Tenn		" "
498	"	" "	Brown Haematite	7	" "		" "
499	1875	Prof. Laing	Sulphuret of Copper	1	Bolton, Quebec		
500	"	"	Plumbago	1	Canada West		

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
501	1875	Prof. Laing	Asbestos		South Stokely, Quebec		
502	"	"	Concretions	3	N. W. Iowa		
503	"	"	Galena ore	1	Galena, Ill		
504	"	"	Calcite	1	Brompton, Quebec		
505	"	"	Copper (native)	3	Lake Superior		
506	"	"	Coral	1			
507	"	"	"	1			
508	"	"	"	2			
509	"	"	"	1			
510	"	"	Chaetetes sp.? Coral	1			
511	"	"	Petraia sp.? "	1			
512	"	"	Coral	1			
513	"	"	Pleurotomaria umbilicata. Hall	1			
514	"	"	Fragment of a crinoid stem	1			
515	"	"	Spirifer sp.?	1			
516	"	"	Fragment of a crustacean	1			
517	"	"	Iron ores	4			
518	"	"		1			
519	"	"	Volcanic products	2	Sandwich Islands		
520	1871	D. A. Roe	Greenstone, veined with epidote	1	St. Croix Falls	Igneous	D. A. Roe.
521	"	"	Porphyritic Greenstone	1	" "	"	D. A. Roe.
522	"	"	Porphyry (Red crystals of Feldspar)	2	" "	"	"
523	"	"	Epidotic Rock	1	" "	"	"
524	"	"	Greenstone	1	" "	"	"
525	1873	I. J. Rochussen	Cathnite (cut in form of a book)	1	Pipestone Quarry	Potsdam	"

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
526	1871 ?	?	Claystones	10	Massachusetts		?
527	"	?	Drusy Quartz	1	?		?
528	1873	Geol. Surv	Quartzite polished by blown sand	3	Pipestone Co., Minn	Potsdam	I. J. Rochussen.
529	1871 ?	?	Geode with Chalcadony lining	2	Keokuk, Iowa	Sub. Carb	?
530	1873	Geol. Surv	Quartzite. (Red)	1	Pipestone Co., Minn	Potsdam	I. J. Rochussen.
531	1871 ?	?	Geode lined with quartz crystals	1	Brown Co., Ill	Sub. Carb	?
532	"	?	Carb. Lime. Stalactitic.	7	Dubuque, Iowa	Galena	?
533	"	D. A. Roe	Wulfenite. (Molybdate of lead)	1	Southampton, Mass		
534	"	?	Albite	1	Mass		No records.
535	"	?	Pyritiferous mica schist ?	1	New Hampshire		"
536	"	?	Actinolite	1	Mass		
537	1876	Minneapolis boulder.	Labradorite	4	Minneapolis	Drift	N. H. Winchell.
538	1871 ?	?	Hornblende	1	Chester, Mass		?
539	"	?	Micaceous feldspar.	1	?		?
540	"	?	Chrysocolla	2	Arizona		?
541	"	?	Beryl	1	Ackworth, N. H		?
542	"	?	Tremolite (or Calamite)	1	Canaan, Conn		?
543	"	?	Andalusite (Macle)	5	?		? See Dana's Min. p. 371, No. 323.
544	"	?	Titanite (or yellow sphene)	1	Williams Bridge, N. Y		?
545	"	?	Topaz	5	Brazil, S. A		?
546	"	?	Kyanite	2	New Hampshire		?
547	"	?	Tourmaline	1	New York		?
548	"	?	Crag	1	?		?
549	"	?	Tourmaline	2	Ackworth, N. H		? Massive.
550	"	?	Amanthus	4	?		?

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 13, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
551	1871 ?	Prof. Beardsley	Hornblende. (Amphibole.)	1	Chester, Mass		?
552	"	?	Amphibole. (Asbestos.)	1	Bex, Switzerland		
553	"	?	Chabazite.	1	William's Bridge, N. Y.		?
554	"	?	Muscovite	2	?		?
555	"	Prof. Beardsley	Serpentine	1	New Hampshire		?
556	March, 1876	Univ. Laboratory	Delessite	1	Minneapolis		N. H. Winchell. (In a boulder)
557	1871 ?	?	Talc	1	Massachusetts		?
558	"	?	Garnet, Muscovite and Quartz	1	?		? [air register frame.
559	"		Steatite. (Soapstone.)	3	Minneapolis. (Found at)		Probably the fragment of a hot
560	"	D. A. Roe	Apatite	1	Burgess, Canada		Terminated Crystal.
561	"	?	Native Sulphur	1	Sicily		?
562	"	?	Graphite	3	Ticonderoga, N. Y		?
563	"	D. A. Roe	Molybdenite	1	Westmoreland, N. H.		?
564	"	?	Sphalenite. (Zinc-blende.)	1	England		?
565	"	?	Sphalenite. (Zinc-blende.)	1	Brown Co., Ill		?
566	"	?	Fluorite	2	?		? Massive.
567	1876	W. E. Leonard	Sal Ammoniac	1	?		?
568	1871 ?	D. A. Roe	Zincite and Franklinite	1	Franklin, N. J		?
569	"	?	Rose Quartz	1	Connecticut		?
570	"	?	Haematite. (And specula iron)	1	Cumberland, Eng		?
571	Feb. 1872,	Dr. McMasters	Itacolumite	1	Danbury, N. C		
572	1873	I. J Rochussen	Conglomerate	1	Pipestone Co., Minn	Potsdam	I. J. Rochussen.
573	1874	Geol. Surv	Agatized wood	1	Dakota		N. H. Winchell.
574	1871	?	Sandstone	1	Pictured Rocks, McGregor, Iowa	St. Peter	
575	1671	?	Barite	1	Cheshire, Conn		?

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 1, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	Obtained.		Name.	Number of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
576	1875	N. H. Winchell	Gypsum	2	Grand Rapids	Carb.	? (Cut.)
577	1871?	?	Satin Spar. (Selenite.)	1	?		?
578	1874	N. H. Winchell	Calcite—Fibrous, dark	1	Dakota	Cretac.	N. H. Winchell.
579	1871?	?	Geode with lining of Calcite	Fragments.	Brown Co., Ill.	Carb	?
580	"	?	Cannel Coal	3	Fort Dodge, Iowa	"	?
581	"	?	Magnetite	2	Pilot Knob, Mo.		?
582	"	?	"Diaspore, white. Rutile, red. Biotite, laminated, (also iron and emery.")	1	Mass.		?
583	1876	Cent'l Exposition	Gothite	1	Pike's Peak, Col.		A. E. Foote. (Dealer.)
584	Oct. 1875	Geol. Surv.	Red Granite	1	St. Cloud, Minn.		N. H. Winchell.
585	1871?	?	Brown Haematite	1	?		?
586	1873	Geol. Surv	Catlinite.	1	Pipestone Co., Minn.	Potsdam	I. J. Rochussen.
587	1871?	?	Malachite	1	Plattville, Wis.		?
588	"	?	Tourmaline. (black)	1	Ackworth, N. H		?
589	1874	Geol. Surv.	Phonolyte	1	Bear Butte, Dakota	Igneous	N. H. Winchell.
590	1871?	?	Agate. (Cut.)	1	Brazil, S. A.		?
591	"	?	Quartz and Tourmaline	1	Ackworth, N. H.		?
592	1872	Geol. Surv	Honestone. (Sawed.)	1	Austin, Minn	Cretaceous.	N. H. Winchell.
593	Mar. 7. 1876	" "	Barite coated with limonite after pyrite	1	Missouri		
594	Nov. 1872	" "	Ripple marked slab of red sandstone	2	New Ulm, Minn	Potsdam	N. H. Winchell.
595	1871?	?	Geode with lining of calc spar	1	Keokuk, Iowa	Carb.	
596	"	D. A. Roe	Greenstone porphyritic with feldspar and epidote	1	St. Croix Falls, Minn.	Igneous	D. A. Roe.
597	"	?	Pyrite, Galenite and calcite, on siliceous slate.	1	?		?
598	1873	Geol. Surv. (Manufacturers.)	Fire Brick	1	New Ulm, Minn		N. H. Winchell.
599	Feb. 21, 1876	W. D. Hurlburt	Cuprite and Malachite on Native Copper	1	Rochester, "	Drift	On the bench of the Shakopee limestone other pieces weighed 6 pounds each.
600	Nov. 1876	Cent'l Exposition	Brookite. (Crystals.)	5	Magnet Cove, Ark		A. E. Foote.

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimens of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
601	Nov. 1876	Centennial Exposition.	Staurolite crystals	2	Mink Point, N. H		A. E. Foote.
602	“	“ “	Fluorite “	1	Cumberland, Eng		“
603	“	“ “	Siderite on Fluorite crystals	1	“		“
604	“	“ “	Chrysocolla	1	Mammoth Cave, Utah		“
605	“	“ “	“Hallite” “	3	Near Chester, Mass.		“
606	“	“ “	Tourmaline “	1	Warwick, Mass.		“
607	“	“ “	Manganite “	1	Ilefeld, Hartz Mts		“
608	“	“ “	Celestite	1	Pt. aux Peaux, Mich		“
609	“	“ “	Picrolite (serpentine)	1	Bohemia		“
610	“	“ “	Penninite	1	Lancaster Co., Penn.		“
611	“	“ “	Baltimorite (serpentine)	1	Texas, “		“
612	“	“ “	Celestite	1	Ft. Dodge, Iowa		“
613	“	“ “	Stilbite (crystals)	1	Nova Scotia		“
614	“	“ “	Perofskite “	4	Magnet Cove, Ark		“
615	“	“ “	Scolecite (zeolite)	1	Cape Blomidon, N. S		“
616	“	“ “	Lazulite (crystals)	1	Grass Mt., Ga.		“
617	“	“ “	Tourmaline	1	Goveneur, N. Y		“
618	1871?.	?	Quartz, mass of crystals	1	?		?
619	Dec.31, 1875	Geo. N. Bennett	Marbleized Slate	1	Hydeville, Vt		Marbleized at Troy, N. Y.
620	1871?	?	Geode, with quartz lining	2	Brown Co., Ill.		
621	Dec. 1876	S. F. Peckham	Bowenite (serpentine)	1	Smithfield, R. I.		
622	“	“	Vermiculite (Phyroselerite)	1	Milbury, Mass		
623	“	“	Metamorphic limerock	1	Rhode Island		Clouded.
624	“	“	Garnets in Mica schist	1	Chesterfield, Mass.		
625	“	“	Lepidolite	1	Paris, Maine		

Catalogue of the Geological and Mineralogical Specimen of the Museum, to December 31, 1876.—Continued.

Serial No.	OBTAINED.		Name.	No. of Specimens.	Locality.	Formation.	Collector and Remarks.
	When.	Whence.					
626	Dec. 1876	S. F. Peckham	"Gothite." (Haematite mostly)	1	Michigan Mine, Marquette, Mich.	Huronian	
627	" "	"	Phorphyritic iron, containing Titanium	1	Cumberland Hill, R. I		
628	" "	"	Phyllite	1	Cranston, R. I.		
629	" "	"	Ripidolite	1	Cumberland Hill, R. I.		
630	" "	"	Chalcopyrite	1	" "		
631	" "	"	Orthite (allanite) small, dark crystals. Scapolite (Wernerite) white, main portion. Sphene (Titanite) greenish massive	1	Bolton, Mass		
632	Dec. 1874	"	Slab of slate with impressions of plants	1	Portsmouth Mine, Rhode Island I.	Carb.	
633	?	?	Plumbago	Many	Ticonderoga, N. Y.		
634	Nov. 1876	Centennial Exposition.	Native sulphur	1	Kilauea, Sandwich Islands		

X.

ORNITHOLOGICAL NOTES.

By C. L. Herrick.

MINNEAPOLIS, Dec., 1876.

Prof. Winchell:

The work represented by the following list of birds was, of course, much impeded by the difficulties incident to the season during which it was prosecuted; for not only are there comparatively few birds, and those of the commonest species to be found during the heated term, but those actually collected are often unfit, on account of the summer moult, for preservation or study.

Yet though the field work was over before the fall migration was fairly commenced, a few facts of some interest were noticed.

From observations made during the summer it would seem that the Brotherly-Love Vireo (*Vireo philadelphicus*) is not as rare as until recently supposed, and, indeed, it may be found to be quite as common in this locality as the *Vireo gilvus*. The vireos collected were shot without discrimination, yet two were quite typical specimens of *philadelphicus*.

The results obtained from the study of the few shrikes as yet collected at Minneapolis are so unexpected and withal so contradictory, that the following remarks are given with some hesitancy, especially as they are at variance with what has been written upon these birds by others who have collected in this State.

The Great Northern Shrike, or *Collurio borealis*, is as yet only noted as occurring during Spring and Fall. I have never heard of the nest in this vicinity. I am led to believe that the bird is somewhat rare, even during the migrations, for in the Spring it is very conspicuous from the habit it has of perching on a high tree and uttering at intervals its peculiar metallic cry on its arrival in any locality; and thus the comparatively small number of specimens collected is more significant.

The smaller shrikes, so abundant here, or many of them, seem to partake of the characteristics of both varieties, viz: *ludovicianus* and *excubitoroides*. The three in the museum seem to me to nearly accord with the descriptions of *ludovicianus*. They all, together with two in my own collection, have the two inner tail feathers black to the bases; but another, which also possesses several other resemblances to *excubitoroides*, has evident white patches on all the tail quills. Again a number of these birds in the possession of Mr. T. S. Roberts agree in disagreeing with every description of either variety.

I draw from these facts the inference that the variety *ludovicianus* predominates over the other, but that the types are mingled and blended so as to baffle any accurate identification.

The nesting of these birds may be easily observed in many parts of the suburbs, but the nests are often mistaken for those of the more northern Butcher Bird.

Perhaps the Red-bellied Nuthatch may be less rare during migration than supposed, if searched for in suitable localities.

The bird-fauna of the State has received one addition in the tern *Sterna caspia* (Thalassus c. Boie.) This is the largest of the terns, and is a very beautiful and striking bird. The only specimen as yet identified from this State, as far as I am aware, was secured at Long Lake by Will Secombe, of Minneapolis, by whom it was presented to the museum.

The English House-Sparrow was simultaneously observed by Mr. Roberts and myself during the early part of the winter about the streets of the city, and I learn from that observer that they have survived our severe weather as yet.

The fact that birds are often infested by intestinal worms particularly the Tape Worm, (Tænia) has attracted so much notice of late that I mention the collection of a variety of these parasites from the solitary Tattler; also a quasi-parasitic colony of crustaceans found upon a goose. I received from Mr. Roberts several specimens of crustaceans collected from Hutchins' goose, found deeply imbedded in the feathers near the skin. These proved to be miniature Sand Fleas (fresh water.) Of course it is hardly to be supposed that this was more than an accident. I cannot account for this except by supposing it to be the result of the proclivity of these fleas (so often noticed) to wedge themselves in the thick masses of leaves upon the Bladder-wort and other water plants.

AVES.

Note. A star (*) signifies male. A dagger (†) denotes the female.

TURDIDÆ.

1. Harpochynchus rufas. Cab. Brown Thrush. Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (69.)
2. Mimus carolinensis. Cab. Cat Bird.* Minneapolis, May 14th, 1875. (26.)

SITTIDÆ.

3. Sitta carolinensis. Gm. White-Bellied Nuthatch.* Minneapolis, Aug. 12th, 1876. (64.)
4. Sitta carolinensis, Gm. White-Bellied Nuthatch. Minneapolis, July 24th, 1876. (65.)
5. Sitta canadensis, L. Red-Bellied Nuthatch. Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (66.) *Not common.*

SYLVICOLIDÆ.

6. Mniotilla varia. Vieill. Black and White Creeper.* Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (10.)
7. Mniotilla varia. Vieill. Black and White Creeper. Minneapolis, Aug. 18th, 1876. (77.)
8. Dendrœea æstiva. Bd. Golden Warbler. Minneapolis, May 7th, 1875. (6.)
9. Dendrœea æstiva. Bd. Golden Warbler.* Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (7.)
10. Dendrœea æstiva. Bd. Golden Warbler.* Minneapolis, Aug. 14th, 1876. (8.)
11. Dendrœea coronata. Gray. Yellow-Rumped Warbler.† Minneapolis, May 15th, 1875. (9.)
12. Mniotilla varia. Vieill. Black and White Creeper. Minneapolis, Aug. 18th, 1876. (76.)

13. Seiurus aurocapillus. Sw. Golden-Crowned Thrush.* Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (79.)

14. Seiurus aurocapillus. Sw. Golden-Crowned Thrush. Minneapolis, May 15th, 1875. (4.)

15. Seiurus novembraeinsis. Nutt. Water Thrush. Lake Minnetonka, Aug. 14th, 1876. (5.)

16. Setophaga ruticilla. Sw. Red Start.* Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (80.)

17. Setophaga ruticilla. Sw. Red Start.* Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (81.)

18. Setophaga ruticilla. Sw. Red Start. Minneapolis, Aug. 15th. (15.)

TANAGRIDÆ.

19. Pyranga rubra. Vieill. Scarlet Tanager.* Minneapolis, July 19th, 1876. (28.)

HIRUNDINIDÆ.

20. Cotyle riparia. Boie. Bank Swallow.* Minneapolis, Aug. 14th, 1876. (47.)

AMPELIDÆ.

21. Ampelis cedrorum. Bd. Cedar Bird.* Minneapolis, July, 1876. (25.)

VIREODINÆ.

22. Vireo olivacea. L. Red-eyed Vireo.* Minneapolis, July 19th, 1876. (11.)

23. Vireo phillidelphica. Cassin. Phillidelphia Vireo. Minneapolis, Aug. 1876. (14.)

24. Vireo phillidelphica. Cassin. Phillidelphia Vireo. Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (78.)

25. Vireo gilva. Cass. Warbling Vireo.* Minneapolis, July 11th, 1876. (12.)

26. Vireo flavifrons. Bd. Yellow-throated Vireo.* Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (13.)

LANIDÆ.

27. Collurio ludivicianus. Bd. Loggerhead Shrike.* Minneapolis, Aug., 1876. (7.)

28. Collurio ludivicianus. Bd. Loggerhead Shrike.† Minneapolis, July 20th, 1876. (2.)

29. Collurio ludivicianus. Bd. Loggerhead Shrike. Minneapolis, 1875. (3.)

FRINGILLIDÆ.

30. Chrysomitris tristis. Bon. Yellow Bird.† Minneapolis, Nov. 26th, 1875. (31.)

31. Chrysomitris tristis. Bon. Yellow Bird.* Champlin, Minn., June 18th, 1875. (30.)

32. Plectrophanes niralis. Meyer. Snow Bunting.* Minneapolis, Nov. 30th, 1876. (38.)

33. Plectrophanes niralis. Meyer. Snow Bunting.† Minneapolis, Nov. 30th, 1876. (39.)

34. Poœcetes gramineus. Bd. Grass Finch. Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (35.)

35. Poœcetes gramineus. Bd. Grass Finch. Minneapolis, Aug. 1876. (36.)

36. Spizella socialis. Bon. Chipping Sparrow.* Minneapolis, Aug. 14th, 1876. (32.)

37. Spizella monticolor. Bd. Tree Sparrow.* Minneapolis, Oct. 9th, 1876. (34.)

38. Spizella pallida. Bon. Clay-Colored Bunting.* Minneapolis, Aug., 1876. (33.)

39. Spizella pallida. Bon. Clay-Colored Bunting.† Minneapolis, May 7th, 1875. (34.)

40. Chondestes grammaca. Bon. Lark Finch. Minneapolis, 1875. (38.)

41. Melospiza melodia. Bd. Song Sparrow.* Minneapolis, Aug. 12th, 1876. (37.)

42. Goniaphea ludiviciana. Bowdich. Rose-Breasted Grosbeak.* Minneapolis, June, 1875. (27.)

43. Coniaphea ludiviciana. Bow. Rose-Breasted Grosbeak. Minneapolis, Aug. 18th, 1876. (75.)

44. Cyanospiza cyanea. Bd. Indigo Bird.* Minneapolis, July, 1876. (29.)

45. Pipilo cyrthrophthalmus. Vieill. Chewink.* Minneapolis, Aug. 3d, 1876. (39.)

46. Junco hyemalis. Sd. Snow Bird.* Minneapolis, Oct. 9th, 1876. (33.)

ICTERIDÆ.

47. Dolichonyx oryzivorus. Sw. Bobolink.* Minneapolis, July 20th, 1876. (42.)

48. Agelæus phœnicus. V. Red-Winged Black Bird.* Minneapolis, Aug. 4th, 1876. (41.)

49. Sturnella magna. Sw. Meadow Lark.* Minneapolis, July 18th, 1876. (40.)

50. Icterus baltimore. Daudin. Baltimore Oriole.* Minneapolis, May 22d, 1875. (21.)

51. Icterus spurius. Bon. Orchard Oriole.* Minneapolis, 1875. (22.)

52. Icterus spurius. Bon. Orchard Oriole.*. Minneapolis, 1875. *Juv. specimine.* (23.)

53. Icterus spurius. Bon. Orchard Oriole.† Minneapolis, July, 1876. (24.)

CORVIDÆ.

54. Corvus corax. L. Raven.* (*Mounted.*) Minneapolis, Oct., 1876. (85.) *Not common.*
Presented by N. Herrick, Esq.

55. Cyanurus cristatus. Sw. Blue Jay. Minneapolis, July 20th, 1876. (45.)

TYRANNIDÆ.

56. Tyrannus carolinensis. Bd. King Bird.* Minneapolis, May 14th, 1875. (20.)

57. Contopops virens. Cab. Wood Pewee.* Minneapolis, Aug. 11th, 1876. (16.)

58. C. virens. Cab. Wood Pewee.* Minneapolis, Aug. 15th, 1876. (17.)

59. C. virens. Cab. Wood Pewee.† Minneapolis, Aug. 15th, 1876. (18.)

60. C. virens. Cab. Wood Pewee. Minneapolis, July, 1876. (19.)

CAPRIMULGIDÆ.

61. Chordeiles virginianus. Bon. Night Hawk.* Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (44.)

CYPSELIDÆ.

62. Cotyle pelasgio. Bd. Chimney Swift.* Minneapolis, July 10th, 1876. (43.)

ALCEDINIDÆ.

63. Cryle alcyon. Boie. Belted Kingfisher. Minneapolis, Aug. 1st, 1876. (46.)

PICIDÆ.

64. Picus pubescens. L. Downy Woodpecker.* Minneapolis, July, 1876. (60.)

65. Picus pubescens. L. Downy Woodpecker.* Minneapolis, Aug. 16th, 1876. (61.)

66. Picus pubescens. L. Downy Woodpecker.* Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (73.)

67. Melanerpes erythrocephalus. Sw. Red-headed Woodpecker. July 23d, 1876. (62.)

68. Melanerpes erythrocephalus. Sw. Red-headed Woodpecker.* Minneapolis, Aug. 28th. (71.)

69. Colaptes auratus. Sw. Golden-winged Woodpecker. Minneapolis, April 29th, 1875. (63.)

70. Colaptes auratus. Su. Golden-winged Woodpecker.* Minneapolis, Aug. 28th, 1876. (72.)

STRIGIDÆ.

71. Bubo virginianus. Wilk. Great-horned Owl.* Minneapolis, Nov., 1876. (86.) *From Collection of C. L. Herrick.*

FALCONIDÆ.

72. Falco sparverius. L. Sparrow Hawk. Minneapolis, Aug. 2, 1876. (67.)

73. Falco sparverius. L. Sparrow Hawk. Minneapolis, Aug. 18th, 1875. (68.)

74. Buteo borealis. Vieill. Red-tailed Hawk.* Jav. Minneapolis, July, 1876. (82.) (*Mounted.*)

COLUMBIDÆ.

75. Ectopistes migratorius. Sw. Wild Pigeon. Minneapolis, July 11th, 1876. (58.)

76. Ectopistes migratorius. S. Wild Pigeon. Minneapolis, July 11th, 1876. (59.)

TETRAONIDÆ.

77. Bonasa umbellus. Stephens. Ruffed Grouse. Minneapolis, July, 1876. (48.)

CHARADRUDÆ.

78. Ægialitis vociferus. Cass. Killdeer Plover.† Minneapolis, July 22d, 1876. (57.)

SCOLOPACIDÆ.

79. Totanus solitarius. Wilson. Solitary Tattler.* Minneapolis, Aug. 17th, 1876. (55.)

80. Totanus solitarius. Wils. Solitary Tattler.* Minneapolis, Aug. 12th, 1876. (56.)

81. Totanus solitarius. Wils. Solitary Tattler. Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (74.)

82. Tringoides macularius. Gray. Spotted Sandpiper. Minneapolis, Aug. 4th, 1876. (53.)

83. Tringoides macularius. Gray. Spotted Sandpiper.* Minneapolis, July 14th, 1876. (54.)

84. Actiturus bartramius. Bon. Upland Plover. Minneapolis, Aug. 6th, 1875. (52.)

ARDEIDÆ.

85. Botaurus mugitans. Coues. Bittern. Minneapolis, 1875. (49.)

RALLIDÆ.

86. Porzana carolina. V. Carolina Rail.† Minneapolis, Aug. 20th, 1876. (70.)

LARIDÆ.

87. Sterna caspia. Pall. Caspian Tern. Long Lake, Nov., 1876. (87.)
Rare.
Collected and presented by Will. Secombe.

88. Hydrochelidon lariformis. Coues. Black Tern. Minneapolis, July 19th, 1876. (50.)

89. Hydrochelidon lariformis. Coues. Black Tern, *young*. Minneapolis, July 19th, 1876. (51.)

ANATIDÆ.

90. Bucephala clangula. Wils. Golden-Eye. Garrot. Minneapolis, Jan. 17th, 1877.

Just as this proof is going to press, I have the pleasure of announcing that I had the good fortune to secure for the collection two specimens of Le contes Sparrow, *coturniculus lecontei,* thus adding this to the very few localities of its occurrence. A more extended notice will doubtless be given hereafter.

XI.

A NEW CYCLOPS.

By C. L. Herrick.

Cyclops quadricornis has often been used as an object for study by those desirous of becoming familiar with the process of development in crustacea. For this it is eminently fitted both on account of its very distinct changes and its abundance in every pond and pool.

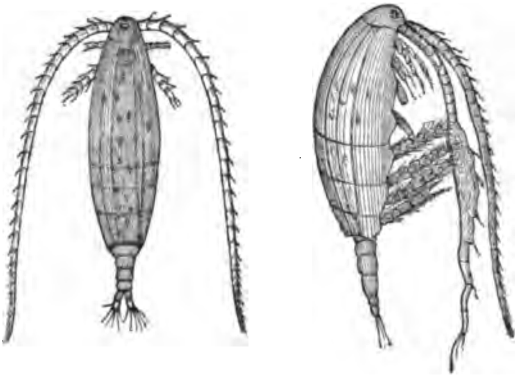


Fig. 1.

There is another member of the same genus which has not, apparently, been described, and I have therefore provisionally named it *C. longicornis* from the very long primary antennæ.

The appearance of an ordinary individual (*Fig.* 1.) is not very widely different from the ordinary species. But the first glance of the female with the spherical sac of ova under the abdomen makes the creature seem quite distinct.

The general appearance and its movements while swimming briskly about cause it to look like a magnified cladocera, the long spreading antennæ increasing the similarity. The glass at once dispels the illusion however.

The eggs are larger in proportion than those of *quadricornis* and are loosely aggregated beneath the abdomen. The cephalothorax is very large and carries the usual complement of motory appendages. The first antennæ are long—exceeding the body. The second pair are specialized enough to be called antennæ, and the claws are, according to my observation, small though they were indistinctly seen.

The abdomen is in proportion smaller than in *quadricornis*, and the tail similar to that of a young of that species. Of internal structure little was made out, but the red glands are as prominent as in the other. A curious case of malformation of antennæ is shown in the figure. The color is transparent white, except the tips of the antennæ and the last segments of the abdomen.

The process of cephalization is well illustrated by the cyclops, though not as aptly as in the larger crustaceans, the Sand Fleas.

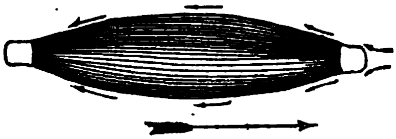


Fig. 2.

A recent observation of a number of diatoms dipped from the bottom of the deeper portion of Lake Calhoun, seems to prove that one species is clothed with cilia throughout, and not simply at the ends as usually described. While watching the motions of a Navicula-like plant propelling itself slowly along it was seen to collide with a large mass of vegetable matter, and while thus brought to a stand-still the infinitesimal particles floating near it were seen to traverse its whole length, the diatom and particles beyond reach of its influence remaining motionless in the meantime. This specimen was of sufficient length to preclude the possibility of the cilia at the ends having any influence upon the particles.

Other Collections.

Besides the Moose mentioned in the report of last year, the following mounted mammals are on exhibition:

Antilœapra Americana. Ord. Pronghorn Antelope. 2 male and 2 female. Custer Expedition to the Black Hills. 1874.

Corvus Canadensis. Exl. American Elk. Custer Expedition to the Black Hills. 1874.

Badger. Custer Expedition to the Black Hills. 1874.

Ursus horribilis. Ord. Grizzly Bear, female. Custer Expedition to the Black Hills. 1874.

Corvus lencurus. Doug. White-Tailed Deer; 1 male, 2 females. Cus. Ex. Blk. Hills. 1874.

Rangifer Caribou. And. and Bach. Woodland Caribou (unmounted.) Presented Dec., 1875, by Nathan Butler.

Sciurus hudsonius. Pall. Red Squirrel. Three specimens.

Tamius striatus. Bd. Chipmunk.

Spermophilus tridecemlineatus. Mitch. Striped Gopher.

Hesperomys michiganensis. Wag. Michigan Mouse.

Procyon lotoi. Ston. Common Raccoon.

Reptiles.

Pana catesbiana. Shaw. Bull Frog.

Amblystoma tigrinum. Bd. (Immature.) Common Salamander.

Eutaenia radix. Bd. & Gir. Garter snake.

Skeletons Mounted.

Podilymbus podiceps. Lawr. Pied-billed Grebe.

Botaurus mugitans. Bart. Bittern.

INDEX TO THE GEOLOGICAL REPORT.

Page.

Address to the President 8
Andrews, Dr. E., on the recession of the Falls of St. Anthony 180
Annual departure of the Locusts 102
Alluvial Terraces in Houston county 88
Area of the present deposit of Locust Eggs 114
***Aves*, list of, in the Museum** 232

Beltrami's description of the Falls of St. Anthony 181
Botany 64
Botanical observations, when and how begun 6
Bounty for the destruction of locusts 128
Birds collected 7
Brick made in Houston county 49
Brick made in Hennepin county 191
Brick-clay in Hennepin county 174
Brachiopoda 53
Building-stone of Houston county 44
Building-stone of Minnesota, strength of 47
Building-stone of Hennepin county 190
Burning prairies to destroy Locusts 126

Calcite masses in Houston county 48
Carver's description of the Falls of St. Anthony 179, 185
Catalogue of the General Museum 204
Catching machines for Locusts 124
Centennial Exhibition, specimens from 202
Cephalopoda 53
Chemical work of survey 6
Chemistry; report of Prof. Peckham 57
Chalybeate Springs, Minneapolis 198
Coal, analyses of 58
Coal at Dayton 152
Conclusions on the recession of the Falls of St. Anthony 188
Cretaceous, the, of Hennepin county 152
Crustacea 54

Page.
Cyclops, a new species of........ 238

Damage to crops by Locusts........ 119
Data for calculating the recession of the Falls of St. Anthony........ 184
Degeneration of the Locust........ 98
Description of the towns in Hennepin county........ 187
Diary, on the movements of Locusts........ 112
Diatoms in lake Calhoun........ 239
Ditching to destroy Locusts........ 125
Donors to the Museum........ 203
Drift, the, in Houston county........ 34
Drift, the, in Hennepin county........ 156
Driftless area, the; its cause........ 36

Earthworks in Houston county........ 50
Earthworks in Hennepin county........ 200
Eggs of the grasshopper........ 97
Eggs of the grasshopper; area of present deposit........ 114
Eggs of the grasshopper; time of deposit........ 117
Elevations in Houston county........ 18
Elevations in Hennepin county........ 134
Entomology begun........ 7
Entomology; report of Allen Whitman........ 90
Entrance of invading swarms of Locusts........ 105

Falls of St. Anthony: recession of........5, 177, 179
Featherstonhaugh, on the Falls of St. Anthony........ 183
Flouring Mills at Minneapolis in 1876........ 196
Fossils of the Trenton........ 6, 51
Fuel in Hennepin county........ 189
Fuel in Houston county........ 20
Fungi, list of, by Dr. Johnson........ 66

Gasteropoda........ 53
Galena limestone; fossils of........ 55
Geology of Minnesota; State publications relating to........ 4
Geology of Houston county........ 9
Geology of Hennepin county........ 131
Geological structure of Houston county........ 24
Geological structure of Hennepin county........ 143
General view of locust invasions........ 91
Glacial Epoch, the; recurrence of........ 36
Gorge, the, below the Falls of St. Anthony........ 175
Gorges in Houston county........ 11
General Museum; Report on the........ 202
Gray hardpan in Hennepin county........ 173

Page.
Grasshoppers, the investigation of.................................... 90
Great Medicine Spring, near Minneapolis.............................. 200
Green Shales, the.. 147

Hatch, Dr. P. L.; appointed ornithologist............................ 7
Hatch, Dr. P. L.; report of... 88
Hennepin's description of the Falls of St. Anthony............... 179
Hennepin county; the Geology of....................................... 131
“ situation and area of 131
“ natural drainage of................................... 132
“ surface features of.................................. 133
“ elevations in.... 134
“ description of towns in........... 137
“ soil and timber of.................................... 141
“ geological structure of............................. 143
“ the Shakopee limestone in........................ 144
“ the St. Peter sandstone in........................ 144
“ the Trenton limestone in.... 147
“ the Cretaceous in...................................... 152
“ the drift in.. 156
“ wells in... 170
“ material resources in............................... 189
“ building-stone in...... 190
“ brick and pottery in...... 191
“ quick-lime in.. 192
“ mills and water-powers of........................ 193
“ medicinal waters of.................................. 198
“ Earthworks in... 200
Herrick, C. L.; ornithological notes by.............................. 230
Herrick, C. L.; a new cyclops described by......................... 238
Houston county; situation and area of................................ 9
“ natural drainage of.................................. 9
“ surface features of.................................. 11
“ soil and timber of.................................... 19
“ geological structure of............................. 24
“ the Trenton limestone of........................... 25
“ the St. Peter sandstone in.......................... 26
“ the Shakopee limestone in......................... 26
“ the Jordan sandstone in............................. 28
“ the St. Lawrence limestone in.................... 29
“ the St. Croix sandstone in.......................... 29
“ the drift in.. 34
“ alluvial terraces in...... 38
“ wells in... 41
“ the material resources of............ 44
“ building-stone in 44

Page.
Houston county; sand for mortar in........ 48
" brick made in........ 49
" quick-lime made in........ 49
" lead ore in........ 50
" earthworks in........ 51
History of the Glacial Epoch in Hennepin county........ 177
History of past invasions of the locust........ 95
Hokah, general section at........ 31

Irving, Prof. R.; on the Lower Magnesian in Wisconsin........ 27
Iron ores, analyses of........ 63

Johnson, Dr. A. E.; catalogue of *fungi* by........ 66
Jordan sandstone in Houston county........ 28

Keating's description of the Falls of St. Anthony........ 182
Kunz, Geo. F.; purchase of cabinet of........ 203

Latitude and longitude........ 7
Lead in Houston county........ 50
Lithological characters of the St. Peter sandstone........ 146
Lime in Houston county........ 49
Lime in Hennepin county........ 192
Locust problem in Minnesota........ 93
"Locust flights"........ 103
Long's description of the Falls of St. Anthony........ 180
Lower Trenton; fossils of........ 54
Lumber mills at Minneapolis, 1876........ 197

Mammals in the Museum........ 239
Material Resources of Houston county........ 44
Material Resources of Hennepin county........ 189
Meteorological observations........ 7
Medicinal waters........ 198
Minnesota as a breeding ground for the locust........ 96
Mineral spring, analysis of........ 61
Mills and water-powers in Hennepin county........ 193, 197
Minnetonka Lake........ 133
Mortar-sand in Houston county........ 48
Mounds in Hennepin county........ 200
Movements of locust swarms........ 104, 110
Museum report........ 202
Mycologic flora of Minnesota........ 66

Natural drainage of Houston county........ 9
Natural drainage of Hennepin county........ 132

Page.
Natural decrease of locusts.......... 99
Need of state and individual exertion.................... 127
Notes on the entrance of the locust into Minnesota.................. 105
Notes on a deep well drilled at E. Minneapolis....................... 154
Notes, ornithological................. 230

Ornithology begun by the survey..................................... 7
Ornithology, report of Dr. P. L. Hatch.............................. 88
Ornithological notes, by C. L. Herrick.............................. 230

Parasites and enemies of locusts..................................... 108
Paleontology... 51
Peckham, Prof. S. F.; report on chemistry.... 57
"Petrified Moss" at Minneapolis.... 200
Pike's description of the Falls of St. Anthony................ 180
Pike Island, its orign.. 176
Plats of the U. S. survey in Honston county........ 16
Plats of the U. S. survey in Hennepin county......................... 187
Plowing and harrowing against locusts.............................. 127
Places where locust eggs were deposited............................ 115
Pottery in Hennepin county... 191
Polyp Radiates... 54
Practical methods of contending with the locust..................... 120
Protozoa 54

Quarries in Houston county... 44
Quarries in Hennepin county... 190
Quick-lime in Houston connty... 49
Quick-lime in Hennepin county....................................... 192

Red Hardpan.. 172
Reptiles in the Museum.. 240
Rhame, Prof. M. D., measurements about the Falls of St. Anthony... 187
Russell Mineral Spring, Minneapolis................................. 199
Recession of the Falls of St. Anthony...............................179–187
Root river.. 9
Root river terrace 40
Rocky Mountain Locust; report on.................................... 90
  " general view of locust invasions............ 91
  " the evil as it appears in Minnesota......... 93
  " the history of past invasions................ 95
  " Minnesota as a breeding ground.......... 96
  " degeneration of................................. 98
  " natural decrease from one year to another.. 99
  " annual departure of........... 102
  " starting points of invading swarms in 1876. 104

Page.

Rocky Mountain Locust; movements of swarms outside the state.... 104
" entrance of invading swarms............... 105
" movements of swarms within the state..... 110
" area of the present deposit of eggs........ 114
" places where eggs are deposited........... 115
" time of depositing eggs.................... 117
" parasites and enemies of................... 118
" damage to crops by........................ 119
" practical methods of contending with.....120-126
" catching machines......................... 124
" ditching.................................. 125
" burning the prairies...................... 126
" plowing and harrowing..................... 127
" need of both state and individual exertion.. 127
" bounty for the destruction of.............. 128

Sand for mortar in Houston county.............................. 48
Section of the Trenton, below the University.................... 148
Section of the drift at the Falls of St. Anthony.................. 157
Section of the drift on Sibley St. in St. Paul.................... 159
Section of the drift between Wacouta and Sibley sts., St. Paul....... 160
Section of the drift within the valley at St. Paul.................. 161
Section of the drift at Banks Arenson's quarry.................... 162
Section of the drift at Dayton.................................. 165
Section of the drift in Crystal Lake township...................... 166
Section of the St. Lawrence and St. Croix, at Hokah................ 38
Situation and area of Houston county............................ 9
Situation and area of Hennepin county........................... 131
Shrubs of Houston county...................................... 22
Shakopee limestone of Houston county............................ 26
Shakopee limestone of Hennepin county........................... 144
Shrubs and woody vines of Hennepin county....................... 142
Skeletons, mounted in the Museum................................ 240
Sketch of Root river terrace..................................... 40
Springs, mineral, in Hennepin county............................. 198
Soil and timber of Houston county................................ 19
Soil and timber of Hennepin county............................... 141
St. Anthony, Falls of; described by Hennepin...................... 179
" described by Carver......................... 179
" described by Pike........................... 180
" described by Long........................... 180
" described by Beltrami........................ 181
" described by Keating........................ 182
" described by Featherstonhaugh............... 183
" recession of................................ 179
St. Peter sandstone in Houston county............................ 26

	Page.
St. Peter sandstone in Hennepin county	144
St. Croix Sandstone in Houston county	29
St. Croix sandstone; section at Hokah	33
St. Lawrence limestone of Houston county	29
Stone quarries of Houston county	44
Stone quarries of Hennepin county	190
Strength of Minnesota building stones	46
Surface features of Houston county	11
Surface features of Hennepin county	133
Summary statement	5
Surveying statistics of Hennepin county	132
Time of deposition of locust eggs	117
Topography of Houston county	11
Topography of Hennepin county	133
Trees of Houston county	20
Trees of Hennepin county	141
Trenton limestone in Houston county	25
Trenton limestone in Hennepin county	147
Unconformity between the Devonian and Silurian	6
University Museum	8
University Museum; report for 1876	202
Warren, Gen. G. K.; map of the Mississippi river by	187
Water powers in Houston county	10
Water powers in Hennepin county	193
Wells in Houston county	41
Wells in Hennepin county	170
Whitman, Allen; report of	90

ERRATA.

Page 5, line 4 from bottom, for "fossiliforous" read fossiliferous.

Page 139, line 14, for "There" read This.

Page 156, line 12 from bottom, for "nine" read eight.

Page 158, line 6, for "(gray hardpan to near the top of the bluff)." read (gray hardpan) to near the top of the bluff.

Page 179, strike out "This fall is forty or fifty feet high, divided in the middle by a rocky island of pyramidal form."

Page 220, line 10 from bottom, for "left branch" read left bank.

Page 230, strike out "X."

Page 238, strike out "XI."

On the map of the vicinity of the Falls of St. Anthony, under "*Explanation*," last line, strike out "Gray."

BOUND
FEB 14 1927
UNIV. OF MICH.
LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
3 9015 06824 9989